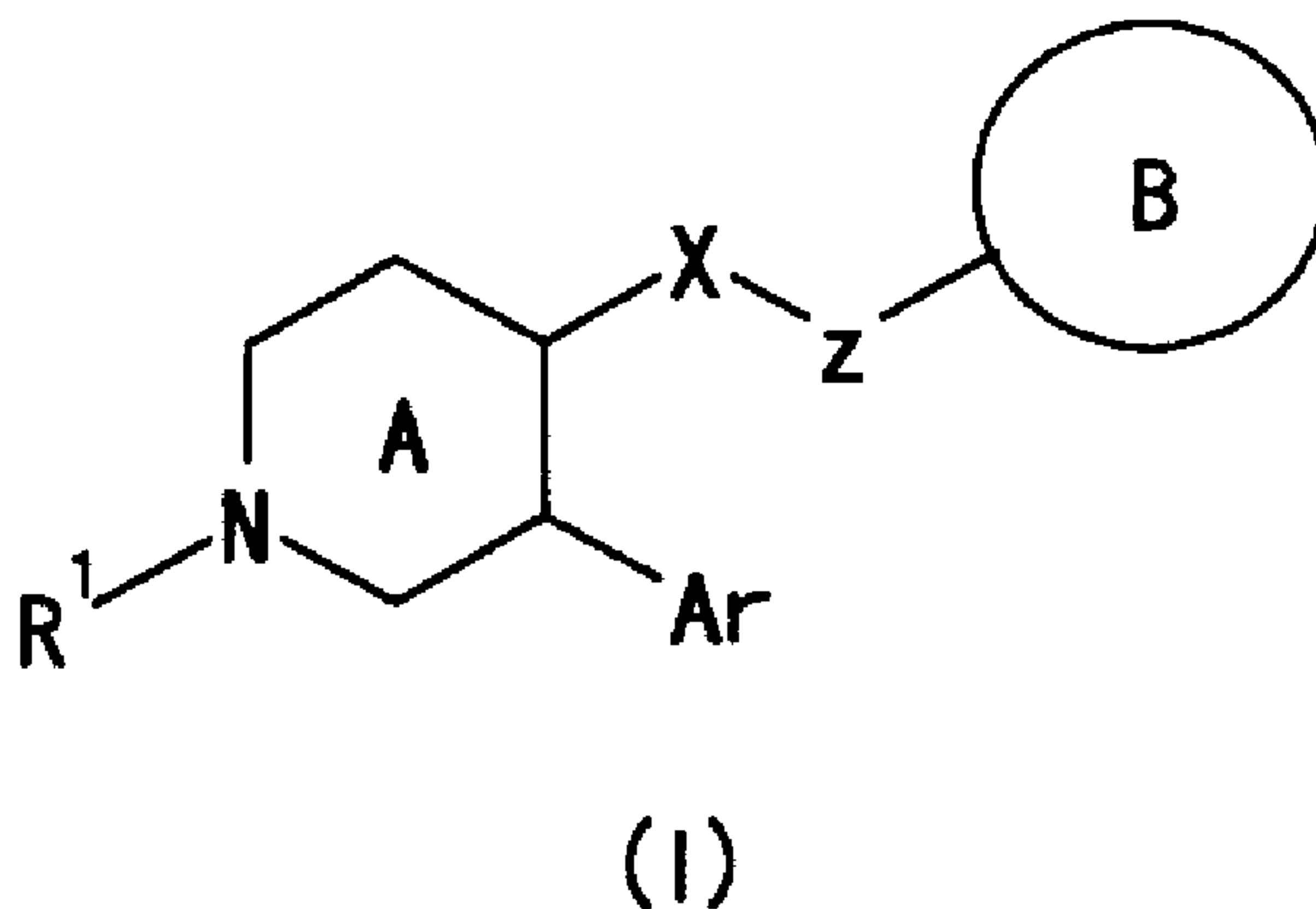




(86) Date de dépôt PCT/PCT Filing Date: 2003/05/29
(87) Date publication PCT/PCT Publication Date: 2003/12/11
(85) Entrée phase nationale/National Entry: 2004/11/29
(86) N° demande PCT/PCT Application No.: JP 2003/006754
(87) N° publication PCT/PCT Publication No.: 2003/101964
(30) Priorités/Priorities: 2002/05/31 (2002-159338) JP;
2003/01/27 (2003-17885) JP

(51) Cl.Int.⁷/Int.Cl.⁷ C07D 211/46, A61K 31/5377,
A61K 31/496, A61K 31/4545, A61P 3/00, A61P 1/00,
A61K 31/454, A61K 31/4525, A61K 31/451,
A61K 31/4468, A61K 31/445, A61P 25/24, ...
(71) Demandeur/Applicant:
TAKEDA PHARMACEUTICAL COMPANY LIMITED, JP
(72) Inventeurs/Inventors:
IKEURA, YOSHINORI, JP;
HASHIMOTO, TADATOSHI, JP;
TARUI, NAOKI, JP;
SHIRAI, JUNYA, JP;
YAMASHITA, MASAYUKI, JP
(74) Agent: FETHERSTONHAUGH & CO.

(54) Titre : DERIVE PIPERIDINE, PROCEDE DE PRODUCTION, ET UTILISATION
(54) Title: PIPERIDINE DERIVATIVE, PROCESS FOR PRODUCING THE SAME, AND USE



(57) Abrégé/Abstract:

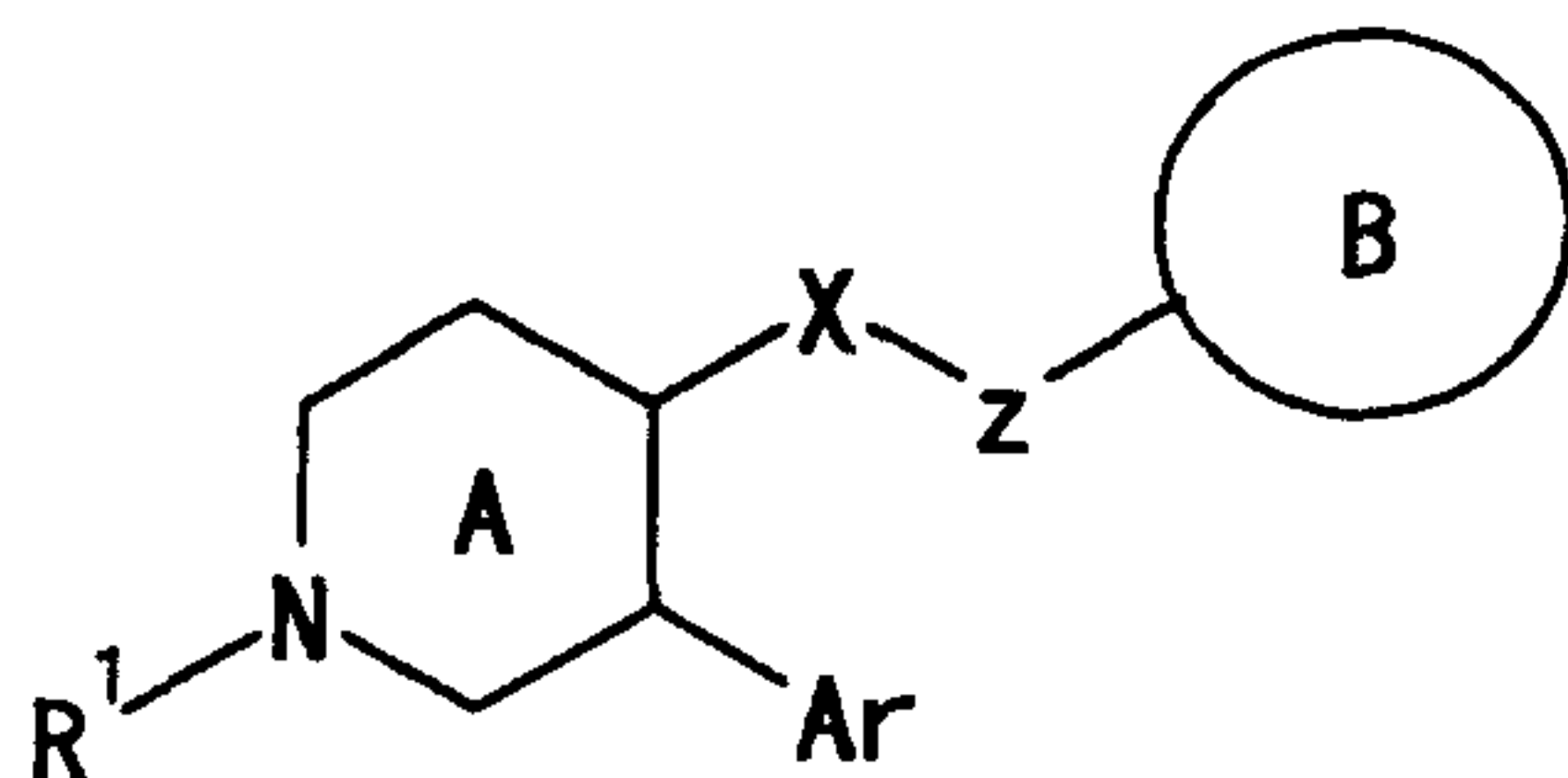
A novel piperidine derivative (I) which is either a compound represented by the formula (I) (wherein Ar represents an aryl, aralkyl, or aromatic heterocyclic group which may have one or more substituents; R¹ represents hydrogen, an optionally substituted hydrocarbon group, acyl, or an optionally substituted heterocyclic group; X represents oxygen or optionally substituted imino; Z represents optionally substituted methylene; ring A represents a piperidine ring which may be further substituted; and ring B represents an optionally substituted aromatic ring; provided that when Z is methylene substituted by oxo, then R¹ is not methyl and when Z is methylene substituted by methyl, then ring B is a substituted aromatic ring) or a salt of the compound. The derivative has excellent tachykinin receptor antagonistic activity and is useful in medicines, especially a preventive/therapeutic agent for frequent urination/urinary incontinence.

(51) Cl.Int.⁷/Int.Cl.⁷ (suite/continued) A61P 25/22, A61P 25/18, A61P 19/02, A61P 13/02, A61P 43/00, A61P 31/00, A61P 29/00, A61P 25/00, A61P 17/00, A61P 11/00, A61P 1/18, A61P 1/16, A61P 11/14, A61P 13/12, A61P 37/08, A61P 13/08, A61P 1/08, A61P 11/06, A61P 25/04, C07D 401/06, C07D 409/06, C07D 405/06, C07D 417/12, C07D 409/12, C07D 405/12, C07D 401/12, C07D 211/58

- 277 -

ABSTRACT

The present invention provides a compound represented by the formula:



(I)

5 wherein Ar is an aryl group, an aralkyl group or an aromatic heterocyclic group, each of which may be substituted, R¹ is a hydrogen atom, an optionally substituted hydrocarbon group, an acyl group or an optionally substituted heterocyclic group, X is an oxygen atom or an optionally substituted imino group, Z is an optionally substituted methylene group, Ring A is an optionally further substituted piperidine ring, and Ring B is an optionally substituted aromatic ring, provided that when Z is a methylene group substituted with an oxo group, R¹ is not a methyl group, and
 10 when Z is a methylene group substituted with a methyl group, Ring B is a substituted aromatic ring, or a salt thereof, which is a novel piperidine derivative having excellent antagonistic action for a tachykinin receptor and useful as a medicament, particularly an agent for preventing and/or
 15 treating urinary frequency and/or urinary incontinence.
 20

- 1 -

DESCRIPTION

PIPERIDINE DERIVATIVE, PROCESS FOR PRODUCING THE SAME, AND USE

TECHNICAL FIELD

5 The present invention relates to a novel piperidine derivative having excellent antagonistic action for a tachykinin receptor, and a preparation method and use thereof.

BACKGROUND ART

10 Tachykinin is a generic term for a group of neuropeptides. Substance P (SP), neurokinin A and neurokinin B are known in mammals, and these peptides are known to bind to the corresponding receptors (neurokinin-1, neurokinin-2 and neurokinin-3) that exist in a living body and thereby to
15 exhibit various biological activities.

 Of such neuropeptides, SP has the longest history and has been studied in detail. In 1931, the existence of SP in the extract from equine intestines was confirmed, and in 1971, its structure was determined. SP is a peptide consisting of
20 11 amino acids.

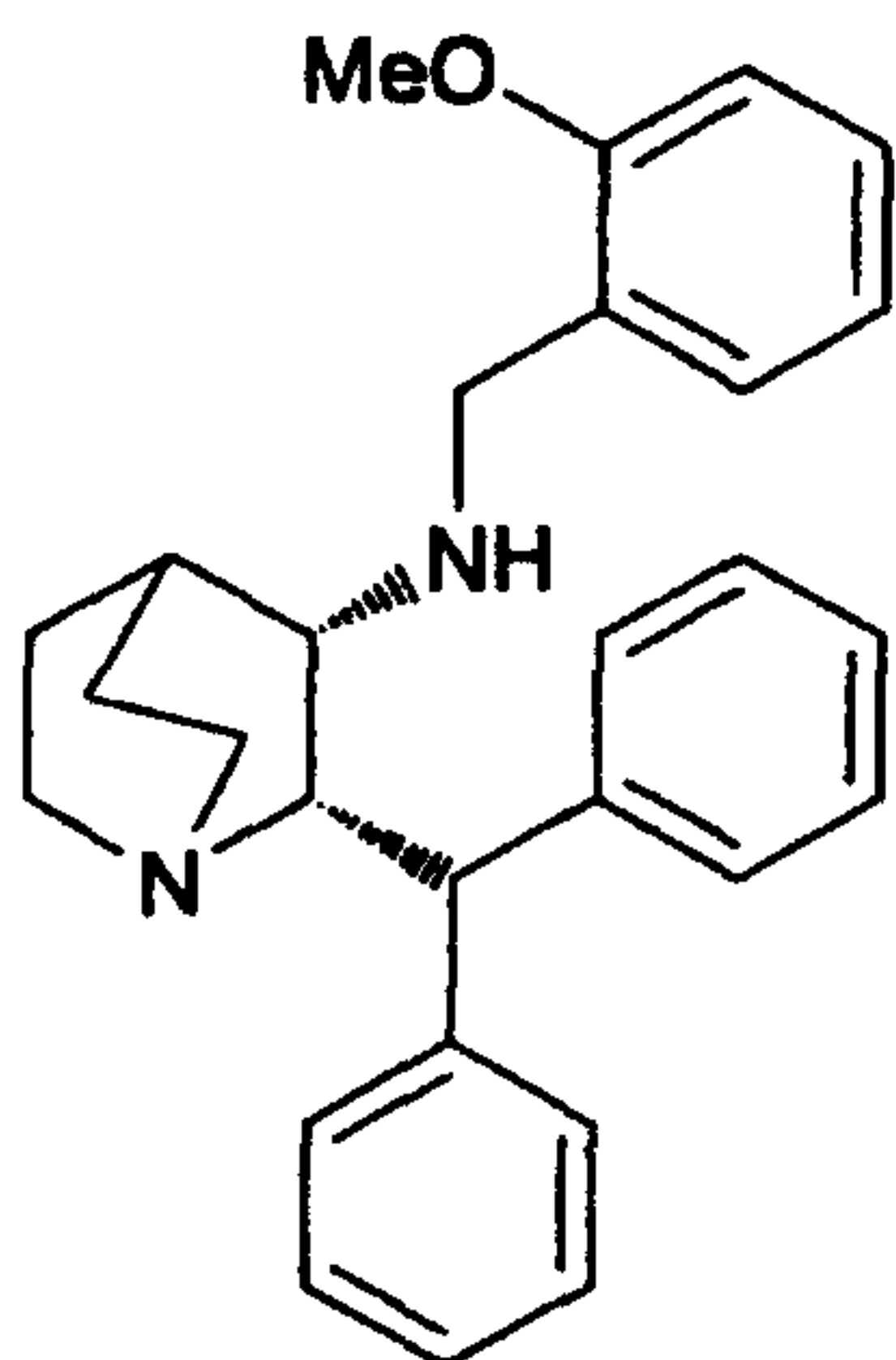
 SP is broadly distributed over the central and peripheral nervous systems, and has various physiological activities such as vasodilation, enhancement of vascular extravasation, contraction of smooth muscles, excitation of
25 neurons, salivation, enhancement of diuresis, immunological enhancement and the like, in addition to the function as a transmitter substance for primary sensory neurons. In particular, it is known that SP released from the terminal of the spinal (dorsal) horn due to a pain impulse transmits the
30 information of pain to secondary neurons, and that SP released from the peripheral terminal induces an inflammatory response in the receptor thereof. Thus, it is considered that SP is involved in various disorders (e.g., pain,

- 2 -

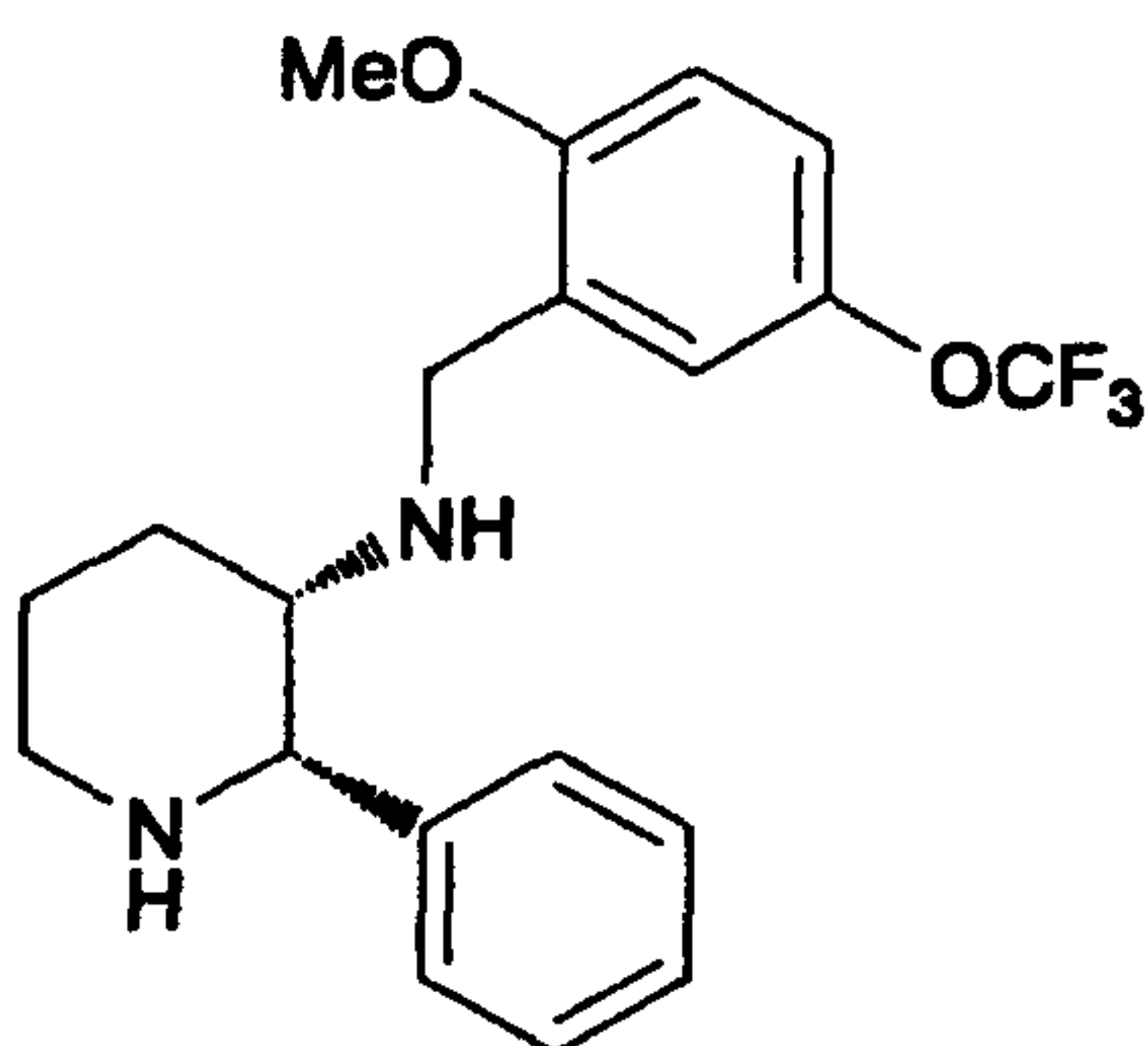
headache, particularly migraine, Alzheimer's disease, multiple sclerosis, cardiovascular modulation, chronic inflammatory diseases such as chronic rheumatic arthritis, respiratory diseases including asthma or allergic rhinitis, 5 intestinal inflammatory diseases including ulcerative colitis and Crohn's disease, ocular damage and ocular inflammatory diseases, proliferative vitreous retinopathy, irritable bowel syndrome, urinary frequency, psychosis, vomiting, etc.) [see a review article: Physiological Reviews, Vol. 73, pp. 229-308 10 (1993); Journal of Autonomic Pharmacology, Vol. 13, pp. 23-93 (1993)].

At present, the following compounds have been known as those having antagonistic action for SP receptors.

(1) In EP-A-436,334, disclosed are the compounds of a 15 formula:

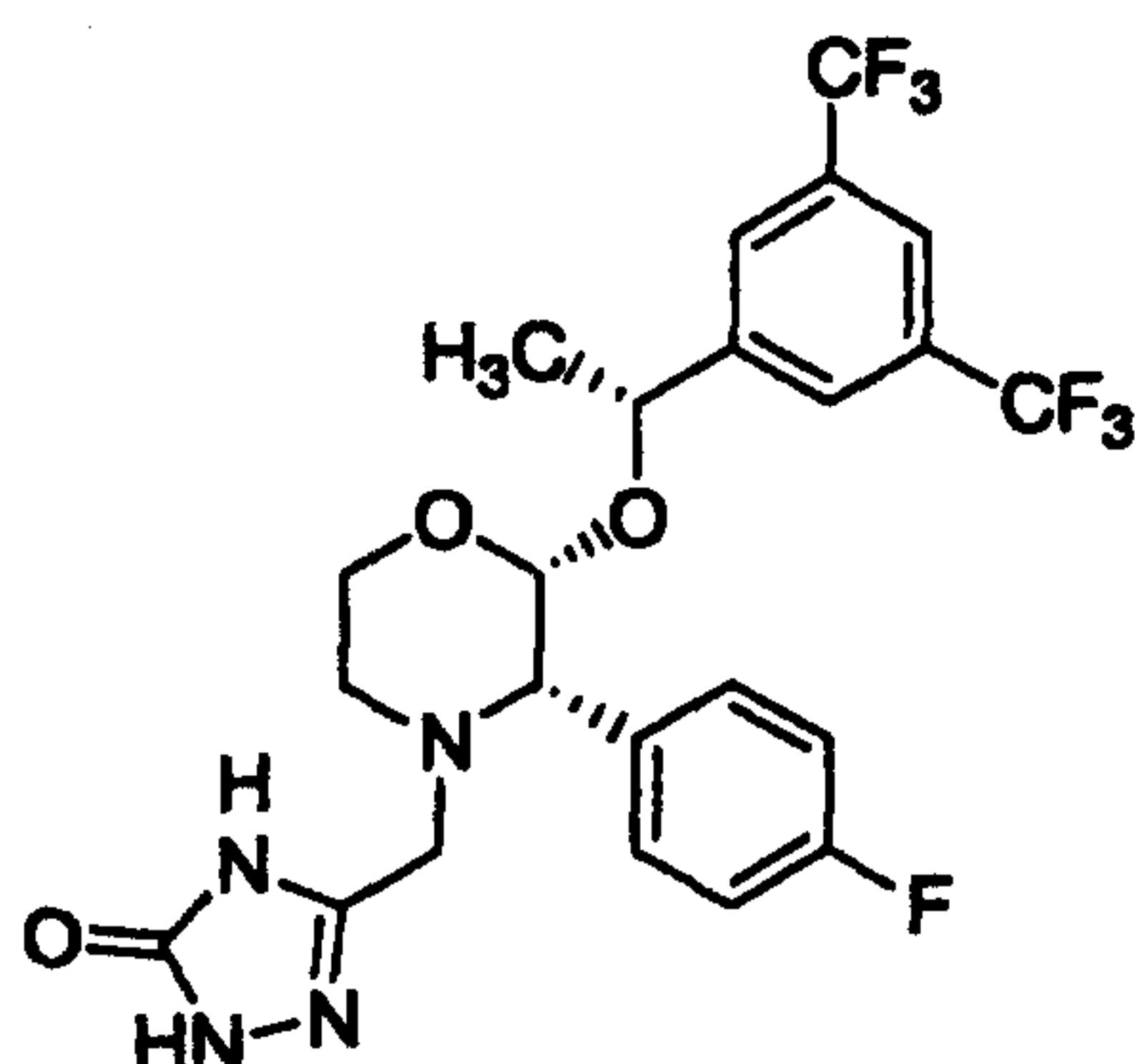


(2) in WO 92/17449, disclosed are the compounds of a formula:



20 (3) in WO 95/16679, disclosed are the compounds of a formula:

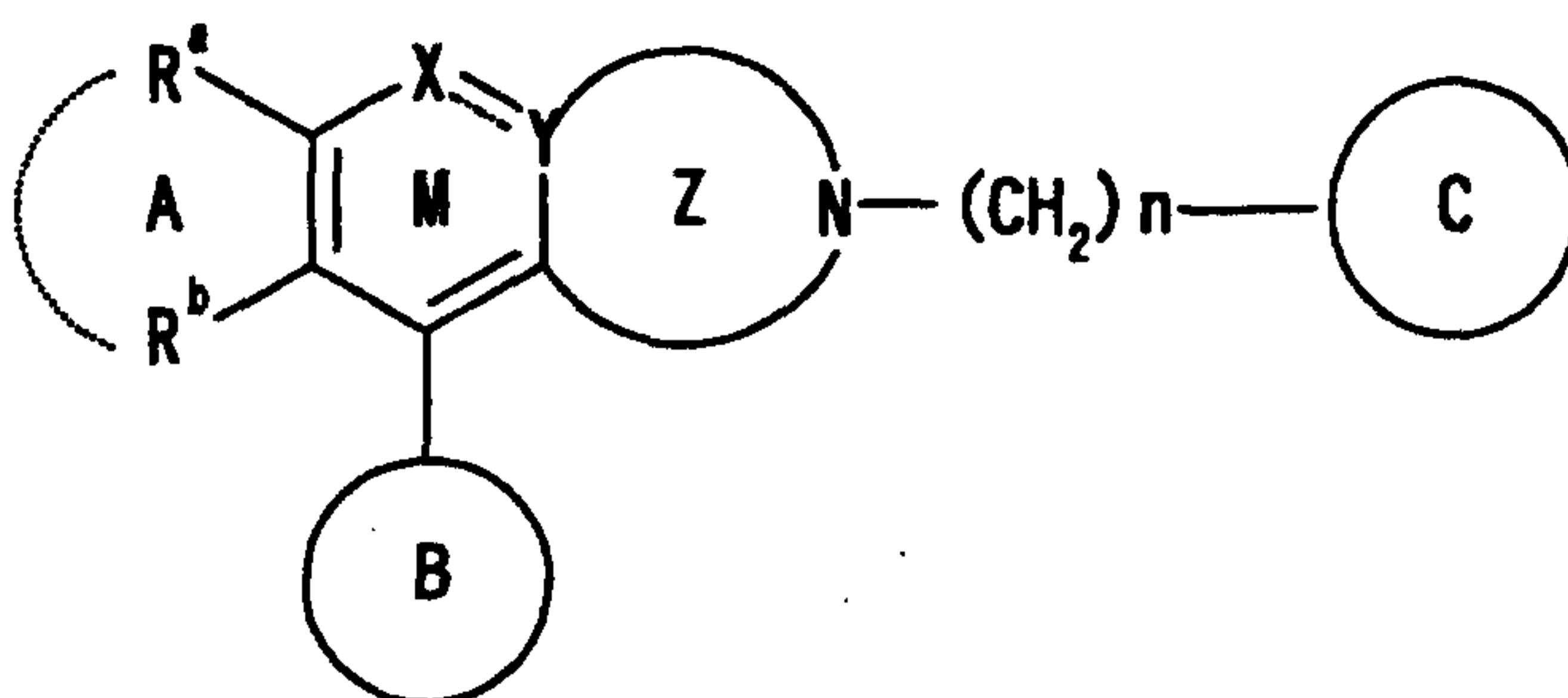
- 3 -



and

(4) in JP-A-9-263585, disclosed are the heterocyclic compounds represented by a formula:

5



wherein Ring M is a heterocycle having $-N=C<$, $-CO-N<$ or $-CS-N<$ as a partial structure of



10 ; R^a and R^b are bonded to each other to form Ring A, or they are the same or different and represent a hydrogen atom or a substituent in Ring M; Ring A and Ring B are optionally substituted homocyclic or heterocyclic rings, respectively and at least one of them is an optionally substituted
 15 heterocyclic ring; Ring C is an optionally substituted homocyclic or heterocyclic ring; Ring Z is an optionally substituted nitrogen-containing heterocyclic ring; and n is an integer of 1 to 6, or salts thereof.

An object of the present invention is to provide a
 20 piperidine derivative having antagonistic action for a tachykinin receptor, etc. with a different chemical structure from the known compounds including the above-mentioned

- 4 -

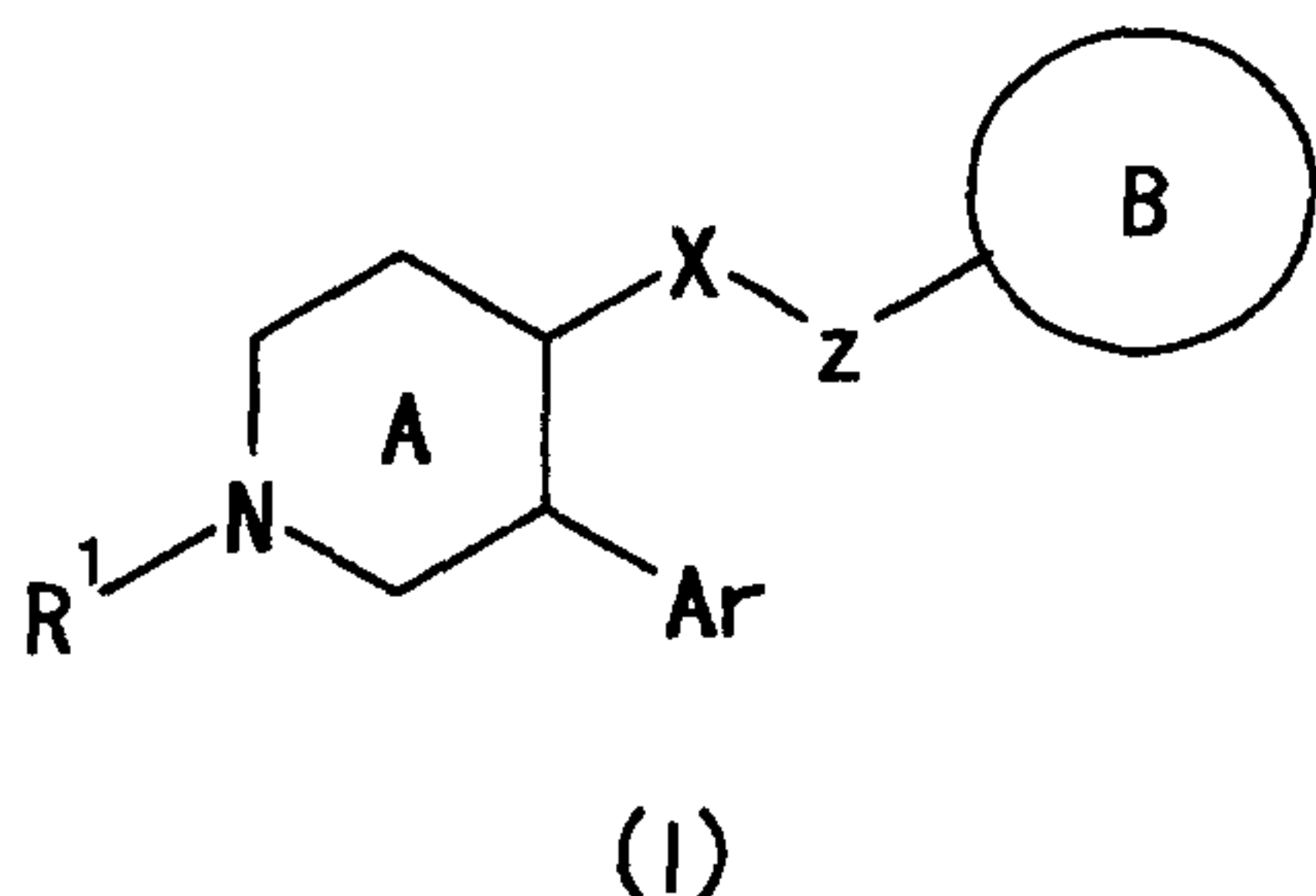
compounds, a method of preparing the compound, an agent for ameliorating abnormal micturition comprising the compound, and the like.

5 DISCLOSURE OF INVENTION

The present inventors have made extensive studies in consideration of the above-mentioned situation and, as a result, have found unexpectedly that piperidine derivatives represented by the formula (I) below or a salt thereof have
 10 excellent antagonistic action for a tachykinin receptor (particularly antagonistic action for a SP receptor) as based on their peculiar chemical structures and are sufficiently satisfactory as medicines. On the basis of these findings, the present inventors have completed the present invention.

15 Specifically, the present invention provides the following:

[1] a compound represented by the formula:



wherein Ar is an aryl group, an aralkyl group or an
 20 aromatic heterocyclic group, each of which may be substituted, R¹ is a hydrogen atom, an optionally substituted hydrocarbon group, an acyl group or an optionally substituted heterocyclic group, X is an oxygen atom or an optionally substituted imino group, Z is an optionally substituted
 25 methylene group, Ring A is a further optionally substituted piperidine ring, and Ring B is an optionally substituted aromatic ring, provided that when Z is a methylene group substituted with an oxo group, R¹ is not a methyl group, and when Z is a methylene group substituted with a methyl group,
 30 Ring B is a substituted aromatic ring, or a salt thereof;

- 5 -

[2] the compound as described in [1], wherein Ar is a phenyl group or a benzhydryl group, each of which may be substituted;

[3] the compound as described in [1], wherein R¹ is a
5 hydrogen atom or an acyl group;

[4] the compound as described in [1], wherein Z is a methylene group optionally substituted with (i) an optionally substituted lower alkyl group or (ii) an oxo group, and Ring B is an optionally substituted benzene ring;

10 [5] the compound as described in [1], wherein Ar is a phenyl group, a benzhydryl group or a benzyl group, each of which optionally has 1 to 4 substituents selected from (A) a halogen atom, (B) a C₁₋₆ alkyl group, and (C) a heterocyclic group,

15 R¹ is (1) a hydrogen atom,

(2) a hydrocarbon group optionally having 1 to 3 substituents selected from (i) a C₁₋₆ alkoxy group, (ii) a C₁₋₆ alkoxy-carbonyl group, (iii) a carbamoyl group, (iv) a cyano group, (v) a C₁₋₆ alkylthio group, or (vi) a heterocyclic
20 group optionally substituted with 1 or 2 oxo groups and optionally fused with a benzene ring,

(3) an acyl group represented by the formula: -(C=O)-Ra, -(C=S)-Ra, -SO₂-Ra, -SO₂-NRaRa', -(C=O)NRaRa' or -(C=O)O-Ra wherein Ra is (A) a hydrogen atom or

25 (B) (a) a hydrocarbon group or (b) a heterocyclic group, each of which may be substituted with 1 to 2 substituents selected from (i) a halogen atom,

(ii) a C₁₋₆ alkyl group optionally substituted with a heterocyclic group, C₁₋₆ alkanoyl or C₆₋₁₄ aryl-carbonyl,

30 (iii) a C₁₋₆ alkoxy group,

(iv) an amino group,

(v) a mono- or di-C₁₋₆ alkylamino group,

(vi) a C₁₋₆ alkanoylamino group,

(vii) a N-C₁₋₆ alkyl-N'-C₁₋₆ alkanoylamino group,

35 (viii) a C₁₋₆ alkoxy-carbonyl group,

- 6 -

(ix) a C₁₋₆ alkanoyl group optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkoxy, mono- or di-C₁₋₆ alkylamino, halogeno C₁₋₆ alkyl or a halogen atom,

(x) a C₆₋₁₄ aryl-carbonyl group,

5 (xi) a C₇₋₁₉ aralkyl-carbonyl group,

(xii) a C₃₋₆ cycloalkyl-carbonyl group,

(xiii) a heterocyclic-carbonyl group,

(xiv) a hydroxy group,

(xv) a C₇₋₁₉ aralkyloxy group,

10 (xvi) a C₃₋₆ cycloalkyloxy group,

(xvii) a C₁₋₆ alkoxy-C₁₋₆ alkoxy group,

(xviii) a carbamoyl group,

(xix) a mono- or di-C₁₋₆ alkylcarbamoyl group,

(xx) a C₁₋₆ alkylsulfonyl group,

15 (xxi) a mono- or di-C₁₋₆ alkylaminosulfonyl group,

(xxii) a formyl group,

(xxiii) a formylamino group,

(xxiv) an oxo group, and

(xxv) a heterocyclic group optionally having 1 or 2
20 substituents selected from C₁₋₆ alkanoyl and C₁₋₆ alkoxy-C₁₋₆ alkanoyl, and

Ra' is a hydrogen atom or a C₁₋₆ alkyl group, or

(4) a heterocyclic group optionally having 1 or 2
substituents selected from a C₁₋₆ alkyl group and an oxo group,

25 X is O or NH,

Z is a methylene group, and

Ring B is a benzene ring optionally having 1 or 2
substituents selected from (i) a heterocyclic group
optionally substituted with an optionally halogenated C₁₋₆
30 alkyl group or a C₁₋₆ alkylthio group, (ii) an optionally
halogenated C₁₋₆ alkyl group, (iii) an optionally halogenated
C₁₋₆ alkoxy group, (iv) a halogen atom, (v) nitro, (vi) a C₆₋₁₄
aryl group optionally substituted with optionally halogenated
C₁₋₆ alkyl, (vii) an optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkylamino
35 group, (viii) a cyano group, and (ix) a C₃₋₆ cycloalkyloxy,

- 7 -

and optionally fused with a non-aromatic heterocyclic ring or a benzene ring;

[6] the compound as described in [1], wherein Ar is a phenyl group,

5 R^1 is $-(C=O)-Rb$ or $-(C=O)NRbRb'$ (Rb is (1) a hydrocarbon group or (2) a heterocyclic group, each of which optionally has a substituent selected from (i) hydroxy, (ii) C_{1-6} alkoxy, (iii) C_{1-6} alkanoyl, (iv) C_{1-6} alkylsulfonyl, (v) amino, (vi) mono- or di- C_{1-6} alkylamino, (vii) C_{1-6} alkanoylamino or (viii) a heterocyclic group optionally substituted with 1 or 2 oxo groups, and Rb' is a hydrogen atom or a C_{1-6} alkyl group.),

X is O or NH,

Z is a methylene group,

15 Ring B is a benzene ring optionally having 1 or 2 substituents selected from (i) a heterocyclic group optionally substituted with an optionally halogenated C_{1-6} alkyl group, (ii) an optionally halogenated C_{1-6} alkyl group and (iii) an optionally halogenated C_{1-6} alkoxy group, and
20 optionally fused with a non-aromatic heterocyclic ring;

[7] cis-4-((3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl)oxy)-N-methyl-3-phenyl-1-piperidinecarboxamide,

cis-1-((1-acetyl-4-piperidinyl)carbonyl)-4-((3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl)oxy)-3-phenylpiperidine,

25 cis-N-ethyl-4-((2-methoxy-5-(trifluoromethoxy)benzyl)amino)-3-phenyl-1-piperidinecarboxamide,

cis-N-methyl-3-phenyl-4-(((5-(5-(trifluoromethyl)-1H-tetrazol-1-yl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzofuran-7-yl)methyl)amino)-1-
30 piperidinecarboxamide,

cis-N-ethyl-3-phenyl-4-(((5-(5-(trifluoromethyl)-1H-tetrazol-1-yl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzofuran-7-yl)methyl)amino)-1-piperidinecarboxamide,

cis-1-((1-acetyl-4-piperidinyl)carbonyl)-3-phenyl-N-
35 ((5-(5-(trifluoromethyl)-1H-tetrazol-1-yl)-2,3-dihydro-1-

benzofuran-7-yl)methyl)-4-piperidineamine,

cis-4-((2-methoxy-5-(5-(trifluoromethyl)-1H-tetrazol-1-yl)benzyl)amino)-N-methyl-3-phenyl-1-piperidinecarboxamide,

cis-N-ethyl-4-((2-methoxy-5-(5-(trifluoromethyl)-1H-tetrazol-1-yl)benzyl)amino)-3-phenyl-1-piperidinecarboxamide,

cis-1-(methoxyacetyl)-N-(2-methoxy-5-(5-(trifluoromethyl)-1H-tetrazol-1-yl)benzyl)-3-phenyl-4-piperidineamine,

cis-1-((1-acetyl-4-piperidinyl)carbonyl)-N-(2-methoxy-5-(5-(trifluoromethyl)-1H-tetrazol-1-yl)benzyl)-3-phenyl-4-piperidineamine,

cis-N-(2-((-4-((2-methoxy-5-(5-(trifluoromethyl)-1H-tetrazol-1-yl)benzyl)amino)-3-phenyl-1-piperidinyl)-2-oxoethyl)acetamide,

cis-N-(2-methoxy-5-(5-(trifluoromethyl)-1H-tetrazol-1-yl)benzyl)-1-((1-(methylsulfonyl)-4-piperidinyl)carbonyl)-3-phenyl-4-piperidineamine,

cis-N-(2-methoxy-5-(5-(trifluoromethyl)-1H-tetrazol-1-yl)benzyl)-3-phenyl-1-(1H-tetrazol-1-ylacetyl)-4-

piperidineamine,

cis-2-(4-((2-methoxy-5-(5-(trifluoromethyl)-1H-tetrazol-1-yl)benzyl)amino)-3-phenyl-1-piperidinyl)-2-oxoethanol,

cis-N-(3-(4-((2-methoxy-5-(5-(trifluoromethyl)-1H-tetrazol-1-yl)benzyl)amino)-3-phenyl-1-piperidinyl)-3-oxopropyl)acetamide,

cis-1-acetyl-N-(2-methoxy-5-(5-(trifluoromethyl)-1H-tetrazol-1-yl)benzyl)-3-phenyl-4-piperidineamine,

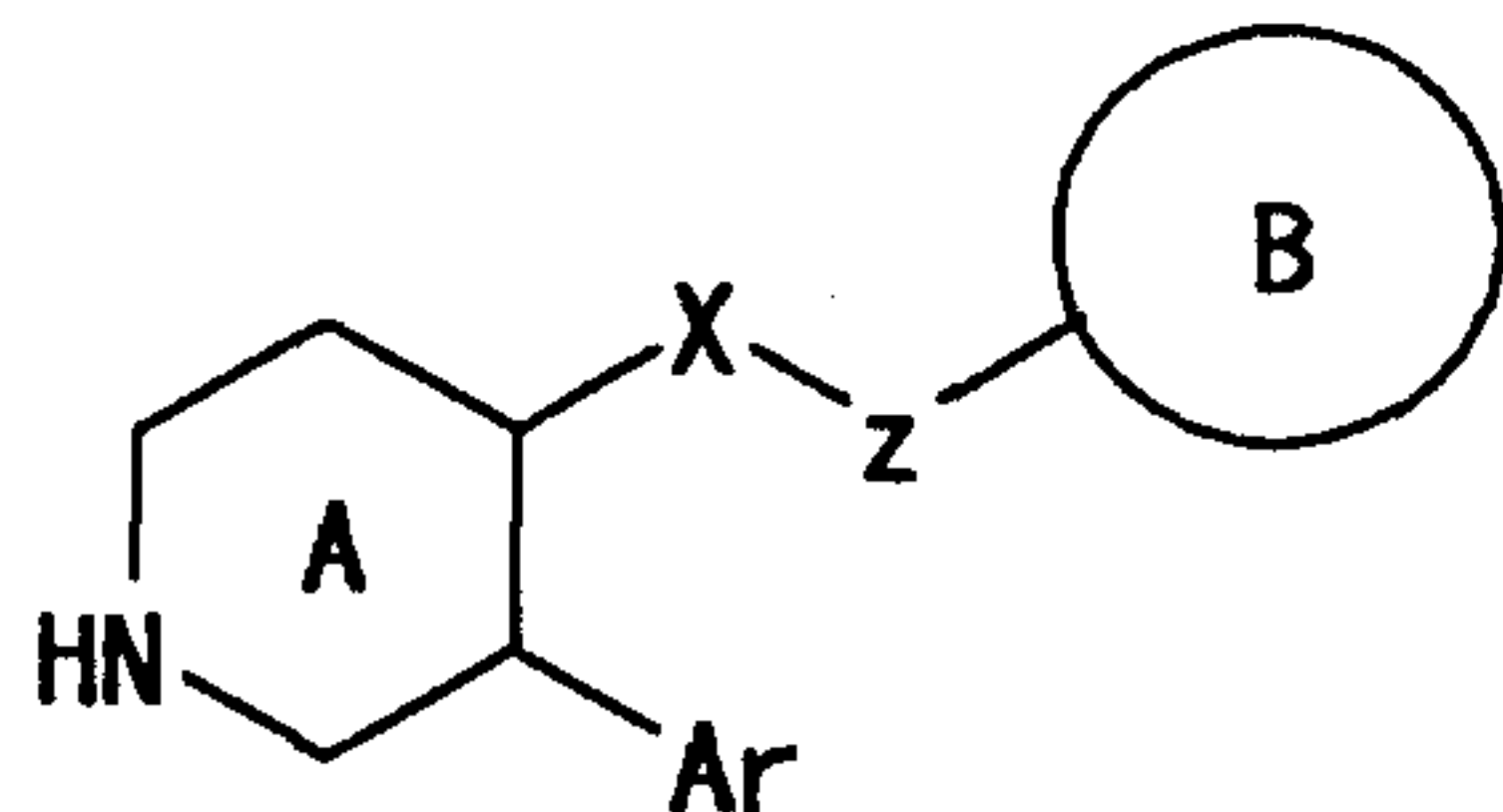
cis-N-(2-methoxy-5-(5-(trifluoromethyl)-1H-tetrazol-1-yl)benzyl)-1-((methylsulfonyl)acetyl)-3-phenyl-4-piperidineamine, or

cis-1-(2-(4-((2-methoxy-5-(5-(trifluoromethyl)-1H-tetrazol-1-yl)benzyl)amino)-3-phenyl-1-piperidinyl)-2-oxoethyl)-2,5-pyrrolidinedione, or a salt thereof;

[8] a prodrug of the compound as described in [1];

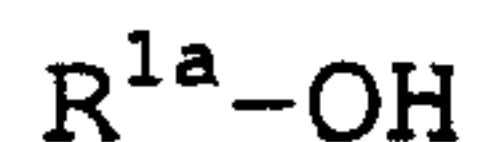
- 9 -

[9] a method of preparing the compound as described in [1], which comprises subjecting a compound represented by the formula:



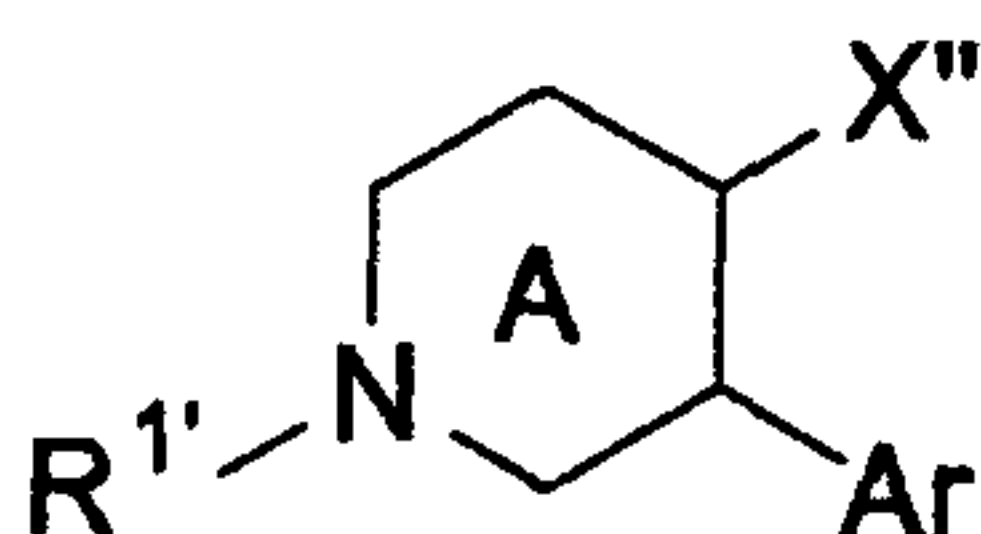
(Ia)

5 wherein each symbol has the same meanings as defined above, or a salt thereof to a reaction with a compound represented by the formula:



10 wherein R^{1a} is an optionally substituted hydrocarbon group, an acyl group or an optionally substituted heterocyclic group, a salt thereof or a reactive derivative thereof, and if desired, to deacylation or dealkylation;

[10] a compound represented by the formula:

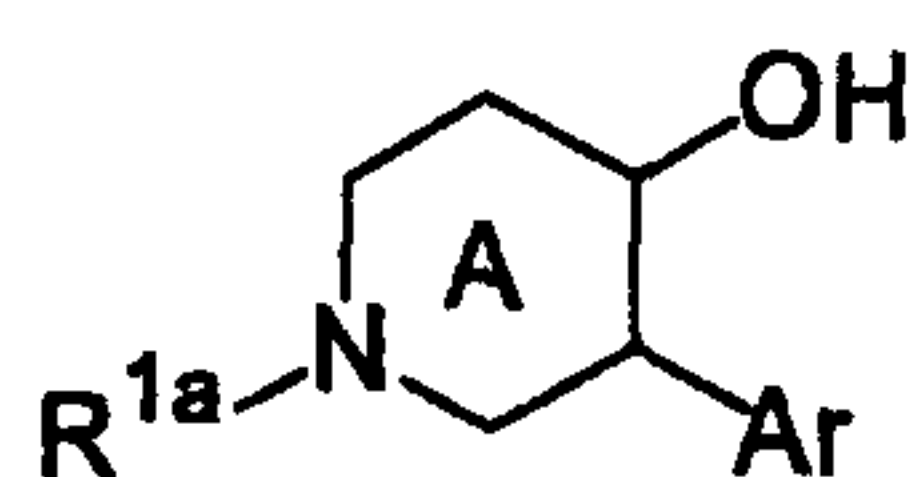


(II)

15 wherein $R^{1'}$ is an acyl group or an optionally substituted heterocyclic group, X'' is a hydroxy group or an amino group, and other symbols have the same meanings as defined above, provided that when X'' is a hydroxy group, $R^{1'}$ is neither an ethoxycarbonyl group nor a cyclopropylcarbonyl
20 group, or a salt thereof;

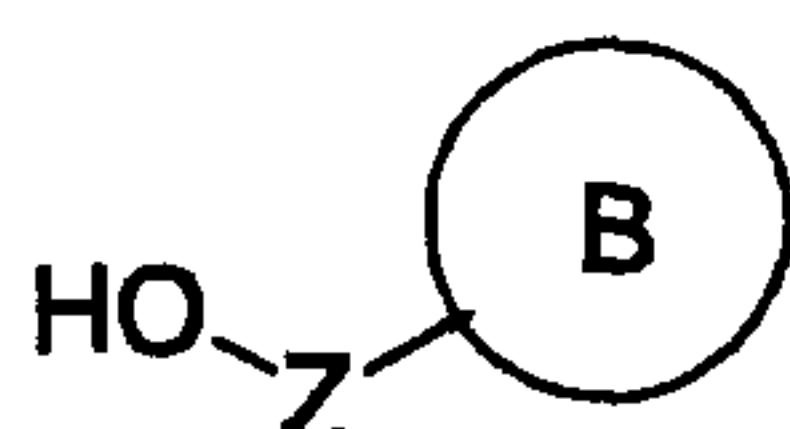
[11] a method of preparing the compound as described in [1], which comprises subjecting a compound represented by the formula:

- 10 -



(IIa)

wherein each symbol has the same meanings as defined above, or a salt thereof to a reaction with a compound represented by the formula:

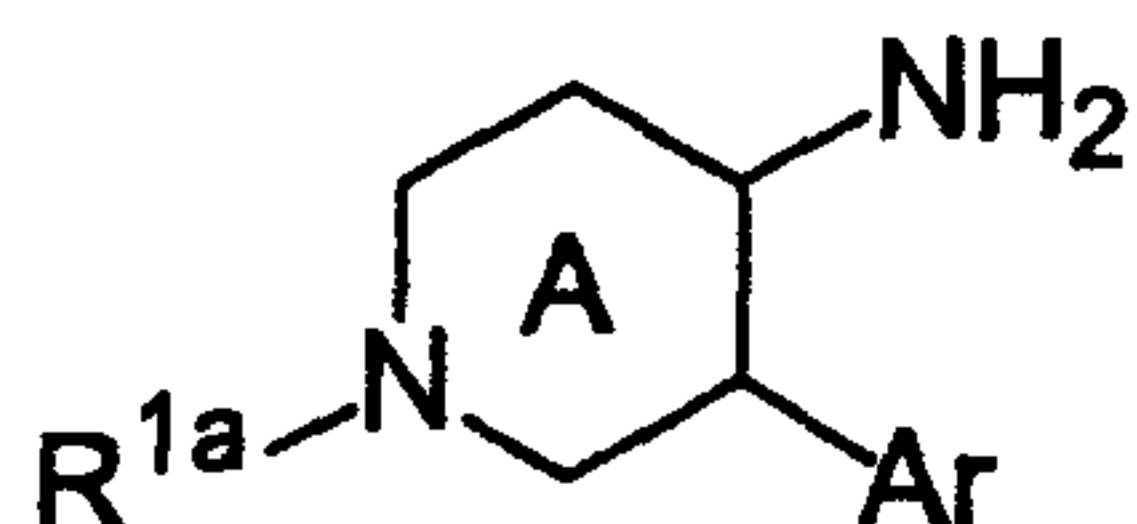


(III)

5

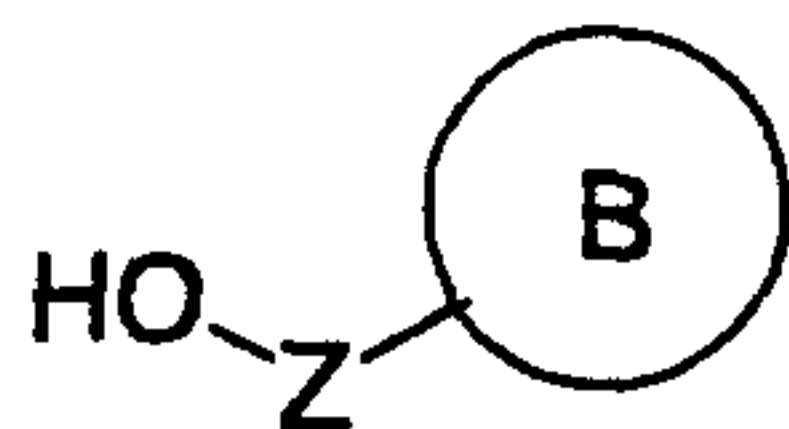
wherein each symbol has the same meanings as defined above, a salt thereof or a reactive derivative thereof, and if desired, to deacylation or dealkylation;

[12] a method of preparing the compound as described in
10 [1], which comprises subjecting a compound represented by the formula:



(IIb)

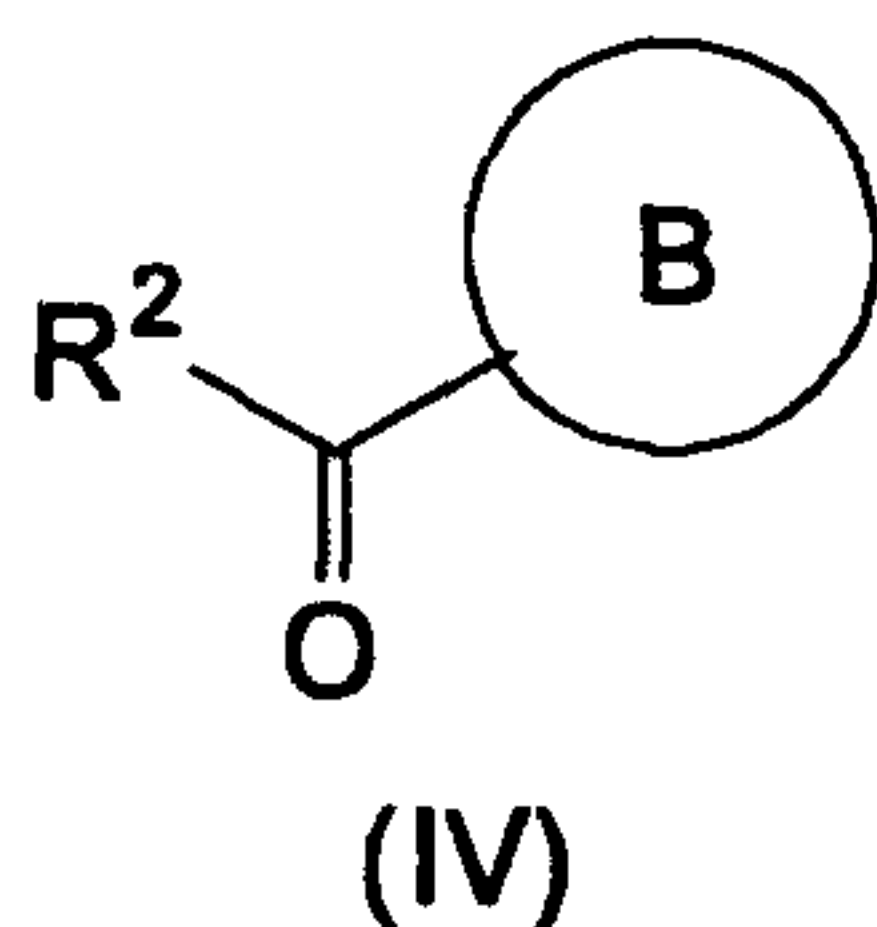
wherein each symbol has the same meanings as defined above, or a salt thereof to a reaction with a compound
15 represented by the formula:



(III)

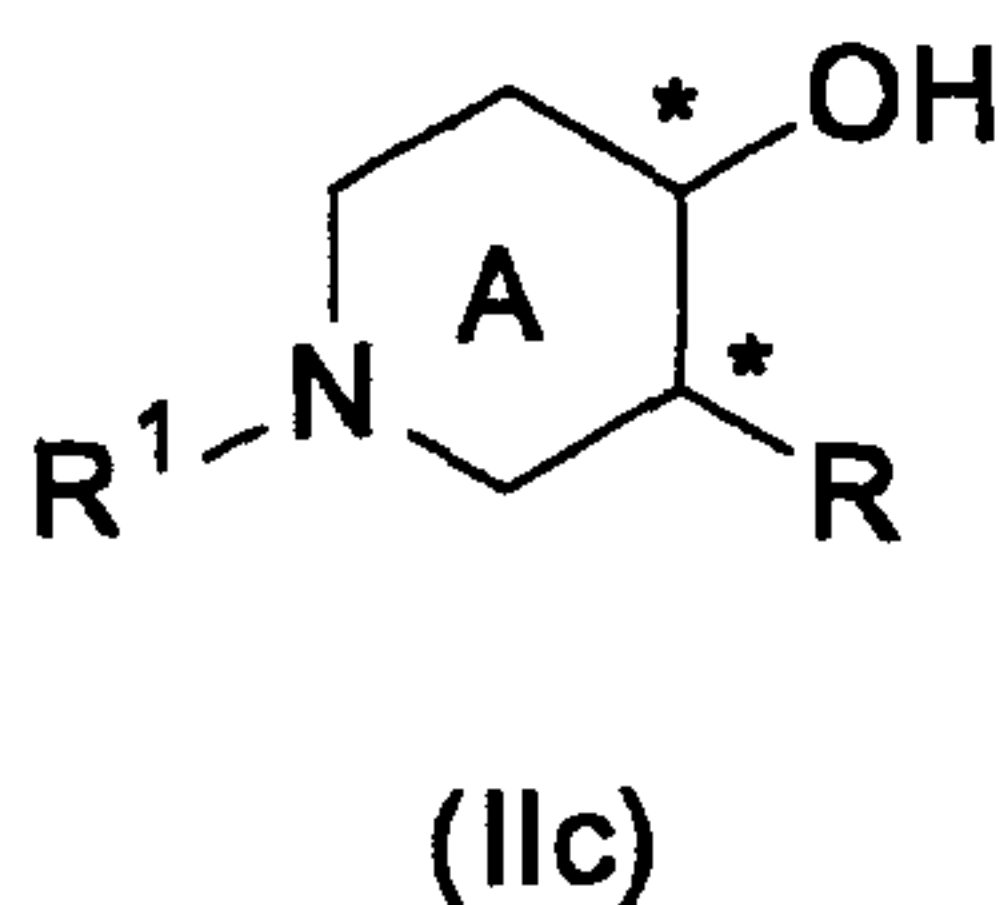
wherein each symbol has the same meanings as defined above, a salt thereof or a reactive derivative thereof, or
subjecting Compound (IIb) to a reaction with a compound
20 represented by the formula:

- 11 -

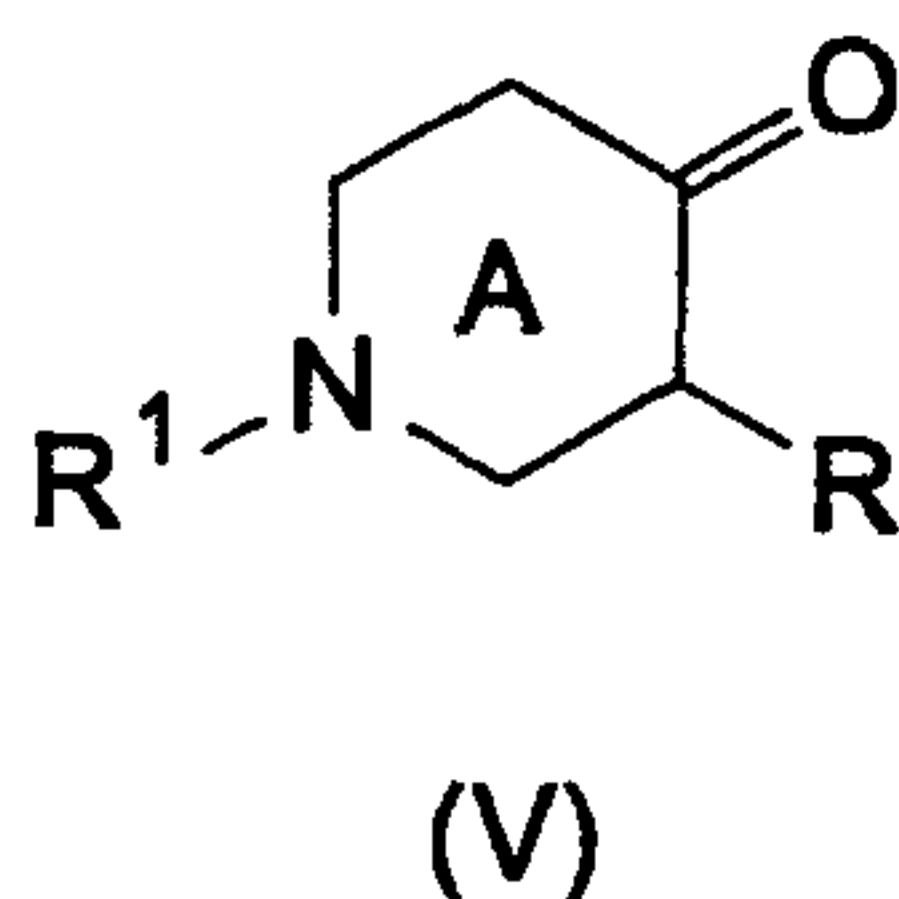


wherein R² is a hydrogen atom or an optionally substituted hydrocarbon group, and Ring B has the same meaning as defined above, in the presence of a reducing agent, and if desired, to deacylation or dealkylation;

[13] a method of preparing optically active alcohol represented by the formula:



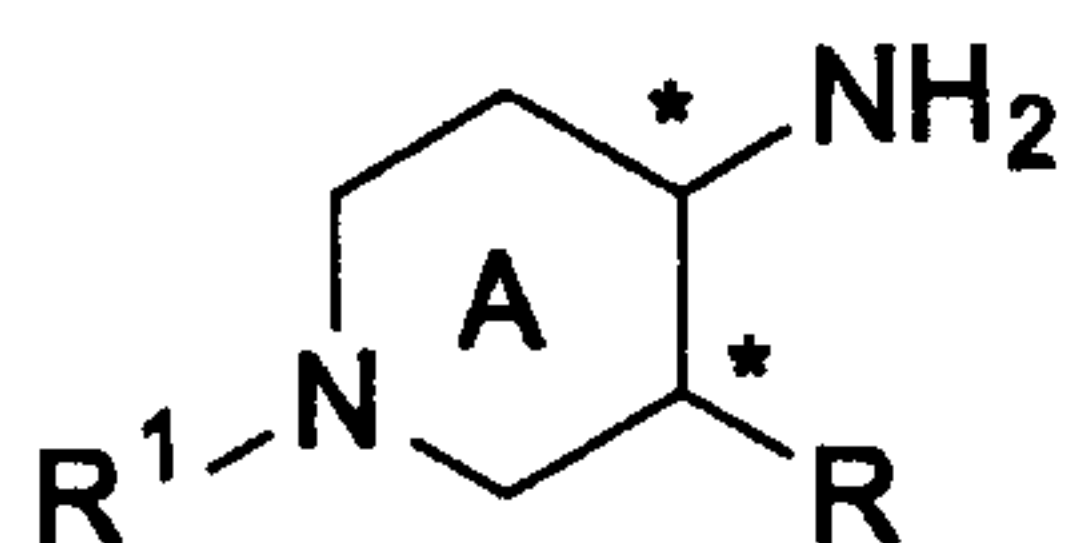
wherein R is an optionally substituted hydrocarbon group or an optionally substituted heterocyclic group, * is a chiral center, and other symbols have the same meanings as defined above. OH and R have a cis configuration relationship, or a salt thereof, which comprises subjecting a compound represented by the formula:



wherein each symbol has the same meanings as defined above, or a salt thereof to hydrogenation, in the presence of an optically active ruthenium-phosphine-amine complex and a base;

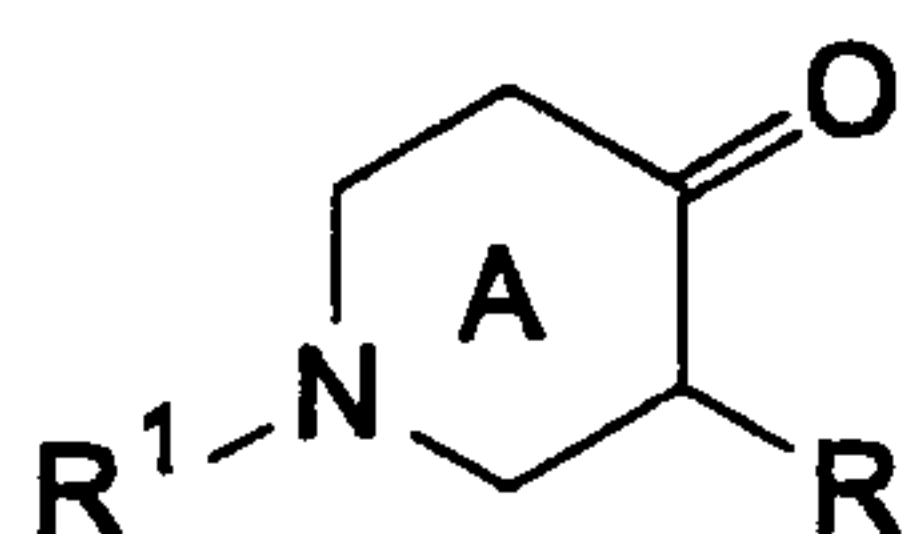
[14] a method of preparing optically active amine represented by the formula:

- 12 -



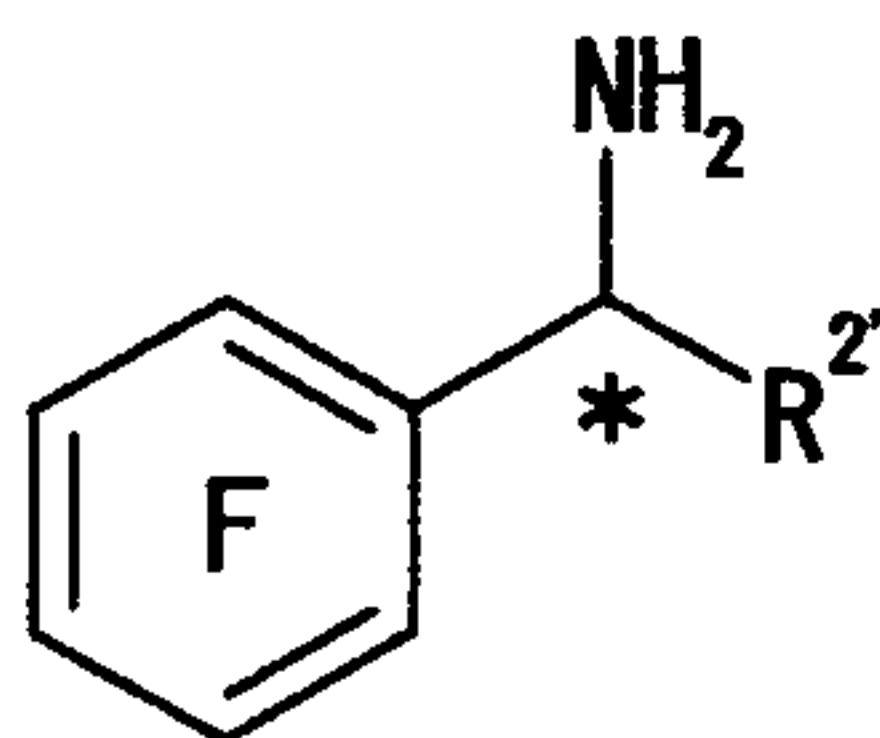
(IId)

wherein * is a chiral center and other symbols have the same meanings as defined above, NH₂ and R have a cis configuration relationship, or a salt thereof, which
 5 comprises subjecting a compound represented by the formula:



(V)

wherein each symbol has the same meanings as defined above, or a salt thereof, to condensation with an optically active compound represented by the formula:



(VI)

10

wherein Ring F is an optionally substituted, optionally fused benzene ring and R^{2'} is an optionally substituted hydrocarbon group, and other symbols have the same meanings as defined above, or a salt thereof, followed by
 15 hydrogenation and further hydrogenolysis;

[15] a medicament comprising the compound as described in [1] or a prodrug thereof;

[16] the medicament as described in [15], which is a tachykinin receptor antagonist;

20

[17] the medicament as described in [15], which is an agent for preventing and/or treating abnormality of lower urinary tract function, digestive organ diseases, inflammatory or allergic diseases, arthropathy and/or

- 13 -

osteopathy, respiratory diseases, infection, cancer, central
nerve diseases, circulatory diseases, pain, autoimmune
diseases, hepatic diseases, pancreatic diseases, renal
diseases, metabolic diseases, endocrine diseases, graft
5 rejection, abnormality in characteristic of blood and/or
blood components, gynecologic diseases, dermatic diseases,
ophthalmic diseases, otolaryngological diseases, diseases due
to environmental and/or occupational factors, ataxia or
chronic fatigue syndrome;

10 [18] the medicament as described in [15], which is an
agent for preventing and/or treating urinary frequency and/or
urinary incontinence;

[19] a method of preventing and/or treating abnormality
of lower urinary tract function, digestive organ diseases,
15 inflammatory or allergic diseases, arthropathy and/or
osteopathy, respiratory diseases, infection, cancer, central
nerve diseases, circulatory diseases, pain, autoimmune
diseases, hepatic diseases, pancreatic diseases, renal
diseases, metabolic diseases, endocrine diseases, graft
20 rejection, abnormality in characteristic of blood and/or
blood components, gynecologic diseases, dermatic diseases,
ophthalmic diseases, otolaryngological diseases, diseases due
to environmental and/or occupational factors, ataxia or
chronic fatigue syndrome, which comprises administering an
25 effective amount of the compound as described in [1] or a
prodrug thereof to a mammal; and

[20] use of the compound as described in [1] or a
prodrug thereof for manufacturing an agent for preventing
and/or treating abnormality of lower urinary tract function,
30 digestive organ diseases, inflammatory or allergic diseases,
arthropathy and/or osteopathy, respiratory diseases,
infection, cancer, central nerve diseases, circulatory
diseases, pain, autoimmune diseases, hepatic diseases,
pancreatic diseases, renal diseases, metabolic diseases,
35 endocrine diseases, graft rejection, abnormality in

- 14 -

characteristic of blood and/or blood components, gynecologic diseases, dermatic diseases, ophthalmic diseases, otolaryngological diseases, diseases due to environmental and/or occupational factors, ataxia or chronic fatigue syndrome.

Ar is an aryl group, an aralkyl group or an aromatic heterocyclic group, each of which may be substituted.

The "aryl group" includes, for example, a C₆₋₁₄ aryl group such as phenyl, naphthyl, anthryl, phenanthryl, etc., preferably, phenyl.

The "aralkyl group" includes, for example, a C₇₋₁₉ aralkyl group such as benzyl, naphthylethyl, benzhydryl, trityl, etc., preferably, benzyl or benzhydryl.

The "aromatic heterocyclic group" includes, for example, a 5- or 6-membered aromatic heterocyclic group having 1 to 4 hetero atoms of one or two kinds selected from a nitrogen atom, an oxygen atom and a sulfur atom in addition to carbon atoms (e.g., furyl, thienyl, pyridyl, imidazolyl, thiazolyl, oxazolyl, thiadiazolyl, triazolyl, tetrazolyl, etc.) and the like.

The substituent in the "aryl group", the "aralkyl group" and the "aromatic heterocyclic group" includes, for example, 1 to 3 substituents selected from (1) a halogen atom (e.g., fluorine, chlorine, bromine, iodine, etc.), (2) C₁₋₃ alkylenedioxy (e.g., methylenedioxy, ethylenedioxy, etc.), (3) nitro, (4) cyano, (5) optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkyl, (6) optionally halogenated C₂₋₆ alkenyl, (7) optionally halogenated C₂₋₆ alkynyl, (8) optionally halogenated C₃₋₆ cycloalkyl, (9) C₆₋₁₄ aryl (e.g., phenyl, 1-naphthyl, 2-naphthyl, biphenyl, 2-anthryl, etc.), (10) optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkoxy, (11) optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkylthio or mercapto, (12) hydroxy, (13) amino, (14) mono-C₁₋₆ alkylamino (e.g., methylamino, ethylamino, etc.), (15) mono-C₆₋₁₄ arylamino (e.g., phenylamino, 1-naphthylamino, 2-

- 15 -

naphthylamino, etc.), (16) di-C₁₋₆ alkylamino (e.g., dimethylamino, diethylamino, etc.), (17) di-C₆₋₁₄ arylamino (e.g., diphenylamino, etc.), (18) acyl, (19) acylamino, (20) acyloxy, (21) optionally substituted 5- to 7-membered
5 saturated cyclic amino, (22) a 5- to 10-membered aromatic heterocyclic group (e.g., 2- or 3-thienyl, 2-, 3- or 4-pyridyl, 2-, 3-, 4-, 5- or 8-quinolyl, 1-, 3-, 4- or 5-isoquinolyl, 1-, 2- or 3-indolyl, 2-benzothiazolyl, 2-benzo[b]thienyl, benzo[b]furanyl, etc.), (23) sulfo, (24) C₆₋₁₄ aryloxy (e.g., phenyloxy, naphthyloxy, etc.) and the like.

The "optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkyl" includes, for example, C₁₋₆ alkyl (e.g., methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl, butyl, isobutyl, sec-butyl, tert-butyl, pentyl, hexyl, etc.), optionally having 1 to 5, preferably 1 to 3 halogen atoms
15 (e.g., fluorine, chlorine, bromine, iodine, etc.) and the like, specifically, methyl, chloromethyl, difluoromethyl, trichloromethyl, trifluoromethyl, ethyl, 2-bromoethyl, 2,2,2-trifluoroethyl, pentafluoroethyl, propyl, 3,3,3-trifluoropropyl, isopropyl, butyl, 4,4,4-trifluorobutyl,
20 isobutyl, sec-butyl, tert-butyl, pentyl, isopentyl, neopentyl, 5,5,5-trifluoropentyl, hexyl, 6,6,6-trifluorohexyl, etc.

The "optionally halogenated C₂₋₆ alkenyl" includes, for example, C₂₋₆ alkenyl (e.g., vinyl, allyl, isopropenyl, butenyl, isobutenyl, sec-butenyl, etc.) optionally having 1
25 to 5, preferably 1 to 3 halogen atoms (e.g., fluorine, chlorine, bromine, iodine, etc.) and the like, specifically, vinyl, allyl, isopropenyl, butenyl, isobutenyl, sec-butenyl, 3,3,3-trifluoro-1-propenyl, 4,4,4-trifluoro-1-butenyl, etc.

The "optionally halogenated C₂₋₆ alkynyl" includes, for
30 example, C₂₋₆ alkynyl (e.g., ethynyl, propargyl, butynyl, 1-hexynyl, etc.) optionally having 1 to 5, preferably 1 to 3 halogen atoms (e.g., fluorine, chlorine, bromine, iodine, etc.) and the like, specifically, ethynyl, propargyl, butynyl, 1-hexynyl, 3,3,3-trifluoro-1-propynyl, 4,4,4-trifluoro-1-
35 butynyl, etc.

- 16 -

The "optionally halogenated C₃₋₆ cycloalkyl" includes, for example, C₃₋₆ cycloalkyl (e.g., cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl, etc.) optionally having 1 to 5, preferably 1 to 3 halogen atoms (e.g., fluorine, chlorine, bromine, iodine, etc.) and the like, specifically, cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl, 4,4-dichlorocyclohexyl, 2,2,3,3-tetrafluorocyclopentyl, 4-chlorocyclohexyl, etc.

The "optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkoxy" includes, for example, C₁₋₆ alkoxy (e.g., methoxy, ethoxy, propoxy, isopropoxy, butoxy, isobutoxy, sec-butoxy, pentyloxy, hexyloxy, etc.) optionally having 1 to 5, preferably 1 to 3 halogen atoms (e.g., fluorine, chlorine, bromine, iodine, etc.) and the like, specifically, methoxy, difluoromethoxy, trifluoromethoxy, ethoxy, 2,2,2-trifluoroethoxy, propoxy, isopropoxy, butoxy, 4,4,4-trifluorobutoxy, isobutoxy, sec-butoxy, pentyloxy, hexyloxy, etc.

The "optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkylthio" includes, for example, C₁₋₆ alkylthio (e.g., methylthio, ethylthio, propylthio, isopropylthio, butylthio, sec-butylthio, tert-butylthio, etc.) optionally having 1 to 5, preferably 1 to 3 halogen atoms (e.g., fluorine, chlorine, bromine, iodine, etc.) and the like, specifically, methylthio, difluoromethylthio, trifluoromethylthio, ethylthio, propylthio, isopropylthio, butylthio, 4,4,4-trifluorobutylthio, pentylthio, hexylthio, etc.

The "acyl" includes, for example, $-(C=O)-R^3$, $-(C=S)-R^3$, $-SO_2-R^3$, $-SO-R^3$, $-(P=O)(OR^4)(OR^{4'})$ (R^3 is a hydrogen atom, an optionally substituted hydrocarbon group, an optionally substituted amino group, an optionally substituted hydroxy group or an optionally substituted heterocyclic group, and R^4 and $R^{4'}$ are the same or different and represents a hydrogen atom or an optionally substituted hydrocarbon group) and the like.

The "optionally substituted hydrocarbon group"

- 17 -

represented by R^3 , R^4 and R^4' includes, for example, the same group as those referred to herein for the "optionally substituted hydrocarbon group" represented by R^1 which will be described below.

5 The "substituent" in the "optionally substituted amino group" represented by R^3 includes, for example, an optionally substituted hydrocarbon group, an optionally substituted hydroxy group, an acyl group and the like.

10 The "optionally substituted hydrocarbon group" as the "substituent" in the "optionally substituted amino group" represented by R^3 includes, for example, the same group as those referred to herein for the "optionally substituted hydrocarbon group" represented by R^1 which will be described below.

15 The "optionally substituted hydroxy group" as the "substituent" in the "optionally substituted amino group" represented by R^3 includes, for example, (i) a hydroxy group, (ii) a C_{1-6} alkoxy group (e.g., a methoxy group, an ethoxy group, a propoxy group, an isopropoxy group, a butoxy group, 20 a t-butoxy group, etc.), (iii) a C_{6-14} aryloxy group (e.g., a phenyloxy group, a naphthyloxy group, etc.), (iv) a C_{1-6} alkyl-carbonyloxy group (e.g., a formyloxy group, an acetoxy group, a propionyloxy group, etc.) and (v) a C_{6-14} aryl-carbonyloxy group (e.g., a benzyloxy group, a naphthyl- 25 carbonyloxy group, etc.) and the like, and preferably, a hydroxy group and a C_{1-6} alkoxy group (e.g., a methoxy group, an ethoxy group, a propoxy group, an isopropoxy group, etc.).

 The "acyl group" as the "substituent" in the "optionally substituted amino group" represented by R^3 30 includes, for example, $-(C=O)-R''$, $-(C=S)-R''$, $-SO_2-R''$, $-SO-R''$, $-(C=O)NR''R'''$, $-(C=O)O-R''$, $-(C=S)O-R''$, $-(C=S)NR''R'''$ (R'' is a hydrogen atom or an optionally substituted hydrocarbon group, R''' is a hydrogen atom or lower alkyl group (e.g., a C_{1-6} alkyl group such as methyl, ethyl, propyl, 35 isopropyl, butyl, isobutyl, sec-butyl, tert-butyl, pentyl,

- 18 -

hexyl, etc., and particularly preferably a C₁₋₃ alkyl group such as methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl, etc.) and the like.

The "optionally substituted hydrocarbon group" represented by R'' includes, for example, the same group as those referred to herein for the "optionally substituted hydrocarbon group" represented by R¹ which will be described below.

The "C₁₋₆ alkoxy group," the "C₆₋₁₄ aryloxy group," the "C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonyloxy group" and the "C₆₋₁₄ aryl-carbonyloxy group" exemplified as "the optionally substituted hydroxy group" as the "substituent" in the "optionally substituted amino group" represented by R³, may be optionally further substituted with the same group as those referred to herein for the "substituent" in the "optionally substituted hydrocarbon group" represented by R¹ which will be described below and the like, and such substituent is preferably a halogen atom (e.g., fluorine, chlorine, bromine, etc.) and the like.

The "optionally substituted amino group" represented by R³ may form a cyclic amino group (e.g., a 5- to 9-membered cyclic amino group having 1 to 3 hetero atoms such as an oxygen atom, a sulfur atom, etc. in addition to a nitrogen atom (e.g., a pyrrolidino group, a piperidino group, a morpholino group, etc.) and the like.

The "optionally substituted hydroxy group" represented by R³ includes, for example, the same group as those referred to herein for the "the optionally substituted hydroxy group" as the "substituent" in the "optionally substituted amino group" represented by R³, and the like.

The "optionally substituted heterocyclic group" represented by R³ includes, for example, the same group as those referred to herein for the "optionally substituted heterocyclic group" represented by R¹ which will be described below.

The "acylamino" as described above includes, for

example, formylamino, C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonylamino (e.g., acetylamino, etc.), C₆₋₁₄ aryl-carbonylamino (e.g., phenylcarbonylamino, naphthylcarbonylamino, etc.), C₁₋₆ alkoxy-carbonylamino (e.g., methoxycarbonylamino, ethoxycarbonylamino, propoxycarbonylamino, butoxycarbonylamino, etc.), C₁₋₆ alkylsulfonylamino (e.g., methylsulfonylamino, ethylsulfonylamino, etc.), C₆₋₁₄ arylsulfonylamino (e.g., phenylsulfonylamino, 2-naphthylsulfonylamino, 1-naphthylsulfonylamino, etc.) and the like.

10 The "acyloxy" as described above includes, for example, C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonyloxy (e.g., acetoxy, propionyloxy, etc.), C₆₋₁₄ aryl-carbonyloxy (e.g., benzoyloxy, naphthylcarbonyloxy, etc.), C₁₋₆ alkoxy-carbonyloxy (e.g., methoxycarbonyloxy, ethoxycarbonyloxy, propoxycarbonyloxy, butoxycarbonyloxy, etc.), mono-C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbamoyloxy (e.g., methylcarbamoyloxy, ethylcarbamoyloxy, etc.), di-C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbamoyloxy (e.g., dimethylcarbamoyloxy, diethylcarbamoyloxy, etc.), C₆₋₁₄ aryl-carbamoyloxy (e.g., phenylcarbamoyloxy, naphthylcarbamoyloxy, etc.), nicotinoyloxy, etc.

20 The "5- to 7-membered saturated cyclic amino" in the "optionally substituted 5- to 7-membered saturated cyclic amino" includes, for example, morpholino, thiomorpholino, piperazin-1-yl, piperidino, pyrrolidin-1-yl, etc. The "substituent" in the "optionally substituted 5- to 7-membered saturated cyclic amino" includes, for example, C₁₋₆ alkyl (e.g., methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl, butyl, isobutyl, sec-butyl, tert-butyl, pentyl, hexyl, etc.), C₆₋₁₄ aryl (e.g., phenyl, 1-naphthyl, 2-naphthyl, biphenyl, 2-anthryl, etc.), a 5- to 10-membered aromatic heterocyclic group (e.g., 2- or 3-thienyl, 2-, 3- or 4-pyridyl, 2-, 3-, 4-, 5- or 8-quinolyl, 1-, 3-, 4- or 5-isoquinolyl, 1-, 2- or 3-indolyl, 2-benzothiazolyl, 2-benzo[b]thienyl, benzo[b]furanyl, etc.) and the like. The number of the substituents is 1 to 3.

35 Ar is preferably a phenyl group, a benzhydryl group or a benzyl group, each of which may be substituted, and more

- 20 -

preferably a phenyl group or a benzhydryl group, each of which may be substituted.

The "substituent" is preferably 1 to 4 (preferably 1 or 2) substituents selected from (A) a halogen atom (a chlorine atom, a fluorine atom, etc.), (B) a C₁₋₆ alkyl group, and (C) a heterocyclic group (a 5- or 6-membered aromatic heterocyclic group (pyridyl, etc.) having 1 to 4 hetero atoms of one or two kinds selected from a nitrogen atom, an oxygen atom and a sulfur atom in addition to carbon atoms and the like.

Ar is most preferably a phenyl group.

R¹ is a hydrogen atom, an optionally substituted hydrocarbon group, an acyl group or an optionally substituted heterocyclic group.

The "hydrocarbon group" in the "optionally substituted hydrocarbon group" represented by R¹ includes, for example, an aliphatic hydrocarbon group, a monocyclic saturated hydrocarbon group, an aromatic hydrocarbon group, etc., preferably having carbon number 1 to 16, and specifically, for example, an alkyl group, an alkenyl group, an alkynyl group, a cycloalkyl group, an aryl group, etc.

The "alkyl group" is preferably, for example, a lower alkyl group, etc., for example, a C₁₋₆ alkyl group such as methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl, butyl, isobutyl, sec-butyl, tert-butyl, pentyl, hexyl, etc.

The "alkenyl group" is preferably, for example, a lower alkenyl group, etc., for example, a C₂₋₆ alkenyl group such as vinyl, 1-propenyl, allyl, isopropenyl, butenyl, isobutenyl, etc.

The "alkynyl group" is preferably, for example, a lower alkynyl group, etc., for example, a C₂₋₆ alkynyl group such as ethynyl, propargyl, 1-propynyl, etc.

The "cycloalkyl group" is preferably, for example, a lower cycloalkyl group, etc., for example, a C₃₋₆ cycloalkyl group such as cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl,

cyclohexyl, etc.

The "aryl group" is preferably, for example, a C₆₋₁₄ aryl group such as phenyl, 1-naphthyl, 2-naphthyl, biphenyl, 2-anthryl, etc., specifically, a phenyl group, etc.

5 The substituent that the "hydrocarbon group" in the "optionally substituted hydrocarbon group" represented by R¹ may have includes, for example, a halogen atom (e.g., fluorine, chlorine, bromine, iodine, etc.), a nitro group, a cyano group, a hydroxy group, an optionally halogenated lower
10 alkyl group (e.g., an optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkyl group such as methyl, chloromethyl, difluoromethyl, trichloromethyl, trifluoromethyl, ethyl, 2-bromoethyl, 2,2,2-trifluoroethyl, pentafluoroethyl, propyl, 3,3,3-trifluoropropyl, isopropyl, butyl, isobutyl, sec-butyl, tert-butyl, 4,4,4-trifluorobutyl,
15 pentyl, isopentyl, neopentyl, 5,5,5-trifluoropentyl, hexyl, 6,6,6-trifluorohexyl, etc.), a lower alkoxy group (e.g., a C₁₋₆ alkoxy group such as methoxy, ethoxy, propoxy, isopropoxy, butoxy, isobutoxy, pentyloxy and hexyloxy, etc.), an amino group, a mono-lower alkylamino group (e.g., a mono-C₁₋₆
20 alkylamino group such as methylamino and ethylamino, etc.), a di-lower alkylamino group (e.g., a di-C₁₋₆ alkylamino group such as dimethylamino and diethylamino, etc.), a carboxyl group, a lower alkylcarbonyl group (e.g., a C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonyl group such as acetyl, propionyl, etc.), a lower
25 alkoxycarbonyl group (e.g., a C₁₋₆ alkoxy-carbonyl group such as methoxycarbonyl, ethoxycarbonyl, propoxycarbonyl, butoxycarbonyl, etc.), a carbamoyl group, a thiocarbamoyl group, a mono-lower alkylcarbamoyl group (e.g., mono-C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbamoyl group such as methylcarbamoyl, ethylcarbamoyl,
30 etc.), a di-lower alkylcarbamoyl group (e.g., a di-C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbamoyl group such as dimethylcarbamoyl, diethylcarbamoyl, etc.), an arylcarbamoyl group (e.g., a C₆₋₁₀ aryl-carbamoyl group such as phenylcarbamoyl, naphthylcarbamoyl, etc.), an aryl group (e.g., a C₆₋₁₀ aryl group such as phenyl, naphthyl,
35 etc.), an aryloxy group (e.g., a C₆₋₁₀ aryloxy group such as

- 22 -

phenyloxy and naphthyloxy, etc.), an optionally halogenated lower alkylcarbonylamino group (e.g., an optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonylamino group such as acetylamino and trifluoroacetylamino, etc.), an oxo group, a 5- or 6-
5 membered heterocyclic group, etc. The "hydrocarbon group" in the "optionally substituted hydrocarbon group" may have 1 to 5, preferably 1 to 3 of the substituents at the substitutable positions of the hydrocarbon group. If the number of the substituents is 2 or more, the substituents may be the same
10 or different.

The "5- or 6-membered heterocyclic group" represented as the "substituent" in the "optionally substituted hydrocarbon group" represented by R¹, includes, for example, a 5- or 6-membered aromatic heterocyclic group, a saturated
15 or non-saturated 5- or 6-membered non-aromatic heterocyclic group, etc. having 1 to 4 hetero atoms of one or two kinds selected from a nitrogen atom, an oxygen atom and a sulfur atom in addition to carbon atoms.

The "5- or 6-membered aromatic heterocyclic group"
20 includes, for example, furyl, thienyl, pyrrolyl, oxazolyl, isoxazolyl, thiazolyl, isothiazolyl, imidazolyl, pyrazolyl, 1,2,3-oxadiazolyl, 1,2,4-oxadiazolyl, 1,3,4-oxadiazolyl, furazanyl, 1,2,3-thiadiazolyl, 1,2,4-thiadiazolyl, 1,3,4-thiadiazolyl, 1,2,3-triazolyl, 1,2,4-triazolyl, tetrazolyl,
25 pyridyl, pyridazinyl, pyrimidinyl, pyrazinyl, triazinyl and the like.

The above-mentioned "5- or 6-membered non-aromatic heterocyclic group" includes, for example, pyrrolidinyl, tetrahydrofuryl, tetrahydrothienyl, piperidyl,
30 tetrahydropyranyl, morpholinyl, thiomorpholinyl, piperazinyl and the like.

Such non-aromatic heterocyclic group may be further fused with other aromatic and/or non-aromatic homocyclic ring or heterocyclic ring.

35 The "5- or 6-membered heterocyclic group" may have

substituent such as an oxo group, etc.

The "acyl group" represented by R^1 includes, for example, the same group as those referred to herein above for the foregoing "acyl" as the substituent of the "aryl group",
5 the "aralkyl group" and the "aromatic heterocyclic group" represented by Ar.

The "heterocyclic group" in the "optionally substituted heterocyclic group" represented by R^1 includes, for example, a 5- to 14-membered (preferably 5- to 10-membered)
10 (monocyclic to tricyclic, preferably, monocyclic or dicyclic) heterocyclic group containing 1 to 4 (preferably 1 to 3) hetero atoms of one or two kinds selected from a nitrogen atom, an oxygen atom and a sulfur atom in addition to carbon atoms, etc. For example, it includes a 5-membered cyclic
15 group containing 1 to 4 hetero atoms selected from an oxygen atom, a sulfur atom and a nitrogen atom in addition to carbon atoms, such as 2- or 3-thienyl, 2- or 3-furyl, 1-, 2- or 3-pyrrolyl, 1-, 2- or 3-pyrrolidinyl, 2-, 4- or 5-oxazolyl, 3-, 4- or 5-isoxazolyl, 2-, 4- or 5-thiazolyl, 3-, 4- or 5-
20 isothiazolyl, 3-, 4- or 5-pyrazolyl, 2-, 3- or 4-pyrazolidinyl, 2-, 4- or 5-imidazolyl, 1,2,3-triazolyl, 1,2,4-triazolyl and 1H- or 2H-tetrazolyl, a 6-membered cyclic group containing 1 to 4 hetero atoms selected from an oxygen atom, a sulfur atom and a nitrogen atom in addition to carbon
25 atoms, such as 2-, 3- or 4-pyridyl, 2-, 3- or 4-pyridyl N-oxide, 2-, 4- or 5-pyrimidinyl, 2-, 4- or 5-pyrimidinyl N-oxide, thiomorpholinyl, morpholinyl, piperidino, 2-, 3- or 4-piperidyl, thiopyranyl, 1,4-oxazinyl, 1,4-thiazinyl, 1,3-thiazinyl, piperazinyl, triazinyl, 3- or 4-pyridazinyl,
30 pyrazinyl and 3- or 4-pyridazinyl N-oxide, a dicyclic or tricyclic fused cyclic group containing 1 to 4 hetero atoms selected from an oxygen atom, a sulfur atom and a nitrogen atom in addition to carbon atoms, such as indolyl, benzofuryl, benzothiazolyl, benzoxazolyl, benzimidazolyl, quinolyl, 35 isoquinolyl, phthalazinyl, quinazolinyl, quinoxalinyl,

indoliziny, quinoliziny, 1,8-naphthyridiny, dibenzofurany, carbazoly, acridiny, phenanthridiny, chromany, phenothiaziny and phenoxaziny (preferably, a group formed by the fusion of the above-mentioned 5- or 6-membered ring to one or two 5- or 6-membered cyclic groups optionally having 1 to 4 hetero atoms selected from an oxygen atom, a sulfur atom and a nitrogen atom in addition to carbon atoms). Among these, a 5- to 7-membered (preferably 5- or 6-membered) heterocyclic group containing 1 to 3 hetero atoms selected from an oxygen atom, a sulfur atom and a nitrogen atom in addition to carbon atoms is preferred.

The substituent that the "heterocyclic group" in the "optionally substituted heterocyclic group" may have, includes, for example, a halogen atom (e.g., fluorine, chlorine, bromine, iodine, etc.), a lower alkyl group (e.g., a C₁₋₆ alkyl group such as methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl, butyl, isobutyl, sec-butyl, tert-butyl, pentyl, hexyl, etc.), a cycloalkyl group (e.g., a C₃₋₆ cycloalkyl group such as cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl, etc.), a lower alkynyl group (e.g., a C₂₋₆ alkynyl group such as ethynyl, 1-propynyl, propargyl, etc.), a lower alkenyl group (e.g., a C₂₋₆ alkenyl group such as vinyl, allyl, isopropenyl, butenyl, isobutenyl, etc.), an aralkyl group (e.g., a C₇₋₁₁ aralkyl group such as benzyl, α -methylbenzyl, phenethyl, etc.), an aryl group (e.g., a C₆₋₁₀ aryl group such as phenyl, naphthyl, etc., preferably, a phenyl group, etc.), a lower alkoxy group (e.g., a C₁₋₆ alkoxy group such as methoxy, ethoxy, propoxy, isopropoxy, butoxy, isobutoxy, sec-butoxy, tert-butoxy, etc.), an aryloxy group (e.g., a C₆₋₁₀ aryloxy group such as phenoxy, etc.), a lower alkanoyl group (e.g., formyl; a C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonyl group such as acetyl, propionyl, butyryl, isobutyryl, etc.), arylcarbonyl (e.g., a C₆₋₁₀ aryl-carbonyl group such as a benzoyl group, a naphthoyl group, etc.), a lower alkanoyloxy group (e.g., formyloxy; a C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonyloxy group such as acetyloxy, propionyloxy,

butyryloxy, isobutyryloxy, etc.), an arylcarbonyloxy group (e.g., a C₆₋₁₀ aryl-carbonyloxy group such as benzoyloxy, naphthoyloxy, etc.), a carboxyl group, a lower alkoxycarbonyl group (e.g., a C₁₋₆ alkoxy-carbonyl group such as

5 methoxycarbonyl, ethoxycarbonyl, propoxycarbonyl, isopropoxycarbonyl, butoxycarbonyl, isobutoxycarbonyl, tert-butoxycarbonyl, etc.), aralkyloxycarbonyl (e.g., a C₇₋₁₁ aralkyloxycarbonyl group such as benzyloxycarbonyl, etc.), a carbamoyl group, a mono-, di- or tri-halogeno-lower alkyl

10 group (e.g., a mono-, di- or tri-halogeno-C₁₋₄ alkyl group such as chloromethyl, dichloromethyl, trifluoromethyl, 2,2,2-trifluoroethyl, etc.), an oxo group, an amidino group, an imino group, an amino group, a mono-lower alkylamino group (e.g., a mono-C₁₋₄ alkylamino group such as methylamino,

15 ethylamino, propylamino, isopropylamino, butylamino, etc.), a di-lower alkylamino group (e.g., a di-C₁₋₄ alkylamino group such as dimethylamino, diethylamino, dipropylamino, diisopropylamino, dibutylamino, methylethylamino, etc.), a 3-

20 to 6-membered cyclic amino group which may contain 1 to 3 hetero atoms selected from an oxygen atom, a sulfur atom and a nitrogen atom in addition to carbon atoms and one nitrogen atom (e.g., a 3- to 6-membered cyclic amino group such as aziridinyl, azetidiny, pyrrolidinyl, pyrrolinyl, pyrrolyl, imidazolyl, pyrazolyl, imidazolidinyl, piperidyl, morpholinyl,

25 dihydropyridyl, pyridyl, N-methylpiperazinyl, N-ethylpiperazinyl, etc.), an alkylenedioxy group (e.g., a C₁₋₃ alkylenedioxy group such as methylenedioxy, ethylenedioxy, etc.), a hydroxy group, a nitro group, a cyano group, a mercapto group, a sulfo group, a sulfinio group, a phosphono

30 group, a sulfamoyl group, a monoalkylsulfamoyl group (e.g., a mono-C₁₋₆ alkylsulfamoyl group such as N-methylsulfamoyl, N-ethylsulfamoyl, N-propylsulfamoyl, N-isopropylsulfamoyl, N-butylsulfamoyl, etc.), a dialkylsulfamoyl group (e.g., a di-C₁₋₆ alkylsulfamoyl group such as N,N-dimethylsulfamoyl, N,N-

35 diethylsulfamoyl, N,N-dipropylsulfamoyl, N,N-dibutylsulfamoyl,

- 26 -

etc.), an alkylthio group (e.g., a C₁₋₆ alkylthio group such as methylthio, ethylthio, propylthio, isopropylthio, butylthio, sec-butylthio, tert-butylthio, etc.), an arylthio group (e.g., a C₆₋₁₀ arylthio group such as phenylthio, naphthylthio, etc.), a lower alkylsulfinyl group (e.g., a C₁₋₆ alkylsulfinyl group such as methylsulfinyl, ethylsulfinyl, propylsulfinyl, butylsulfinyl, etc.), an arylsulfinyl group (e.g., a C₆₋₁₀ arylsulfinyl group such as phenylsulfinyl, naphthylsulfinyl, etc.), a lower alkylsulfonyl group (e.g., a C₁₋₆ alkylsulfonyl group such as methylsulfonyl, ethylsulfonyl, propylsulfonyl, butylsulfonyl, etc.), an arylsulfonyl group (e.g., a C₆₋₁₀ arylsulfonyl group such as phenylsulfonyl, naphthylsulfonyl, etc.) and the like.

The "heterocyclic group" in the "optionally substituted heterocyclic group" may have 1 to 5, preferably 1 to 3 of the above-mentioned substituents at the substitutable positions of the heterocyclic group. If the number of the substituents is 2 or more, the substituents may be the same or different.

R¹ is preferably (1) a hydrogen atom,
 (2) a hydrocarbon group (a C₁₋₆ alkyl group, C₇₋₁₉ aralkyl group (a benzyl group, etc.) or a C₆₋₁₄ aryl group (a phenyl group, etc.) optionally having 1 to 3 substituents selected from (i) a C₁₋₆ alkoxy group, (ii) a C₁₋₆ alkoxy-carbonyl group, (iii) a carbamoyl group, (iv) a cyano group, (v) a C₁₋₆ alkylthio group, or (vi) a heterocyclic group optionally substituted with 1 or 2 oxo groups and optionally fused with a benzene ring (e.g., a 5- or 6-membered aromatic heterocyclic group containing 1 to 4 hetero atoms of one or two kinds selected from a nitrogen atom, an oxygen atom and a sulfur atom in addition to carbon atoms, such as triazolyl, etc., optionally substituted with 1 or 2 oxo groups, and further optionally fused with a benzene ring,

(3) an acyl group represented by the formula: -(C=O)-Ra, -(C=S)-Ra, -SO₂-Ra, -SO₂-NRaRa', -(C=O)NRaRa' or -(C=O)O-Ra

wherein Ra is (A) a hydrogen atom or

- 27 -

(B) (a) a hydrocarbon group (a C₁₋₆ alkyl group, a C₂₋₆ alkenyl group, a C₂₋₆ alkynyl group, C₃₋₆ cycloalkyl, a C₇₋₁₉ aralkyl group (benzyl, 2-phenylethyl, etc.) or a C₆₋₁₄ aryl group (a phenyl group optionally fused with a 5- or 6-membered aromatic heterocyclic ring, etc.)), or

(b) a heterocyclic group (e.g., a 5- or 6-membered aromatic or 4- to 6-membered non-aromatic heterocyclic group having 1 to 4 hetero atoms of one or two kinds selected from a nitrogen atom, an oxygen atom and a sulfur atom in addition to carbon atoms),

each of which optionally has 1 to 2 substituents selected from

(i) a halogen atom,

(ii) a C₁₋₆ alkyl group optionally substituted with a heterocyclic group (e.g., a 5- or 6-membered aromatic or non-aromatic heterocyclic group having 1 to 4 hetero atoms of one or two kinds selected from a nitrogen atom, an oxygen atom and a sulfur atom in addition to carbon atoms), C₁₋₆ alkanoyl or C₆₋₁₄ aryl-carbonyl,

(iii) a C₁₋₆ alkoxy group,

(iv) an amino group,

(v) a mono- or di-C₁₋₆ alkylamino group,

(vi) a C₁₋₆ alkanoylamino group,

(vii) a N-C₁₋₆ alkyl-N'-C₁₋₆ alkanoylamino group,

(viii) a C₁₋₆ alkoxy-carbonyl group,

(ix) a C₁₋₆ alkanoyl group optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkoxy, mono- or di-C₁₋₆ alkylamino, halogeno C₁₋₆ alkyl or a halogen atom,

(x) a C₆₋₁₄ aryl-carbonyl group,

(xi) a C₇₋₁₉ aralkyl-carbonyl group,

(xii) a C₃₋₆ cycloalkyl-carbonyl group,

(xiii) a heterocyclic-carbonyl group (e.g., a 5- or 6-membered aromatic or non-aromatic heterocyclic-carbonyl group having 1 to 4 hetero atoms of one or two kinds selected from a nitrogen atom, an oxygen atom and a sulfur atom in addition

to carbon atoms),

- (xiv) a hydroxy group,
- (xv) a C₇₋₁₉ aralkyloxy group,
- (xvi) a C₃₋₆ cycloalkyloxy group,
- 5 (xvii) a C₁₋₆ alkoxy-C₁₋₆ alkoxy group,
- (xviii) a carbamoyl group,
- (xix) a mono- or di-C₁₋₆ alkylcarbamoyl group,
- (xx) a C₁₋₆ alkylsulfonyl group,
- (xxi) a mono- or di-C₁₋₆ alkylaminosulfonyl group,
- 10 (xxii) a formyl group,
- (xxiii) a formylamino group,
- (xxiv) an oxo group, and
- (xxv) a heterocyclic group (e.g., a 5- or 6-membered aromatic or non-aromatic heterocyclic group having 1 to 4
- 15 hetero atoms of one or two kinds selected from a nitrogen atom, an oxygen atom and a sulfur atom in addition to carbon atoms) optionally having 1 or 2 substituents selected from C₁₋₆ alkanoyl and C₁₋₆ alkoxy-C₁₋₆ alkanoyl, and

Ra' is a hydrogen atom or a C₁₋₆ alkyl group, or

- 20 (4) a heterocyclic group (e.g., a 5- or 6-membered aromatic heterocyclic group having 1 to 4 hetero atoms of one or two kinds selected from a nitrogen atom, an oxygen atom and a sulfur atom in addition to carbon atoms) optionally having 1 or 2 substituents selected from a C₁₋₆ alkyl group
- 25 and an oxo group.

R¹ is preferably a hydrogen atom or an acyl group, most preferably, an acyl group represented by the formula: -(C=O)-Rb or -(C=O)NRbRb' [Rb is (1) a hydrocarbon group (e.g., a C₁₋₆ alkyl group, etc.) or (2) a heterocyclic group (e.g., a 5- or 6-membered non-aromatic heterocyclic group having 1 to 4

30 hetero atoms of one or two kinds selected from a nitrogen atom, an oxygen atom and a sulfur atom in addition to carbon atoms, such as piperidyl, etc.), each of which optionally has a substituent selected from (i) hydroxy, (ii) C₁₋₆ alkoxy,

35 (iii) C₁₋₆ alkanoyl, (iv) C₁₋₆ alkylsulfonyl, (v) amino, (vi)

- 29 -

mono- or di-C₁₋₆ alkylamino, (vii) C₁₋₆ alkanoylamino or (viii) a heterocyclic group optionally substituted with 1 or 2 oxo groups (e.g., a 5- or 6-membered aromatic or non-aromatic heterocyclic group containing 1 to 4 hetero atoms of one or two kinds selected from a nitrogen atom, an oxygen atom and a sulfur atom in addition to carbon atoms such as tetrazolyl, pyrrolidinyl, etc., and optionally substituted with 1 or 2 oxo groups), and Rb' is a hydrogen atom or a C₁₋₆ alkyl group].

X is an oxygen atom or an optionally substituted imino group.

The "substituent" in the "optionally substituted an imino group" represented by X is preferably an optionally substituted hydrocarbon group or an acyl group.

The "optionally substituted hydrocarbon group" includes, for example, the same group as those referred to herein above for the foregoing "optionally substituted hydrocarbon group" represented by R¹.

The "acyl group" includes, for example, the same group as those referred to herein above for the foregoing "acyl" as the substituent of the "aryl group", the "aralkyl group" and the "aromatic heterocyclic group" represented by Ar.

X is preferably O or NH.

Z is an optionally substituted methylene group.

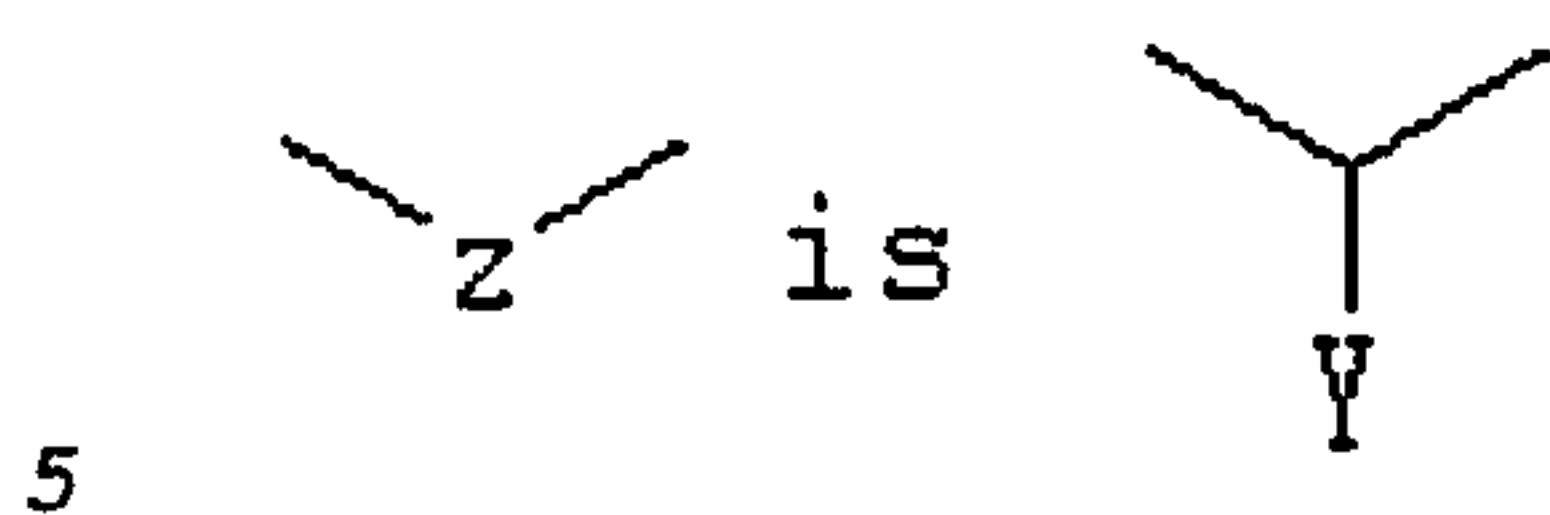
The "substituent" in the "optionally substituted methylene group" represented by Z includes, for example, 1 or 2 substituents selected from an optionally substituted hydrocarbon group and an acyl group, or an oxo group.

The "optionally substituted hydrocarbon group" includes, for example, the same group as those referred to herein above for the foregoing "optionally substituted hydrocarbon group" represented by R¹.

The "acyl group" includes, for example, the same group as those referred to herein above for the foregoing "acyl" as the substituent of the "aryl group", the "aralkyl group" and the "aromatic heterocyclic group" represented by Ar.

- 30 -

Z is preferably a methylene group optionally substituted with any one of (i) an optionally substituted lower alkyl group or (ii) an oxo group. In other words, in the formula (I), it is preferable that



[Y is a hydrogen atom, an optionally substituted lower alkyl group or an oxo group].

The "lower alkyl group" of the "optionally substituted lower alkyl group" represented by Y includes, for example, a
10 C₁₋₆ alkyl group such as methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl, butyl, isobutyl, sec-butyl and tert-butyl, pentyl, hexyl, etc.

The "substituent" of the "optionally substituted lower alkyl group" represented by Y, includes, for example, the same group as those referred to herein above for the
15 foregoing "substituent" in the "optionally substituted hydrocarbon group" represented by R¹.

Z is preferably a methylene group.

Ring A is an optionally further substituted piperidine ring. In other words, Ring A may further have 1 to 8
20 substituents in addition to X and Ar.

The "substituent" in the "optionally substituted piperidine ring" includes, for example, the same group as the substituent of the "aryl group", the "aralkyl group" and the "aromatic heterocyclic group" represented by Ar.

25 Ring A preferably has no substituent in addition to R¹, X and Ar.

Ring B is an optionally substituted aromatic ring.

The "aromatic ring" in the "optionally substituted aromatic ring" is preferably the foregoing "aromatic
30 heterocyclic group" represented by Ar, a benzene ring or a fused ring thereof.

The "substituent" in the "optionally substituted aromatic ring" includes, for example, the same group as the

substituent of the "aryl group", the "aralkyl group" and the "aromatic heterocyclic group" represented by Ar. The number of substituent is 1 to 5.

Ring B is preferably a benzene ring optionally having 1
5 or 2 substituents selected from (i) a heterocyclic group (a 5- or 6-membered aromatic heterocyclic group having 1 to 4 hetero atoms of one or two kinds selected from a nitrogen atom, an oxygen atom and a sulfur atom in addition to carbon atoms, etc.) optionally substituted with an optionally
10 halogenated C₁₋₆ alkyl group or a C₁₋₆ alkylthio group, (ii) an optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkyl group, (iii) an optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkoxy group, (iv) a halogen atom (fluorine, chlorine, bromine, etc.), (v) nitro, (vi) a C₆₋₁₄ aryl group optionally substituted with optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkyl,
15 (vii) an optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkylamino group, (viii) a cyano group, and (ix) a C₃₋₆ cycloalkyloxy, and optionally fused with a non-aromatic heterocyclic ring (a 5- or 6-membered non-aromatic heterocyclic group having 1 to 4 hetero atoms of one or two kinds selected from a nitrogen atom, an
20 oxygen atom and a sulfur atom in addition to carbon atoms, such as furan, etc.) or a benzene ring.

Ring B is more preferably a benzene ring optionally having 1 or 2 substituents selected from (i) a heterocyclic group (e.g., a 5- or 6-membered aromatic heterocyclic group
25 having 1 to 4 hetero atoms of one or two kinds selected from a nitrogen atom, an oxygen atom and a sulfur atom in addition to carbon atoms, such as tetrazolyl, etc.) optionally substituted with an optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkyl group (trifluoromethyl, etc.), (ii) an optionally halogenated C₁₋₆
30 alkyl group (trifluoromethyl, etc.) and (iii) an optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkoxy group (trifluoromethoxy, etc.), and optionally fused with a non-aromatic heterocyclic ring (a 5- or 6-membered non-aromatic heterocyclic group having 1 to 4 hetero atoms of one or two kinds selected from a nitrogen
35 atom, an oxygen atom and a sulfur atom in addition to carbon

atoms, such as furan, etc.).

Ring B is most preferably a benzene ring substituted with methoxy at 2-position, and with 5-(trifluoromethyl)-1H-tetrazol-1-yl at 5-position, respectively.

5 In Compound (I), when Z is a methylene group substituted with an oxo group, R¹ is not a methyl group, and when Z is a methylene group substituted with a methyl group, Ring B is a substituted aromatic ring.

Preferred is Compound (I) wherein

10 Ar is a phenyl group, a benzhydryl group or a benzyl group, each of which optionally has 1 to 4 (preferably 1 or 2) substituents selected from (A) a halogen atom (a chlorine atom, a fluorine atom, etc.), (B) a C₁₋₆ alkyl group, and (C) a heterocyclic group (e.g., a 5- or 6-membered aromatic
15 heterocyclic group having 1 to 4 hetero atoms of one or two kinds selected from a nitrogen atom, an oxygen atom and a sulfur atom in addition to carbon atoms (pyridyl, etc.)),

R¹ is (1) a hydrogen atom,

(2) a hydrocarbon group (a C₁₋₆ alkyl group, a C₇₋₁₉
20 aralkyl group (a benzyl group, etc.) or a C₆₋₁₄ aryl group (a phenyl group, etc.) optionally having 1 to 3 substituents selected from (i) a C₁₋₆ alkoxy group, (ii) a C₁₋₆ alkoxy-carbonyl group, (iii) a carbamoyl group, (iv) a cyano group, (v) a C₁₋₆ alkylthio group, or (vi) a heterocyclic group
25 optionally substituted with 1 or 2 oxo groups and optionally fused with a benzene ring (e.g., a 5- or 6-membered aromatic heterocyclic group containing 1 to 4 hetero atoms of one or two kinds selected from a nitrogen atom, an oxygen atom and a sulfur atom in addition to carbon atoms, optionally
30 substituted with 1 or 2 oxo groups, and further optionally fused with a benzene ring, such as triazolyl, etc.),

(3) an acyl group represented by the formula: -(C=O)-Ra, -(C=S)-Ra, -SO₂-Ra, -SO₂-NRaRa', -(C=O)NRaRa' or -(C=O)O-Ra wherein Ra is (A) a hydrogen atom or

35 (B) (a) a hydrocarbon group (a C₁₋₆ alkyl group, a C₂₋₆

alkenyl group, a C₂₋₆ alkynyl group, C₃₋₆ cycloalkyl, a C₇₋₁₉ aralkyl group (benzyl, 2-phenylethyl, etc.) or a C₆₋₁₄ aryl group (a phenyl group optionally fused with 5- or 6-membered aromatic heterocyclic ring, etc., or

5 (b) a heterocyclic group (e.g., a 5- or 6-membered aromatic or 4- to 6-membered non-aromatic heterocyclic group having 1 to 4 hetero atoms of one or two kinds selected from a nitrogen atom, an oxygen atom and a sulfur atom in addition to carbon atoms),

10 each of which optionally has 1 to 2 substituents selected from

(i) a halogen atom,

(ii) a C₁₋₆ alkyl group optionally substituted with a heterocyclic group (e.g., a 5- or 6-membered aromatic or non-
15 aromatic heterocyclic group having 1 to 4 hetero atoms of one or two kinds selected from a nitrogen atom, an oxygen atom and a sulfur atom in addition to carbon atoms), C₁₋₆ alkanoyl or C₆₋₁₄ aryl-carbonyl,

(iii) a C₁₋₆ alkoxy group,

20 (iv) an amino group,

(v) a mono- or di-C₁₋₆ alkylamino group,

(vi) a C₁₋₆ alkanoylamino group,

(vii) a N-C₁₋₆ alkyl-N'-C₁₋₆ alkanoylamino group,

(viii) a C₁₋₆ alkoxy-carbonyl group,

25 (ix) a C₁₋₆ alkanoyl group optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkoxy, mono- or di-C₁₋₆ alkylamino, halogeno C₁₋₆ alkyl or a halogen atom,

(x) a C₆₋₁₄ aryl-carbonyl group,

(xi) a C₇₋₁₉ aralkyl-carbonyl group,

30 (xii) a C₃₋₆ cycloalkyl-carbonyl group,

(xiii) a heterocyclic-carbonyl group (e.g., a 5- or 6-membered aromatic or non-aromatic heterocyclic-carbonyl group having 1 to 4 hetero atoms of one or two kinds selected from a nitrogen atom, an oxygen atom and a sulfur atom in addition
35 to carbon atoms),

- 34 -

- (xiv) a hydroxy group,
(xv) a C₇₋₁₉ aralkyloxy group,
(xvi) a C₃₋₆ cycloalkyloxy group,
(xvii) a C₁₋₆ alkoxy-C₁₋₆ alkoxy group,
5 (xviii) a carbamoyl group,
(xix) a mono- or di-C₁₋₆ alkylcarbamoyl group,
(xx) a C₁₋₆ alkylsulfonyl group,
(xxi) a mono- or di-C₁₋₆ alkylaminosulfonyl group,
(xxii) a formyl group,
10 (xxiii) a formylamino group,
(xxiv) an oxo group, and
(xxv) a heterocyclic group (e.g., a 5- or 6-membered aromatic or non-aromatic heterocyclic group having 1 to 4 hetero atoms of one or two kinds selected from a nitrogen
15 atom, an oxygen atom and a sulfur atom in addition to carbon atoms) optionally having 1 or 2 substituents selected from C₁₋₆ alkanoyl and C₁₋₆ alkoxy-C₁₋₆ alkanoyl, and
Ra' is a hydrogen atom or a C₁₋₆ alkyl group, or
(4) a heterocyclic group (e.g., a 5- or 6-membered
20 aromatic heterocyclic group having 1 to 4 hetero atoms of one or two kinds selected from a nitrogen atom, an oxygen atom and a sulfur atom in addition to carbon atoms) optionally having 1 or 2 substituents selected from a C₁₋₆ alkyl group and an oxo group,
25 X is O or NH,
Z is a methylene group, and
Ring B is a benzene ring optionally having 1 or 2 substituents selected from (i) a heterocyclic group (a 5- or 6-membered aromatic heterocyclic group having 1 to 4 hetero
30 atoms of one or two kinds selected from a nitrogen atom, an oxygen atom and a sulfur atom in addition to carbon atoms, etc.) optionally substituted with an optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkyl group or a C₁₋₆ alkylthio group, (ii) an optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkyl group, (iii) an optionally halogenated
35 C₁₋₆ alkoxy group, (iv) a halogen atom (fluorine, chlorine,

- 35 -

bromine, etc.), (v) nitro, (vi) a C₆₋₁₄ aryl group optionally substituted with optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkyl, (vii) an optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkylamino group, (viii) a cyano group, and (ix) a C₃₋₆ cycloalkyloxy, and optionally fused
5 with a non-aromatic heterocyclic ring (a 5- or 6-membered non-aromatic heterocyclic group having 1 to 4 hetero atoms of one or two kinds selected from a nitrogen atom, an oxygen atom and a sulfur atom in addition to carbon atoms, such as furan, etc.) or a benzene ring.

10 More preferred is Compound (I) wherein

Ar is a phenyl group,

R¹ is -(C=O)-Rb or -(C=O)NRbRb' (Rb is (1) a hydrocarbon group or (2) a heterocyclic group, each of which optionally has a substituent selected from (i) hydroxy, (ii)
15 C₁₋₆ alkoxy, (iii) C₁₋₆ alkanoyl, (iv) C₁₋₆ alkylsulfonyl, (v) amino, (vi) mono- or di-C₁₋₆ alkylamino, (vii) C₁₋₆ alkanoylamino or (viii) a heterocyclic group optionally substituted with 1 or 2 oxo groups, and Rb' is a hydrogen atom or a C₁₋₆ alkyl group.),

20 X is O or NH,

Z is a methylene group, and

Ring B is a benzene ring optionally having 1 or 2 substituents selected from (i) a heterocyclic group optionally substituted with an optionally halogenated C₁₋₆
25 alkyl group, (ii) an optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkyl group and (iii) an optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkoxy group, and optionally fused with a non-aromatic heterocyclic ring.

As Compound (I), preferred is the compound wherein when X is an oxygen atom, R¹ is an acyl group such as -(C=O)-R³ [R³
30 has the same meanings as defined above, but preferably a C₁₋₆ alkyl group or a 5- to 7-membered (preferably 5- or 6-membered) non-aromatic heterocyclic group containing 1 to 3 hetero atoms selected from an oxygen atom, a sulfur atom and a nitrogen atom in addition to carbon atoms (e.g., piperidyl
35 and the like. The heterocyclic group may be substituted with

- 36 -

C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonyl group, etc.)], and Ring B is a benzene ring optionally having 1 or 2 substituents selected from a halogen atom and optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkyl.

Further, preferred is also the compound wherein when X
5 is an imino group, R¹ is preferably an acyl group such as -
(C=O)-R³ or -(C=O)NR''R''' [R'' and R''' have the same
meanings as defined above, but R'' is preferably a C₁₋₆ alkyl
group optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkoxy, etc. or a 5- to
7-membered (preferably 5- or 6-membered) non-aromatic
10 heterocyclic group containing 1 to 3 hetero atoms selected
from an oxygen atom, a sulfur atom and a nitrogen atom in
addition to carbon atoms (e.g., piperidyl, etc.) The
heterocyclic group may be substituted with a C₁₋₆ alkyl-
carbonyl group, etc., and R''' is preferably a hydrogen atom
15 or a C₁₋₆ alkyl group], and Ring B is preferably a benzene
ring optionally having 1 or 2 substituents selected from a
halogen atom, optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkyl, optionally
halogenated C₁₋₆ alkoxy, or a 5- to 7-membered (preferably 5-
or 6-membered) heterocyclic group containing 1 to 3 hetero
20 atoms selected from an oxygen atom, a sulfur atom and a
nitrogen atom in addition to carbon atoms (e.g., 1H- or 2H-
tetrazolyl and the like. The heterocyclic group may have a
substituent such as optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkyl, etc.),
and optionally fused with a 5- or 6-membered ring containing
25 1 to 4 hetero atoms selected from an oxygen atom, a sulfur
atom and a nitrogen atom in addition to carbon atoms (e.g.,
phenyl, benzofuranyl, etc).

A salt of Compound (I) includes, for example, a metal
salt, an ammonium salt, a salt with an organic base, a salt
30 with an inorganic acid, a salt with an organic acid, a salt
with basic or acidic amino acid, etc. Suitable examples of
the metal salt include an alkali metal salt such as a sodium
salt, a potassium salt, etc.; an alkaline earth metal salt
such as a calcium salt, a magnesium salt, a barium salt,
35 etc.; an aluminum salt, etc. Suitable examples of the salts

- 37 -

with an organic base include salts with trimethylamine, triethylamine, pyridine, picoline, 2,6-lutidine, ethanolamine, diethanolamine, triethanolamine, cyclohexylamine, dicyclohexylamine, N,N'-dibenzyl ethylenediamine, etc.

5 Suitable examples of the salts with an inorganic acid include salts with hydrochloric acid, hydrobromic acid, nitric acid, sulfuric acid, phosphoric acid, etc. Suitable examples of the salts with an organic acid include salts with formic acid, acetic acid, trifluoroacetic acid, phthalic acid, fumaric
10 acid, oxalic acid, tartaric acid, maleic acid, citric acid, succinimide, malic acid, methanesulfonic acid, benzenesulfonic acid, p-toluenesulfonic acid, etc. Suitable examples of the salts with basic amino acid include salts with arginine, lysine, ornithine, etc. Suitable examples of
15 the salts with acidic amino acid include salts with asparaginic acid and glutamic acid, etc.

Among these, pharmaceutically acceptable salts are preferred. For example, if the compound has acidic functional group, preferred are inorganic salts such as an
20 alkali metal salt (e.g., sodium salt, potassium salt, etc.), an alkaline earth metal salt (e.g., calcium salt, magnesium salt, barium salt, etc.), an ammonium salt, etc. If the compound has a basic functional group, preferred are salts with an inorganic acid such as hydrochloric acid, hydrobromic
25 acid, nitric acid, sulfuric acid, phosphoric acid, etc., or salts with an organic acid such as acetic acid, phthalic acid, fumaric acid, oxalic acid, tartaric acid, maleic acid, citric acid, succinic acid, methanesulfonic acid, p-toluene sulfonic acid, etc.

30 The prodrug of Compound (I) or a salt thereof of the present invention means a compound which is converted to Compound (I) under the physiological condition in the living body by a reaction with an enzyme, a gastric acid, or the like, that is, by enzymatic oxidation, reduction, hydrolysis,
35 etc.; by hydrolysis with gastric acid, etc.

- 38 -

The prodrug of Compound (I) of the present invention includes a compound wherein the amino group of Compound (I) is modified with acyl, alkyl or phosphoryl (e.g., a compound wherein the amino group of Compound (I), etc. is modified to
5 eicosanyl, alanyl, pentylaminocarbonyl, (5-methyl-2-oxo-1,3-dioxolen-4-yl)methoxycarbonyl, tetrahydrofuranyl, pyrrolidylmethyl, pivaloyloxymethyl, tert-butyl, etc.), and the like; a compound wherein the hydroxy group of Compound (I) is modified with acyl, alkyl, phosphoric acid or boric
10 acid (e.g., a compound wherein the hydroxy group of Compound (I) is modified with acetyl, palmitoyl, propanoyl, pivaloyl, succinyl, fumaryl, alanyl or dimethylaminomethylcarbonyl, etc.) and the like; a compound wherein a carboxyl group of Compound (I) is modified to ester or amide (e.g., a compound
15 wherein a carboxyl group of Compound (I) is modified to ethylester, phenyl ester, carboxymethylester, dimethylaminomethylester, pivaloyloxymethylester, ethoxycarbonyloxyethylester, phthalidyl ester, (5-methyl-2-oxo-1,3-dioxolen-4-yl)methylester,
20 cyclohexyloxycarbonylethylester or methylamide, etc.) and the like; etc. These prodrugs can be produced by per se known methods from Compound (I), etc.

In addition, the prodrug of Compound (I) may be a compound, which is converted into Compound (I) under the
25 physiological conditions, as described in "Pharmaceutical Research and Development", Vol. 7 (Drug Design), pp. 163-198 (1990), published by Hirokawa Publishing Co.

A solvate, for example, hydrate of the compound represented by the formula (I) and a salt thereof are all
30 included in the scope of the present invention. The compound represented by the formula (I) may be labeled with an isotope (e.g., ^3H , ^{14}C , ^{35}S , ^{125}I , etc.) and the like.

If Compound (I) according to the present invention has chiral center, isomers such as an enantiomer or a
35 diastereomer may exist. Such isomers and a mixture thereof

- 39 -

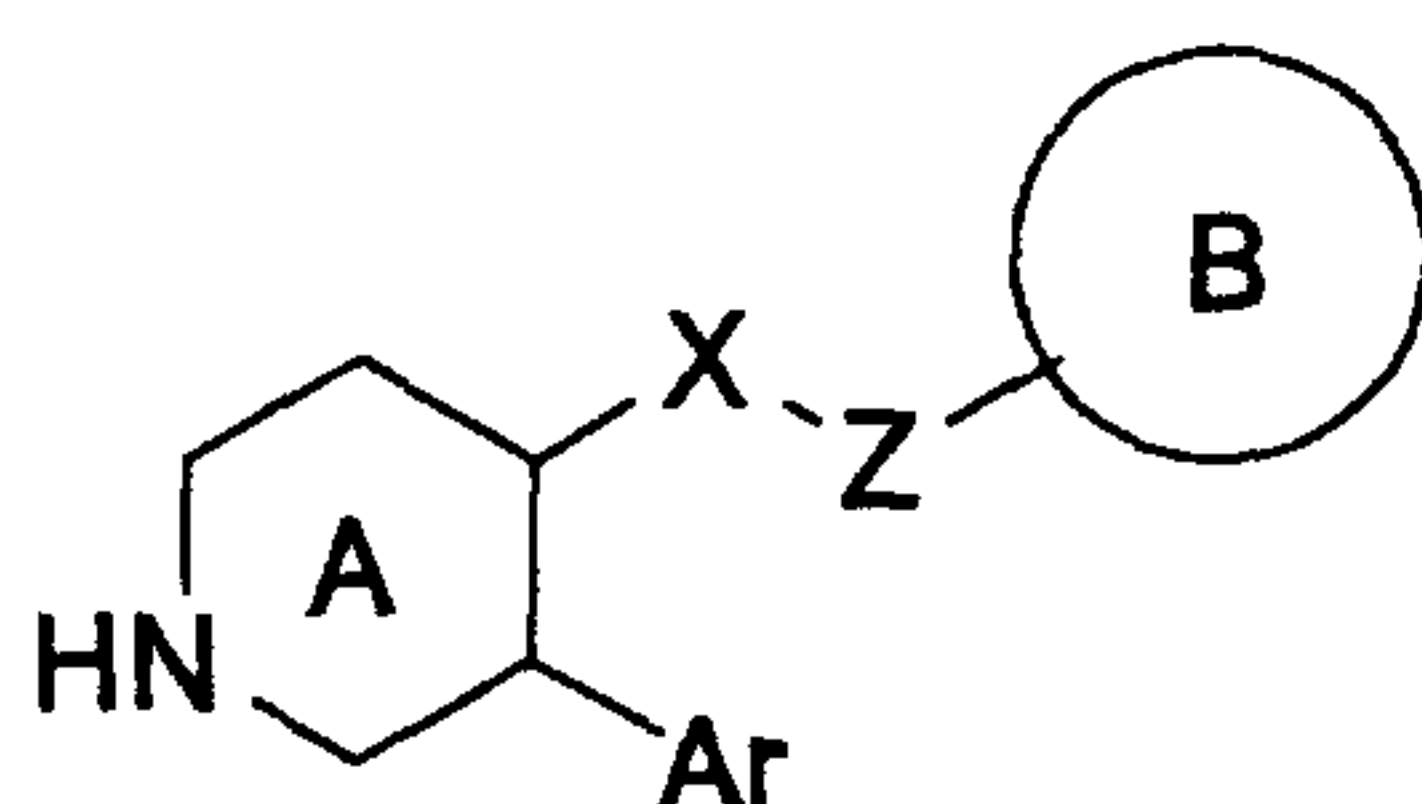
are all included in the scope of the present invention. In addition, there can be instances where the isomers by conformation are generated in cases, but such isomers or a mixture thereof are also included in Compound (I) or a salt thereof of the present invention. Compound (I) is preferably cis-isomer in view of activity.

A method of preparing Compound (I) or a salt thereof of the present invention will be explained in the following.

Compound (I) or a salt thereof of the present invention can be produced using Method A, Method B or Method C below.

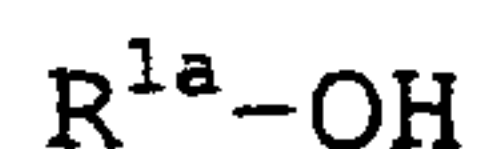
[Method A]

Compound (I) or a salt thereof of the present invention can be produced by subjecting a compound represented by the formula:



(Ia)

wherein each symbol has the same meanings as defined above, (hereinafter, referred to as Compound (Ia)) or a salt thereof, to a reaction with a compound represented by the formula

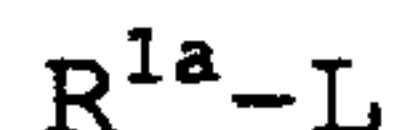


wherein R^{1a} is an optionally substituted hydrocarbon group, an acyl group or an optionally substituted heterocyclic group, which is an alkylating agent or an acylating agent, a salt thereof or a reactive derivative thereof.

The "optionally substituted hydrocarbon group, the acyl group or the optionally substituted heterocyclic group" represented by R^{1a} includes, for example, the same group as those referred to herein above for the foregoing group represented by R^1 .

- 40 -

The reactive derivative of the compound represented by R^{1a} -OH or a salt thereof includes, for example, a compound represented by the formula:



5 wherein L is a leaving group, and R^{1a} has the same meanings as defined above, (hereinafter, simply referred to as a reactive derivative) or a salt thereof.

The leaving group represented by L includes, for example, a hydroxy group, a halogen atom (e.g., a chlorine
10 atom, a bromine atom, an iodine atom, etc.), a substituted sulfonyloxy group (e.g., a C_{1-6} alkylsulfonyloxy group such as methanesulfonyloxy, ethanesulfonyloxy, etc.; a C_{6-14} arylsulfonyloxy group such as benzenesulfonyloxy, p-toluenesulfonyloxy, etc.; and a C_{7-16} aralkylsulfonyloxy group
15 such as a benzylsulfonyloxy group, etc.), acyloxy (acetoxy, benzoyloxy, etc.), an oxy group substituted with a hetero ring or an aryl group (succinimide, benzotriazole, quinoline, 4-nitrophenyl, etc.), a hetero ring (imidazole, etc.) and the like.

20 The reaction using the above-mentioned reactive derivative as an alkylating agent can be carried out by subjecting the reactive derivative to a reaction, usually in a solvent in the presence of base. The solvent includes, for example, alcohols such as methanol, ethanol, propanol, etc.,
25 ethers such as dimethoxyethane, dioxane, tetrahydrofuran, etc., ketones such as acetone, etc., nitriles such as acetonitrile, etc., amides such as N,N-dimethylformamide, etc., sulfoxides such as dimethylsulfoxide, etc., water and the like, which may be used in a suitable mixture. The base
30 includes, for example, an organic base such as trimethylamine, triethylamine, N-methylmorpholine, pyridine, picoline, N,N-dimethylaniline, etc., and an inorganic base such as potassium carbonate, sodium carbonate, potassium hydroxide, sodium hydroxide, etc. The amount of the base is, for
35 example, in the order of about 1 to about 100 molar

- 41 -

equivalents, preferably about 1 to about 10 molar equivalents, relative to 1 mole of the substrate.

The reactive derivative includes, for example, halides (e.g., chloride, bromide, iodide, etc.), sulfuric acid esters, 5 or sulfonic acid esters (e.g., methanesulfonate, p-toluenesulfonate, benzenesulfonate, etc.) and the like, and particularly halides. The amount of the reactive derivative is, for example, in the order of 1 to 5 molar equivalents, preferably 1 to 3 molar equivalents, relative to 1 mole of 10 the substrate.

If necessary, the reaction can be facilitated by adding an additive. Such additive includes, for example, iodides such as sodium iodide, potassium iodide, etc. and the amount is about 0.1 to 10 molar equivalents, preferably about 0.1 to 15 5 molar equivalents, relative to 1 mole of the substrate.

The reaction temperature is usually in the order of -10°C to 200°C, preferably about 0°C to 110°C, and the reaction time is usually in the order of 0.5 hour to 48 hours, preferably 0.5 hour to 16 hours.

20 In addition, if the leaving group L is a hydroxy group in the above-mentioned reactive derivative, the reaction can be also carried out by adding an organic phosphate compound in the presence of a base according to, for example, a method described in JP-A-1983-43979 and the like. The organic 25 phosphate compound used herein includes, for example, alkyl o-phenylenephosphate such as methyl phenylenephosphate, ethyl o-phenylenephosphate (EPPA), etc., aryl o-phenylenephosphate such as phenyl o-phenylenephosphate, p-chlorophenyl o-phenylenephosphate, etc. and the like, and particularly EPPA. 30 The base includes, for example, alkylamines such as trimethylamine, triethylamine, diisopropylethylamine, tri(n-butyl)amine, di(n-butyl)amine, diisobutylamine, dicyclohexylamine, etc., cyclic amines such as pyridine, 2,6-lutidine etc. and the like, and preferably, organic tertiary 35 amines such as diisopropylethylamine, etc. The amounts of

- 42 -

the above-mentioned reactive derivative, the base and the organic phosphate compound vary depending on the kinds of Compound (Ia), the above-mentioned reactive derivative, the base and the solvent to be used, and further other reaction
5 conditions, but usually in the order of about 1 to about 10 molar equivalents, preferably about 1 to about 5 molar equivalents, respectively to 1 mole of Compound (Ia). The reaction is usually carried out in a solvent inert to the reaction. The solvent includes, for example, halogenated
10 hydrocarbons such as dichloromethane, dichloroethane, chloroform, etc.; nitriles such as acetonitrile, etc.; esters such as ethyl acetate, etc.; ethers such as dimethoxyethane, tetrahydrofuran, dioxane, etc.; hydrocarbons such as benzene, toluene, etc.; amides such as dimethylformamide,
15 hexamethylphosphoramide, etc.; non-protonic solvents including sulfoxides such as dimethylsulfoxide, etc., and a mixture thereof, and preferably, halogenated hydrocarbons such as dichloromethane, dichloroethane, etc.

The reaction temperature is for example, in the order
20 of about -78°C to about 200°C , preferably about -20°C to about 150°C . The reaction time varies depending on the kinds of the Compound (Ia), the reactive derivative, the base and the solvent to be used, and further other reaction conditions, but for example, in the order of about 1 to about 72 hours,
25 preferably about 1 to about 24 hours.

The reaction using the above-mentioned reactive derivative as an acylating agent depends on the kind of reactive derivative or substrate, but it is usually carried out in a solvent. If necessary, a convenient base may be
30 added to facilitate the reaction. The solvent includes, for example, hydrocarbons such as benzene, toluene, etc., ethers such as ethyl ether, dioxane, tetrahydrofuran, etc., esters such as ethyl acetate, etc., halogenated hydrocarbons such as chloroform, dichloromethane, etc., esters such as ethyl
35 acetate, etc., amides such as N,N-dimethylformamide, etc.,

- 43 -

aromatic amines such as pyridine, etc., water and the like, which may be used in a suitable mixture. In addition, the base includes, for example, alkali metal hydroxides such as sodium hydroxide, potassium hydroxide, etc., hydrogen
5 carbonates such as sodium hydrogen carbonate, potassium hydrogen carbonate, etc., carbonate such as sodium carbonate, potassium carbonate, etc., acetate such as sodium acetate, tertiary amines such as trimethylamine, triethylamine, N-methylmorpholine, etc., aromatic amines such as pyridine,
10 picoline, N,N-dimethylaniline, etc. and the like. The amount of the base is, for example, in the order of about 1 to about 100 molar equivalents, preferably about 1 to about 10 molar equivalents, relative to 1 mole of the substrate.

The acylating agent includes, for example, carboxylic
15 acid, sulfonic acid, phosphoric acid, carbonic acid or a reactive derivative thereof (e.g., acid halide, acid anhydride, mixed acid anhydride, active ester, etc.), isocyanic acid ester, isothiocyanic acid ester and the like.

The amount of such acylating agent is usually 1 to 10
20 molar equivalents, preferably 1 to 3 molar equivalents, relative to 1 mole of the substrate. The reaction temperature is usually in the order of -10°C to 150°C , preferably about 0°C to 100°C , and the reaction time is usually in the order of 15 minutes to 24 hours, preferably 30
25 minutes to 16 hours.

In addition, Compound (I) or a salt thereof can be also produced by reacting Compound (Ia) with aldehydes, and reducing the produced imine or iminium ion.

The reaction to produce imine or iminium ion is usually
30 carried out in a solvent which has no adverse influence on the reaction. Such solvent includes, for example, aromatic hydrocarbons such as toluene, xylene, etc., aliphatic hydrocarbons such as heptane, hexane, etc., halogenated hydrocarbons such as chloroform, dichloromethane, etc.,
35 ethers such as diethyl ether, tetrahydrofuran, dioxane, etc.,

- 44 -

alcohols such as methanol, ethanol, 2-propanol, butanol, benzyl alcohol, etc., nitriles such as acetonitrile, etc., dimethylformamide, dimethylsulfoxide and the like. Such solvent may be used in a mixture at a suitable ratio. The
5 aldehyde includes, for example, formalin, optionally substituted C₁₋₅alkyl-aldehyde (e.g., acetaldehyde, etc.), optionally substituted aromatic aldehyde (e.g., benzaldehyde, etc.) and the like, and the amount is, for example, in the order of 1 to 100 molar equivalents, preferably 1 to 20 molar
10 equivalents, relative to 1 mole of the substrate.

If necessary, the reaction can advantageously proceed by adding a catalyst. Such catalyst is preferably mineral acids (e.g., hydrochloric acid, hydrobromic acid, sulfuric acid, etc.), carboxylic acids (e.g., formic acid, acetic acid,
15 propionic acid, trifluoroacetic acid, etc.), sulfonic acids (e.g., methanesulfonic acid, p-toluenesulfonic acid, etc.), Lewis acids (e.g., aluminum chloride, zinc chloride, zinc bromide, boron trifluoride, titanium chloride, etc.), acetates (sodium acetate, potassium acetate, etc.) and
20 molecular sieves (molecular sieves 3A, 4A, 5A, etc.). The amount of the catalyst is, for example, in the order of about 0.01 to 50 molar equivalents, preferably about 0.1 to 10 molar equivalents, relative to 1 mole of Compound (Ia).

The reaction temperature is usually in the order of
25 about 0°C to 200°C, preferably about 20°C to 150°C, and the reaction time is usually in the order of 0.5 hour to 48 hours, preferably 0.5 hour to 24 hours.

The reduction of imine or iminium ion can be carried out by per se known methods, for example, a method using
30 metal hydride or a method by catalytic hydrogenation.

The metal hydride as the reducing agent includes, for example, sodium borohydride, lithium borohydride, zinc borohydride, sodium cyanoborohydride, sodium triacetoxyborohydride, lithium cyanoborohydride, aluminum
35 dibutylhydride, aluminum hydride, lithium aluminum hydride, a

- 45 -

borane complex (a borane-THF complex, catechol borane, etc.) and the like. The metal hydride includes preferably sodium borohydride, sodium cyanoborohydride, sodium triacetoxymborohydride, etc. The amount of the reducing agent is, for example, in the order of 1 to 50 molar equivalents, preferably 1 to 10 molar equivalents, relative to 1 mole of the substrate. In addition, the reaction solvent includes, for example, aromatic hydrocarbons such as toluene, xylene, etc., aliphatic hydrocarbons such as heptane, hexane, etc., halogenated hydrocarbons such as chloroform, dichloromethane, etc., ethers such as diethyl ether, tetrahydrofuran, dioxane, etc., alcohols such as methanol, ethanol, 2-propanol, butanol, benzyl alcohol, etc., nitriles such as acetonitrile, etc., dimethylformamide, dimethylsulfoxide and the like. Such solvent may be used in a mixture at a suitable ratio. The reaction temperature is usually in the order of about -80°C to 80°C, preferably about -40°C to 40°C, and the reaction time is usually in the order of 5 minutes to 48 hours, preferably 1 hour to 24 hours.

The catalytic hydrogenation can be carried out under hydrogen atmosphere and in the presence of a catalyst. The catalyst to be used is preferably palladium compounds such as palladium carbon, palladium hydroxide, palladium oxide, etc., nickel compounds such as Raney-nickel, etc., platinum compounds such as platinum oxide, platinum carbon, etc., rhodium compounds such as rhodium acetate, etc. and the like, and the amount is in the order of about 0.001 to 1 equivalent, preferably about 0.01 to 0.5 equivalent. The catalytic hydrogenation proceeds usually in a solvent inert to the reaction. Such solvent includes, for example, alcohols such as methanol, ethanol, propanol, butanol, etc.; hydrocarbons such as benzene, toluene, xylene, etc.; halogenated hydrocarbons such as dichloromethane, chloroform, etc.; ethers such as diethyl ether, dioxane, tetrahydrofuran, etc.; esters such as ethyl acetate, etc.; amides such as N,N-

- 46 -

dimethylformamide, etc.; carboxylic acids such as acetic acid, etc.; water, or a mixture thereof. The hydrogen pressure under which the reaction proceeds is usually in the order of about 1 to 50 atm, preferably about 1 to 10 atm. The
5 reaction temperature is usually in the order of about 0°C to 150°C, preferably about 20°C to 100°C, and the reaction time is usually in the order of 5 minutes to 72 hours, preferably 0.5 hour to 40 hours.

Compound (I) can be also produced directly from
10 Compound (Ia) in the present process, while carrying out the reaction of producing and of reducing imine or iminium ion at the same time, without isolating the intermediate imine or iminium ion. In this case, pH of the reaction mixture is preferably from about 4 to about 5.

15 Compound (Ia) used as the starting compound in Method A can be produced by subjecting Compound (I) or a salt thereof obtained by Method B or Method C below to deacylation or dealkylation.

Such deacylation can be carried out according to a
20 known method. For example, it is usually carried out in the presence of an acid or a base, if necessary, in a solvent which has no adverse influence on the reaction though it depends on the kinds of the substrate.

The acid is preferably mineral acids (e.g.,
25 hydrochloric acid, hydrobromic acid, sulfuric acid, etc.), carboxylic acids (e.g., acetic acid, trifluoroacetic acid, trichloroacetic acid, etc.), sulfonic acids (e.g., methanesulfonic acid, toluenesulfonic acid, etc.), Lewis acids (aluminum chloride, tin chloride, zinc bromide, etc.)
30 and the like. If necessary, it may be used in a mixture of two or more. The amount of the acid varies depending on the kinds of the solvent and other reaction conditions, but it is usually about 0.1 molar equivalents or more, relative to 1 mole of Compound (I), and the acid can be used as solvent.

35 The base is preferably an inorganic base (alkali metal

- 47 -

hydroxides such as sodium hydroxide, potassium hydroxide, etc., alkali metal hydrogen carbonates such as sodium hydrogen carbonate, potassium hydrogen carbonate, etc., alkali metal carbonates such as sodium carbonate, potassium carbonate, etc., alkoxides such as sodium methoxide, sodium ethoxide, etc. and the like), or an organic base (amines such as trimethylamine, triethylamine, diisopropylethylamine, etc., cyclic amines such as pyridine, 4-dimethylaminopyridine, etc.) and the like, and preferably, sodium hydroxide, potassium hydroxide, sodium ethoxide and the like.

The amount of the base varies depending on the kinds of the solvent and other reaction conditions, but is usually in the order of about 0.1 to about 10 molar equivalents, preferably about 0.1 to about 5 molar equivalents, relative to 1 mole of Compound (I).

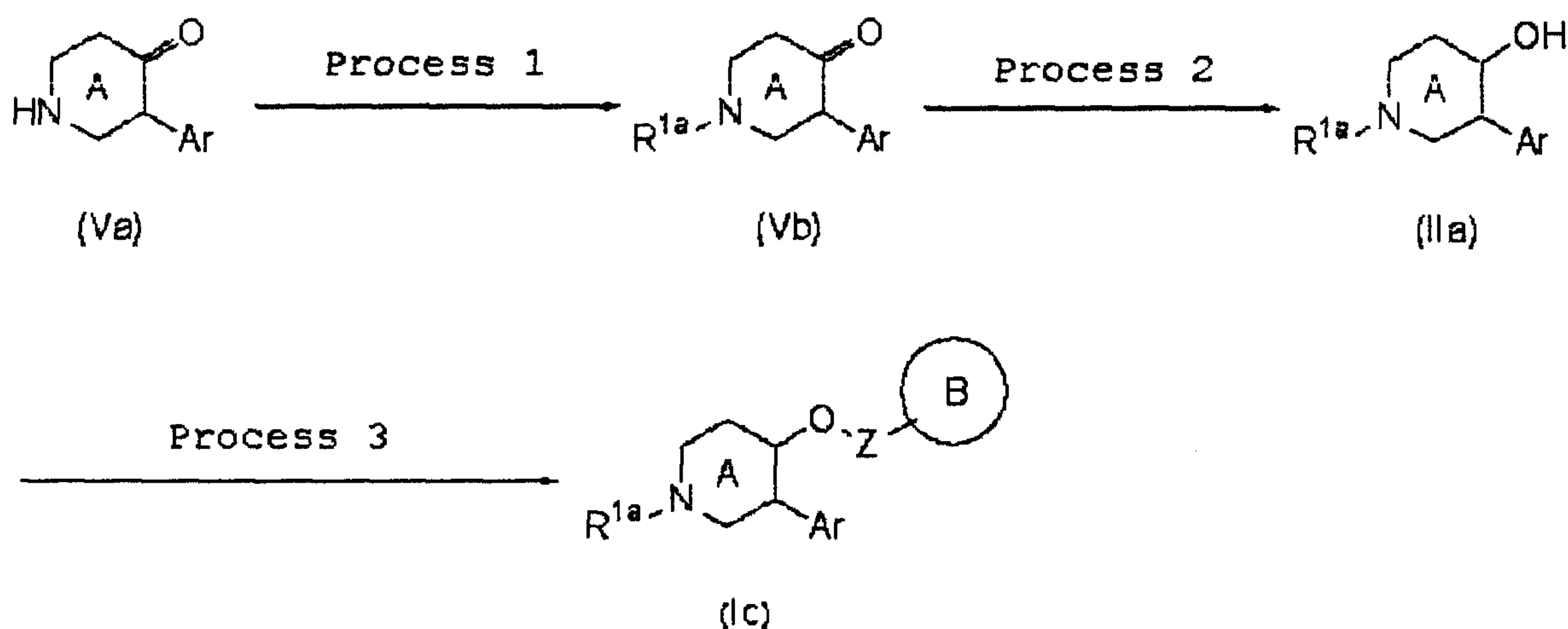
The solvent which has no adverse influence on the reaction includes, for example, alcohols such as methanol, ethanol, propanol, 2-propanol, butanol, isobutanol, tert-butanols; aromatic hydrocarbons such as benzene, toluene, xylene, etc.; aliphatic hydrocarbons such as hexane, heptane, etc.; halogenated hydrocarbons such as dichloromethane, chloroform, etc.; ethers such as diethyl ether, diisopropylether, tert-butylmethylether, tetrahydrofuran, dioxane, dimethoxyethane, etc.; nitriles such as acetonitrile, etc.; esters such as ethyl acetate, etc.; carboxylic acids such as acetic acid, etc.; amides such as dimethylformamide, dimethylacetamide, etc.; sulfoxides such as dimethylsulfoxide, etc.; water and the like. Such solvent may be used in a mixture of two or more at a suitable ratio.

The reaction temperature is for example, in the order of about -50°C to about 200°C, preferably about 0°C to about 100°C, and the reaction time varies depending on the kinds of Compound (I) or a salt thereof, the reaction temperature and the like, and it is for example, in the order of about 0.5 to about 100 hours, preferably about 0.5 to about 24 hours.

- 48 -

Dealkylation can be carried out by a known method, for example, the method described in Theodara W. Greene, Peter G. M. Wuts, "Protective Groups in Organic Synthesis, 3rd Ed.," (1999) Wiley-Interscience, and the like, or an analogous
 5 method thereto. For example, the dealkylation can be carried out by treatment with an acid, a base, ultraviolet radiation, a transition metal catalyst and the like, or by oxidation, reduction or acylation, followed by hydrolysis, etc., or a combination thereof can be used.

10 [Method B]



wherein each symbol has the same meanings as defined above.

Among Compounds (Va) or (Vb) or a salt thereof, the
 15 compound wherein Ar is an aryl group or an aromatic heterocyclic group, each of which may be substituted, Compound (Vc), can be produced according to Method D below or, per se known methods, for example, the method described in JP-A-1981-118062. Among Compounds (Va) or (Vb) or a salt
 20 thereof, the compound wherein Ar is a benzhydryl group, Compound (Vd), can be produced by Method E below. In addition, among Compounds (Va) or (Vb) or a salt thereof, the compound wherein Ar is a benzyl group, Compound (Ve), can be produced according to the known methods, for example, the
 25 method described in Bioorganic & Medicinal Chemistry Letters, Vol. 4, pp. 525-530 (1994).

(Process 1)

- 49 -

The present process can be carried out by the same method described in Method A, a process to produce Compound (Vb) by reacting Compound (Va) or a salt thereof, and a compound represented by the formula:



wherein R^{1a} has the same meanings as defined above, a salt thereof or a reactive derivative thereof which is an alkylating agent or an acylating agent.

(Process 2)

10 The present process is a process of reducing Compound (Vb) to produce an alcohol compound (IIa).

The present reaction can be carried out according to the known methods, usually in a solvent inert to the reaction, with using various reducing agents.

15 The reducing agent to be used includes, for example, metal hydride such as sodium borohydride, lithium borohydride, zinc borohydride, sodium cyanoborohydride, sodium triacetoxymborohydride, lithium cyanoborohydride, L-Selectride (lithium-tri-sec-butylborohydride), K-Selectride (potassium-
20 tri-sec-butylborohydride), diisobutylaluminum hydride, lithium aluminum hydride, etc., preferably L-Selectride (lithium-tri-sec-butylborohydride), K-Selectride (potassium-tri-sec-butylborohydride), etc. The amount of the reducing agent is, for example, in the order of 1 to 50 molar
25 equivalents, preferably 1 to 2 molar equivalents, relative to 1 mole of the substrate.

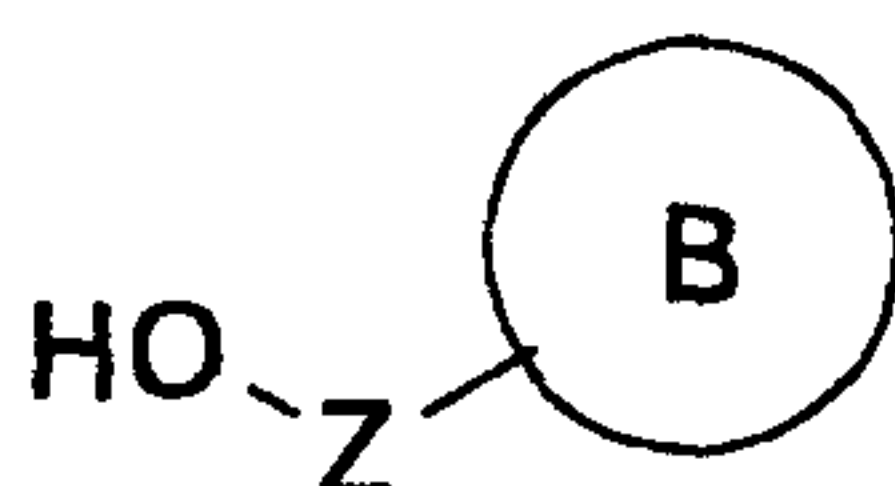
The solvent which is inert to the reaction includes, for example, aromatic hydrocarbons such as toluene, xylene, etc., aliphatic hydrocarbons such as heptane, hexane, etc.,
30 halogenated hydrocarbons such as chloroform, dichloromethane, etc., ethers such as diethyl ether, tetrahydrofuran, dioxane, etc., alcohols such as methanol, ethanol, 2-propanol, butanol, benzyl alcohol, etc., dimethylformamide, dimethylsulfoxide and the like. Such solvent may be used alone or in a mixture.
35 The reaction temperature is usually in the order of about -

- 50 -

80°C to 40°C, preferably about -50°C to 25°C, and the reaction time is usually in the order of 5 minutes to 48 hours, preferably 1 hour to 24 hours.

(Process 3)

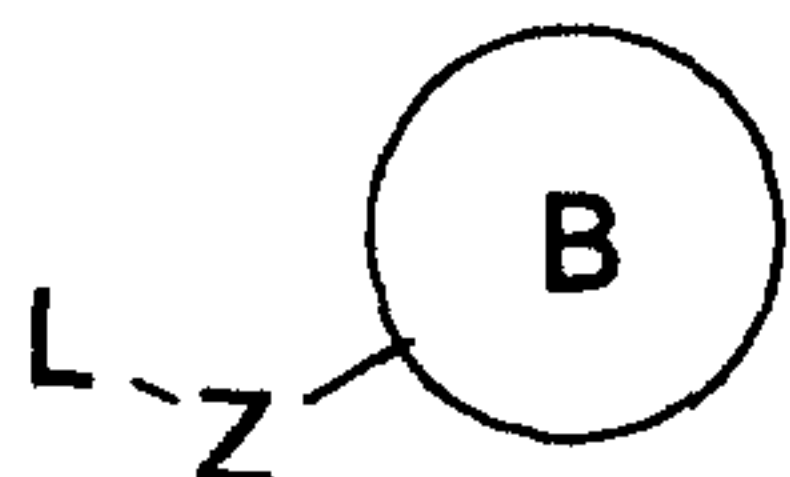
- 5 The present process is a process to produce Compound (Ic) by reacting an alcohol compound (IIa) with a compound represented by the formula:



(III)

wherein each symbol has the same meanings as defined
10 above, a salt thereof or a reactive derivative thereof which is an alkylating agent or an acylating agent.

The reactive derivative of the compound represented by Compound (III) or a salt thereof includes, for example, a compound represented by



(IIIa)

15

wherein each symbol has the same meanings as defined above, (hereinafter, simply referred to as the reactive derivative) or a salt thereof.

The reaction using the above-mentioned reactive
20 derivative as the alkylating agent, can be carried out by subjecting the reactive derivative to a reaction usually in a solvent in the presence of base. The solvent includes, for example, alcohols such as methanol, ethanol, propanol, etc., hydrocarbons such as benzene, toluene, xylene, etc.,
25 halogenated hydrocarbons such as dichloromethane, chloroform, etc., ethers such as dimethoxyethane, dioxane, tetrahydrofuran, etc., ketones such as acetone, etc., nitriles such as acetonitrile, etc., amides such as N,N-dimethylformamide, etc., sulfoxides such as dimethylsulfoxide,

- 51 -

etc., water and the like, which may be used in a suitable mixture. The base includes, for example, organic amines (e.g., alkylamines such as trimethylamine, triethylamine, diisopropylethylamine, N-methylmorpholine, 1,8-
5 diazabicyclo[5.4.0]undeca-7-ene, etc., aromatic amines such as pyridine, N,N-dimethylaniline, etc.), alkali metal salts (e.g., sodium hydrogen carbonate, potassium hydrogen carbonate, sodium carbonate, potassium carbonate, sodium hydroxide, potassium hydroxide, etc.), metal hydrides (e.g.,
10 potassium hydride, sodium hydride, etc.), alkali metal alkoxides (e.g., sodium methoxide, sodium ethoxide, sodium t-butoxide, potassium t-butoxide, etc.) and the like, and preferably, alkali metal salts such as sodium hydroxide, etc., metal hydride such as sodium hydride, etc. and the like.

15 The amount of the base is, for example, in the order of about 1 to about 100 molar equivalents, preferably about 1 to about 10 molar equivalents, relative to 1 mole of the substrate.

The reactive derivative includes, for example, halides
20 (e.g., chloride, bromide, iodide, etc.), sulfuric acid esters, or sulfonic acid esters (e.g., methanesulfonate, p-toluenesulfonate, benzenesulfonate, etc.) and the like, and particularly halides. The amount of the reactive derivative is, for example, in the order of 1 to 10 molar equivalents,
25 preferably 1 to 5 molar equivalents, relative to 1 mole of the substrate.

If necessary, the reaction can be facilitated by adding an additive. Such additive includes, for example, iodides such as sodium iodide, potassium iodide, etc., a phase
30 transfer catalyst such as tetra-n-butylammonium hydrogen sulfate, benzyltriethylammonium chloride, etc., and the amount is in the order of about 0.1 to 10 molar equivalents, preferably about 0.1 to 5 molar equivalents, relative to 1 mole of the substrate.

35 The reaction temperature is usually in the order of -

- 52 -

10°C to 200°C, preferably about 0°C to 110°C, and the reaction time is usually in the order of 0.5 hour to 48 hours, preferably 0.5 hour to 16 hours.

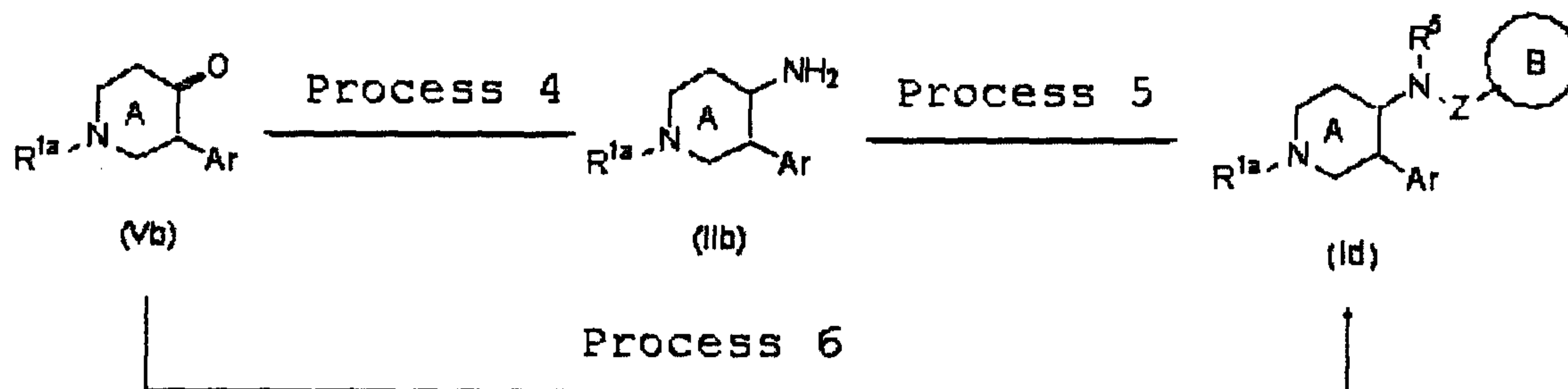
The reaction using the above-mentioned reactive derivative as the acylating agent, depends on the kinds of the reactive derivative or the substrate, but it can be usually carried out in a solvent. If necessary, a base may be added to facilitate the reaction. The solvent includes, for example, hydrocarbons such as benzene, toluene, etc., ethers such as ethyl ether, dioxane, tetrahydrofuran, etc., esters such as ethyl acetate, halogenated hydrocarbons such as chloroform, dichloromethane, etc., esters such as ethyl acetate, etc. amides such as N,N-dimethylformamide, etc., aromatic amines such as pyridine, etc., water and the like, which may be used in a suitable mixture. In addition, the base includes, for example, alkali metal hydroxides such as sodium hydroxide, potassium hydroxide, etc., hydrogen carbonates such as sodium hydrogen carbonate, potassium hydrogen carbonate, etc., carbonates such as sodium carbonate, potassium carbonate, etc., acetates such as sodium acetate, etc., tertiary amines such as trimethylamine, triethylamine, N-methylmorpholine, etc., aromatic amines such as pyridine, picoline, N,N-dimethylaniline, etc. and the like. The amount of the base is, for example, in the order of about 1 to about 100 molar equivalents, preferably about 1 to about 10 molar equivalents, relative to 1 mole of the substrate.

The acylating agent includes, for example, carboxylic acid or a reactive derivative thereof (e.g., acid halide, acid anhydride, mixed acid anhydride, active ester, etc.) and the like.

The amount of such acylating agent is usually 1 to 10 molar equivalents, preferably 1 to 3 molar equivalents, relative to 1 mole of the substrate. The reaction temperature is usually in the order of -10°C to 150°C, preferably about 0°C to 100°C, and the reaction time is

usually in the order of 15 minutes to 24 hours, preferably 30 minutes to 16 hours.

[Method C]



5 wherein R⁵ is an optionally substituted hydrocarbon group or an optionally substituted heterocyclic group, and other symbols have the same meanings as defined above.

The "optionally substituted hydrocarbon group or the optionally substituted heterocyclic group" represented by R⁵
 10 includes, for example, the same group as those referred to herein above for the foregoing group represented by R¹.

Compound (Vb) which is used as the starting compound in the present method, can be produced by the method described in Process 1 of Method B, etc.

15 (Process 4)

The present process is a process of converting a ketone of Compound (Vb) to imine or oxime, followed by reducing it to thus convert it into an amine compound (Iib).

20 Conversion of Compound (Vb) into imine or oxime can be carried out by using a known method, for example, by using various amines in a solvent inert to the reaction.

The amines include, for example, ammonias such as aqueous ammonia, ammonium chloride, ammonium acetate, etc. hydroxyamines such as hydroxylamine, O-methylhydroxylamine, O-
 25 benzylhydroxylamine, etc., and may be used as a salt form such as hydrochloride, sulfate, etc. or as an aqueous solution thereof. The amount of the amines is, for example, in the order of about 1 to 50 molar equivalents, preferably about 1 to 10 molar equivalents, relative to 1 mole of Compound (Vb).

30 The solvent which is inert to the reaction includes,

for example, aromatic hydrocarbons such as toluene, xylene, etc., aliphatic hydrocarbons such as heptane, hexane, etc., halogenated hydrocarbons such as chloroform, dichloromethane, etc., ethers such as diethyl ether, tetrahydrofuran, dioxane, etc., alcohols such as methanol, ethanol, 2-propanol, butanol, 5 benzyl alcohol, etc., nitriles such as acetonitrile, etc., dimethylformamide, dimethylsulfoxide and the like. Such solvent may be used in a mixture at a suitable ratio.

If necessary, the reaction can advantageously proceed 10 by adding a catalyst. Such catalyst is preferably mineral acids (e.g., hydrochloric acid, hydrobromic acid, sulfuric acid, etc.), carboxylic acids (e.g., formic acid, acetic acid, propionic acid, trifluoroacetic acid, etc.), sulfonic acids (e.g., methanesulfonic acid, p-toluenesulfonic acid, etc.), 15 Lewis acids (e.g., aluminum chloride, zinc chloride, zinc bromide, boron trifluoride, titanium chloride, etc.), acetate (e.g., sodium acetate, potassium acetate, etc.), and molecular sieves (e.g., molecular sieves 3A, 4A, 5A, etc). The amount of the catalyst is, for example, in the order of 20 about 0.01 to 50 molar equivalents, preferably about 0.1 to 10 molar equivalents, relative to 1 mole of Compound (Vb).

The reaction temperature is usually in the order of about 0°C to 200°C, preferably about 20°C to 150°C, and the reaction time is usually in the order of 0.5 hour to 48 hours, 25 preferably 0.5 hour to 24 hours.

The conversion of imine or oxime into an amine compound (IIb) in a solvent inert to the reaction, can be carried out by various reductions. Such reduction can be carried out by per se known methods, for example, a method using metal 30 hydride or a method by catalytic hydrogenation.

The metal hydride as the reducing agent includes, for example, sodium borohydride, lithium borohydride, zinc borohydride, sodium cyanoborohydride, sodium triacetoxymborohydride, lithium cyanoborohydride, aluminum 35 dibutylhydride, aluminum hydride, lithium aluminum hydride, a

- 55 -

borane complex (a borane-THF complex, catechol borane, etc.) and the like. The metal hydride includes preferably sodium borohydride, sodium cyanoborohydride, sodium triacetoxyborohydride, etc. The amount of the reducing agent is, for example, in the order of 1 to 50 molar equivalents, preferably 1 to 10 molar equivalents, relative to 1 mole of the substrate. The reduction by the metal hydride is usually carried out in a solvent inert to the reaction. Such solvent includes, for example, aromatic hydrocarbons such as toluene, xylene, etc., aliphatic hydrocarbons such as heptane, hexane, etc., halogenated hydrocarbons such as chloroform, dichloromethane, etc., ethers such as diethyl ether, tetrahydrofuran, dioxane, etc., alcohols such as methanol, ethanol, 2-propanol, butanol, benzyl alcohol, etc., nitriles such as acetonitrile, etc., dimethylformamide, dimethylsulfoxide and the like. Such solvent may be used in a mixture at a suitable ratio. The reaction temperature is usually in the order of about -80°C to 80°C, preferably about -40°C to 40°C, and the reaction time is usually in the order of 5 minutes to 48 hours, preferably 1 hour to 24 hours.

The catalytic hydrogenation can be carried out under hydrogen atmosphere and in the presence of a catalyst. The catalyst to be used is preferably palladium compounds such as palladium carbon, palladium hydroxide, palladium oxide, etc., nickel compounds such as Raney-nickel, etc., platinum compounds such as platinum oxide, platinum carbon, etc., rhodium compounds such as rhodium acetate, etc. and the like, and the amount is in the order of about 0.001 to 1 equivalent, preferably about 0.01 to 0.5 equivalent. The catalytic hydrogenation is usually carried out in a solvent inert to the reaction. Such solvent includes, for example, alcohols such as methanol, ethanol, propanol, butanol, etc.; hydrocarbons such as benzene, toluene, xylene, etc.; halogenated hydrocarbons such as dichloromethane, chloroform, etc.; ethers such as diethyl ether, dioxane, tetrahydrofuran,

- 56 -

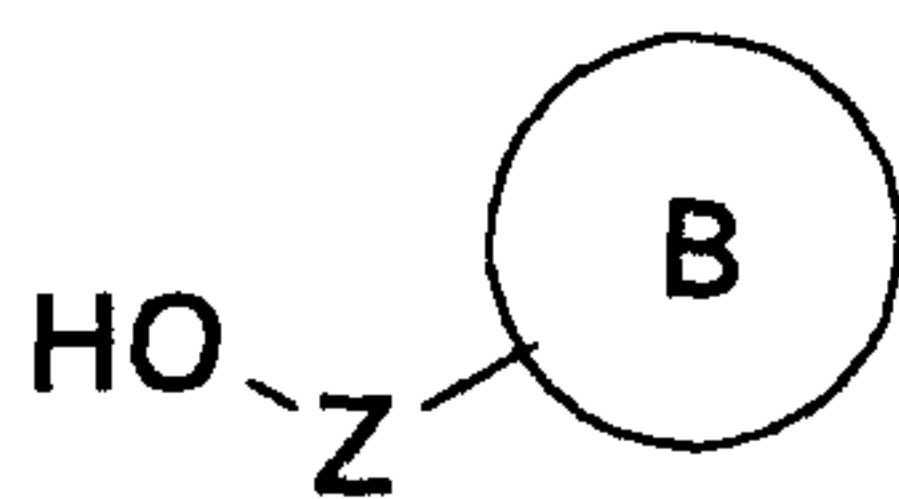
etc.; esters such as ethyl acetate, etc.; amides such as N,N-dimethylformamide, etc.; carboxylic acids such as acetic acid, etc.; water, or a mixture thereof. The hydrogen pressure under which the reaction is carried out, is usually in the
 5 order of about 1 to 50 atm, preferably about 1 to 10 atm. The reaction temperature is usually in the order of about 0°C to 150°C, preferably about 20°C to 100°C, and the reaction time is usually in the order of 5 minutes to 72 hours, preferably 0.5 hour to 40 hours.

10 In the present process, Compound (IIb) can be also produced directly from Compound (Vb) while carrying out the reactions of producing and reducing the above-mentioned imine or oxime at the same time, without isolating imine or oxime which is an intermediate. In this case, pH of the reaction
 15 mixture is preferably from about 4 to about 5.

(Process 5)

The present process is a process of alkylating, acylating or reductively alkylating an amine compound (IIb) to thus convert it into Compound (Id).

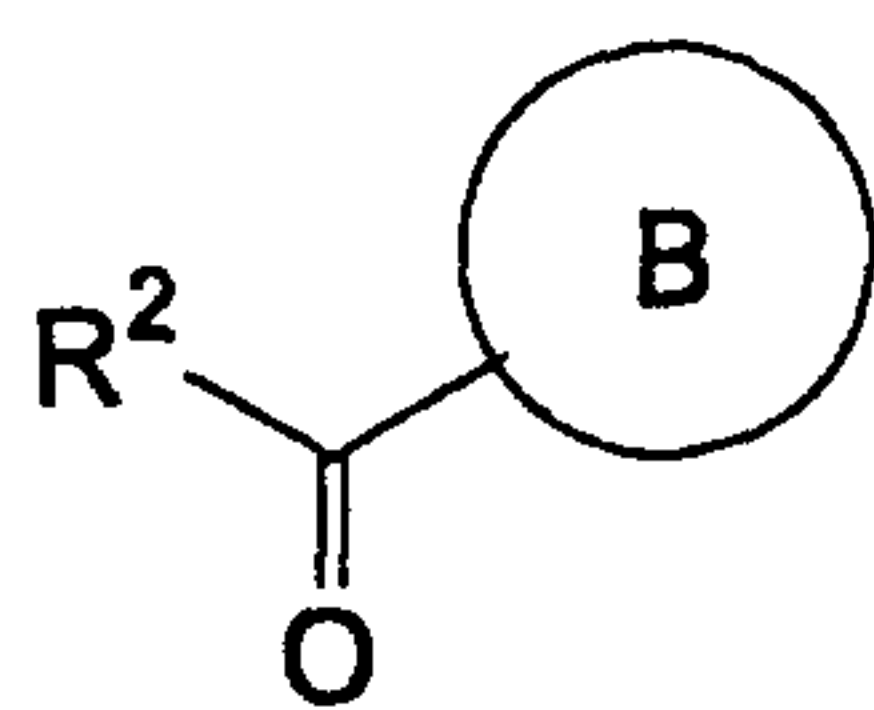
20 The alkylation or acylation can be carried out by reacting an amine compound (IIb) with a compound represented by the formula:



(III)

wherein each symbol has the same meanings as defined
 25 above, a salt thereof or a reactive derivative thereof which is an alkylating agent or an acylating agent, and can be carried out by the same method described in Process 3 of Method B.

The reductive alkylation can be carried out by per se
 30 known methods, for example, by reacting an amine compound (IIb) with a compound represented by the formula:



(IV)

wherein R² is a hydrogen atom or an optionally substituted hydrocarbon group, and Ring B has the same meaning as defined above, a salt thereof or a reactive
 5 derivative thereof, and reducing the produced imine or iminium ion.

The "optionally substituted hydrocarbon group" represented by R² includes, for example, the same group as those referred to herein above for the foregoing group
 10 represented by R¹.

The reaction to produce imine or iminium ion is usually carried out in a solvent which has no adverse influence on the reaction. Such solvent includes, for example, aromatic hydrocarbons such as toluene, xylene, etc., aliphatic
 15 hydrocarbons such as heptane, hexane, etc., halogenated hydrocarbons such as chloroform, dichloromethane, etc., ethers such as diethyl ether, tetrahydrofuran, dioxane, etc., alcohols such as methanol, ethanol, 2-propanol, butanol, benzyl alcohol, etc., nitriles such as acetonitrile, etc.,
 20 dimethylformamide, dimethylsulfoxide and the like. Such solvent may be used in a mixture at a suitable ratio.

If necessary, the reaction can advantageously proceed by adding a catalyst. Such catalyst is preferably mineral acids (e.g., hydrochloric acid, hydrobromic acid, sulfuric
 25 acid, etc.), carboxylic acids (e.g., formic acid, acetic acid, propionic acid, trifluoroacetic acid, etc.), sulfonic acids (e.g., methanesulfonic acid, p-toluenesulfonic acid, etc.), Lewis acids (e.g., aluminum chloride, zinc chloride, zinc bromide, boron trifluoride, titanium chloride, etc.),
 30 acetates (e.g. sodium acetate, potassium acetate, etc.), molecular sieves (molecular sieves 3A, 4A, 5A, etc) and the

- 58 -

like. The amount of the catalyst is, for example, in the order of about 0.01 to 50 molar equivalents, preferably about 0.1 to 10 molar equivalents, relative to 1 mole of Compound (IIb).

5 The reaction temperature is usually in the order of about 0°C to 200°C, preferably about 20°C to 150°C, and the reaction time is usually in the order of 0.5 hour to 48 hours, preferably 0.5 hour to 24 hours.

 The reduction of imine or iminium ion can be carried
10 out by per se known methods, for example, a method using metal hydride or a method by catalytic hydrogenation.

 The metal hydride as the reducing agent includes, for example, sodium borohydride, lithium borohydride, zinc borohydride, sodium cyanoborohydride, sodium
15 triacetoxyborohydride, lithium cyanoborohydride, aluminum dibutylhydride, aluminum hydride, lithium aluminum hydride, a borane complex (a borane-THF complex, catechol borane, etc.) and the like. The metal hydride includes preferably sodium borohydride, sodium cyanoborohydride, sodium
20 triacetoxyborohydride, etc. The amount of the reducing agent is, for example, in the order of 1 to 50 molar equivalents, preferably 1 to 10 molar equivalents, relative to 1 mole of the substrate. In addition, the reaction solvent includes, for example, aromatic hydrocarbons such as toluene, xylene,
25 etc., aliphatic hydrocarbons such as heptane, hexane, etc., halogenated hydrocarbons such as chloroform, dichloromethane, etc., ethers such as diethyl ether, tetrahydrofuran, dioxane, etc., alcohols such as methanol, ethanol, 2-propanol, butanol, benzyl alcohol, etc., nitriles such as acetonitrile, etc.,
30 dimethylformamide, dimethylsulfoxide and the like. Such solvent may be used in a mixture at a suitable ratio. The reaction temperature is usually in the order of about -80°C to 80°C, preferably about -40°C to 40°C, and the reaction time is usually in the order of 5 minutes to 48 hours, preferably
35 1 hour to 24 hours.

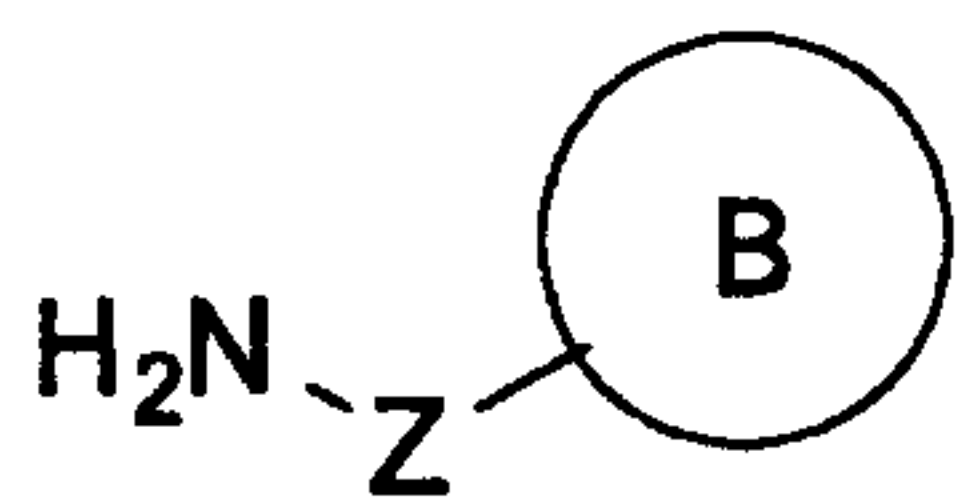
- 59 -

The catalytic hydrogenation can be carried out under hydrogen atmosphere and in the presence of a catalyst. The catalyst to be used is preferably palladium compounds such as palladium carbon, palladium hydroxide, palladium oxide, etc., nickel compounds such as Raney-nickel, etc., platinum compounds such as platinum oxide, platinum carbon, etc., rhodium compounds such as rhodium acetate, etc. and the like, and the amount is in the order of about 0.001 to 1 equivalent, preferably about 0.01 to 0.5 equivalent. The catalytic hydrogenation is usually carried out in a solvent inert to the reaction. Such solvent includes, for example, alcohols such as methanol, ethanol, propanol, butanol, etc.; hydrocarbons such as benzene, toluene, xylene, etc.; halogenated hydrocarbons such as dichloromethane, chloroform, etc.; ethers such as diethyl ether, dioxane, tetrahydrofuran, etc.; esters such as ethyl acetate, etc.; amides such as N,N-dimethylformamide, etc.; carboxylic acids such as acetic acid, etc.; water, or a mixture thereof. The hydrogen pressure under which the reaction is carried out, is usually in the order of about 1 to 50 atm, preferably about 1 to 10 atm. The reaction temperature is usually in the order of about 0°C to 150°C, preferably about 20°C to 100°C, and the reaction time is usually in the order of 5 minutes to 72 hours, preferably 0.5 hour to 40 hours.

In the present process, Compound (Id) can be also produced directly from Compound (IIb) while carrying out the reactions to produce imine or iminium ion and to reduce the products at the same time, without isolating imine or iminium ion which is an intermediate. In this case, pH of the reaction mixture is preferably from about 4 to about 5. (Process 6)

The present reaction is a process of reductively aminating Compound (Vb) to thus convert it into Compound (Id). The present reaction can be carried out by the known methods, for example, by reacting Compound (Vb) with a compound

represented by the formula:



(VII)

wherein each symbol has the same meanings as defined above, a salt thereof or a reactive derivative thereof, and
5 reducing the produced imine or iminium ion.

The reaction to produce imine or iminium ion and the reduction can be carried out by the same method described in the reductive amination of Process 5.

In the present process, Compound (Id) can be also
10 produced directly from Compound (Vb) while carrying out the reaction to produce imine or iminium ion and to reduce the products at the same time, without isolating imine or iminium ion which is an intermediate. In this case, pH of the reaction mixture is preferably from about 4 to about 5.

15 Compound (I) obtained by the methods described in the above-mentioned Method A, Method B and Method C, can be further subjected to known reactions including condensation reactions such as various acylation, alkylation, or oxidation, reduction, etc. to prepare a further derivative. Such
20 reactions can be carried out according to the known methods.

Among Compounds (Va) or (Vb) which is used as the starting compound in Method B, the compound wherein Ar is an aryl group or an aromatic heterocyclic group, each of which may be substituted, Compound (Vc), can be produced, for
25 example, by Method D below.

[Method D]



(VIII)

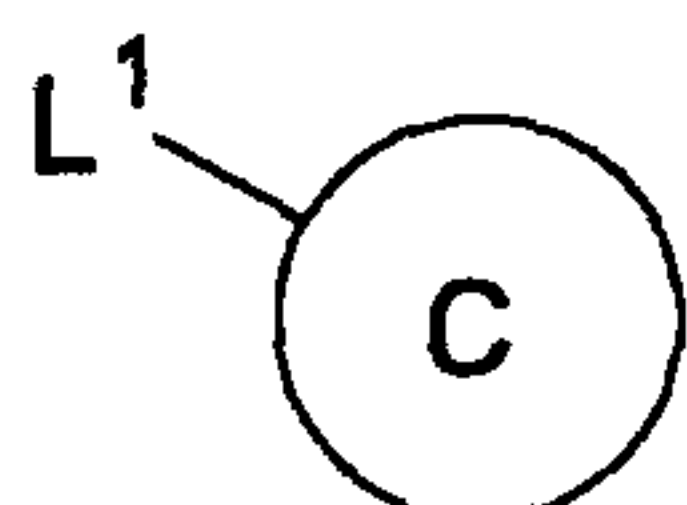
(Vc)

wherein Ring C is an aryl group or an aromatic

- 61 -

heterocyclic group, each of which may be substituted, and other symbols have the same meanings as defined above.

The present reaction is a reaction of arylating ketone compound (VIII) to thus convert it into Compound (Vc). The present reaction can be carried out by the known methods, for example, by reacting Compound (VIII) with a compound represented by the formula:



(IX)

wherein L^1 is a leaving group, and Ring C has the same meaning as defined above, or a salt thereof in the presence of a base and a transition metal catalyst.

"The aryl group or the aromatic heterocyclic group, each of which may be substituted" represented by Ring C includes, for example, the same group as those referred to herein above for the foregoing group represented by Ar.

Compound (VIII) which is the starting compound is commercially available, or can be produced by known methods.

The leaving group represented by L^1 in Compound (IX) includes, for example, a halogen atom (e.g., a chlorine atom, a bromine atom, an iodine atom, etc.), a substituted sulfonyloxy group (e.g., an optionally substituted C_{1-6} alkylsulfonyloxy group such as methanesulfonyloxy, ethanesulfonyloxy, trifluoromethanesulfonyloxy, etc.; a C_{6-14} arylsulfonyloxy group such as benzenesulfonyloxy, p-toluenesulfonyloxy, etc.; a C_{7-16} aralkylsulfonyloxy group such as benzylsulfonyloxy group, etc.), acyloxy (acetoxy, benzoyloxy, etc.) and the like, and preferably, a bromine atom, an iodine atom, a trifluoromethanesulfonyloxy group and the like.

The base to be used includes, for example, organic amines (e.g., alkylamines such as trimethylamine, triethylamine, diisopropylethylamine, N-methylmorpholine,

- 62 -

1,8-diazabicyclo[5.4.0]undeca-7-ene, etc., aromatic amines such as pyridine, N,N-dimethylaniline, etc.), alkali metal salts (e.g., sodium hydrogen carbonate, potassium hydrogen carbonate, sodium carbonate, potassium carbonate, cesium carbonate, sodium hydroxide, potassium hydroxide, etc.), metal hydrides (e.g., potassium hydride, sodium hydride, etc.), alkali metal alkoxides (e.g., sodium methoxide, sodium ethoxide, sodium t-butoxide, potassium t-butoxide, etc.), alkali disilazides (e.g., lithium disilazide, sodium disilazide, potassium disilazide, etc.) and the like, and preferably, alkali metal salts such as cesium carbonate, alkali metal alkoxides such as potassium t-butoxide, etc. and the like. The amount of Compound (IX) is, for example, in the order of about 1 to about 10 molar equivalents, preferably about 1 to about 5 molar equivalents, relative to 1 mole of the substrate. The amount of the base is, for example, in the order of about 1 to about 100 molar equivalents, preferably about 1 to about 10 molar equivalents, relative to 1 mole of the substrate.

The transition metal catalyst includes, for example, a palladium catalyst such as palladium acetate, palladium chloride, palladium tetrakis(triphenylphosphine); a nickel catalyst such as nickel chloride, etc. and the like. If necessary, a ligand such as triphenylphosphine, tri-t-butylphosphine, etc. can be used.

The amount of the catalyst varies depending on the kinds of the catalyst, but it is usually in the order of about 0.0001 to about 1 molar equivalent, preferably about 0.01 to about 0.5 molar equivalents, relative to 1 mole of Compound (VIII). The amount of the ligand is usually in the order of about 0.0001 to about 4 molar equivalents, preferably about 0.01 to about 2 molar equivalents, relative to 1 mole of Compound (VIII).

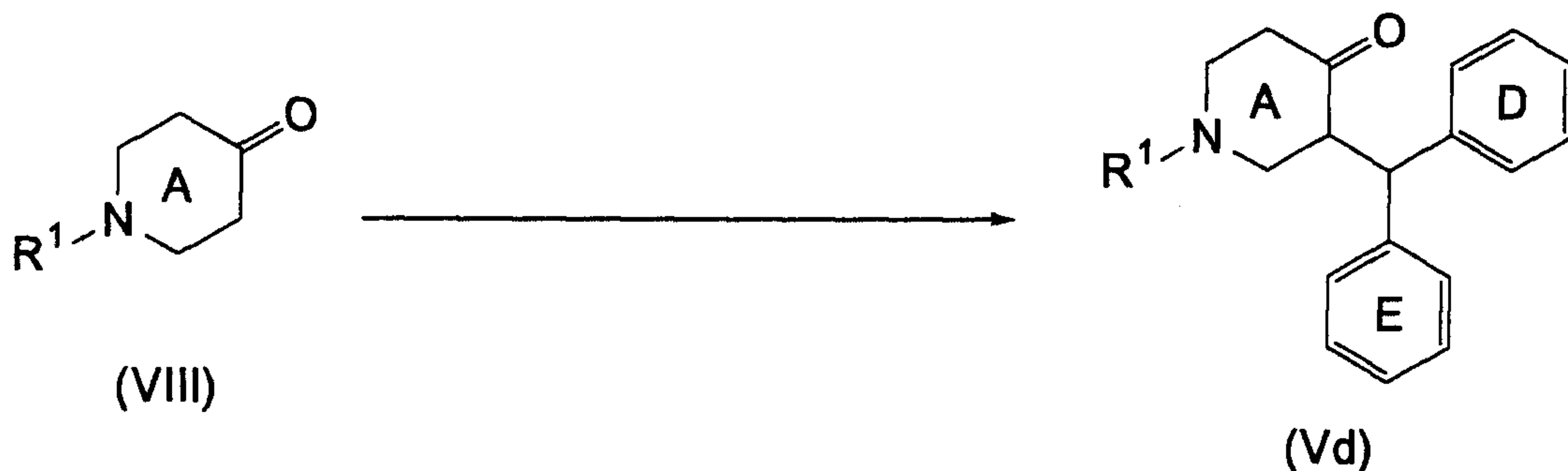
The reaction condition (a solvent, temperature, time, etc.) varies depending on the kinds of Compound (VIII),

- 63 -

Compound (IX), the base and the catalyst to be used. For example, the reaction is usually carried out in a solvent inert to the reaction. The solvent includes, for example, hydrocarbons such as benzene, toluene, xylene, etc.;
 5 halogenated hydrocarbons such as dichloromethane, chloroform, etc.; nitriles such as acetonitrile, etc.; ethers such as dimethoxyethane, tetrahydrofuran, etc.; alcohols such as methanol, ethanol, etc.; a non-protonic polar solvent such as dimethylformamide, dimethylsulfoxides,
 10 hexamethylphosphoramide, etc.; water, or a mixture thereof.

Among Compounds (Va) or (Vb) which is used as the starting compound in Method B, the compound wherein Ar is an optionally substituted benzhydryl group, Compound (Vd), can be produced, for example, by Method E below.

15 [Method E]



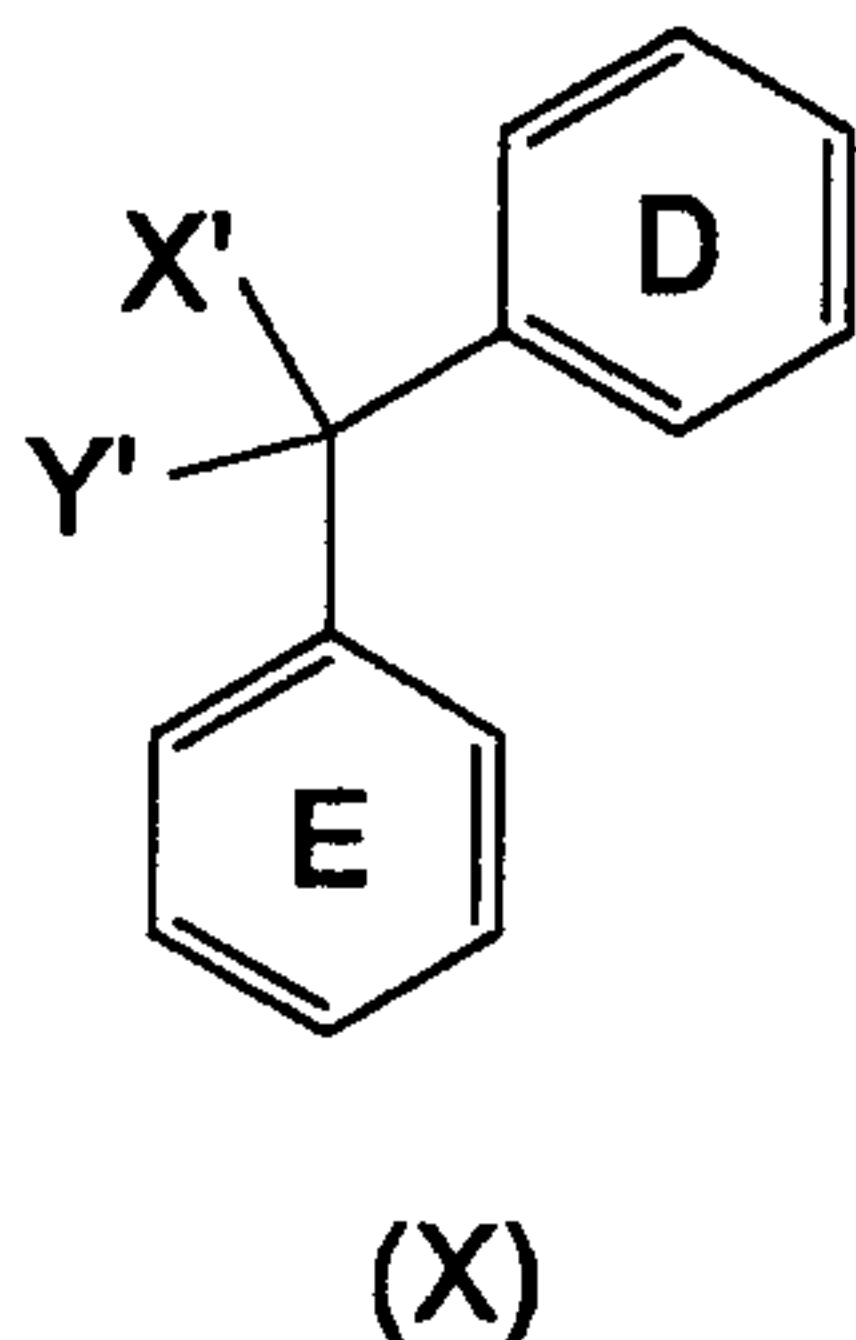
wherein Ring D and Ring E are an optionally substituted benzene ring, respectively and other symbols have the same meanings as defined above.

20 The "substituent" of the "an optionally substituted benzene ring, respectively" represented by Ring D and Ring E includes, for example, the same group as those referred to herein above for the foregoing "substituent" in "the aryl group, the aralkyl group or the aromatic heterocyclic group,
 25 each of which may be substituted" represented by Ar.

Compound (VIII), the starting compound, is commercially available, or can be produced by known methods.

The present reaction is a process of producing Compound (Vd) by reacting Compound (VIII) with Compound (X)

represented by the formula:



wherein X' and Y' are respectively a hydrogen atom, a hydroxy group or a halogen atom, and other symbols have the same meanings as defined above, provided that when X' is a hydrogen atom, Y' is a hydroxy group or a halogen atom, and when X' is a halogen atom, Y' is a halogen atom, or a salt thereof in the presence of trialkylsilyl triflate.

The trialkylsilyl triflate is not particularly limited, but preferably trimethylsilyltrifluoromethane sulfonate. The amount of the trialkylsilyl triflate is 1 to 10 molar equivalents, preferably 1 to 4 molar equivalents, relative to 1 mole of Compound (VIII) or a salt thereof.

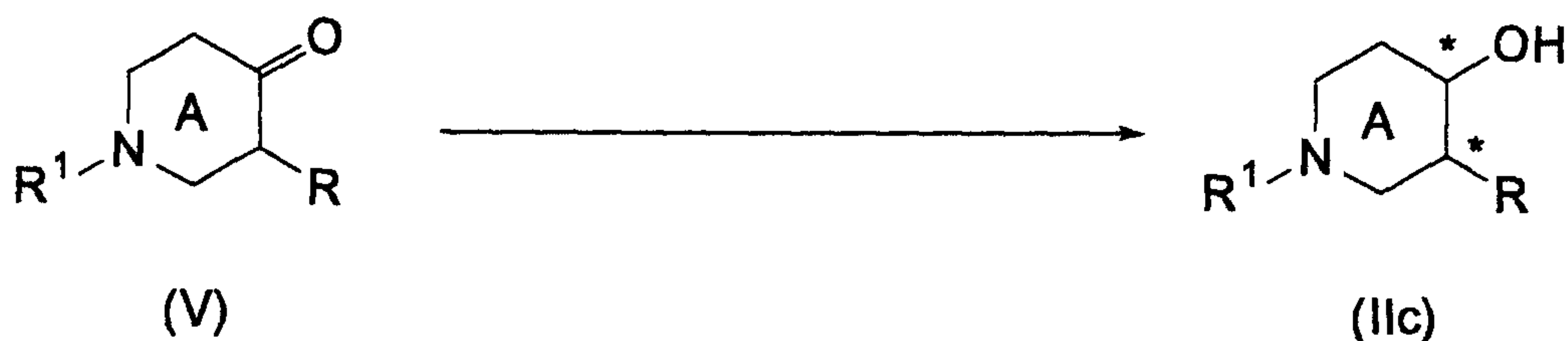
If necessary, the reaction can advantageously proceed by adding an acid catalyst. The acid catalyst includes mineral acid, Lewis acid, etc., and is not particularly limited, but preferably, a zinc salt such as zinc chloride, zinc bromide, zinc iodide, etc., an aluminum salt such as aluminum chloride, etc., an iron salt such as iron chloride, etc., halogenated boron such as boron trifluoride, etc., and more preferably, a zinc salt such as zinc bromide, etc. The amount of the catalyst is 0.001 to 1 molar equivalents, preferably 0.1 to 1 molar equivalents, relative to 1 mole of Compound (VIII) or a salt thereof. When a benzhydrol derivative (when X' is a hydrogen atom and Y' is a hydroxy group in Compound (X)) is used as Compound (X), addition of a catalyst is not particularly needed, but a catalyst may be added depending on the case. The benzhydrol derivative used in the present process is a known one or, can be produced

- 65 -

easily according to known methods [for example, Chem. Ber. 103, 2041-2051 (1970)] from the corresponding benzophenone derivative. The amount of Compound (X) is 1 to 5 molar equivalents, preferably 1 to 3 molar equivalents, relative to 1 mole of Compound (VIII) or a salt thereof. The reaction is usually carried out in a solvent inert to the reaction. The solvent includes, for example, halogenated hydrocarbons such as dichloromethane, dichloroethane, chloroform, etc.; nitriles such as acetonitrile, etc.; esters such as ethyl acetate, etc.; ethers such as dimethoxyethane, tetrahydrofuran, dioxane, etc.; hydrocarbons such as benzene, toluene, etc.; amides such as dimethylformamide, hexamethylphosphoramide, etc.; a non-protonic solvent including sulfoxides such as dimethylsulfoxides, etc., and preferably, halogenated hydrocarbons such as dichloromethane, dichloroethane, etc. The reaction temperature is usually from -78°C to a boiling point of the solvent, particularly from -50°C to room temperature. The reaction time varies depending on the kinds of Compound (VIII) or a salt thereof, the kinds of Compound (X), the reaction temperature and other reaction conditions, but it is usually 1 to 96 hours, preferably 1 to 16 hours.

An optically active form of Compound (I) or a salt thereof of the present invention can be produced by reacting an alcohol compound (IIc) or an amine compound (IIId) obtained by Method F or Method G below, according to the method described in the above-mentioned Methods A to C.

[Method F]



wherein R is an optionally substituted hydrocarbon group or an optionally substituted heterocyclic group, * is a

- 66 -

chiral center, and other symbols have the same meanings as defined above. OH and R have a cis configuration relationship.

"The optionally substituted hydrocarbon group or the optionally substituted heterocyclic group" represented by R includes, for example, the same group as those referred to herein above for the foregoing group represented by R¹.

The optically active alcohol compound (IIc) in which OH and R are in cis configuration can be obtained by hydrogenating a ketone compound (V) in the presence of an optically active ruthenium-phosphine-amine complex and a base in the present reaction.

Compound (V) used as a starting material in the present reaction can be produced by the above-mentioned Method D, Method E, or according to a known method.

The optically active ruthenium-phosphine-amine complex used in the present reaction can be produced by reacting phosphine or a salt thereof, amine or a salt thereof, and a ruthenium complex, according to the known methods, for example, the method described in J. Am. Chem. Soc., 120, 13529 (1998); Angew. Chem. Int. Ed., 37, 1703 (1998); JP-A-11-189600 and the like, or an analogous method thereto. Herein, at least one of phosphine or amine is preferably in optically active form. The time and sequence of adding phosphine, amine and a ruthenium complex to the reaction system in the present reaction are not particularly limited, and these may be added to the reaction system at the same time, or separately at timed intervals. Thus obtained optically active ruthenium-phosphine-amine complex is separated by known means, for example, concentration, solvent extraction, fractional distillation, crystallization, recrystallization, chromatography, etc., and is then used in the production method of the present invention, preferably after purification.

The phosphine to be used includes, for example,

- 67 -

trimethylphosphine, triethylphosphine, tributylphosphine,
 triphenylphosphine, tricyclohexylphosphine, tri(p-
 tolyl)phosphine, diphenylmethylphosphine,
 dimethylphenylphosphine, bis(diphenylphosphino)methane,
 5 bis(diphenylphosphino)ethane, bis(diphenylphosphino)propane,
 bis(diphenylphosphino)butane, bis(dimethylphosphino)ethane,
 bis(dimethylphosphino)propane, 2,2'-bis-(diphenylphosphino)-
 1,1'-binaphthyl (hereinafter, briefly referred to as BINAP),
 a BINAP derivative having (a) substituent(s) such as an alkyl
 10 group, an aryl group, etc. on the naphthyl ring of BINAP
 (2,2'-bis-(diphenylphosphino)-6,6'-dimethyl-1,1'-binaphthyl),
 a BINAP derivative in which the naphthyl ring of BINAP is
 partially hydrogenated, such as H8 BINAP (2,2'-bis-
 (diphenylphosphino)-5,6,7,8,5',6',7',8'-octahydro-1,1'-
 15 binaphthyl), a BINAP derivative having 1 to 5 alkyl group
 substituents on one benzene ring on the phosphorus atom of
 BINAP, such as 2,2'-bis-(di-p-tolylphosphino)-1,1'-binaphthyl
 (Tol-BINAP), 2,2'-bis[bis(3,5-dimethylphenyl)phosphino]-1,1'-
 binaphthyl (Xyl-BINAP), 2,2'-bis(dicyclohexylphosphino)-6,6'-
 20 dimethyl-1,1'-biphenyl (BICHEP), 2,3-
 bis(diphenylphosphino)butane (CHIRAPHOS), 1-cyclohexyl-1,2-
 bis(diphenylphosphino)ethane (CYCPHOS), 1,2-bis[(o-
 methoxyphenyl)phenylphosphino]ethane (DIPAMP), 1,2-
 bis(diphenylphosphino)propane (PROPHOS), 2,4-
 25 bis(diphenylphosphino)pentane (SKEWPHOS), 1-[1',2-
 bis(diphenylphosphino)ferrocenyl]ethyldiamine (BPPFA), 1-
 substituted-3,4-bis-(diphenylphosphino)pyrrolidine (DEGPHOS),
 2,3-O-isopropyliden-2,3-dihydroxy-1,4-
 bis(diphenylphosphino)butane (DIOP), (substituted-1,2-
 30 bis(phosphorano)benzene) (DuPHOS), 5,6-bis-
 diphenylphosphino)-2-norbornene (NORPHOS), N,N'-
 bis(diphenylphosphino)-N,N'-bis(1-phenylethyl)
 ethylenediamine (PNNP) and the like.

The phosphine is preferably optically active phosphine,
 35 more preferably, optically active phosphine such as BINAP, H8

- 68 -

BINAP, Tol-BINAP, Xyl-BINAP, BICHEP, CHIRAPHOS, CYCPHOS, DIPAMP, PROPHOS, SKEWPHOS, etc. and particularly BINAP, Xyl-BINAP and the like.

The amine to be used includes, for example, monoamines
5 such as methylamine, ethylamine, propylamine, butylamine, pentylamine, hexylamine, cyclopentylamine, cyclohexylamine, benzylamine, dimethylamine, diethylamine, dipropylamine, dihexylamine, dicyclopentylamine, dicyclohexylamine, dibenzylamine, diphenylamine, phenylethylamine, piperidine,
10 piperazine, phenylethylamine, naphthylethylamine, cyclohexylethylamine, cycloheptylethylamine, etc, diamines such as methylenediamine, ethylenediamine, 1,2-diaminopropane, 1,3-diaminopropane, 1,4-diaminobutane, 2,3-diaminobutane, 1,2-cyclopentanediamine, 1,2-cyclohexanediamine, N-
15 methylethylenediamine, N,N'-dimethylethylenediamine, o-phenylenediamine, p-phenylenediamine, 1,2-diphenylethylenediamine (hereinafter, briefly referred to as DPEN), 1,2-cyclohexanediamine, 1,2-cycloheptanediamine, 2,3-dimethylbutanediamine, 1-methyl-2,2-diphenylethylenediamine,
20 1-isobutyl-2,2-diphenylethylenediamine, 1-isopropyl-2,2-diphenylethylenediamine, 1-methyl-2,2-bis(p-methoxyphenyl)ethylenediamine, 1-isobutyl-2,2-bis(p-methoxyphenyl)ethylenediamine, 1-isopropyl-2,2-bis(p-methoxyphenyl)ethylenediamine (hereinafter, briefly referred
25 to as DAIPEN), 1-benzyl-2,2-bis(p-methoxyphenyl)ethylenediamine, 1-methyl-2,2-dinaphthylethylenediamine, 1-isobutyl-2,2-dinaphthylethylenediamine, 1-isopropyl-2,2-dinaphthylethylenediamine, a propanediamine derivative, a
30 butanediamine derivative, a phenylenediamine derivative, a cyclohexanediamine derivative, etc. and the like.

The amine is preferably optically active amine, more preferably, optically active amine such as phenylethylamine, naphthylethylamine, cyclohexylethylamine,
35 cycloheptylethylamine, 1,2-diphenylethylenediamine, 1,2-

- 69 -

cyclohexanediamine, 1,2-cycloheptanediamine, 2,3-dimethylbutanediamine, 1-methyl-2,2-diphenylethylenediamine, 1-isobutyl-2,2-diphenylethylenediamine, 1-isopropyl-2,2-diphenylethylenediamine, 1-methyl-2,2-bis(p-methoxyphenyl)ethylenediamine, 1-isobutyl-2,2-bis(p-methoxyphenyl)ethylenediamine, 1-isopropyl-2,2-bis(p-methoxyphenyl)ethylenediamine, 1-benzyl-2,2-bis(p-methoxyphenyl)ethylenediamine, 1-methyl-2,2-dinaphthylethylenediamine, 1-isobutyl-2,2-dinaphthylethylenediamine, 1-isopropyl-2,2-dinaphthylethylenediamine, etc, and particularly 1,2-diphenylethylenediamine, 1-isopropyl-2,2-bis(p-methoxyphenyl)ethylenediamine and the like.

The ruthenium complex includes, for example, an inorganic ruthenium compound such as ruthenium chloride (III) hydrate, ruthenium bromide (III) hydrate, ruthenium iodide (III) hydrate, etc.; a ruthenium compound coordinated with diene such as [a polynuclear form of ruthenium(norbornadiene) dichloride], [a polynuclear form of ruthenium(cyclooctadiene) dichloride], bis(methylallyl)ruthenium(cyclooctadiene), etc.; a ruthenium complex coordinated with an aromatic compound such as [a dinuclear form of ruthenium(benzene) dichloride], [a dinuclear form of ruthenium(p-cymene) dichloride], [a dinuclear form of ruthenium(trimethylbenzene) dichloride], [a dinuclear form of ruthenium(hexamethylbenzene) dichloride], etc.; a ruthenium complex coordinated with phosphine such as dichlorotris(triphenylphosphine)ruthenium, etc. and the like.

The optically active ruthenium-phosphine-amine complex obtained by combination of the exemplified phosphine, amine and ruthenium complex can be used in the present reaction. For example,

$\text{RuCl}_2[(S)\text{-BINAP}][(S,S)\text{-DPEN}]$,
 $\text{RuCl}_2[(R)\text{-BINAP}][(R,R)\text{-DPEN}]$,
 $\text{RuCl}_2[(S)\text{-xylBINAP}][(S)\text{-DAIPEN}]$,
 $\text{RuCl}_2[(R)\text{-xylBINAP}][(R)\text{-DAIPEN}]$ and the like are particularly

preferred.

The amount of the optically active ruthenium-phosphine-amine complex varies depending on the reaction vessel, the reaction type and the like, but it is for example, 0.0001 to
5 0.1 molar equivalents, preferably 0.0001 to 0.02 molar equivalents, relative to 1 mole of a ketone compound (V) which is the reaction substrate.

The base used in the present process includes, for example, alkali metal hydroxides such as potassium hydroxide,
10 sodium hydroxide, cesium hydroxide, etc.; alkali metal alkoxides such as lithium methoxide, sodium methoxide, potassium methoxide, lithium ethoxide, sodium ethoxide, potassium ethoxide, lithium propoxide, sodium propoxide, potassium propoxide, lithium isopropoxide, sodium
15 isopropoxide, potassium isopropoxide, potassium tert-butoxide, etc.; alkylthio alkali metals such as sodium thiomethoxide, etc. and the like. The alkali metal hydroxides and the alkali metal alkoxides are preferably sodium hydroxide, potassium hydroxide, potassium isopropoxide, potassium tert-
20 butoxide and the like, and particularly potassium hydroxide and potassium tert-butoxide.

The amount of the base is, for example, 0.5 to 100 molar equivalents, preferably 2 to 40 molar equivalents, relative to 1 mole of the optically active ruthenium-
25 phosphine-amine complex.

In the present process, hydrogenation of the compound represented by the ketone compound (V) or a salt thereof is usually carried out in a suitable solvent.

Such solvent is not particularly limited if it has no
30 adverse influence on the reaction and solubilizes the starting compounds and the catalyst, and it includes, for example, aromatic hydrocarbons such as toluene, xylene, etc.; aliphatic hydrocarbons such as heptane, hexane, etc.; halogenated hydrocarbons such as methylene chloride, etc.;
35 ethers such as diethyl ether, tetrahydrofuran, etc.; alcohols

- 71 -

such as methanol, ethanol, 2-propanol, butanol, benzyl alcohol, etc.; nitriles such as acetonitrile, etc.; dimethylformamide, dimethylsulfoxide and the like. Such solvent may be used in a mixture at a suitable ratio. The solvent is preferably alcohol, particularly 2-propanol.

The above-mentioned solvent is preferably used after drying and degassing.

The amount of the solvent is suitably determined by solubility of Compound (V) and the like. For example, if alcohol (preferably 2-propanol) is used as the solvent, the reaction can be carried out from in the nearly solventless state to in a solvent in an amount of 100 times by weight or more, preferably 2 to 50 times by weight as much as Compound (V).

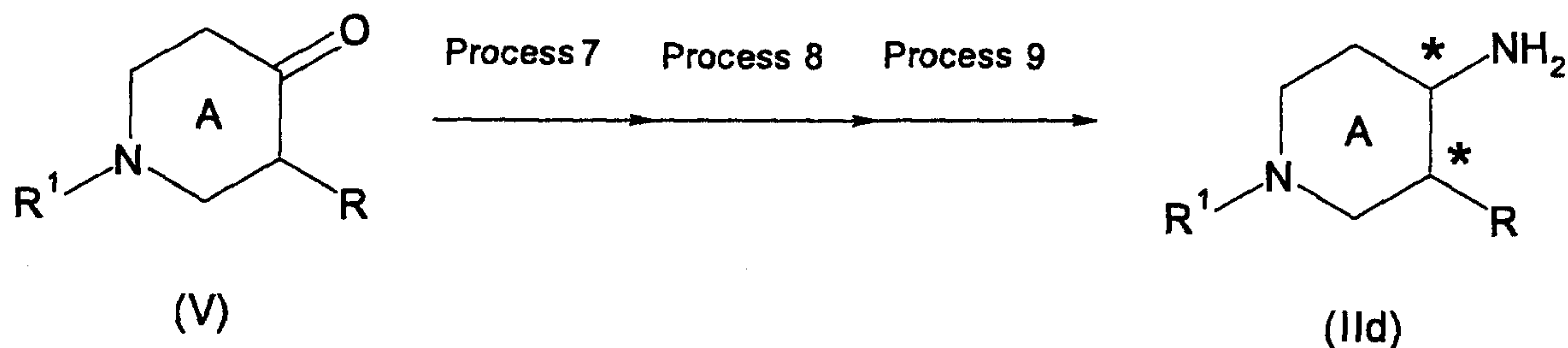
The hydrogenation can be carried out in a batch mode or in a continuous mode. In addition, the hydrogenation is carried out in the presence of hydrogen, and the hydrogen pressure is, for example, 1 to 200 atm, preferably 1 to 10 atm.

The reaction temperature is preferably -30 to 100°C, further preferably 10 to 50°C, particularly preferably 20 to 50°C.

The reaction time is preferably 0.5 to 48 hours, further preferably 2 to 24 hours.

Thus obtained optically active alcohol compound (IIc) is subjected to the reactions described in the above-mentioned Methods A to C, to thus produce an optically active Compound (I) or a salt thereof.

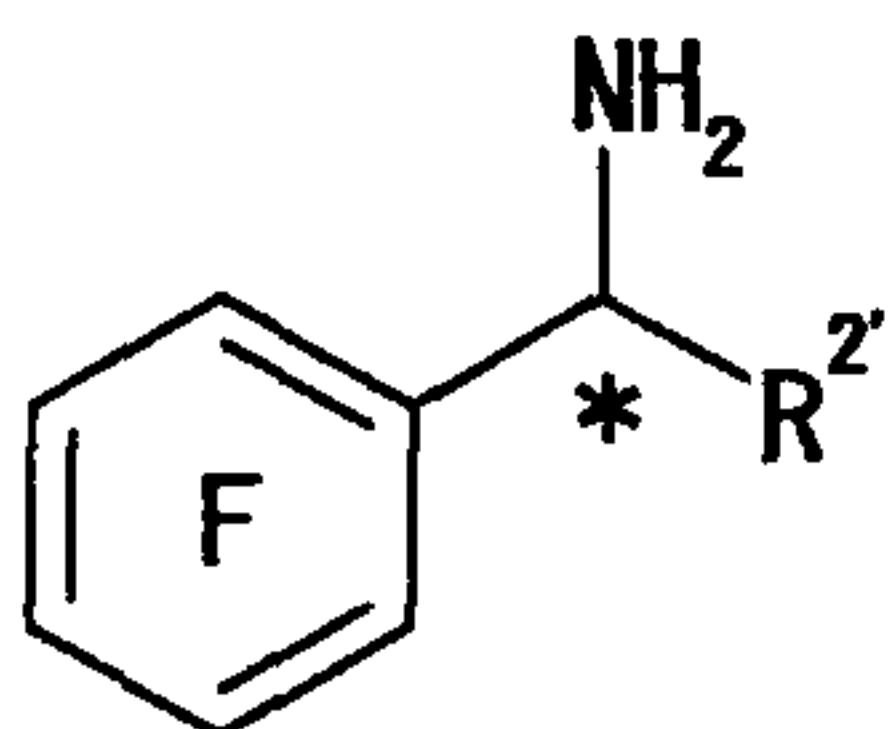
[Method G]



- 72 -

wherein * is a chiral center, and other symbols have the same meanings as defined above. NH_2 and R have a cis configuration relationship.

In the present method, the ketone compound (V) is
 5 subjected to condensation with an optically active compound represented by the formula:



(VI)

wherein Ring F is an optionally substituted, optionally fused benzene ring, $\text{R}^{2'}$ is an optionally substituted
 10 hydrocarbon group, and other symbols have the same meanings as defined above, or a salt thereof, followed by hydrogenation and further hydrogenolysis, to give an optically active amine compound (IIId) in which NH_2 and R are in cis configuration. Compound (V) used as the starting
 15 compound in the present method can be produced by the method described in the above-mentioned Method D and Method E, or according to a known method.

The "substituent" of the "optionally substituted, optionally fused benzene ring" represented by Ring F includes,
 20 for example, the same group as those referred to herein above for the foregoing "substituent" in the "optionally substituted aromatic ring" represented by Ring B. In addition, the benzene ring may be fused with the benzene ring or the "heterocyclic ring" represented by R^1 .

25 The "optionally substituted hydrocarbon group" represented by $\text{R}^{2'}$ includes, for example, the same group as those referred to herein above for the foregoing group represented by R^1 .

(Process 7)

30 The present process is a process of reacting Compound

- 73 -

(V) with optically active amine (VI) to thus convert it into imine. The conversion of Compound (V) into imine can be carried out using the known methods, for example, by using optically active amine (VI), and if necessary, using a catalyst in a solvent inert to the reaction.

The optically active amine (VI) used in the present process is an optionally substituted, optically active 1-phenylethylamine derivative, for example, 1-phenylethylamine, 1-phenylpropylamine, 1-naphthylethylamine, 2-naphthylethylamine, 1-(4-tolyl)ethylamine and the like, and particularly preferably optically active 1-phenylethylamine. A desired isomer can be obtained selectively among the optically active forms represented by the formula (IIId) by suitably selecting any optical isomer of (R)-configuration or (S)-configuration. The amount of the optically active amine (VI) is in the order of about 0.9 to about 10 molar equivalents, preferably about 1 to about 2 molar equivalents, relative to 1 mole of Compound (V).

The solvent used in the present process is not particularly limited if it has no adverse influence on the reaction and solubilizes the starting compounds, for example, aromatic hydrocarbons such as toluene, xylene, etc., aliphatic hydrocarbons such as heptane, hexane, etc., halogenated hydrocarbons such as chloroform, dichloromethane, etc., ethers such as diethyl ether, tetrahydrofuran, dioxane, etc., alcohols such as methanol, ethanol, 2-propanol, butanol, benzyl alcohol, etc., nitriles such as acetonitrile, etc., dimethylformamide, dimethylsulfoxide and the like. Such solvent may be used in a mixture at a suitable ratio. The solvent is preferably toluene. The amount of the solvent is suitably determined by solubility of Compounds (V) and (VI), etc. The reaction can be carried out from in the nearly solventless state, to in a solvent in an amount of 100 times by weight or more, preferably 5 to 30 times by weight as much as Compound (V).

- 74 -

If necessary, the reaction can advantageously proceed by adding a catalyst. Such catalyst includes, for example, mineral acids (e.g., hydrochloric acid, hydrobromic acid, sulfuric acid, etc.), carboxylic acids (e.g., formic acid, acetic acid, propionic acid, trifluoroacetic acid, etc.), sulfonic acids (e.g., methanesulfonic acid, p-toluenesulfonic acid, etc.), Lewis acids (e.g., aluminum chloride, zinc chloride, zinc bromide, boron trifluoride, titanium chloride, etc.), acetates (e.g. sodium acetate, potassium acetate, etc.) and molecular sieves (molecular sieves 3A, 4A, 5A, etc.), preferably Lewis acid, and particularly aluminum chloride. The amount of the catalyst is, for example, in the order of about 0.01 to 10 molar equivalents, preferably about 0.02 to 1 molar equivalents, relative to 1 mole of Compound (V).

The reaction temperature varies depending on the solvent to be used, and is in the order of usually about 30°C to 200°C, preferably about 50°C to 150°C, and the reaction time is usually in the order of 0.1 hour to 48 hours, preferably 0.1 hour to 24 hours.

The reaction can be facilitated in the present reaction by the known operation of azeotropic dehydration.
(Process 8)

The present process is a process of hydrogenating the imine obtained in Process 7 in a solvent inert to the reaction by various reductions. Such reduction can be carried out by the known methods, for example, a method using metal hydride or a method by catalytic hydrogenation.

The metal hydride as the reducing agent includes, for example, sodium borohydride, lithium borohydride, zinc borohydride, sodium cyanoborohydride, sodium triacetoxyborohydride, lithium cyanoborohydride, aluminum dibutylhydride, aluminum hydride, lithium aluminum hydride, a borane complex (a borane-THF complex, catechol borane, etc.) and the like, and preferably, sodium borohydride, sodium

- 75 -

cyanoborohydride, sodium triacetoxymborohydride, etc. The amount of the reducing agent is, for example, in the order of 1 to 50 molar equivalents, preferably 1 to 10 molar equivalents, relative to 1 mole of the substrate. The
5 solvent used herein is not particularly limited if has no adverse influence on the reaction and solubilizes the starting compounds, for example, aromatic hydrocarbons such as toluene, xylene, etc., aliphatic hydrocarbons such as heptane, hexane, etc., halogenated hydrocarbons such as
10 chloroform, dichloromethane, etc., ethers such as diethyl ether, tetrahydrofuran, dioxane, etc., alcohols such as methanol, ethanol, 2-propanol, butanol, benzyl alcohol, etc., nitriles such as acetonitrile, etc., dimethylformamide, dimethylsulfoxide and the like. Such solvent may be used in
15 a mixture at a suitable ratio. The amount of the solvent is from nearly zero, to 100 times by weight or more, preferably 5 to 30 times by weight as much as the substrate. The reaction temperature is usually in the order of about -80°C to 200°C, preferably about -50°C to 100°C, and the reaction
20 time is usually in the order of 5 minutes to 72 hours, preferably 0.5 hour to 12 hours.

The catalytic hydrogenation can be carried out under hydrogen atmosphere and in the presence of a catalyst. The catalyst to be used includes, for example, palladium
25 compounds such as palladium carbon, palladium hydroxide carbon, palladium oxide, etc., nickel compounds such as Raney-nickel, etc., platinum compounds such as platinum oxide, platinum carbon, etc., rhodium compounds such as rhodium acetate, etc. and the like, preferably, a heterogeneous
30 supported nickel catalyst, and particularly Raney nickel. The amount is in the order of about 0.001 to 10 equivalents, preferably about 0.1 to 5 equivalents. The catalytic hydrogenation is usually carried out in a solvent inert to the reaction. Such solvent includes, for example, alcohols
35 such as methanol, ethanol, propanol, butanol, benzylalcohol,

- 76 -

etc.; aliphatic hydrocarbons such as heptane, hexane, etc.; aromatic hydrocarbons such as benzene, toluene, xylene, etc.; halogenated hydrocarbons such as dichloromethane, chloroform, etc.; ethers such as diethyl ether, dimethoxyethane, dioxane, 5 tetrahydrofuran, etc.; esters such as ethyl acetate, etc.; amides such as N,N-dimethylformamide, etc.; carboxylic acids such as acetic acid, etc.; water, or a mixture thereof, preferably alcohols, and particularly ethanol. The amount of the solvent is from nearly zero, to preferably 100 times by 10 weight, preferably 5 to 30 times by weight as much as the substrate. The hydrogenation can be carried out in a batch mode or in a continuous mode. The hydrogen pressure under which the reaction is carried out, is usually in the order of about 0.1 to 5 MPa, preferably about 0.1 to 1 MPa. The 15 reaction temperature is usually in the order of about 0°C to 150°C, preferably about 20°C to 50°C, and the reaction time is usually in the order of 5 minutes to 120 hours.

(Process 9)

The present process is a process of hydrogenolysis of 20 the compound obtained in Process 8 to obtain an optically active amine compound (IIId) in which NH₂ and R are in cis configuration. Such hydrogenolysis can be carried out by the known methods, for example, a method by catalytic hydrogenation.

25 The catalytic hydrogenation can be carried out in the presence of a catalyst under hydrogen atmosphere. The catalyst to be used includes, for example, a heterogeneous catalyst in which transition metal is supported on a carrier. The heterogeneous catalyst includes, for example, palladium 30 compounds such as palladium carbon, palladium hydroxide carbon, palladium oxide, etc., nickel compounds such as Raney-nickel, etc., platinum compounds such as platinum oxide, platinum carbon, etc., rhodium compounds such as rhodium acetate, etc. and the like. Such catalyst is preferably a 35 heterogeneous, palladium-supported catalyst, particularly

- 77 -

palladium carbon and palladium hydroxide carbon. The amount is in the order of about 0.0001 to 1 equivalent, preferably about 0.001 to 0.5 equivalent. The catalytic hydrogenation is usually carried out in a solvent inert to the reaction.

5 Such solvent includes, for example, alcohols such as methanol, ethanol, propanol, butanol, benzyl alcohol, etc.; aliphatic hydrocarbons such as heptane, hexane, etc.; aromatic hydrocarbons such as benzene, toluene, xylene, etc.; halogenated hydrocarbons such as dichloromethane, chloroform, etc.; ethers such as diethyl ether, dimethoxyethane, dioxane, tetrahydrofuran, etc.; esters such as ethyl acetate, etc.; nitriles such as acetonitrile, etc.; amides such as N,N-dimethylformamide, etc.; carboxylic acids such as acetic acid, etc.; water, or a mixture thereof, preferably alcohols, and

10 particularly ethanol. The amount of the solvent is from nearly zero, to 100 times by weight or more, preferably 5 to 30 times by weight part as much as the substrate. The hydrogenation can be carried out in a batch mode or in a continuous mode. The hydrogen pressure under which the

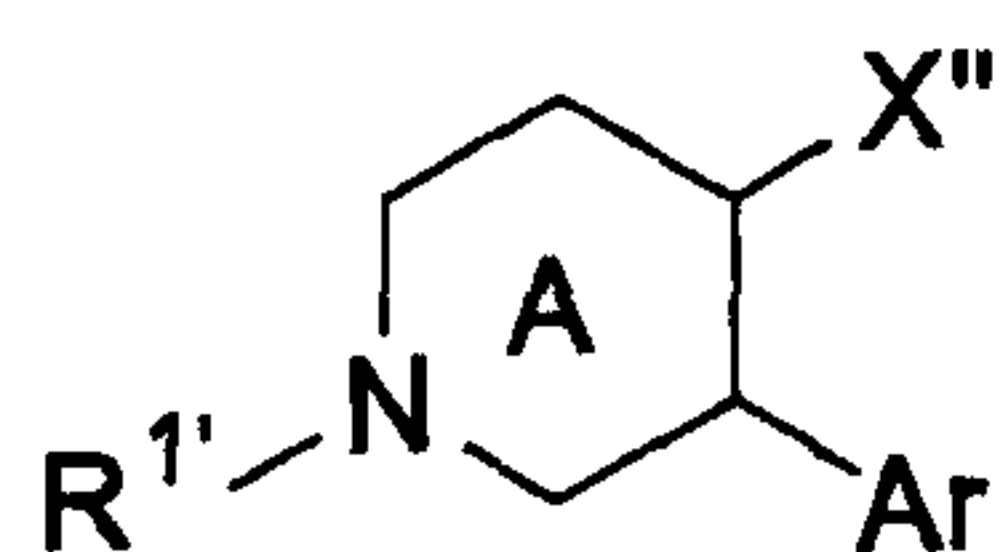
20 reaction is carried out, is for example, usually in the order of about 0.1 to 5 MPa, preferably about 0.1 to 1 MPa. The reaction temperature is usually in the order of about 0°C to 200°C, preferably about 20°C to 60°C, and the reaction time is usually in the order of 5 minutes to 120 hours.

25 In the present method, Compound (IIId) can be also produced directly from Compound (V) while carrying out the reaction to produce the above-mentioned imine and to reduce the products at the same time, without isolating the compound obtained in Process 7 or Process 8 which is an intermediate.

30 Thus obtained optically active amine compound (IIId) is subjected to the reactions described in Methods A to C to produce an optically active Compound (I) or a salt thereof.

Among the starting compounds of Compound (I), the compound represented by the formula:

- 78 -



(II)

wherein R^{1'} is an acyl group or an optionally substituted heterocyclic group, X'' is a hydroxy group or an amino group, and other symbols have the same meanings as defined above, provided that when X'' is a hydroxy group, R^{1'} is neither an ethoxycarbonyl group nor a cyclopropylcarbonyl group, or a salt thereof, is a novel compound.

"The acyl group or the optionally substituted heterocyclic group" represented by R^{1'} includes, for example, the same group as those referred to herein above for the foregoing group represented by R¹.

In each of the reactions for the synthesis of the objective compounds and the starting materials, when the starting compounds have an amino group, a carboxyl group or a hydroxy group as a substituent, such groups may be protected with the protecting groups which are generally used in peptide chemistry, etc. In such case, if necessary, such protecting groups can be removed to obtain the objective compounds after the reactions.

Such protecting group includes, for example, protecting groups described in "Protective Groups in Organic Synthesis, 3rd Ed. (1999)", edited by Theodara W. Greene, Peter G. M. Wuts, published by Wiley-Interscience.

The protecting group for the amino group includes, for example, a formyl group, a C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonyl group (e.g., an acetyl group, a propionyl group, etc.), a phenylcarbonyl group, a C₁₋₆ alkyl-oxycarbonyl group (e.g., a methoxycarbonyl group, an ethoxycarbonyl group, etc.), an aryloxycarbonyl group (e.g., a phenyloxycarbonyl group, etc.), a C₇₋₁₀ aralkyl-carbonyl group (e.g., a benzyloxycarbonyl group, etc.), a benzyl group, a benzhydryl group, a trityl group, a phthaloyl,

etc., each of which may be substituted. Such substituent includes, for example, a halogen atom (e.g., a fluorine atom, a chlorine atom, a bromine atom, an iodine atom, etc.), a C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonyl group (e.g., an acetyl group, a propionyl group, a butylcarbonyl group, etc.), a nitro group and the like. The number of substituent is in the order of 1 to 3.

A protecting group for the carboxyl group includes, for example, a C₁₋₆ alkyl group (e.g., a methyl group, an ethyl group, an n-propyl group, an i-propyl group, an n-butyl group, a tert-butyl group, etc.), a phenyl group, a trityl group, a silyl group and the like, each of which may be substituted. Such substituent includes, for example, a halogen atom (a fluorine atom, a chlorine atom, a bromine atom, an iodine atom), a formyl group, a C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonyl group (e.g., an acetyl group, a propionyl group, a butylcarbonyl group, etc.), a nitro group and the like. The number of substituent is in the order of 1 to 3.

The protecting group for the hydroxy group includes, for example, a C₁₋₆ alkyl group (e.g., a methyl group, an ethyl group, an n-propyl group, an i-propyl group, an n-butyl group, a tert-butyl group, etc.), a phenyl group, a C₇₋₁₀ aralkyl group (e.g., a benzyl group, etc.), a formyl group, a C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonyl group (e.g., an acetyl group, a propionyl group, etc.), an aryloxycarbonyl group (e.g., a phenyloxycarbonyl group, etc.), a C₇₋₁₀ aralkyl-carbonyl group (e.g., a benzyloxycarbonyl group, etc.), a pyranyl group, a furanyl group, a silyl group and the like, each of which may be substituted. Such substituent includes, for example, a halogen atom (a fluorine atom, a chlorine atom, a bromine atom, an iodine atom, etc.), a C₁₋₆ alkyl group, a phenyl group, a C₇₋₁₀ aralkyl group, a nitro group and the like. The number of substituent is in the order of 1 to 4.

Such protecting groups can be removed by a known deprotection method or the method described in "Protective Groups in Organic Synthesis, 3rd Ed. (1999)", edited by

- 80 -

Theodara W. Greene, Peter G. M. Wuts, published by Wiley-Interscience, or an analogous method thereto. For example, treatment with an acid, a base, reduction, ultraviolet radiation, hydrazine, phenylhydrazine, sodium N-
5 methyldithiocarbamate, tetrabutylammonium fluoride, palladium acetate or the like, can be used.

When Compound (I) is obtained as a free compound in the above-mentioned method, a salt with for example, inorganic acids (e.g., hydrochloric acid, sulfuric acid, hydrobromic
10 acid, etc.), organic acids (e.g., methanesulfonic acid, benzenesulfonic acid, toluenesulfonic acid, oxalic acid, fumaric acid, maleic acid, tartaric acid, etc.), inorganic bases (e.g., alkali metals such as sodium, potassium, etc., alkaline earth metals such as calcium, magnesium, etc.,
15 aluminum, ammonium, and the like), or organic bases (e.g., trimethylamine, triethylamine, pyridine, picoline, ethanolamine, diethanolamine, triethanolamine, dicyclohexylamine, N,N'-dibenzylethylenediamine, etc.) and the like can be produced in a routine manner. When Compound
20 (I) is obtained in the form of a salt, the compound can be converted to a free compound or another salt in a routine manner.

In addition, when the starting compound forms a salt in each of the above-mentioned reactions, the compound may be
25 used as a salt. Such salt includes, for example, those exemplified as a salt of Compound (I).

Compound (I) of the present invention thus produced by such method, can be isolated and purified by a typical separation means such as recrystallization, distillation,
30 chromatography, etc.

When Compound (I) contains an optical isomer, a stereoisomer, a regioisomer or a rotamer, these are also encompassed in Compound (I), and can be obtained as a single product according to synthesis and separation methods known
35 per se (for example, concentration, solvent extraction,

column chromatography, recrystallization, etc.). For example, when Compound (I) has an optical isomer, an optical isomer resolved from this compound is also encompassed in Compound (I).

5 The optical isomer can be produced by a method known per se. To be specific, an optically active synthetic intermediate is used, or the final racemate product is subjected to optical resolution according to a conventional method to give an optical isomer.

10 The method of optical resolution may be a method known per se, such as a fractional recrystallization method, a chiral column method, a diastereomer method, etc.

1) Fractional recrystallization method

A method wherein a salt of a racemate with an optically
15 active compound (e.g., (+)-mandelic acid, (-)-mandelic acid, (+)-tartaric acid, (-)-tartaric acid, (+)-1-phenethylamine, (-)-1-phenethylamine, cinchonine, (-)-cinchonidine, brucine, etc.) is formed, which is separated by a fractional recrystallization method, and if desired, a free optical
20 isomer is obtained by a neutralization step.

2) Chiral column method

A method wherein a racemate or a salt thereof is applied to a column for separation of an optical isomer (a chiral column) to allow separation. In the case of a liquid
25 chromatography, for example, a mixture of the optical isomers is applied to a chiral column such as ENANTIO-OVM (manufactured by Tosoh Corporation), CHIRAL series (manufactured by Daicel Chemical Industries, Ltd.) and the like, and developed with water, various buffers (e.g.,
30 phosphate buffer) and organic solvents (e.g., ethanol, methanol, isopropanol, acetonitrile, trifluoroacetic acid, diethylamine, etc.) solely or in admixture to separate the optical isomer. In the case of a gas chromatography, for example, a chiral column such as CP-Chirasil-DeX CB
35 (manufactured by GL Sciences Inc.) and the like is used to

allow separation.

3) Diastereomer method

A method wherein a racemic mixture is prepared into a diastereomeric mixture by chemical reaction with an optically
5 active reagent, which is made into a single substance by a typical separation means (e.g., a fractional recrystallization method, a chromatography method, etc.) and the like, and is subjected to a chemical treatment such as hydrolysis and the like to separate an optically active
10 reagent moiety, whereby an optical isomer is obtained. For example, when Compound (I) contains hydroxy, or primary or secondary amino in a molecule, the compound and an optically active organic acid (e.g., MTPA [α -methoxy- α -(trifluoromethyl)phenylacetic acid], (-)-menthoxyacetic acid,
15 etc.) and the like are subjected to condensation reaction to give diastereomers in the ester form or in the amide form, respectively. When Compound (I) has a carboxylic acid group, this compound and an optically active amine or an alcohol reagent are subjected to condensation reaction to give
20 diastereomers in the amide form or in the ester form, respectively. The separated diastereomer is converted to an optical isomer of the original compound by acid hydrolysis or base hydrolysis.

Compound (I) or a salt thereof may be in the form of a
25 crystal.

The crystal of Compound (I) or a salt thereof (hereinafter, it may be referred to as crystal of the present invention) can be produced by crystallization of Compound (I) or a salt thereof by a crystallization method known per se.

30 Examples of the crystallization method include a method of crystallization from a solution, a method of crystallization from vapor, a method of crystallization from the melts and the like.

The "crystallization from a solution" is typically a
35 method of shifting a non-saturated state to supersaturated

- 83 -

state by varying factors involved in solubility of compounds (solvent composition, pH, temperature, ionic strength, redox state, etc.) or the amount of solvent. To be specific, for example, a concentration method, a cooling method, a reaction
5 method (a diffusion method, an electrolysis method), a hydrothermal growth method, a flux method and the like can be mentioned. Examples of the solvent to be used include aromatic hydrocarbons (e.g., benzene, toluene, xylene, etc.), halogenated hydrocarbons (e.g., dichloromethane, chloroform,
10 etc.), saturated hydrocarbons (e.g., hexane, heptane, cyclohexane, etc.), ethers (e.g., diethyl ether, diisopropyl ether, tetrahydrofuran, dioxane, etc.), nitriles (e.g., acetonitrile, etc.), ketones (e.g., acetone, etc.), sulfoxides (e.g., dimethylsulfoxide, etc.), acid amides (e.g.,
15 N,N-dimethylformamide, etc.), esters (e.g., ethyl acetate, etc.), alcohols (e.g., methanol, ethanol, isopropyl alcohol, etc.), water and the like. These solvents are used alone or in a combination of two or more at a suitable ratio (e.g., 1:1 to 1:100 (a volume ratio)).

20 The "crystallization from vapor" is, for example, a vaporization method (a sealed tube method, a gas stream method), a gas phase reaction method, a chemical transportation method and the like.

The "crystallization from the melts" is, for example, a
25 normal freezing method (a Czockralski method, a temperature gradient method and a Bridgman method), a zone melting method (a zone leveling method and a floating zone method), a special growth method (a VLS method and a liquid phase epitaxy method) and the like.

30 Preferable examples of the crystallization method include a method of dissolving Compound (I) or a salt thereof in a suitable solvent (e.g., alcohols such as methanol, ethanol, etc. and the like) at a temperature of 20 to 120°C, and cooling the resulting solution to a temperature not
35 higher than the temperature of dissolution (e.g., 0 to 50°C,

preferably 0 to 20°C) and the like.

The thus obtained crystals of the present invention can be isolated, for example, by filtration and the like.

In the present specification, the melting point means
5 that measured using, for example, a micromelting point apparatus (Yanako, MP-500D) or a DSC (differential scanning calorimetry) device (SEIKO, EXSTAR6000) and the like.

In the present specification, the peak by a powder X-ray diffraction means that measured using, for example,
10 RINT2100 (Rigaku Corporation), etc. with a Cu-K α 1 ray (tube voltage: 40 KV; tube current: 50 mA) as a ray source.

In general, the melting points and the peak by a powder X-ray diffraction vary depending on the measurement apparatuses, the measurement conditions and the like. The
15 crystal in the present specification may show different values from the melting point described in the present specification or the peak by a powder X-ray diffraction vary depending on the measurement apparatuses, as long as they are within each of a general error range.

20 The crystal of the present invention is superior in physicochemical properties (e.g., melting point, solubility, stability, etc.) and biological properties (e.g., pharmacokinetics (absorption, distribution, metabolism, excretion), efficacy expression, etc.), and thus it is
25 extremely useful as a medicament.

Compound (I) or a salt thereof or a prodrug of the present invention (hereinafter, it may be briefly referred to as the compound of the present invention) has excellent antagonistic action for a tachykinin receptor, particularly
30 Substance P receptor antagonistic action, neurokinin A receptor antagonistic action, in addition to inhibitory action for the increased permeability of blood vessel of a trachea induced by capsaicin. The compound of the present invention has low toxicity and thus it is safe.

35 Accordingly, the compound of the present invention

- 85 -

having excellent antagonistic action for Substance P receptors and neurokinin A receptors, etc. can be used as a safe medicine for preventing and treating the following diseases related to Substance P in mammals (e.g., mice, rats, hamsters, rabbits, cats, dogs, bovines, sheep, monkeys, humans, etc.).

(1) Abnormality of lower urinary tract functions [for example, abnormal micturition such as urinary frequency, urinary incontinence, etc.]

10 (2) Digestive organ diseases [for example, irritable bowel syndrome, ulcerative colitis, Crohn's disease, diseases caused by a spiral urease-positive gram-negative bacterium (e.g., *Helicobacter pylori*, etc.) (e.g., gastritis, gastric ulcer, etc.), gastric cancer, postgastrostomy disorder, dyspepsia, esophageal ulcer, pancreatitis, polyp of the colon, cholelithiasis, hemorrhoids, peptic ulcer, situational ileitis, vomiting, etc.]

(3) Inflammatory or allergic diseases [for example, allergic rhinitis, conjunctivitis, gastrointestinal allergy, pollinosis, anaphylaxis, dermatitis, herpes, psoriasis, bronchitis, expectoration, retinopathy, postoperative and posttraumatic inflammation, regression of puffiness, pharyngitis, cystitis, meningitidis, inflammatory ophthalmic diseases, etc.]

25 (4) Osteoarthropathy diseases [for example, rheumatoid arthritis (chronic rheumatoid arthritis), arthritis deformans, rheumatoid myelitis, osteoporosis, abnormal growth of cells, bone fracture, bone refracture, osteomalacia, osteopenia, osseous Behcet's disease, rigid myelitis, articular tissue destruction by gonarthrosis deformans and similar diseases thereto, etc.]

(5) Respiratory diseases [for example, cold syndrome, pneumonia, asthma, pulmonary hypertension, pulmonary thrombi/pulmonary obliteration, pulmonary sarcoidosis, pulmonary tuberculosis, interstitial pneumonia, silicosis,

- 86 -

adult tachypnea syndrome, chronic obliterative pulmonary diseases, cough, etc.]

(6) Infectious diseases [HIV infectious diseases, virus infectious diseases due to cytomegalo virus, influenza virus, herpes virus and the like, rickettsia infectious diseases, bacterial infectious diseases, sexually-transmitted diseases, carinii pneumonia, helicobacter pylori infectious disease, systemic fungal infectious diseases, tuberculosis, invasive staphylococcal infectious diseases, acute viral encephalitis, acute bacterial meningitidis, AIDS encephalitis, septicemia, sepsis, sepsis gravis, septic shock, endotoxin shock, toxic shock syndromes, etc.]

(7) Cancers [for example, primary, metastatic or recurrent breast cancer, prostatic cancer, pancreatic cancer, gastric cancer, lung cancer, colorectal cancer (colon cancer, rectal cancer, anal cancer), esophagus cancer, duodenal cancer, head and neck cancer (tongue cancer, pharynx cancer, larynx cancer), brain tumor, neurinoma, non-small cell lung cancer, small cell lung cancer, hepatic cancer, renal cancer, colic cancer, uterine cancer (cancer of the uterine body, uterine cervical cancer), ovarian cancer, bladder cancer, skin cancer, hemangioma, malignant lymphoma, malignant melanoma, thyroid cancer, bone tumor, hemangioma, angiofibroma, retinosarcoma, penis cancer, pediatric solid cancer, Kaposi's sarcoma, Kaposi's sarcoma caused by AIDS, tumor of the maxillary sinus, fibrous histiocyoma, smooth muscle sarcoma, rhabdomyosarcoma, liposarcoma, fibroid tumors of the uterus, osteoblastoma, osteosarcoma, chondrosarcoma, carcinomatous mesothelial tumor, tumors such as leukemia, Hodgkin's disease, etc.]

(8) Central nerve diseases [for example, neurodegenerative diseases (e.g., Alzheimer's disease, Down's disease, Parkinson's disease, Creutzfeldt-Jakob's disease, amyotrophic lateral sclerosis (ALS), Huntington chorea, diabetic neuropathy, multiple sclerosis, etc.), mental

- 87 -

diseases (e.g., schizophrenia, depression, mania, anxiety neurosis, obsessive-compulsive neurosis, panic disorder, epilepsy, alcohol dependence, anxiety symptom, anxious mental state, etc.), central and peripheral nerve disorders (e.g.,
5 head trauma, spinal cord injury, brain edema, disorders of sensory function, abnormality of sensory function, disorders of autonomic nervous function and abnormality of autonomic nervous function, whiplash injury, etc.), memory disorders (e.g., senile dementia, amnesia, cerebrovascular dementia,
10 etc.), cerebrovascular disorders (e.g., disorders and aftereffect and/or complication from intracerebral hemorrhage, brain infarction, etc, asymptomatic cerebro-vascular accident, transient cerebral ischemic attack, hypertensive encephalopathia, blood-brain barrier disorder, etc.),
15 recurrence and aftereffect of cerebro-vascular accident (neural symptoms, mental symptoms, subjective symptoms, disorders of daily living activities, etc.), post-cerebrovascular occlusion central hypofunction; disorder or abnormality of cerebral circulation and/or autoregulation of
20 renal circulation]

(9) Circulatory diseases [for example, acute coronary artery syndromes (e.g., acute cardiac infarction, unstable angina, etc.), peripheral arterial obstruction, Raynaud's disease; Buerger disease; restenosis after coronary-artery
25 intervention (percutaneous transluminal coronary angioplasty (PTCA), directional coronary atherectomy (DCA), stenting, etc.), restenosis after coronary-artery bypass operation, restenosis after intervention (angioplasty, atherectomy, stenting, etc.) or bypass operation in other peripheral
30 artery, ischemic cardiac diseases (e.g., cardiac infarction, angina, etc.), myocarditis, intermittent claudication, lacunar infarction, arteriosclerosis (e.g., atherosclerosis, etc.), cardiac failure (acute cardiac failure, chronic cardiac failure accompanied by congestion), arrhythmia,
35 progress of atherosclerotic plaque, thrombosis, hypertension,

- 88 -

hypertensive tinnitus; hypotension, etc.]

(10) Pains [e.g., migraine, neuralgia, etc.]

(11) Autoimmune diseases [for example, collagen disease, systemic lupus erythematosus, scleroderma, polyarteritis, myasthenia gravis, multiple sclerosis, Sjogren's syndrome, Behcet's disease, etc.]

(12) Hepatic diseases [e.g., hepatitis (including chronic hepatitis), cirrhosis, interstitial hepatic diseases, etc.]

10 (13) Pancreatic diseases [e.g., pancreatitis (including chronic pancreatitis), etc.]

(14) Renal diseases [e.g., nephritis, glomerulonephritis, glomerulosclerosis, renal failure, thrombotic microangiopathy, dialysis complications, organ disorders including nephropathia by radiation, diabetic nephropathia, etc.]

(15) Metabolic diseases [e.g., diabetic diseases (insulin-dependent diabetes, diabetic complications, diabetic retinopathy, diabetic microangiopathy, diabetic neuropathy, etc.); glucose tolerance abnormality, obesity, prostatomegaly, sexual dysfunction, etc.]

(16) Endocrine diseases [e.g., Addison's disease, Cushing's syndrome, melanocytoma, primary aldosteronism, etc.]

25 (17) Other diseases

(A) Transplant rejection [e.g., posttransplantational rejection, posttransplantational polycythemia, hypertension, organ disorder and/or vascular hypertrophy, graft-versus-host disease, etc.]

30 (B) Abnormality in characteristic of blood and/or blood components [e.g., enhancement in platelet aggregation, abnormality of erythrocyte deformability, enhancement in leukocyte adhesiveness, increase in blood viscosity, polycythemia, vascular peliosis, autoimmune hemolytic anemia, disseminated intravascular coagulation syndrome (DIC),

35

- 89 -

multiple myelopathy, etc.]

(C) Gynecologic diseases [e.g., climacteric disorder, gestational toxicosis, endometriosis, hysteromyoma, ovarian disease, mammary disease, etc.]

5 (D) Dermatic diseases [e.g., keloid, angioma, psoriasis, pruritus, etc.]

(E) Ophthalmic diseases [e.g., glaucoma, ocular hypertension disease, etc.]

(F) Otolaryngological diseases [e.g., Menuel syndrome,
10 tinnitus, gustation disorder, dizziness, disequilibrium, dysphagia, etc.]

(G) Diseases due to environmental and/or occupational factors (e.g., radiation disorder, disorders by ultraviolet ray·infrared ray·laser ray, altitude sickness, etc.)

15 (H) Ataxia

(I) Chronic fatigue syndrome

Among the diseases as described above, particularly, the compounds of the present invention are useful as a tachykinin receptor antagonist and as an agent for
20 ameliorating abnormality of lower urinary tract functions such as urinary frequency, urinary incontinence, etc., and even as an agent for treating such abnormality of lower urinary tract functions.

Pharmaceutical preparations comprising Compound of the
25 present invention may be in any solid forms of powders, granules, tablets, capsules, suppositories, etc., and in any liquid forms of syrups, emulsions, injections, suspensions, etc.

The pharmaceutical preparations of the present
30 invention can be produced by any conventional methods, for example, blending, kneading, granulation, tableting, coating, sterilization, emulsification, etc., in accordance with the forms of the preparations to be produced. For the production of such pharmaceutical preparations, for example, each of the
35 items in General Principles for pharmaceutical preparations

- 90 -

in the Japanese Pharmacopeia, can be made reference to. In addition, the pharmaceutical preparations of the present invention may be formulated into a sustained release preparation containing active ingredients and biodegradable polymer compounds. The sustained release preparation can be produced according to the method described in JP-A-9-263545.

In the pharmaceutical preparations of the present invention, the content of the compound or a salt thereof in the present invention varies depending on the forms of the preparations, but is generally in the order of about 0.01 to 100 % by weight, preferably about 0.1 to 50 % by weight, more preferably 0.5 to 20 % by weight, relative to the total weight of each preparation.

When the compound of the present invention is used in the above-mentioned pharmaceutical preparations, it may be used alone, or in admixture with a suitable, pharmaceutically acceptable carrier, for example, excipients (e.g., starch, lactose, sucrose, calcium carbonate, calcium phosphate, etc.), binders (e.g., starch, arabic gum, carboxymethyl cellulose, hydroxypropyl cellulose, crystalline cellulose, alginic acid, gelatin, polyvinyl pyrrolidone, etc.), lubricants (e.g., stearic acid, magnesium stearate, calcium stearate, talc, etc.), disintegrants (e.g., calcium carboxymethylcellulose, talc, etc.), diluents (e.g., water for injection, physiological saline, etc.) and if desired, with the additives (e.g., a stabilizer, a preservative, a colorant, a fragrance, a dissolution aid, an emulsifier, a buffer, an isotonic agent, etc.) and the like, by ordinary methods. It can be formulated into the solid preparations such as powders, fine granules, granules, tablets, capsules, etc., or into the liquid preparations such as injections, etc., and can be administered non-parenterally or parenterally.

The dose of the pharmaceutical preparation of the present invention varies depending on the kinds of the compound of the present invention or a pharmaceutically

- 91 -

acceptable salts thereof, the administration route, the condition and the age of patients, etc. For example, the dose for oral administration of the pharmaceutical preparation to an adult patient suffering from abnormal
5 urination is generally from about 0.005 to 50 mg/kg body/day, preferably from about 0.05 to 10 mg/kg body/day, more preferably from about 0.2 to 4 mg/kg body/day, in terms of the compound of the present invention, which may be administered once a day or in two or three divided portions a
10 day.

The dose when the pharmaceutical composition of the present invention is a sustained release preparation varies depending on the kinds and the content of Compound (I) or a salt thereof, the formulation, the duration time of drug
15 release, the animals to be administered (e.g., mammals such as humans, rats, mice, cats, dogs, rabbits, bovines, pigs, etc.), and the purpose of administration. For example, when it is applied by parenteral administration, preferably about 0.1 to about 100 mg of Compound (I) or a salt thereof is
20 released from the preparation for 1 week.

The compound of the present invention can be used in a mixture or combination with other pharmaceutically active ingredients at a suitable ratio.

Combination of the compound of the present invention
25 with other pharmaceutically active ingredients can give the following excellent effects:

(1) a dose can be reduced as compared with separate administration of the compound of the present invention or other pharmaceutically active ingredients. More specifically,
30 when the compound of the present invention is combined with anticholinergic agents or NK-2 receptor antagonists, the dose can be reduced as compared with separate administration of anticholinergic agents or NK-2 receptor antagonists, and therefore, side effects such as dry mouth can be reduced;

35 (2) according to symptoms of patient (mild symptoms,

- 92 -

severe symptoms, etc.), a drug to be combined with the compound of the present invention can be selected;

(3) by choosing other pharmaceutically active ingredients which have different mechanism of action from that of the compound of the present invention, the therapeutic period can be designed longer;

(4) by choosing other pharmaceutically active ingredients which have different mechanism of action from that of the compound of the present invention, continuation of therapeutic effects can be obtained; and

(5) by combining the compound of the present invention and other pharmaceutically active ingredients, excellent effects such as synergic effects can be obtained.

A drug which is mixed or combined with the compound of the present invention (hereinafter, briefly referred to as combination drugs) includes the following:

(1) Agent for treating diabetes

Insulin preparations (e.g., animal insulin preparations extracted from the bovine or swine pancreas; human insulin preparations synthesized by a genetic engineering technique using *Escherichia coli* or a yeast; insulin zinc; protamine zinc insulin; a fragment or a derivative of insulin (e.g., INS-1, etc.), agents for potentiating insulin sensitivity (e.g., pioglitazone hydrochloride, troglitazone, rosiglitazone or its maleate, JTT-501, MCC-555, YM-440, GI-262570, KRP-297, FK-614, CS-011, etc.), α -glucosidase inhibitors (e.g., voglibose, acarbose, miglitol, emiglitate, etc.), biguanides (e.g., phenformin, metformin, buformin, etc.), sulfonylureas (e.g., tolbutamide, glibenclamide, gliclazide, chlorpropamide, tolazamide, acetohexamide, glyclopyramide, glimepiride, etc.) and other insulin secretagogues (e.g., repaglinide, senaglinide, mitiglinide or its calcium salt hydrate, GLP-1, nateglinide, etc.), dipeptidylpeptidase IV inhibitors (e.g., NVP-DPP-278, PT-100, P32/98, etc.), β_3 agonists (e.g., CL-316243, SR-58611-A, UL-

- 93 -

TG-307, AJ-9677, AZ40140, etc.), amylin agonists (e.g., pramlintide, etc.), phosphotyrosine phosphatase inhibitors (e.g., vanadic acid, etc.), gluconeogenesis inhibitors (e.g., glycogen phosphorylase inhibitors, glucose-6-phosphatase inhibitors, glucagon antagonists, etc.), SGLT (sodium-glucose cotransporter) inhibitors (e.g., T-1095, etc.) and the like.

(2) Agent for treating diabetic complications

Aldose reductase inhibitors (e.g., tolrestat, epalrestat, zenarestat, zopolrestat, fidarestat (SNK-860), minalrestat (ARI-509), CT-112, etc.), neurotrophic factors (e.g., NGF, NT-3, etc.), AGE inhibitors (e.g., ALT-945, pimagedine, pyratoxathine, N-phenacylthiazolium bromide (ALT-766), EXO-226, etc.), active oxygen scavengers (e.g., thiocctic acid, etc.), cerebral vasodilators (e.g., tiapuride, etc.) and the like.

(3) Antihyperlipidemic agent

Statin compounds inhibiting cholesterol synthesis (e.g., pravastatin, simvastatin, lovastatin, atorvastatin, fluvastatin, cerivastatin or their salt (e.g., sodium salt salt, etc.) and the like), squalene synthase inhibitors or fibrate compounds having triglyceride lowering action (e.g., bezafibrate, clofibrate, simfibrate, clinofibrate, etc.) and the like.

(4) Hypotensive agent

Angiotensin converting enzyme inhibitors (e.g., captopril, enalapril, delapril, etc.), angiotensin II antagonists (e.g., losartan, candesartan cilexetil, etc.), calcium antagonists (e.g., manidipine, nifedipine, amlodipine, efonidipine, nicardipine, etc.), clonidine, and the like.

(5) Antiobesity agent

Antiobesity drugs acting on the central nervous system (e.g. dexfenfluramine, fenfluramine, phentermine, sibutramine, anfepramone, dexamphetamine, mazindol, phenylpropanolamine, clobenzorex, etc.), pancreatic lipase inhibitors (e.g. orlistat, etc.), β_3 agonists (e.g. CL-316243, SR-58611-A, UL-

- 94 -

TG-307, AJ-9677, AZ40140, etc.), anorectic peptides (e.g. leptin, CNTF (Ciliary Neurotrophic Factor), etc.), cholecystokinin agonists (e.g. lintitript, FPL-15849, etc.).

(6) Diuretic agent

5 Xanthine derivatives (e.g., theobromine sodium salicylate, theobromine calcium salicylate, etc.), thiazide preparations (e.g., ethiazide, cyclopenthiazide, trichlormethiazide, hydrochlorothiazide, hydroflumethiazide, benzylhydrochlorothiazide, penflutizide, polythiazide,
10 methyclothiazide, etc.), antialdosterone preparations (e.g., spironolactone, triamterene, etc.), carbonic anhydrase inhibitors (e.g., acetazolamide, etc.), chlorobenzenesulfonamide preparations (e.g., chlorthalidone, mefruside, indapamide, etc.), azosemide, isosorbide,
15 ethacrynic acid, piretanide, bumetanide, furosemide, etc.

(7) Chemotherapeutic agent

Alkylating agents (e.g., cyclophosphamide, ifosamide, etc.), metabolic antagonists (e.g., methotrexate, 5-fluorouracil, etc.), antitumor antibiotics (e.g., mitomycin,
20 adriamycin, etc.), plant-derived antitumor agents (e.g., vincristine, vindesine, taxol, etc.), cisplatin, carboplatin, etoposide, etc. Among these, 5- fluorouracil derivatives such as Furtulon and Neo-Furtulon are preferred.

(8) Immunotherapeutic agent

25 Microorganism- or bacterium-derived components (e.g., muramyl dipeptide derivatives, Picibanil, etc.), immunopotentiator polysaccharides (e.g., lentinan, schizophyllan, krestin, etc.), genetically engineered cytokines (e.g., interferons, interleukins (IL), etc.),
30 colony stimulating factors (e.g., granulocyte colony stimulating factor, erythropoietin, etc.) and the like. Among these, interleukins such as IL-1, IL-2, IL-12, etc. are preferred.

(9) Therapeutic agent recognized to ameliorate cachexia
35 in animal models or clinical practice

Progesterone derivatives (e.g., megestrol acetate) [Journal of Clinical Oncology, vol. 12, pp. 213-225, 1994], metoclopramide pharmaceuticals, tetrahydrocannabinol pharmaceuticals (the above references are applied to both),
5 fat metabolism ameliorating agents (e.g., eicosapentanoic acid) [British Journal of Cancer, vol. 68, pp. 314-318, 1993], growth hormones, IGF-1, and antibodies to the cachexia-inducing factors such as TNF- α , LIF, IL-6 and oncostatin M.

(10) Antiinflammatory agent

10 Steroids (e.g., dexamethasone, etc.), sodium hyaluronate, cyclooxygenase inhibitors (e.g., indomethacin, ketoprofen, loxoprofen, meloxicam, ampiroxicam, celecoxib, rofecoxib, etc.) and the like.

(11) Miscellaneous

15 glycosylation inhibitors (e.g., ALT-711, etc.), nerve regeneration promoting drugs (e.g., Y-128, VX853, prosaptide, etc.), drugs acting on the central nervous system (e.g., antidepressants such as desipramine, amitriptyline, imipramine, fluoxetine, paroxetine, doxepin, etc.),
20 anticonvulsants (e.g., lamotrigine, carbamazepine), antiarrhythmic drugs (e.g., mexiletine), acetylcholine receptor ligands (e.g., ABT-594), endothelin receptor antagonists (e.g., ABT-627), monoamine uptake inhibitors (e.g., tramadol), indoleamine uptake inhibitors (e.g.,
25 fluoxetine, paroxetine), narcotic analgesics (e.g., morphine), GABA receptor agonists (e.g., gabapentin), GABA uptake inhibitors (e.g., tiagabine), α_2 receptor agonists (e.g., clonidine), local analgesics (e.g., capsaicin), protein kinase C inhibitors (e.g., LY-333531), antianxiety drugs
30 (e.g., benzodiazepines), phosphodiesterase inhibitors (e.g., sildenafil), dopamine receptor agonists (e.g., apomorphine), dopamine receptor antagonists (e.g., haloperidol), serotonin receptor agonists (e.g., tandospirone citrate, sumatriptan), serotonin receptor antagonists (e.g., cyproheptadine
35 hydrochloride, ondansetron), serotonin uptake inhibitors

- 96 -

(e.g., fluvoxamine maleate, fluoxetine, paroxetine),
hypnotics (e.g., triazolam, zolpidem), anticholinergic agents,
 α_1 receptor blocking agents (e.g., tamsulosin), muscle
relaxants (e.g., baclofen, etc.), potassium channel openers
5 (e.g., nicorandil), calcium channel blocking agents (e.g.,
nifedipine), agents for preventing and/or treating
Alzheimer's disease (e.g., donepezil, rivastigmine,
galantamine), agents for treating Parkinson's disease (e.g.,
L-dopa), agents for preventing and/or treating multiple
10 sclerosis (e.g., interferon β -1a), histamine H_1 receptor
inhibitors (e.g., promethazine hydrochloride), proton pump
inhibitors (e.g., lansoprazole, omeprazole), antithrombotic
agents (e.g., aspirin, cilostazol), NK-2 receptor antagonists,
agents of treating HIV infection (saquinavir, zidovudine,
15 lamivudine, nevirapine), agents of treating chronic
obstructive pulmonary diseases (salmeterol, tiotropium
bromide, cilomilast), etc.

Anticholinergic agents include, for example, atropine,
scopolamine, homatropine, tropicamide, cyclopentolate,
20 butylscopolamine bromide, propantheline bromide,
methylbenactyzium bromide, mepenzolate bromide, flavoxate,
pirenzepine, ipratropium bromide, trihexyphenidyl, oxybutynin,
propiverine, darifenacin, tolterodine, temiverine, trospium
chloride or a salt thereof (e.g., atropine sulfate,
25 scopolamine hydrobromide, homatropine hydrobromide,
cyclopentolate hydrochloride, flavoxate hydrochloride,
pirenzepine hydrochloride, trihexyphenidyl hydrochloride,
oxybutynin chloride, tolterodine tartrate, etc.), preferably,
oxybutynin, propiverine, darifenacin, tolterodine, temiverine,
30 trospium chloride or a salt thereof (e.g., oxybutynin
chloride, tolterodine tartrate, etc.). In addition,
acetylcholinesterase inhibitors (e.g., distigmine, etc.) and
the like can be used.

NK-2 receptor antagonists include, for example, a
35 piperidine derivative such as GR159897, GR149861, SR48968

- 97 -

(saredutant), SR144190, YM35375, YM38336, ZD7944, L-743986, MDL105212A, ZD6021, MDL105172A, SCH205528, SCH62373, R-113281, etc., a perhydroisoindole derivative such as RPR-106145, etc., a quinoline derivative such as SB-414240, etc., a
5 pyrrolopyrimidine derivative such as ZM-253270, etc., a pseudopeptide derivative such as MEN11420 (nepadutant), SCH217048, L-659877, PD-147714 (CAM-2291), MEN10376, S16474, etc., and others such as GR100679, DNK333, GR94800, UK-224671, MEN10376, MEN10627, or a salt thereof, and the like.

10 The pharmaceutical composition comprising a mixture or combination of the compound of the present invention and the combination drugs may be formulated into

(1) a single formulation as a pharmaceutical composition containing the compound of the present invention
15 and the combination drugs, or

(2) a formulation comprising the compound of the present invention and the combination drugs which are separately formulated. Hereinafter, it is generally briefly referred to as the combination preparation of the present
20 invention.

The combination preparation of the present invention can be formulated by mixing the compound of the present invention and active ingredients of the combination drugs separately or at the same time as itself or with
25 pharmaceutically acceptable carriers in the same manner as in the method of producing the pharmaceutical preparation comprising the compound of the present invention.

A daily dose of the combination preparation of the present invention varies depending on severity of the
30 symptoms, age, sex, weight and sensitivity of the subject to be administered, time and interval of administration, property, formulation and kinds of pharmaceutical preparation, kinds of active ingredients, etc., and is not particularly limited. The dose in terms of the compound of the present
35 invention is not particularly limited if it causes no

- 98 -

problems of side effects. In the case of oral administration, a daily dosage is usually in a range of about 0.005 to 100 mg, preferably about 0.05 to 50 mg, and more preferably about 0.2 to 30 mg, per 1 kg body weight of mammals, which may be
5 administered once a day or in two or three divided portions a day.

The dose of the compound or the combination preparation of the present invention may be set within the range such that it causes no problems of side effects. The daily dose
10 as the compound or the combination preparation of the present invention varies depending on severity of symptoms, age, sex, weight and sensitivity of the subject to be administered, time and interval of administration, property, formulation and kinds of pharmaceutical preparation, kinds of active
15 ingredients, etc., and is not particularly limited. In the case of oral administration, a daily dosage in terms of active ingredients is usually in the order of about 0.001 to 2000 mg, preferably about 0.01 to 500 mg, and more preferably about 0.1 to 100 mg, per 1 kg body weight of mammals, which
20 may be administered once a day or in two to four divided portions a day.

In administering the combination preparation of the present invention, the compound of the present invention and the combination drugs may be administered at the same time or,
25 the combination drugs may be administered before administering the compound of the present invention, and vice versa. In case of staggered administration, the time interval varies depending on the active ingredients to be administered, a formulation and an administration route. For
30 example, if the combination drugs are administered first, the compound of the present invention may be administered 1 minute to 3 days, preferably 10 minutes to 1 day, more preferably 15 minutes to 1 hour after administering the combination drugs. If the compound of the present invention
35 is administered first, the combination drugs may be

- 99 -

administered 1 minute to 1 day, preferably 10 minutes to 6 hours, more preferably 15 minutes to 1 hour after administering the compound of the present invention.

In a preferred administration method, about 0.001 to 200 mg/kg of the combination drugs formulated as an oral preparation is administered orally and then after about 15 minutes, about 0.005 to 100 mg/kg of the compound of the present invention formulated as an oral preparation is administered orally as a daily dose.

10 In the combination preparation of the present invention, the content of the compound of the present invention varies depending on the forms of the preparation, but usually in the order of 0.01 to 100 wt%, preferably 0.1 to 50 wt%, and further preferably 0.5 to 20 wt%, relative to the total
15 preparation.

EXAMPLES

The present invention is further described in detail in with reference to Reference Examples, Examples, Preparative
20 Examples and Experimental Example which are not intended to restrict the invention and may be modified without departing from the scope of the invention.

Elution in the column chromatography in the following Reference Examples and Examples was conducted under
25 observation by TLC (thin layer chromatography), unless otherwise specifically indicated. In the TLC observation, 60F₂₅₄, TLC plates, produced by Merck & Co., Inc. was used, and the solvent employed as an elution solvent in the column chromatography was used as an eluent. For the detection, a
30 UV detector was used. As silica gel for the column chromatography, Silica Gel 60 (70 to 230 mesh) produced by Merck & Co., Inc. was used. "room temperature" referred herein means temperature generally from about 10°C to 35°C. For drying extract, sodium sulfate or magnesium sulfate was

- 100 -

used.

The meanings of the abbreviations as used in the following Examples and Reference Examples are as follows:

NMR: Nuclear Magnetic Resonance Spectrum

5 LC-MS: Liquid Chromatography-Mass Spectrometry

ESI: Electron Spray Ionization

DMF: Dimethylformamide, THF: Tetrahydrofuran, DMSO: Dimethylsulfoxide, IPE: diisopropyl ether, EPPA: ethyl o-phenylene phosphate, NaBH(OAc)₃: sodium triacetoxyborohydride,
10 HOBt·H₂O: 1-hydroxybenzotriazole hydrate, WSC·HCl: 1-ethyl-3-(dimethylaminopropyl)carbodiimide hydrochloride, Et₃N: triethylamine, Hz: Hertz, J: coupling constant, m: multiplet, q: quartet, t: triplet, d: doublet, s: singlet, br: broad, like: approximation, M: Molecular ion peak, cis: cis, trans:
15 trans, R_f: Retardation factor, N: normal concentration, M: molar concentration, MPa: Mega Pascal, wt%: percent by weight, Boc: tert-butyloxycarbonyl.

LC-MS in Examples and Reference Examples was measured under the following conditions.

20 LC-MS (Condition A)

Measurement Instrument: LC-MS system, Waters Corporation

HPLC part: HP1100, Agilent Technologies, Inc.

MS part: ZQ, Waters Corporation

25 HPLC condition

Column: CAPCELL PAK C18UG120, S-3 μm, 2.0 × 50 mm (Shiseido Co., Ltd.)

Solvent: Solution A; 0.05% trifluoroacetic acid-containing water, Solution B; 0.04% trifluoroacetic acid-
30 containing acetonitrile

Gradient cycle: 0.00 minute (Solution A/Solution B=90/10), 4.00 minutes (Solution A/Solution B=5/95), 5.50 minutes (Solution A/Solution B=5/95), 5.51 minutes (Solution A/Solution B=90/10), 5.51 minutes (Solution A/Solution
35 B=10/90), 8.00 minutes (Solution A/Solution B=90/10)

- 101 -

Injection amount: 2 μ l, Flow rate: 0.5 ml/min,
Detection method: UV 220 nm

MS condition

Ionization method: ESI

5 LC-MS (Condition B)

Measurement Instrument: LC-MS system, Waters
Corporation

HPLC part: HP1100, Agilent Technologies, Inc.

MS part: ZMD, Micromass

10 HPLC condition

Column: CAPCELL PAK C18UG120, S-3 μ m, 1.5 $\times$ 35 mm
(Shiseido Co., Ltd.)

Solvent: Solution A; 0.05% trifluoroacetic acid-
containing water, Solution B; 0.04% trifluoroacetic acid-
15 containing acetonitrile

Gradient cycle: 0.00 minute (Solution A/Solution
B=90/10), 2.00 minutes (Solution A/Solution B=5/95), 2.75
minutes (Solution A/Solution B=5/95), 2.76 minutes (Solution
A/Solution B=90/10), 3.60 minutes (Solution A/Solution
20 B=90/10)

Injection amount: 2 μ l, Flow rate: 0.5 ml/min,
Detection method: UV 220 nm

MS condition

Ionization method: ESI

25 Purification by preparative HPLC in Examples and
Reference Examples was carried out under the following
conditions.

Instrument: High Throughput Purification System, Gilson
Company, Inc.

30 Column: YMC CombiPrep ODS-AS-5 μ m, 50 $\times$ 20 mm

Solvent: Solution A; 0.1% trifluoroacetic acid-
containing water, Solution B; 0.1% trifluoroacetic acid-
containing acetonitrile

Gradient cycle: 0.00 minute (Solution A/Solution
35 B=95/5), 1.00 minute (Solution A/Solution B=95/5), 5.20

- 102 -

minutes (Solution A/Solution B=5/95), 6.40 minutes (Solution A/Solution B=5/95), 6.50 minutes (Solution A/Solution B=95/5), 6.60 minutes (Solution A/Solution B=95/5)

Flow rate: 25 ml/min, Detection method: UV 220 nm

5 Reference Example 1

cis-4-[[3,5-Bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-3-phenylpiperidine-1-carboxylic acid tert-butyl ester
(Process 1)

To a solution of ethyl 3-[(3-ethoxy-3-oxopropyl)amino]-
10 2-phenylpropanoate (1.0 g) and sodium carbonate (0.72 g) in acetonitrile (2 ml), benzyl bromide (0.64 g) was added, and the reaction mixture was stirred at 75°C for 2 hours. The reaction mixture was poured into water, and then the product was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was
15 washed with saturated brine, dried, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure to obtain ethyl 3-[benzyl(3-ethoxy-3-oxopropyl)amino]-2-phenylpropanoate as colorless oil (1.20 g).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃): δ 1.22 (6H, t like, J=7.1 Hz), 2.35-2.48
20 (2H, m), 2.67-2.88 (3H, m), 3.27 (1H, dd, J=13.0, 9.8 Hz), 3.57 (1H, d, J=14.0 Hz), 3.72 (1H, d, J=14.0 Hz), 3.80 (1H, dd, J=9.8 Hz, 5.4 Hz), 4.02-4.24 (4H, m), 7.19-7.40 (10H, m).

(Process 2)

To a solution of sodium hydride (60% in oil, 0.27 g) in
25 benzene (6.1 ml), a solution of the compound (1.30 g) obtained in Process 1 in ethanol (1.4 ml) was added, and the reaction mixture was stirred at 70°C for 1 hour. The reaction mixture was cooled, and then concentrated hydrochloric acid (1.7 ml) was added thereto, and the mixture was concentrated
30 under reduced pressure. To the obtained residue, acetic acid (4 ml) and concentrated hydrochloric acid (4 ml) were added, and the reaction mixture was stirred at 120°C for 3 hours. The reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure, and then into the obtained residue were water and ethyl
35 acetate poured, the organic layer was washed with saturated

- 103 -

brine, dried, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The obtained residue was isolated and purified by silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate : hexane = 1 : 10) to obtain ethyl 1-benzyl-4-hydroxy-5-phenyl-
5 1,2,5,6-tetrahydro-3-pyridine carboxylate as colorless oil (0.46 g).

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3): δ 1.30 (3H, t, $J=7.1$ Hz), 2.62 (1H, dd, $J=11.6, 6.2$ Hz), 2.88 (1H, dd, $J=11.6, 5.2$ Hz), 3.23-3.40 (2H, m), 3.63 (2H, s), 3.64-3.74 (1H, m), 4.23 (2H, q, $J=7.1$ Hz),
10 7.24-7.38 (10H, m).

(Process 3)

To a solution of the compound (15.0 g) obtained in Process 2 in acetic acid (90 ml), concentrated hydrochloric acid (90 ml) was added, and the reaction mixture was stirred
15 at 120°C for 12 hours. The reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure, and then into the obtained residue was poured ethyl acetate, and made basic with an aqueous sodium hydroxide solution. The organic layer was washed with saturated brine, dried, and then the solvent was evaporated
20 under reduced pressure to obtain 1-benzyl-3-phenyl-4-piperidinone as colorless oil (10.4 g).

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3): δ 2.47-2.85 (4H, m), 3.00-3.25 (2H, m), 3.67 (2H, s), 3.81 (1H, dd, $J=10.0, 5.6$ Hz), 7.19-7.40 (10H, m).

25 (Process 4)

A solution of the compound (2.00 g) obtained in Process 3, hydrochloric acid (0.2 ml) and palladium carbon (10 wt%, 0.30 g) in ethanol (30 ml) was stirred at 40°C for 3 hours under hydrogen atmosphere of 0.5 MPa. The catalyst was
30 removed by filtration, and then the reaction solution was concentrated under reduced pressure to obtain crude 3-phenyl-4-piperidone as pale yellow powder. The obtained product was used in the next process without further purification.

(Process 5)

35 To a solution of the compound (3.47 g) obtained in

- 104 -

Process 4 and Et₃N (2.76 ml) in acetonitrile (50 ml), di-tert-butyl dicarbonate (6.55 g) was added, and the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 14 hours. The reaction mixture was poured into water, and then the product
5 was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with an aqueous 10% citric acid solution and saturated brine, dried, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The obtained residue was isolated and purified by silica gel column chromatography (hexane : ethyl
10 acetate = 10 : 1) to obtain 4-oxo-3-phenylpiperidine-1-carboxylic acid tert-butyl ester as white powder (3.90 g, 71%). The obtained product was used in the next process without further purification.

(Process 6)

15 To a solution of the compound (9.70 g) obtained in Process 5 in THF (100 ml), a solution of 1 M L-selectride/THF (78 ml) was added at -78°C, and the reaction mixture was stirred at 0°C for 1 hour. To the reaction mixture was added an aqueous saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate solution, and
20 then the product was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with an aqueous 10% citric acid solution and saturated brine, dried, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The obtained residue was isolated and purified by silica gel column chromatography
25 (hexane : ethyl acetate = 3 : 1) to obtain crude 4-hydroxy-3-phenylpiperidine-1-carboxylic acid tert-butyl ester (9.32 g, 95%) as colorless oil.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃): δ 1.50 (9H, s), 2.57 (2H, t, J=6.1 Hz), 3.45-3.75 (3H, m), 4.10-4.40 (2H, m), 7.15-7.21 (2H, m),
30 7.28-7.41 (3H, m).

(Process 7)

To a solution of the compound (3.02 g) obtained in Process 6 in DMF (30 ml), sodium hydride (60% in oil, 0.87 g) was added, and then the reaction mixture was stirred at room
35 temperature for 30 minutes. To the reaction solution, 3,5-

- 105 -

bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl bromide (5.00 g) was added at room temperature, and then the reaction solution was further stirred for 1 hour. The reaction solution was poured into water, and then the product was extracted with ethyl acetate. 5 The organic layer was washed with an aqueous 10% citric acid solution and saturated brine, dried, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The obtained residue was isolated and purified by silica gel column chromatography (hexane : ethyl acetate = 10 : 1) to obtain the title 10 compound as colorless oil (4.07 g, 74%).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃): δ 1.46 (9H, s), 1.70-1.85 (1H, m), 2.00-2.10 (1H, m), 2.87-2.95 (1H, m), 3.08-3.20 (1H, m), 3.40-3.60 (1H, m), 3.84-3.90 (1H, br s), 3.90-4.20 (2H, m), 4.19 (1H, d, J=12.6 Hz), 4.57 (1H, d, J=12.6 Hz), 7.20-7.40 (5H, m), 7.53 15 (2H, s), 7.73 (1H, s).

Reference Example 2

4-[(2-Methoxybenzyl)amino]-3-phenylpiperidine-1-carboxylic acid tert-butyl ester

(Process 1)

20 A mixed solution of the compound (8.82 g) obtained in Process 5 of Reference Example 1, hydroxyamine hydrochloride (6.67 g) and sodium acetate (7.88 g) in ethanol (50 ml) and water (20 ml) was stirred at 75°C for 1 hour. The reaction mixture was poured into water, and then the product was 25 extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with an aqueous saturated ammonium chloride solution and saturated brine, dried, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure to obtain 4-(hydroxyimino)-3-phenylpiperidine-1-carboxylic acid tert-butyl ester as a 30 white paste-like material. The obtained product was used in the next process without further purification.

(Process 2)

A mixed solution of the compound obtained in Process 1 and Raney nickel (about 30 g) in THF (150 ml) and ethanol 35 (150 ml) was stirred at 50°C for 6 hours under hydrogen

- 106 -

atmosphere of 5 atm. The catalyst was removed by filtration, and then the filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure to obtain 4-amino-3-phenylpiperidine-1-carboxylic acid tert-butyl ester (8.79 g) as colorless solid matter. The obtained
5 product was used in the next process without further purification.

(Process 3)

To a mixed solution of the compound (4.00 g) obtained in Process 2 and o-anisaldehyde (1.97 g) in acetic acid (0.15
10 ml) and dichloromethane (40 ml), $\text{NaBH}(\text{OAc})_3$ (9.20 g) was added, and the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 14 hours. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and then the residue was poured into a mixed solution of ethyl acetate and water. The organic layer was washed with
15 an aqueous saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate solution and saturated brine, dried, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The obtained residue was isolated and purified by silica gel column chromatography (hexane : ethyl acetate = 2 : 1) to obtain the cis-form of the title
20 compound as colorless oil (3.41 g, 76%) and the trans-form of the title compound as colorless oil (0.96 g, 16%), respectively.

Cis-form: $R_f = 0.6$ (hexane : ethyl acetate = 1 : 2).

Trans-form: $R_f = 0.2$ (hexane : ethyl acetate = 1 : 2).

25 Reference Example 3

cis-3-Benzhydryl-4-[[3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]piperidine-1-carboxylic acid
tert-butyl ester

(Process 1)

30 1-Acetyl-4-piperidinone (77 g) was dissolved in dichloromethane (300 ml), and trimethylsilyltrifluoromethanesulfonate (200 ml) and benzhydrol (92 g) were added thereto with stirring under ice-cooling. The mixture was allowed to stand at room
35 temperature overnight, and then water (500 ml) and sodium

- 107 -

acetate (50 g) were added thereto and the reaction mixture was vigorously stirred. The dichloromethane layer was preparatively separated, washed with an aqueous sodium bicarbonate solution, dried, and then the solvent was
5 evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was treated with ethyl ether to obtain 1-acetyl-3-benzhydryl-4-piperidinone as colorless crystals (132.6 g, 86%).

Melting point: 133 - 136°C.

IR (KBr) 3060, 3025, 2900, 2860, 1715, 1640, 1490, 1450,
10 1420, 1250, 980, 745, 705, 695 cm^{-1} .

(Process 2)

To the compound (10.2 g) obtained in Process 1 were added water (200 ml) and concentrated hydrochloric acid (200 ml), and heated for 5 hours. The reaction mixture was
15 further stirred at 80°C overnight, and then filtered in a heated state and the filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue (crystal) was suspended in ethanol and filtered to obtain 3-benzhydryl-4-piperidone hydrochloride as colorless crystals (8.00 g, 80%).

20 Melting point: 208 - 210°C.

IR (KBr) 2980, 2800, 2710, 1735, 1590, 1450, 1385, 1170, 755, 710, 700, 540 cm^{-1} .

(Process 3)

To a solution of the compound (7.55 g) obtained in
25 Process 2 and Et_3N (6.97 ml) in DMF (350 ml), di-tert-butyl dicarbonate (6.00 g) was added, and the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 5 hours. The reaction mixture was poured into water, and then the product was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed
30 with an aqueous 10% citric acid solution and saturated brine, dried, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was crystallized from diethyl ether to obtain 3-benzhydryl-4-oxopiperidine-1-carboxylic acid tert-butyl ester as white powder (8.86 g, 97%).

35 (Process 4)

- 108 -

To a solution of the compound (4.50 g) obtained in Process 3 in THF (80 ml), a solution of 1 M L-selectride/THF (18.5 ml) was added at -78°C, and the reaction solution was stirred at 0°C for 3 hours. To the reaction solution was added an aqueous saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate solution, and then the product was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with an aqueous 10% citric acid solution and saturated brine, dried, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure to obtain crude 3-benzhydryl-4-hydroxypiperidine-1-carboxylic acid tert-butyl ester (4.50 g, 99%) as colorless amorphous. The obtained product was used in the next process without further purification.

(Process 5)

To a solution of the compound (1.66 g) obtained in Process 4 in DMF (30 ml), sodium hydride (60% in oil, 0.90 g) was added, and then the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 30 minutes. To the reaction solution, 3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl bromide (6.89 g) and sodium iodide (3.37 g) were added at room temperature, and then the reaction solution was further stirred for 3 hours. The reaction solution was poured into water, and then the product was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with an aqueous 10% citric acid solution and saturated brine, dried, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure to obtain yellow oil of the crude title compound. The obtained compound was used in the next process without purification.

MS (ESI+): 594 (M+H).

Reference Example 4

cis-3-Benzhydryl-4-[[3-fluoro-5-(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]piperidine-1-carboxylic acid tert-butyl ester

To a solution of the compound (1.29 g) obtained in Process 4 of Reference Example 3 in DMF (30 ml), sodium

- 109 -

hydride (60% in oil, 0.70 g) was added, and then the reaction solution was stirred at room temperature for 30 minutes. To the reaction solution, 3-fluoro-5-(trifluoromethyl)benzyl bromide (4.50 g) and sodium iodide (2.62 g) were added at
5 room temperature, and then the reaction solution was further stirred for 3 hours. Then, the mixture was treated in the same manner as in Process 5 of Reference Example 3 to obtain yellow oil of the crude title compound. The obtained compound was used in the next process without purification.

10 MS (ESI+): 544 (M+H).

Reference Example 5

cis-3-Benzhydryl-4-[[3-(trifluoromethoxy)benzyl]oxy]piperidine-1-carboxylic acid
tert-butyl ester

15 To a solution of the compound (1.50 g) obtained in Process 4 of Reference Example 3 in DMF (40 ml), sodium hydride (60% in oil, 0.82 g) was added, and then the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 30 minutes. To the reaction solution, 3-(trifluoromethoxy)benzyl bromide
20 (5.20 g) and sodium iodide (3.06 g) were added at room temperature, and then the reaction mixture was further stirred for 3 hours. Then, the mixture was treated in the same manner as in Process 5 of Reference Example 3 to obtain yellow oil of the crude title compound. The obtained
25 compound was used in the next process without purification.

MS (ESI+): 542 (M+H).

Reference Example 6

cis-3-Benzhydryl-4-[[4-(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]piperidine-1-carboxylic acid
30 tert-butyl ester

To a solution of the compound (1.50 g) obtained in Process 4 of Reference Example 3 in DMF (40 ml), sodium hydride (60% in oil, 0.82 g) was added, and then the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 30 minutes. To
35 the reaction solution, 4-(trifluoromethyl)benzyl bromide

- 110 -

(4.88 g) and sodium iodide (3.06 g) were added at room temperature, and then the reaction mixture was further stirred for 3 hours. Then, the mixture was treated in the same manner as in Process 5 of Reference Example 3 to obtain
5 yellow oil of the crude title compound. The obtained compound was used in the next process without purification.

MS (ESI+): 526 (M+H).

Reference Example 7

5-(5-(Trifluoromethyl)-1H-tetrazol-1-yl)-2,3-dihydro-1-
10 benzofuran-7-carbaldehyde

(Process 1)

To a solution of 2,3-dihydro-1-benzofuran-5-amine (4.5 g) and Et₃N (6.1 ml) in dichloromethane (40 ml), trifluoroacetic anhydride (6.2 ml) was added at 0°C, and the
15 reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 2 hours. The reaction mixture was poured into water, and then the product was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with an aqueous saturated ammonium chloride solution and saturated brine, dried, and then the solvent was
20 evaporated under reduced pressure to obtain N-(2,3-dihydro-1-benzofuran-5-yl)-2,2,2-trifluoroacetamide (7.1 g) as pale orange crystals.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃): δ 3.23 (2H, t, J=8.7 Hz), 4.60 (2H, t, J=8.7 Hz), 6.76 (1H, d, J=8.1 Hz), 7.12 (1H, dd, J=8.7, 2.4
25 Hz), 7.51 (1H, m), 7.65-7.80 (1H, br).

(Process 2)

To a solution of the compound (6.9 g) obtained in Process 1 in carbon tetrachloride (90 ml), triphenylphosphine (12.6 g) was added at room temperature, and the reaction
30 mixture was stirred at 95°C for 14 hours. The reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure, and then the residue was dissolved in DMF (70 ml). The DMF solution was added dropwise to a solution of sodium azide (3.3 g) in DMF (50 ml) at 0°C, and the reaction mixture was stirred at room
35 temperature for 1 hour. The reaction mixture was poured into

- 111 -

water, and then the product was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with an aqueous saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate solution and saturated brine, dried, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The
5 obtained residue was isolated and purified by silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate : hexane = 1 : 20 → 1 : 2) to obtain the title compound (2.2 g) as white crystals.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃): δ 3.33 (2H, t, J=9.0 Hz), 4.73 (2H, t, J=9.0 Hz), 6.92 (1H, dd, J=8.7, 0.6 Hz), 7.17-7.21 (1H, dd
10 like), 7.24-7.28 (1H, m).

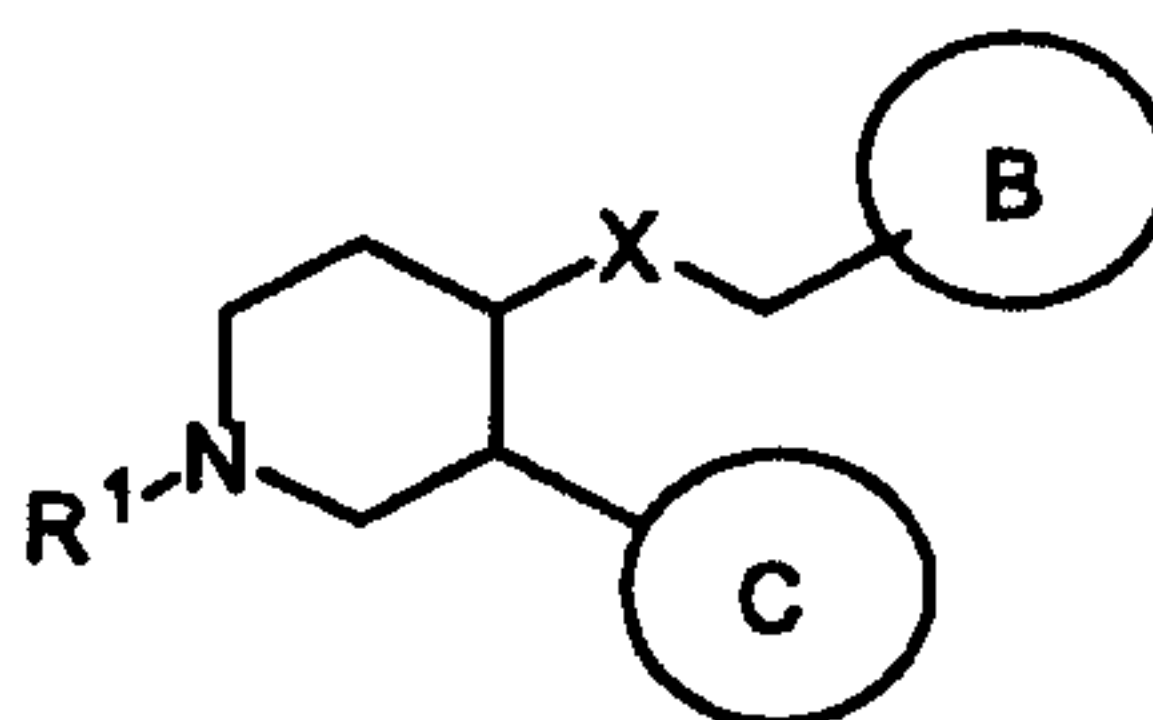
(Process 3)

To a solution of the compound (3.8 g) obtained in Process 2 in polyphosphoric acid (52 ml), hexamethylene tetramine (10.2 g) was added, and the reaction mixture was
15 stirred at 100°C for 48 hours. The reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure, and then the residue was dissolved in ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with an aqueous saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate solution and brine, dried, and then the solvent was evaporated under
20 reduced pressure. The obtained residue was treated with 4 N hydrochloric acid/ethyl acetate solution (1.0 ml) to obtain the title compound as colorless crystals (1.65 g, 47%).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃): δ 3.41 (2H, t, J=8.7 Hz), 4.93 (2H, t, J=8.7 Hz), 7.46-7.47 (1H, m), 7.71-7.72 (1H, m), 10.24 (1H,
25 s).

The compounds of the following Reference Examples were synthesized by reacting and treating in the same manner as in the method described in Reference Example 1 using ethyl phenylacetate derivatives.

[Table 1]



Ref. Ex. No.	Stereochemistry	R ¹	X	B	C	MS (ESI) (M+H) ⁺
8	(±)- <i>cis</i>	Boc	O			572
9	(±)- <i>cis</i>	Boc	O			518
10	(±)- <i>cis</i>	Boc	O			518
11	(±)- <i>cis</i>	Boc	O			522

Reference Example 12

cis-4-[[3,5-Bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-3-(4-fluorophenyl)-1-carboxylic acid tert-butyl ester
(Process 1)

(±)-BINAP (0.90 g), sodium tert-butoxide (5.02 g), tris(dibenzylideneacetone)dipalladium(0) (0.55 g) and toluene (200 ml) were mixed under nitrogen atmosphere, and 4-fluorobromobenzene (10.54 g), and then tert-butyl 4-oxo-1-piperidinecarboxylate (8.0 g) were added thereto. The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 5 minutes, and then at 60°C for 7 hours (under nitrogen atmosphere). After cooling to room temperature, the reaction solution was washed with water and saturated brine, dried, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The obtained residue was isolated and purified by silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate : hexane = 1 : 4) to obtain tert-butyl 3-(4-fluorophenyl)-4-oxo-1-piperidinecarboxylate (1.46 g) as colorless crystals.

- 113 -

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃): δ 1.50 (9H, s), 2.52-2.59 (2H, m), 3.44-3.51 (2H, m), 3.67-3.71 (1H, m), 4.18-4.21 (1H, m), 4.27 (1H, br.), 7.02-7.17 (4H, m).

(Process 2)

5 To a solution of the compound (1.20 g) obtained in Process 1 in THF (12 ml), a solution of 1 M K-selectride/THF (7 ml) was added at -78°C, and the reaction mixture was stirred at 0°C for 1 hour. To the reaction solution, water was added, and the product was extracted with ethyl acetate.
10 The obtained organic layer was washed with an aqueous saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate solution and saturated brine, dried, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The obtained residue was isolated and purified by silica gel column chromatography (hexane : ethyl
15 acetate = 2 : 1), and crystallized from hexane to obtain tert-butyl cis-3-(4-fluorophenyl)-4-hydroxy-1-piperidinecarboxylate (657 mg) as colorless crystals.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃): δ 1.34 (1H, d, J=2.9 Hz), 1.47 (9H, s), 1.82-1.89 (2H, m), 2.86-2.89 (1H, m), 3.18-3.25 (1H, m), 3.45
20 (1H, br) 3.94 (2H, br), 4.08-4.09 (1H, m), 7.02-7.07 (2H, m), 7.20-7.24 (2H, m).

(Process 3)

To a solution of the compound (600 mg) obtained in Process 2 in DMF (12 ml), sodium hydride (60% in oil, 203 mg)
25 was added, and then the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 45 minutes. To the reaction solution, sodium iodide (914 mg) and 3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl bromide (1.25 g) were added at room temperature, and then the reaction mixture was further stirred for 2.5 hours. To the
30 reaction solution, water was added, and the product was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with an aqueous 3% potassium hydrogensulfate solution and saturated brine, dried, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The obtained residue was isolated
35 and purified by silica gel column chromatography (hexane :

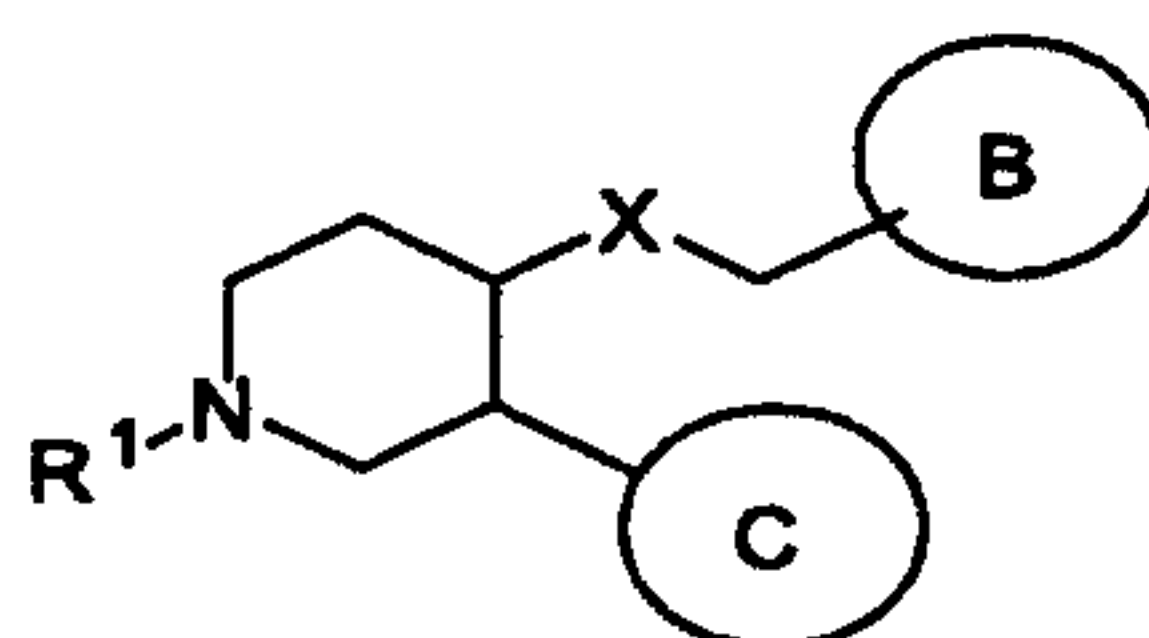
- 114 -

ethyl acetate = 4 : 1) to obtain the title compound as colorless amorphous (920 mg).

MS (ESI⁺): 522 (M+H).

The compounds of the following Reference Examples were synthesized by reacting and treating in the same manner as in the method described in Reference Example 12 using tert-butyl 4-oxo-1-piperidinecarboxylate and the respective corresponding halogenated compounds (4-fluoro-2-methylbromobenzene and 2-chloropyridine).

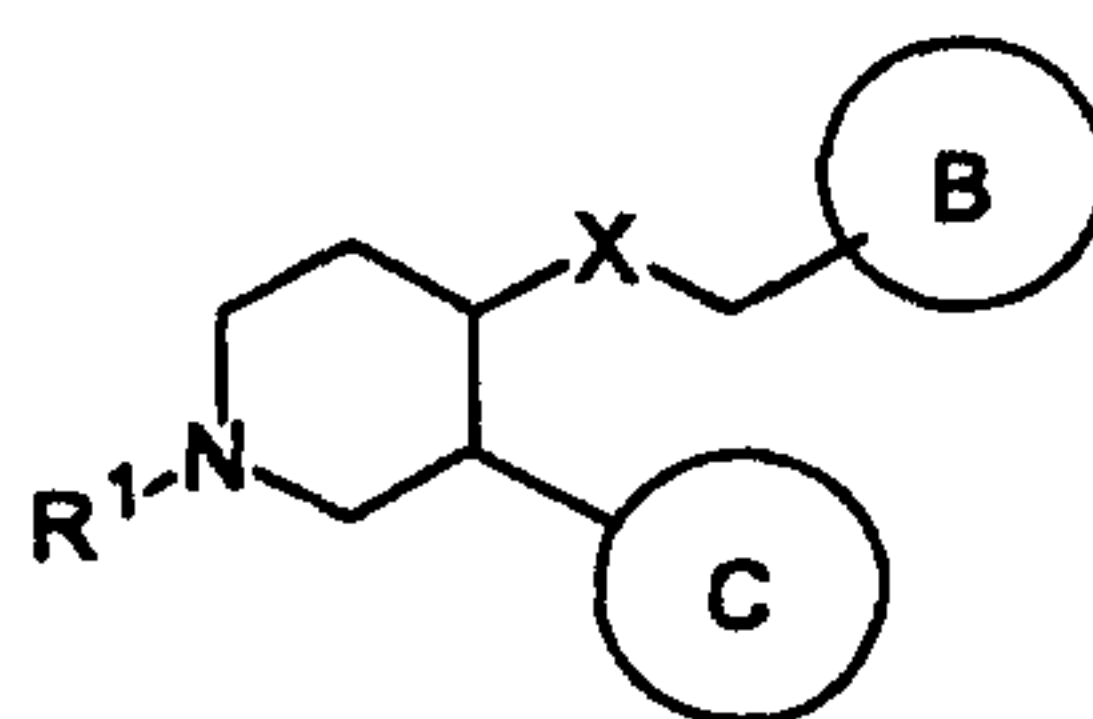
10 [Table 2]



Ref. Ex. No.	Stereo-chemistry	R ¹	X	B	C	MS (ESI) (M+H) ⁺
12	(±)- <i>cis</i>	Boc	O			522
13	(±)- <i>cis</i>	Boc	O			536
14	(±)- <i>cis</i>	Boc	O			505

The compounds of the following Reference Examples were synthesized by reacting and treating in the same manner as in the method described in Process 7 of Reference Example 1 using the compound obtained in Process 6 of Reference Example 1 and the respective corresponding benzyl methanesulfonate derivatives or benzyl bromide derivatives.

[Table 3]



Ref. Ex. No.	Stereo-chemistry	R ¹	X	B	C	MS (ESI) (M+H) ⁺
15	(±)- <i>cis</i>	Boc	O			482
16	(±)- <i>cis</i>	Boc	O			436
17	(±)- <i>cis</i>	Boc	O			396
18	(±)- <i>cis</i>	Boc	O			454
19	(±)- <i>cis</i>	Boc	O			454
20	(±)- <i>cis</i>	Boc	O			514, 516
21	(±)- <i>cis</i>	Boc	O			504
22	(±)- <i>cis</i>	Boc	O			450

Reference Example 23

cis-4-[[3-Nitro-5-(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-3-
5 phenylpiperidine

(Process 1)

The compound (150 mg) obtained in Process 6 of
Reference Example 1 and 3-nitro-5-(trifluoromethyl)benzyl
methanesulfonate (178 mg) were dissolved in dichloromethane
10 (10 ml), an aqueous 10% sodium hydroxide solution (10 ml),
sodium iodide (325 mg) and tetra-*n*-butylammonium hydrogen

- 116 -

sulfate (368 mg) were added thereto and the reaction mixture was stirred at 50°C for 12 hours. To the reaction solution, water was added, and the reaction solution was extracted with dichloromethane. The obtained organic layer was dried, and
5 then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The obtained residue was isolated and purified by silica gel column chromatography (hexane : ethyl acetate = 4 : 1) to obtain the title compound as colorless amorphous.

MS (ESI+): 481 (M+H).

10 Reference Example 24

4-Nitrophenyl 4-acetyl-1-piperazinecarboxylate

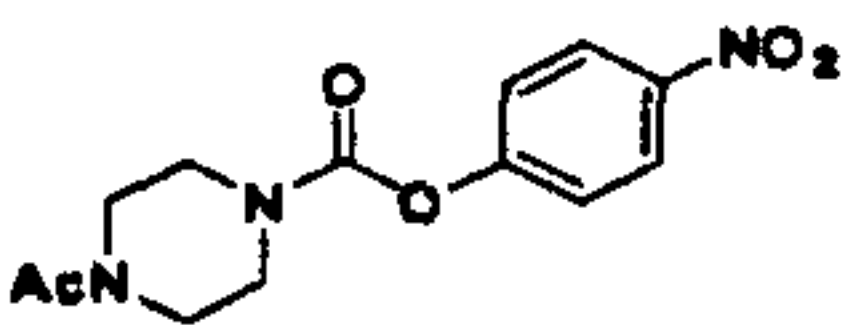
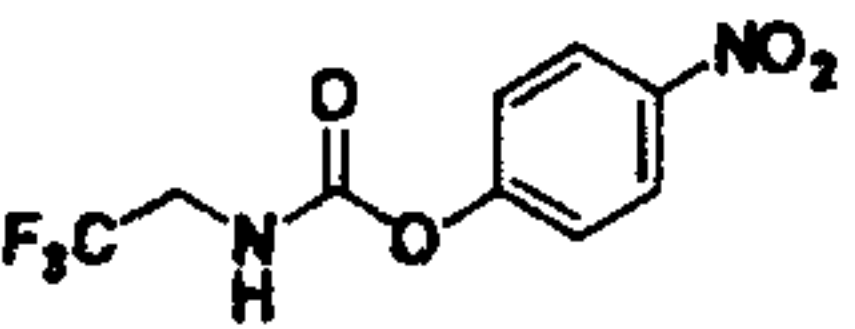
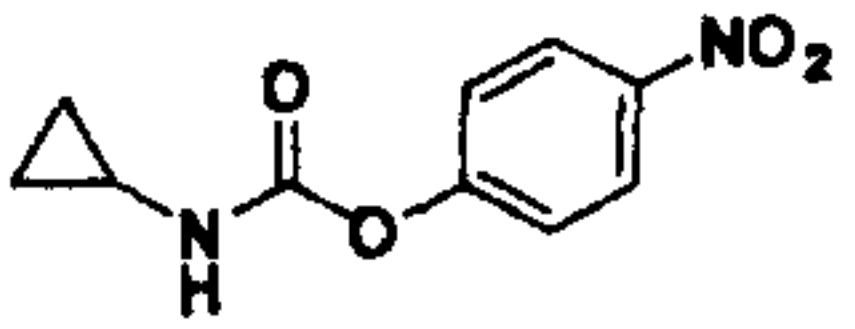
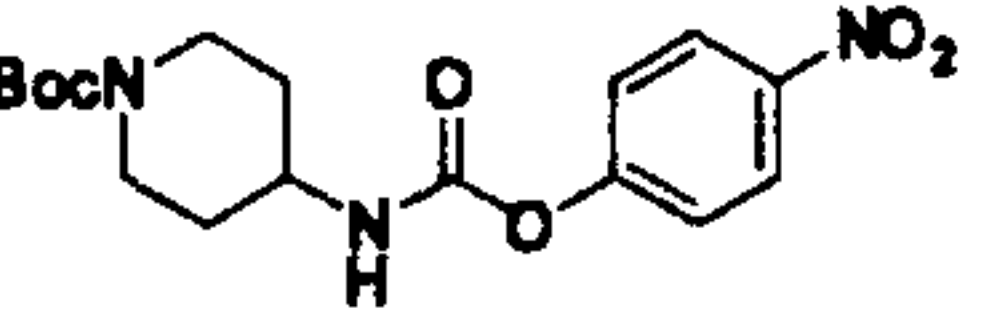
A solution of 1-acetylpiperazine (1.30 g) and Et₃N (1.23 g) in dichloromethane (10 ml) was added dropwise to a solution of 4-nitrophenyl chloroformate (2.05 g) in
15 dichloromethane (20 ml) under ice-cooling. After stirring at 0°C for 30 minutes and at room temperature for 1 hour, water was added to the reaction solution, and the reaction solution was extracted with dichloromethane. The organic layer was washed with an aqueous saturated sodium bicarbonate solution
20 and saturated brine, dried, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The obtained residue was isolated and purified by silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate) to obtain the title compound (1.70 g) as colorless crystals.

25 ¹H-NMR (CDCl₃): δ 2.16 (3H, s), 3.59-3.72 (8H, m), 7.31 (2H, d, J=9.0 Hz), 8.27 (2H, d, J=9.0 Hz).

The compounds of the following Reference Examples were synthesized by reacting and treating in the same manner as in the method described in Reference Example 24 using the
30 respective corresponding amine derivatives.

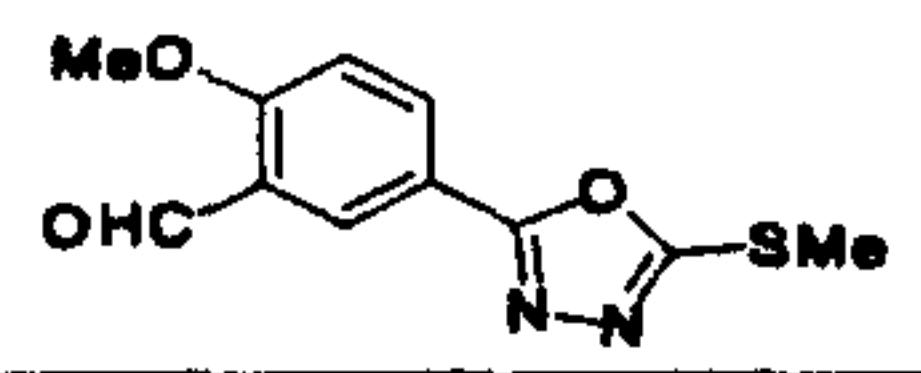
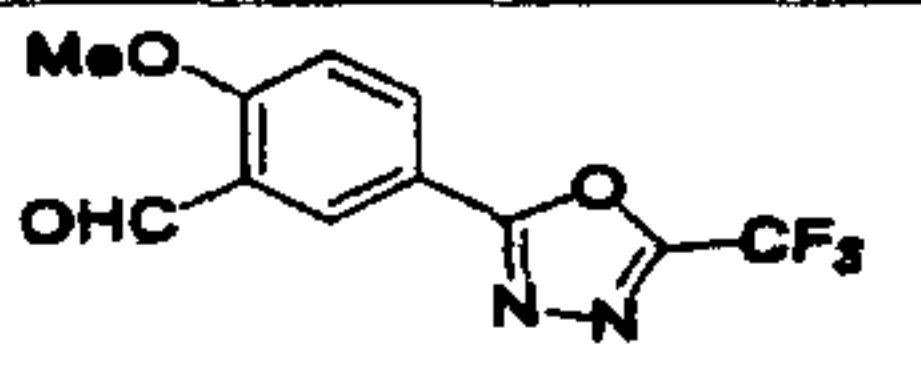
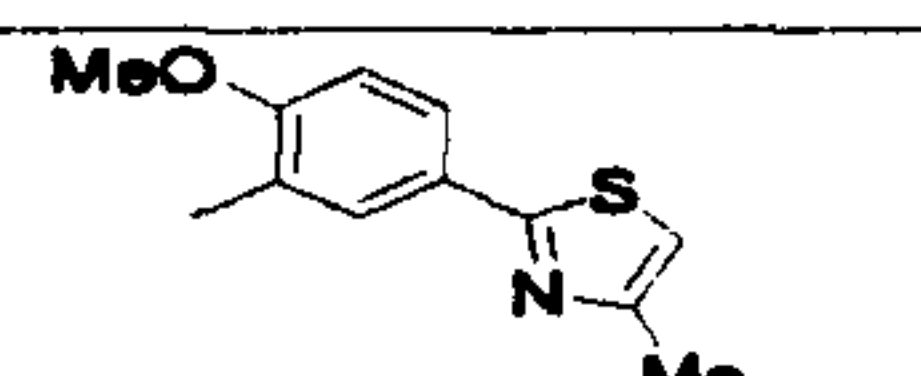
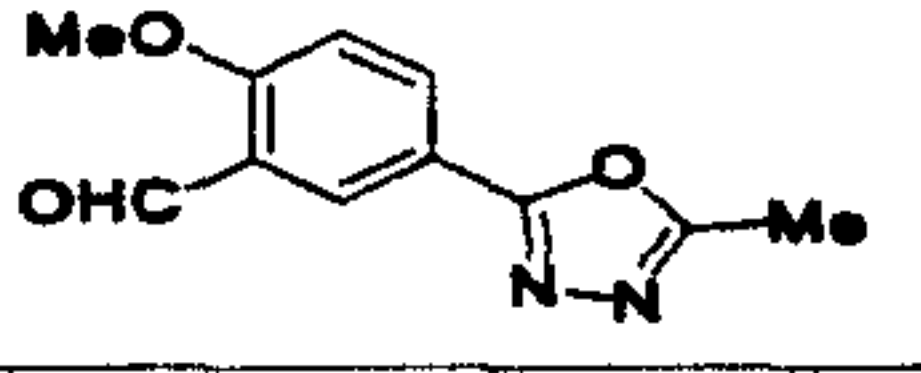
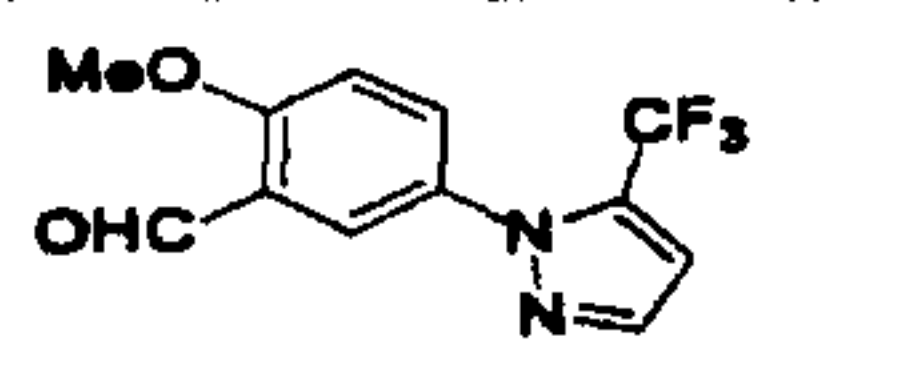
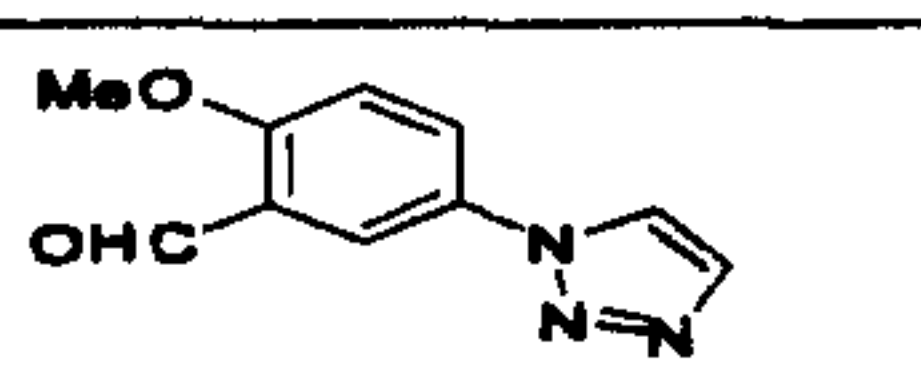
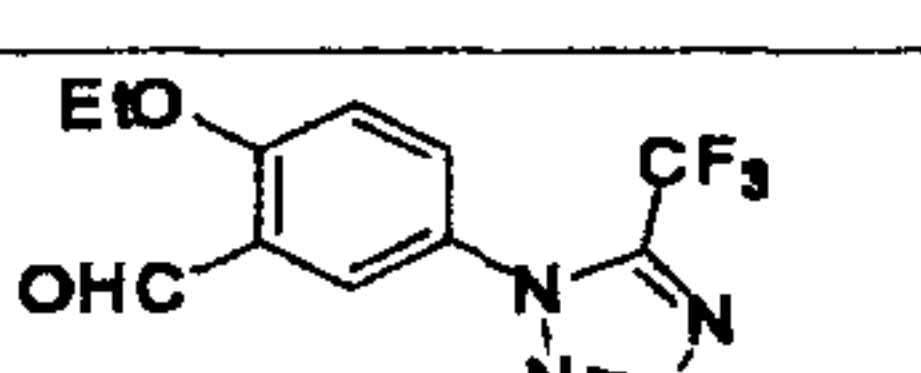
[Table 4]

- 117 -

Ref. Ex. No.	Structural formula	¹ H-NMR (CDCl ₃): δ
24		2. 16(3H, s), 3. 59-3. 72(8H, m), 7. 31(2H, d, J=9. 0Hz), 8. 27(2H, d, J=9. 0Hz)
25		3. 88-3. 99(2H, m), 5. 46(1H, brs), 7. 35(2H, d, J=9. 0Hz), 8. 27(2H, d, J=9. 0Hz)
26		0. 60-0. 69(2H, m), 0. 79-0. 96(2H, m), 2. 70-2. 71 (1H, m), 5. 41(1H, brs), 7. 29(2H, d, J=9. 3Hz), 8. 22 (2H, d, J=9. 3Hz)
27		1. 47(9H, s), 1. 30-1. 50(3H, m), 1. 95-2. 10(2H, m), 2. 89(1H, t, J=12Hz), 3. 68-3. 77(1H, m), 4. 07-4. 20 (2H, m), 7. 32(2H, d, J=9. 0Hz), 8. 25(2H, d, J=9. 0Hz)

The compounds of the following Reference Examples were synthesized by reacting and treating in the same manner as in the method described in Process 3 of Reference Example 7 using the respective corresponding anisole derivatives or ethoxybenzene derivatives.

[Table 5]

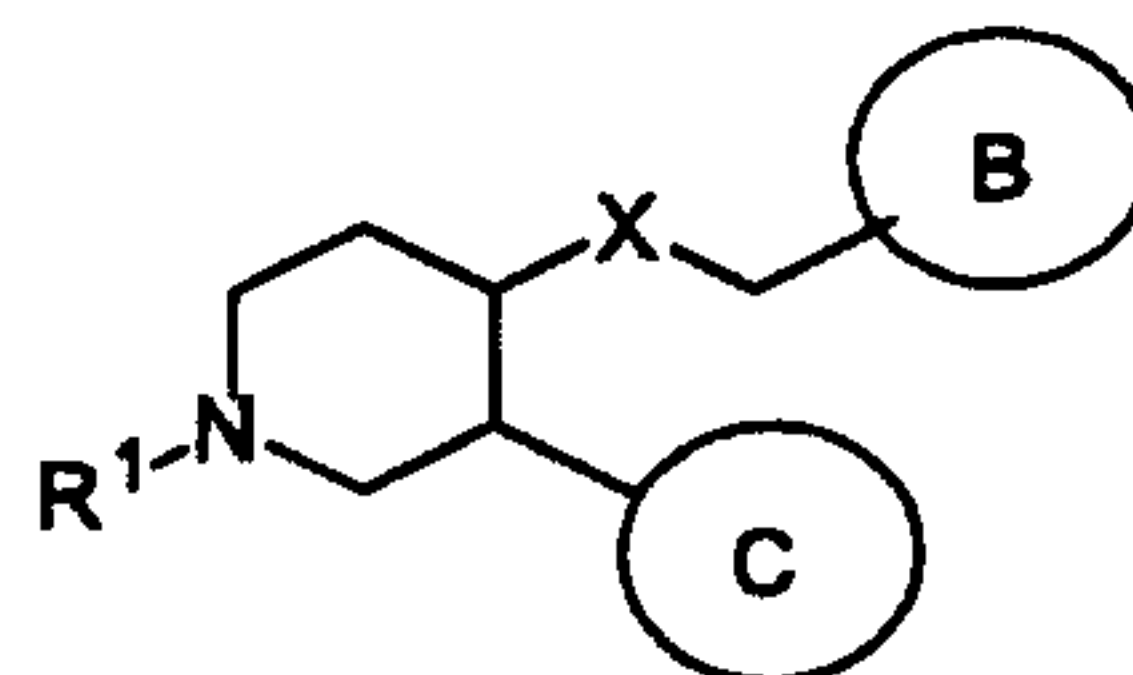
Ref. Ex. No.	Structural formula	¹ H-NMR (CDCl ₃): δ
28		2. 78(3H, s), 4. 04(3H, s), 7. 17(1H, d, J=8. 7Hz), 8. 26(1H, dd, J=8. 7, 2. 7Hz), 8. 39(1H, d, J=2. 7Hz), 10. 49(1H, s)
29		4. 07(3H, s), 7. 21(1H, d, J=8. 7Hz), 8. 37 (1H, dd, J=2. 4Hz), 8. 53(1H, d, J=2. 4Hz), 10. 51(1H, s)
30		2. 50(3H, s), 3. 99(3H, s), 6. 86(1H, s), 7. 07(1H, d, J=8. 7Hz), 8. 21(1H, dd, J=8. 7, 2. 4Hz), 8. 31(1H, d, J=2. 4Hz), 10. 49(1H, s)
31		2. 61(3H, s), 4. 03(3H, s), 7. 14(1H, d, J=8. 7Hz), 8. 29(1H, dd, J=8. 7, 2. 1Hz), 8. 41(1H, d, J=2. 1Hz), 10. 48(1H, s)
32		4. 02(3H, s), 6. 81(1H, dd, J=1. 8, 0. 3Hz), 7. 11 (1H, d, J=8. 7Hz), 7. 66(1H, dd, J=8. 7, 2. 4Hz), 7. 70(1H, m), 7. 95(1H, d, J=2. 4Hz), 10. 49(1H, s)
33		4. 03(3H, s), 7. 19(1H, d, J=9. 2Hz), 7. 86(1H, d, J=1. 2Hz), 8. 01(1H, d, J=1. 2Hz), 8. 04(1H, d, J=2. 8Hz), 8. 12 (1H, dd, J=9. 2, 2. 8Hz), 10. 51(1H, s)
34		1. 57(3H, t, J=7. 1Hz), 4. 29(2H, q, J=7. 1Hz), 7. 20 (1H, d, J=9. 0Hz), 7. 63(1H, dd, J=9. 0, 3. 0Hz), 7. 95 (1H, d, J=3. 0Hz), 10. 51(1H, s)

The compounds of the following Reference Examples were synthesized from the compound obtained in Process 2 of

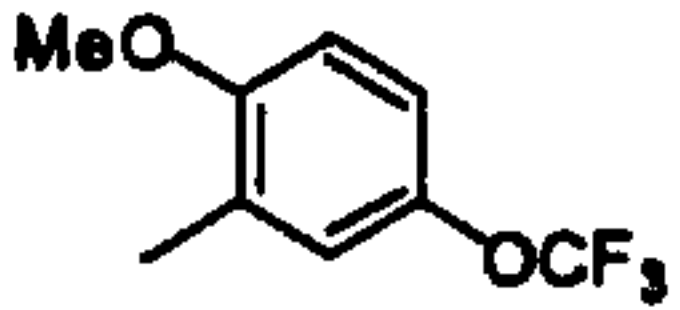
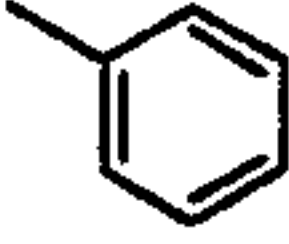
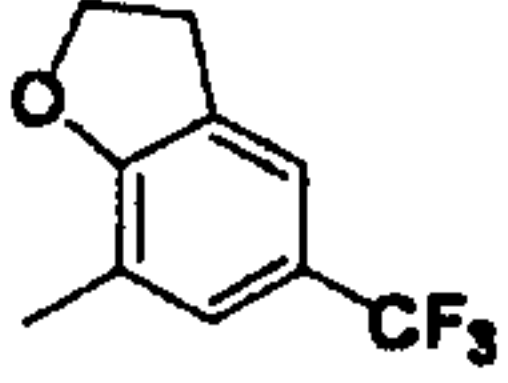
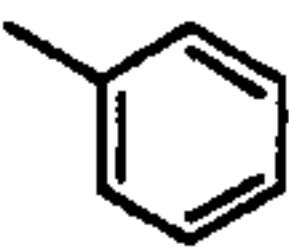
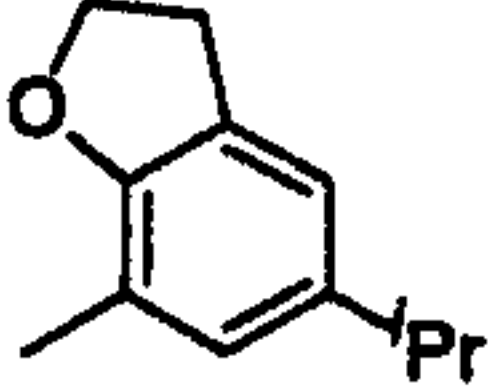
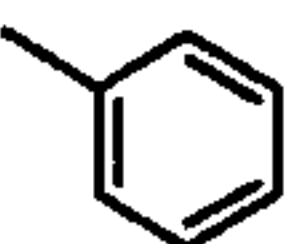
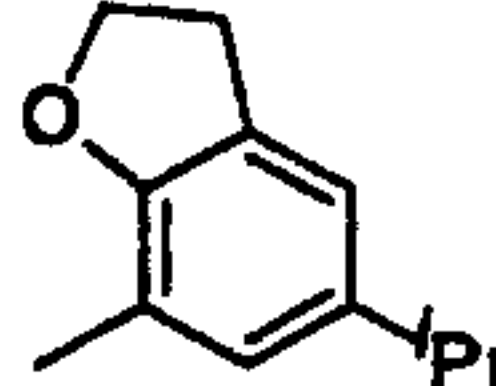
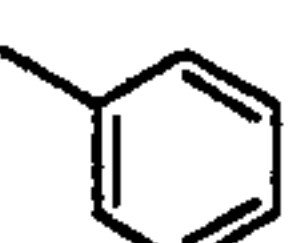
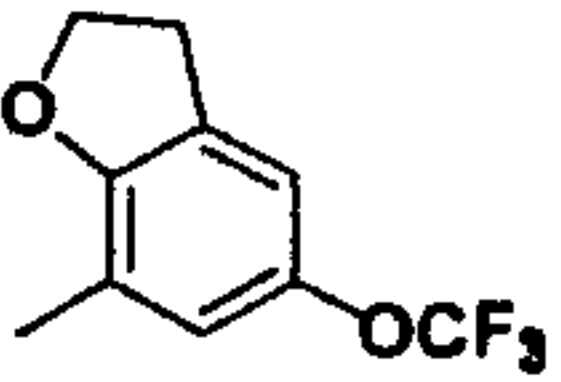
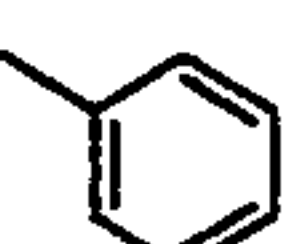
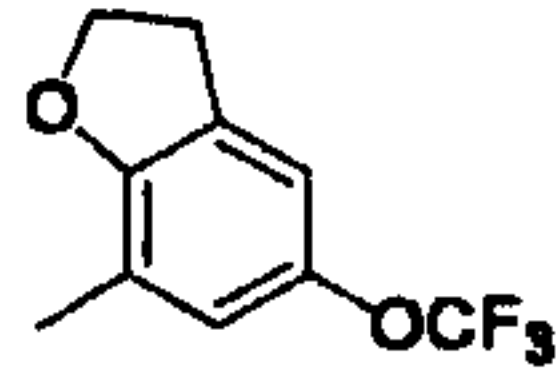
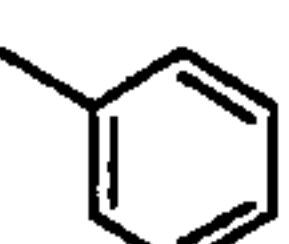
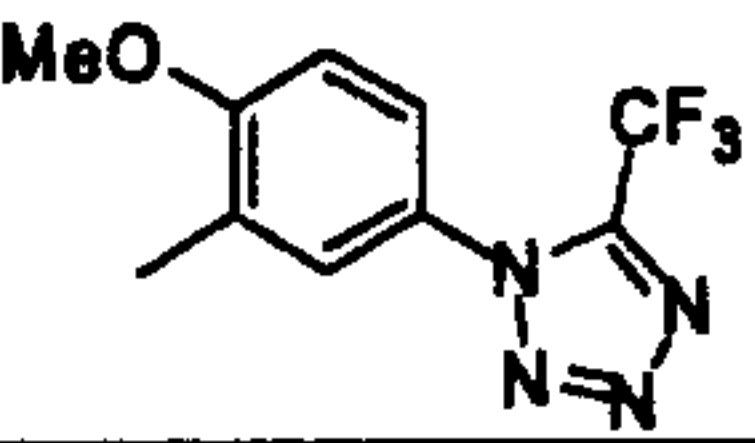
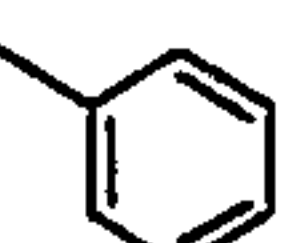
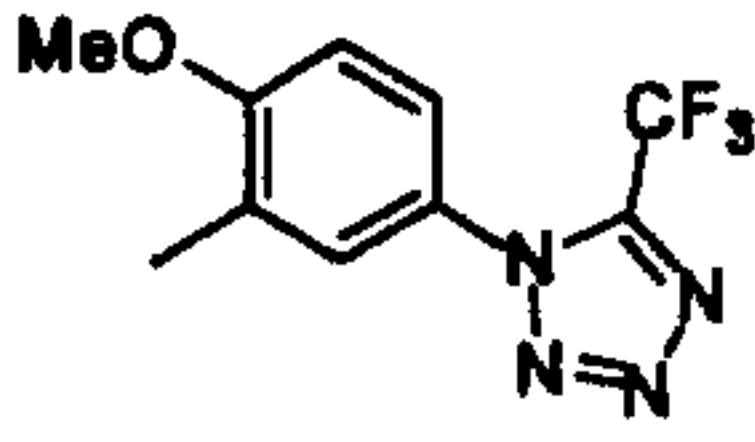
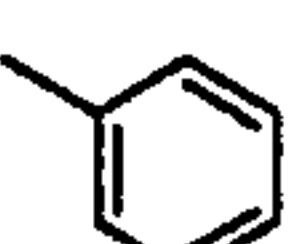
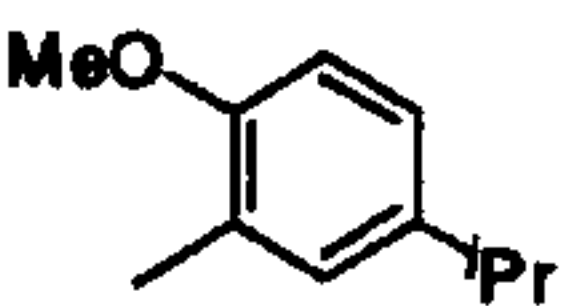
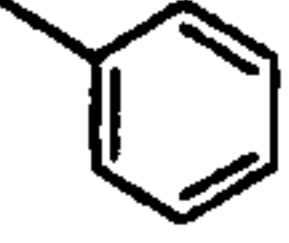
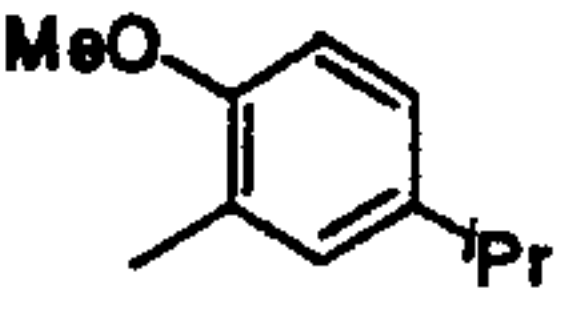
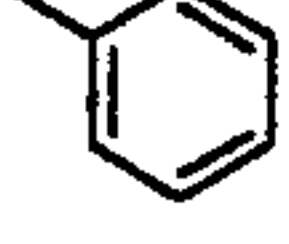
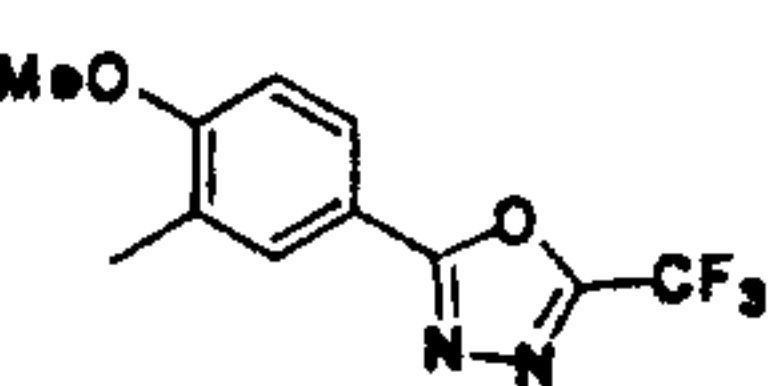
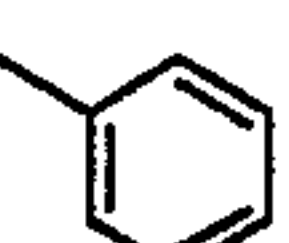
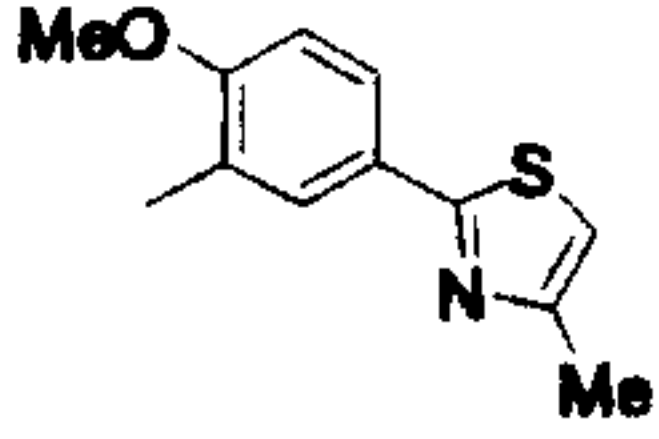
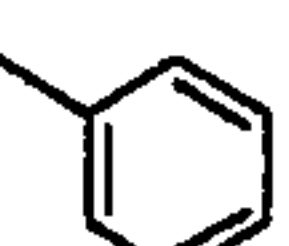
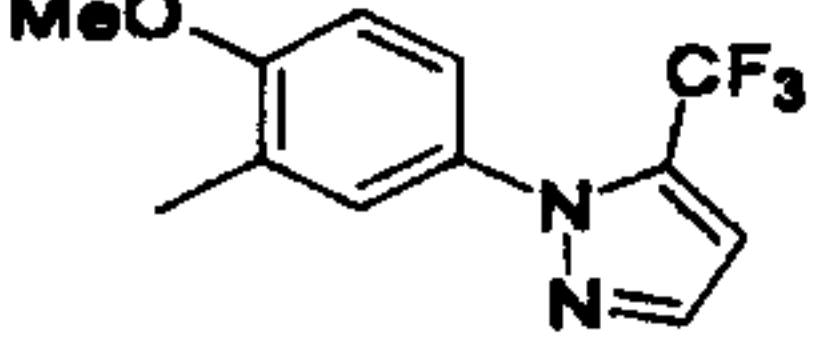
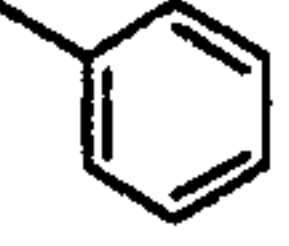
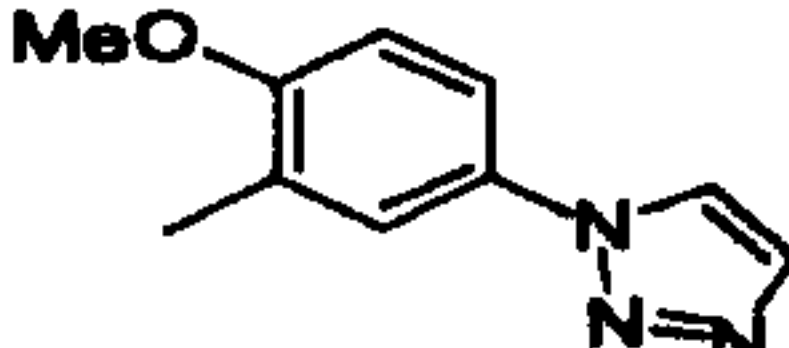
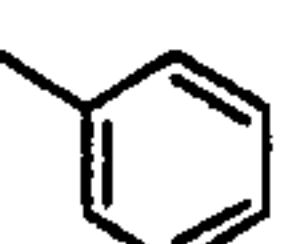
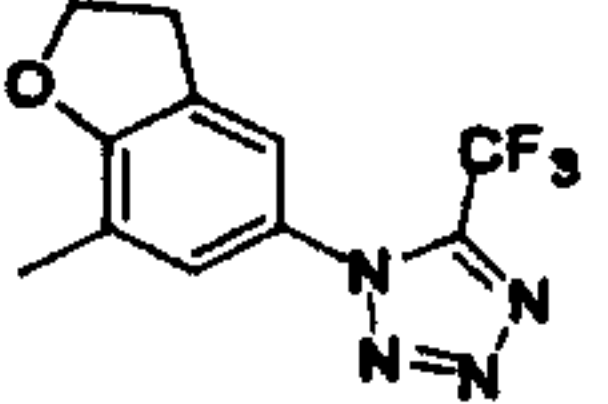
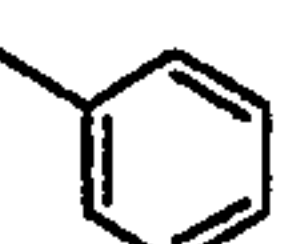
- 118 -

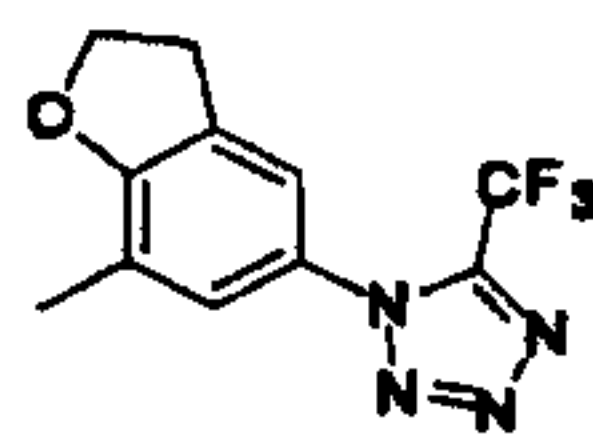
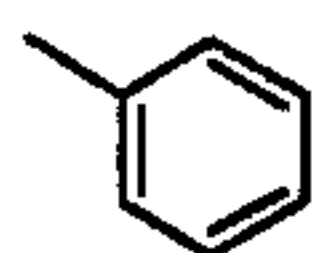
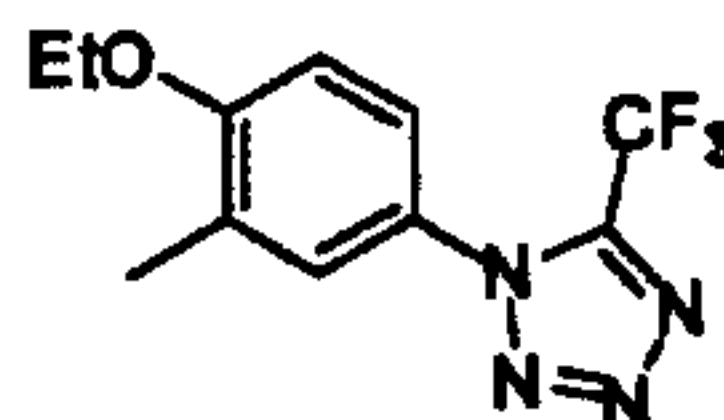
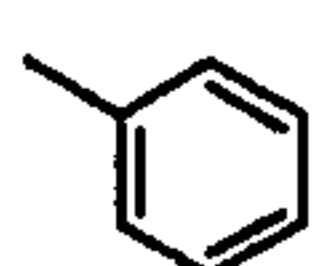
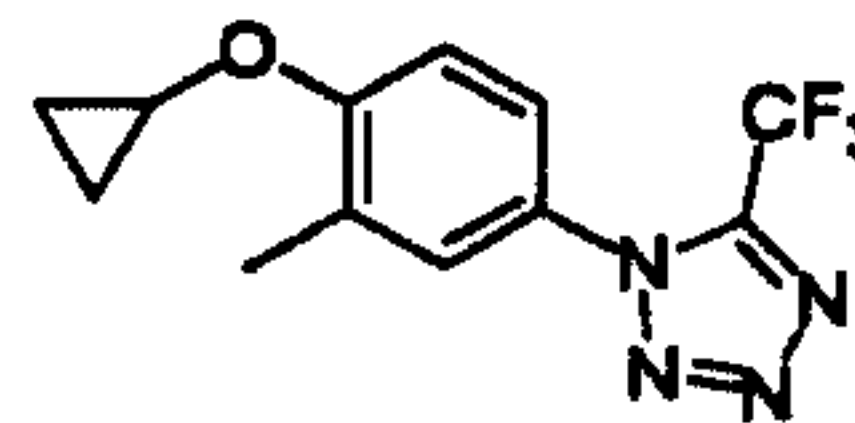
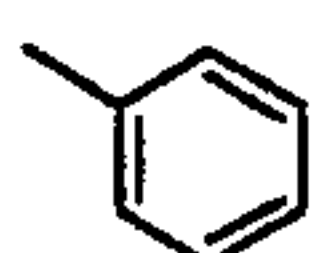
Reference Example 2 as a starting material by reacting and treating in the same manner as in the method described in Process 3 of Reference Example 2 using benzaldehyde derivatives obtained in Reference Example 7 or 28 to 34 or 5 known benzaldehyde derivatives.

[Table 6]



Ref. Ex. No.	Stereo-chemistry	R ¹	X	B	C	MS (ESI) (M+H) ⁺
35	(±)- <i>cis</i>	Boc	NH			503
36	(±)- <i>trans</i>	Boc	NH			503

37	(±)- <i>cis</i>	Boc	NH			481
38	(±)- <i>cis</i>	Boc	NH			477
39	(±)- <i>cis</i>	Boc	NH			451
40	(±)- <i>trans</i>	Boc	NH			451
41	(±)- <i>cis</i>	Boc	NH			493
42	(±)- <i>trans</i>	Boc	NH			493
43	(±)- <i>cis</i>	Boc	NH			533
44	(±)- <i>trans</i>	Boc	NH			533
45	(±)- <i>cis</i>	Boc	NH			439
46	(±)- <i>trans</i>	Boc	NH			439
47	(±)- <i>cis</i>	Boc	NH			533
48	(±)- <i>cis</i>	Boc	NH			494
49	(±)- <i>cis</i>	Boc	NH			531
50	(±)- <i>cis</i>	Boc	NH			464
51	(±)- <i>cis</i>	Boc	NH			545

52	(±)- <i>trans</i>	Boc	NH			545
53	(±)- <i>cis</i>	Boc	NH			547
54	(±)- <i>cis</i>	Boc	NH			559

Reference Example 55

cis-3-Benzyl-4-[[3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]piperidine-1-carboxylic acid
 5 tert-butyl ester

(Process 1)

To a solution of 4-oxopiperidine-1,3-dicarboxylic acid
 1-tert-butyl 3-ethyl ester (6.0 g) in DMF (45 ml), sodium
 hydride (60% in oil, 0.85 g) was added, and then the reaction
 10 mixture was stirred at room temperature for 30 minutes. The
 reaction solution was cooled to 0°C, and then benzyl bromide
 (2.64 ml) was added thereto, and the reaction solution was
 stirred at room temperature for 1 hour. The reaction
 solution was diluted with ethyl acetate, and then
 15 sequentially washed with an aqueous 10% citric acid solution,
 water and saturated brine. The organic layer was dried, and
 then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure to
 obtain 3-benzyl-4-oxopiperidine-1,3-dicarboxylic acid 1-tert-
 butyl 3-ethyl ester as colorless crystals (7.19 g, 90%).

20 Melting point: 91 - 94°C.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃): δ 1.15 (3H, t, J=7.2 Hz), 1.45 (9H, s),
 2.3-2.5 (1H, m), 2.6-2.8 (1H, m), 2.95-3.25 (3H, m), 3.26 (1H,
 d, J=14 Hz), 4.07 (2H, q, J=7.2 Hz), 4.1-4.3 (1H, m), 4.5-4.7
 (1H, m), 7.1-7.3 (5H, m).

25 (Process 2)

A mixture of the compound (6.0 g) obtained in Process 1,
 methanol (100 ml) and 6 N hydrochloric acid (250 ml) was

- 121 -

stirred at 110°C for 24 hours. To the reaction solution, concentrated hydrochloric acid (100 ml) was added, and the reaction mixture was further stirred at 110°C for 24 hours. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and then
5 an aqueous 4 N sodium hydroxide solution-ice was added to the residue to make it basic, and the mixture was extracted with dichloromethane. The extract was washed with saturated brine, dried, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The obtained residue was dissolved in THF (60 ml),
10 cooled to 0°C, and then di-tert-butyl dicarbonate (5.0 ml) was added thereto, and the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1 hour.

The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and then the obtained residue was isolated and purified by silica
15 gel column chromatography (hexane : ethyl acetate = 4 : 1) to obtain 3-benzyl-4-oxopiperidine-1-carboxylic acid tert-butyl ester as white crystals (4.20 g, 87%).

Melting point: 74 - 75°C.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃): δ 1.42 (9H, s), 2.43-2.60 (3H, m), 2.70
20 (1H, m), 2.97 (1H, dd, J=13.2, 9.8 Hz), 3.14-3.41 (2H, m), 3.9-4.2 (2H, m), 7.15-7.35 (5H, m).

(Process 3)

To a solution of the compound (4.02 g) obtained in Process 2 in THF (60 ml), 1 M K-selectride/THF solution (20
25 ml) was added at -78°C, and the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1 hour. To the reaction mixture was added an aqueous saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate solution, and then the product was extracted with ethyl acetate. The extract was sequentially washed with an aqueous saturated
30 sodium hydrogen carbonate solution, an aqueous 10% citric acid solution and saturated brine, dried, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The obtained residue was isolated and purified by silica gel column chromatography (hexane : ethyl acetate = 3 : 1) to obtain
35 cis-3-benzyl-4-hydroxypiperidine-1-carboxylic acid tert-butyl

- 122 -

ester (4.07 g, quantitative) as colorless oil. The obtained product was used in the next process without further purification.

(Process 4)

5 To a solution of the compound (3.82 g) obtained in Process 3 in DMF (30 ml), sodium hydride (60% in oil, 0.84 g) was added, and then the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 30 minutes. The reaction solution was cooled to 0°C, and then 3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl
10 bromide (6.03 g) was added thereto, and the obtained mixture was stirred at room temperature for 2 hours. The reaction solution was diluted with ethyl acetate, and then sequentially washed with water and saturated brine. The organic layer was dried, and then the solvent was evaporated
15 under reduced pressure. The obtained residue was isolated and purified by silica gel column chromatography (hexane : ethyl acetate = 5 : 1) to obtain the title compound as pale yellow oil (4.53 g, 67%).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃): δ 1.40-1.70 (1H, m), 1.45 (9H, s), 1.85-
20 2.10 (2H, m), 2.55-2.85 (2H, m), 3.00-3.80 (4H, m), 4.46 (1H, d, J=12.8 Hz), 4.69 (1H, d, J=12.8 Hz), 7.10-7.35 (5H, m), 7.83 (3H, s).

Reference Example 56

(+)-cis-tert-Butyl 4-amino-3-phenylpiperidine-1-
25 carboxylate

A solution of the compound (60.6 g) obtained in Process 5 of Reference Example 1, (S)-1-phenylethylamine (40 g), aluminium chloride (1.5 g) in toluene (750 ml) was stirred at reflux temperature for 8 hours under argon air flow. The
30 reaction solution was azeotropically dehydrated and reacted in Dean-Stark reflux tube with adding toluene (1000 ml). The reaction solution was concentrated under reduced pressure.

Raney nickel (110 g, water contained) was washed with ethanol, and then a solution thereof in ethanol (500 ml) was
35 prepared. The previous residue was added thereto, and then

- 123 -

the reaction mixture was stirred at 25°C for 62 hours under hydrogen pressure of 0.5 MPa. Raney nickel was removed by decantation, and the supernatant was concentrated under reduced pressure. To the residue was added ethyl acetate, and then the precipitated crystal was filtered. The filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography (hexane : ethyl acetate = 3 : 1) to obtain yellow oil (77 g).

The obtained residue (77 g) was added to palladium carbon (5 wt%, 11.1 g) in ethanol (500 ml), and then, the reaction mixture was stirred at 45°C for 13 hours under hydrogen pressure of 0.5 MPa. The palladium carbon was removed by filtration, and the filtrate was concentrated and dried. The residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography (hexane : ethyl acetate = 2 : 1 → only ethyl acetate → ethyl acetate : methanol = 2 : 1) to obtain the title compound as colorless powder (52.2 g).

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3): δ 0.87 (1H, brs), 1.20 (1H, brs), 1.46 (9H, s), 1.61 (1H, m), 1.88 (1H, m), 2.93 (1H, m), 3.30-4.11 (5H, m), 7.00-7.52 (5H, m).

$[\alpha]_{\text{D}}^{25} +103^\circ$ (c 1.0, CHCl_3).

Optical yield: 98.3%ee

High performance liquid chromatography condition

Column: CHIRAPAK AD-RH (Daicel Chemical Industries, Ltd.)

Solvebt: phosphate buffer (20 mM disodium hydrogenphosphate)/acetonitrile (volume ratio: 60/40)

Flow rate: 0.6 ml/min

Detection: UV (220 nm)

Temperature: 30°C

Retention time: 15 min (99.1%), 31 min (0.9%)

Reference Example 57

(-)-cis-tert-Butyl 4-amino-3-phenylpiperidine-1-carboxylate

- 124 -

Under argon air flow, the compound (2.07 g) obtained in Process 5 of Reference Example 1 and (R)-1-phenylethylamine (1.36 g) and aluminium chloride (0.05 g) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in
5 Reference Example 56 to obtain the title compound as colorless powder (1.44 g).

Optical yield: 97.3%ee

Reference Example 58

cis-tert-Butyl 4-amino-3-phenylpiperidine-1-carboxylate

10 Under argon air flow, the compound (0.55 g) obtained in Process 5 of Reference Example 1, (R)-1-naphthylethylamine (0.41 g) and aluminium chloride (0.013 g) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Reference Example 56 to obtain the title compound as
15 colorless powder (0.31 g).

Optical yield: 96.9%ee.

Reference Example 59

cis-tert-Butyl 4-amino-3-phenylpiperidine-1-carboxylate

Under argon air flow, the compound (0.55 g) obtained in
20 Process 5 of Reference Example 1, (R)-4-tolyethylaniline (0.32 g) and aluminium chloride (0.013 g) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Reference Example 56 to obtain the title compound as colorless powder (0.14 g).

25 Optical yield: 87.9%ee.

Example 1

cis-4-[[3,5-Bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-3-phenylpiperidine hydrochloride

To the compound (4.00 g) obtained in Reference Example
30 1, trifluoroacetic acid (20 ml) was added at 0°C, and the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 30 minutes. The reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure, and then the residue was dissolved in ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with an aqueous saturated sodium
35 hydrogen carbonate solution and brine, dried, and then the

- 125 -

solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The obtained residue was treated with a 4 N hydrochloric acid/ethyl acetate solution (1.0 ml) to obtain the title compound as colorless crystals (1.65 g, 47%).

5 ^1H -NMR (CDCl_3): δ 2.15-2.42 (2H, m), 3.20-3.72 (5H, m), 3.90 (1H, s), 4.13 (1H, d, $J=12.3$ Hz), 4, 52 (1H, d, $J=12.3$ Hz), 7.16-7.34 (5H, m), 7.45 (2H, s), 7.74 (1H, s), 9.60-10.00 (2H, br).

Example 2

10 cis-1-Acetyl-4-[[3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-3-phenylpiperidine

To a solution of the compound (0.15 g) obtained in Example 1 in THF (5.0 ml), Et_3N (0.15 ml) was added, acetyl chloride (0.040 ml) was added at 0°C , and the reaction
15 mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1 hour. The reaction mixture was poured into water, and then the product was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with an aqueous 10% citric acid solution and saturated brine, dried, and then the solvent was evaporated under
20 reduced pressure. The obtained residue was isolated and purified by silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate : hexane = 1 : 1 $\rightarrow$ 1 : 0) to obtain the title compound as colorless oil (0.10 g, 66%).

HPLC analysis (Condition A): Purity 73% (Retention
25 time: 3.77 minutes)

MS (ESI+): 446 (M+H)

Example 3

cis-1-Benzoyl-4-[[3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-3-phenylpiperidine

30 The compound (0.15 g) obtained in Example 1 and benzoyl chloride (0.060 ml) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 2 to obtain the title compound as colorless oil (0.16 g, 91%).

HPLC analysis (Condition A): Purity 91% (Retention
35 time: 4.11 minutes)

- 126 -

MS (ESI+): 508 (M+H)

Example 4

cis-4-[[3,5-Bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-1-methylsulfonyl-3-phenylpiperidine

5 The compound (0.15 g) obtained in Example 1 and methylsulfonyl chloride (0.040 ml) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 2 to obtain the title compound as colorless oil (0.093 g, 57%).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃): δ 1.86-2.26 (2H, m), 2.84 (3H, s), 2.98-
10 3.18 (2H, m), 3.42 (1H, t, J=11.5 Hz), 3.66-3.94 (3H, m),
4.20 (1H, d, J=12.0 Hz), 4.57 (1H, d, J=12.0 Hz), 7.20-7.35
(5H, m), 7.52 (2H, s), 7.75 (1H, s).

Example 5

cis-4-[[3,5-Bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-3-
15 phenylpiperidine-1-carboxylic acid methyl ester

The compound (0.15 g) obtained in Example 1 and methyl chloroformate (0.040 ml) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 2 to obtain the title compound as colorless oil (0.11 g, 67%).

20 ¹H-NMR (CDCl₃): δ 1.65-1.90 (1H, m), 2.00-2.15 (1H, m),
2.80-3.00 (1H, m), 3.21 (1H, t, J=12.0 Hz), 3.57 (1H, t,
J=12.0 Hz), 3.71 (3H, s), 3.90 (1H, m), 4.15 (2H, m), 4.19
(1H, d, J=12.4 Hz), 4.58 (1H, d, J=12.4 Hz), 7.20-7.40 (5H,
m), 7.53 (2H, s), 7.73 (1H, s).

25 Example 6

cis-4-[[3,5-Bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-N-methyl-3-phenyl-1-piperidinecarboxamide

To a solution of the compound (0.20 g) obtained in Example 1 and Et₃N (0.19 ml) in acetonitrile (5 ml), methyl
30 isocyanate (0.050 ml) was added, and the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 14 hours. The reaction mixture was poured into water, and then the product was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with an aqueous 10% citric acid solution and saturated brine,
35 dried, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced

- 127 -

pressure. The obtained residue was isolated and purified by silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate : methanol = 20 : 1) to obtain the title compound as colorless oil (0.20 g, 95%).

5 ¹H-NMR (CDCl₃): δ 1.75-1.87 (1H, m), 2.06 (1H, dq, J=14.1, 3.0 Hz), 2.82 (3H, d, J=4.8 Hz), 2.91-2.98 (1H, m), 3.21 (1H, dt, J=13.2, 3.0 Hz), 3.58-3.67 (1H, m), 3.76-3.82 (1H, m), 3.90-3.96 (2H, m), 4.20 (1H, d, J=12.6 Hz), 4.42-4.50 (1H, m), 4.58 (1H, d, J=12.6 Hz), 7.23-7.35 (5H, m),
10 7.53 (2H, s), 7.74 (1H, s).

Example 7

5-[[cis-4-[[3,5-Bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-3-phenylpiperidinyl]methyl]-2,4-dihydro-3H-1,2,4-triazol-3-one

To a mixed solution of the compound (0.15 g) obtained
15 in Example 1 and potassium carbonate (0.047 g) in DMF (2 ml) and water (0.02 ml), 5-(chloromethyl)-2,4-dihydro-3H-1,2,4-triazol-3-one (0.046 g) synthesized by the method described in the document (e.g., Tetrahedron Letters, Vol. 41, pages 8661-8664) was added at 0°C, and the reaction mixture was
20 stirred at 0°C for 3 hours. The reaction mixture was poured into water, and then the product was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with saturated brine, dried, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The obtained residue was isolated and purified by
25 silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate : methanol = 20 : 1) to obtain the title compound as colorless crystals (0.050 g, 29%).

Melting point: 89 - 91°C (recrystallized from ethyl acetate - IPE).

30 Example 8

[cis-4-[[3,5-Bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-3-phenylpiperidinyl]acetic acid ethyl ester

The compound (0.21 g) obtained in Example 1 and ethyl bromoacetate (0.17 g) were reacted and treated in the same
35 manner as in the method described in Example 7 to obtain the

- 128 -

title compound as colorless oil (0.10 g, 42%).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃): δ 1.27 (3H, t, J=7.2 Hz), 1.90-2.12 (2H, m), 2.58 (1H, dt, J=3.3, 12.0 Hz), 2.79-2.90 (2H, m), 2.97 (1H, t, J=11.7 Hz), 3.13-3.20 (1H, m), 3.29 (2H, s), 3.80 (1H, q, J=2.7 Hz), 4.19 (2H, q, J=7.0 Hz), 4.08-4.28 (1H, m), 4.55 (1H, d, J=12.3 Hz), 7, 20-7, 30 (5H, m), 7.54 (2H, s), 7, 71 (1H, s).

Example 9

[cis-4-[[3,5-Bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-3-phenylpiperidinyl]acetamide

The compound (0.15 g) obtained in Example 1 and bromoacetamide (0.094 g) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 7 to obtain the title compound as colorless crystals (0.083 g, 52%).

Melting point: 123 - 125°C (recrystallized from diethyl ether - hexane).

Example 10

[cis-4-[[3,5-Bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-3-phenylpiperidinyl]acetonitrile

The compound (0.15 g) obtained in Example 1 and bromoacetonitrile (0.082 g) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 7 to obtain the title compound as colorless oil (0.13 g, 86%).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃): δ 1.84-1.97 (1H, m), 2.13 (1H, dq, J=3.6, 14.4 Hz), 2.65-2.84 (3H, m), 3.04-3.20 (2H, m), 3.55 (1H, d, J=16.8 Hz), 3.62 (1H, d, J=16.8 Hz), 3.79 (1H, q like, J=3.0 Hz), 4.21 (1H, d, J=12.6 Hz), 4.56 (1H, d, J=12.6 Hz), 7.22-7.36 (5H, m), 7.52 (2H, s), 7.73 (1H, s).

Example 11

cis-4-[[3,5-Bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-N,N-dimethyl-3-phenyl-1-piperidinecarboxamide

The compound (0.15 g) obtained in Example 1 and N,N-dimethylcarbamic acid chloride (0.074 g) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 6 to obtain the title compound as colorless oil (0.13

- 129 -

g, 80%).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃): δ 1.82-1.95 (1H, m), 2.04 (1H, dq, J=3.0, 14.1 Hz), 2.80-2.90 (6H, m), 2.92-3.06 (1H, m), 3.15 (1H, dt, J=3.0, 13.2 Hz), 3.56-3.68 (3H, m), 3.90 (1H, q, J=3.0 Hz),
5 4.17 (1H, d, J=12.9 Hz), 4.57 (1H, d, J=12.9 Hz), 7.20-7.34 (5H, m), 7.52 (2H, s), 7.72 (1H, s).

Example 12

cis-4-[[3,5-Bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-N,3-diphenyl-1-piperidinecarboxamide

10 The compound (0.15 g) obtained in Example 1 and phenyl isocyanate (0.074 ml) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 6 to obtain the title compound as colorless oil (0.12 g, 67%).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃): δ 1.80-2.00 (1H, m), 2.10-2.20 (1H, m),
15 2.99-3.05 (1H, m), 3.31 (1H, dt, J=2.7, 12.9 Hz), 3.75 (1H, t, J=12.0 Hz), 3.90-4.00 (2H, m), 4.02-4.12 (1H, m), 4, 22 (1H, d, J=12.3 Hz), 4.60 (1H, d, J=12.3 Hz), 6.42 (1H, s), 7.00-7.10 (1H, m), 7.24-7.38 (9H, m), 7.54 (2H, s), 7.75 (1H, s).

Example 13

20 cis-4-[[3,5-Bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-N-ethyl-3-phenyl-1-piperidinecarboxamide

The compound (0.20 g) obtained in Example 1 and ethyl isocyanate (0.047 g) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 6 to obtain the
25 title compound as colorless oil (0.12 g, 74%).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃): δ 1.13 (3H, t, J=7.1 Hz), 1.70-1.90 (1H, m), 2.00-2.15 (1H, m), 2.90-3.00 (1H, m), 3.12-3.36 (3H, m), 3.55-3.68 (1H, t like), 3.72-3.84 (1H, dd like), 3.86-4.00 (2H, m), 4.20 (1H, d, J=12.4 Hz), 4.38-4.46 (1H, m), 4.58 (1H,
30 d, J=12.4 Hz), 7.22-7.40 (5H, m), 7, 53 (2H, s), 7, 73 (1H, s).

Example 14

cis-4-[[3,5-Bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-1-(1H-imidazol-1-ylcarbonyl)-3-phenyl-1-piperidinecarboxamide

35 To a solution of the compound (0.15 g) obtained in

- 130 -

Example 1 and Et₃N (0.048 ml) in THF (4 ml), N,N'-carbonyldiimidazole (0.071 g) was added, and the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 14 hours. The reaction mixture was poured into water, and then the product
5 was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with an aqueous saturated ammonium chloride solution and saturated brine, dried, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The obtained residue was isolated and purified by silica gel column chromatography
10 (ethyl acetate : hexane = 4 : 1) to obtain the title compound as colorless crystals (0.12 g, 70%).

Melting point: 105 - 107°C (recrystallized from ethyl acetate - IPE).

Example 15

15 cis-N-Allyl-4-[[3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-3-phenyl-1-piperidinecarboxamide

(Process 1)

To a solution of the compound (0.17 g) obtained in Example 14 in acetonitrile (0.6 ml), methyl iodide (0.085 ml)
20 was added, and the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 14 hours. The reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure to obtain 1-[[4-[[3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-3-phenylpiperidin-1-yl]carbonyl]-3-methyl-1H-imidazol-3-ium iodide as pale yellow
25 amorphous. The obtained product was used in the next process without further purification.

(Process 2)

To a solution of the compound obtained in Process 1 in dichloromethane (1 ml), allylamine (0.040 ml) and Et₃N (0.048
30 ml) were added, and the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 14 hours. The reaction mixture was poured into water, and then the product was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with an aqueous 10% citric acid solution and saturated brine, dried, and then the
35 solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The obtained

- 131 -

residue was isolated and purified by silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate : hexane = 4 : 1) to obtain the title compound as colorless oil (0.090 g, 54%).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃): δ 1.75-1.87 (1H, m), 2.02-2.10 (1H, m),
5 2.91-2.97 (1H, m), 3.22 (1H, dt, J=2.7, 12.9 Hz), 3.65 (1H, d, J=12.3 Hz), 3.77-4.00 (5H, m), 4.19 (1H, d, J=12.6 Hz), 4.50-4.58 (1H, br), 4.57 (1H, d, J=12.6 Hz), 5.07-5.19 (2H, m), 5.81-5.94 (1H, m), 7.20-7.34 (5H, m), 7.52 (2H, s), 7.72 (1H, s).

10 Example 16

cis-4-[[3,5-Bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-1-(2-methoxybenzyl)-3-phenylpiperidine

To a solution of the compound (0.20 g) obtained in Example 1, 2-methoxybenzyl alcohol (0.075 g) and
15 diisopropylethylamine (0.24 g) in dichloromethane (2 ml), EPPA (0.20 g) was added, and the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 14 hours. The reaction mixture was poured into water, and then the product was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with an aqueous
20 saturated ammonium chloride solution and saturated brine, dried, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The obtained residue was isolated and purified by silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate : methanol = 20 : 1) to obtain the title compound as colorless oil (0.15 g,
25 62%).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃): δ 1.85-2.10 (2H, m), 2.45-2.60 (1H, m), 2.70-2.82 (1H, br), 2.88 (2H, d like, J=6,6 Hz), 3.08-3.20 (1H, br), 3.66 (2H, br s), 3.78 (1H, q, J=3.0 Hz), 3.82 (3H, s), 4.17 (1H, d, J=13.2 Hz), 4.54 (1H, d, J=13.2 Hz), 6.86
30 (1H, d, J=8.1 Hz), 6.91 (1H, dt, J=7.2, 0.9 Hz), 7.18-7.30 (6H, m), 7.38 (1H, d like, J=6.0 Hz), 7.52 (2H, s), 7.70 (1H, s).

Example 17

cis-4-[[3,5-Bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-3-phenyl-1-
35 piperidinecarboxamide

- 132 -

To a solution of the compound (0.20 g) obtained in Process 1 of Example 15 in THF (1 ml), 28% ammonia water (0.20 ml) was added, and the reaction solution was stirred at room temperature for 14 hours. The reaction solution was
5 treated in the same manner as in the method described in Process 2 of Example 15 to obtain the title compound as colorless oil (0.075 g, 54%).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃): δ 1.78-1.90 (1H, m), 2.05-2.14 (1H, m), 2.93-3.12 (1H, m), 3.24 (1H, dt, J=3.3, 13.2 Hz), 3.68 (1H, d, J=12.3 Hz), 3.78-3.85 (1H, m), 3.88-4.00 (2H, m), 4.20 (1H, d, J=12.6 Hz), 4.48 (2H, br s), 4.58 (1H, d, J=12.6 Hz), 7.20-7.34 (5H, m), 7.52 (2H, s), 7.73 (1H, s).

Example 18

cis-4-[[3,5-Bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-3-phenyl-N-
15 propyl-1-piperidinecarboxamide

The compound (0.20 g) obtained in Process 1 of Example 15 and propylamine (0.056 g) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Process 2 of Example 15 to obtain the title compound as colorless oil
20 (0.099 g, 64%).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃): δ 0.91 (3H, t, J=7.2 Hz), 1.51 (2H, m), 1.75-1.90 (1H, m), 2.02-2.10 (1H, m), 2.90-3.00 (1H, m), 3.14-3.26 (3H, m), 3.64 (1H, d, J=11.7 Hz), 3.72-3.80 (1H, m), 3.88-3.98 (2H, m), 4.20 (1H, d, J=12.3 Hz), 4.48 (1H, br s), 4.57 (1H, d, J=12.3 Hz), 7.21-7.34 (5H, m), 7.52 (2H, s), 7.72 (1H, s).

Example 19

cis-4-[[3,5-Bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-1-(2,5-dimethoxybenzyl)-3-phenylpiperidine

30 The compound (0.20 g) obtained in Example 1 and 2,5-dimethoxybenzyl alcohol (0.12 g) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 16 to obtain the title compound as colorless oil (0.060 g, 23%).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃): δ 1.80-2.12 (2H, m), 2.42-2.60 (1H, m),
35 2.70-2.82 (1H, m), 2.84-2.96 (2H, m), 3.06-3.20 (1H, m), 3.63

- 133 -

(2H, s), 3.76 (3H, s), 3.78 (3H, s), 3.74-3.84 (1H, m), 4.18 (1H, d, J=12.8 Hz), 4.55 (1H, d, J=14.8 Hz), 6.69-6.82 (2H, m), 7.02 (1H, d, J=3.0 Hz), 7.20-7.34 (5H, m), 7.53 (2H, s), 7.71 (1H, s).

5 Example 20

 cis-4-[[3,5-Bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-3-phenyl-N-(2-phenylethyl)-1-piperidinecarboxamide

 The compound (0.20 g) obtained in Process 1 of Example 15 and phenethylamine (0.11 g) were reacted and treated in
10 the same manner as in the method described in Process 2 of Example 15 to obtain the title compound as colorless oil (0.12 g, 69%).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃): δ 1.71-1.83 (1H, m), 2.00-2.10 (1H, m), 2.75-3.00 (3H, m), 3.18 (1H, dt, J=2.7, 12.9 Hz), 3.50 (2H, q, J=5.7 Hz), 3.60 (1H, d, J=12.0 Hz), 3.72 (1H, dd, J=13.2, 3.3 Hz), 3.80-3.92 (2H, m), 4.19 (1H, d, J=12.3 Hz), 4.47 (1H, t, J=2.6 Hz), 4.57 (1H, d, J=12.6 Hz), 7.17-7.35 (10H, m), 7.53 (2H, s), 7.73 (1H, s).

 Example 21

20 cis-4-[[3,5-Bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-3-phenyl-N-(2-propynyl)-1-piperidinecarboxamide

 The compound (0.20 g) obtained in Process 1 of Example 15 and propargylamine (0.052 g) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Process 2 of
25 Example 15 to obtain the title compound as colorless oil (0.11 g, 71%).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃): δ 1.75-1.90 (1H, m), 2.00-2.13 (1H, m), 2.22 (1H, t, J=2.4 Hz), 2.90-3.00 (1H, m), 3.22 (1H, dt, J=3.3, 13.2 Hz), 3.66 (1H, d, J=12.3 Hz), 3.81 (1H, dd, J=13.2, 3.6 Hz), 3.88-4.00 (2H, m), 4.00-4.06 (2H, dd like),
30 4.20 (1H, d, J=12.3 Hz), 4.58 (1H, d, J=12.6 Hz), 4.63 (1H, t, J=5.1 Hz), 7.22-7.36 (5H, m), 7.53 (2H, s), 7.73 (1H, s).

 Example 22

 cis-4-[[3,5-Bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-N-methoxy-N-methyl-3-phenylpiperidinecarboxamide
35

- 134 -

The compound (0.20 g) obtained in Process 1 of Example 15 and N,O-dimethylhydroxyamine hydrochloride (0.092 g) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Process 2 of Example 15 to obtain the title
5 compound as colorless oil (0.11 g, 70%).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃): δ 1.79-1.91 (1H, m), 2.04-2.14 (1H, m), 2.96 (3H, s), 3.09-3.12 (1H, t like), 3.26 (1H, dt, J=2.4, 12.9 Hz), 3.57 (3H, s), 3.67 (1H, d, J=12.6 Hz), 3.90-3.94 (1H, m), 3.98-4.10 (2H, m), 4.19 (1H, d, J=12.3 Hz), 4.58 (1H,
10 12.3 Hz), 7.20-7.36 (5H, m), 7.53 (2H, s), 7.74 (1H, s).

Example 23

cis-N-(2-Methoxybenzyl)-3-phenylpiperidine-4-amine
hydrochloride

To the compound (cis-form, 1.91 g) obtained in Process
15 3 of Reference Example 2, trifluoroacetic acid (20 ml) was added at 0°C, and the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 10 minutes. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and then the residue was poured into a mixed solution of an aqueous 2 N sodium hydroxide solution
20 and ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with an aqueous saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate solution and saturated brine, dried, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The obtained residue was treated
25 with a 4 N hydrochloric acid/ethyl acetate solution (2.6 ml) to obtain the title compound as colorless crystals (1.20 g, 67%).

HPLC analysis (Condition A): Purity 80% (Retention time: 0.32 minutes)

MS (ESI+): 297 (M+H)

30 Example 24

trans-N-(2-Methoxybenzyl)-3-phenylpiperidine-4-amine

The compound (trans-form, 0.96 g) obtained in Process 3 of Reference Example 2 was reacted in the same manner as in the method described in Example 23. The solvent was
35 evaporated under reduced pressure, and then the residue was

- 135 -

poured into a mixed solution of an aqueous 2 N sodium hydroxide solution and ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with an aqueous saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate solution and saturated brine, dried, and then the solvent was
5 evaporated under reduced pressure to obtain the title compound as colorless crystals (0.42 g, 58%).

HPLC analysis (Condition A): Purity 81% (Retention time: 0.31 minutes)

MS (ESI+): 297 (M+H)

10 Example 25

cis-3-Benzhydryl-4-[[3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]piperidine hydrochloride

To the compound (2.65 g) obtained in Reference Example 3, a 4 N hydrochloric acid/ethyl acetate solution was added,
15 the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 30 minutes, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was crystallized from diethyl ether and washed therewith to obtain the title compound as white powder (1.11 g, 47%).

20 ¹H-NMR (CDCl₃): δ 1.80-1.88 (1H, t like), 2.20 (1H, d, J=14.4 Hz), 2.69 (1H, d, J=9.9 Hz), 2.82-3.17 (4H, m), 3.48 (1H, br s), 3.92 (1H, d, J=11.4 Hz), 4.08 (1H, d, J=12.3 Hz), 4.66 (1H, d, J=12.3 Hz), 7.13-7.40 (10H, m), 7.99 (2H, s), 8.04 (1H, s), 9.03 (2H, br).

25 Example 26

cis-3-Benzhydryl-4-[[3-fluoro-5-(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]piperidine hydrochloride

To the compound (1.92 g) obtained in Reference Example 4, a 4 N hydrochloric acid/ethyl acetate solution was added,
30 and the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 30 minutes, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was crystallized from diethyl ether and washed therewith to obtain the title compound as white powder (0.88 g, 52%).

35 ¹H-NMR (CDCl₃): δ 1.77-1.86 (1H, t like), 2.17 (1H, d,

- 136 -

J=14.4 Hz), 2.84-3.15 (4H, m), 3.42 (1H, br s), 3.97 (1H, d, J=11.4 Hz), 4.00 (1H, d, J=12.3 Hz), 4.56 (1H, d, J=12.3 Hz), 7.15-7.60 (13H, m), 9.06 (2H, br).

Example 27

5 cis-3-Benzhydryl-4-[[3-(trifluoromethoxy)benzyl]oxy]piperidine hydrochloride

To the compound (2.22 g) obtained in Reference Example 5, a 4 N hydrochloric acid/ethyl acetate solution was added, and the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for
10 30 minutes, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was crystallized from IPE and washed therewith to obtain the title compound as white powder (1.31 g, 67%).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃): δ 1.75-1.83 (1H, t like), 2.15 (1H, d, J=14.4 Hz), 2.62-3.15 (5H, m), 3.40 (1H, br s), 3.94 (1H, d, J=12.0 Hz), 3.96 (1H, d, J=11.7 Hz), 4.50 (1H, d, J=11.7 Hz), 7.18-7.52 (14H, m), 9.03 (2H, br).

Example 28

cis-3-Benzhydryl-4-[[4-(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]piperidine hydrochloride
20

To the compound (2.14 g) obtained in Reference Example 6, a 4 N hydrochloric acid/ethyl acetate solution was added, and the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 30 minutes, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced
25 pressure. The residue was crystallized from IPE and washed therewith to obtain the title compound as white powder (1.20 g, 64%).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃): δ 1.76-1.84 (1H, t like), 2.11-2.20 (1H, t like), 2.70-3.16 (5H, m), 3.40 (1H, br s), 3.98 (1H, d, J=11.7 Hz), 4.55 (1H, d, J=12.3 Hz), 7.16-7.33 (8H, m), 7.43 (2H, d, J=7.5 Hz), 7.55 (2H, d, J=7.8 Hz), 7.71 (2H, d, J=8.1 Hz), 9.08 (2H, br).

Example 29

2-[cis-3-Benzhydryl-4-[[3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]piperidin-1-yl]-2-
35

- 137 -

oxoethanamine

To a solution of the compound (31.8 mg) obtained in Example 25 in DMF (2.0 ml), Et₃N (8.4 µl) was added, Boc-glycine (21 mg) and WSC·HCl (23 mg) were added at room temperature and the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 24 hours. The reaction mixture was poured into water, and then the product was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with an aqueous 10% citric acid solution and saturated brine, and dried, and the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and then the residue was purified by preparative HPLC. A 4 N hydrochloric acid/ethyl acetate solution was further added thereto, and the reaction mixture was stirred for 1 hour, and then the solvent was evaporated. The obtained residue was dissolved in ethyl acetate, washed with an aqueous saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate solution and brine, dried, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure to obtain the title compound.

Yield: 4.3 mg

HPLC analysis (Condition B): Purity 100% (Retention time: 2.05 minutes)

MS (ESI+): 551 (M+H)

Example 30

cis-3-Benzhydryl-4-[[3-fluoro-5-(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-1-(methylsulfonyl)piperidine

To a solution of the compound (28.8 mg) obtained in Example 26 in THF (2.0 ml), Et₃N (25.1 µl) was added, methylsulfonyl chloride (9.3 µl) was added at 0°C, and the reaction mixture was reacted at room temperature 24 hours. The reaction mixture was poured into water, and then the product was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with an aqueous 10% citric acid solution and saturated brine, and dried, and the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and then the residue was purified by preparative HPLC to obtain the title compound.

- 138 -

Yield: 18.7 mg

HPLC analysis (Condition B): Purity 98% (Retention time: 2.28 minutes)

MS (ESI+): 522 (M+H)

5 Example 31

cis-3-Benzhydryl-4-[[3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-N-methyl-1-piperidinecarboxamide

To a solution of the compound (31.8 mg) obtained in
10 Example 25 and Et₃N (8.4 µl) in THF (3 ml), methyl isocyanate (6.8 mg) was added, and the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 24 hours. The reaction mixture was poured into water, and then the product was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with an aqueous
15 10% citric acid solution and saturated brine, and dried, and the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and then the residue was purified by preparative HPLC to obtain the title compound.

Yield: 24.1 mg

20 HPLC analysis (Condition B): Purity 98% (Retention time: 2.28 minutes)

MS (ESI+): 551 (M+H)

Example 32

cis-2-(3-Benzhydryl-4-[[3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]piperidinyl)-N,N-dimethyl-2-oxoethanamine
25

To a solution of the compound (31.8 mg) obtained in Example 25 in DMF (2.0 ml), Et₃N (25.1 µl) was added, N,N-dimethylglycine hydrochloride (16.7 mg) and WSC·HCl (23 mg)
30 were added thereto and the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 24 hours. The reaction mixture was poured into water, and then the product was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with an aqueous 10% citric acid solution and saturated brine, and dried, and
35 the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and then

- 139 -

the residue was purified by preparative HPLC. The obtained compound was dissolved in ethyl acetate, washed with an aqueous saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate solution and brine, dried, and then the solvent was evaporated under
5 reduced pressure to obtain the title compound.

Yield: 10.8 mg

HPLC analysis (Condition B): Purity 100% (Retention time: 1.92 minutes)

MS (ESI+): 579 (M+H)

10 Example 33

cis-1-Acetyl-3-benzhydryl-4-[[3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]piperidine

To a solution of the compound (31.8 mg) obtained in Example 25 in DMF (2.0 ml), Et₃N (8.4 µl) was added, acetic
15 acid (6.9 µl) and WSC·HCl (23 mg) were added thereto and the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 24 hours. The reaction mixture was poured into water, and then the product was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with an aqueous 10% citric acid solution and
20 saturated brine, and dried, and the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and then the residue was purified by preparative HPLC to obtain the title compound.

Yield: 23.7 mg

HPLC analysis (Condition B): Purity 100% (Retention
25 time: 2.32 minutes)

MS (ESI+): 536 (M+H)

Example 34

cis-3-Benzhydryl-4-[[3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-1-(methoxyacetyl)piperidine

30 The compound (31.8 mg) obtained in Example 25 and methoxyacetic acid (9.2 µl) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 33 to obtain the title compound.

Yield: 18.6 mg

35 HPLC analysis (Condition B): Purity 100% (Retention

- 140 -

time: 2.33 minutes)

MS (ESI+): 566 (M+H)

Example 35

cis-3-Benzhydryl-4-[[3,5-

5 bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-1-(methylsulfonyl)piperidine

The compound (31.8 mg) obtained in Example 25 and methylsulfonyl chloride (9.3 µl) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 30 to obtain the title compound.

10 Yield: 25.8 mg

HPLC analysis (Condition B): Purity 99% (Retention time: 2.34 minutes)

MS (ESI+): 572 (M+H)

Example 36

15 cis-3-Benzhydryl-4-[[3,5-

bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-1-(2-pyridinylacetyl)piperidine

The compound (31.8 mg) obtained in Example 25 and 2-pyridineacetic acid hydrochloride (20.8 mg) were reacted and
20 treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 32 to obtain the title compound.

Yield: 5.5 mg

HPLC analysis (Condition B): Purity 100% (Retention time: 1.97 minutes)

25 MS (ESI+): 613 (M+H)

Example 37

cis-3-Benzhydryl-4-[[3,5-

bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-1-(1H-imidazol-4-ylacetyl)piperidine

30 The compound (31.8 mg) obtained in Example 25 and 4-imidazoleacetic acid hydrochloride (19.5 mg) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 32 to obtain the title compound.

Yield: 2.6 mg

35 HPLC analysis (Condition B): Purity 98% (Retention

- 141 -

time: 2.06 minutes)

MS (ESI+): 602 (M+H)

Example 38

cis-3-Benzhydryl-4-[[3,5-
5 bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-1-propionylpiperidine

The compound (31.8 mg) obtained in Example 25 and propionic acid (9.0 µl) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 33 to obtain the title compound.

10 Yield: 16.7 mg

HPLC analysis (Condition B): Purity 98% (Retention
time: 2.39 minutes)

MS (ESI+): 550 (M+H)

Example 39

15 cis-3-Benzhydryl-4-[[3-fluoro-5-
(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-N-methyl-1-piperidinecarboxamide

The compound obtained in Example 26 (28.8 mg) and methyl isocyanate (6.8 mg) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 31 to
20 obtain the title compound.

Yield: 21.3 mg

HPLC analysis (Condition B): Purity 100% (Retention
time: 2.20 minutes)

MS (ESI+): 501 (M+H)

25 Example 40

cis-3-Benzhydryl-4-[[3-fluoro-5-
(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-1-propionylpiperidine

The compound (28.8 mg) obtained in Example 26 and propionic acid (9.0 µl) were reacted and treated in the same
30 manner as in the method described in Example 33 to obtain the title compound.

Yield: 16.7 mg

HPLC analysis (Condition B): Purity 97% (Retention
time: 2.32 minutes)

35 MS (ESI+): 500 (M+H)

- 142 -

Example 41

cis-1-Acetyl-3-benzhydryl-4-[[3-fluoro-5-(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]piperidine

The compound (28.8 mg) obtained in Example 26 and
5 acetic acid (6.9 µl) were reacted and treated in the same
manner as in the method described in Example 33 to obtain the
title compound.

Yield: 13.7 mg

HPLC analysis (Condition B): Purity 99% (Retention
10 time: 2.25 minutes)

MS (ESI+): 486 (M+H)

Example 42

cis-3-Benzhydryl-4-[[3-fluoro-5-(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-1-(methoxyacetyl)piperidine

15 The compound (28.8 mg) obtained in Example 26 and
methoxyacetic acid (9.2 µl) were reacted and treated in the
same manner as in the method described in Example 33 to
obtain the title compound.

Yield: 16.8 mg

20 HPLC analysis (Condition B): Purity 100% (Retention
time: 2.25 minutes)

MS (ESI+): 516 (M+H)

Example 43

cis-3-Benzhydryl-4-[[3-fluoro-5-(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-1-(1H-imidazol-4-
25 ylacetyl)piperidine

The compound (28.8 mg) obtained in Example 26 and 4-
imidazoleacetic acid hydrochloride (19.5 mg) were reacted and
treated in the same manner as in the method described in
30 Example 32 to obtain the title compound.

Yield: 3.1 mg

HPLC analysis (Condition B): Purity 100% (Retention
time: 2.00 minutes)

MS (ESI+): 552 (M+H)

35 Example 44

- 143 -

cis-3-Benzhydryl-1-(1,3-benzodioxol-5-ylcarbonyl)-4-
[[3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]piperidine

The compound (31.8 mg) obtained in Example 25 and
piperonylic acid (19.9 mg) were reacted and treated in the
5 same manner as in the method described in Example 33 to
obtain the title compound.

Yield: 22.1 mg

HPLC analysis (Condition B): Purity 95% (Retention
time: 2.39 minutes)

10 MS (ESI+): 642 (M+H)

Example 45

cis-2-(3-Benzhydryl-4-[[3-fluoro-5-
(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]piperidinyl)-N,N-dimethyl-2-
oxoethanamine

15 The compound (28.8 mg) obtained in Example 26 and N,N-
dimethylglycine hydrochloride (16.7 mg) were reacted and
treated in the same manner as in the method described in
Example 32 to obtain the title compound.

Yield: 13.6 mg

20 HPLC analysis (Condition B): Purity 100% (Retention
time: 1.85 minutes)

MS (ESI+): 529 (M+H)

Example 46

25 cis-2-(3-Benzhydryl-4-[[3-fluoro-5-
(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]piperidinyl)-2-oxoethanamine

The compound (28.8 mg) obtained in Example 26 and Boc-
glycine (21.0 mg) were reacted and treated in the same manner
as in the method described in Example 29 to obtain the title
compound.

30 Yield: 17.8 mg

HPLC analysis (Condition B): Purity 100% (Retention
time: 1.97 minutes)

MS (ESI+): 501 (M+H)

Example 47

35 cis-3-Benzhydryl-1-(methoxyacetyl)-4-[[3-

- 144 -

(trifluoromethoxy)benzyl]oxy))piperidine

The compound (27.7 mg) obtained in Example 27 and methoxyacetic acid (9.2 µl) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 33 to
5 obtain the title compound.

Yield: 16.5 mg

HPLC analysis (Condition B): Purity 99% (Retention time: 2.25 minutes)

MS (ESI+): 514 (M+H)

10 Example 48

cis-1-Acetyl-3-benzhydryl-4-[[3-(trifluoromethoxy)benzyl]oxy))piperidine

The compound (27.7 mg) obtained in Example 27 and acetic acid (6.9 µl) were reacted and treated in the same
15 manner as in the method described in Example 33 to obtain the title compound.

Yield: 19.4 mg

HPLC analysis (Condition B): Purity 100% (Retention time: 2.25 minutes)

20 MS (ESI+): 484 (M+H)

Example 49

cis-3-Benzhydryl-1-propionyl-4-[[3-(trifluoromethoxy)benzyl]oxy))piperidine

The compound (27.7 mg) obtained in Example 27 and
25 propionic acid (9.0 µl) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 33 to obtain the title compound.

Yield: 15.3 mg

HPLC analysis (Condition B): Purity 96% (Retention
30 time: 2.31 minutes)

MS (ESI+): 498 (M+H)

Example 50

cis-3-Benzhydryl-4-[[3-fluoro-5-(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-1-(2-pyridinylacetyl)piperidine

35 The compound (28.8 mg) obtained in Example 26 and 2-

- 145 -

pyridineacetic acid hydrochloride (20.8 mg) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 32 to obtain the title compound.

Yield: 7.4 mg

5 HPLC analysis (Condition B): Purity 98% (Retention time: 1.90 minutes)

MS (ESI+): 563 (M+H)

Example 51

cis-2-(3-Benzhydryl-4-[[3-
10 (trifluoromethoxy)benzyl]oxy]piperidinyl)-2-oxoethanamine

The compound (27.7 mg) obtained in Example 27 and Boc-glycine (21.0 mg) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 29 to obtain the title compound.

15 Yield: 11.7 mg

HPLC analysis (Condition B): Purity 96% (Retention time: 1.97 minutes)

MS (ESI+): 499 (M+H)

Example 52

20 cis-3-Benzhydryl-1-(1,3-benzodioxol-5-ylcarbonyl)-4-[[3-fluoro-5-(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]piperidine

The compound (28.8 mg) obtained in Example 26 and piperonylic acid (19.9 mg) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 33 to
25 obtain the title compound.

Yield: 15.6 mg

HPLC analysis (Condition B): Purity 100% (Retention time: 2.33 minutes)

MS (ESI+): 592 (M+H)

30 Example 53

cis-3-Benzhydryl-1-(methylsulfonyl)-4-[[4-(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]piperidine

The compound (28.7 mg) obtained in Example 28 and methylsulfonyl chloride (9.3 µl) were reacted and treated in
35 the same manner as in the method described in Example 30 to

- 146 -

obtain the title compound.

Yield: 22.8 mg

HPLC analysis (Condition B): Purity 100% (Retention time: 2.26 minutes)

5 MS (ESI+): 504 (M+H)

Example 54

cis-3-Benzhydryl-1-benzyl-4-[[3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]piperidine

To a solution of the compound (31.8 mg) obtained in
10 Example 25, diisopropylethylamine (40.5 µl) and benzyl alcohol (12.4 µl) in dichloromethane (2.0 ml), EPPA (17.3 µl) was added, and the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 24 hours. The reaction mixture was poured into water, and then the product was extracted with ethyl
15 acetate. The organic layer was washed with an aqueous 10% citric acid solution and saturated brine, and dried, and the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and then the residue was purified by preparative HPLC to obtain the title compound.

20 Yield: 4.4 mg

HPLC analysis (Condition B): Purity 99% (Retention time: 1.99 minutes)

MS (ESI+): 584 (M+H)

Example 55

25 cis-2-(3-Benzhydryl-4-[[4-(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]piperidinyl)-2-oxoethanamine

The compound (28.7 mg) obtained in Example 28 and Boc-glycine (21.0 mg) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 29 to obtain the title
30 compound.

Yield: 11.1 mg

HPLC analysis (Condition B): Purity 91% (Retention time: 1.96 minutes)

MS (ESI+): 483 (M+H)

35 Example 56

- 147 -

cis-1-Acetyl-3-benzhydryl-4-[[4-(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]piperidine

The compound (28.7 mg) obtained in Example 28 and acetic acid (6.9 μ) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 33 to obtain the title compound.

Yield: 12.6 mg

HPLC analysis (Condition B): Purity 100% (Retention time: 2.24 minutes)

10 MS (ESI+): 468 (M+H)

Example 57

cis-3-Benzhydryl-1-benzyl-4-[[3-fluoro-5-(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]piperidine

The compound (28.8 mg) obtained in Example 26 and benzyl alcohol (12.4 μ l) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 54 to obtain the title compound.

Yield: 4.3 mg

HPLC analysis (Condition B): Purity 98% (Retention time: 1.93 minutes)

MS (ESI+): 534 (M+H)

Example 58

cis-3-Benzhydryl-N-methyl-4-[[4-(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-1-piperidinecarboxamide

25 The compound (28.7 mg) obtained in Example 28 and methyl isocyanate (6.8 mg) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 31 to obtain the title compound.

Yield: 23.5 mg

30 HPLC analysis (Condition B): Purity 100% (Retention time: 2.19 minutes)

MS (ESI+): 483 (M+H)

Example 59

cis-3-Benzhydryl-1-(2-pyridinylacetyl)-4-[[4-(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]piperidine

35

- 148 -

The compound (28.7 mg) obtained in Example 28 and 2-pyridineacetic acid hydrochloride (20.8 mg) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 32 to obtain the title compound.

5 Yield: 5.0 mg

HPLC analysis (Condition B): Purity 100% (Retention time: 1.89 minutes)

MS (ESI+): 545 (M+H)

Example 60

10 cis-3-Benzhydryl-1-propionyl-4-[[4-(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]piperidine

The compound (28.7 mg) obtained in Example 28 and propionic acid (9.0 µl) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 33 to obtain the
15 title compound.

Yield: 14.8 mg

HPLC analysis (Condition B): Purity 99% (Retention time: 2.30 minutes)

MS (ESI+): 482 (M+H)

20 Example 61

cis-2-(3-Benzhydryl-4-[[4-(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]piperidinyl)-N,N-dimethyl-2-oxoethanamine

The compound (28.7 mg) obtained in Example 28 and N,N-
25 dimethylglycine hydrochloride (16.7 mg) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 32 to obtain the title compound.

Yield: 6.5 mg

HPLC analysis (Condition B): Purity 98% (Retention
30 time: 1.84 minutes)

MS (ESI+): 511 (M+H)

Example 62

cis-3-Benzhydryl-1-(methoxyacetyl)-4-[[4-(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]piperidine

35 The compound (28.7 mg) obtained in Example 28 and

- 149 -

methoxyacetic acid (9.2 µl) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 33 to obtain the title compound.

Yield: 13.0 mg

5 HPLC analysis (Condition B): Purity 99% (Retention time: 2.23 minutes)

MS (ESI+): 498 (M+H)

Example 63

cis-3-Benzhydryl-1-(1H-imidazol-4-ylacetyl)-4-[[4-
10 (trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]piperidine

The compound (28.7 mg) obtained in Example 28 and 4-imidazoleacetic acid hydrochloride (19.5 mg) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 32 to obtain the title compound.

15 Yield: 1.8 mg

HPLC analysis (Condition B): Purity 100% (Retention time: 1.98 minutes)

MS (ESI+): 534 (M+H)

Example 64

20 cis-3-Benzhydryl-1-[3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzoyl]-4-[[3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]piperidine

The compound (31.8 mg) obtained in Example 25 and 3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzoic acid (31.0 mg) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in
25 Example 33 to obtain the title compound.

Yield: 9.8 mg

HPLC analysis (Condition B): Purity 95% (Retention time: 2.57 minutes)

MS (ESI+): 734 (M+H)

30 Example 65

cis-3-Benzhydryl-1-[3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzoyl]-4-[[3-fluoro-5-(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]piperidine

The compound (28.8 mg) obtained in Example 26 and 3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzoic acid (31.0 mg) were reacted and
35 treated in the same manner as in the method described in

- 150 -

Example 33 to obtain the title compound.

Yield: 10.9 mg

HPLC analysis (Condition B): Purity 100% (Retention
time: 2.50 minutes)

5 MS (ESI+): 684 (M+H)

Example 66

cis-3-Benzhydryl-1-[3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzoyl]-4-
[[4-(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]piperidine

The compound (28.7 mg) obtained in Example 28 and 3,5-
10 bis(trifluoromethyl)benzoic acid (31.0 mg) were reacted and
treated in the same manner as in the method described in
Example 33 to obtain the title compound.

Yield: 12.4 mg

HPLC analysis (Condition B): Purity 100% (Retention
15 time: 2.49 minutes)

MS (ESI+): 666 (M+H)

Example 67

cis-3-Benzhydryl-1-(1,3-benzodioxol-5-ylcarbonyl)-4-
[[4-(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]piperidine

20 The compound (28.7 mg) obtained in Example 28 and
piperonylic acid (19.9 mg) were reacted and treated in the
same manner as in the method described in Example 33 to
obtain the title compound.

Yield: 12.8 mg

25 HPLC analysis (Condition B): Purity 100% (Retention
time: 2.31 minutes)

MS (ESI+): 574 (M+H)

Example 68

cis-3-Benzhydryl-1-[3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzoyl]-4-
30 [[3-(trifluoromethoxy)benzyl]oxy]piperidine

The compound (27.7 mg) obtained in Example 27 and 3,5-
bis(trifluoromethyl)benzoic acid (31.0 mg) were reacted and
treated in the same manner as in the method described in
Example 33 to obtain the title compound.

35 Yield: 18.2 mg

- 151 -

HPLC analysis (Condition B): Purity 99% (Retention time: 2.52 minutes)

MS (ESI+): 682 (M+H)

Example 69

5 cis-1-[(1-Acetyl-4-piperidinyl)carbonyl]-4-[[3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-3-phenylpiperidine
(Process 1)

To a solution of the compound (0.53 g) obtained in Example 1 in DMF (10 ml), Et₃N (0.17 ml) was added, Boc-
10 isonipecotinic acid (0.41 g), WSC·HCl (0.46 g) and HOBt·H₂O (0.37 g) were added thereto and the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 24 hours. The reaction mixture was poured into water, and then the product was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed
15 with an aqueous saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate solution and saturated brine, dried, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The obtained residue was isolated and purified by silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate : hexane = 1 : 3 → 1 : 1) to obtain cis-4-
20 [[4-[[3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-3-phenyl-1-piperidinyl]carbonyl]-1-piperidinecarboxylic acid tert-butyl ester as colorless amorphous (0.71 g).

(Process 2)

The compound (0.65 g) obtained in Process 1 and
25 trifluoroacetic acid (8 ml) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 1 to obtain cis-4-[[3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-3-phenyl-1-(4-piperidinylcarbonyl)piperidine hydrochloride as white powder (0.54 g).

30 (Process 3)

To a solution of the compound (0.27 g) obtained in Process 2 in pyridine (2 ml), N,N-dimethylaminopyridine (0.030 g) and acetic anhydride (0.10 g) were added, and the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 4 hours.
35 The reaction mixture was poured into water, and then the

- 152 -

product was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with an aqueous saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate solution and saturated brine, dried, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The obtained
5 residue was purified by preparative HPLC to obtain the title compound as colorless amorphous (0.21 g).

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3): δ 1.60–1.96 (6H, m), 2.00–2.20 (4H, m), 2.58–3.18 (4H, m), 3.28–3.58 (1H, m), 3.76–3.96 (3H, m), 4.19 (1H, dd, $J=12.0, 3.0$ Hz), 4.51–4.69 (3H, m), 7.21–7.38 (5H,
10 m), 7.52 (2H, s), 7.73 (1H, s).

Example 70

(+)-(3R,4S)-1-[(1-Acetyl-4-piperidinyl)carbonyl]-4-
[[3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-3-phenylpiperidine
(Process 1)

15 A mixture of the compound (1.51 g) obtained in Process 5 of Reference Example 1, $[\text{RuCl}_2[(R)\text{-BINAP}][(R,R)\text{-DPEN}]]$ catalyst (0.0055 g), a 1 M solution (5.5 ml) of potassium tert-butoxide in tert-butyl alcohol, 2-propanol (20 ml) and toluene (5 ml) was stirred at 30°C for 2.5 hours under
20 hydrogen atmosphere of 0.7 MPa, after the inner atmosphere was sufficiently replaced with the argon gas. To the reaction mixture, 1 N hydrochloric acid (5 ml) was added, and then the mixture was concentrated and dried under reduced pressure. The residue was dispersed in water and ethyl
25 acetate, the organic layer was separated and washed with saturated brine, dried, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The obtained residue was purified by preparative HPLC to obtain (3R,4S)-4-hydroxy-3-phenyl-1-piperidinecarboxylic acid tert-butyl ester as colorless
30 amorphous (1.08 g).

(Process 2)

To a solution of the compound (0.70 g) obtained in Process 1 in DMF (7 ml), sodium hydride (60% in oil, 0.25 g) was added, and then the reaction mixture was stirred at room
35 temperature for 30 minutes. To the reaction solution, sodium

- 153 -

iodide (1.14 g) and 3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl bromide (1.55 g) were added at room temperature, and then the reaction solution was further stirred for 1 hour. The reaction solution was poured into water, and then the product
5 was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with an aqueous 10% citric acid solution and saturated brine, dried, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The obtained residue was isolated and purified by silica gel column chromatography (hexane : ethyl
10 acetate = 4 : 1) to obtain (3R,4S)-4-[[3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-3-phenylpiperidine-1-carboxylic acid tert-butyl ester as colorless amorphous. The obtained product was used in the next process without further purification.

15 (Process 3)

To a solution of the compound obtained in Process 2 in methanol (15 ml), a 4 N hydrochloric acid/ethyl acetate solution (1.5 ml) was added, and the reaction solution was stirred at 70°C for 30 minutes. The reaction solution was
20 concentrated and dried under reduced pressure to obtain (3R,4S)-4-[[3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-3-phenylpiperidine hydrochloride (0.99 g) as white powder. The obtained product was used in the next process without further purification.

25 (Process 4)

The compound (0.50 g) obtained in Process 3 and 1-acetylpiperidine-4-carboxylic acid (0.29 g) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Process 1 of Example 69 to obtain the title compound as
30 colorless amorphous (0.51 g).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃): δ 1.60-1.96 (6H, m), 2.00-2.20 (4H, m), 2.58-3.18 (4H, m), 3.28-3.58 (1H, m), 3.76-3.96 (3H, m), 4.19 (1H, dd, J=12.0, 3.0 Hz), 4.51-4.69 (3H, m), 7.21-7.38 (5H, m), 7.52 (2H, s), 7.73 (1H, s).

- 154 -

$[\alpha]_D^{25} +103.9^\circ$ (c 1.0, MeOH).

Example 71

cis-4-[[2-Methoxy-5-[5-(trifluoromethyl)-1H-tetrazol-1-yl]benzyl]amino]-N-methyl-3-phenyl-1-piperidinecarboxamide
5 hydrochloride

(Process 1)

The compound (1.50 g) obtained in Process 2 of Reference Example 2, 2-methoxy-5-(5-(trifluoromethyl)-1H-tetrazol-1-yl)benzaldehyde (1.33 g) synthesized by the method
10 described in the document (e.g., J. Labelled Cpd. Radiopharm., Vol. 43, pages 29-45), $\text{NaBH}(\text{OAc})_3$ (3.5 g), acetic acid (0.050 ml) and dichloromethane (20 ml) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Process 3 of Reference Example 2 to obtain cis-4-[[2-methoxy-5-[5-
15 (trifluoromethyl)-1H-tetrazol-1-yl]benzyl]amino]-3-phenyl-1-piperidinecarboxylic acid tert-butyl ester as colorless amorphous (1.85 g).

(Process 2)

The compound (1.85 g) obtained in Process 1 was reacted
20 and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Process 3 of Example 70 to obtain cis-N-[2-methoxy-5-[5-(trifluoromethyl)-1H-tetrazol-1-yl]benzyl]-3-phenyl-4-piperidineamine hydrochloride (1.83 g) as white powder.

(Process 3)

25 The compound (0.30 g) obtained in Process 2, methyl isocyanate (0.042 ml) and Et_3N (0.17 ml) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 6 to obtain colorless amorphous.

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3): δ 1.65-1.80 (1H, m), 1.83-1.95 (1H, m),
30 2.80 (3H, d, $J=4.8$ Hz), 2.94-3.06 (2H, m), 3.35-3.48 (1H, m), 3.55-3.70 (6H, m), 3.76-3.84 (2H, m), 4.45-4.50 (1H, m), 6.75 (1H, d, $J=8.7$ Hz), 7.02 (1H, d, 2.7 Hz), 7.08-7.28 (6H, m).

The obtained product was treated with 4 N hydrochloric acid/ethyl acetate (0.13 ml), and recrystallized from ethyl

- 155 -

acetate - IPE to obtain the title compound (0.23 g) as white powder.

Melting point: 198 - 200°C.

Example 72

5 (+)-cis-4-[[2-Methoxy-5-[5-(trifluoromethyl)-1H-tetrazol-1-yl]benzyl]amino]-N-methyl-3-phenyl-1-piperidinecarboxamide hydrochloride

The compound (0.36 g) obtained in Process 3 of Example 71 was optically resolved with chiral HPLC, and the fractions
10 were concentrated under reduced pressure. The obtained residue was treated with 4 N hydrochloric acid/ethyl acetate (0.070 ml), and recrystallized from ethyl acetate - IPE to obtain the title compound (0.14 g) as white powder.

Chiral HPLC condition

15 Column: CHIRALPAK AD 50 mm ID x 500 mm L

Solvent: hexane/ethanol = 87/13

Flow rate: 70 ml/min

Temperature: 35°C

Detection method: UV 220 nm

20 $[\alpha]_D^{25} +1.6^\circ$ (c 1.0, MeOH).

Example 73

(-)-cis-4-[[2-Methoxy-5-[5-(trifluoromethyl)-1H-tetrazol-1-yl]benzyl]amino]-N-methyl-3-phenyl-1-piperidinecarboxamide hydrochloride

25 The compound (0.36 g) obtained in Process 3 of Example 71 was treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 72 to obtain the title compound (0.13 g) as white powder.

$[\alpha]_D^{25} -2.2^\circ$ (c 1.0, MeOH).

30 Example 74

cis-N-Ethyl-4-[[2-methoxy-5-[5-(trifluoromethyl)-1H-tetrazol-1-yl]benzyl]amino]-3-phenyl-1-piperidinecarboxamide hydrochloride

- 156 -

The compound (0.89 g) obtained in Process 2 of Example 71, ethyl isocyanate (0.14 ml) and Et₃N (0.49 ml) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 6 to obtain colorless amorphous.

5 ¹H-NMR (CDCl₃): δ 1.12 (3H, t, J=7.2 Hz), 1.65-1.80 (1H, m), 1.85-1.95 (1H, m), 2.95-3.06 (2H, m), 3.22-3.32 (2H, m), 3.36-3.46 (1H, m), 3.55-3.70 (6H, m), 3.76-3.84 (2H, m), 4.36-4.44 (1H, m), 6.84 (1H, d, J=8.7 Hz), 7.04 (1H, d, J=2.7 Hz), 7.12-7.30 (6H, m).

10 The obtained product was treated with 4 N hydrochloric acid/ethyl acetate (0.42 ml), and recrystallized from ethyl acetate - IPE to obtain the title compound (0.86 g) as white powder.

Melting point: 143 - 145°C.

15 Example 75

(+)-cis-N-Ethyl-4-[[2-methoxy-5-[5-(trifluoromethyl)-1H-tetrazol-1-yl]benzyl]amino]-3-phenyl-1-piperidinecarboxamide hydrochloride

The compound (0.80 g) obtained in Example 74 was
20 optically resolved with chiral HPLC, and the fractions were concentrated under reduced pressure. The obtained residue was treated with 4 N hydrochloric acid/ethyl acetate (0.14 ml), and recrystallized from ethyl acetate - IPE to obtain the title compound (0.25 g) as white powder.

25 Chiral HPLC condition

Column: CHIRALPAK AD 50 mm ID × 500 mm L

Solvent: hexane/ethanol = 87/13

Flow rate: 70 ml/min

Temperature: 35°C

30 Detection method: UV 220 nm

[α]_D²⁵ +4.1° (c 1.0, MeOH).

Example 76

(-)-cis-N-Ethyl-4-[[2-methoxy-5-[5-(trifluoromethyl)-1H-tetrazol-1-yl]benzyl]amino]-3-phenyl-1-

- 157 -

piperidinecarboxamide hydrochloride

The compound (0.80 g) obtained in Example 74 was treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 75 to obtain the title compound (0.25 g) as white powder.

$[\alpha]_D^{25} -3.9^\circ$ (c 1.0, MeOH).

Example 77

cis-1-(Methoxyacetyl)-N-[2-methoxy-5-[5-(trifluoromethyl)-1H-tetrazol-1-yl]benzyl]-3-phenyl-4-piperidineamine hydrochloride

The compound (0.30 g) obtained in Process 2 of Example 71, methoxyacetic acid (0.048 g), WSC·HCl (0.17 g), HOBT·H₂O (0.14 g), Et₃N (0.17 ml) and DMF (5.0 ml) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 69 to obtain colorless amorphous.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃): δ 1.60-1.80 (1H, m), 1.90-2.05 (1H, m), 2.94-3.06 (2H, m), 3.20-3.90 (11H, m), 4.00-4.60 (3H, m), 6.84 (1H, dd, J=8.7, 5.7 Hz), 7.01 (1H, d, J=2.4 Hz), 7.04-7.14 (2H, m), 7.15-7.30 (4H, m).

The obtained product was treated with 4 N hydrochloric acid/ethyl acetate (0.15 ml), and recrystallized from ethyl acetate - IPE to obtain the title compound (0.28 g) as white powder.

Melting point: 126 - 128°C.

Example 78

(+)-cis-1-(Methoxyacetyl)-N-[2-methoxy-5-[5-(trifluoromethyl)-1H-tetrazol-1-yl]benzyl]-3-phenyl-4-piperidineamine hydrochloride

The compound (0.43 g) obtained in Example 77 was optically resolved with chiral HPLC, and the fractions were concentrated under reduced pressure. The obtained residue was treated with 4 N hydrochloric acid/ethyl acetate (0.10 ml), and recrystallized from ethyl acetate - IPE to obtain the title compound (0.22 g) as white powder.

- 158 -

Chiral HPLC condition

Column: CHIRALPAK AD 50 mm ID × 500 mm L

Solvent: hexane/ethanol = 1/1

Flow rate: 60 ml/min

5 Temperature: 35°C

Detection method: UV 220 nm

$[\alpha]_D^{25} +6.1^\circ$ (c 1.0, MeOH).

Example 79

(-)-cis-1-(Methoxyacetyl)-N-[2-methoxy-5-[5-(trifluoromethyl)-1H-tetrazol-1-yl]benzyl]-3-phenyl-4-piperidineamine hydrochloride

The compound (0.43 g) obtained in Example 77 was treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 78 to obtain the title compound (0.21 g) as white powder.

$[\alpha]_D^{25} -6.3^\circ$ (c 1.0, MeOH).

Example 80

cis-1-[[1-Acetyl-4-piperidinyl]carbonyl]-N-[2-methoxy-5-[5-(trifluoromethyl)-1H-tetrazol-1-yl]benzyl]-3-phenyl-4-piperidineamine hydrochloride

The compound (0.30 g) obtained in Process 2 of Example 71, 1-acetylpiperidine-4-carboxylic acid (0.092 g), WSC·HCl (0.17 g), HOBt·H₂O (0.14 g), Et₃N (0.17 ml) and DMF (5.0 ml) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 69 to obtain colorless amorphous.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃): δ 1.50-2.00 (4H, m), 2.05-2.15 (3H, m), 2.50-4.00 (16H, m), 4.20-4.68 (2H, m), 6.80-6.87 (1H, m), 6.97-7.08 (2H, m), 7.10-7.32 (5H, m).

The obtained product was treated with 4 N hydrochloric acid/ethyl acetate (0.14 ml), and recrystallized from ethyl acetate - IPE to obtain the title compound (0.29 g) as white powder.

Melting point: 150 - 152°C.

- 159 -

Example 81

(-)-cis-1-[(1-Acetyl-4-piperidinyl)carbonyl]-N-[2-methoxy-5-[5-(trifluoromethyl)-1H-tetrazol-1-yl]benzyl]-3-phenyl-4-piperidineamine hydrochloride

5 The compound (0.54 g) obtained in Example 80 was optically resolved with chiral HPLC, and the fractions were concentrated under reduced pressure to obtain colorless amorphous.

Chiral HPLC condition

10 Column: CHIRALPAK AD 50 mm ID × 500 mm L

Solvent: hexane/ethanol = 50/50 (0 minute) → 0/100 (100 minutes)

Flow rate: 80 ml/min

Temperature: 30°C

15 Detection method: UV 220 nm

$[\alpha]_D^{25} +55.8^\circ$ (c 1.0, MeOH).

Melting point: 129 - 131°C.

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3): δ 1.50-2.00 (4H, m), 2.05-2.15 (3H, m), 2.50-4.00 (16H, m), 4.20-4.68 (2H, m), 6.80-6.87 (1H, m),
20 6.97-7.08 (2H, m), 7.10-7.32 (5H, m).

The obtained product was treated with 4 N hydrochloric acid/ethyl acetate (0.11 ml), and recrystallized from ethyl acetate - IPE to obtain the title compound (0.25 g) as white powder.

25 $[\alpha]_D^{25} -9.2^\circ$ (c 1.0, MeOH).

Example 82

(+)-cis-1-[(1-Acetyl-4-piperidinyl)carbonyl]-N-[2-methoxy-5-[5-(trifluoromethyl)-1H-tetrazol-1-yl]benzyl]-3-phenyl-4-piperidineamine hydrochloride

30 The compound (0.54 g) obtained in Example 80 was treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 81 to obtain the title compound (0.26 g) as white powder.

- 160 -

$[\alpha]_D^{25} +8.6^\circ$ (c 1.0, MeOH).

Example 83

cis-N-Ethyl-3-phenyl-4-[[[5-[5-(trifluoromethyl)-1H-tetrazol-1-yl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzofuran-7-yl]methyl]amino]-1-piperidinecarboxamide

(Process 1)

The compound (1.25 g) obtained in Process 2 of Reference Example 2, the compound (1.35 g) obtained in Process 3 of Reference Example 7, NaBH(OAc)₃ (3.1 g), acetic acid (0.050 ml) and dichloromethane (20 ml) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Process 3 of Reference Example 2 to obtain cis-3-phenyl-4-[[[5-[5-(trifluoromethyl)-1H-tetrazol-1-yl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzofuran-7-yl]methyl]amino]-1-piperidinecarboxylic acid tert-butyl ester (1.95 g) as colorless amorphous.

(Process 2)

The compound (1.95 g) obtained in Process 1 was reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Process 3 of Example 70 to obtain cis-3-phenyl-N-[[5-[5-(trifluoromethyl)-1H-tetrazol-1-yl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzofuran-7-yl]methyl]-4-piperidineamine hydrochloride (2.00 g) as white powder.

(Process 3)

The compound (0.50 g) obtained in Process 2, ethyl isocyanate (0.076 ml), Et₃N (0.27 ml) and acetonitrile (10 ml) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 6 to obtain colorless amorphous. The obtained product was recrystallized from ethyl acetate - IPE to obtain the title compound (0.42 g) as white powder.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃): δ 1.12 (3H, t, J=7.2 Hz), 1.65-1.80 (1H, m), 1.84-1.94 (1H, m), 2.95-3.06 (2H, m), 3.18-3.33 (4H, m), 3.36-3.46 (1H, m), 3.55 (1H, d, J=14.7 Hz), 3.60-3.70 (2H, m), 3.75 (1H, d, J=14.7 Hz), 3.75-3.82 (1H, m), 4.38-4.60 (3H, m), 6.79 (1H, s like), 7.09 (1H, s like), 7.12-7.20 (3H, m),

- 161 -

7.22-7.25 (2H, m).

Melting point: 157 - 159°C.

Example 84

(-)-cis-N-Ethyl-3-phenyl-4-[[[5-[5-(trifluoromethyl)-
5 1H-tetrazol-1-yl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzofuran-7-
yl]methyl]amino]-1-piperidinecarboxamide hydrochloride

The compound (0.42 g) obtained in Example 83 was
optically resolved with chiral HPLC, and the fractions were
concentrated under reduced pressure. The obtained residue
10 was treated with 4 N hydrochloric acid/ethyl acetate (0.090
ml), and recrystallized from ethyl acetate - IPE to obtain
the title compound (0.17 g) as white powder.

Chiral HPLC condition

Column: CHIRALPAK AD 50 mm ID × 500 mm L

15 Solvent: hexane/ethanol = 85/15

Flow rate: 60 ml/min

Temperature: 30°C

Detection method: UV 254 nm

$[\alpha]_D^{25} -11.8^\circ$ (c 1.0, MeOH).

20 Example 85

(+)-cis-N-Ethyl-3-phenyl-4-[[[5-[5-(trifluoromethyl)-
1H-tetrazol-1-yl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzofuran-7-
yl]methyl]amino]-1-piperidinecarboxamide hydrochloride

The compound (0.54 g) obtained in Example 83 was
25 treated in the same manner as in the method described in
Example 84 to obtain the title compound (0.19 g) as white
powder.

$[\alpha]_D^{25} +10.4^\circ$ (c 1.0, MeOH).

Example 86

30 cis-1-[(1-Acetyl-4-piperidinyl)carbonyl]-3-phenyl-N-
[[5-[5-(trifluoromethyl)-1H-tetrazol-1-yl]-2,3-dihydro-1-
benzofuran-7-yl]methyl]-4-piperidineamine hydrochloride

The compound (0.30 g) obtained in Process 2 of Example

- 162 -

83, 1-acetylpiperidine-4-carboxylic acid (0.080 g), WSC·HCl (0.17 g), HOBt·H₂O (0.16 g), Et₃N (0.16 ml) and DMF (5.0 ml) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 69 to obtain colorless amorphous.

5 ¹H-NMR (CDCl₃): δ 1.40-2.10 (9H, m), 2.50-4.00 (12H, m), 4.20-4.65 (5H, m), 6.74-6.82 (1H, m), 7.04-7.32 (6H, m).

The obtained product was treated with 4 N hydrochloric acid/ethyl acetate (0.12 ml), and recrystallized from ethyl acetate - IPE to obtain the title compound (0.21 g) as white
10 powder.

Melting point: 152 - 154°C.

Example 87

(+)-cis-1-[(1-Acetyl-4-piperidinyl)carbonyl]-3-phenyl-N-[[5-[5-(trifluoromethyl)-1H-tetrazol-1-yl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzofuran-7-yl]methyl]-4-piperidineamine hydrochloride
15

The compound (0.40 g) obtained in Example 86 was optically resolved with chiral HPLC, and the fractions were concentrated under reduced pressure. The obtained residue was treated with 4 N hydrochloric acid/ethyl acetate (0.074
20 ml), and recrystallized from ethyl acetate - IPE to obtain the title compound (0.18 g) as white powder.

Chiral HPLC condition

Column: CHIRALPAK OD 50 mm ID × 500 mm L

Solvent: hexane/ethanol = 70/30

25 Flow rate: 60 ml/min

Temperature: 30°C

Detection method: UV 254 nm

$[\alpha]_D^{25} +14.9^\circ$ (c 1.0, MeOH).

Example 88

30 (-)-cis-1-[(1-Acetyl-4-piperidinyl)carbonyl]-3-phenyl-N-[[5-[5-(trifluoromethyl)-1H-tetrazol-1-yl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzofuran-7-yl]methyl]-4-piperidineamine hydrochloride

The compound (0.40 g) obtained in Example 86 was treated in the same manner as in the method described in

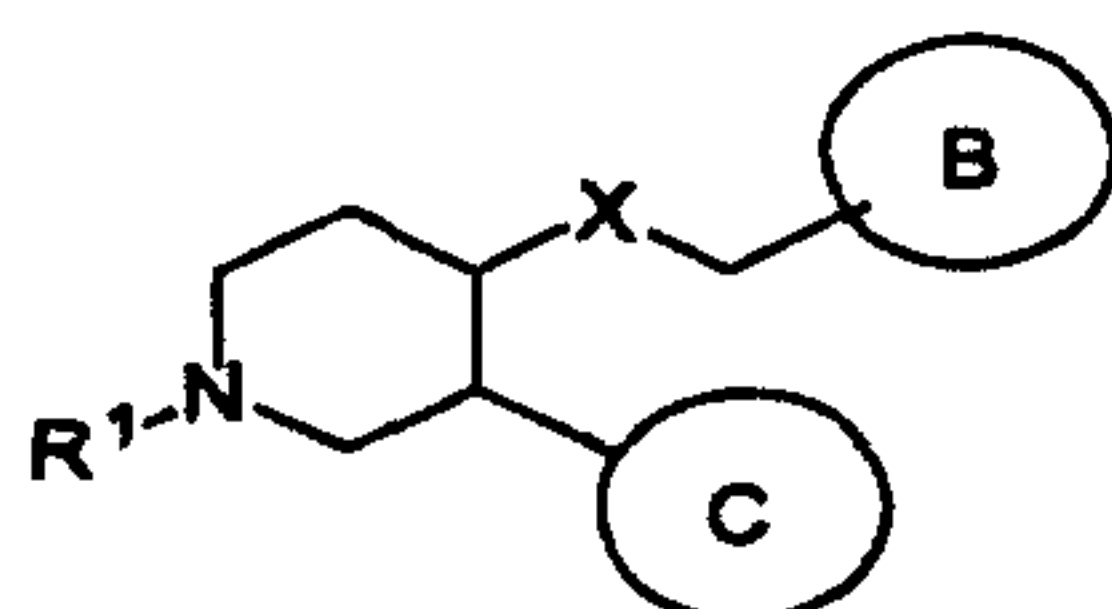
- 163 -

Example 87 to obtain the title compound (0.18 g) as white powder.

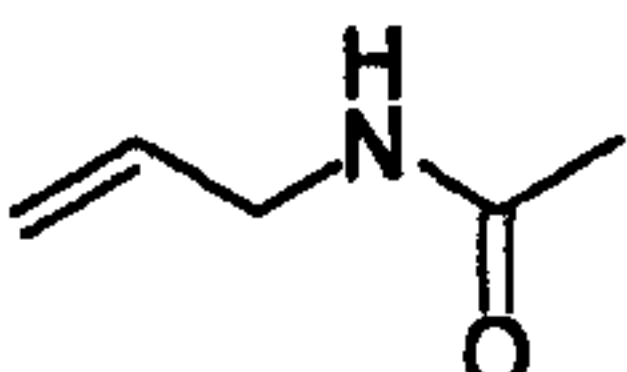
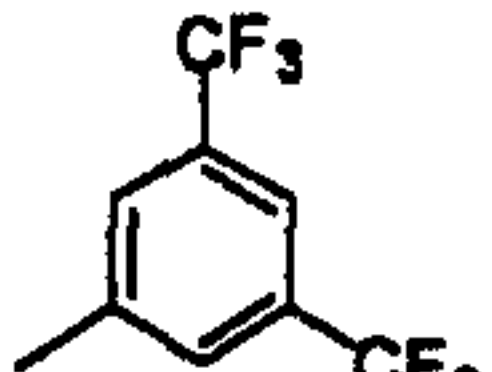
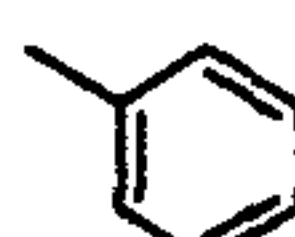
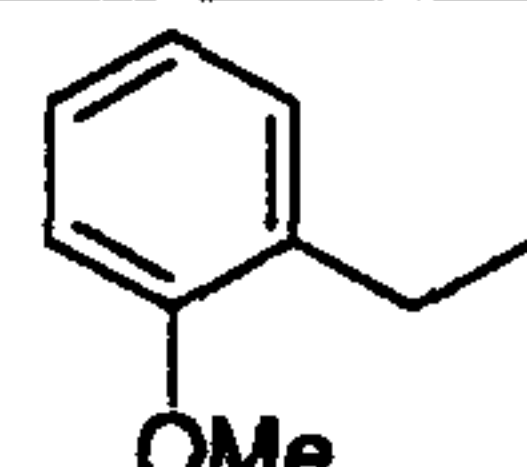
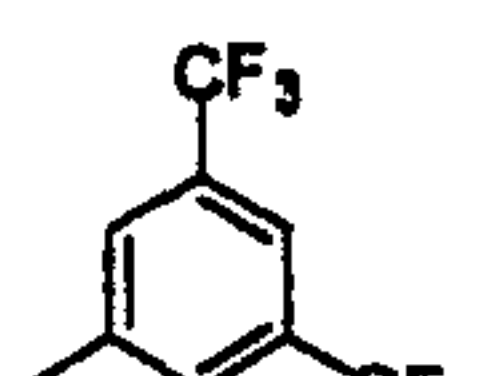
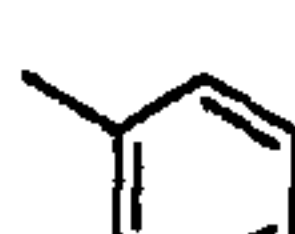
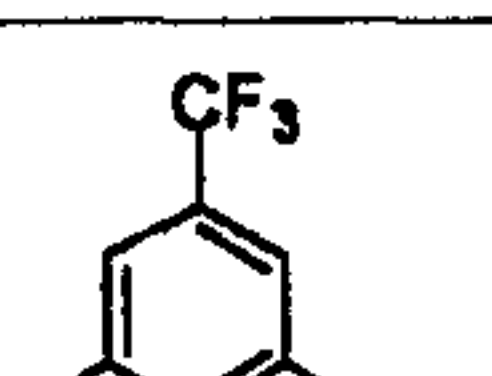
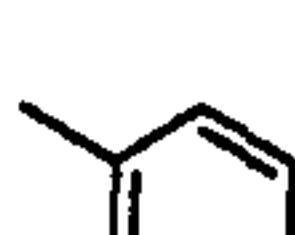
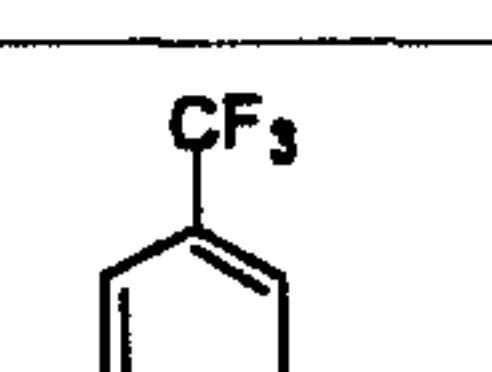
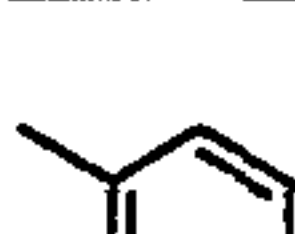
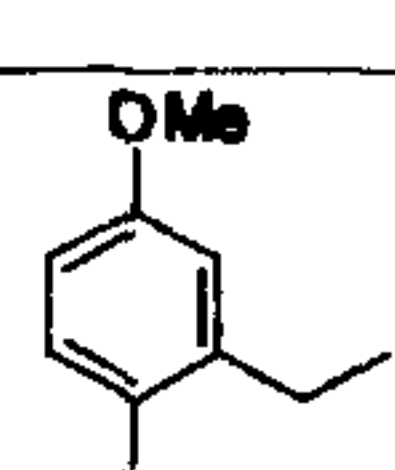
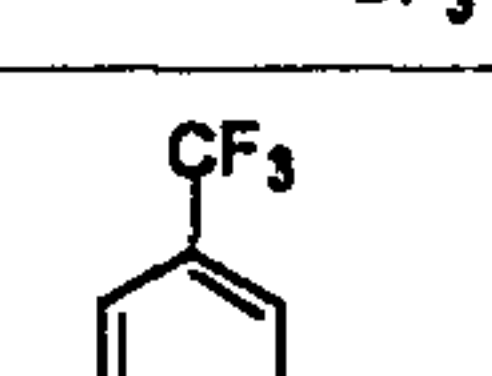
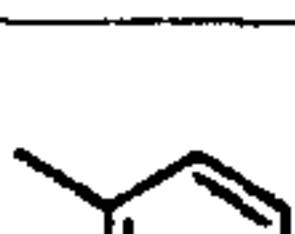
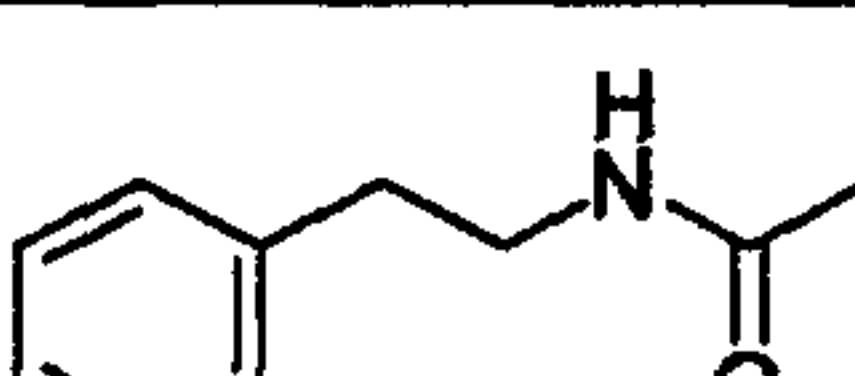
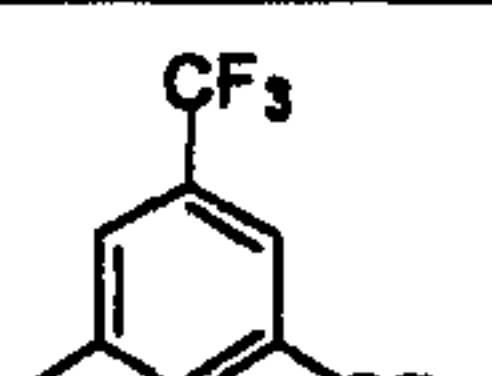
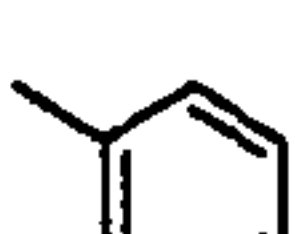
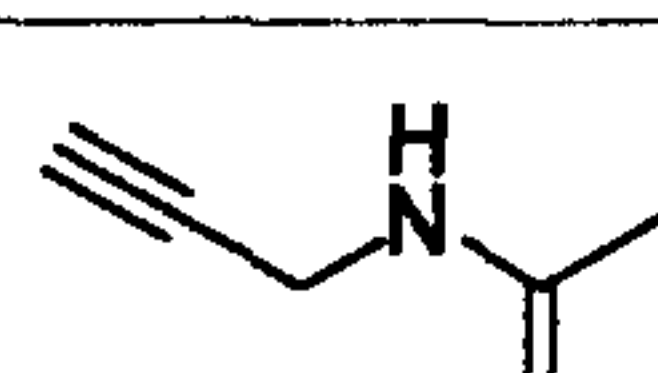
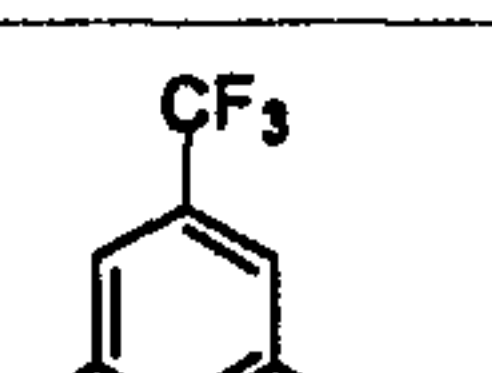
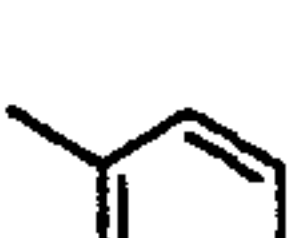
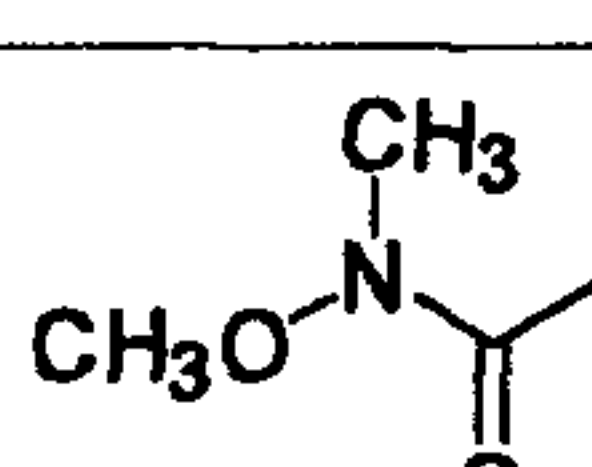
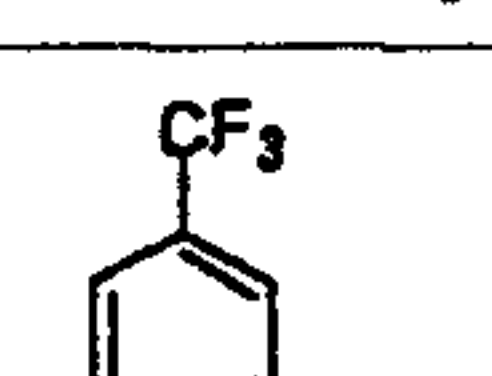
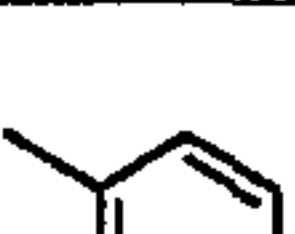
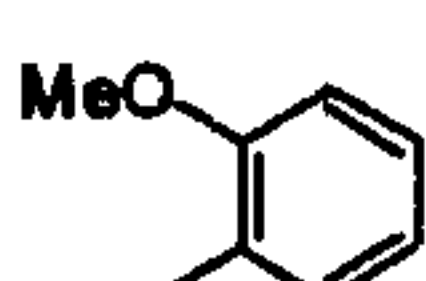
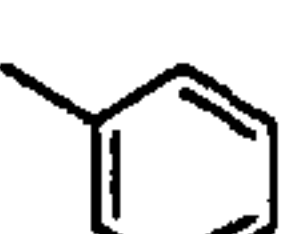
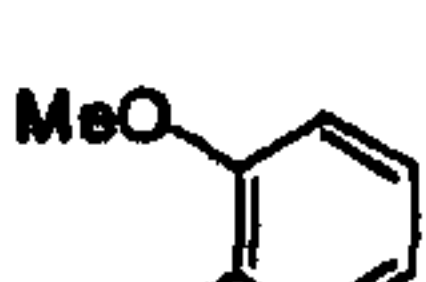
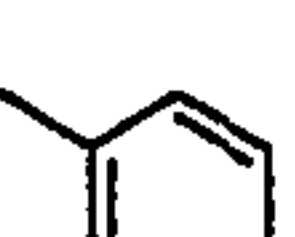
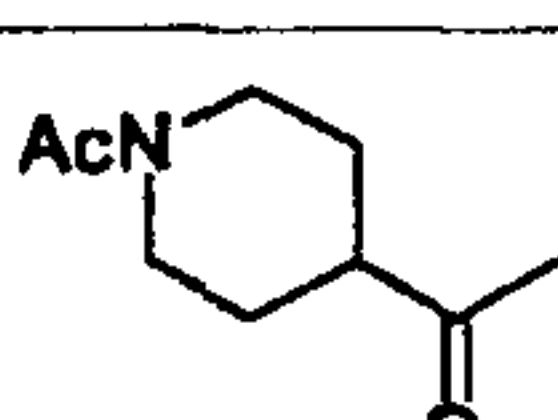
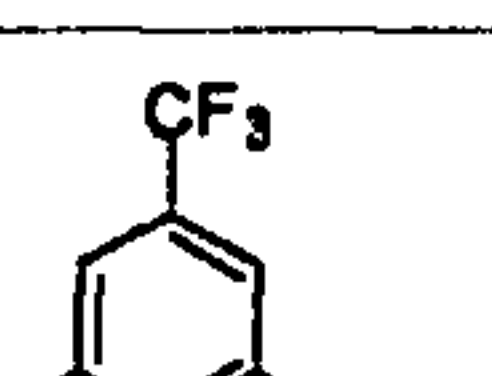
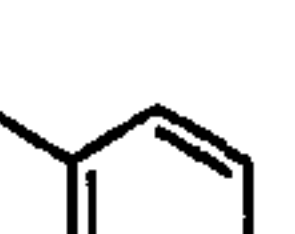
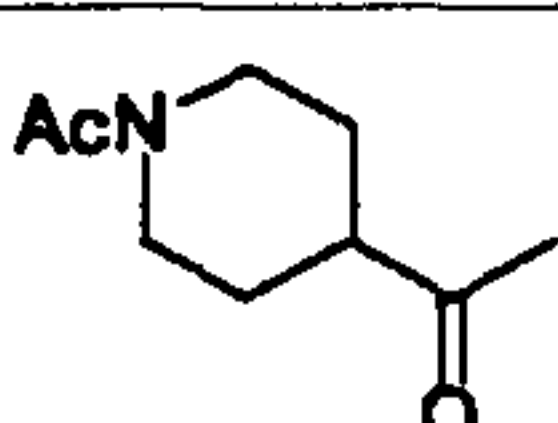
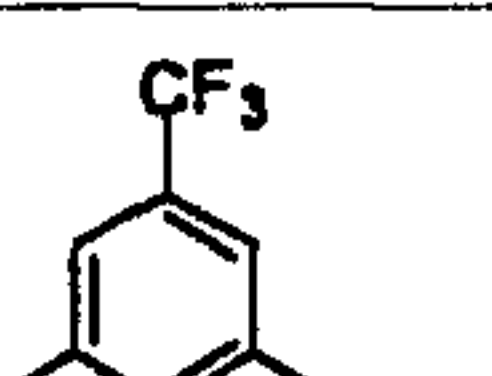
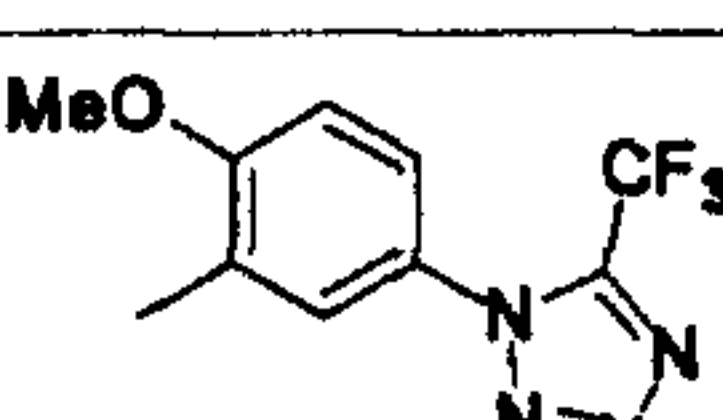
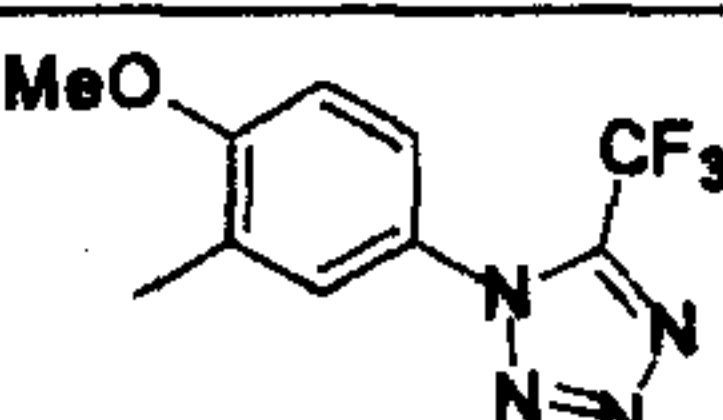
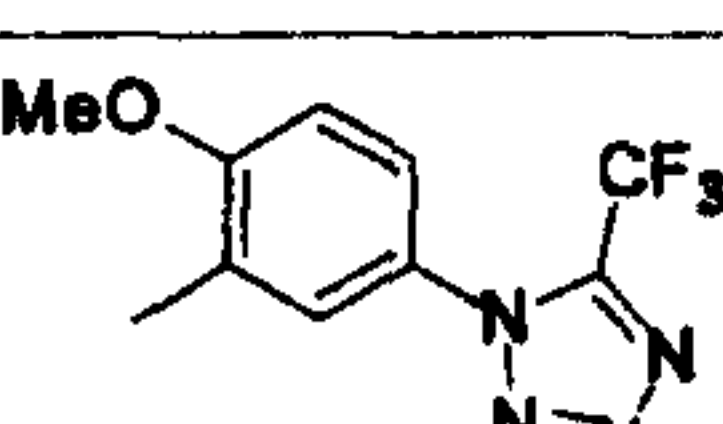
$[\alpha]_{\text{D}}^{25} -16.9^{\circ}$ (c 1.0, MeOH).

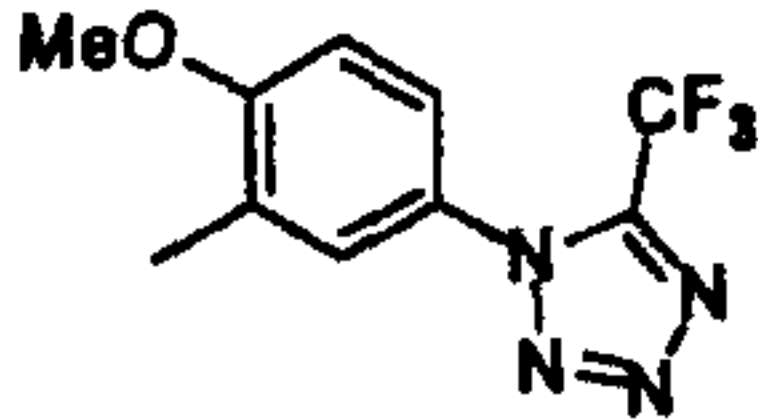
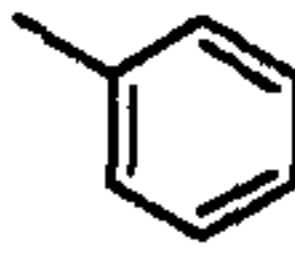
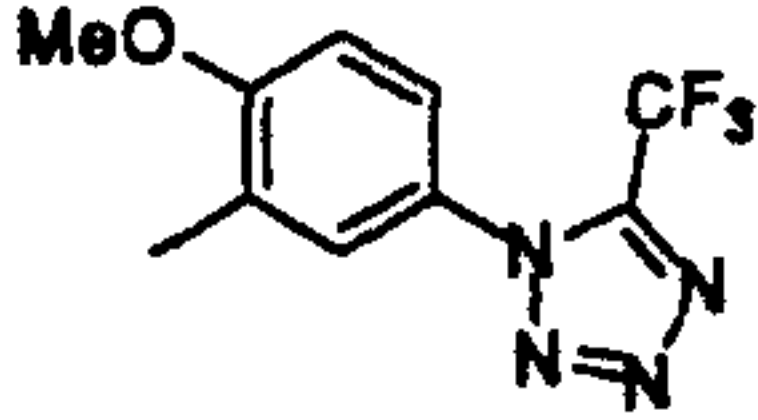
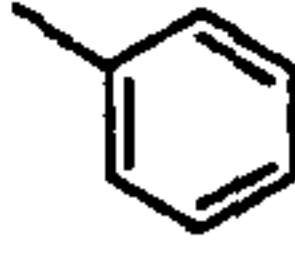
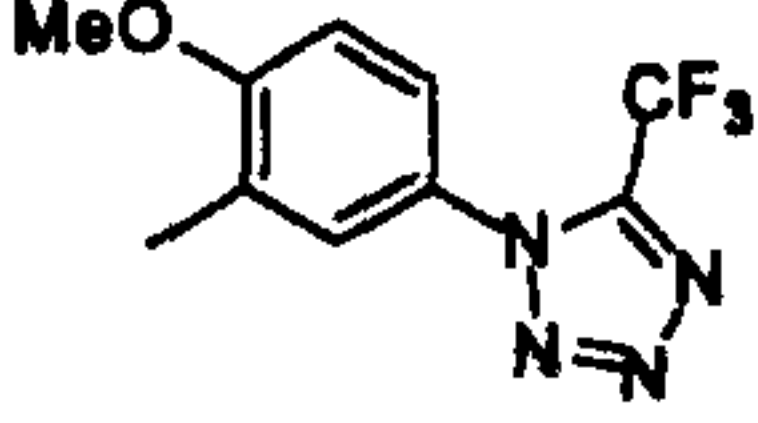
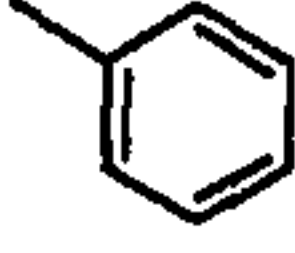
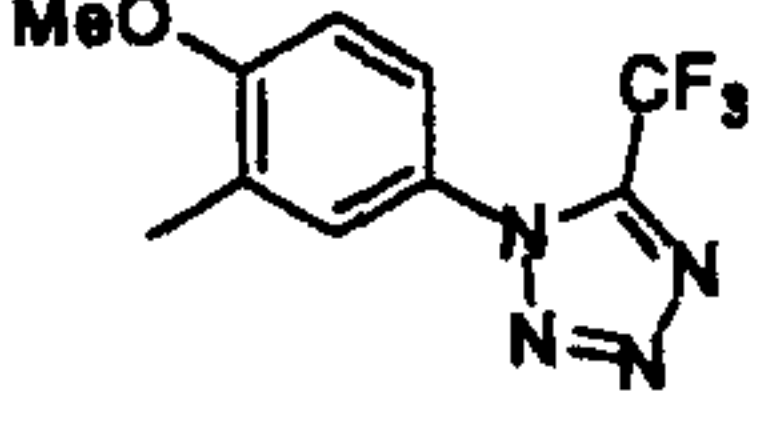
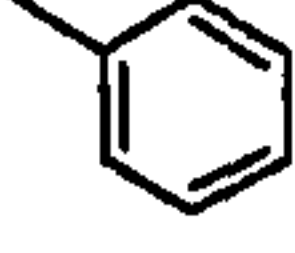
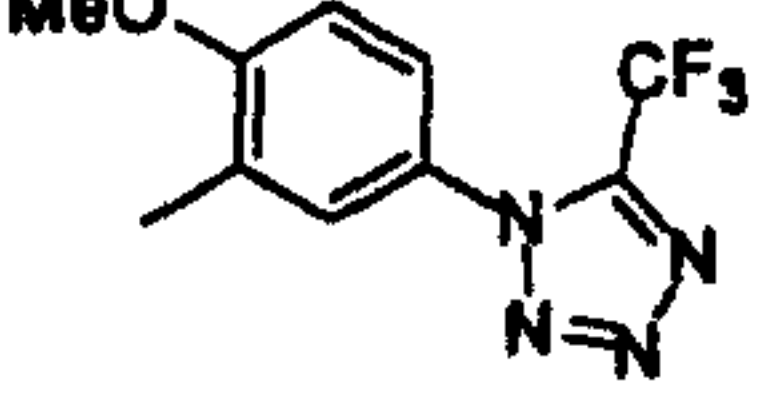
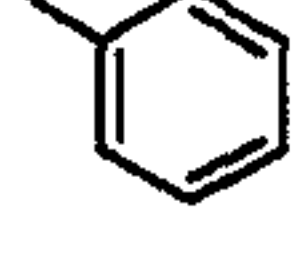
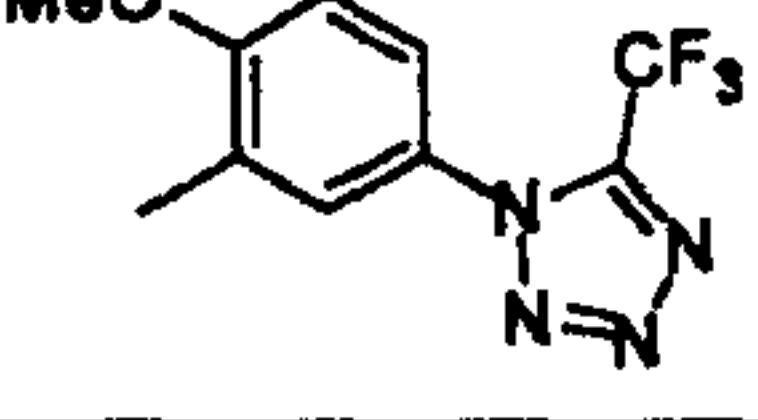
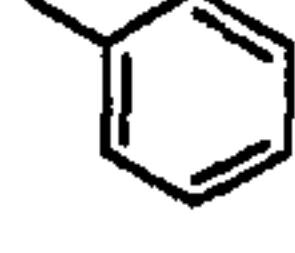
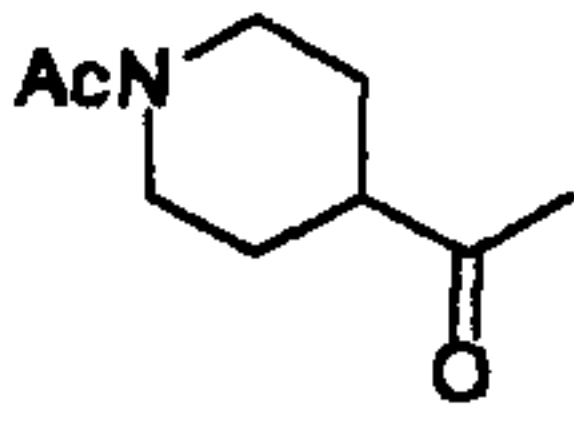
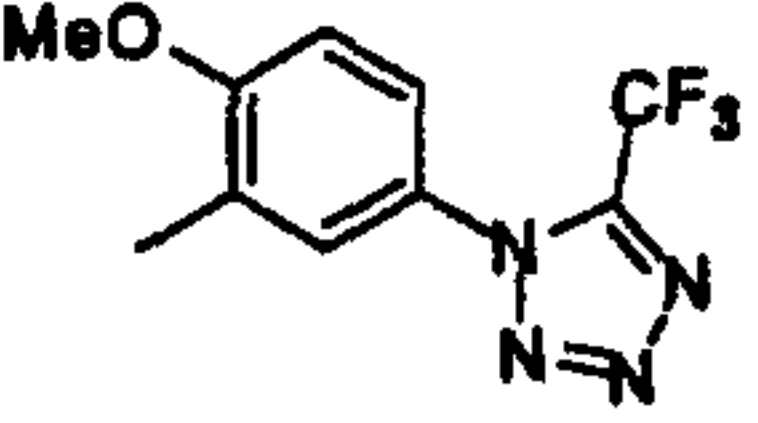
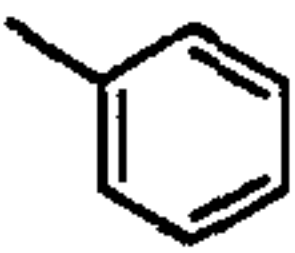
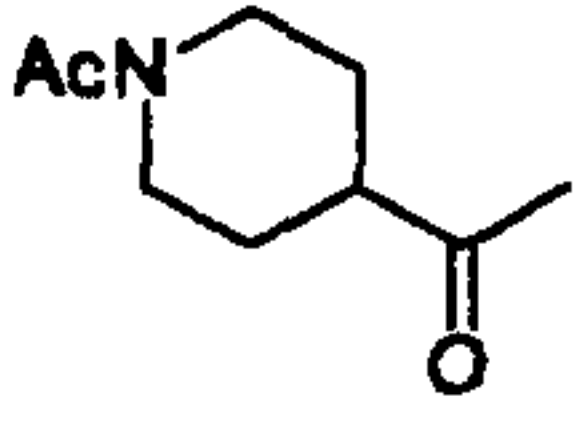
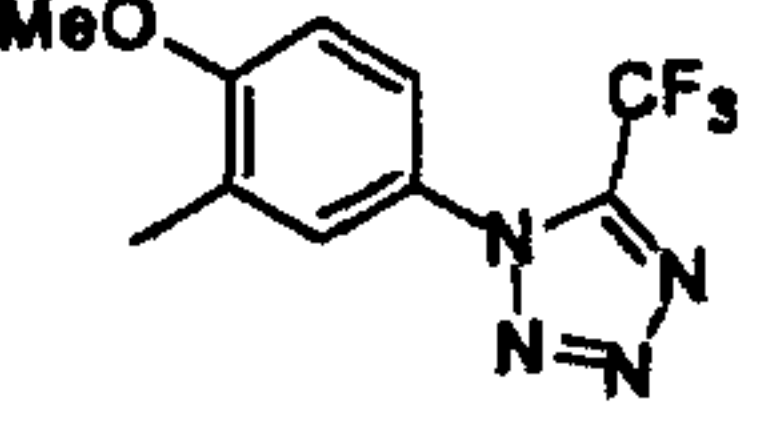
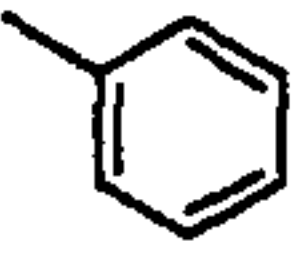
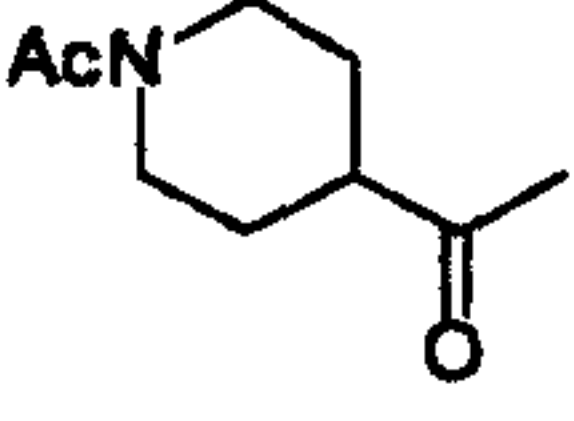
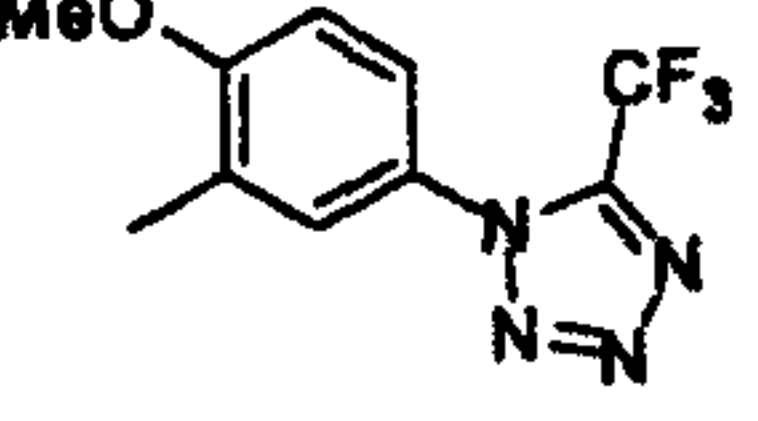
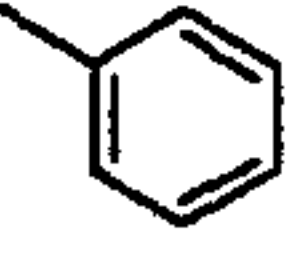
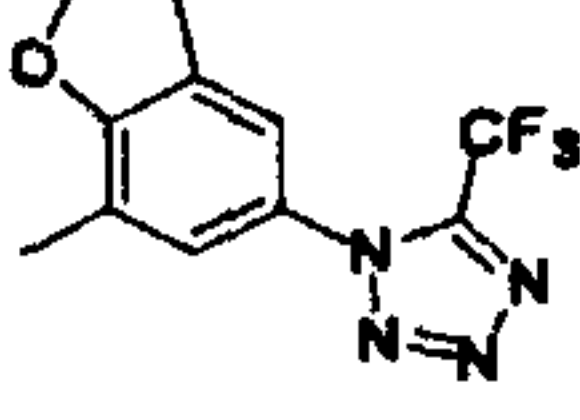
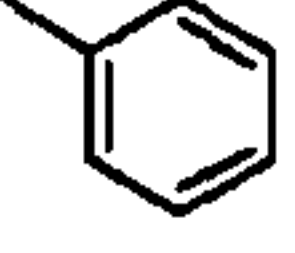
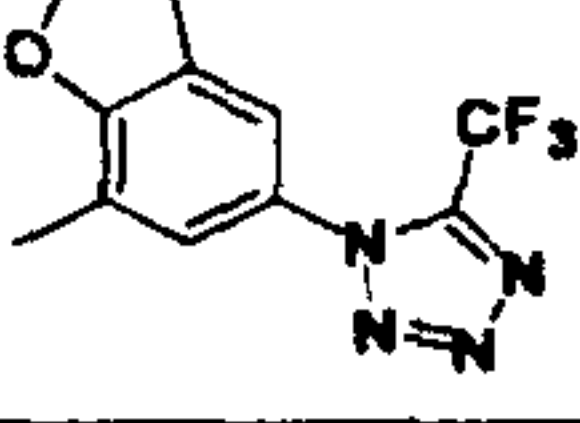
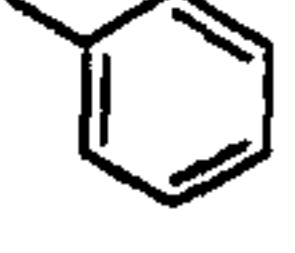
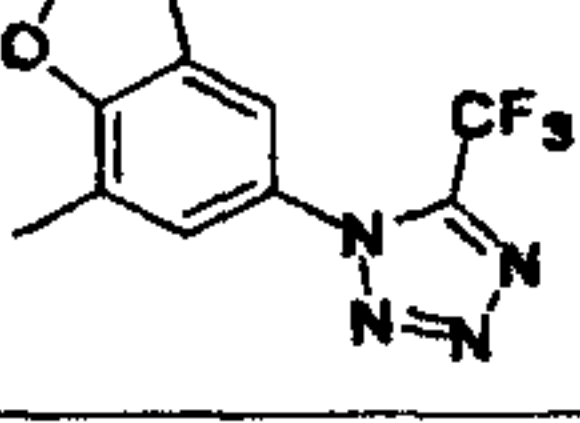
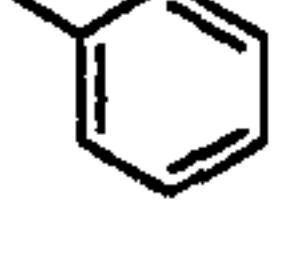
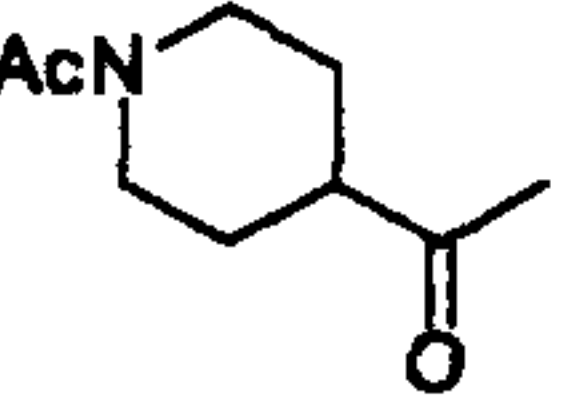
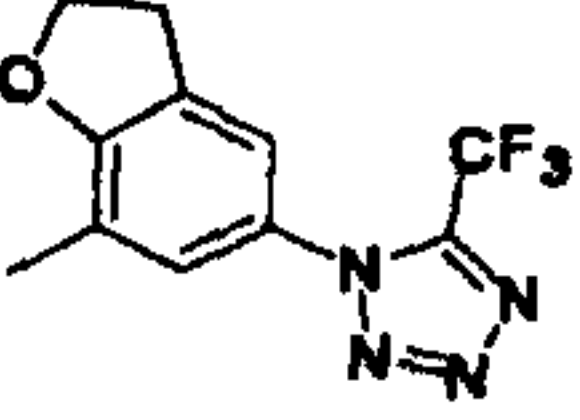
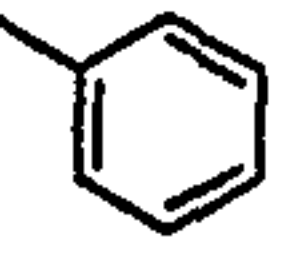
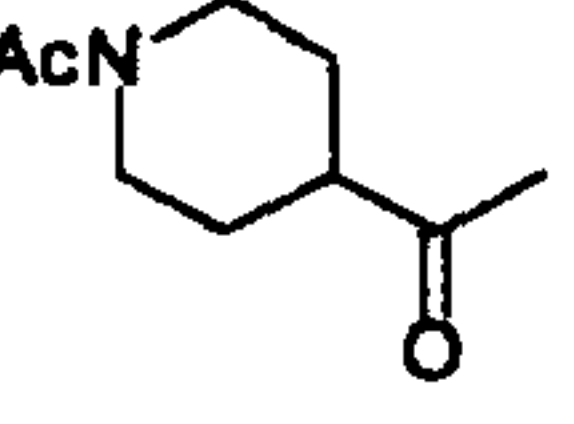
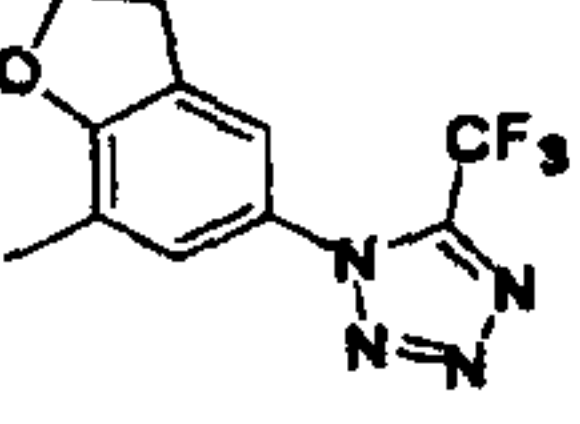
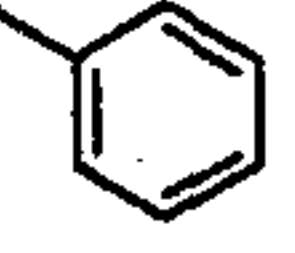
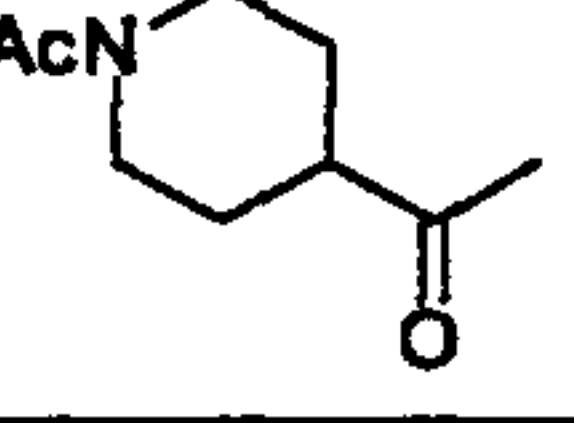
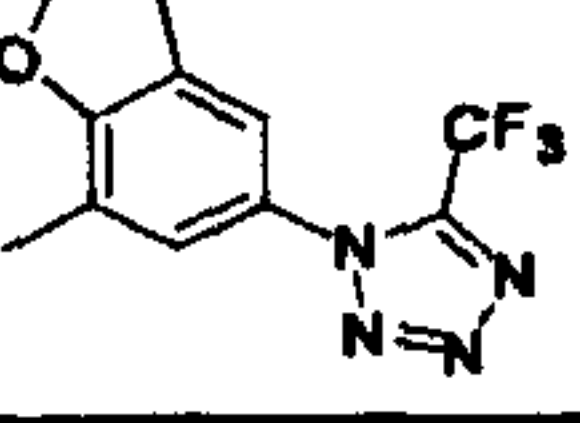
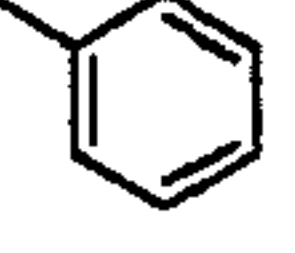
The chemical structural formulae of the compounds
5 obtained in the above-mentioned Examples are as follows.

[Table 7]

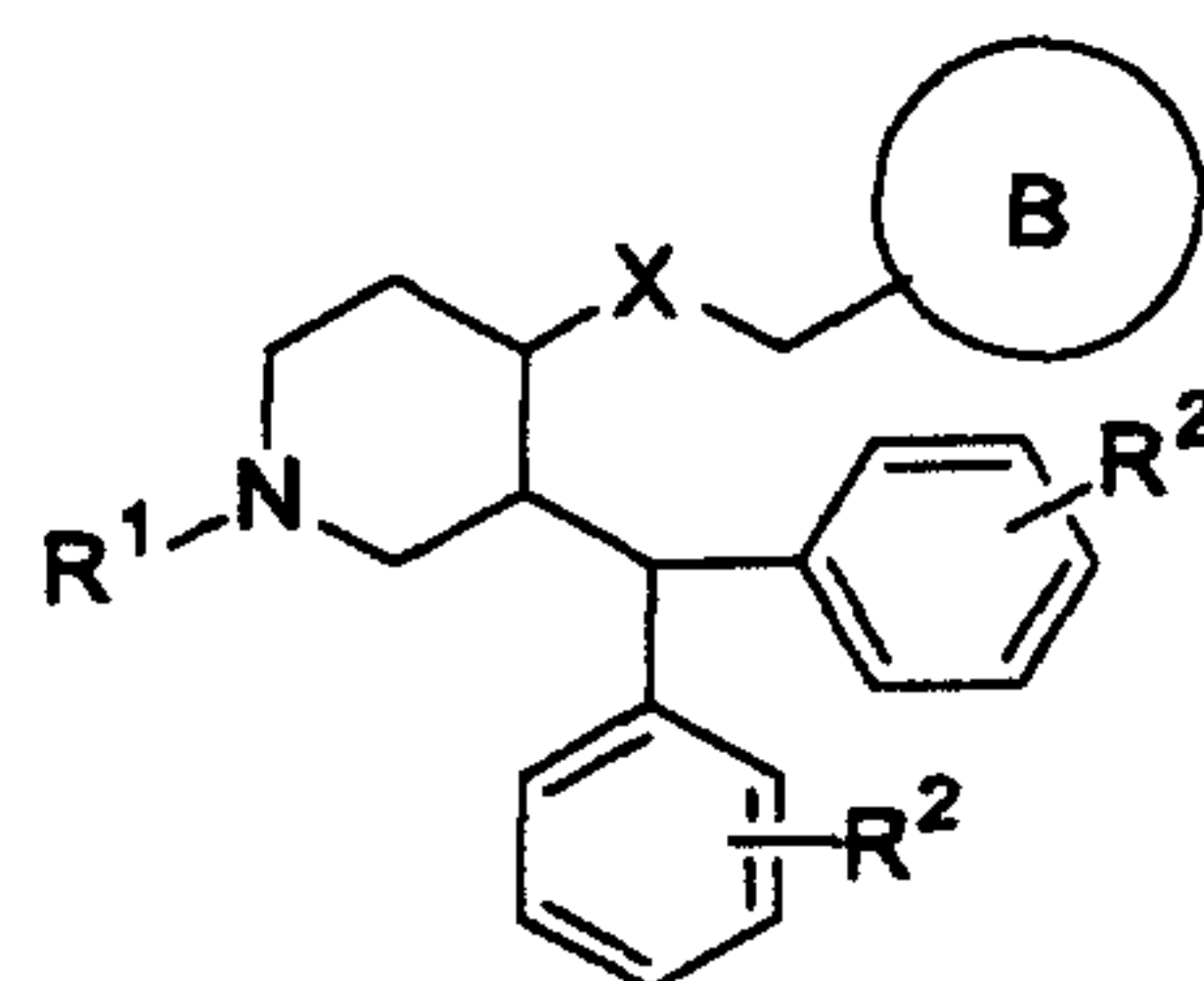


Ex. No.	R ¹	X	B	C
1	H	O		
2	CH ₃ CO	O		
3	PhCO	O		
4	CH ₃ SO ₂	O		
5	CH ₃ OCO	O		
6	CH ₃ NHCO	O		
7		O		
8	C ₂ H ₅ OCOCH ₂	O		
9	H ₂ NCOCH ₂	O		
10	NCCH ₂	O		
11	(CH ₃) ₂ NCO	O		
12	PhNHCO	O		
13	C ₂ H ₅ NHCO	O		
14		O		

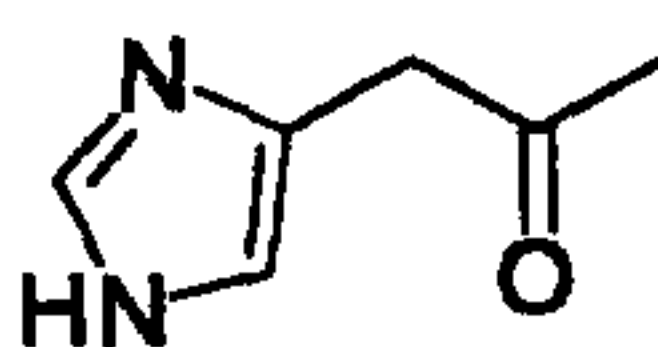
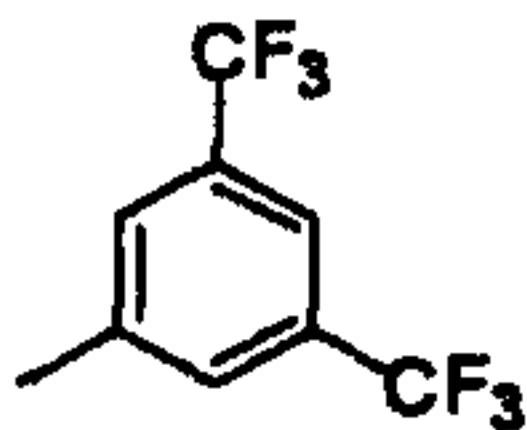
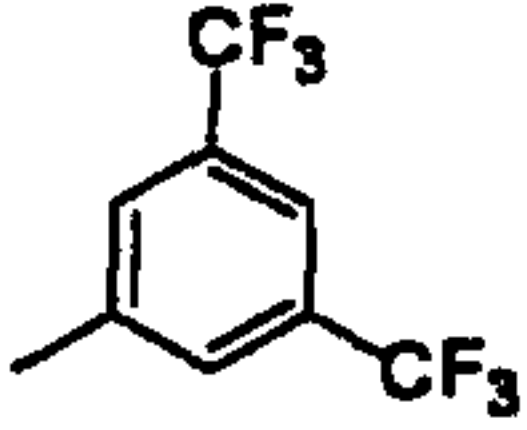
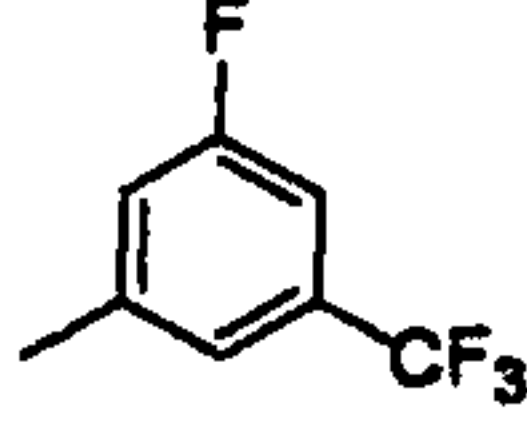
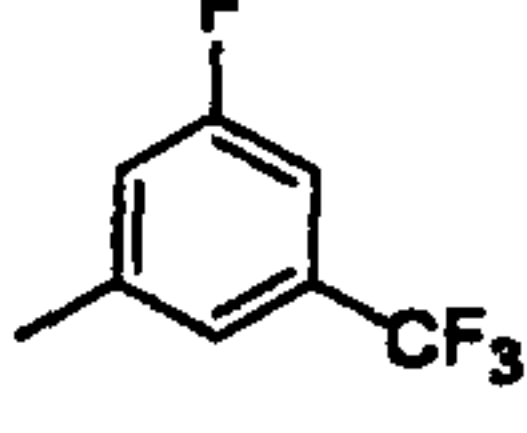
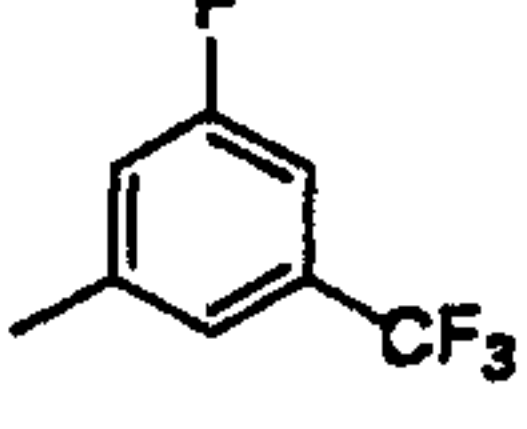
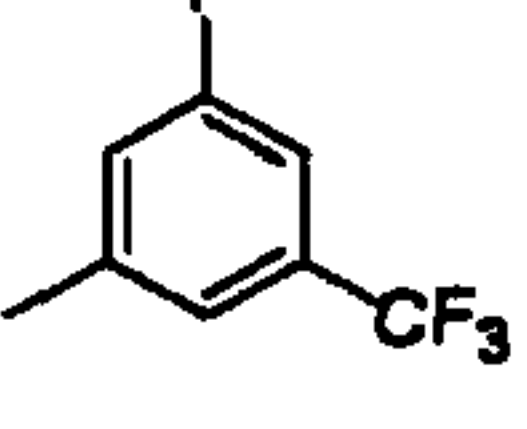
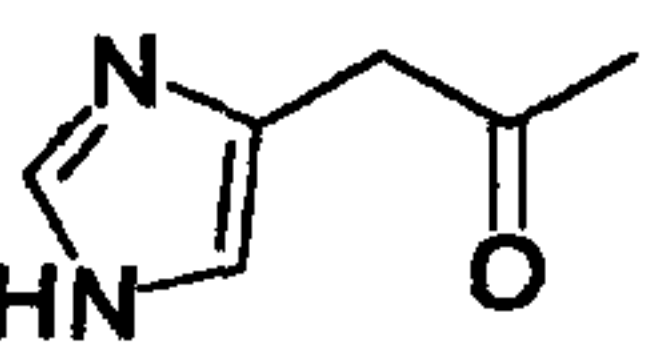
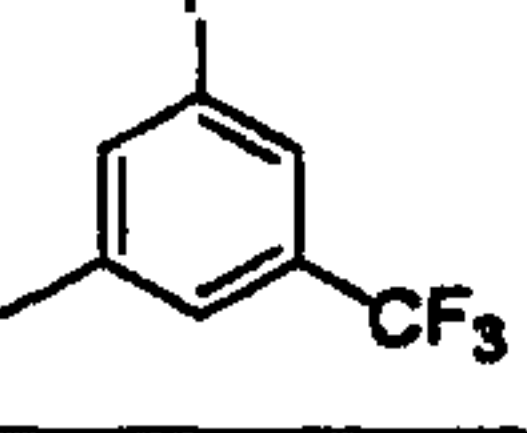
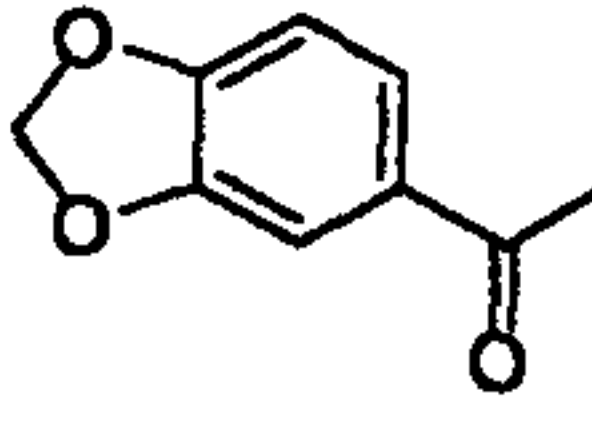
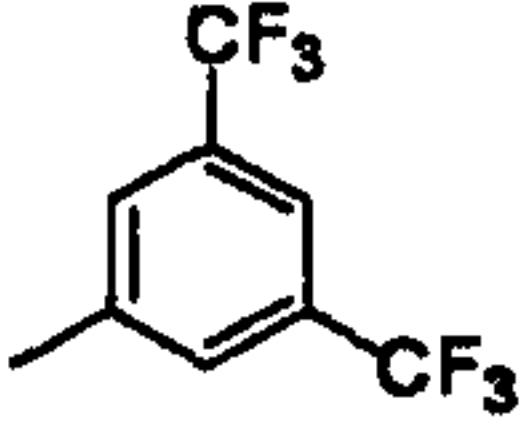
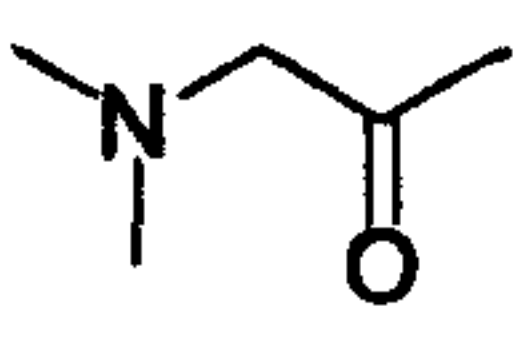
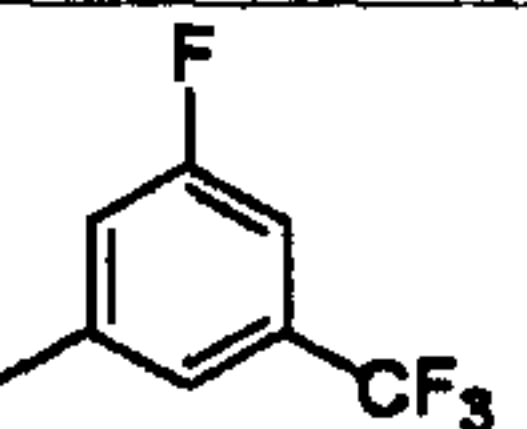
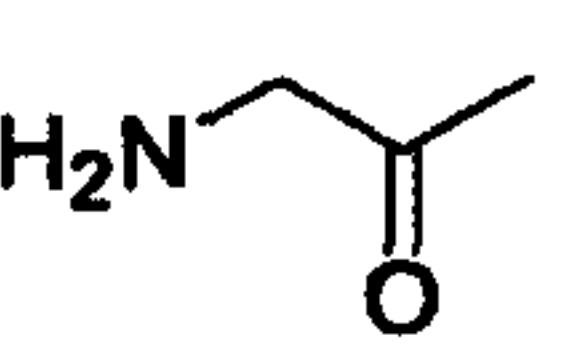
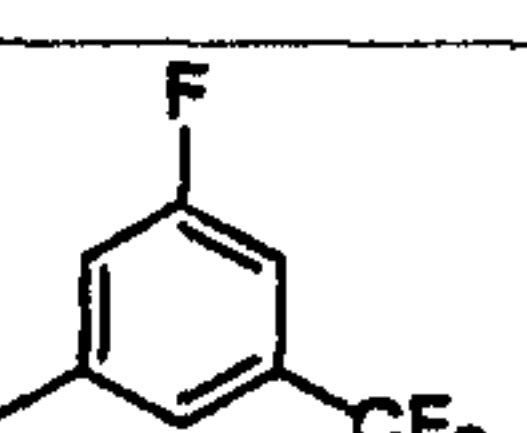
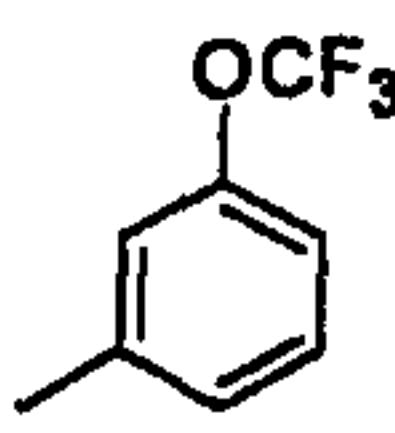
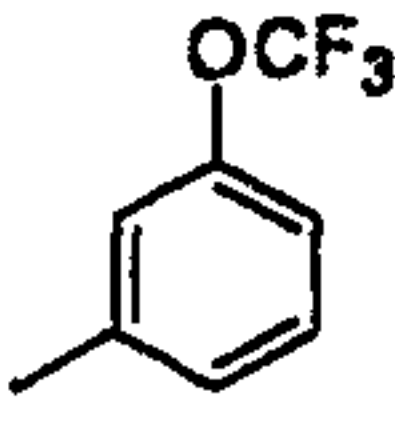
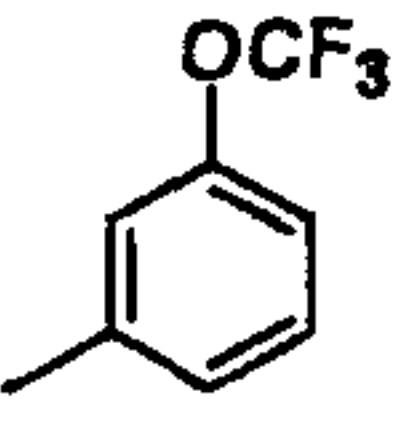
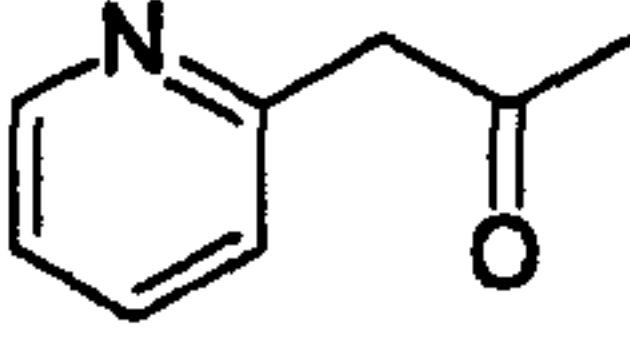
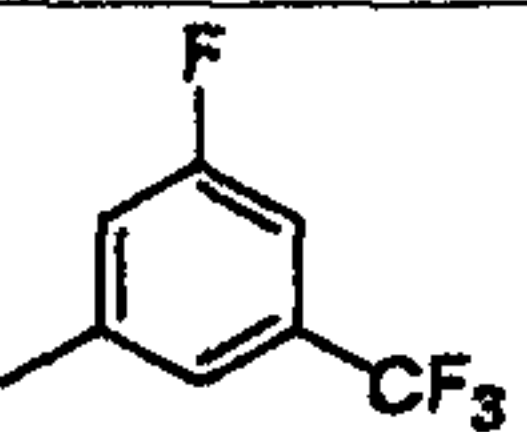
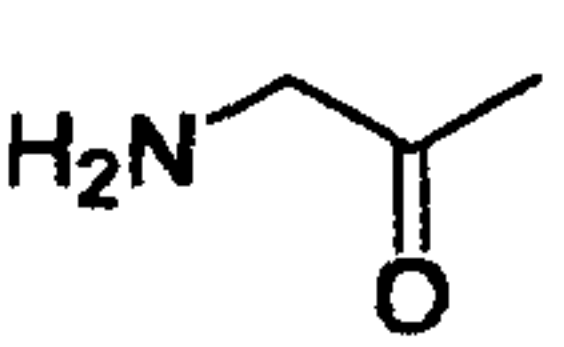
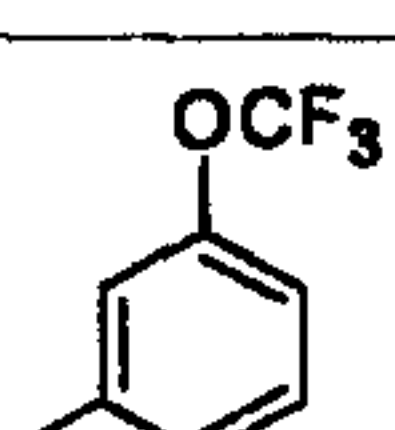
15		O		
16		O		
17	H ₂ NCO	O		
18	ⁿ PrNHCO	O		
19		O		
20		O		
21		O		
22		O		
23 (cis)	H	NH		
24 (trans)	H	NH		
69		O		
70		O		
71	CH ₃ NHCO	NH		
72	CH ₃ NHCO	NH		
73	CH ₃ NHCO	NH		

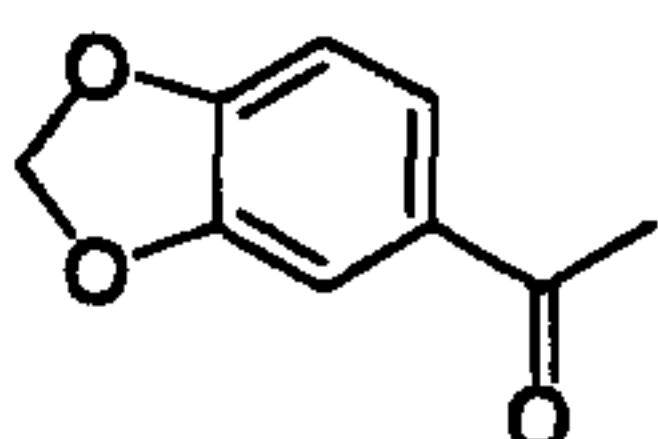
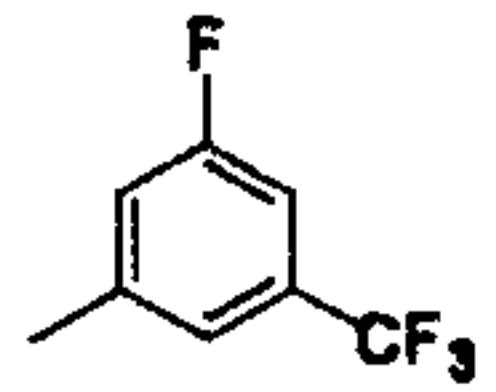
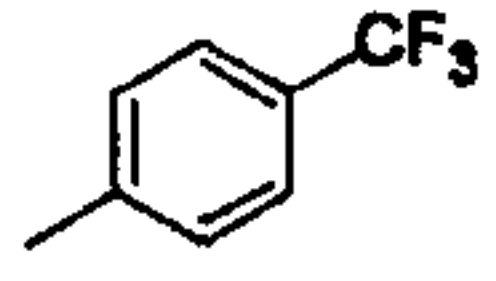
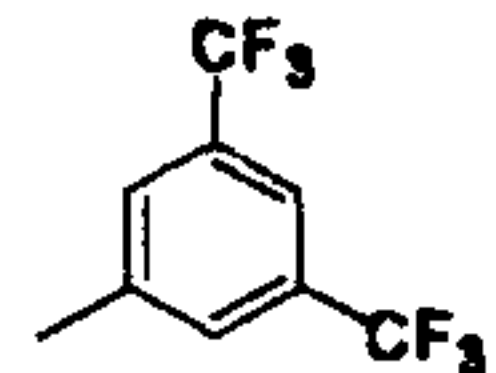
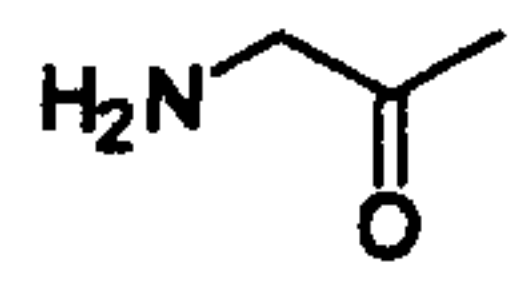
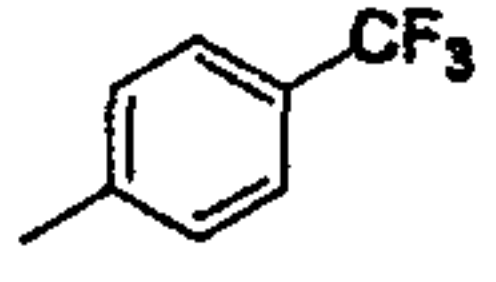
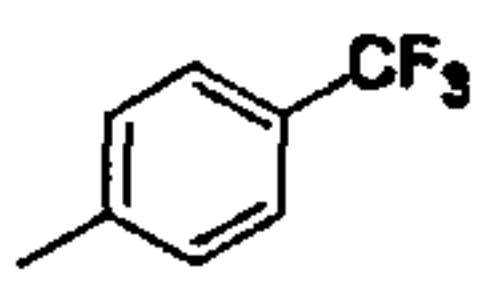
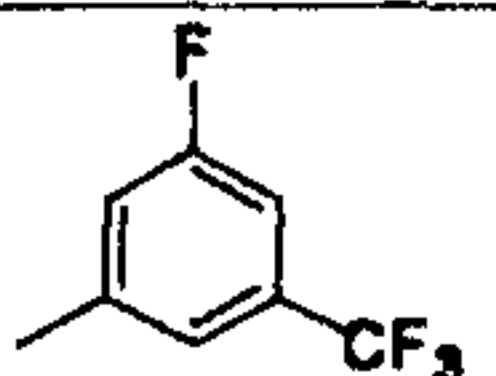
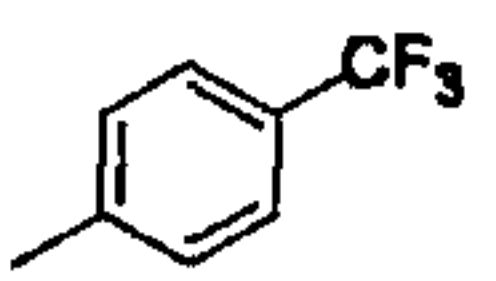
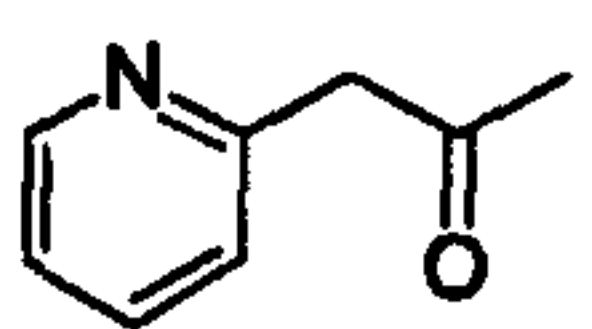
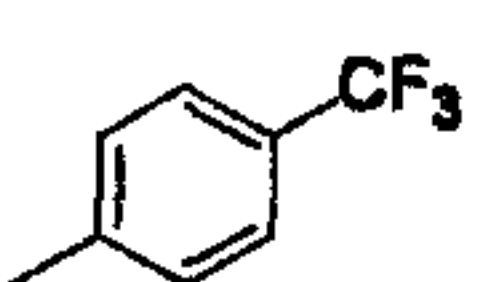
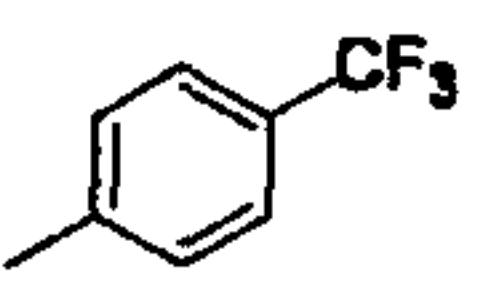
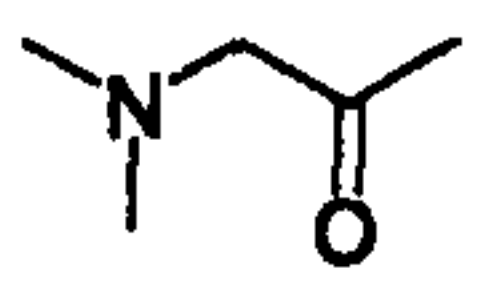
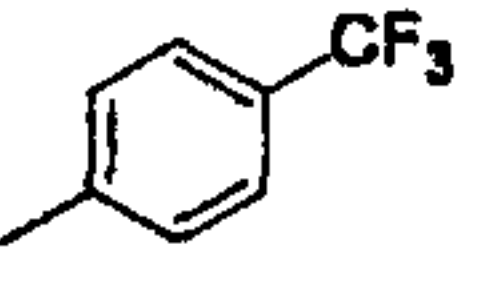
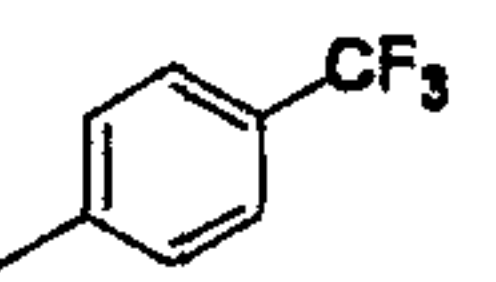
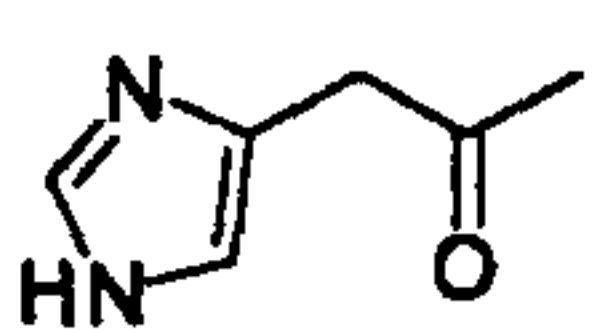
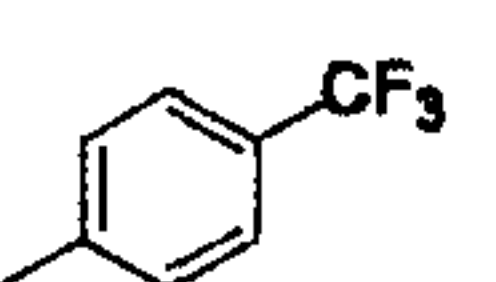
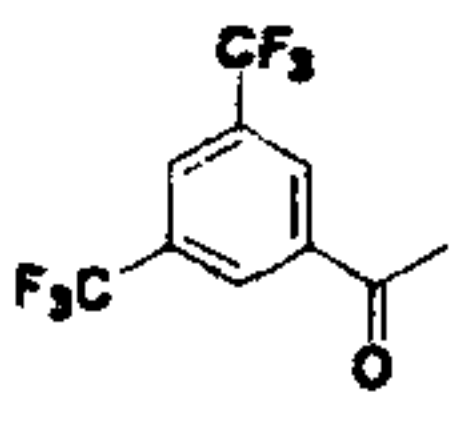
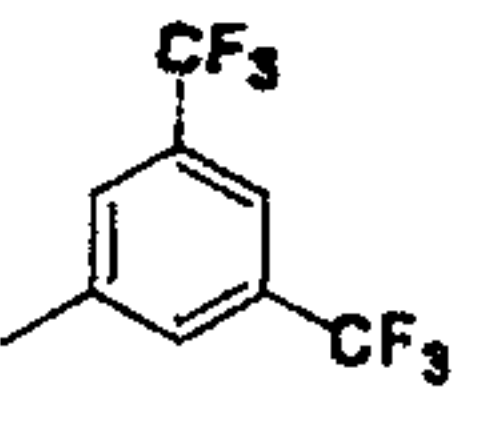
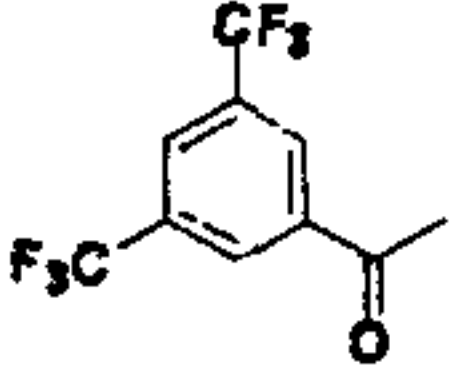
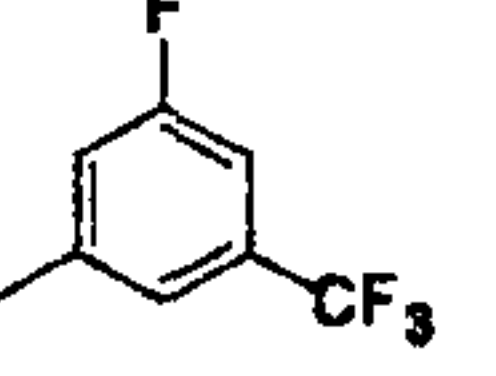
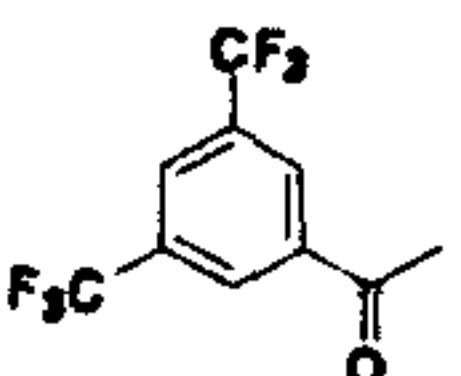
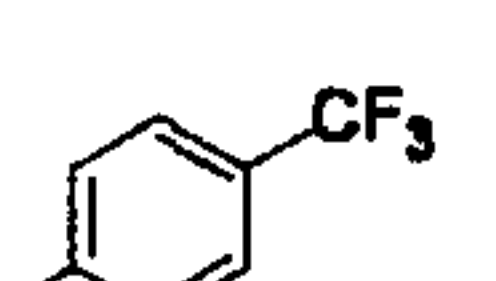
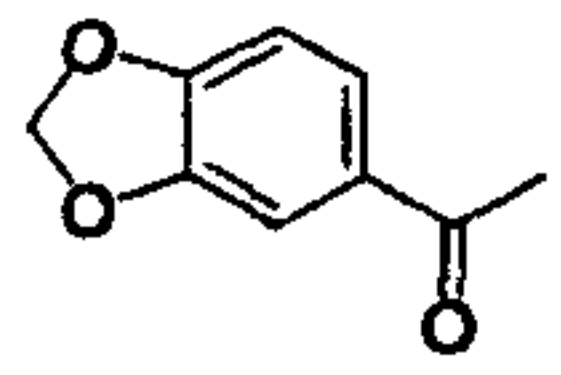
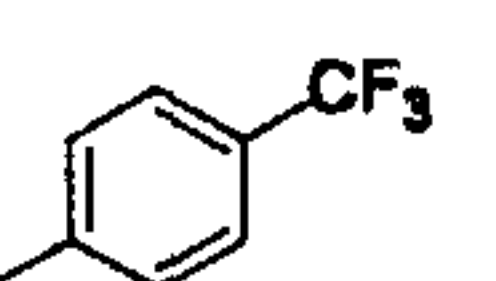
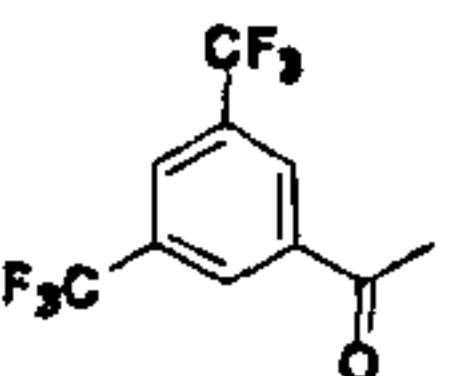
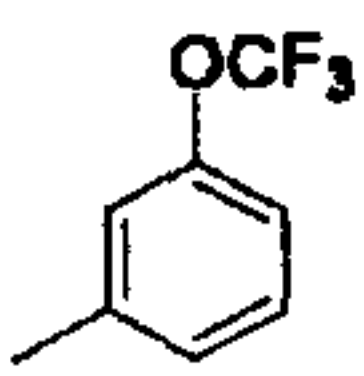
74	C_2H_5NHCO	NH		
75	C_2H_5NHCO	NH		
76	C_2H_5NHCO	NH		
77	CH_3OCH_2CO	NH		
78	CH_3OCH_2CO	NH		
79	CH_3OCH_2CO	NH		
80		NH		
81		NH		
82		NH		
83	C_2H_5NHCO	NH		
84	C_2H_5NHCO	NH		
85	C_2H_5NHCO	NH		
86		NH		
87		NH		
88		NH		

[Table 8]



Ex. No.	R ¹	X	B	R ²
25	H	O		H
26	H	O		H
27	H	O		H
28	H	O		H
29		O		H
30	CH ₃ SO ₂	O		H
31	CH ₃ NHCO	O		H
32		O		H
33	CH ₃ CO	O		H
34	CH ₃ OCH ₂ CO	O		H
35	CH ₃ SO ₂	O		H
36		O		H

37		O		H
38	C ₂ H ₅ CO	O		H
39	CH ₃ NHCO	O		H
40	C ₂ H ₅ CO	O		H
41	CH ₃ CO	O		H
42	CH ₃ OCH ₂ CO	O		H
43		O		H
44		O		H
45		O		H
46		O		H
47	CH ₃ OCH ₂ CO	O		H
48	CH ₃ CO	O		H
49	C ₂ H ₅ CO	O		H
50		O		H
51		O		H

52		O		H
53	CH ₃ SO ₂	O		H
54	PhCH ₂	O		H
55		O		H
56	CH ₃ CO	O		H
57	PhCH ₂	O		H
58	CH ₃ NHCO	O		H
59		O		H
60	C ₂ H ₅ CO	O		H
61		O		H
62	CH ₃ OCH ₂ CO	O		H
63		O		H
64		O		H
65		O		H
66		O		H
67		O		H
68		O		H

- 170 -

Example 89

cis-3-Benzhydryl-4-[[3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-1-[3-(1-piperidinyl)propanoyl]piperidine trifluoroacetate

5 The compound (28.7 mg) obtained in Example 25 and 1-piperidinepropionic acid (18.9 mg) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 33 to obtain the title compound.

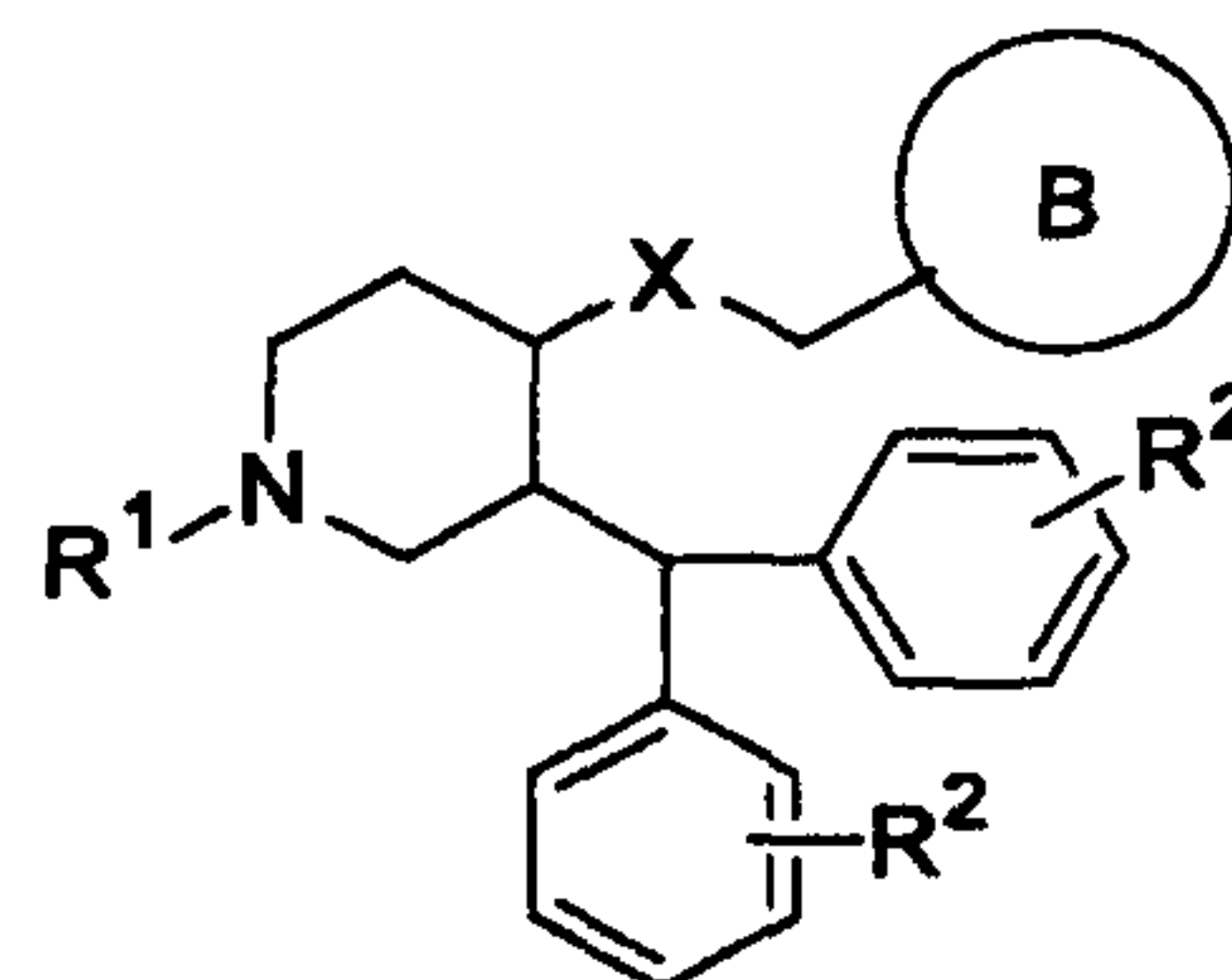
Yield: 36.1 mg

10 HPLC analysis (Condition B): Purity 97% (Retention time: 1.90 minutes)

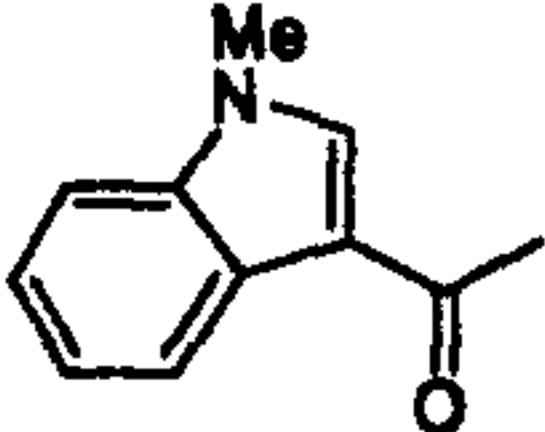
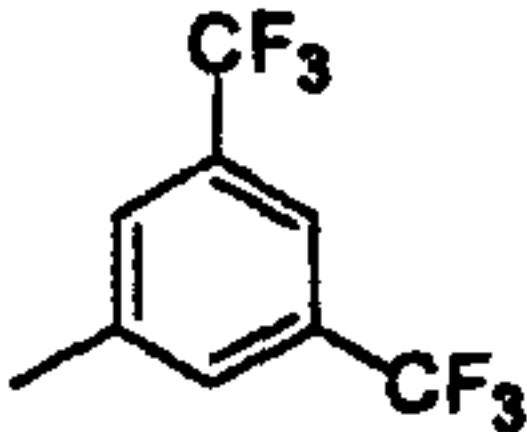
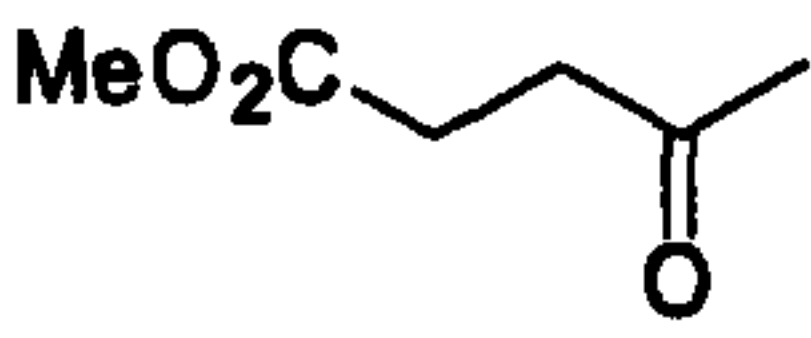
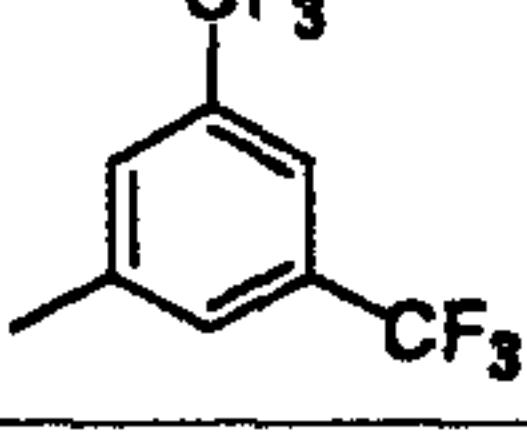
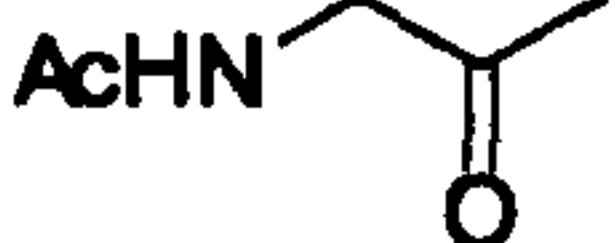
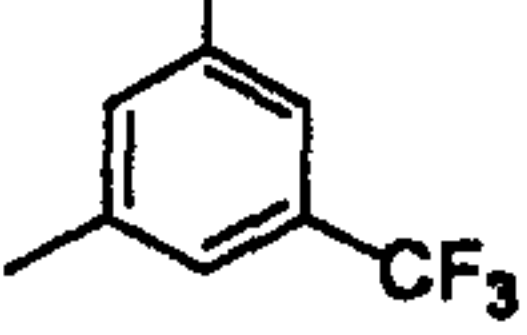
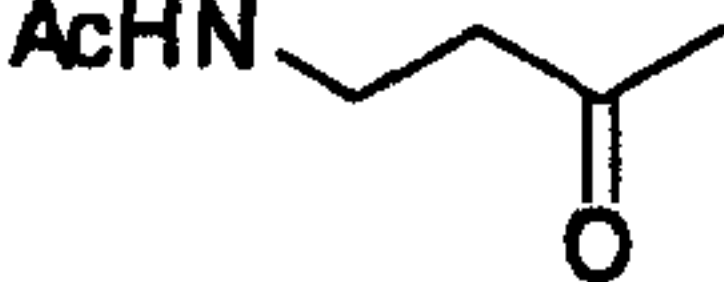
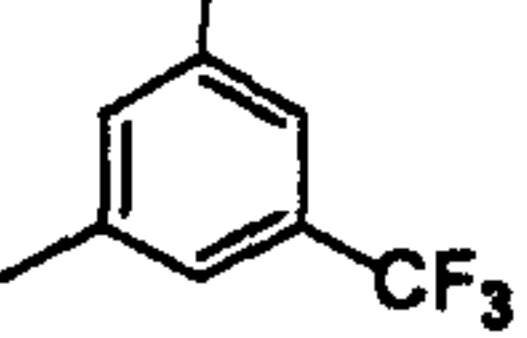
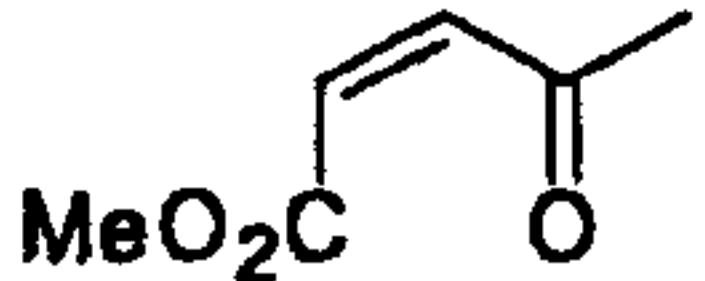
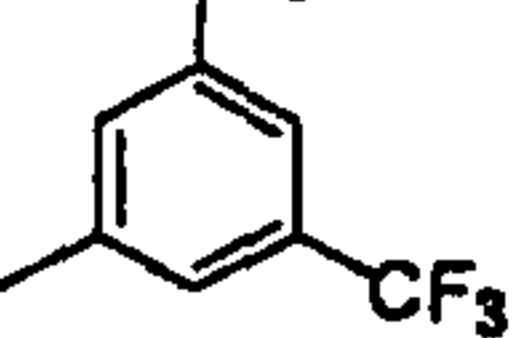
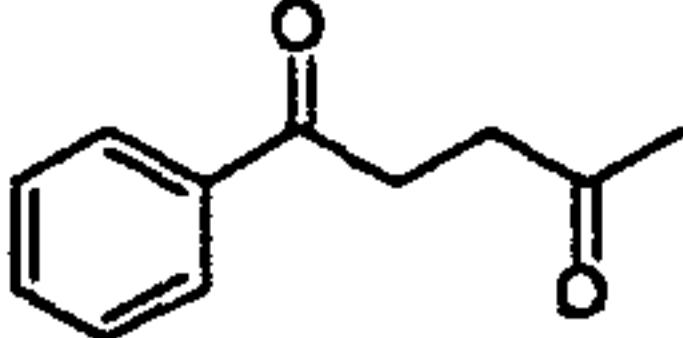
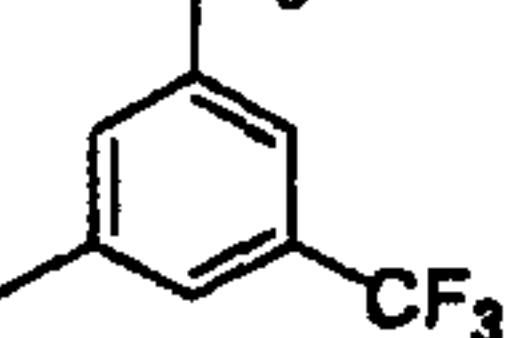
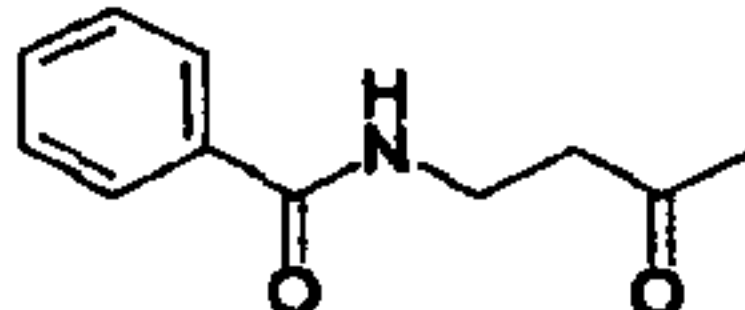
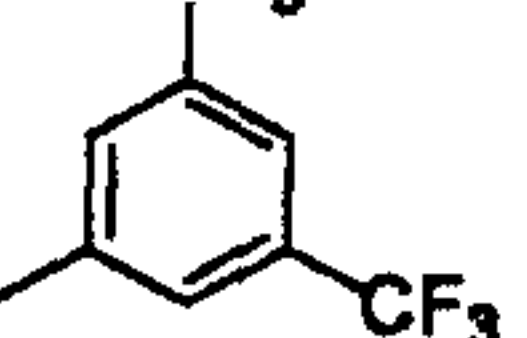
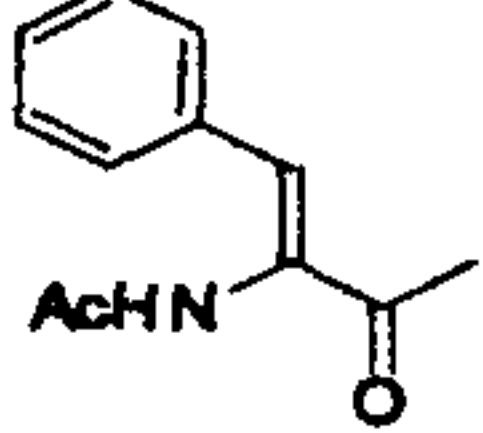
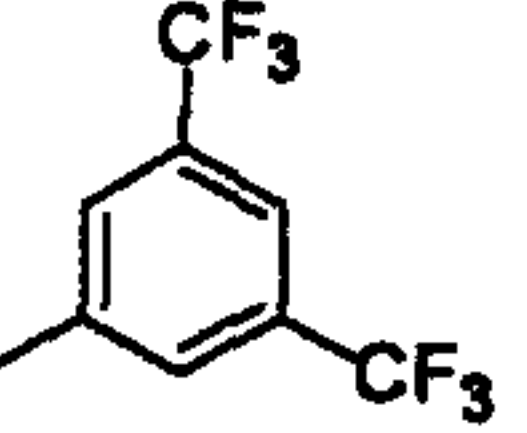
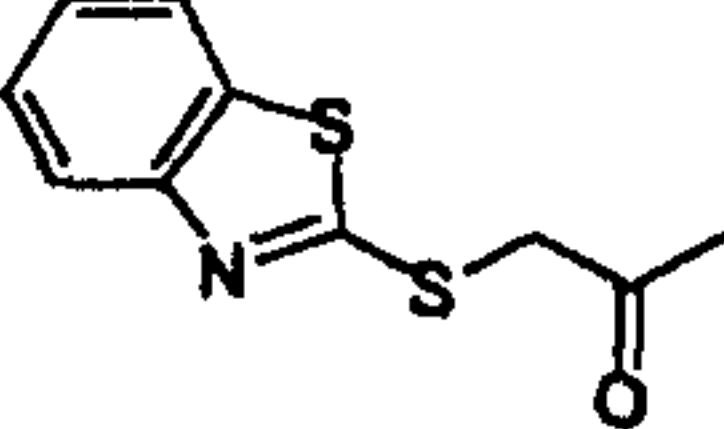
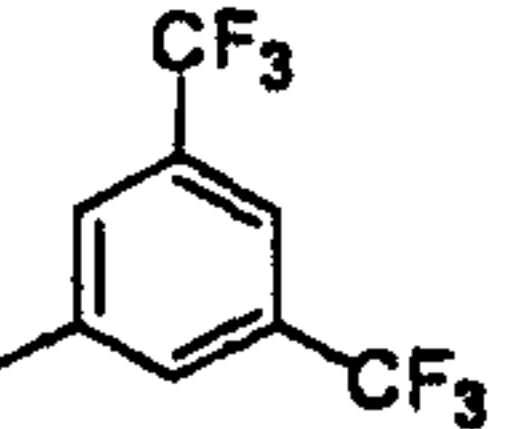
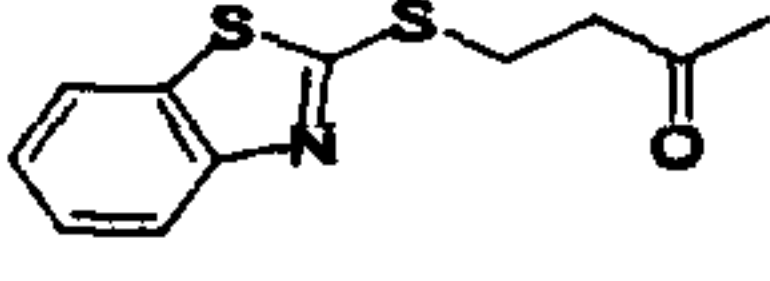
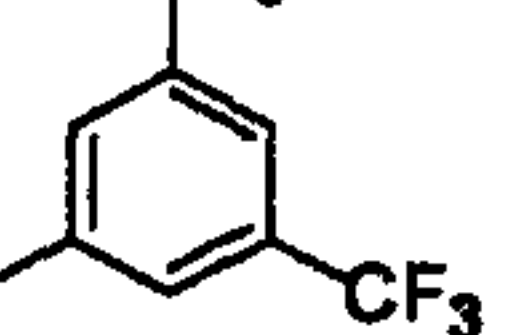
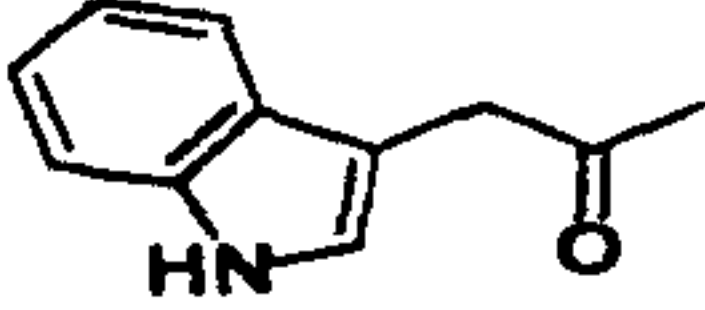
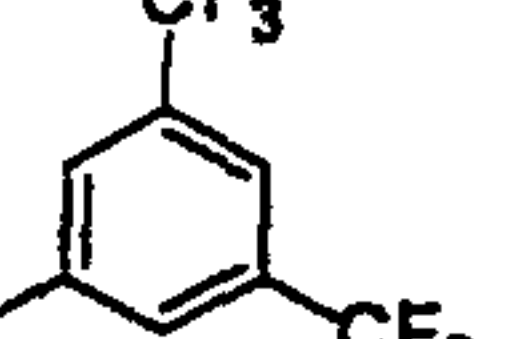
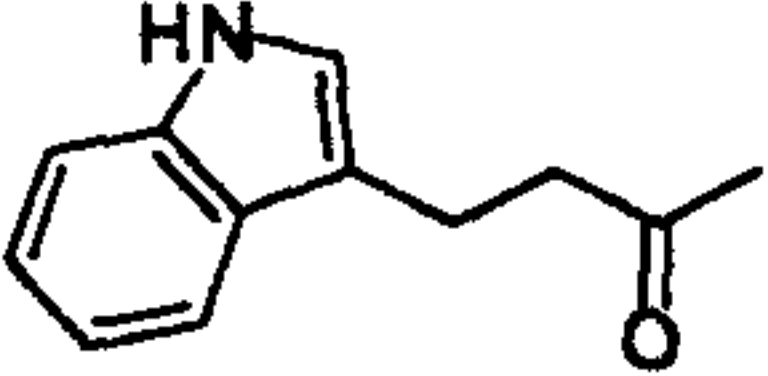
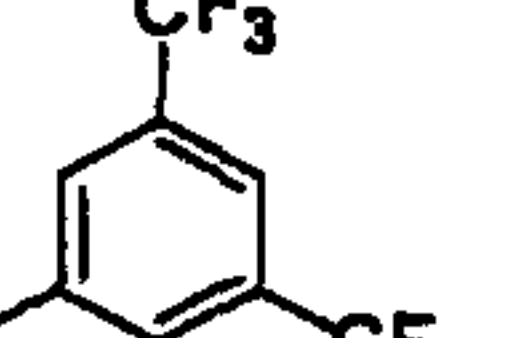
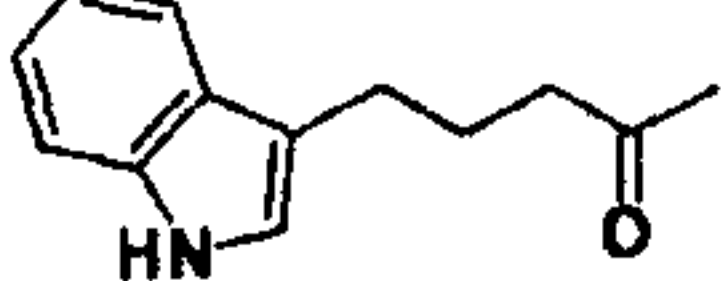
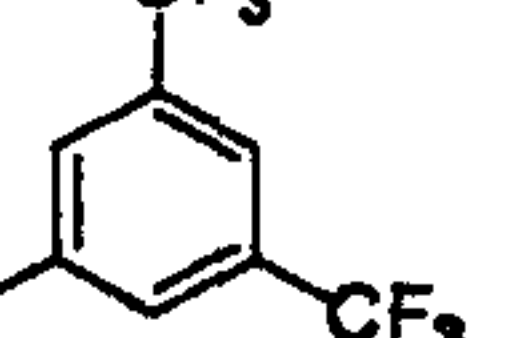
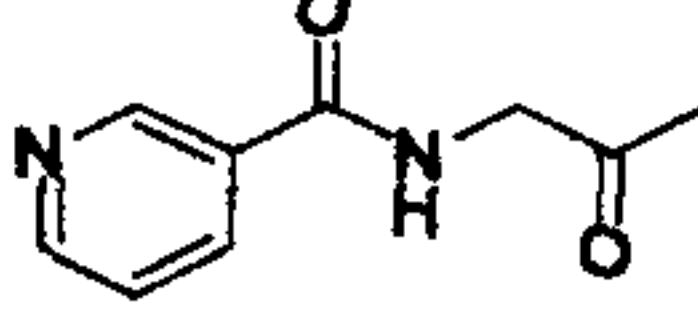
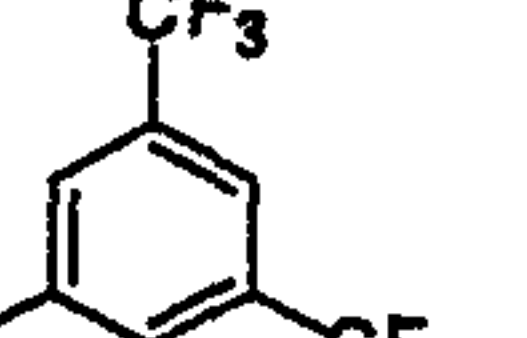
MS (ESI+): 633 (M+H)

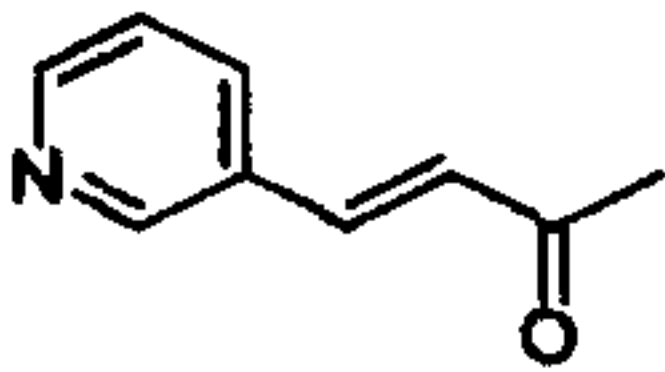
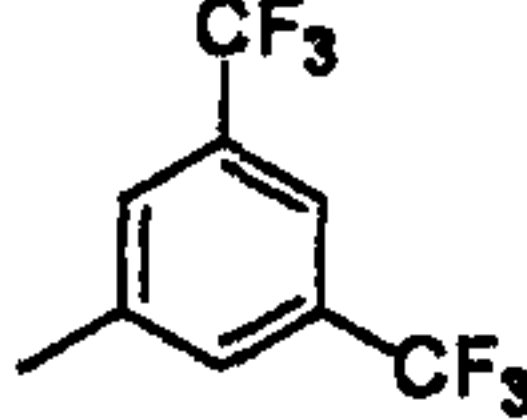
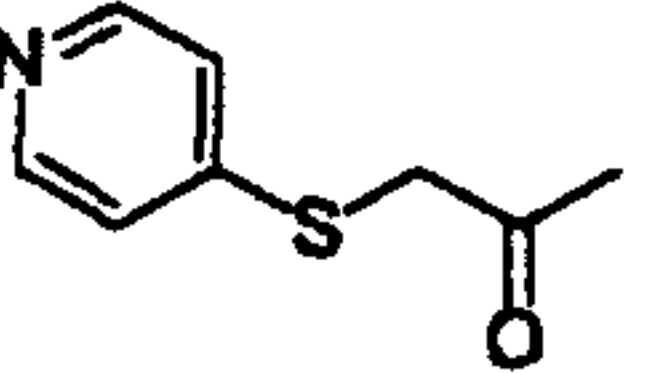
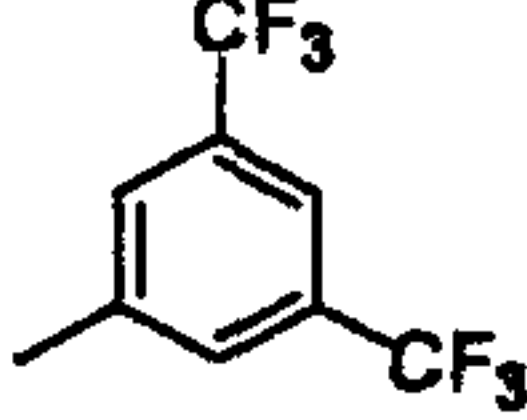
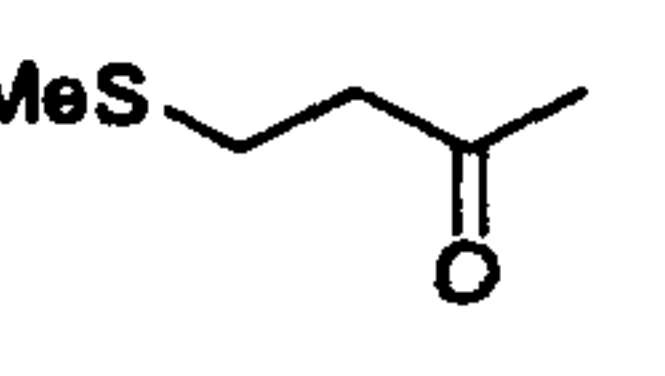
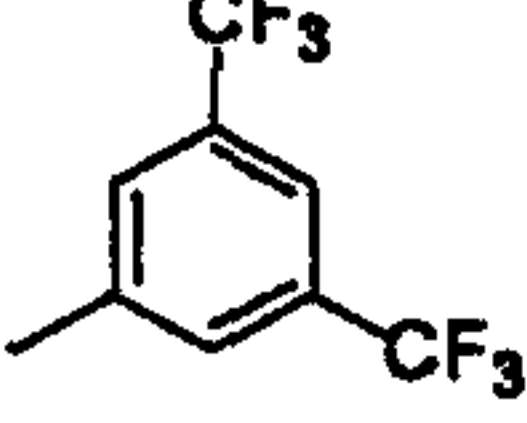
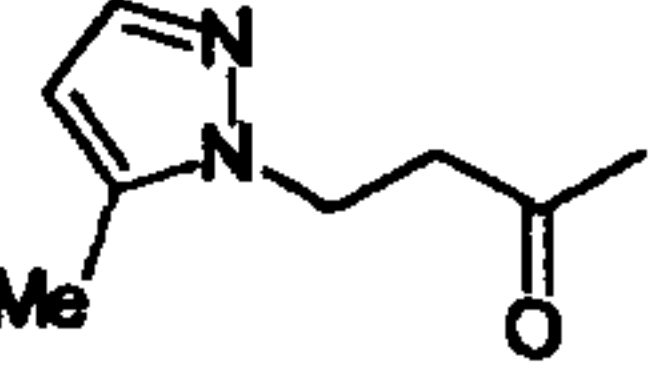
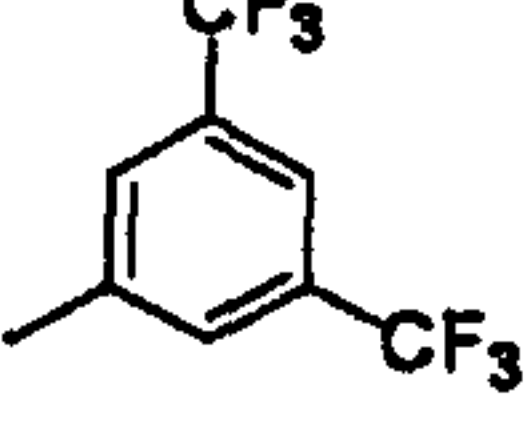
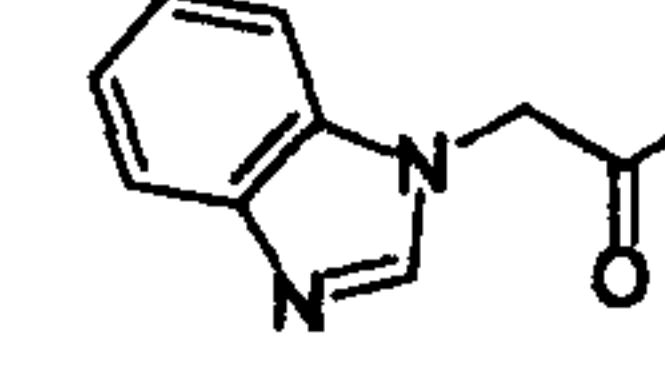
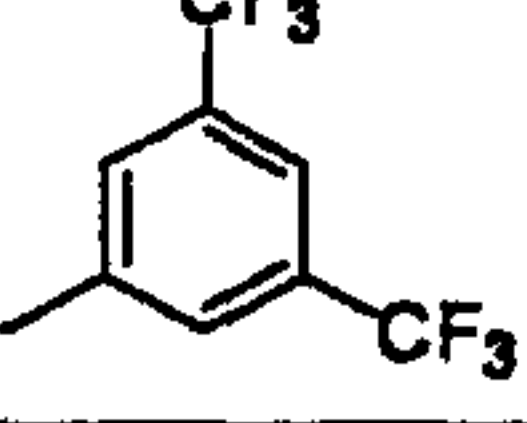
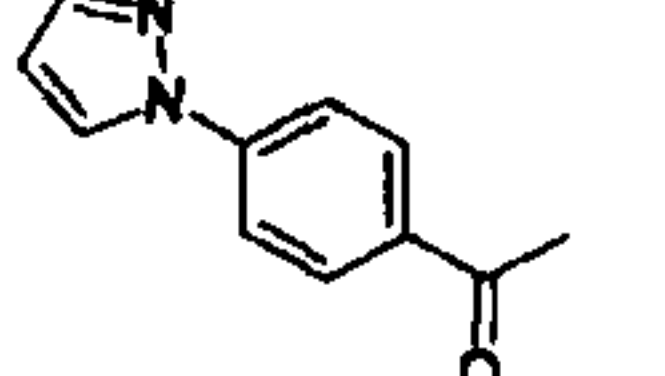
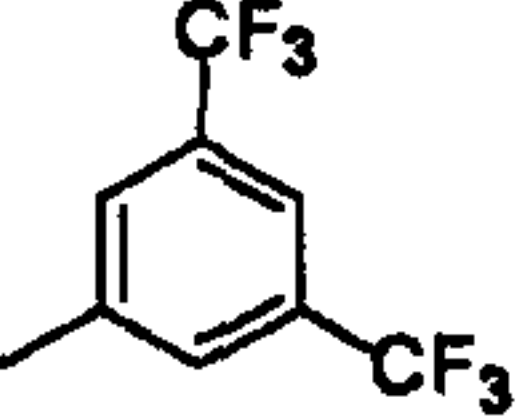
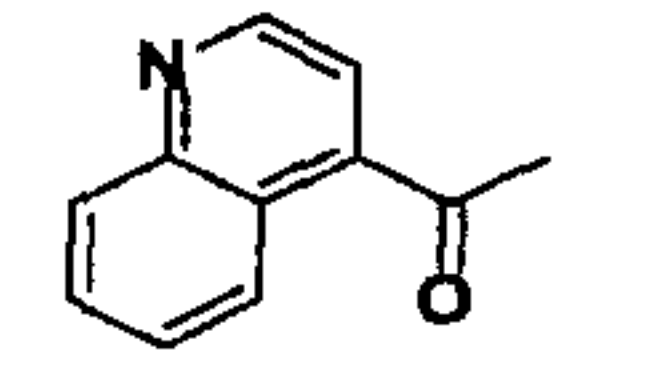
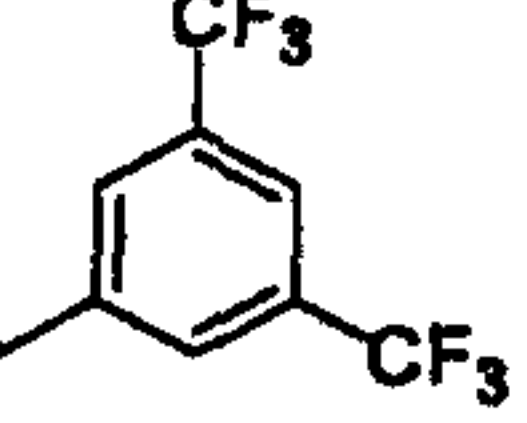
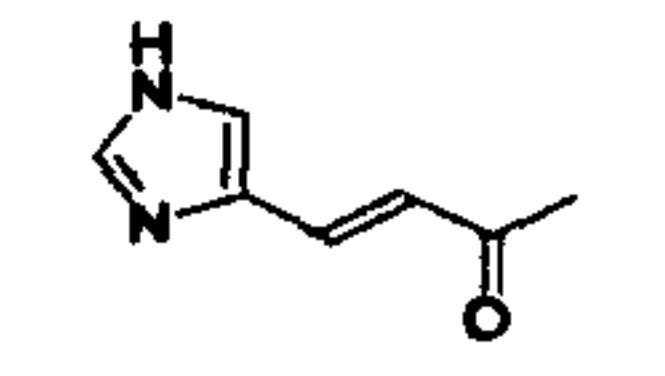
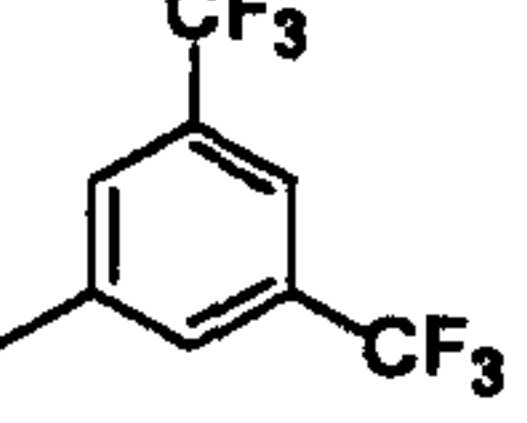
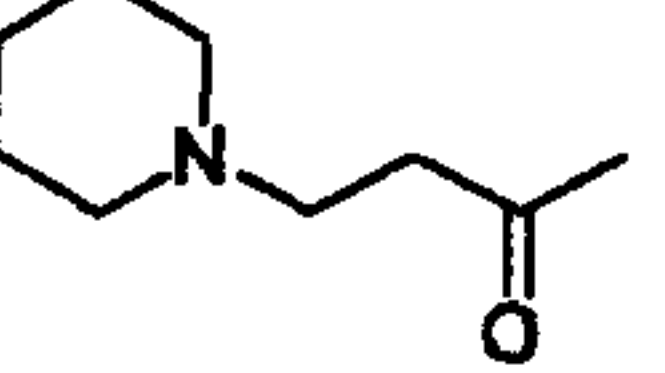
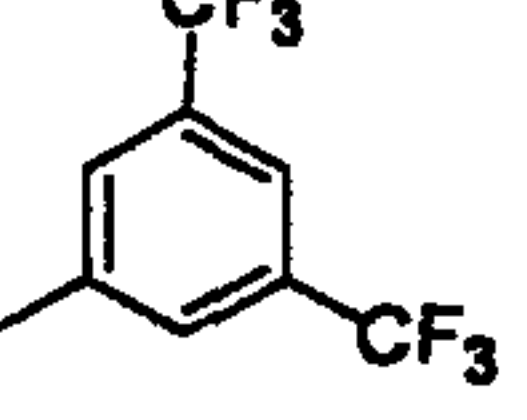
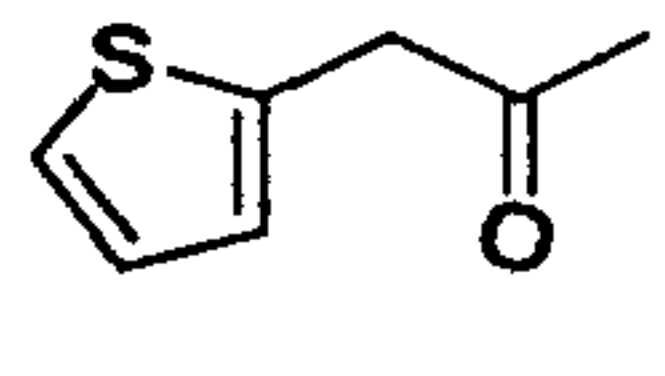
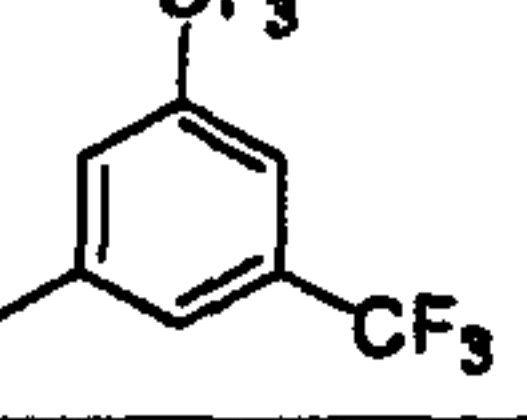
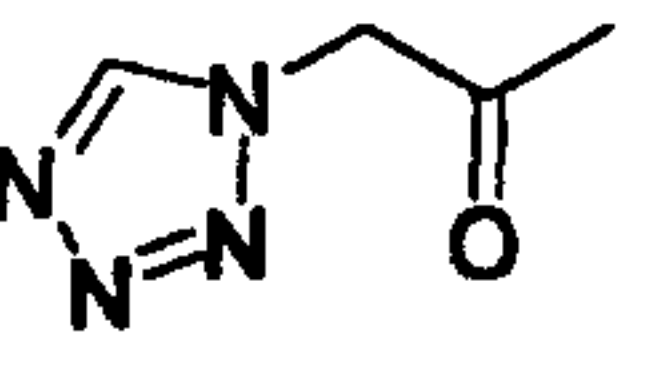
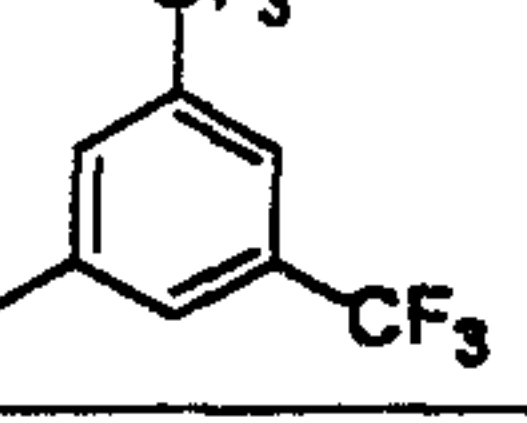
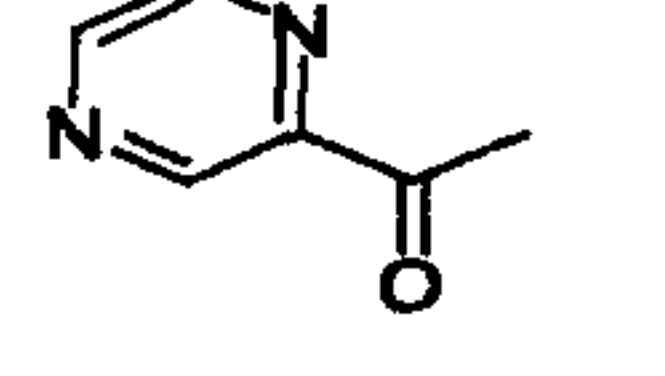
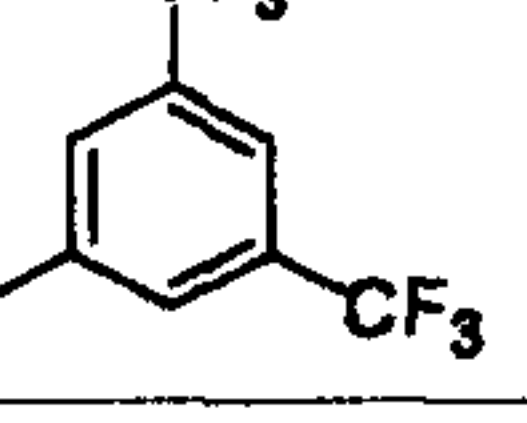
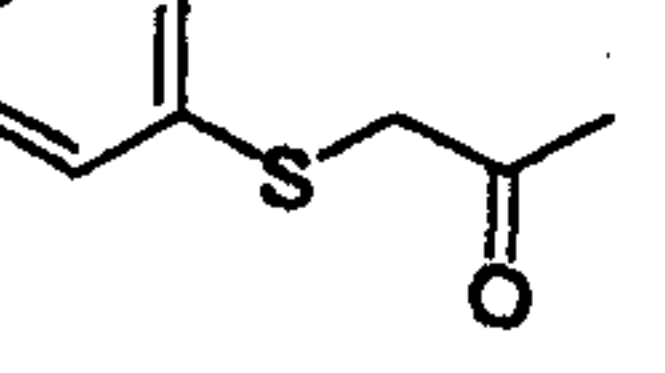
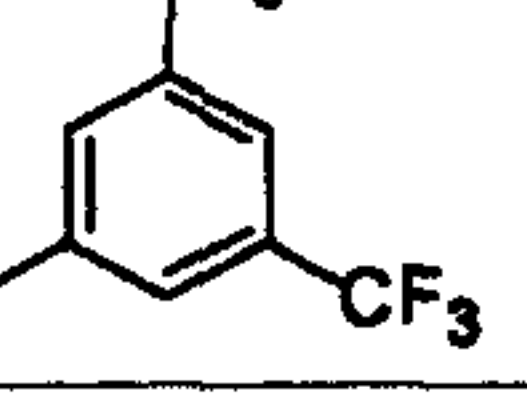
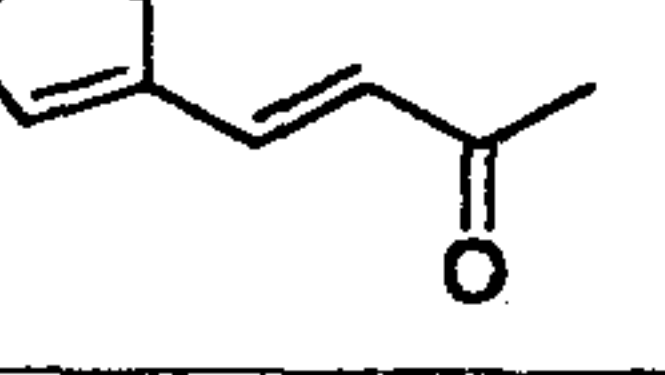
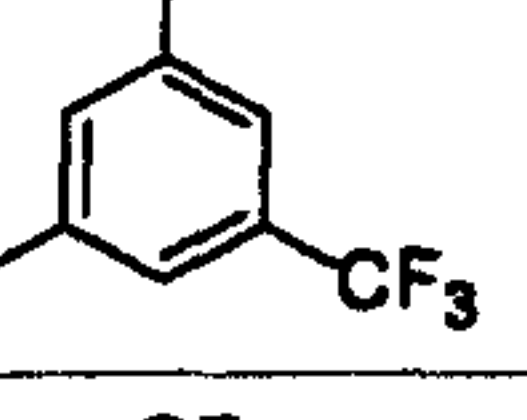
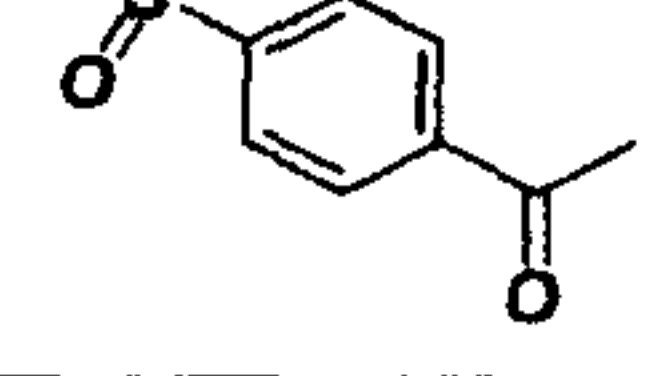
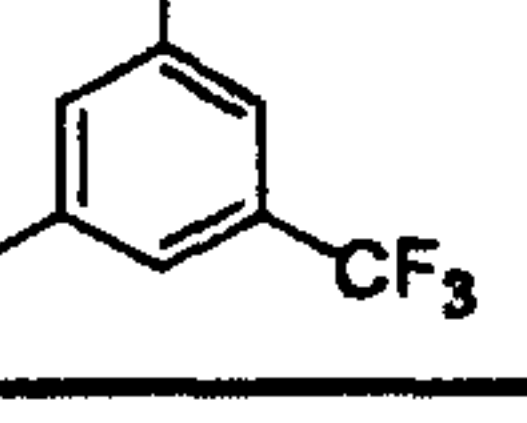
The compounds of the following Examples were synthesized from the compounds obtained in Examples 25, 152, 15 217, 245, 271, 295 and 320 as starting materials by reacting and treating in the same manner as in the method described in Example 89 using the respective corresponding carboxylic acid derivatives.

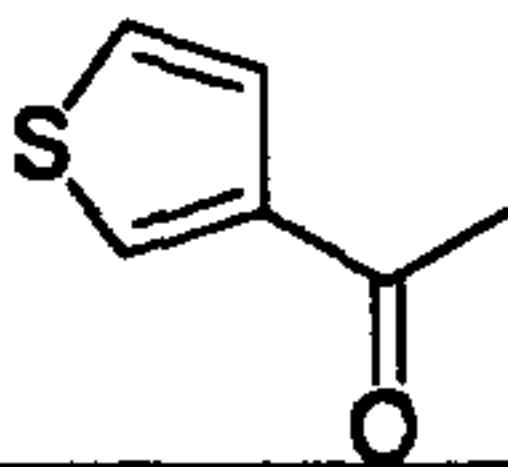
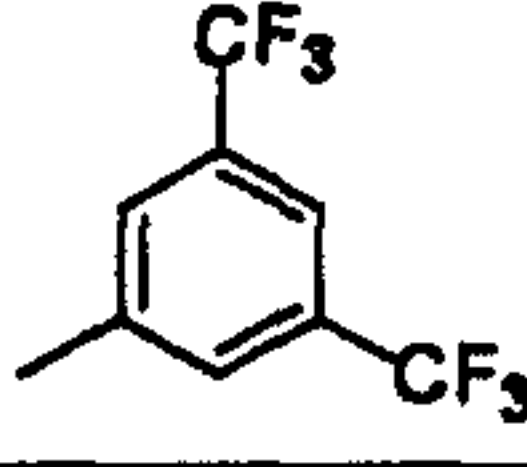
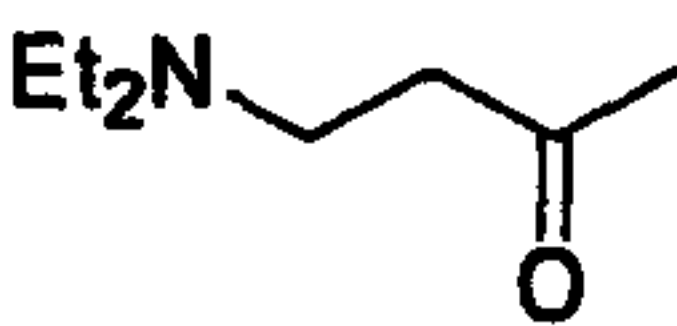
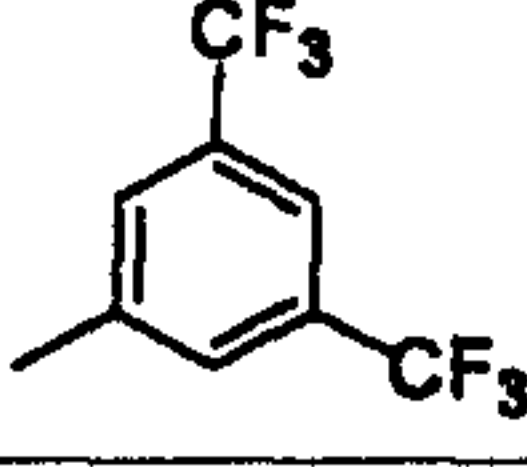
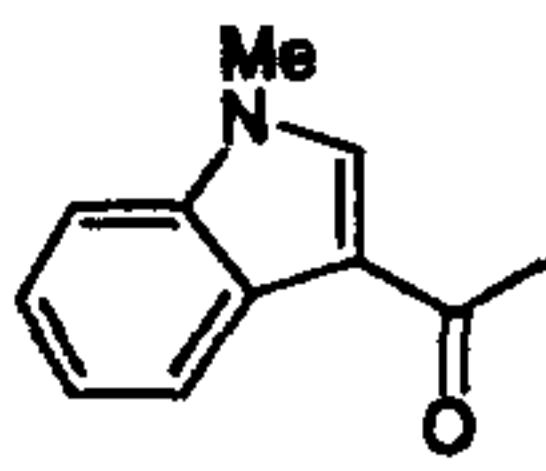
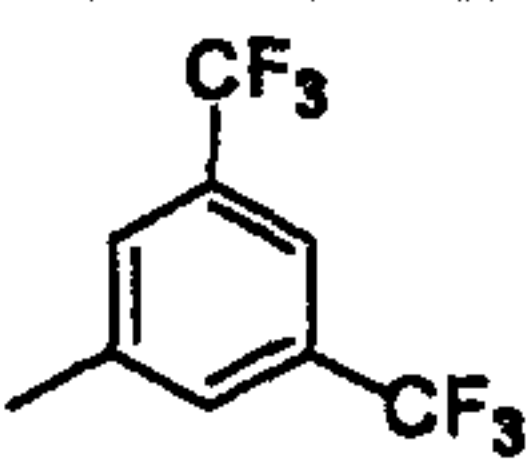
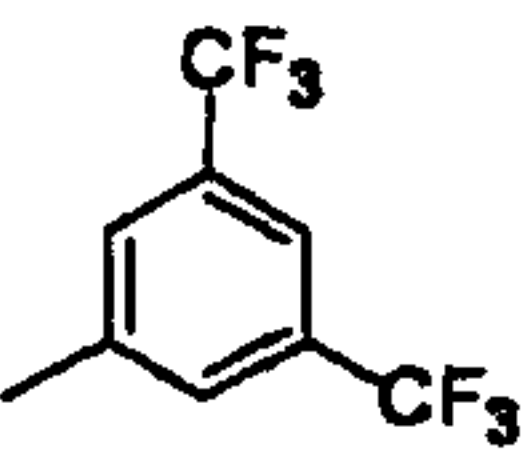
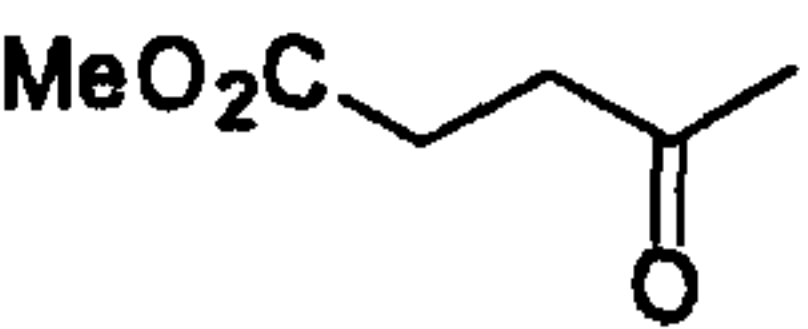
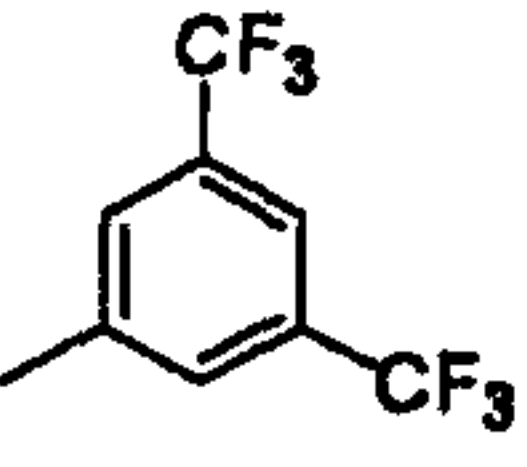
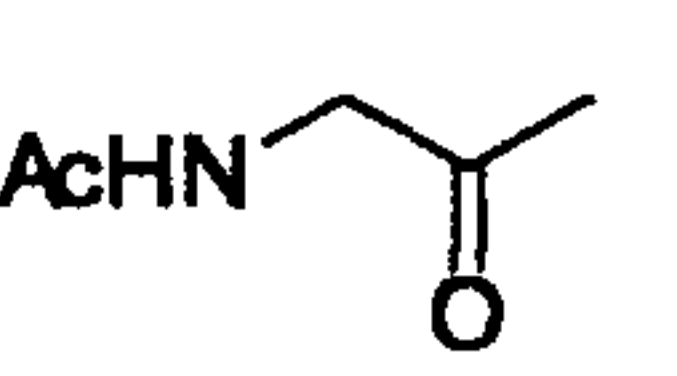
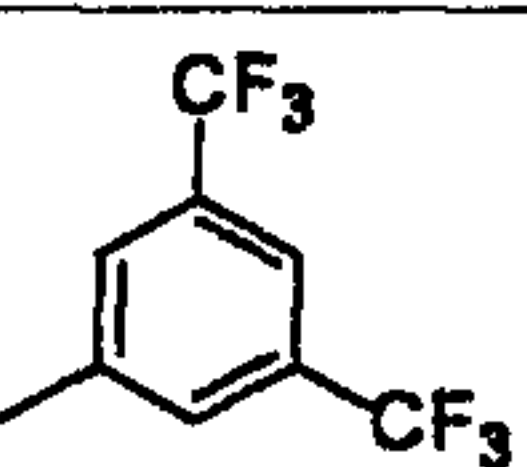
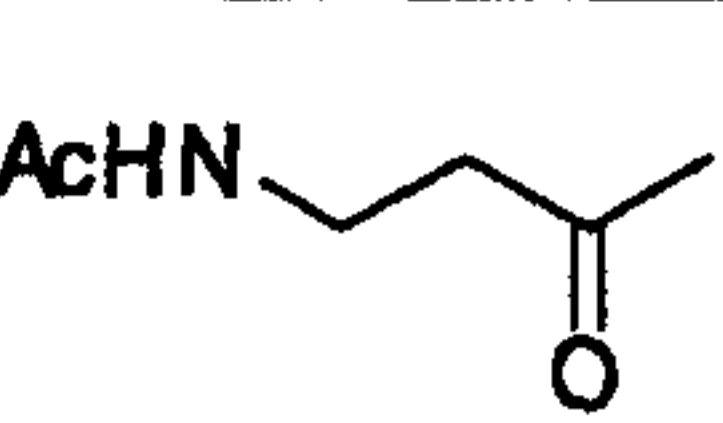
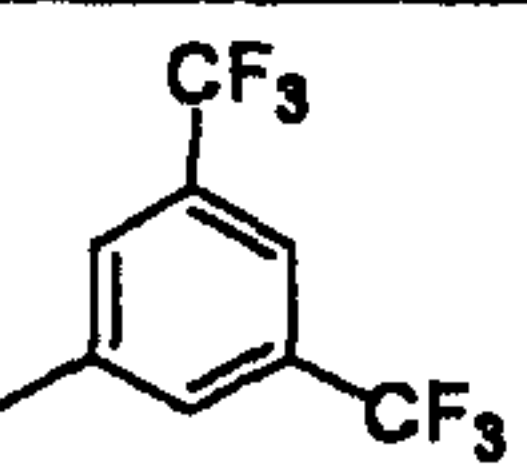
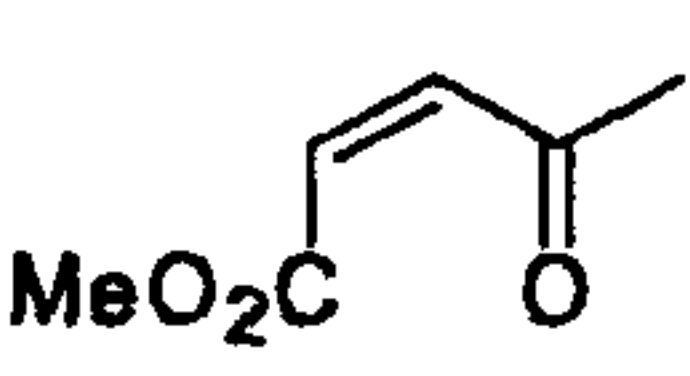
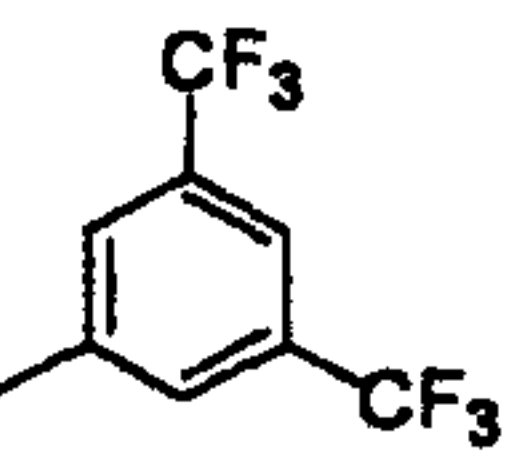
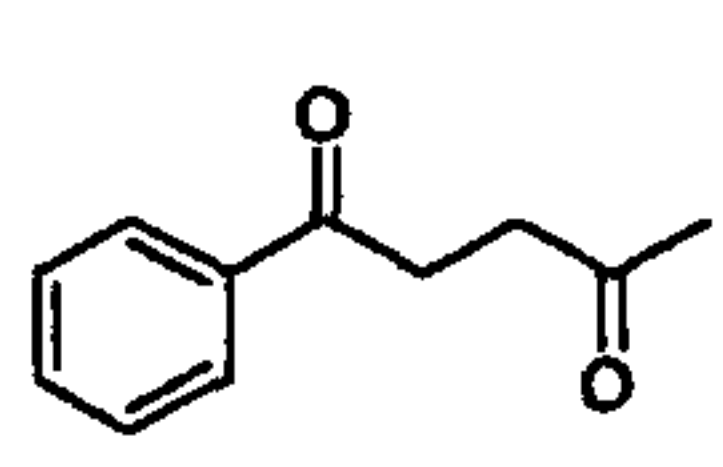
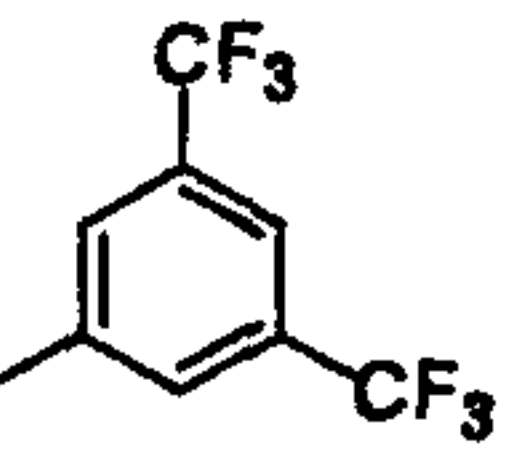
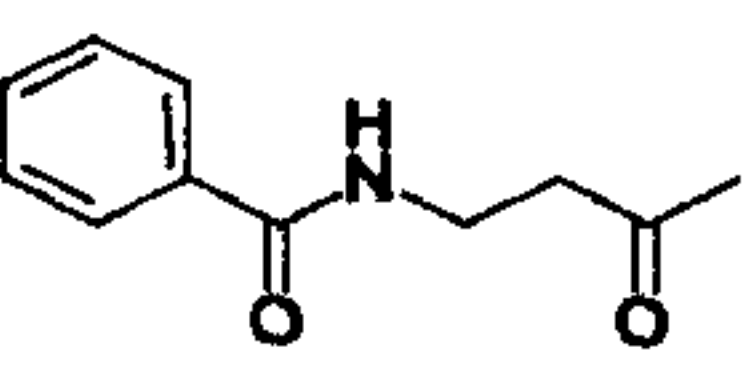
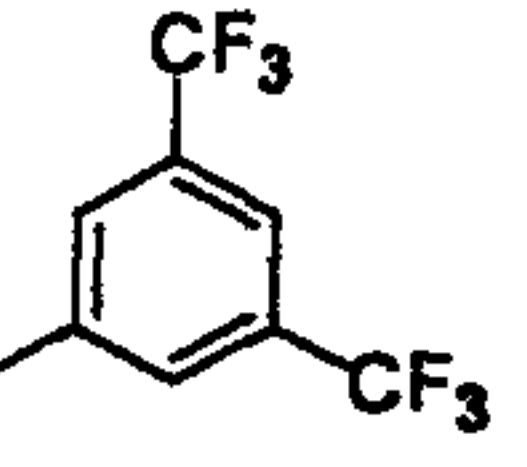
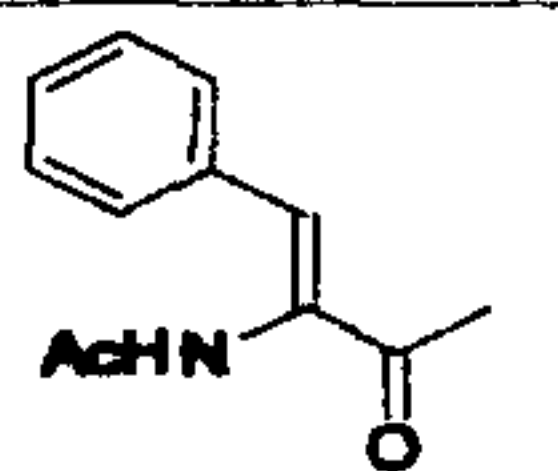
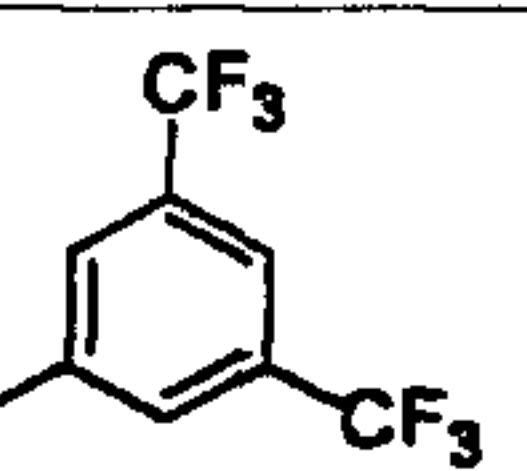
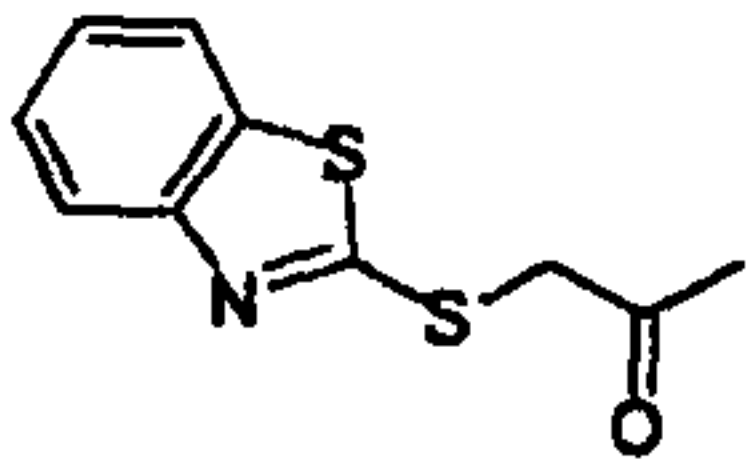
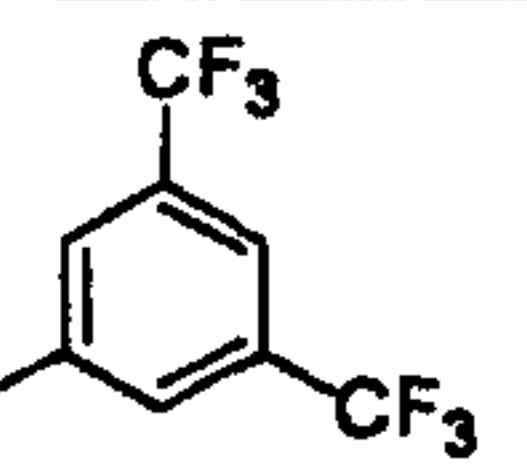
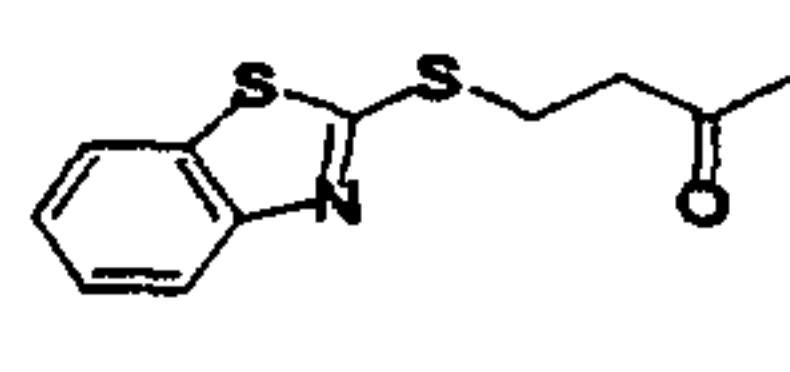
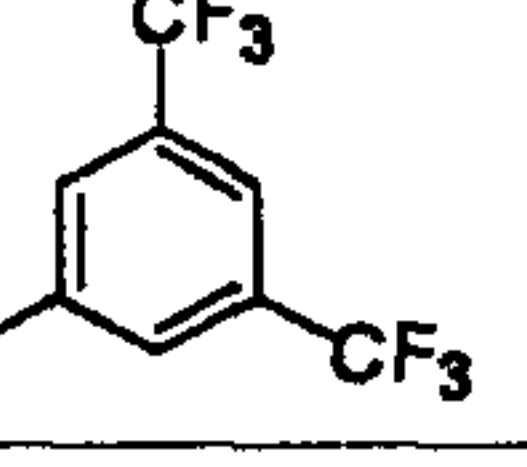
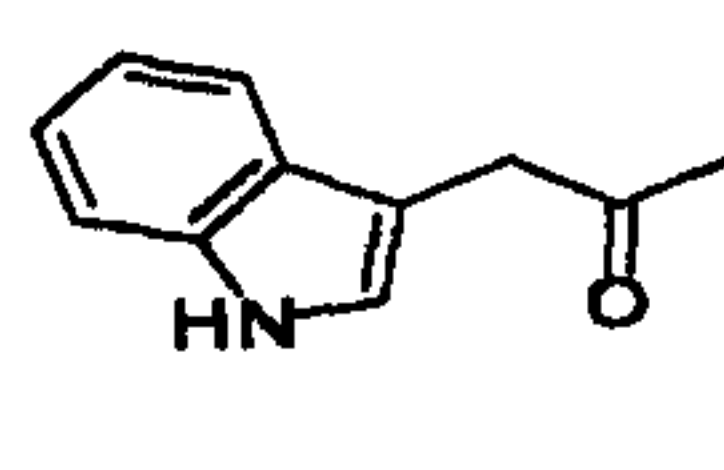
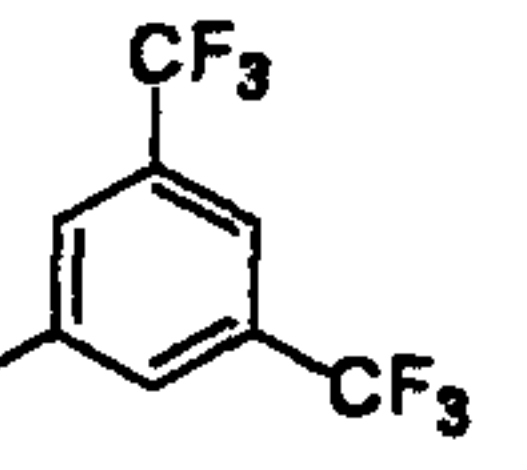
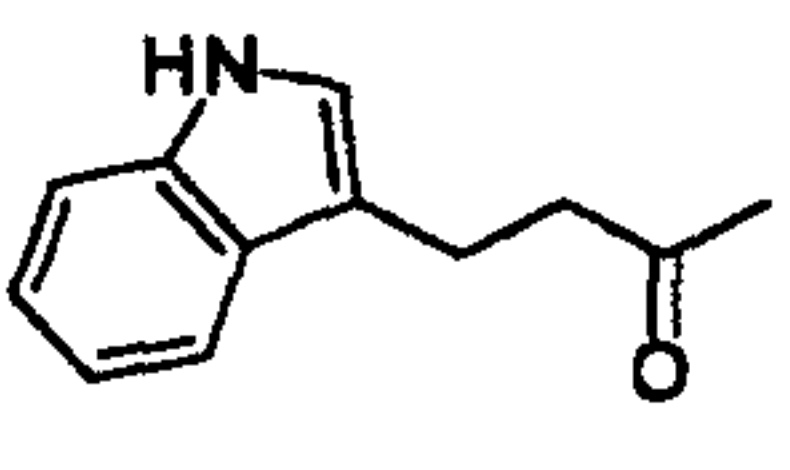
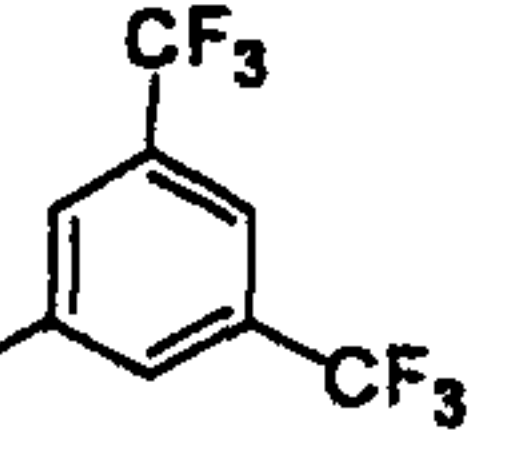
[Table 9]

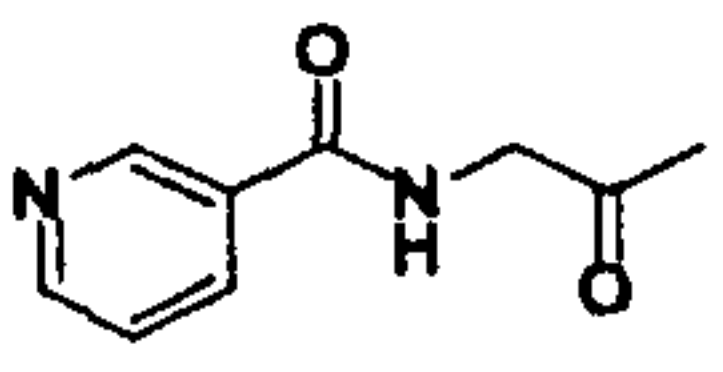
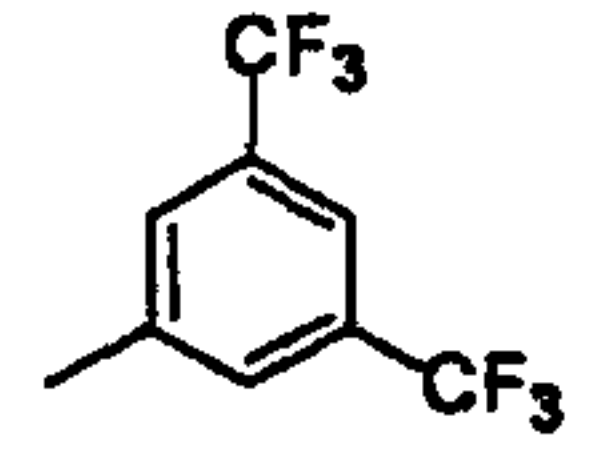
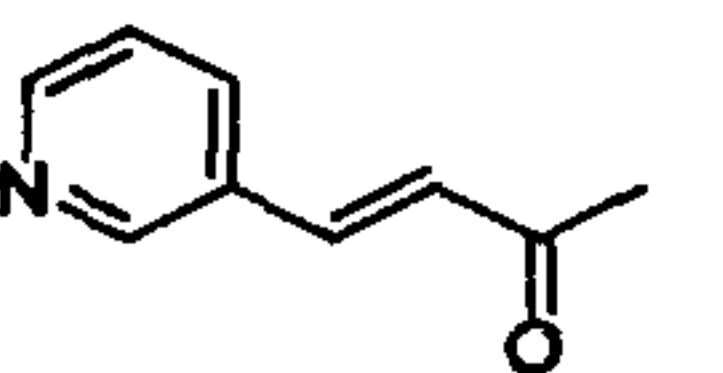
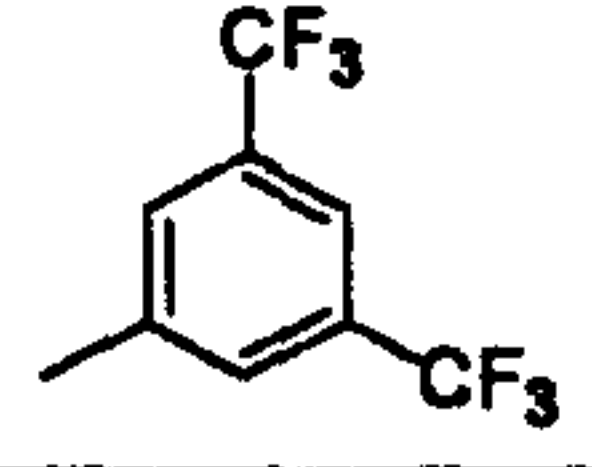
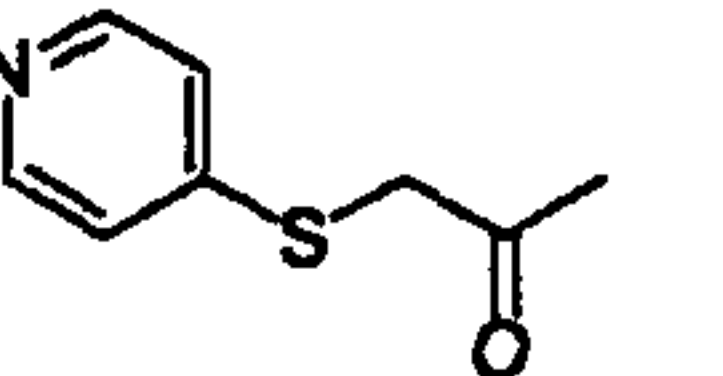
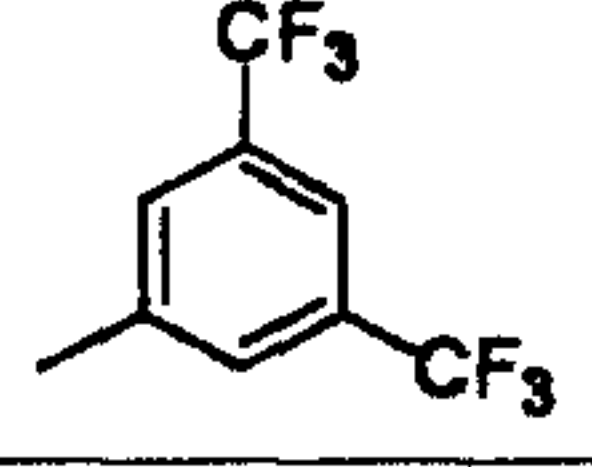
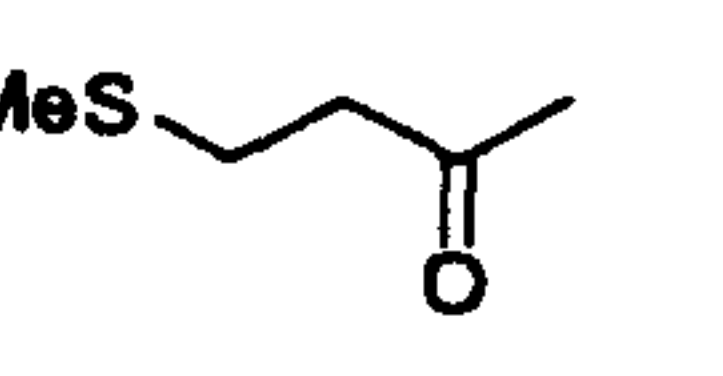
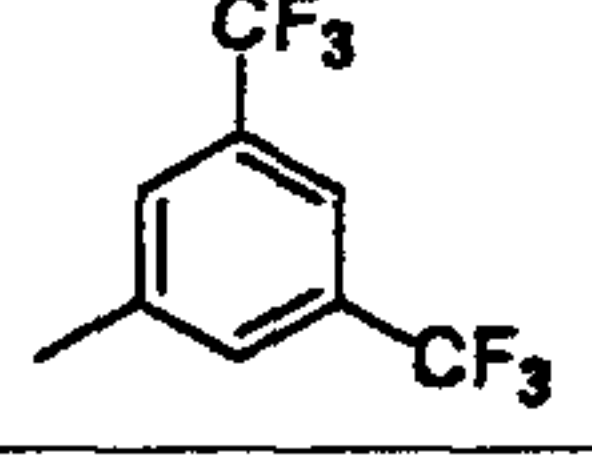
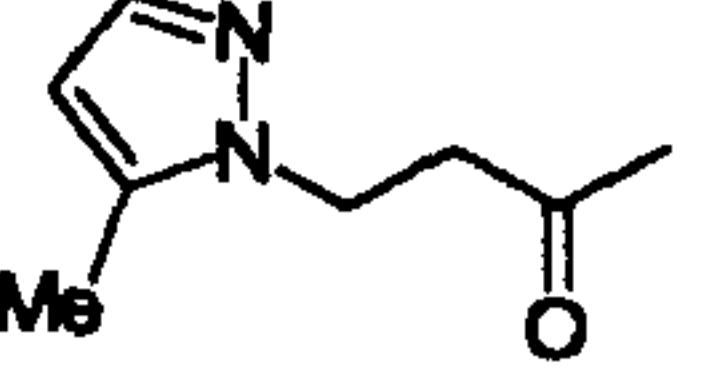
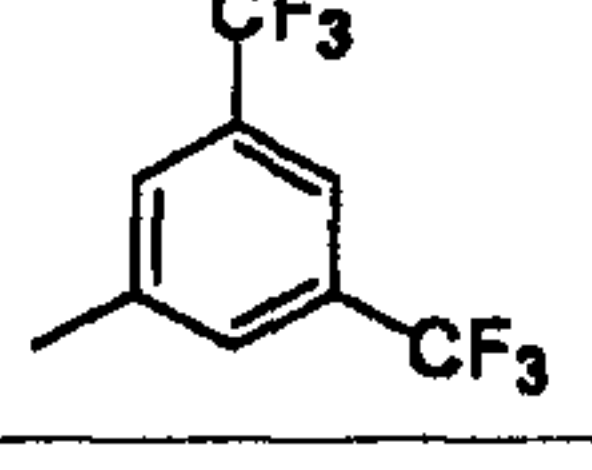
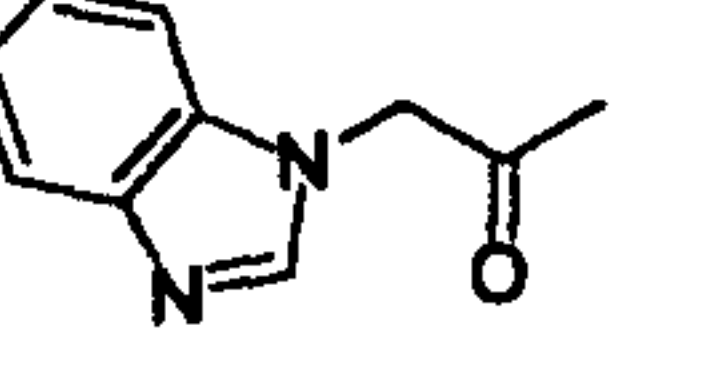
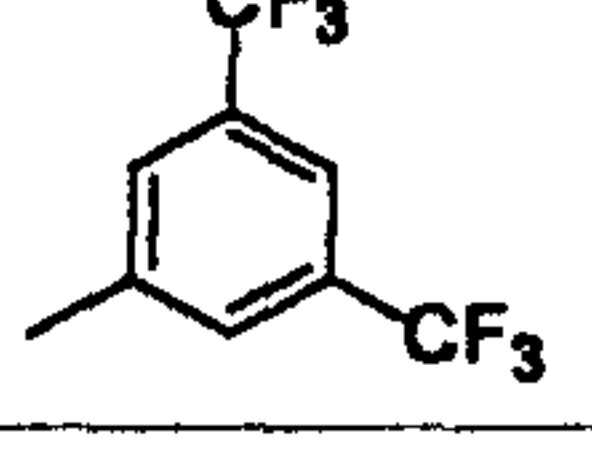
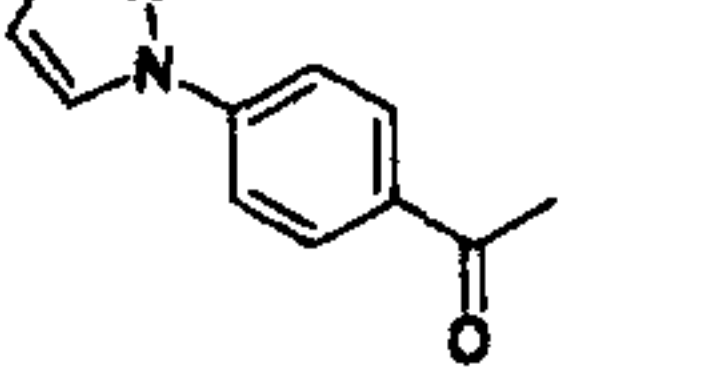
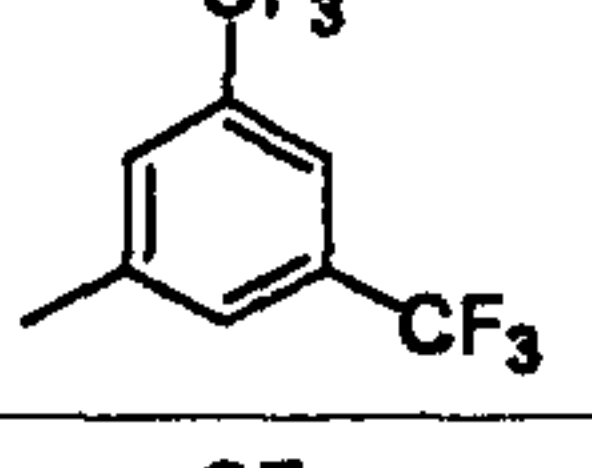
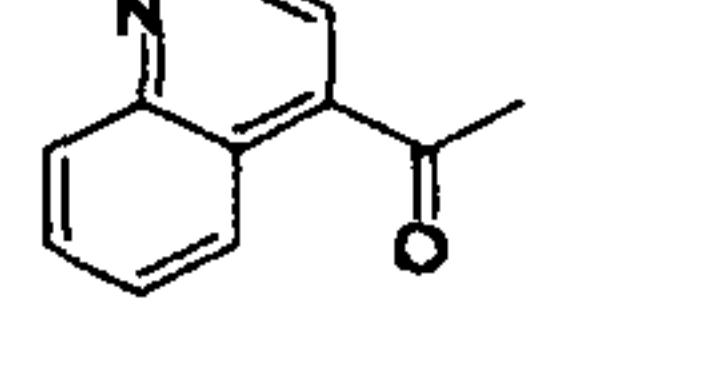
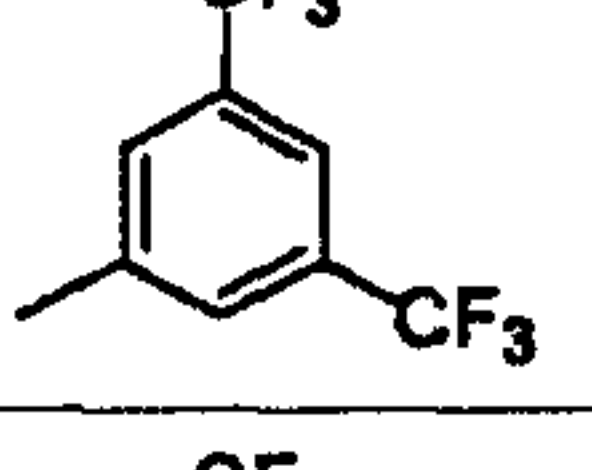
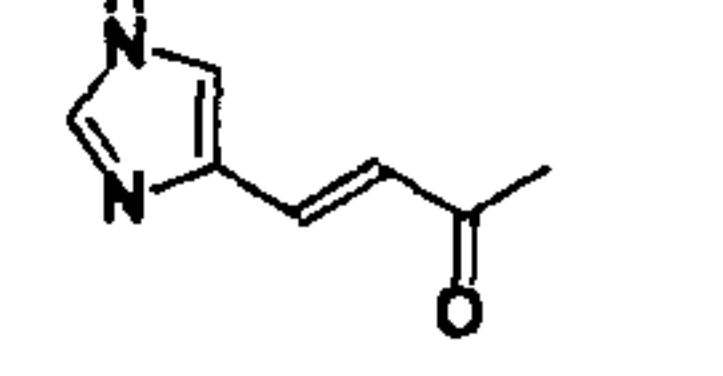
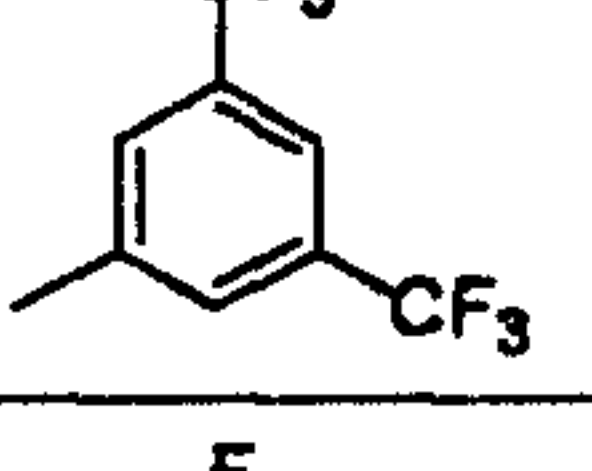
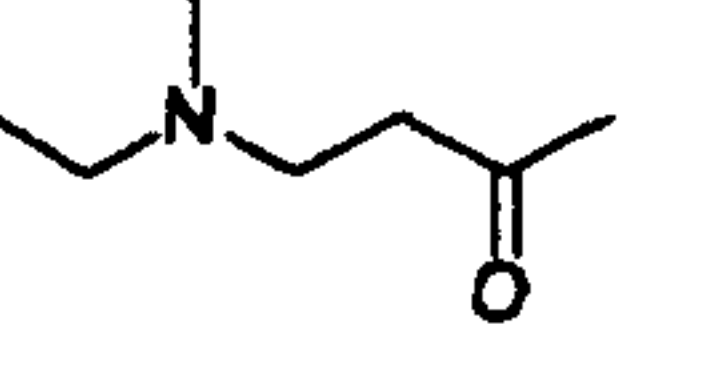
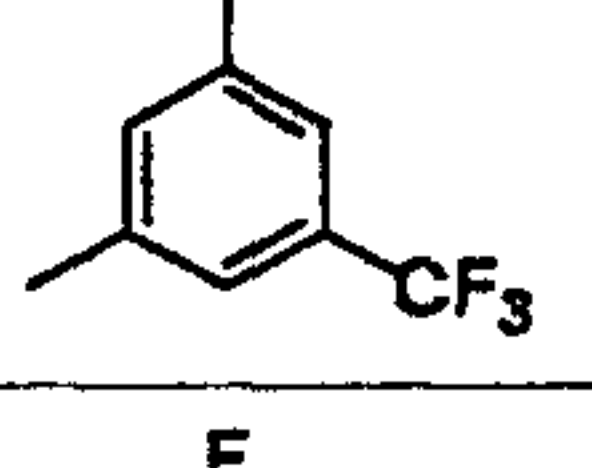
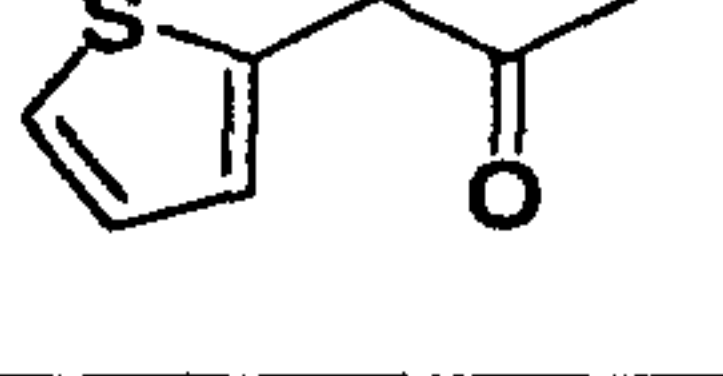
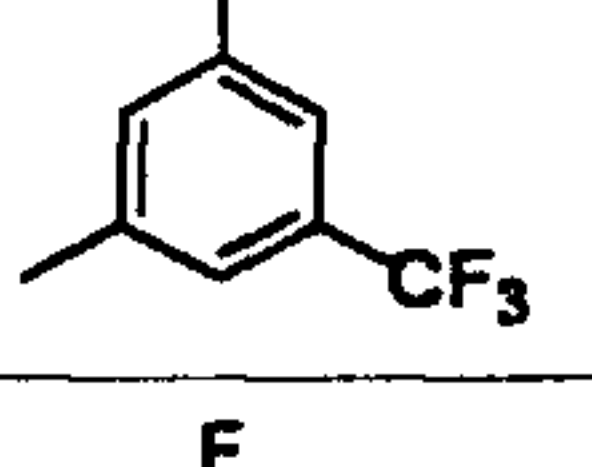
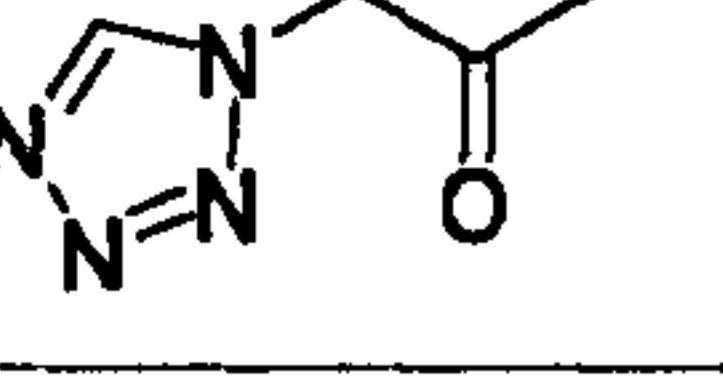
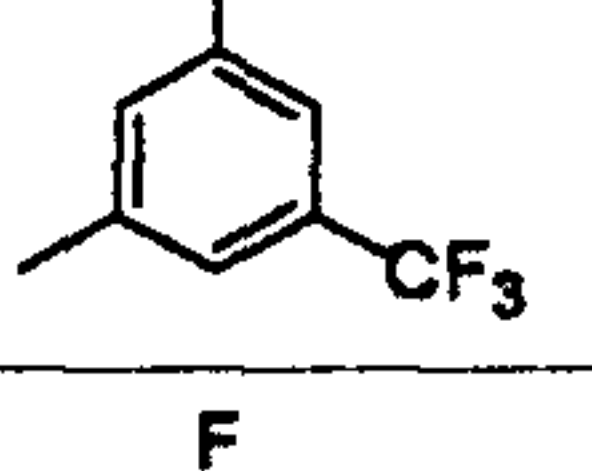
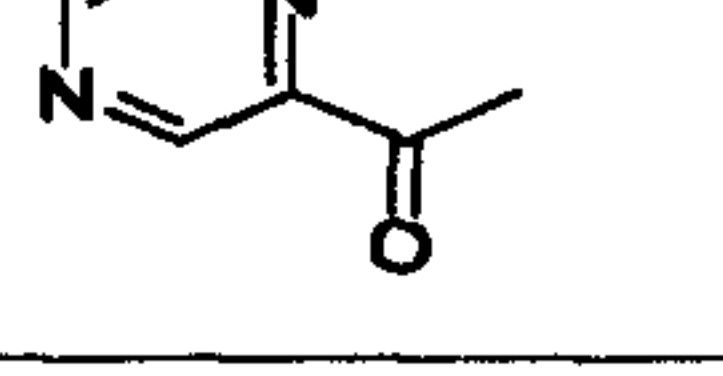
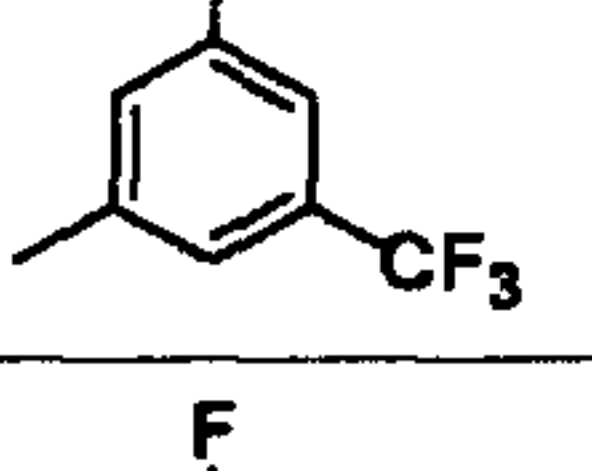
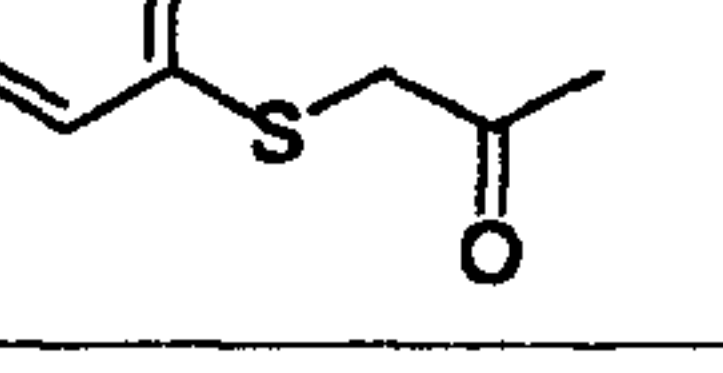
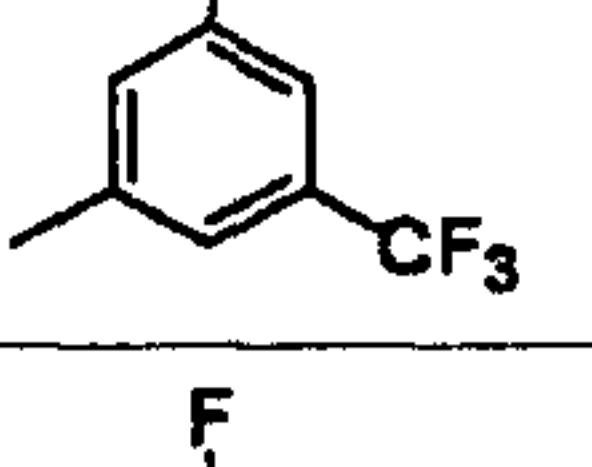
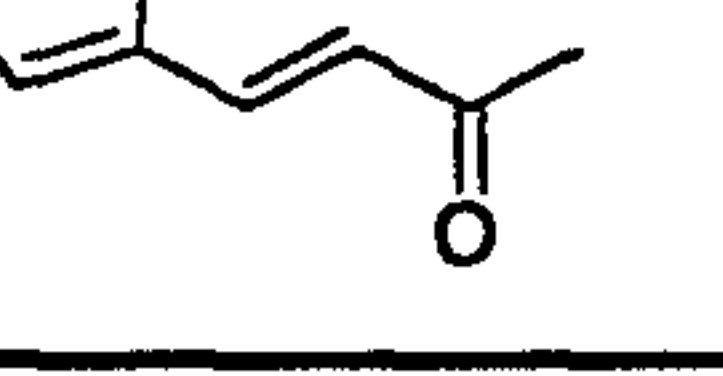
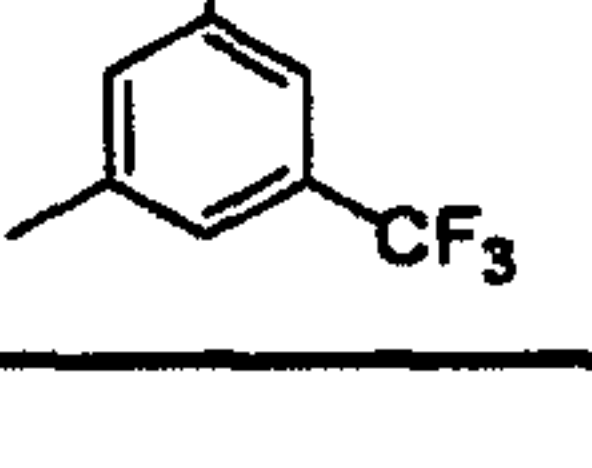


Ex. No.	Stereo-chemistry	R ¹	X	B	R ²	MS (ESI) (M+H) ⁺
89	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		H	633
90	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		H	618
91	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		H	604
92	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		H	600
93	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		H	644
94	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		H	614
95	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		H	677
96	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		H	604
97	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		H	621

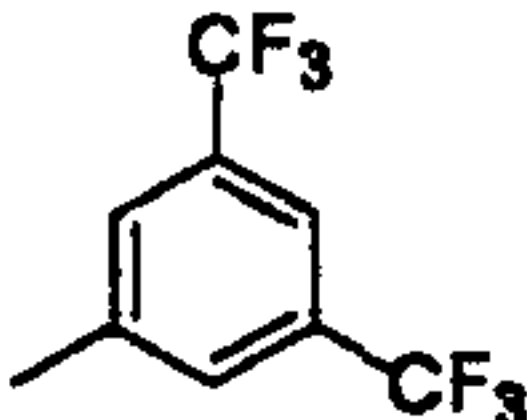
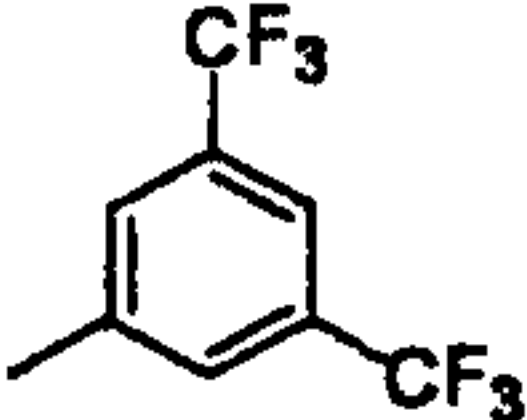
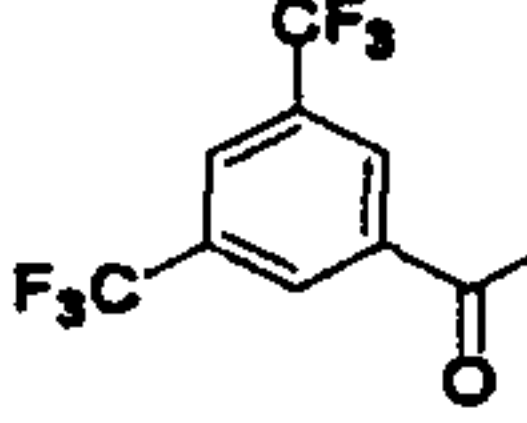
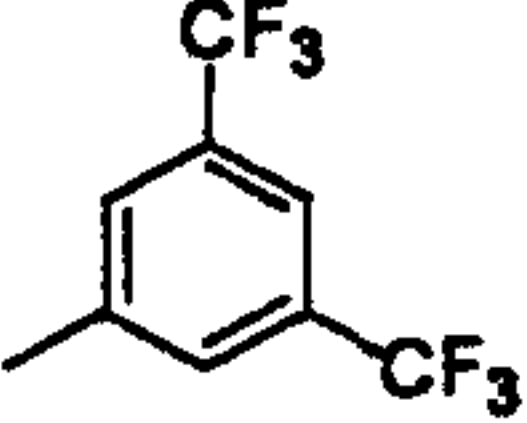
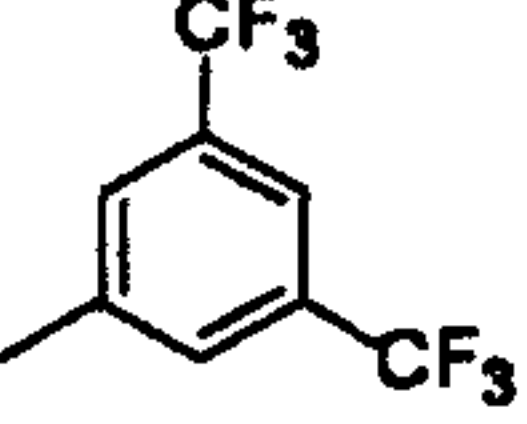
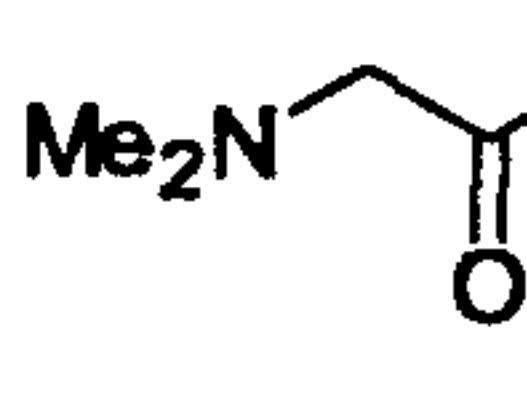
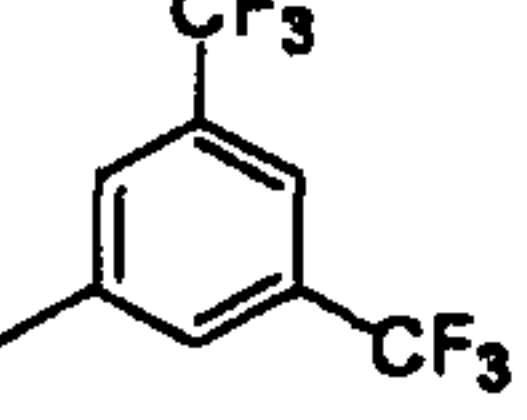
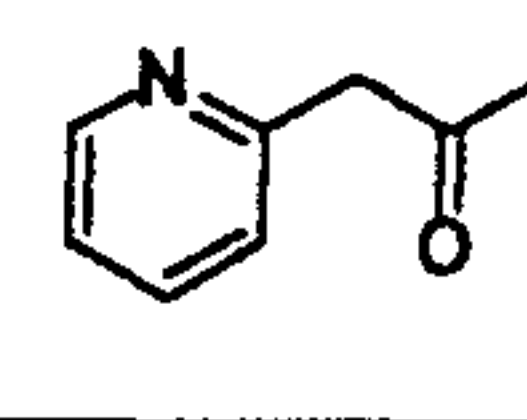
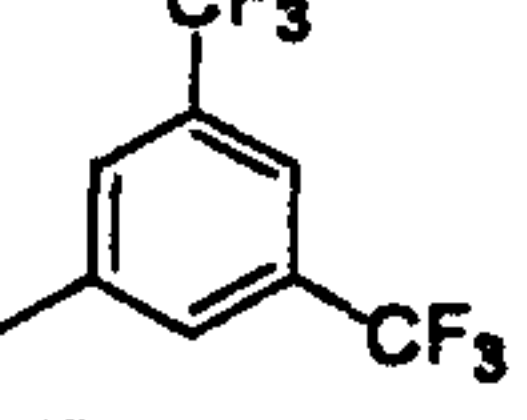
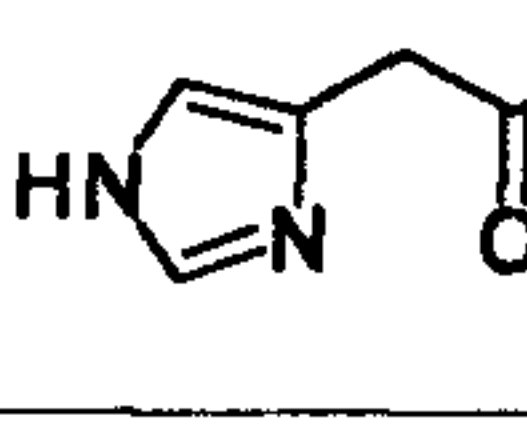
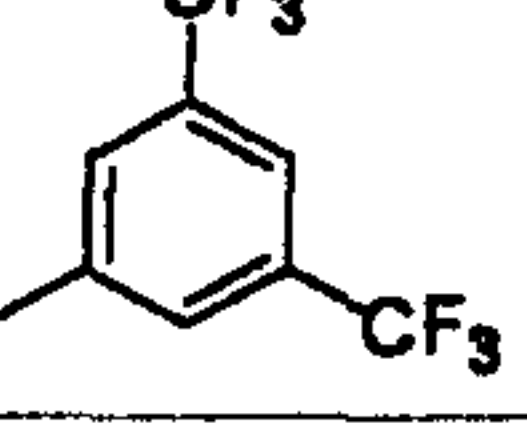
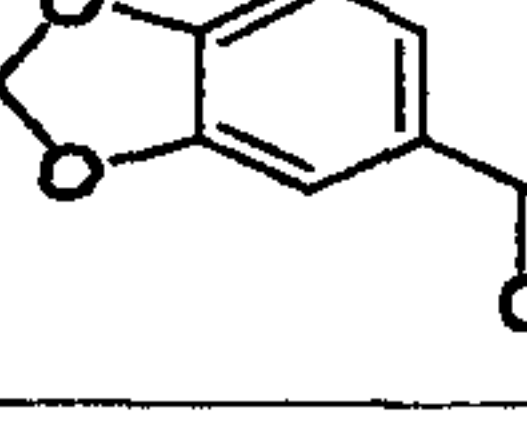
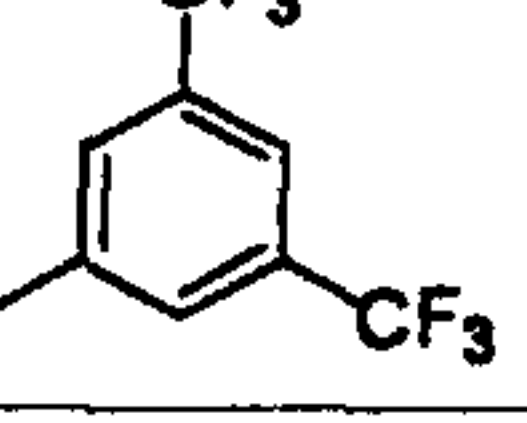
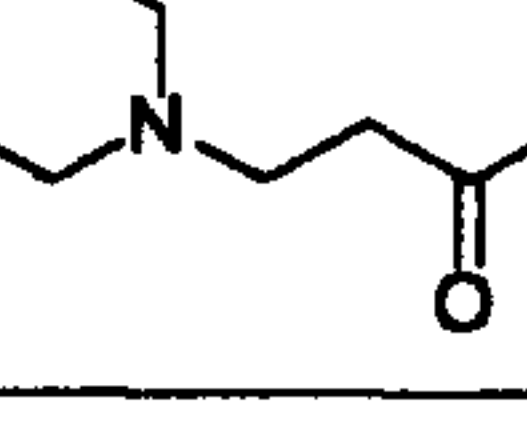
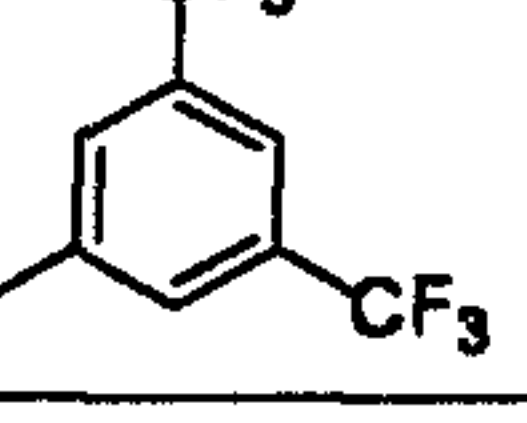
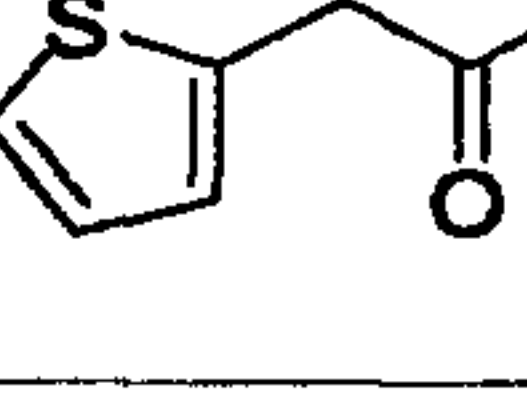
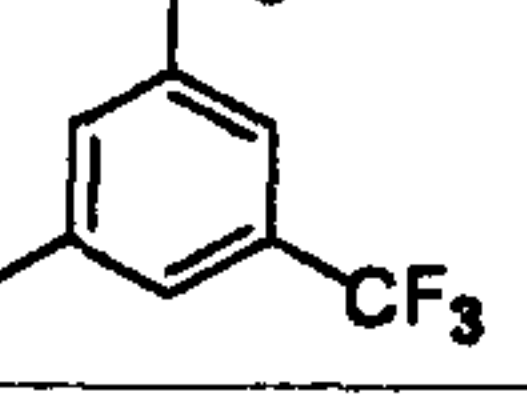
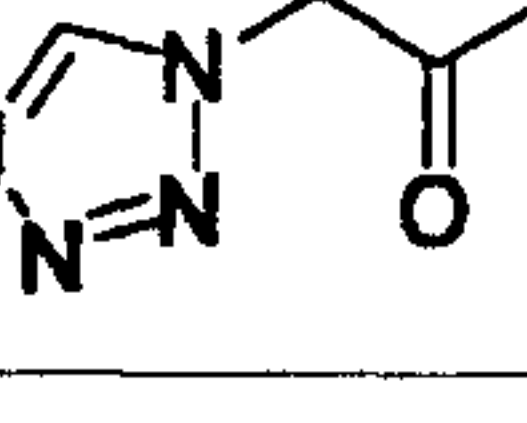
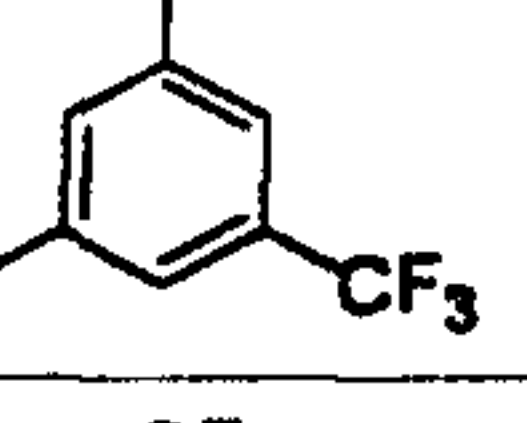
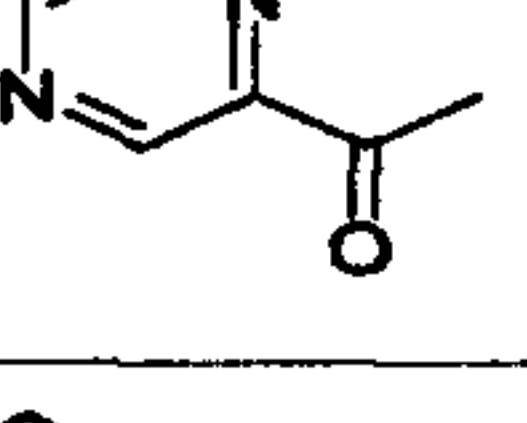
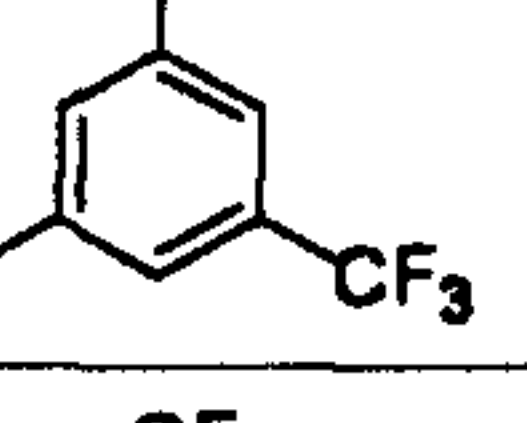
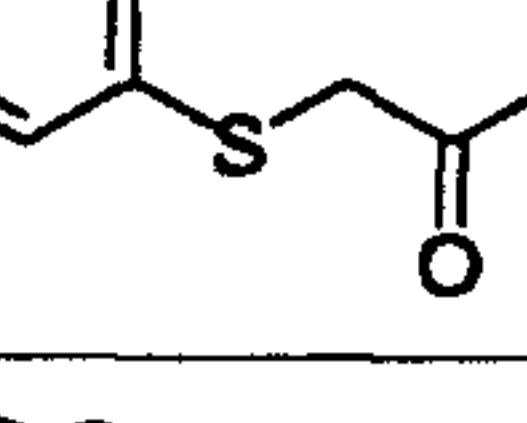
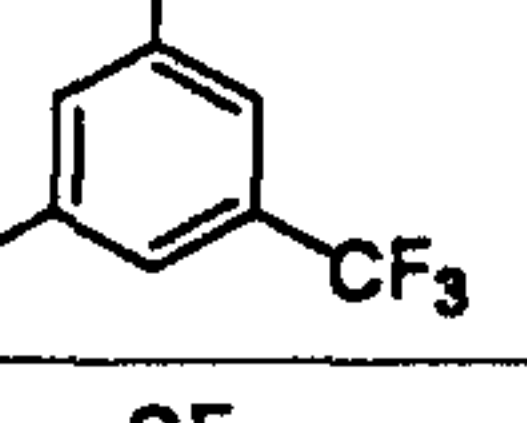
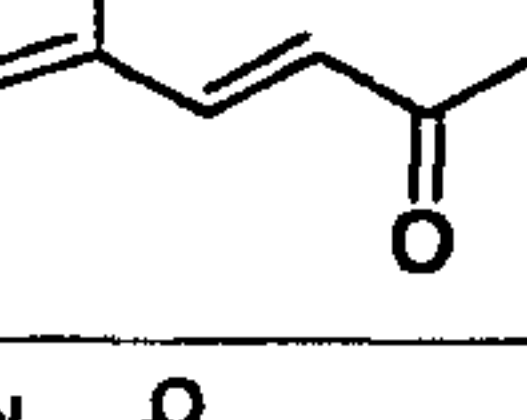
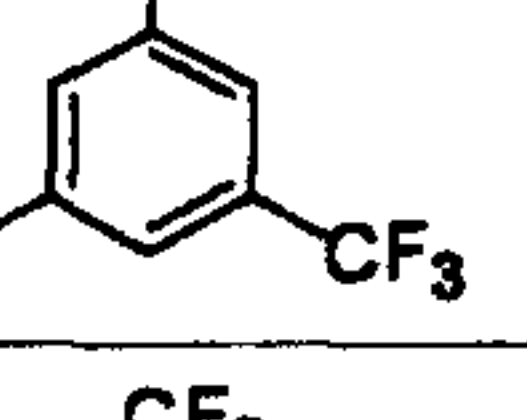
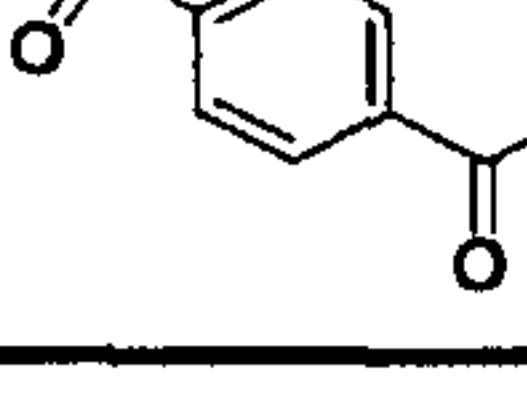
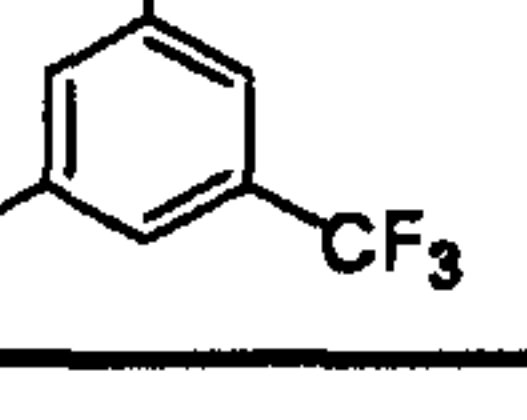
98	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		H	651
99	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		H	608
100	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		H	593
101	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		H	621
102	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		H	606
103	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		H	654
104	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		H	669
105	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		H	681
106	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		H	701
107	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		H	715
108	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		H	651
109	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		H	665
110	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		H	679
111	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		H	656

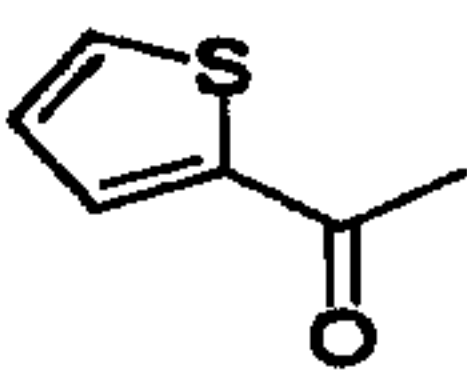
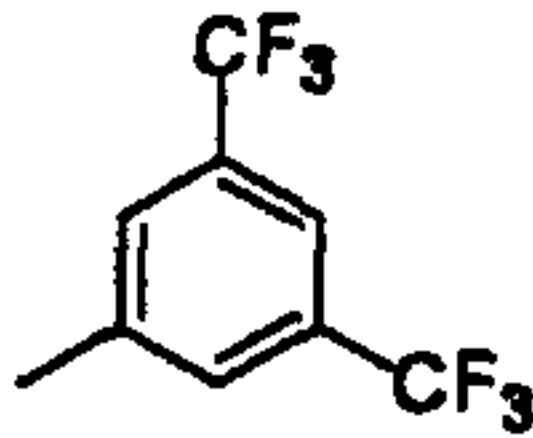
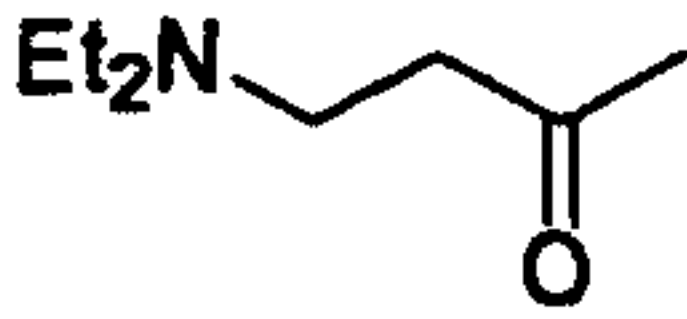
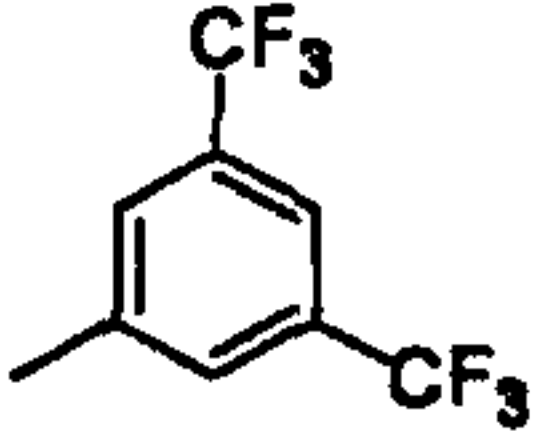
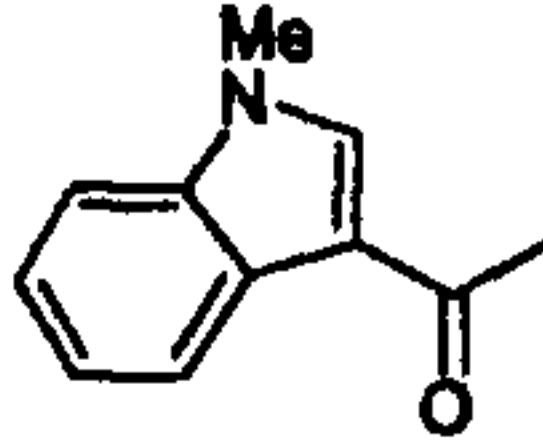
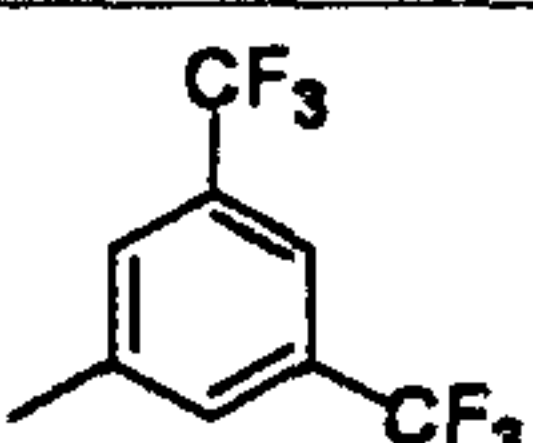
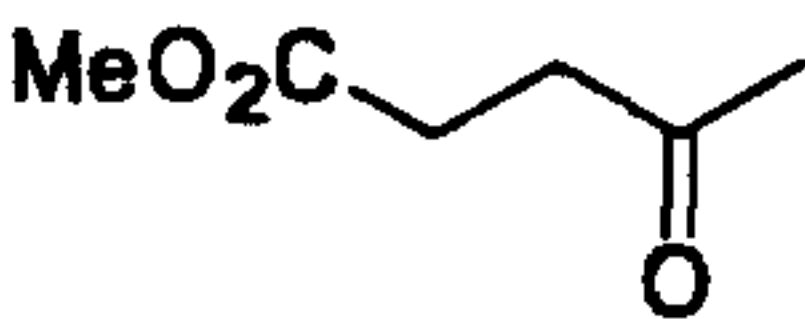
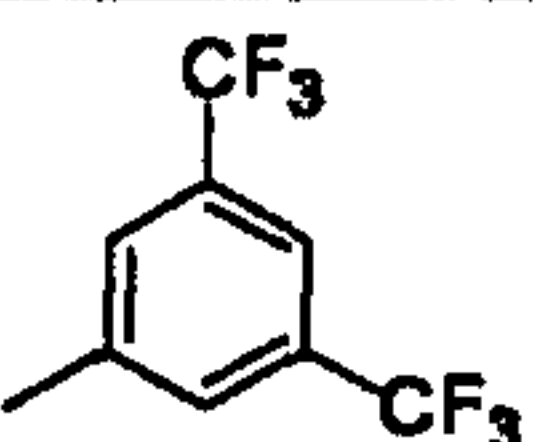
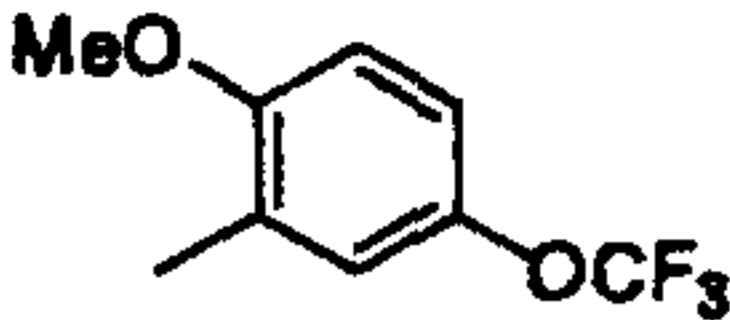
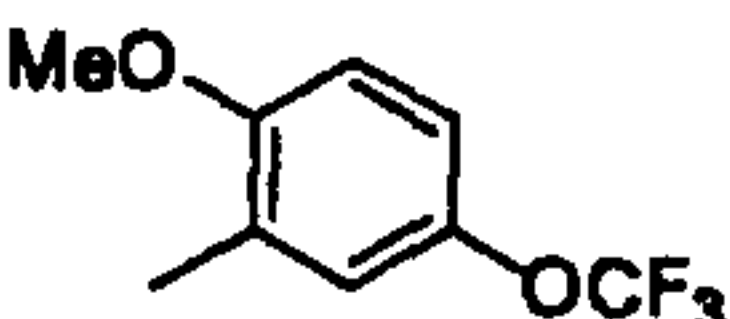
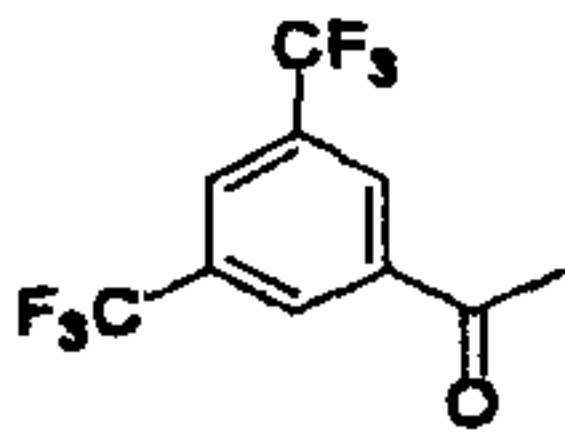
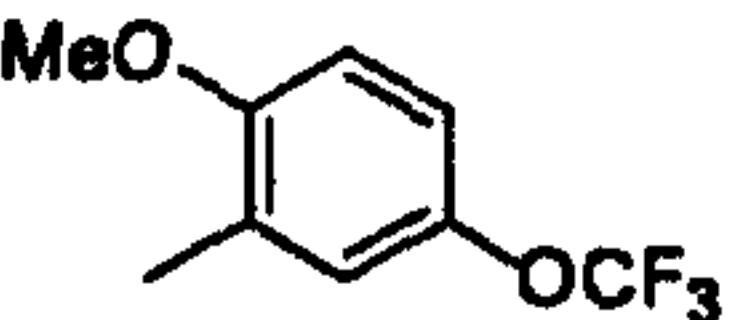
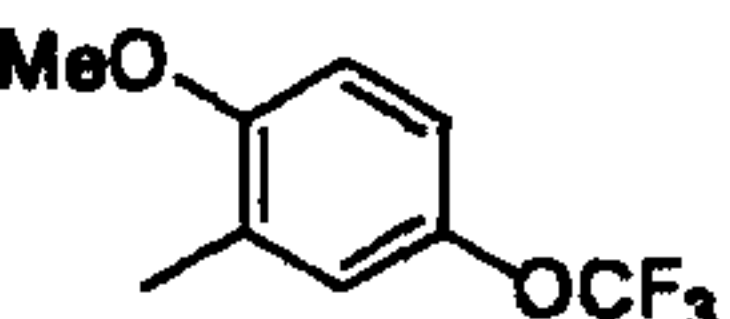
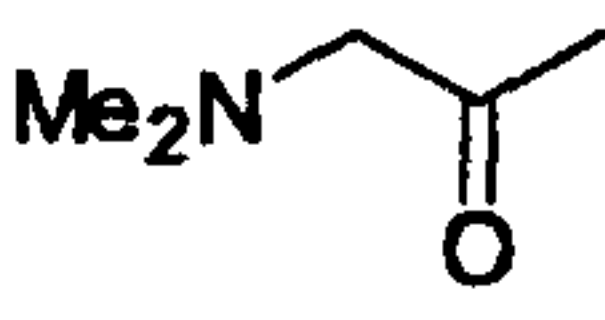
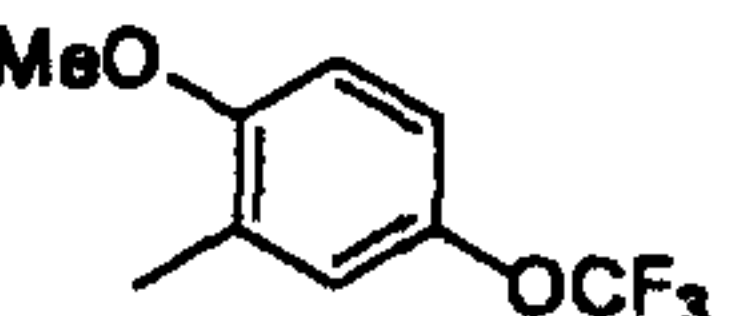
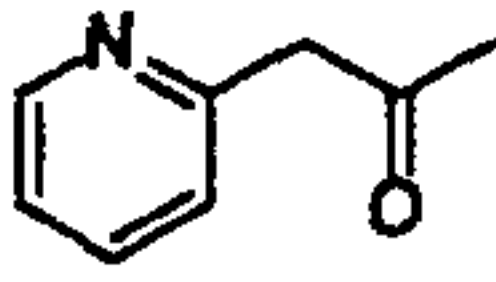
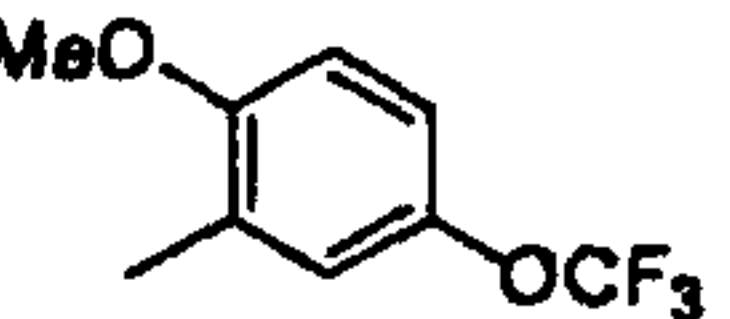
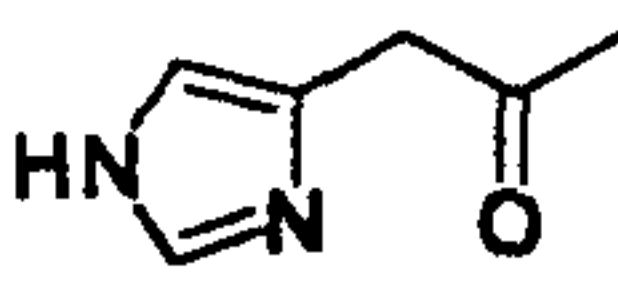
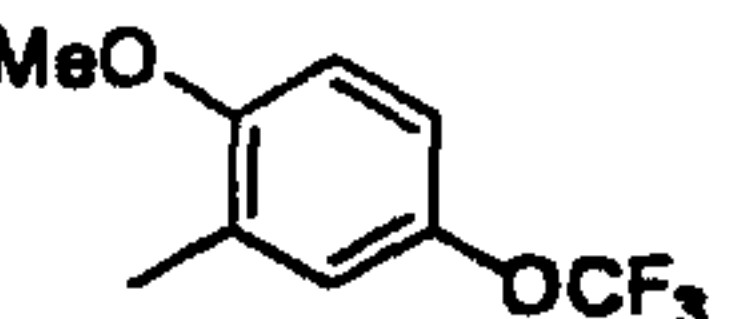
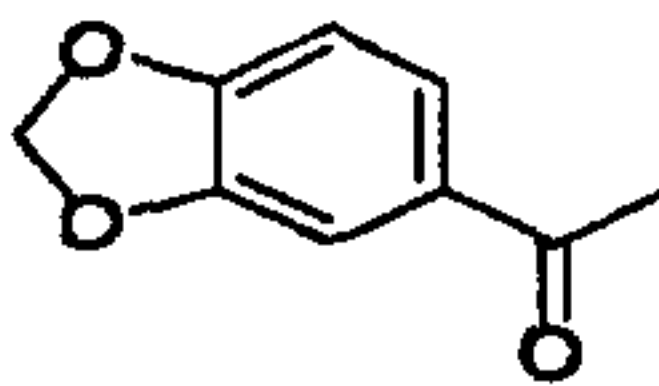
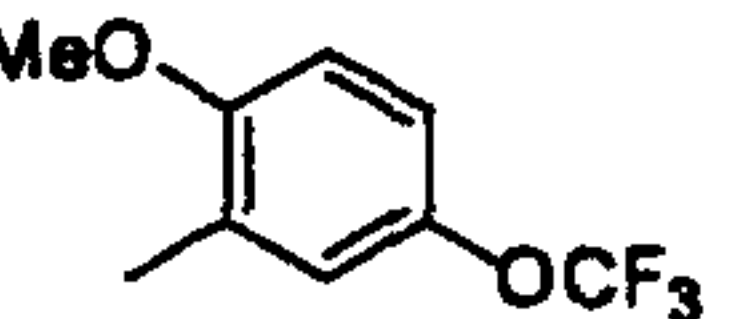
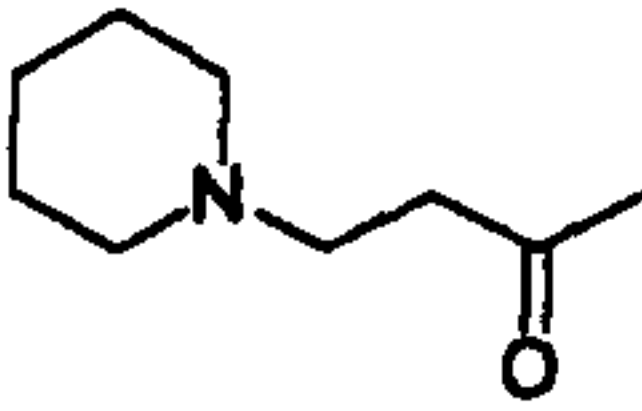
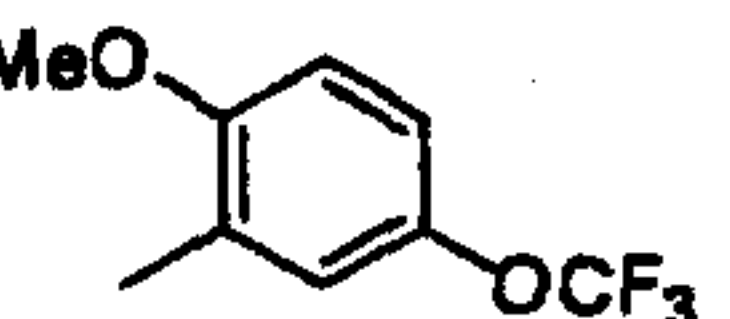
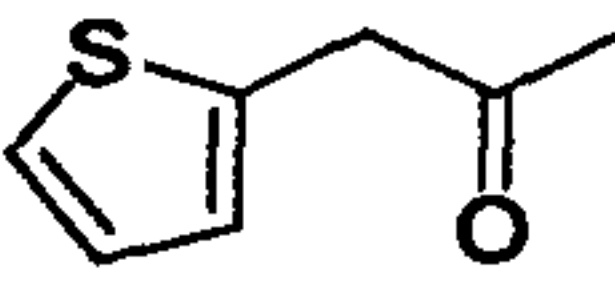
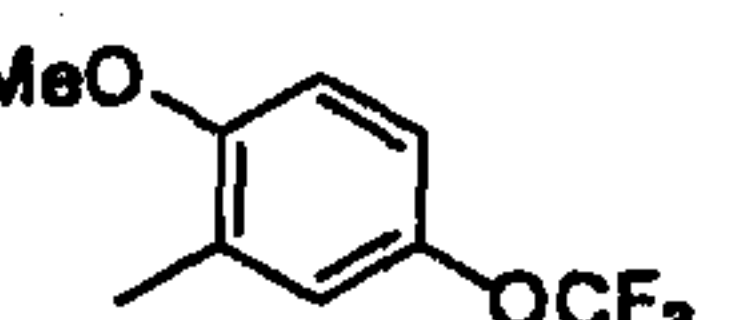
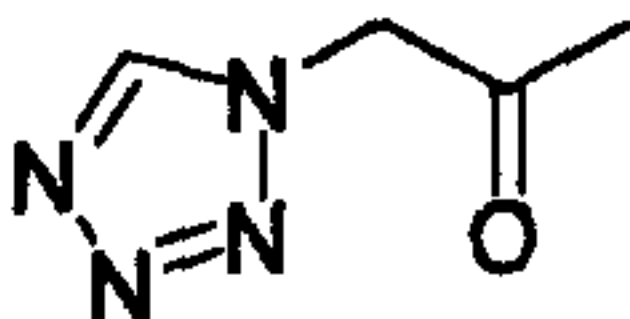
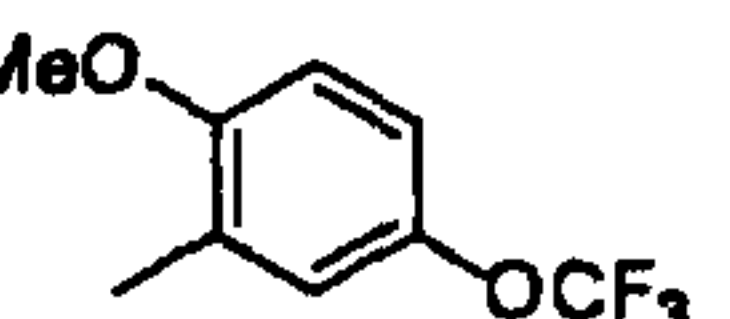
112	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		H	625
113	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		H	645
114	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		H	596
115	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		H	630
116	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		H	652
117	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		H	665
118	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		H	649
119	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		H	614
153	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	669
154	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	654
155	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	640
156	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	636
157	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	680
158	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	650
159	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	713

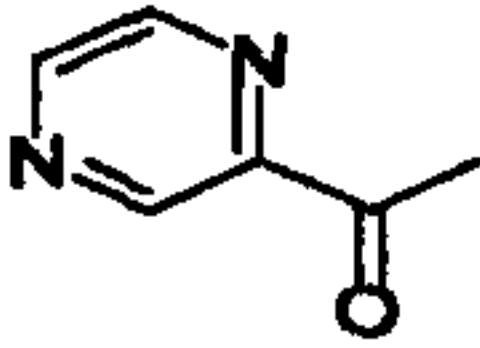
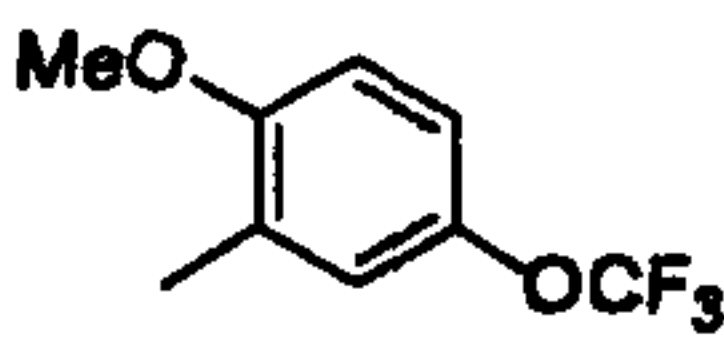
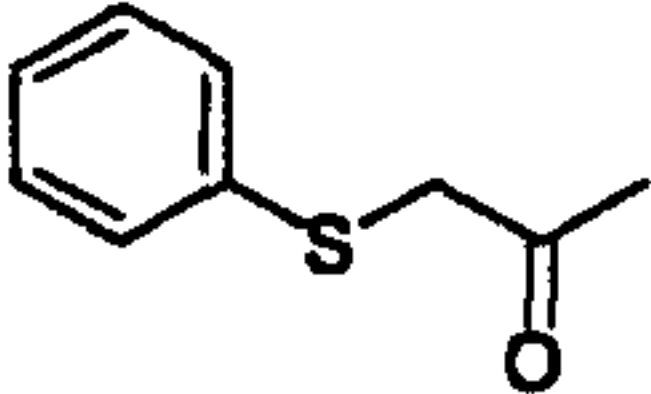
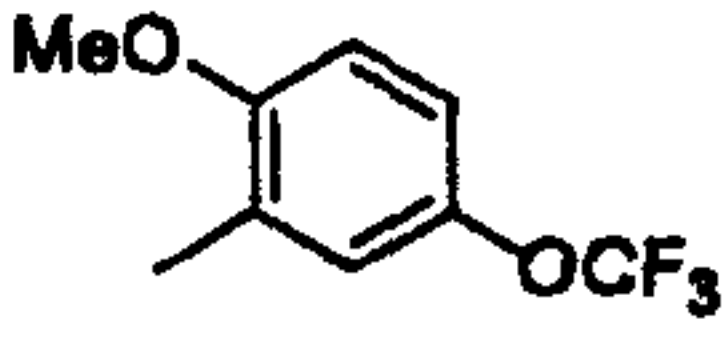
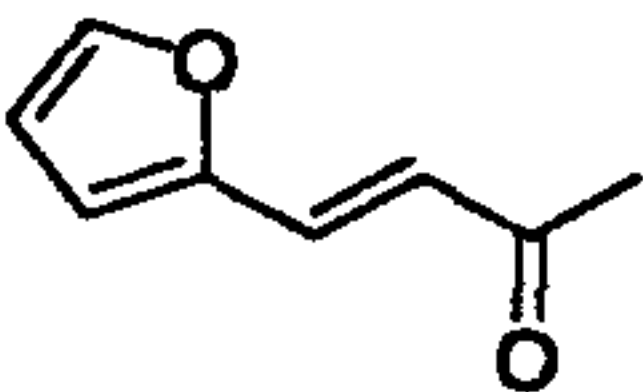
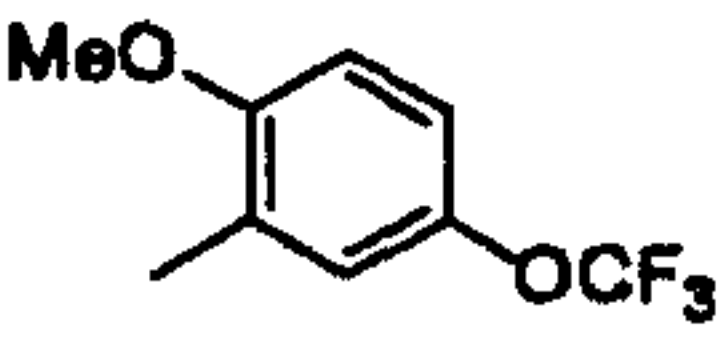
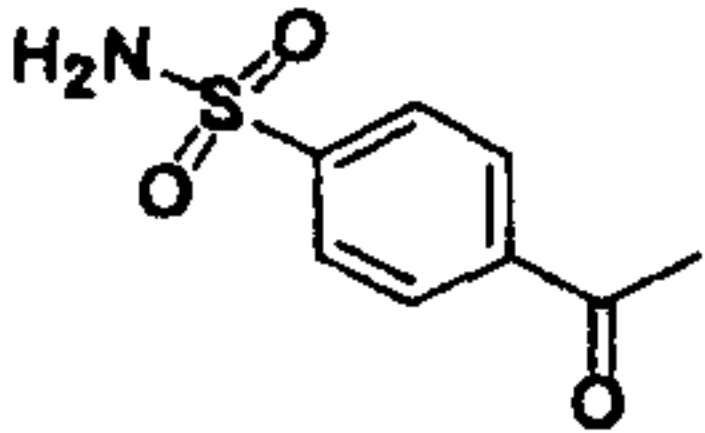
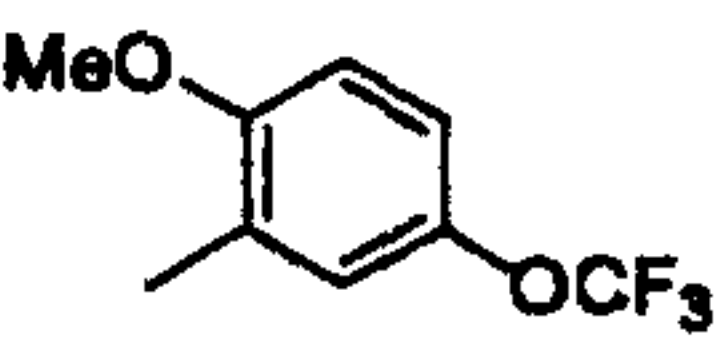
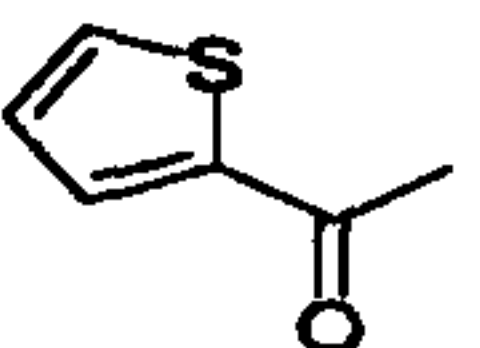
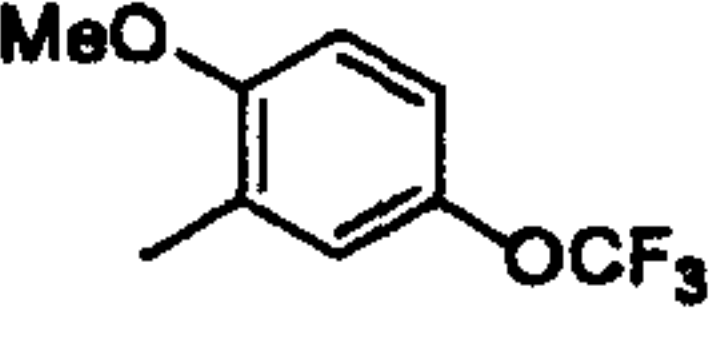
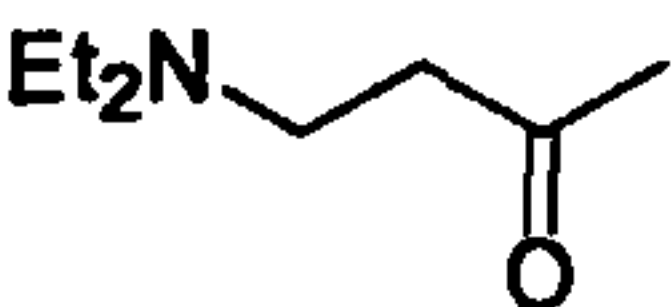
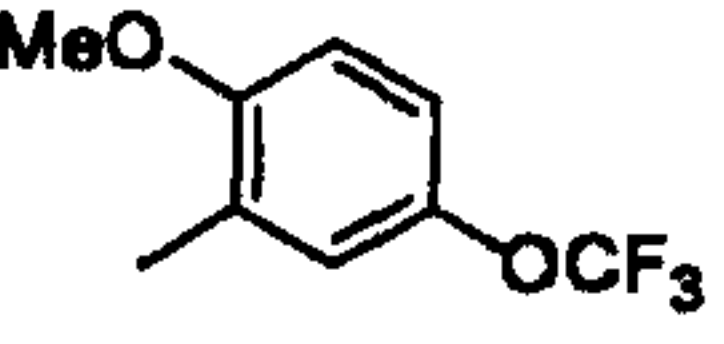
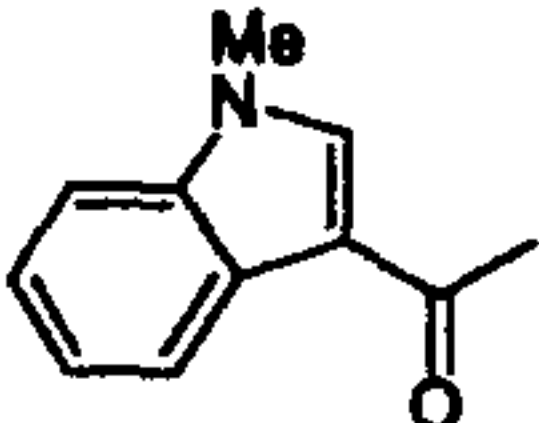
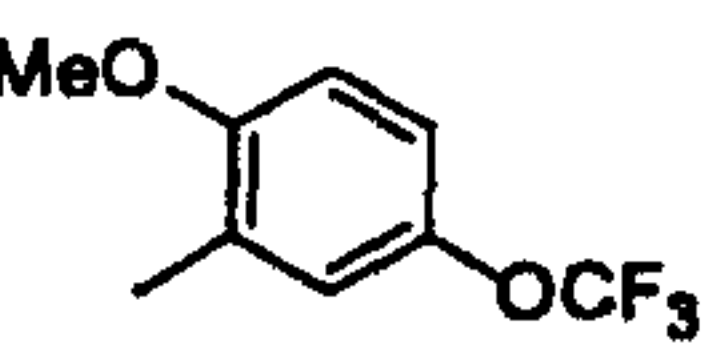
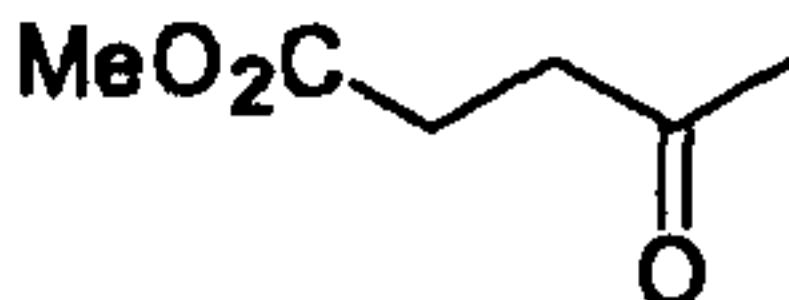
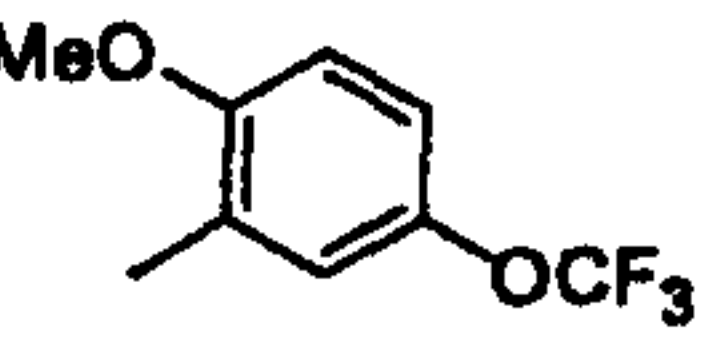
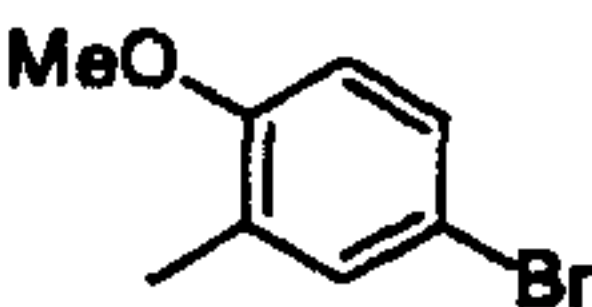
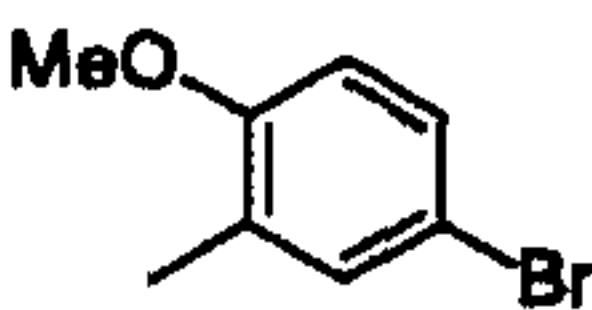
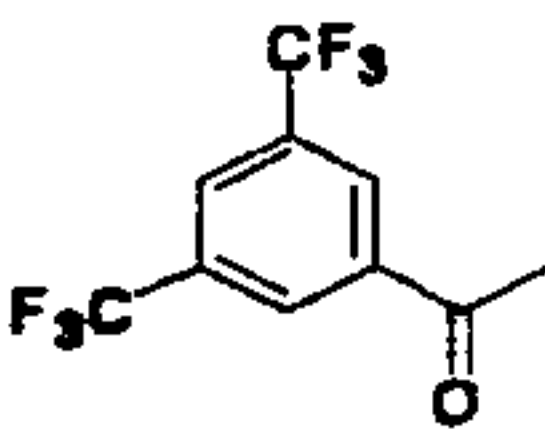
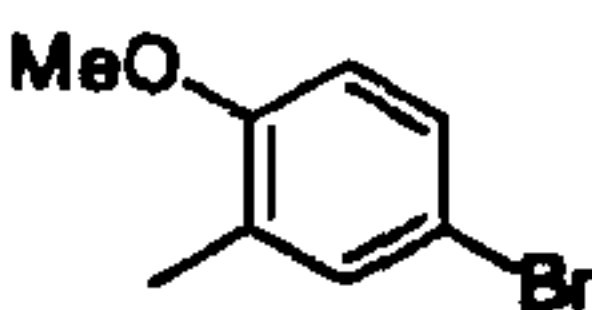
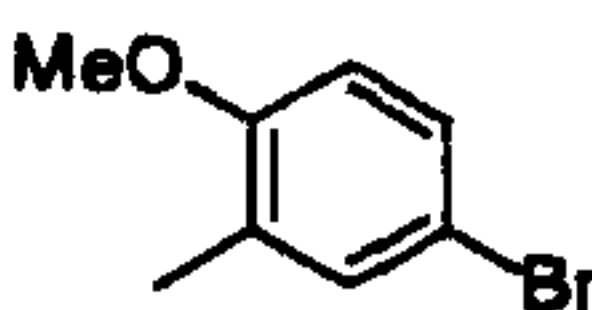
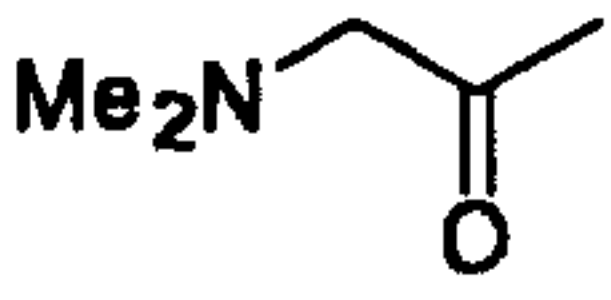
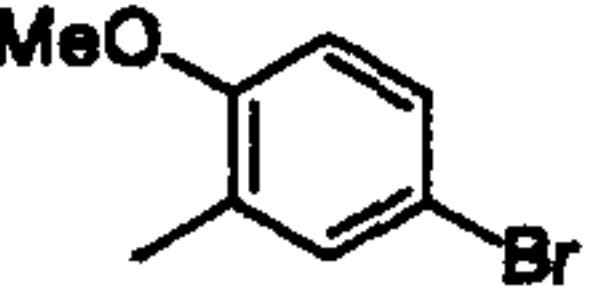
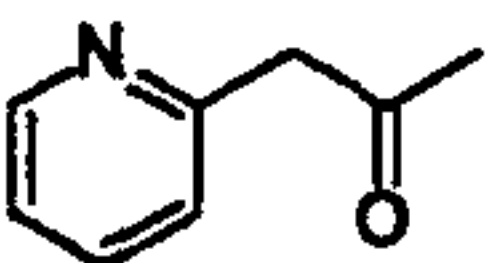
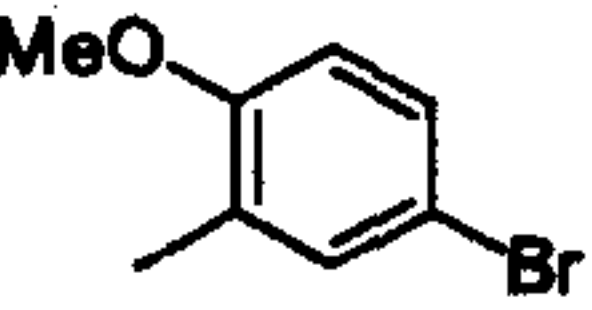
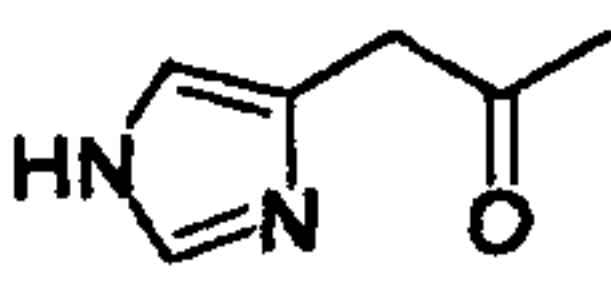
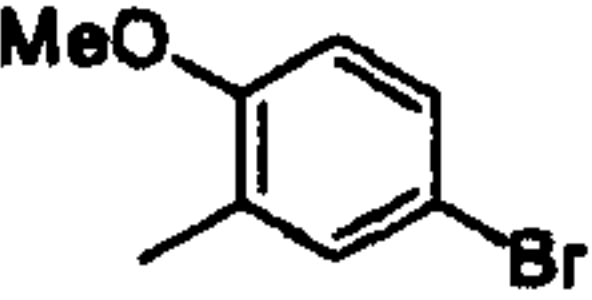
160	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	640
161	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	657
162	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	687
163	(±)- <i>cis</i>	NCCH ₂ CO	O		4-F	597
164	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	644
165	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	629
166	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	657
167	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	642
168	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	690
169	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	705
170	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	717
171	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	737
172	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	751
173	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	687
174	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	701

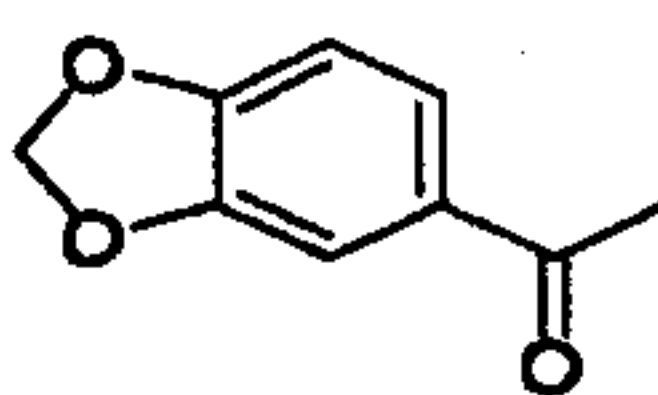
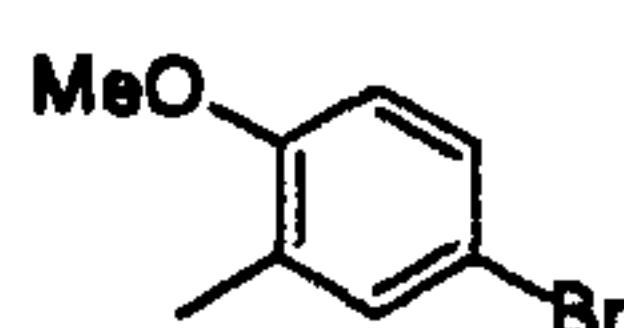
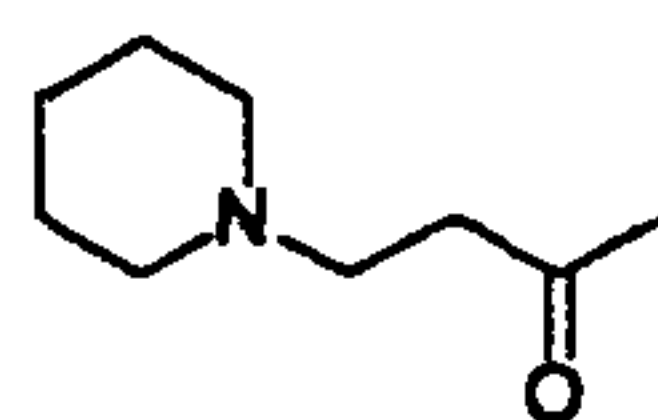
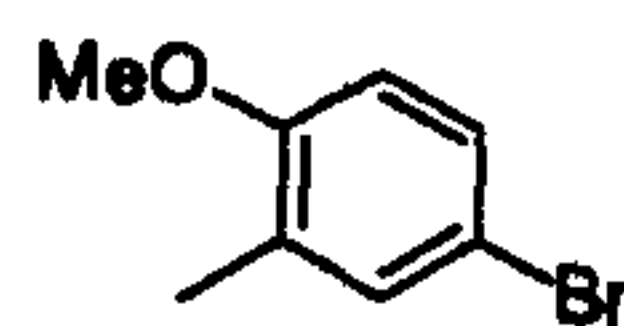
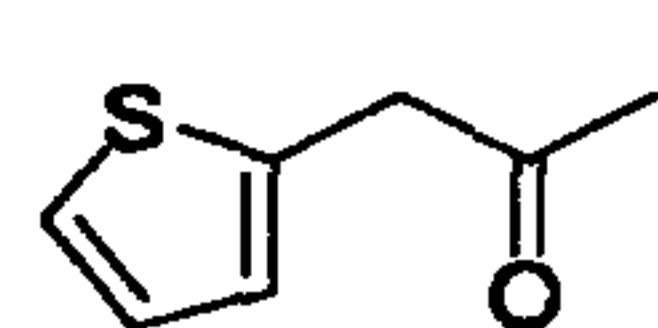
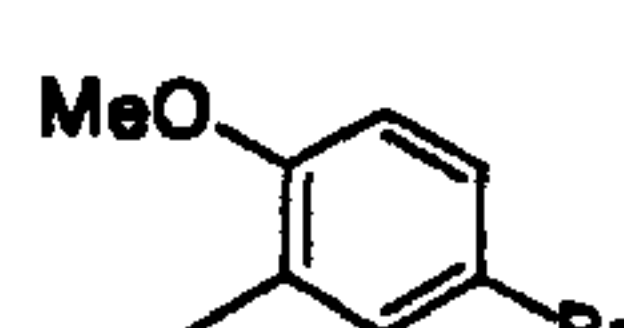
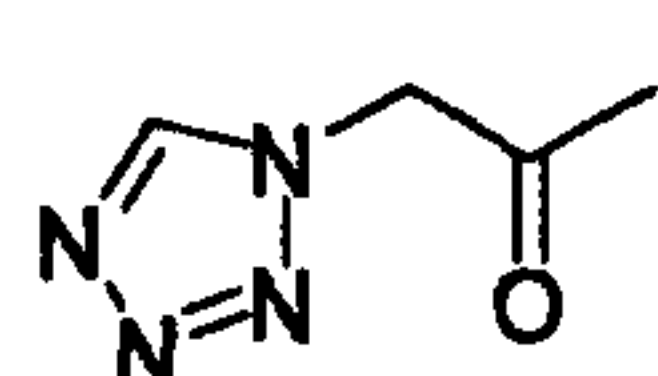
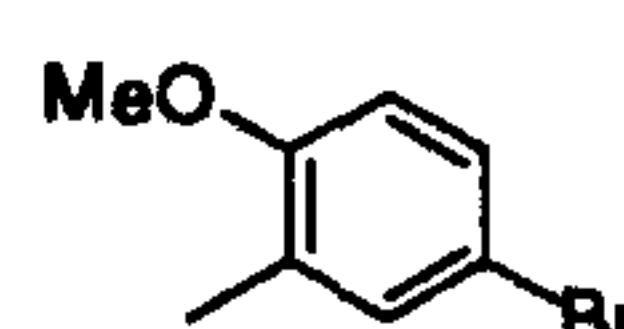
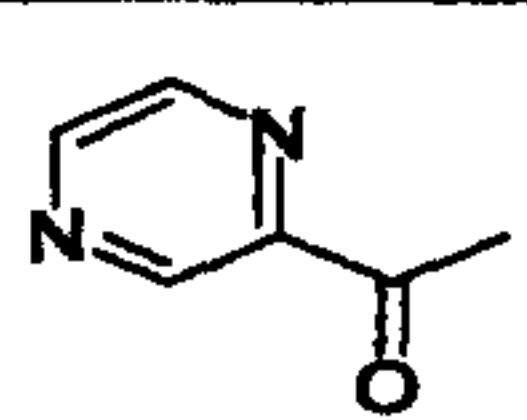
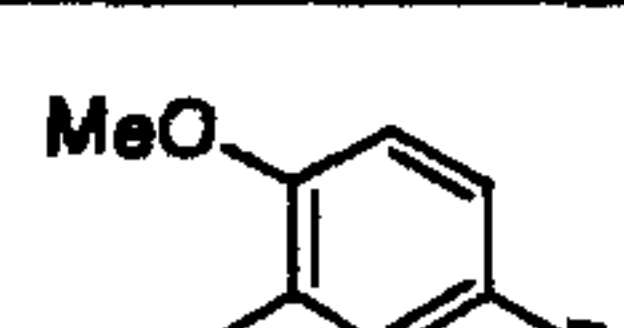
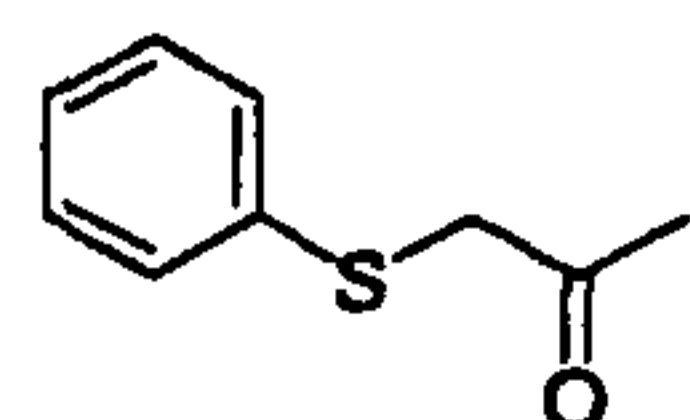
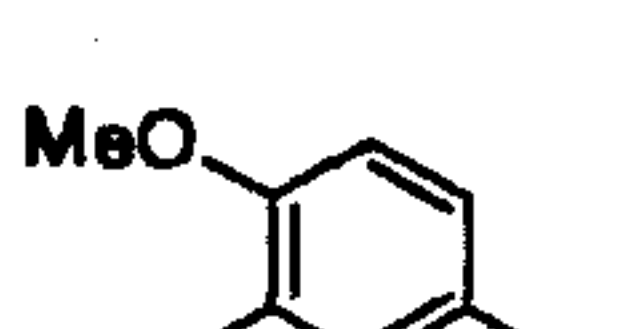
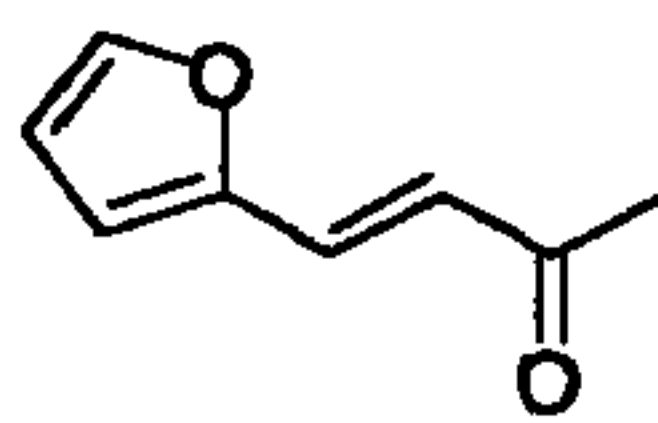
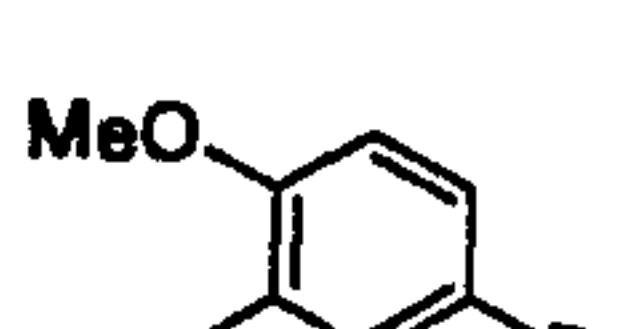
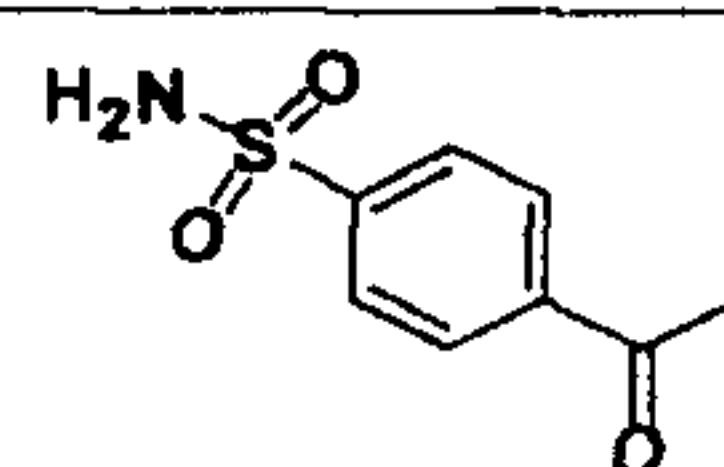
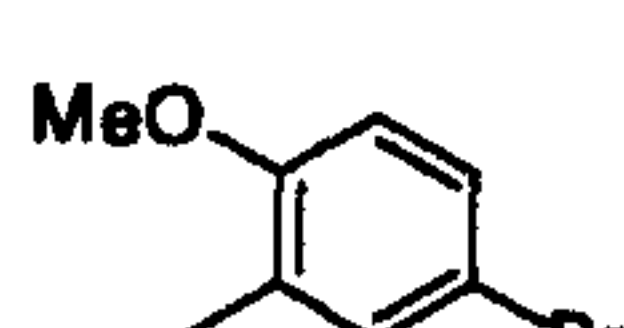
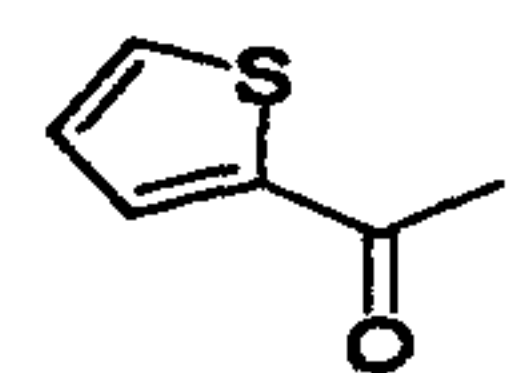
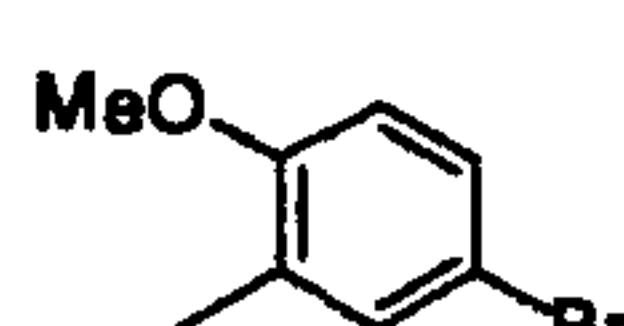
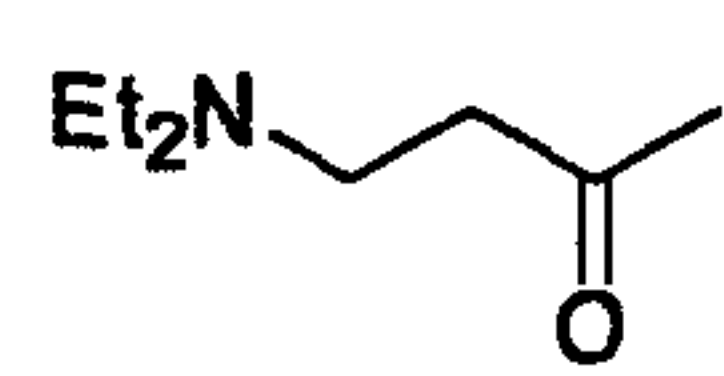
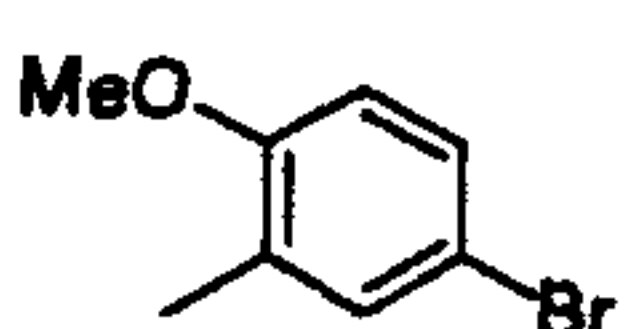
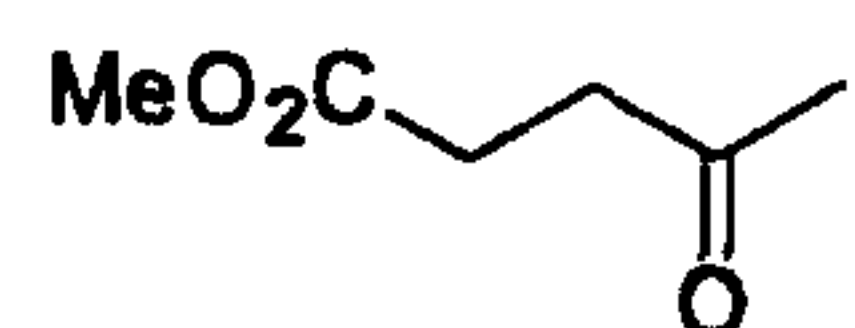
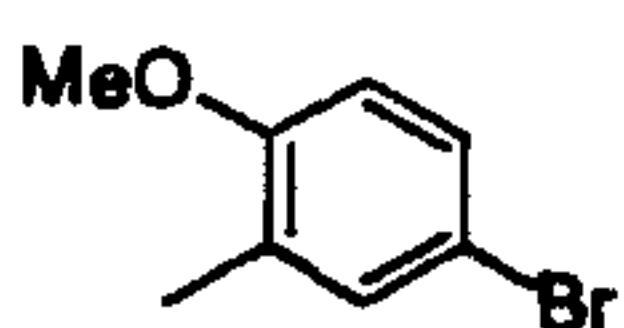
175	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	692
176	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	661
177	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	681
178	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	632
179	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	666
180	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	688
181	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	701
182	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	685
183	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	650
218	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	619
219	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	604
220	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	590
221	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	586
222	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	630
223	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	600

224	(±)-cis		O		4-F	663
225	(±)-cis		O		4-F	590
226	(±)-cis		O		4-F	607
227	(±)-cis		O		4-F	637
228	(±)-cis	NCCH ₂ CO	O		4-F	547
246	(±)-cis		NH		H	526
247	(±)-cis		NH		H	511
248	(±)-cis		NH		H	497
249	(±)-cis		NH		H	493
250	(±)-cis		NH		H	537
251	(±)-cis		NH		H	507
252	(±)-cis		NH		H	570
253	(±)-cis		NH		H	497
254	(±)-cis		NH		H	514
255	(±)-cis		NH		H	544

272	(±)- <i>cis</i>	Ac	NH		H	535
273	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtCO	NH		H	549
274	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		H	733
275	(±)- <i>cis</i>	CH ₃ OCH ₂ CO	NH		H	565
276	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		H	578
277	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		H	612
278	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		H	601
279	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		H	641
280	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		H	632
281	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		H	617
282	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		H	603
283	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		H	599
284	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		H	643
285	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		H	613
286	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		H	676

287	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		H	603
288	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		H	620
289	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		H	650
290	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		H	607
296	(±)- <i>cis</i>	Ac	NH		H	513
297	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtCO	NH		H	527
298	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		H	711
299	(±)- <i>cis</i>	CH ₃ OCH ₂ CO	NH		H	543
300	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		H	556
301	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		H	590
302	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		H	579
303	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		H	619
304	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		H	610
305	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		H	595
306	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		H	581

307	(±)-cis		NH		H	577
308	(±)-cis		NH		H	621
309	(±)-cis		NH		H	591
310	(±)-cis		NH		H	654
311	(±)-cis		NH		H	581
312	(±)-cis		NH		H	598
313	(±)-cis		NH		H	628
314	(±)-cis		NH		H	585
321	(±)-cis	Ac	NH		H	507, 509
322	(±)-cis	EtCO	NH		H	521, 523
323	(±)-cis		NH		H	705, 707
324	(±)-cis	CH ₃ OCH ₂ CO	NH		H	537, 539
325	(±)-cis		NH		H	550, 552
326	(±)-cis		NH		H	584, 586
327	(±)-cis		NH		H	573, 575

328	(±)-cis		NH		H	613, 615
329	(±)-cis		NH		H	604, 606
330	(±)-cis		NH		H	589, 591
331	(±)-cis		NH		H	575, 577
332	(±)-cis		NH		H	571, 573
333	(±)-cis		NH		H	615, 617
334	(±)-cis		NH		H	585, 587
335	(±)-cis		NH		H	648, 650
336	(±)-cis		NH		H	575, 577
337	(±)-cis		NH		H	592, 594
338	(±)-cis		NH		H	579, 581

Example 120

2-[cis-3-Benzhydryl-4-[[3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-1-piperidinyl]-2-oxoethylamine trifluoroacetate

5 The compound (28.7 mg) obtained in Example 25 and Boc-glycine (21.0 mg) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 29 to obtain the title compound.

Yield: 26.8 mg

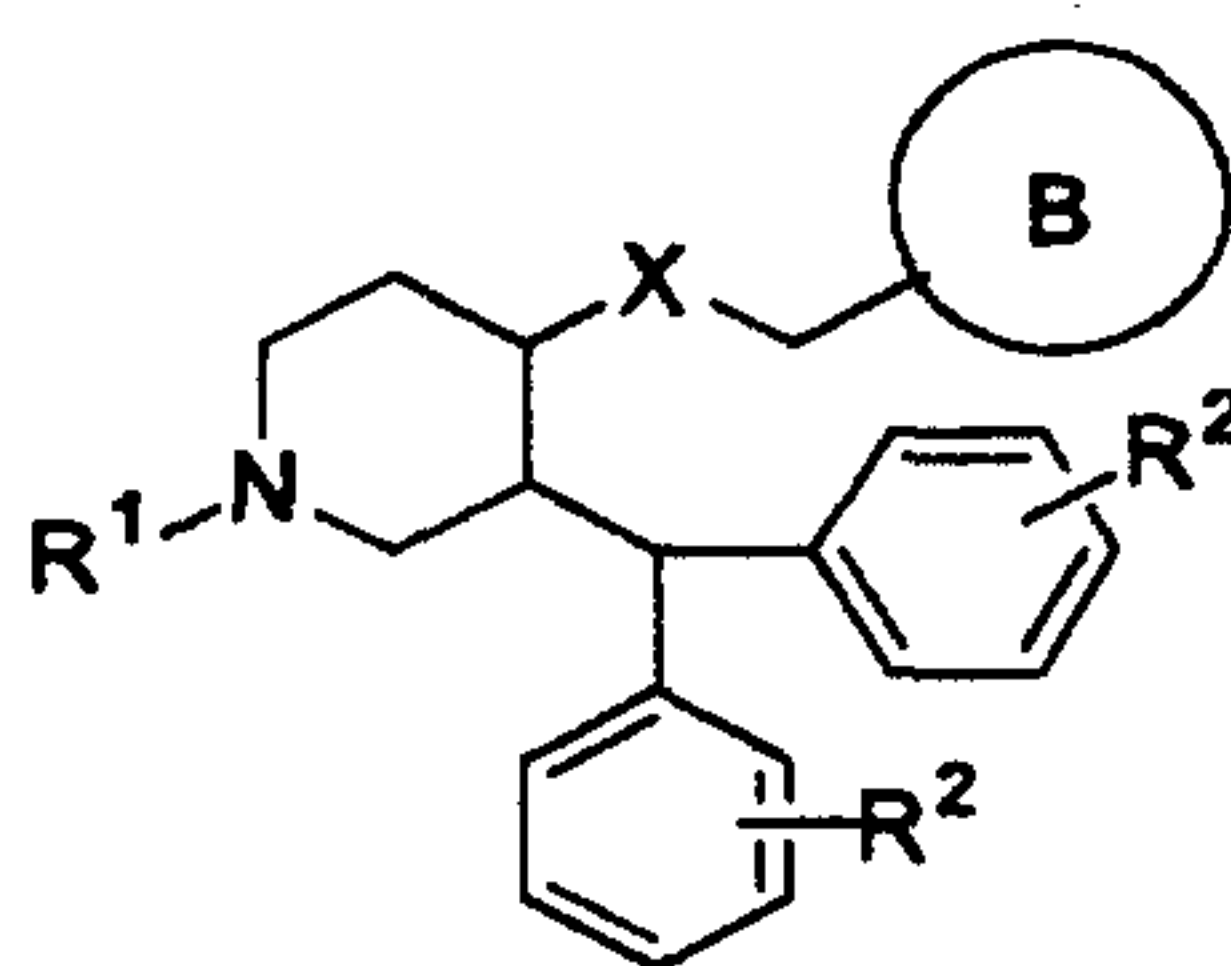
- 181 -

HPLC analysis (Condition B): Purity 99% (Retention time: 1.82 minutes)

MS (ESI+): 551 (M+H)

The compounds of the following Examples were
5 synthesized from the compounds obtained in Examples 25, 152, 217, 245, 271, 295 and 320 as starting materials by reacting and treating in the same manner as in the method described in Example 120 using the respective corresponding amino acids protected with Boc group.

10 [Table 10]



Ex. No.	Stereo-chemistry	R ¹	X	B	R ²	MS (ESI) (M+H) ⁺
120	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		H	551
121	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		H	579
184	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	587
185	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	615
229	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	537
230	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	565
256	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		H	444
257	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		H	472
291	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		H	550
292	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		H	578
315	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		H	528
316	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		H	556
339	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		H	522, 524
340	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		H	550, 552

- 183 -

Example 122

cis-3-Benzhydryl-1-(benzylsulfonyl)-4-[[3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]piperidine

The compound (28.7 mg) obtained in Example 25 and α -toluenesulfonyl chloride (17.2 mg) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 30 to obtain the title compound.

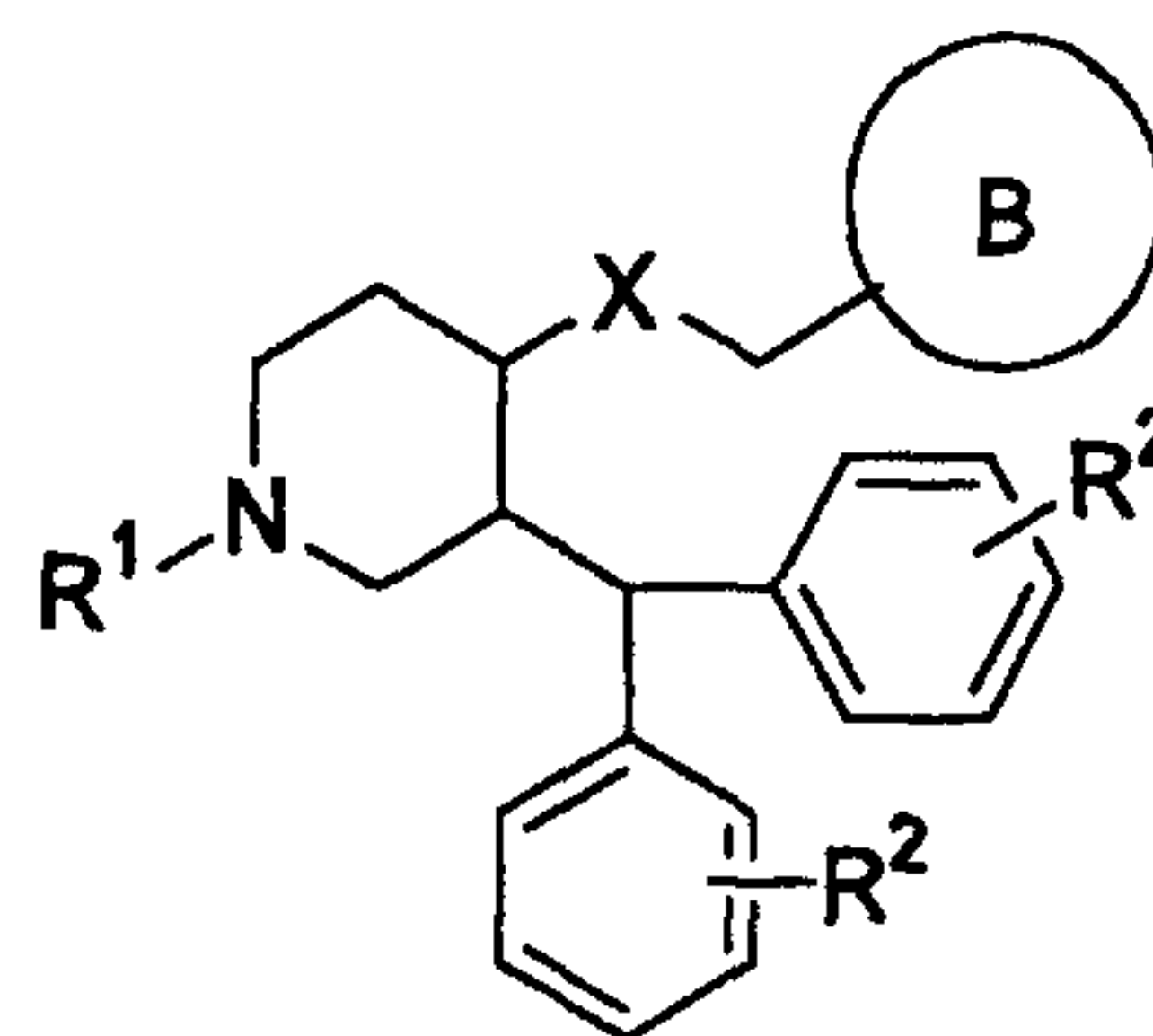
Yield: 19.0 mg

HPLC analysis (Condition B): Purity 98% (Retention
10 time: 2.44 minutes)

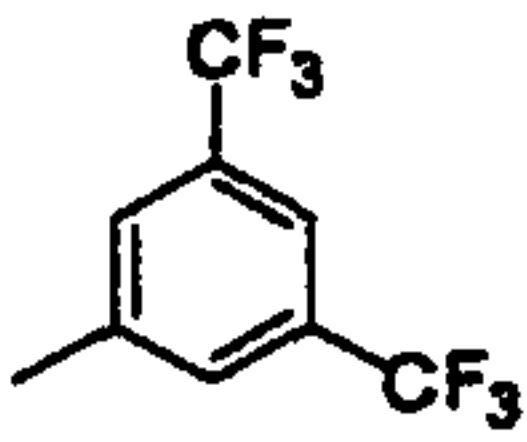
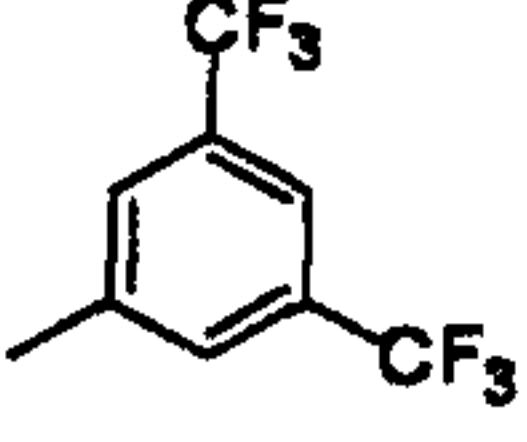
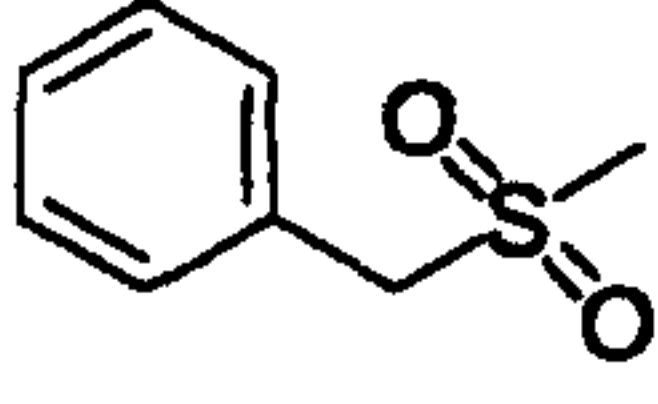
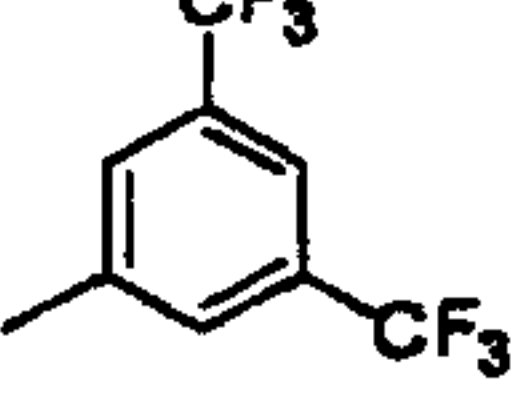
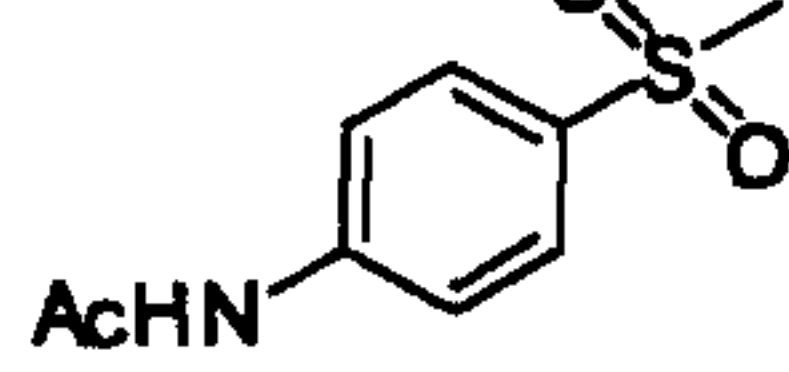
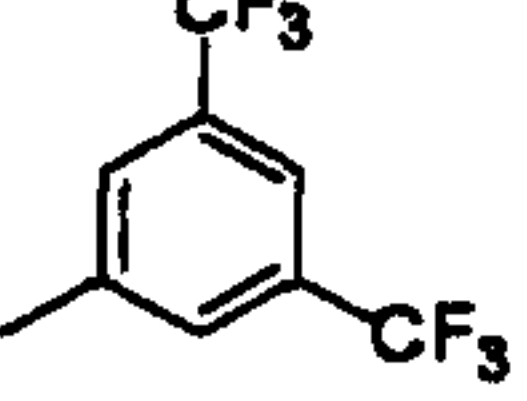
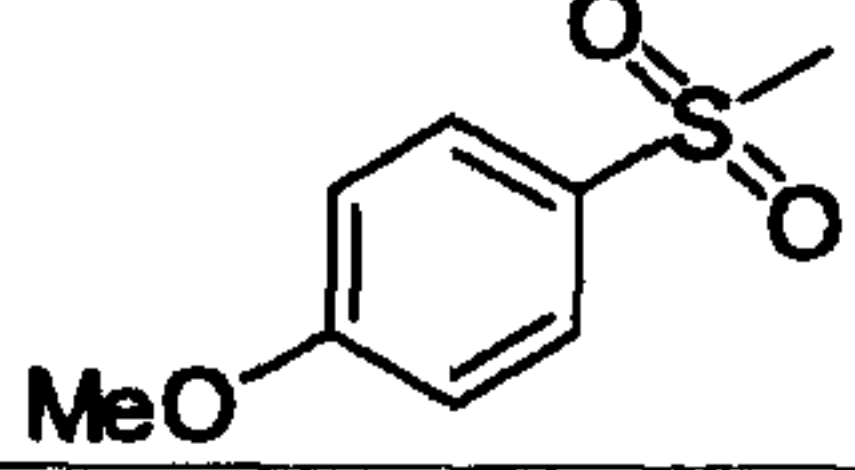
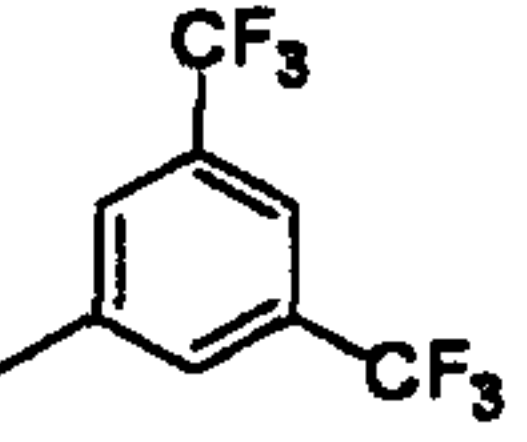
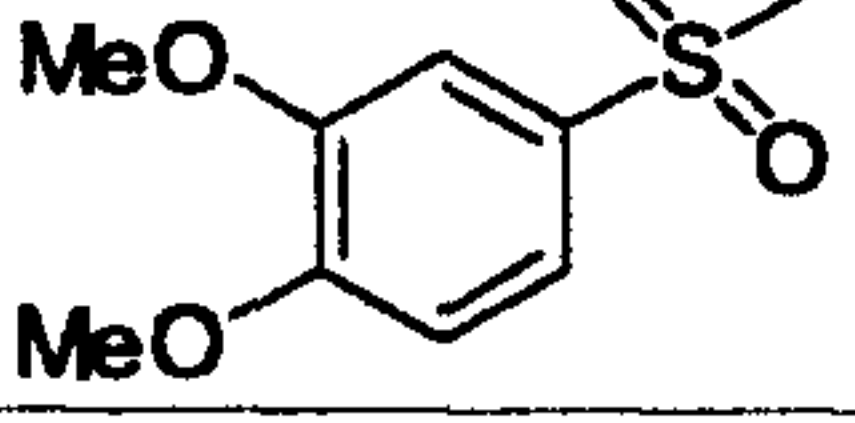
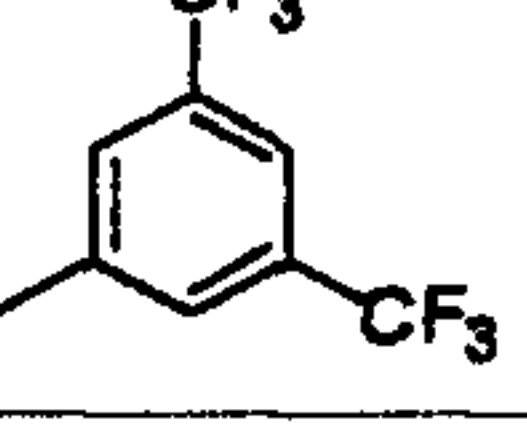
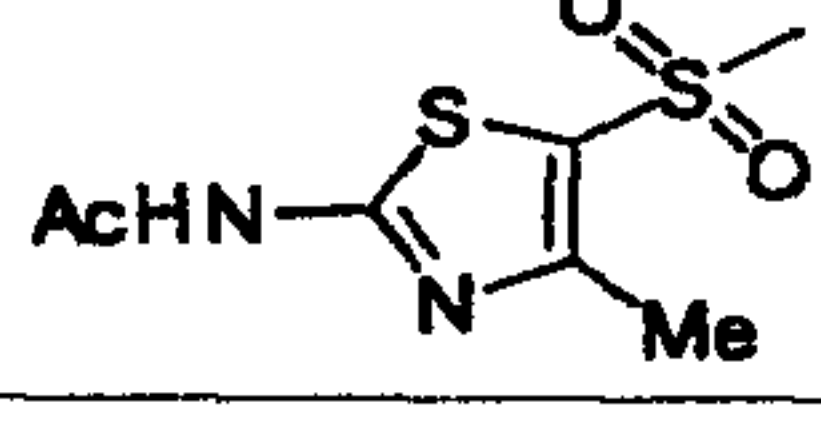
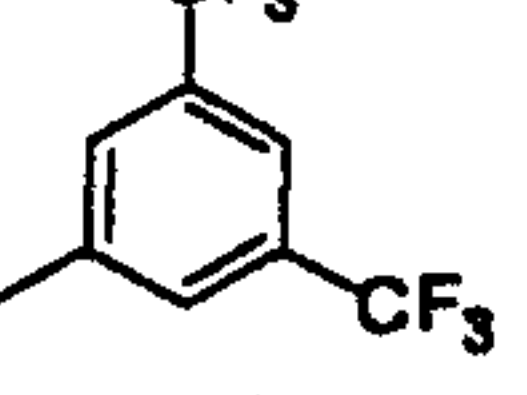
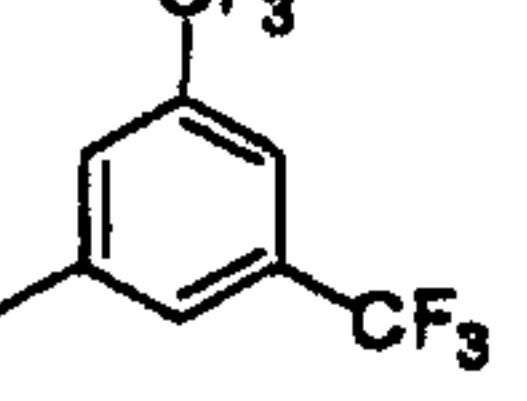
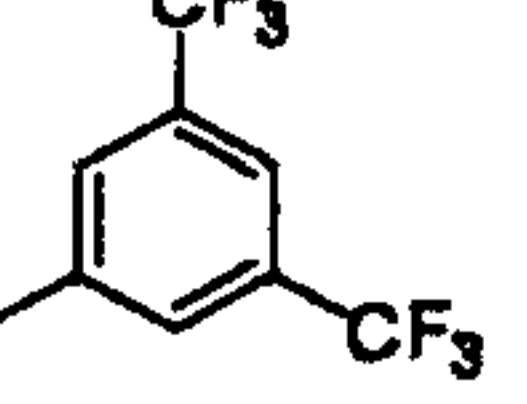
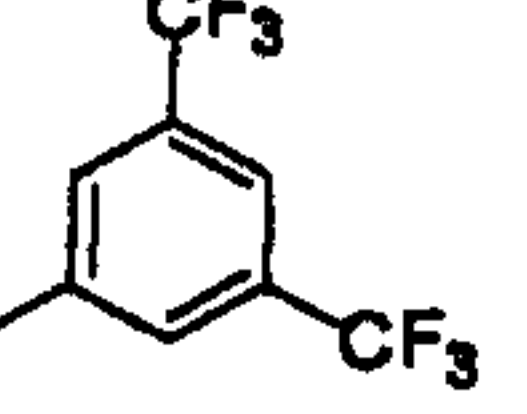
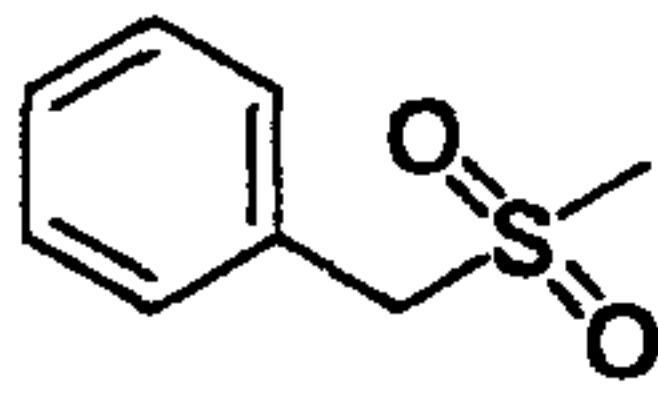
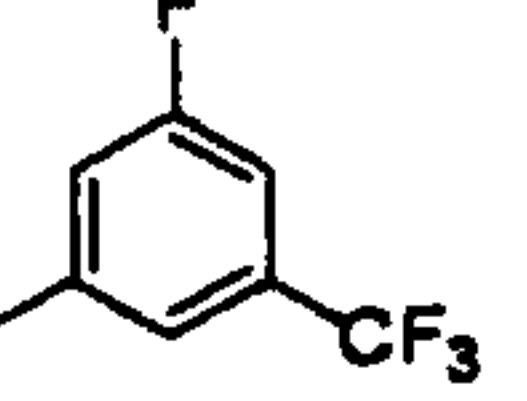
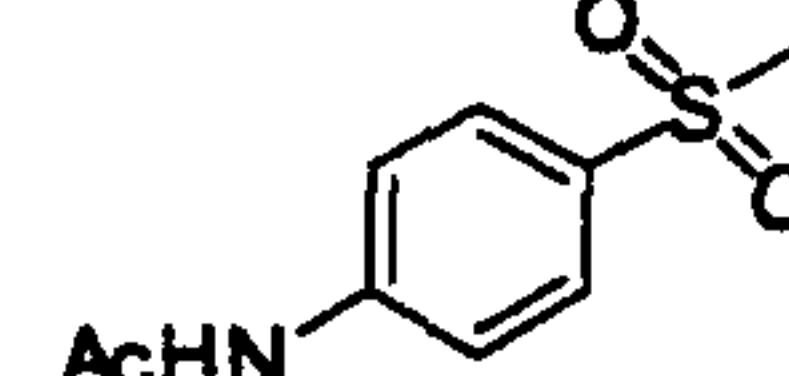
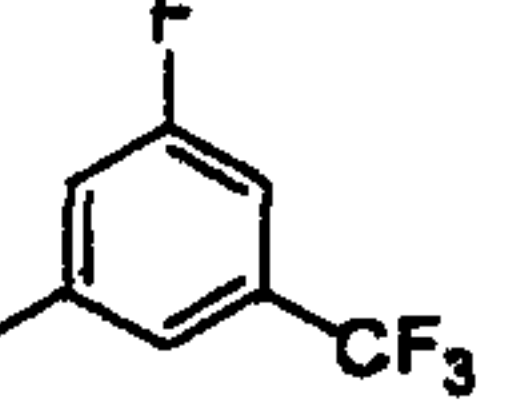
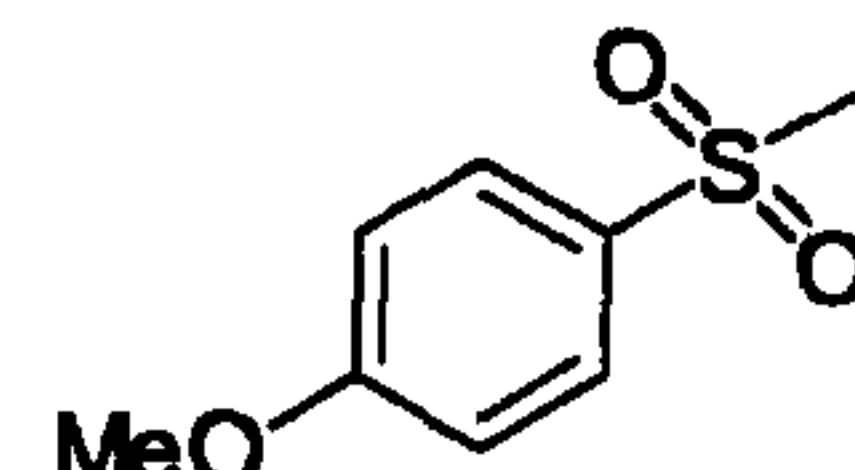
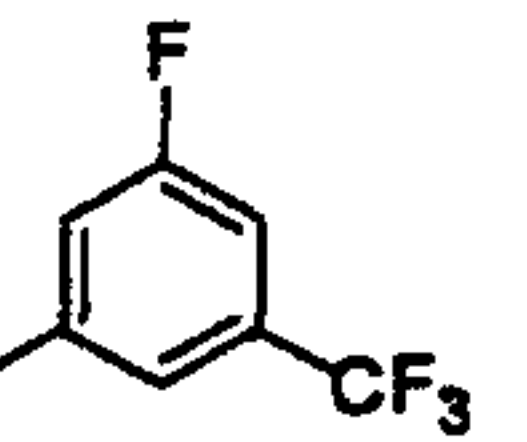
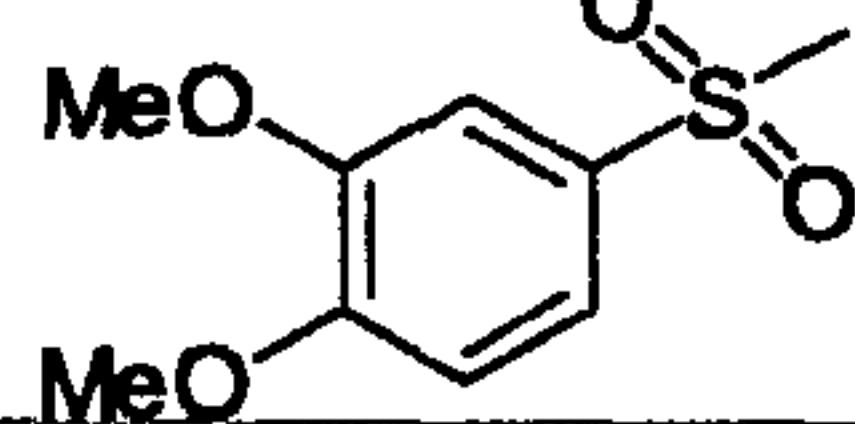
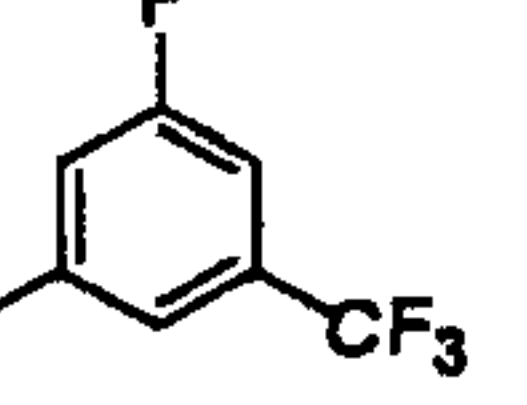
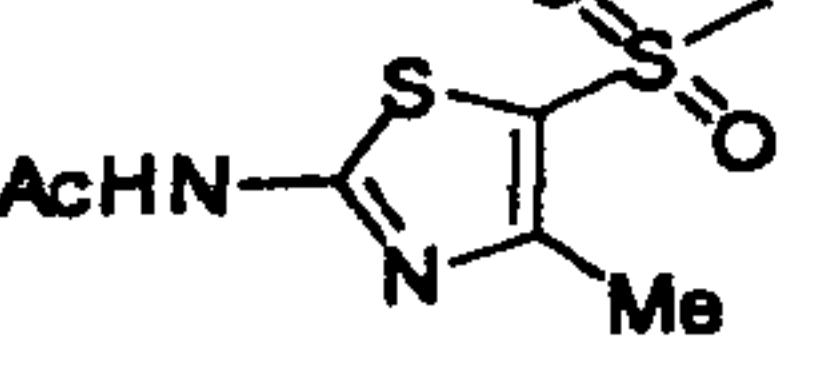
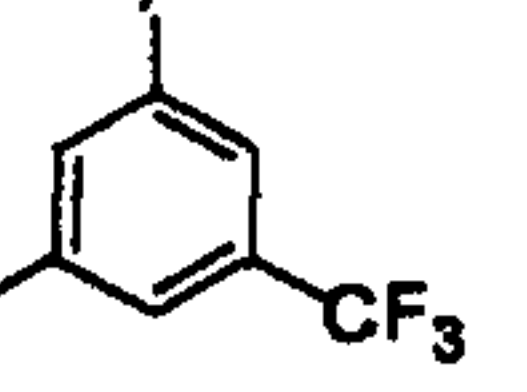
MS (ESI+): 648 (M+H)

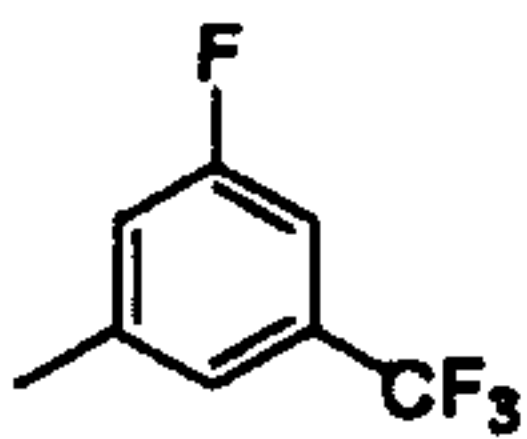
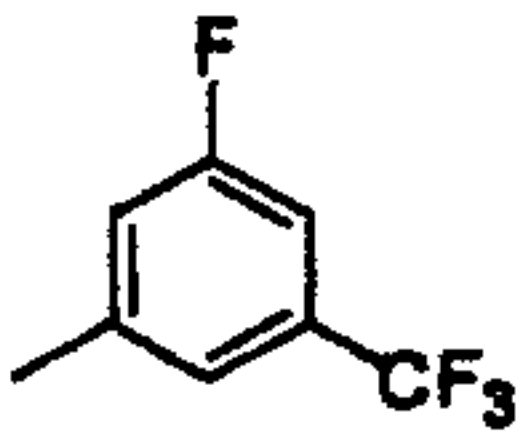
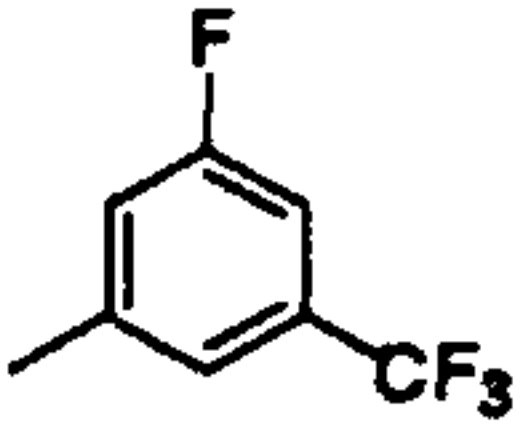
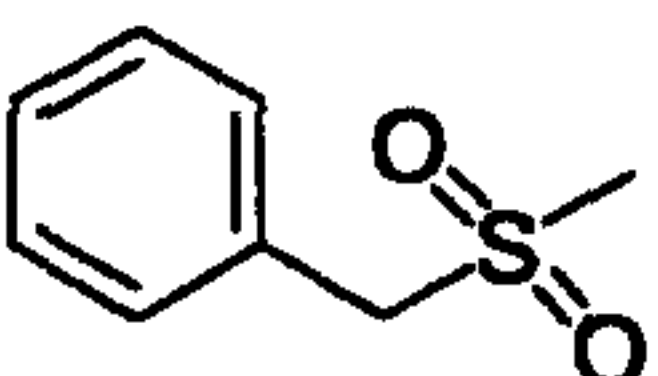
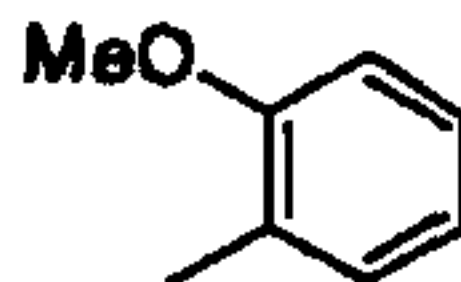
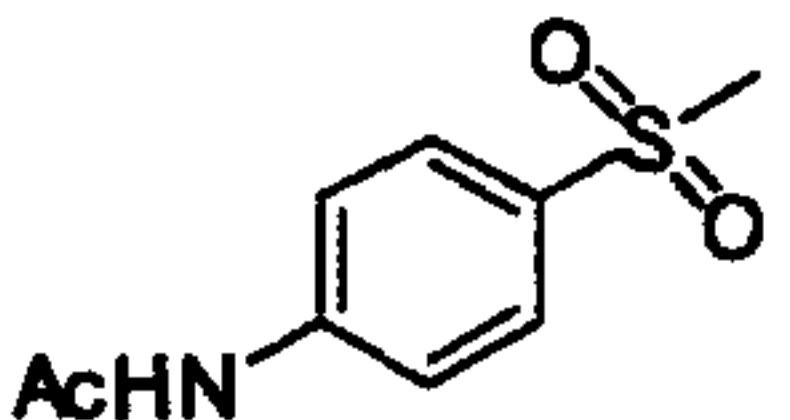
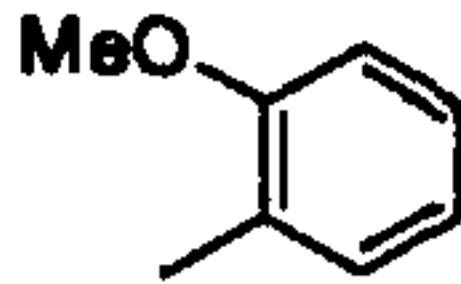
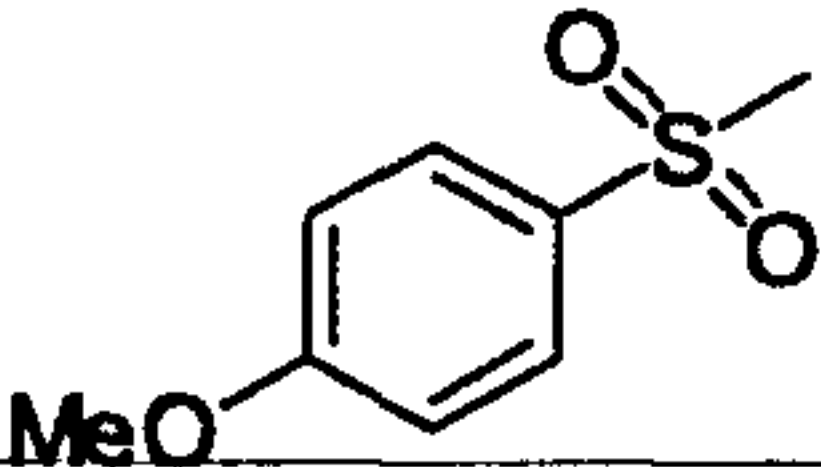
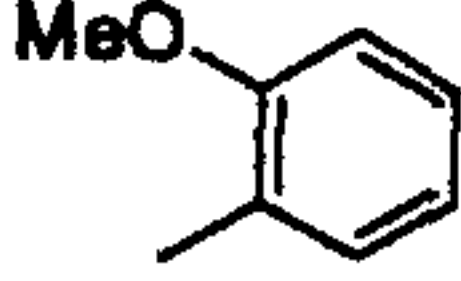
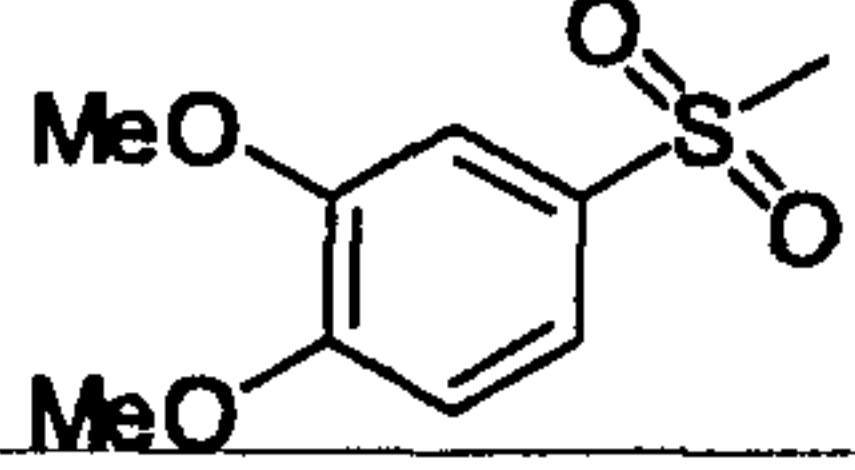
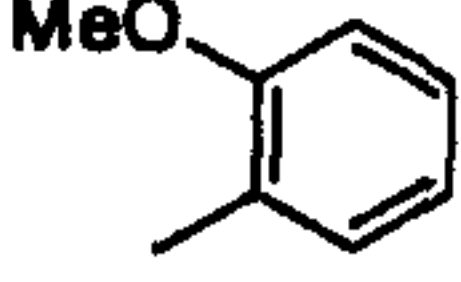
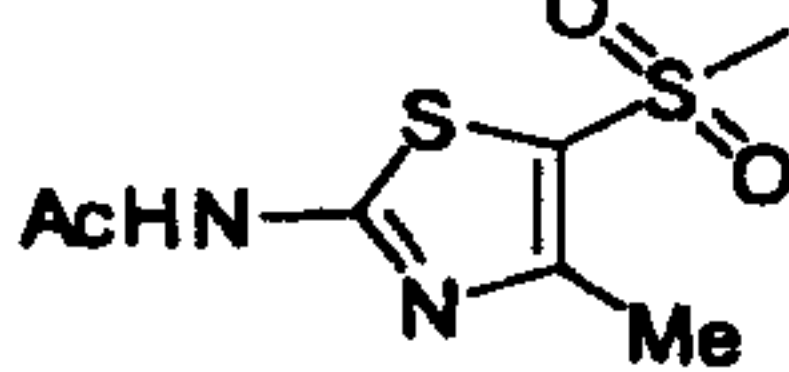
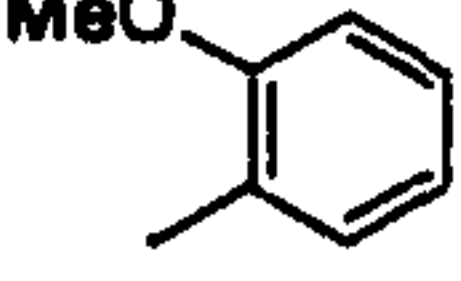
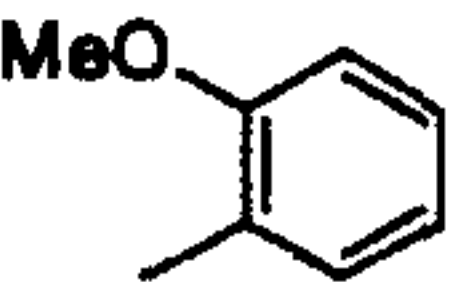
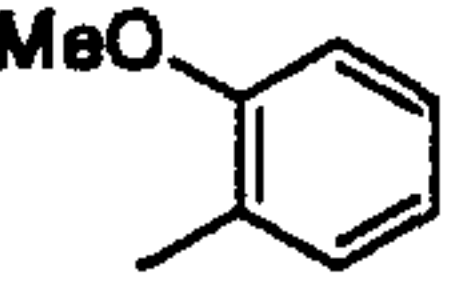
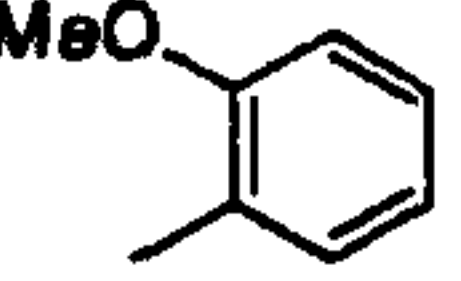
The compounds of the following Examples were synthesized from the compounds obtained in Examples 25, 152, 217 and 245 as starting materials by reacting and treating in
15 the same manner as in the method described in Example 122 using the respective corresponding sulfonyl chloride derivatives.

[Table 11]



Ex. No.	Stereo-chemistry	R¹	X	B	R²	MS (ESI) (M+H)⁺
122	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		H	648
123	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		H	691
124	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		H	664
125	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		H	694
126	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		H	712

127	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtSO ₂	O		H	586
128	(±)- <i>cis</i>	PhSO ₂	O		H	634
186	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	684
187	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	727
188	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	700
189	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	730
190	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	748
191	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtSO ₂	O		4-F	622
192	(±)- <i>cis</i>	PhSO ₂	O		4-F	670
193	(±)- <i>cis</i>	MeSO ₂	O		4-F	608
231	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	634
232	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	677
233	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	650
234	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	680
235	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	698

236	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtSO ₂	O		4-F	572
237	(±)- <i>cis</i>	PhSO ₂	O		4-F	620
238	(±)- <i>cis</i>	MeSO ₂	O		4-F	558
258	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		H	541
259	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		H	584
260	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		H	557
261	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		H	587
262	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		H	605
263	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtSO ₂	NH		H	479
264	(±)- <i>cis</i>	PhSO ₂	NH		H	527
265	(±)- <i>cis</i>	MeSO ₂	NH		H	465

Example 129

Ethyl [[[cis-3-benzhydryl-4-[[3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-1-piperidinyl]carbonyl]amino]acetate

The compound (28.7 mg) obtained in Example 25 and ethyl isocyanoacetate (11.6 mg) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 31 to obtain the title compound.

- 187 -

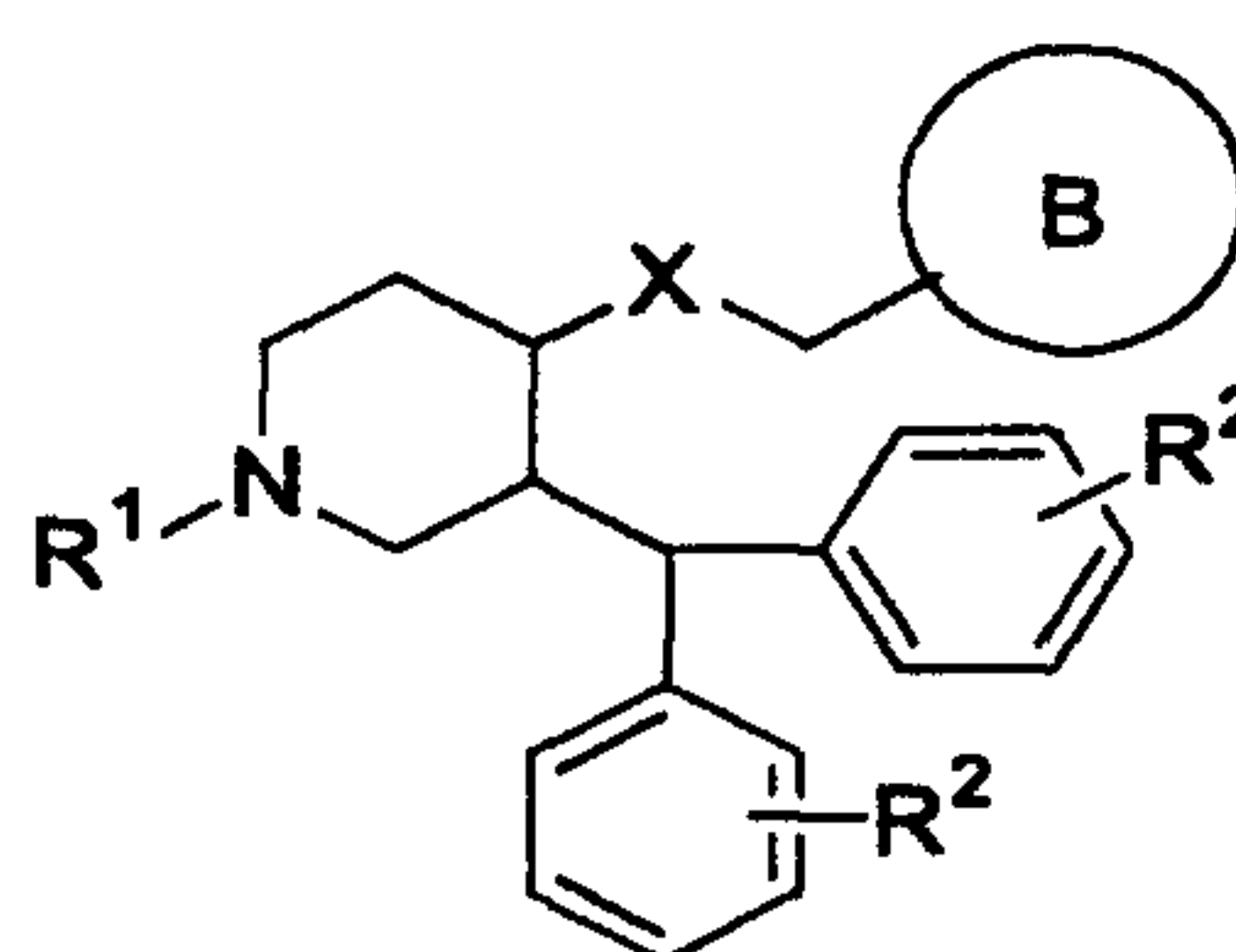
Yield: 30.1 mg

HPLC analysis (Condition B): Purity 95% (Retention
time: 2.27 minutes)

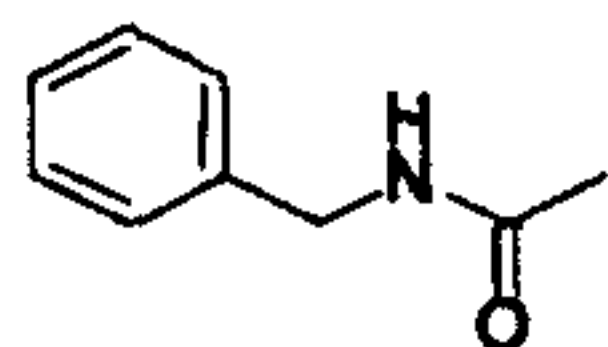
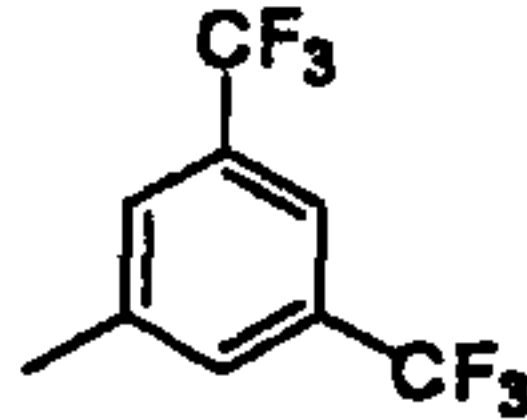
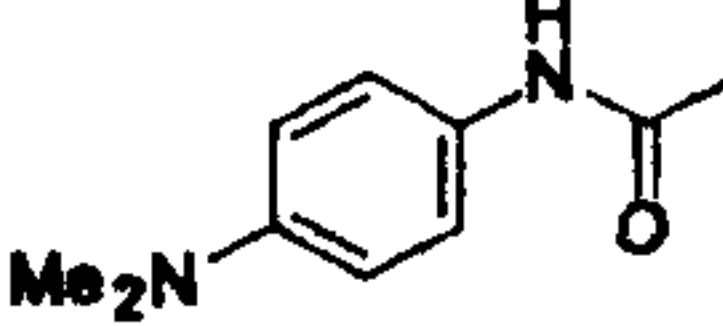
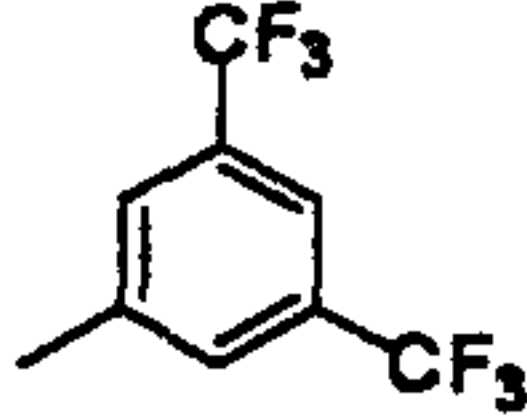
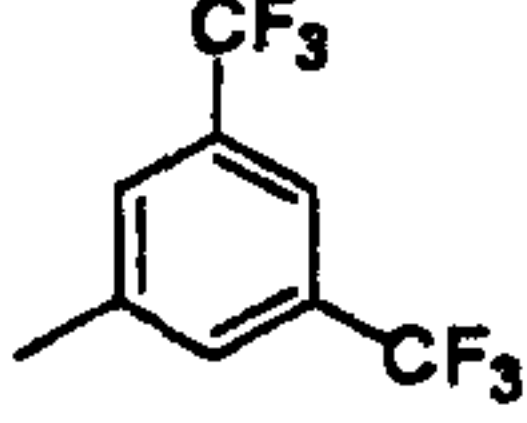
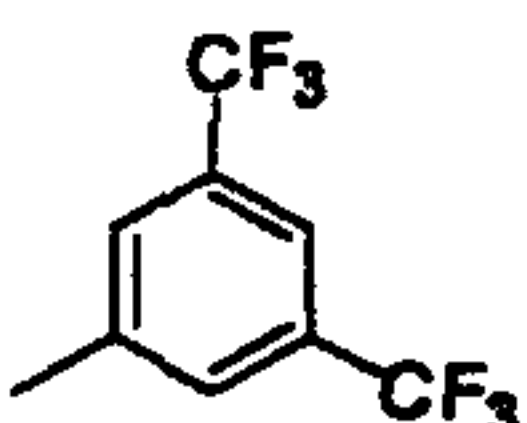
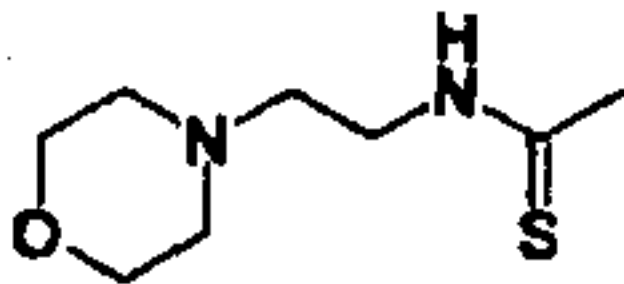
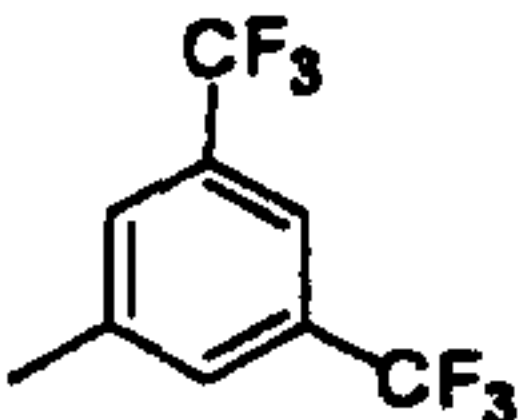
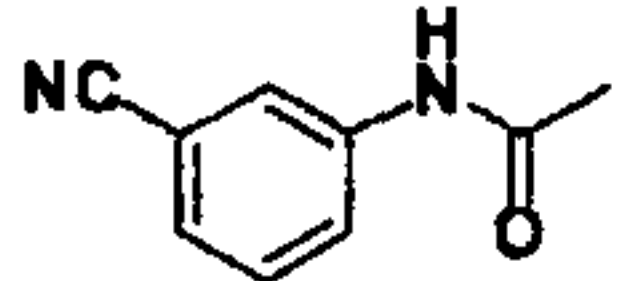
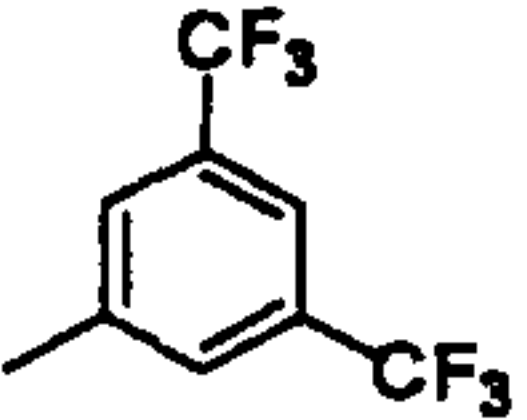
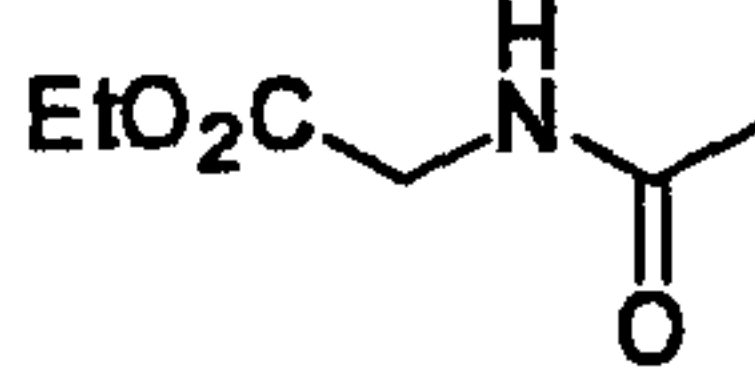
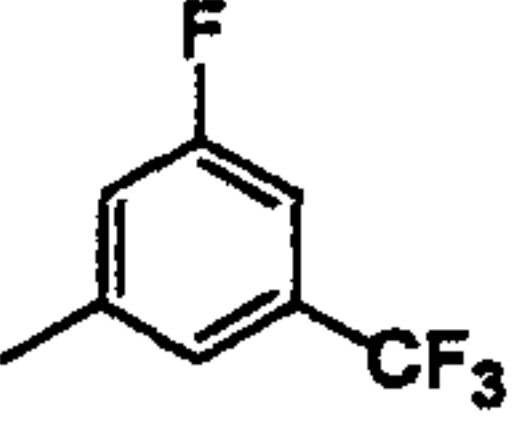
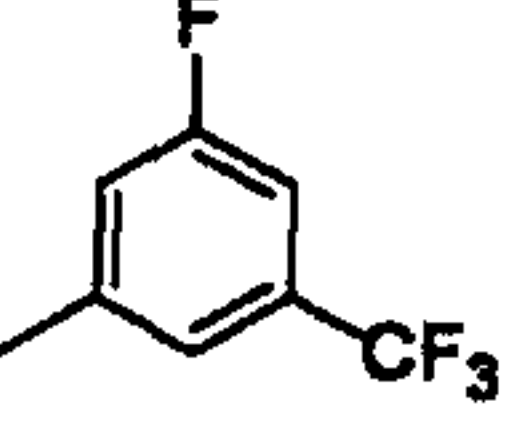
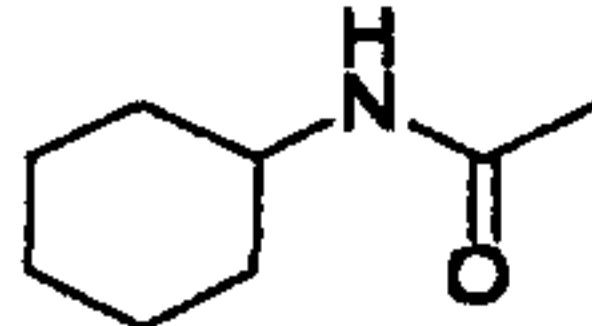
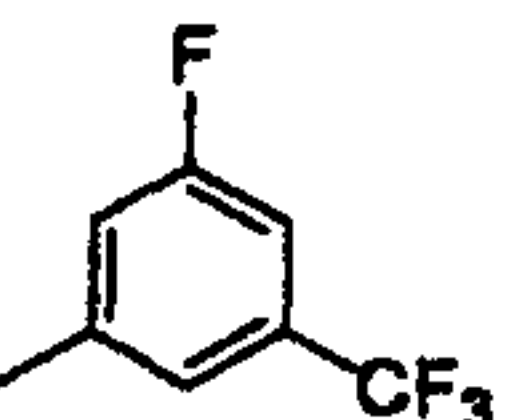
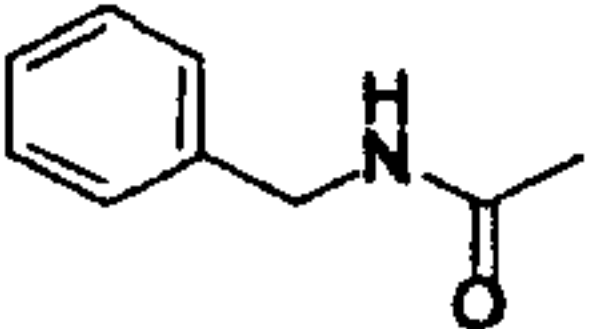
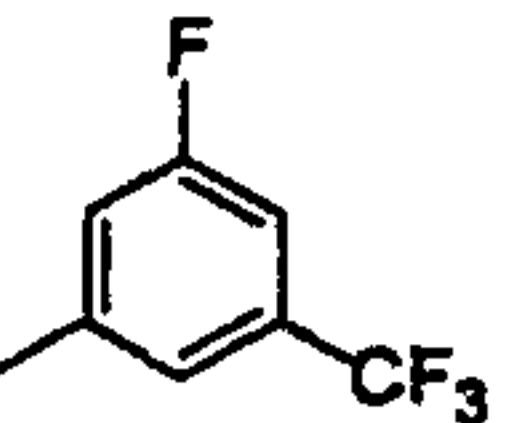
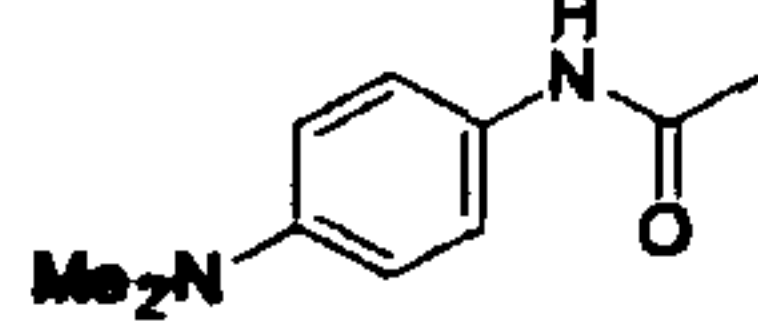
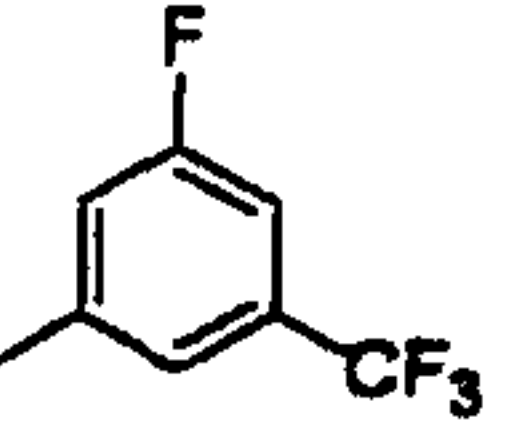
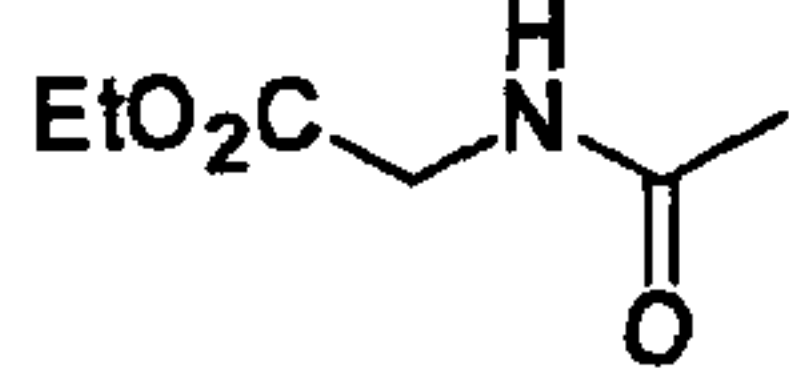
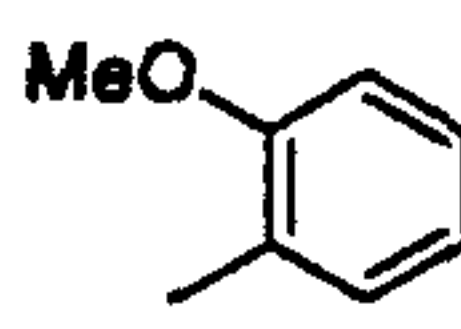
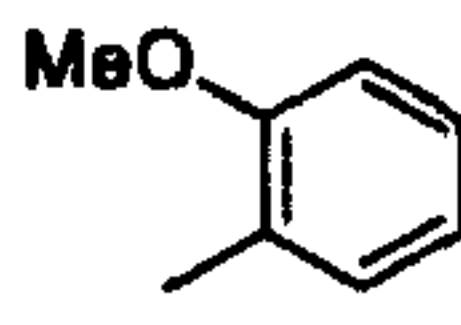
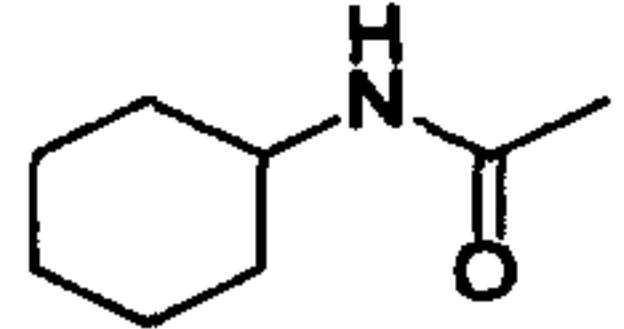
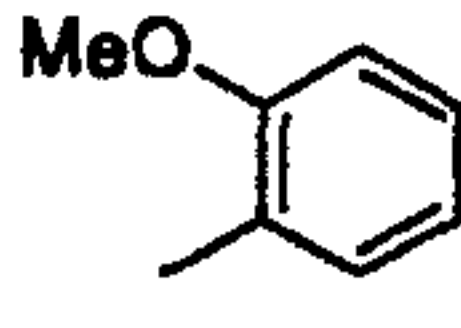
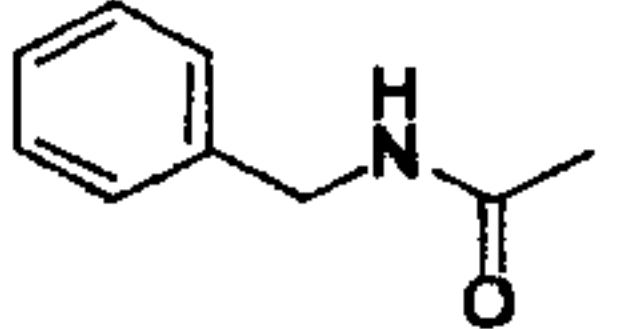
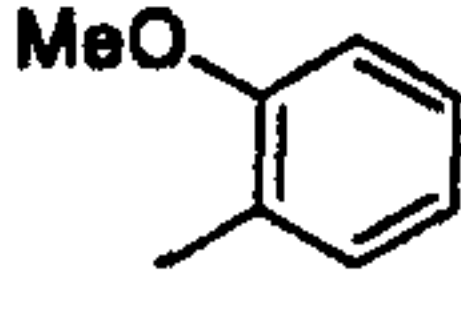
MS (ESI+): 623 (M+H)

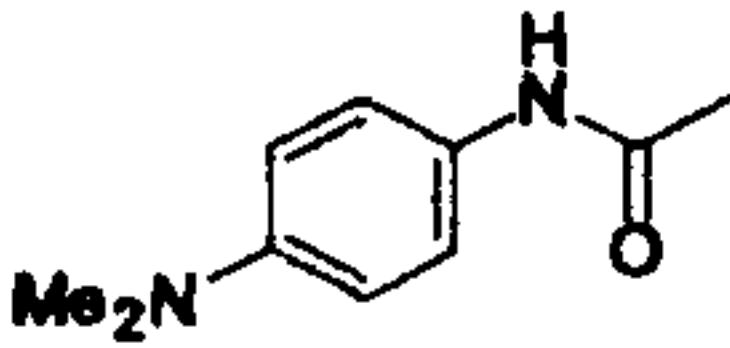
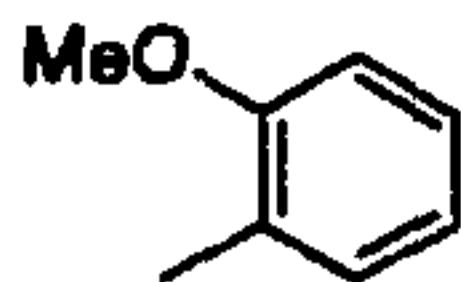
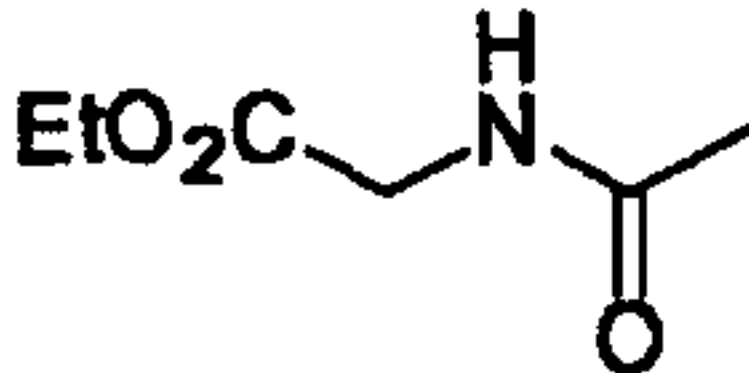
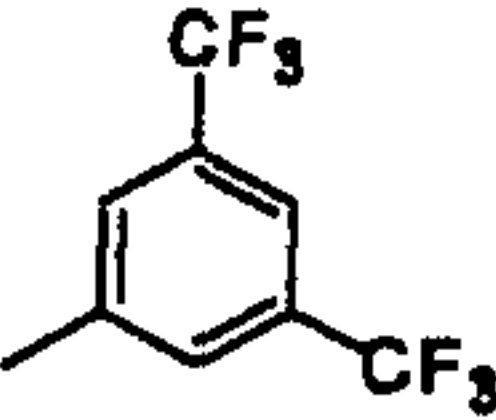
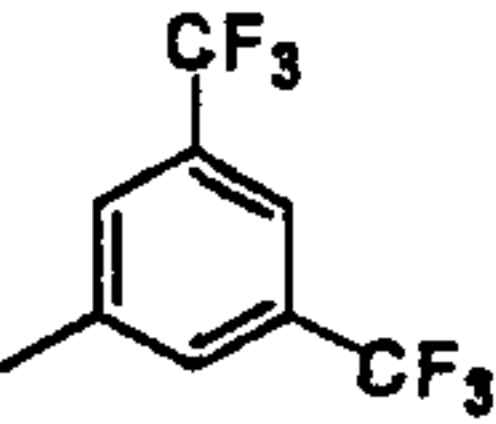
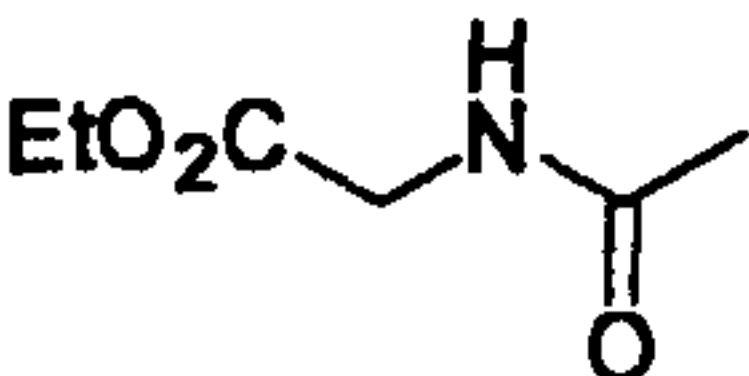
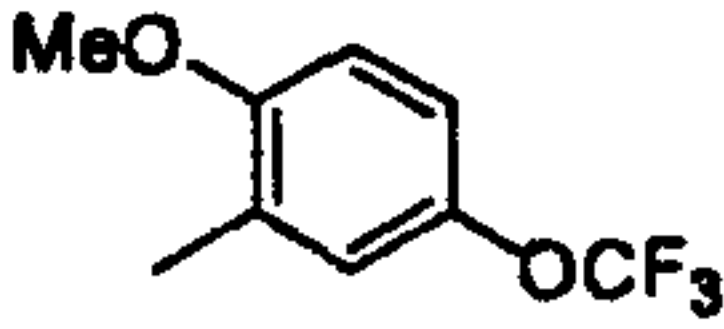
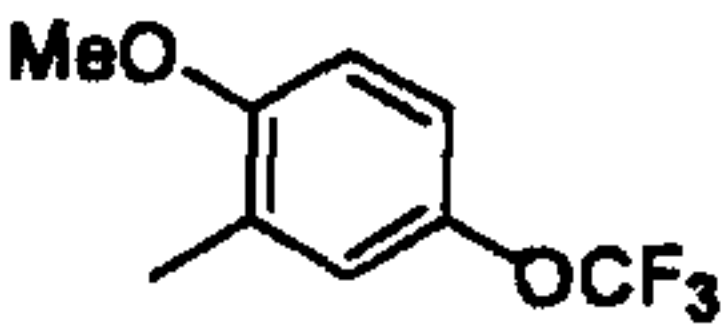
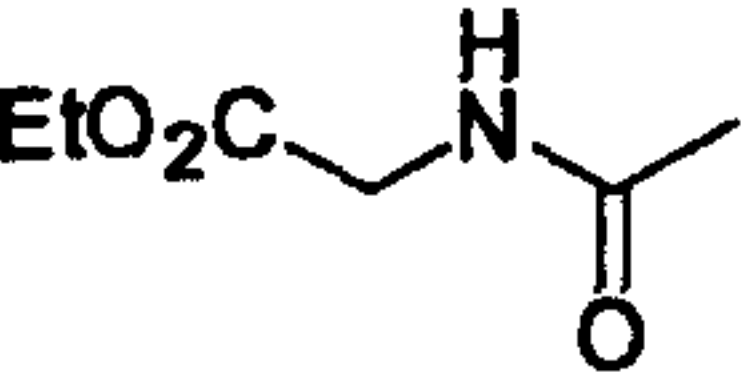
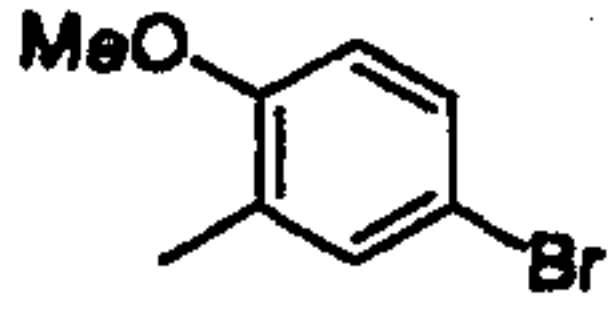
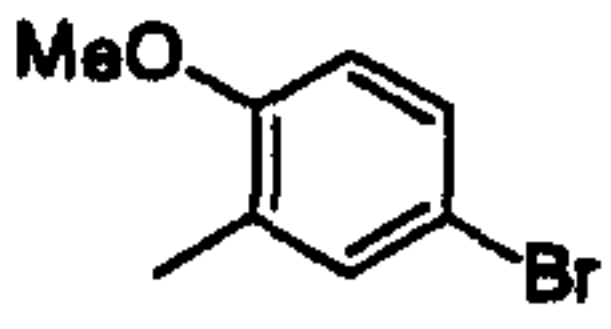
5 The compounds of the following Examples were
synthesized from the compounds obtained in Examples 25, 152,
217, 245, 271, 295 and 320 as starting materials by reacting
and treating in the same manner as in the method described in
Example 129 using the respective corresponding isocyanate
10 derivatives.

[Table 12]



Ex. No.	Stereo-chemistry	R ¹	X	B	R ²	MS (ESI) (M+H) ⁺
129	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		H	623
130	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	O		H	565
131	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		H	619
132	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		H	627
133	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		H	656
134	(±)- <i>cis</i>	ⁿ PrNHCO	O		H	579
135	(±)- <i>cis</i>	ⁿ BuNHCO	O		H	593
136	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		H	666
137	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		H	638
194	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	659
195	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	O		4-F	601
196	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	655

197	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	663
198	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	692
199	(±)- <i>cis</i>	$^n\text{PrNHCO}$	O		4-F	615
200	(±)- <i>cis</i>	$^n\text{BuNHCO}$	O		4-F	629
201	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	702
202	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	674
239	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	609
240	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	O		4-F	551
241	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	605
242	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	613
243	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	642
266	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		H	516
267	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH		H	458
268	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		H	512
269	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		H	520

270	(±)-cis		NH		H	549
293	(±)-cis		NH		H	622
294	(±)-cis	EtNHCO	NH		H	564
317	(±)-cis		NH		H	600
318	(±)-cis	EtNHCO	NH		H	542
341	(±)-cis		NH		H	594, 596
342	(±)-cis	EtNHCO	NH		H	536, 538

Example 138

cis-3-Benzhydryl-4-[[3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-1-propylpiperidine
 5 trifluoroacetate

To a mixed solution of the compound (28.7 mg) obtained in Example 25 and propionaldehyde (5.2 mg) in dichloromethane (2 ml), NaBH(OAc)₃ (20.0 mg) was added, and the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 14 hours. The
 10 solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and then the residue was poured into a mixed solution of ethyl acetate and water. The organic layer was washed with saturated brine, and dried, and the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and then the residue was purified by preparative
 15 HPLC to obtain the title compound.

Yield: 22.9 mg

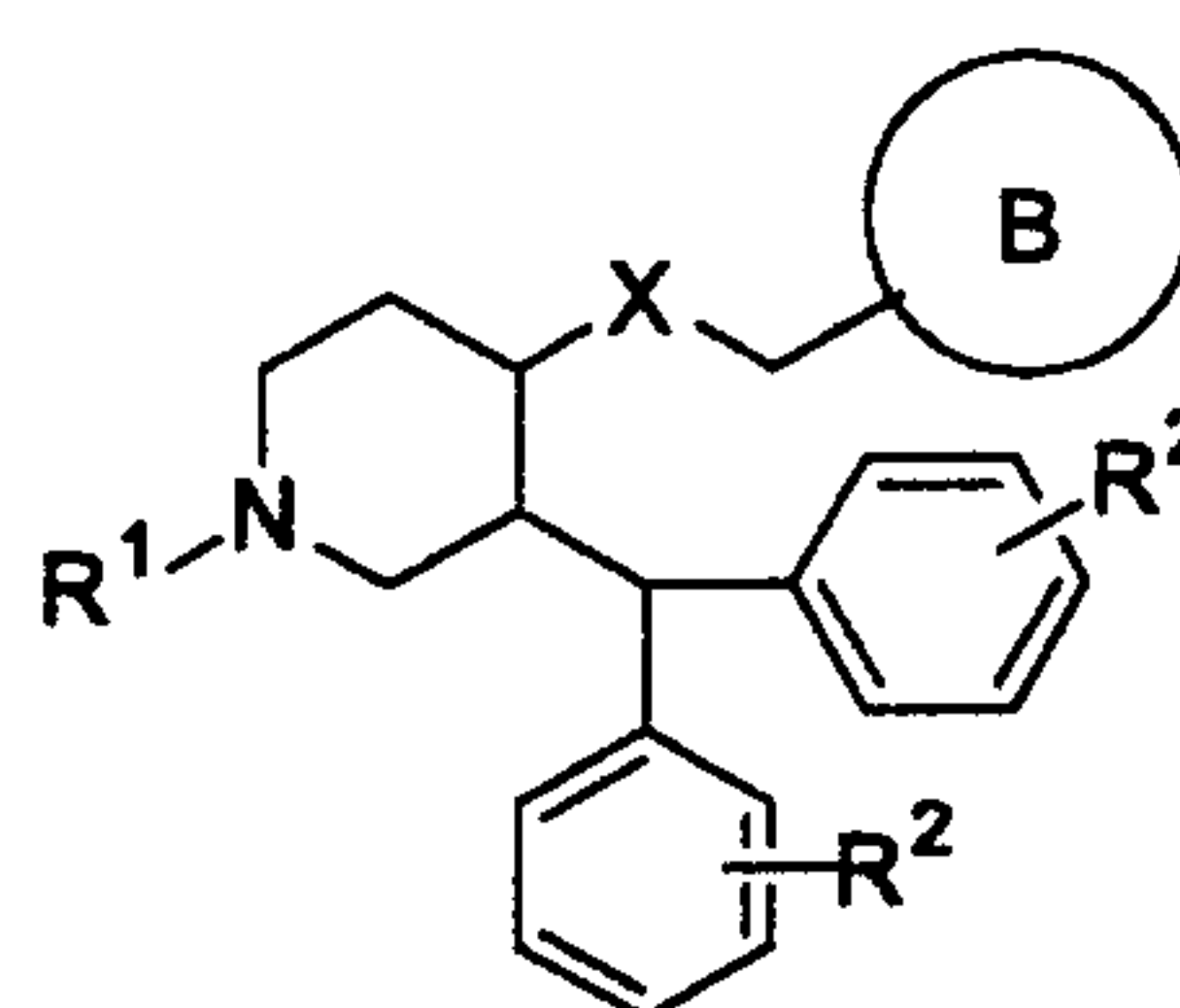
HPLC analysis (Condition B): Purity 99% (Retention time: 1.89 minutes)

- 191 -

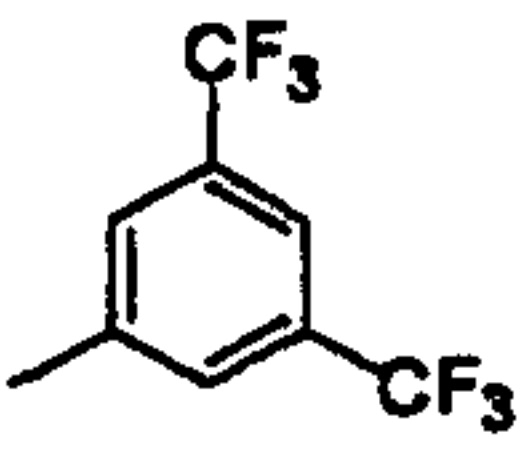
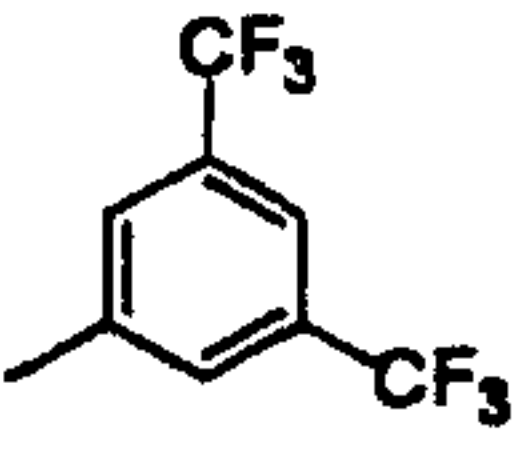
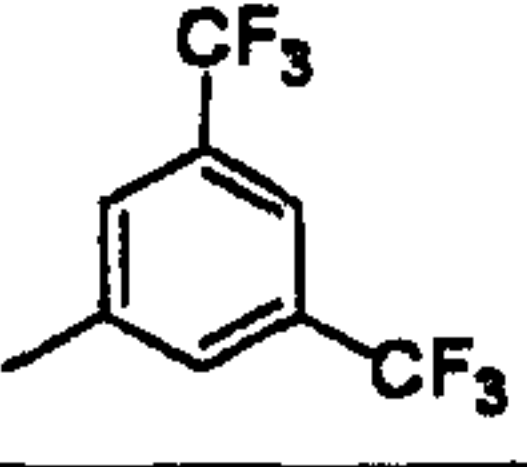
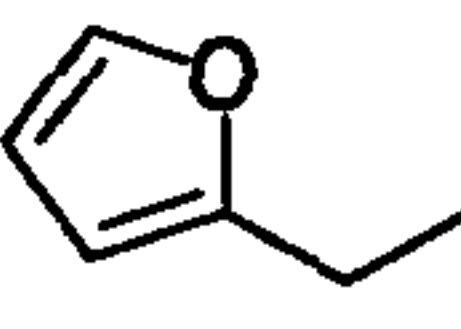
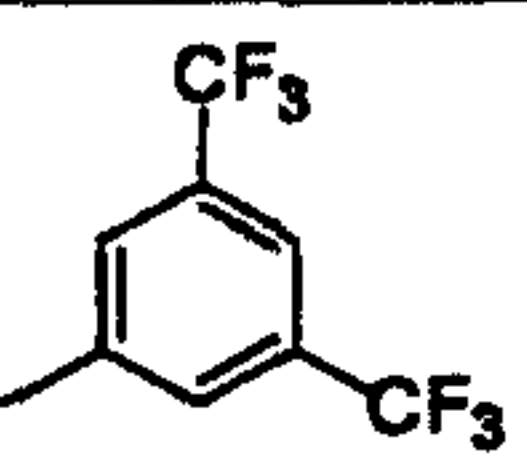
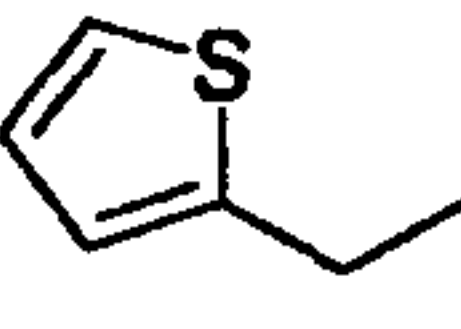
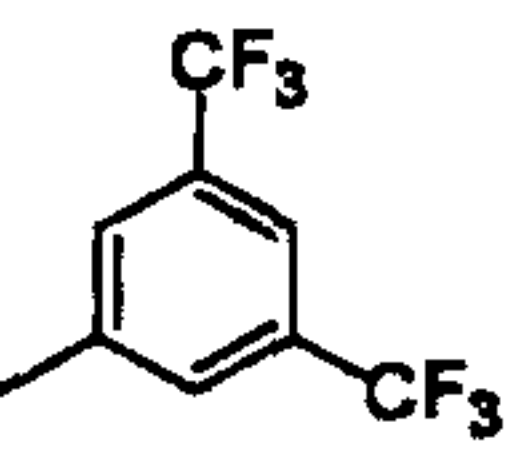
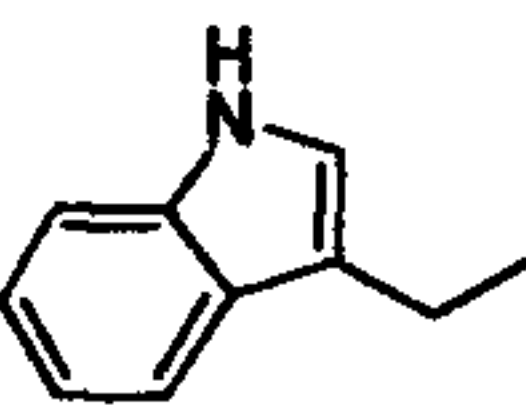
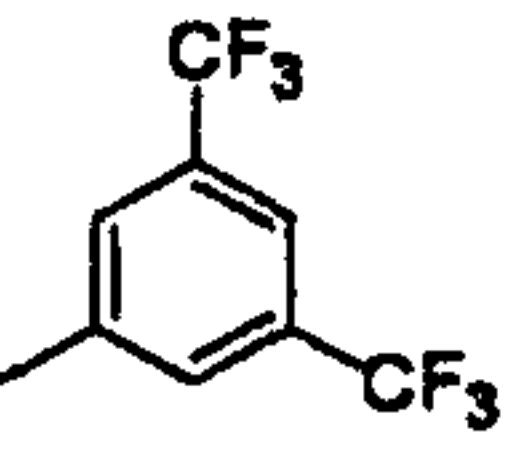
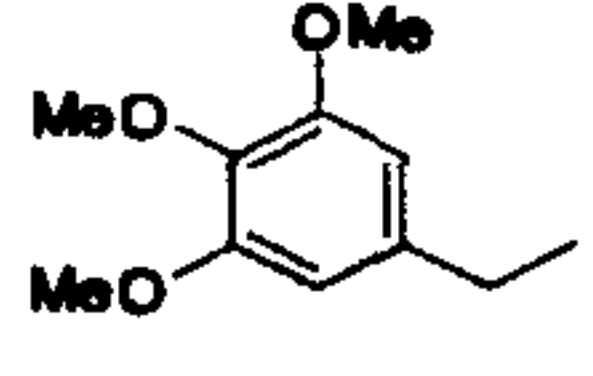
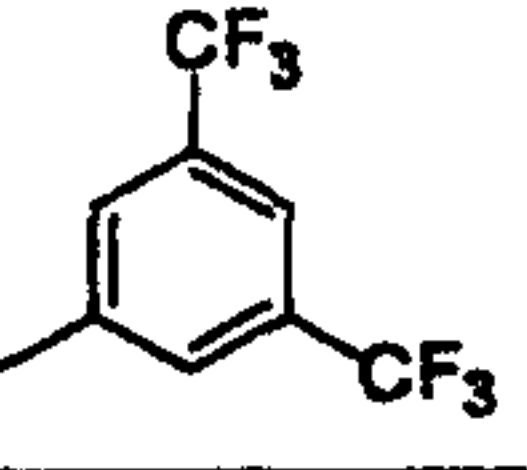
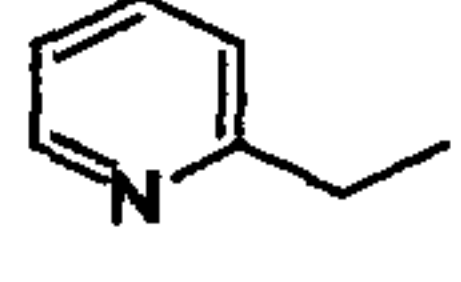
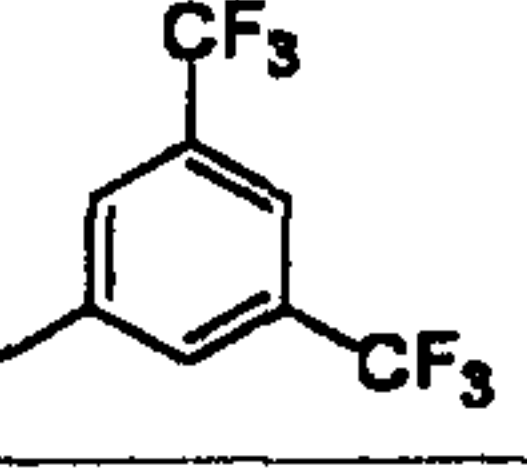
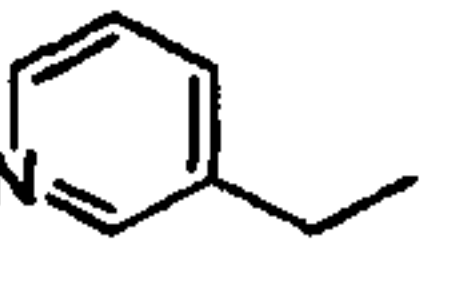
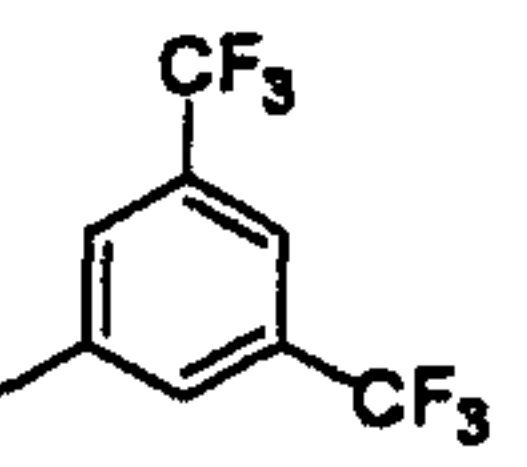
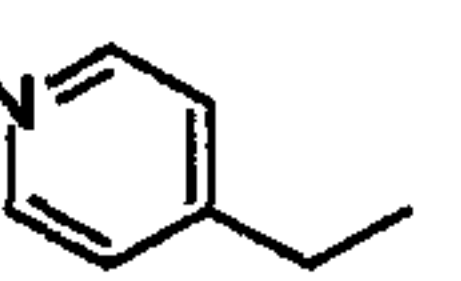
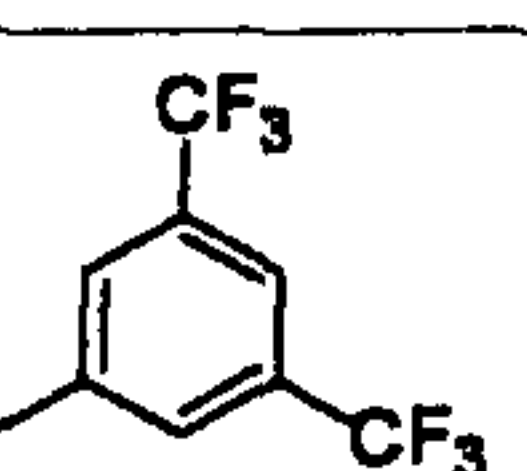
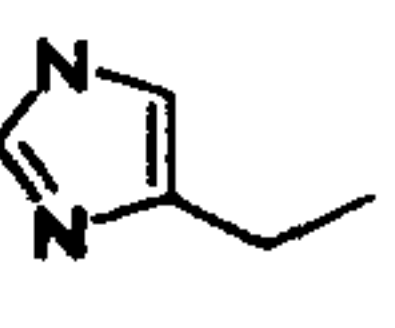
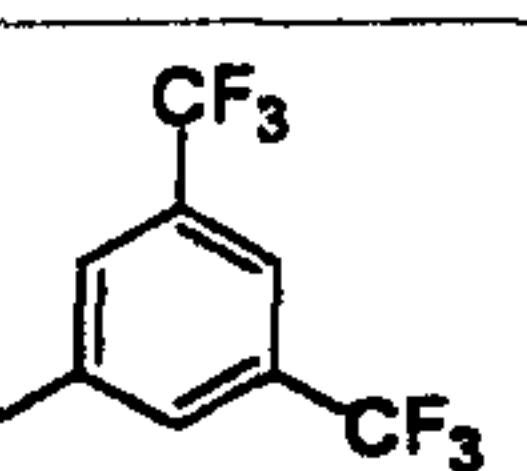
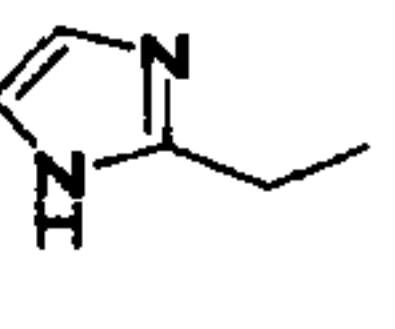
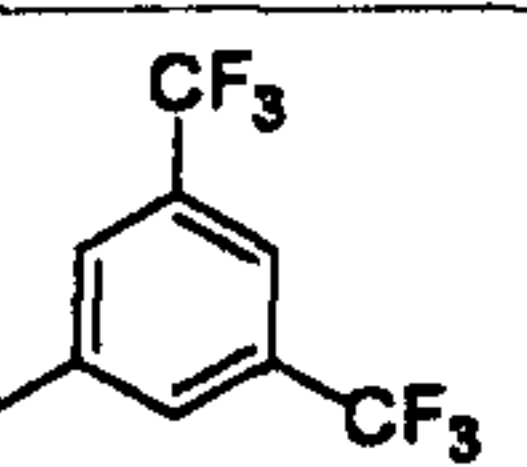
MS (ESI+): 536 (M+H)

The compounds of the following Examples were synthesized from the compounds obtained in Examples 25 and 152 as starting materials by reacting and treating in the same manner as in the method described in Example 138 using the respective corresponding aldehyde derivatives.

[Table 13]



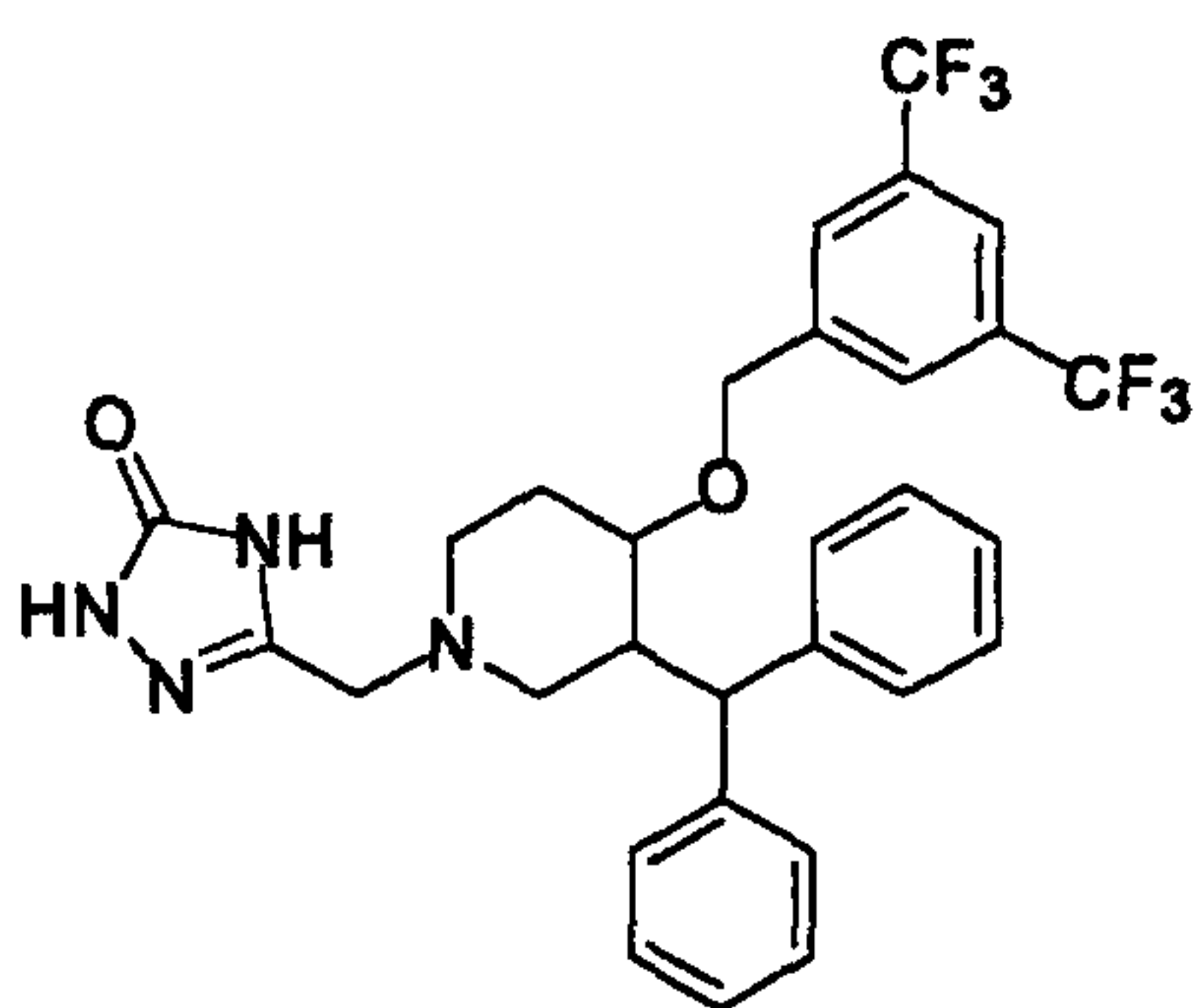
Ex. No.	Stereo-chemistry	R ¹	X	B	R ²	MS (ESI) (M+H) ⁺
138	(±)- <i>cis</i>	<i>n</i> Pr	O		H	536
139	(±)- <i>cis</i>	(CH ₃) ₂ CHCH ₂	O		H	550
140	(±)- <i>cis</i>	MeS-	O		H	582
141	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		H	574
142	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		H	590
143	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		H	623
144	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		H	674
145	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		H	585
146	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		H	585
147	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		H	585
148	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		H	574
149	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		H	574

203	(±)- <i>cis</i>	n Pr	O		4-F	572
204	(±)- <i>cis</i>	(CH ₃) ₂ CHCH ₂	O		4-F	586
205	(±)- <i>cis</i>	MeS 	O		4-F	618
206	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	610
207	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	626
208	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	659
209	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	710
210	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	621
211	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	621
212	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	621
213	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	610
214	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		4-F	610

Example 150

5-[[*cis*-3-Benzhydryl-4-[[3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-1-piperidinyl]methyl]-1,2-dihydro-3*H*-1,2,4-triazol-3-one trifluoroacetate

- 194 -



The compound (28.7 mg) obtained in Example 25 and 5-(chloromethyl)-2,4-dihydro-3H-1,2,4-triazol-3-one (12.0 mg) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 7 to obtain the title compound.

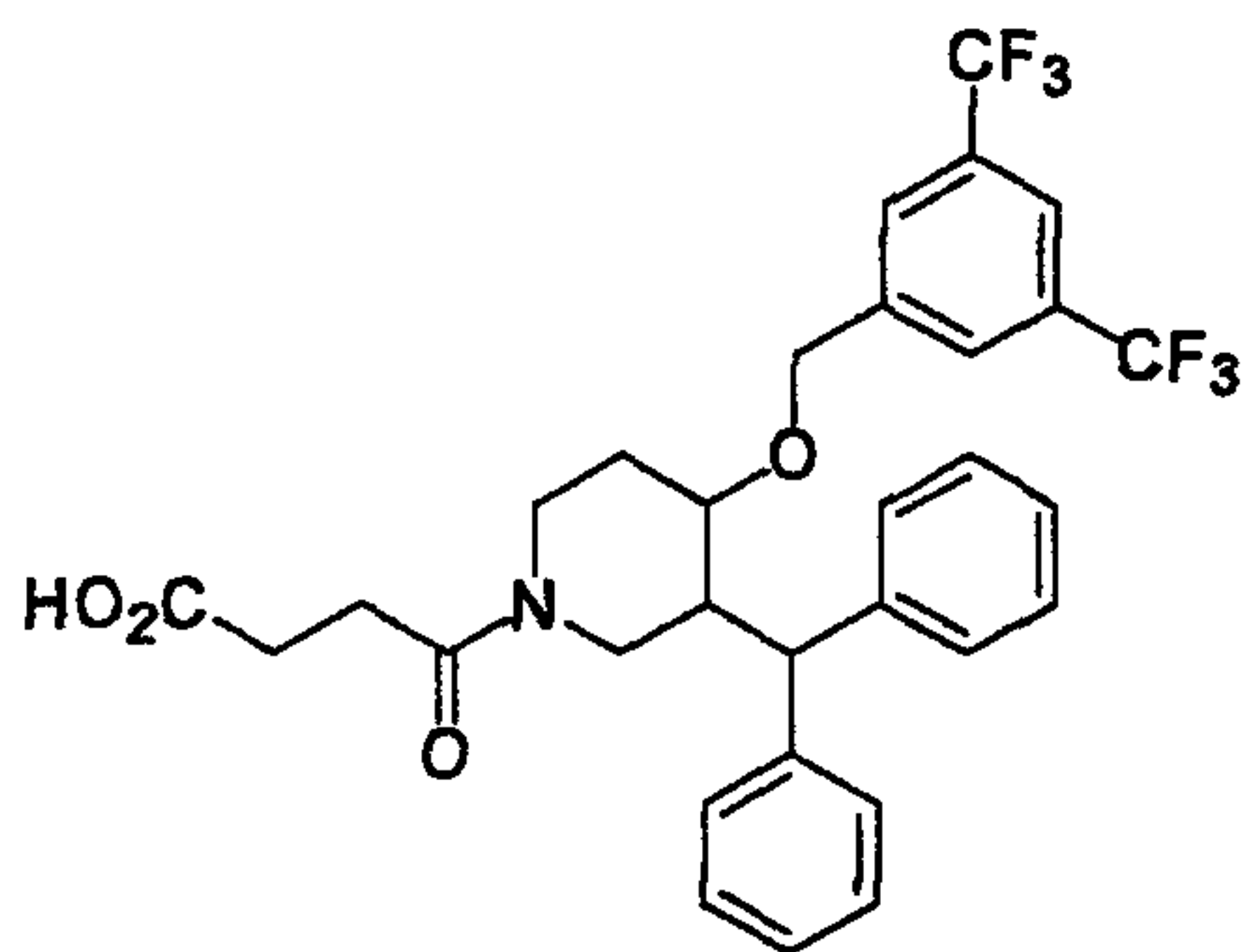
Yield: 26.9 mg

HPLC analysis (Condition B): Purity 98% (Retention time: 1.76 minutes)

MS (ESI+): 591 (M+H)

10 Example 151

4-[cis-3-Benzhydryl-4-[[3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-1-piperidinyl]-4-oxobutanoic acid



15 To a solution of the compound (36.4 mg) obtained in Example 99 in methanol (2.0 ml), a solution of an aqueous 1 N NaOH solution (0.9 ml) was added, and the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 14 hours. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and then the residue was poured into ethyl acetate and a diluted aqueous hydrochloric acid solution. The organic layer was washed with saturated brine, and dried, and the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and then the residue was

20

- 195 -

purified by preparative HPLC to obtain the title compound.

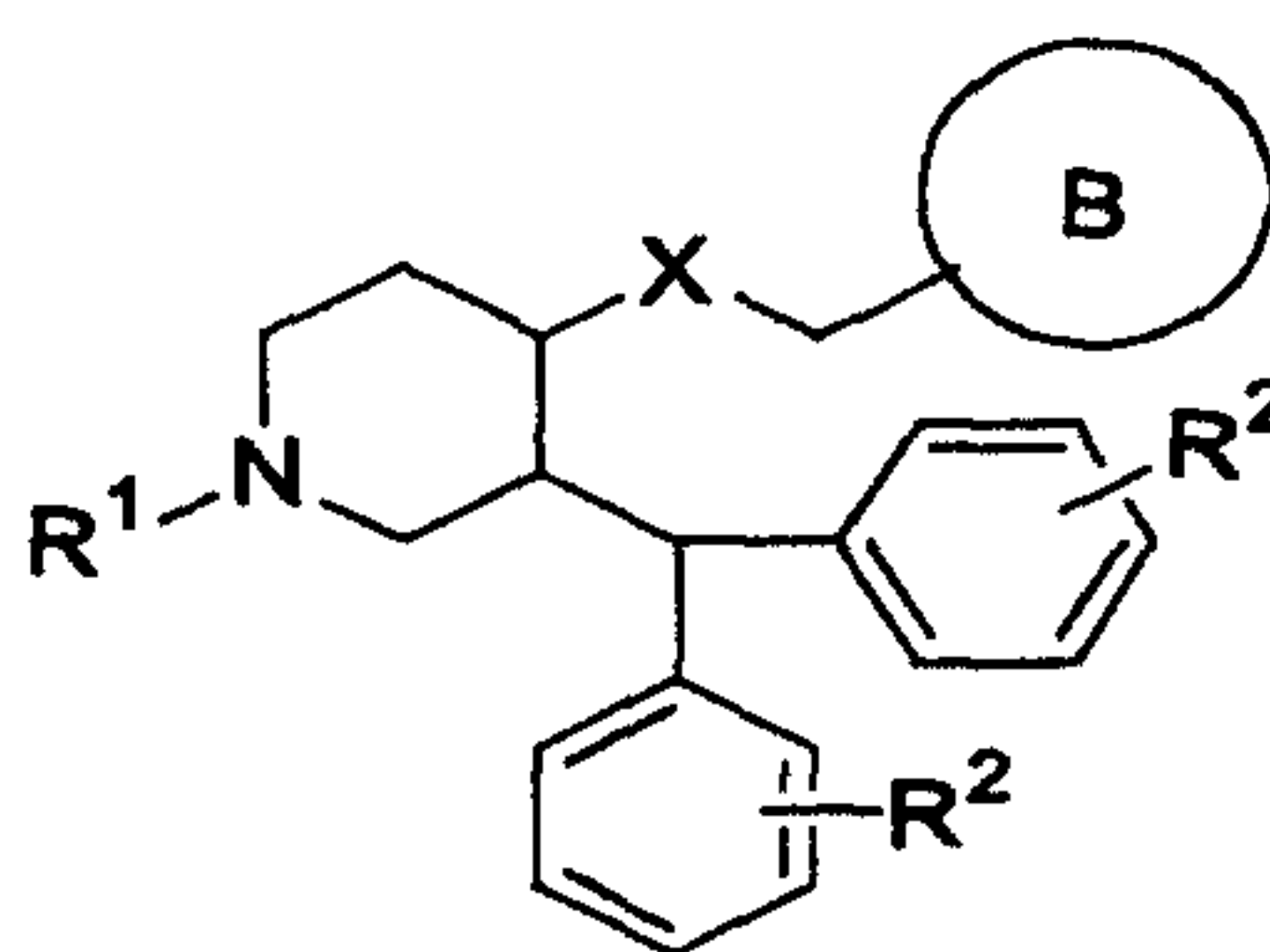
Yield: 23.3 mg

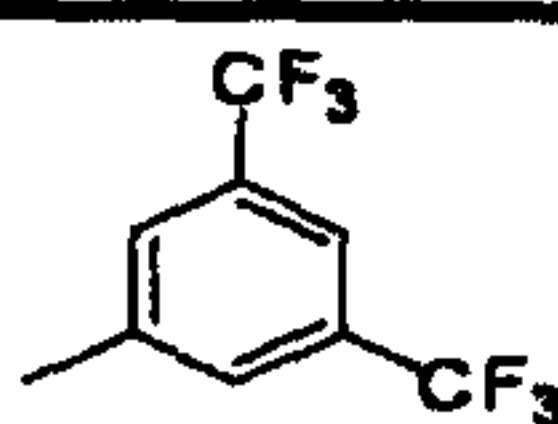
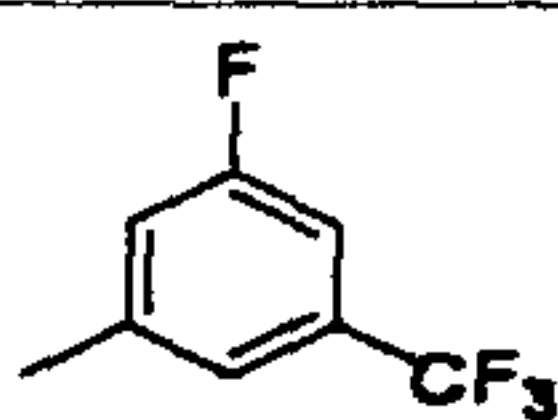
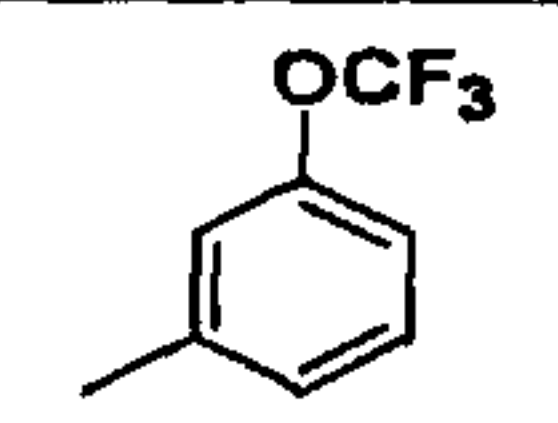
HPLC analysis (Condition B): Purity 90% (Retention time: 2.27 minutes)

5 MS (ESI+): 594 (M+H)

The compounds of the following Examples were synthesized from the compound obtained in Process 4 of Reference Example 3 or a known 3-benzhydryl-4-oxopiperidine-1-carboxylic acid tert-butyl ester derivatives as a starting
10 material by reacting and treating in the same manner as in the method described in Process 5 of Reference Example 3 and Example 25 using the respective corresponding benzyl halide derivatives.

[Table 14]



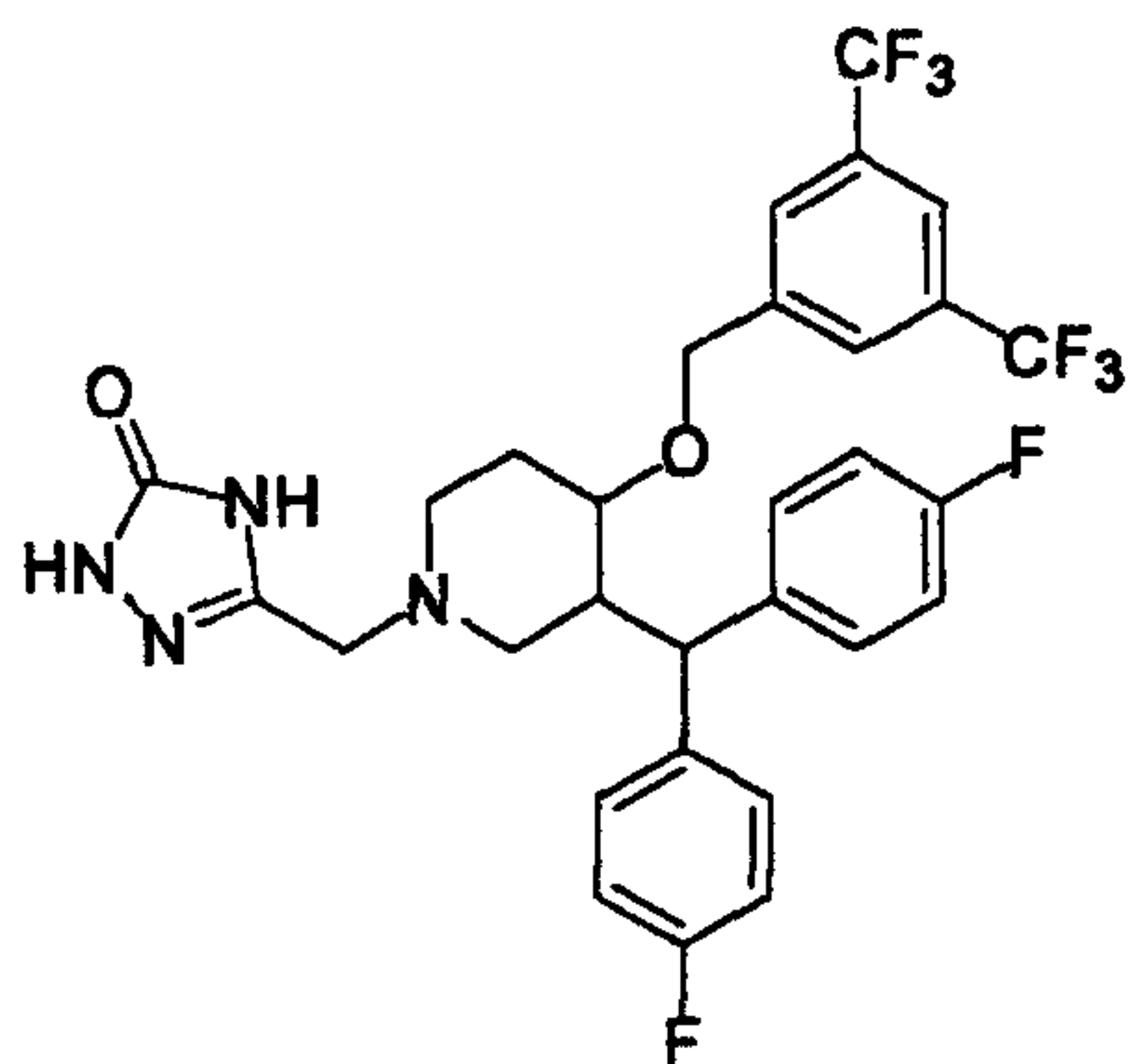
Ex. No.	Stereo-chemistry	R ¹	X	B	R ²	MS (ESI) (M+H) ⁺
152	(±)- <i>cis</i>	H	O		4-F	530
217	(±)- <i>cis</i>	H	O		4-F	480
244	(±)- <i>cis</i>	H	O		4-F	478

15

Example 215

5-[[*cis*-3-[Bis(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-4-[[3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-1-piperidinyl]methyl]-1,2-
20 dihydro-3H-1,2,4-triazol-3-one trifluoroacetate

- 196 -



The compound (31.7 mg) obtained in Example 152 and 5-(chloromethyl)-2,4-dihydro-3H-1,2,4-triazol-3-one (12.0 mg) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 7 to obtain the title compound.

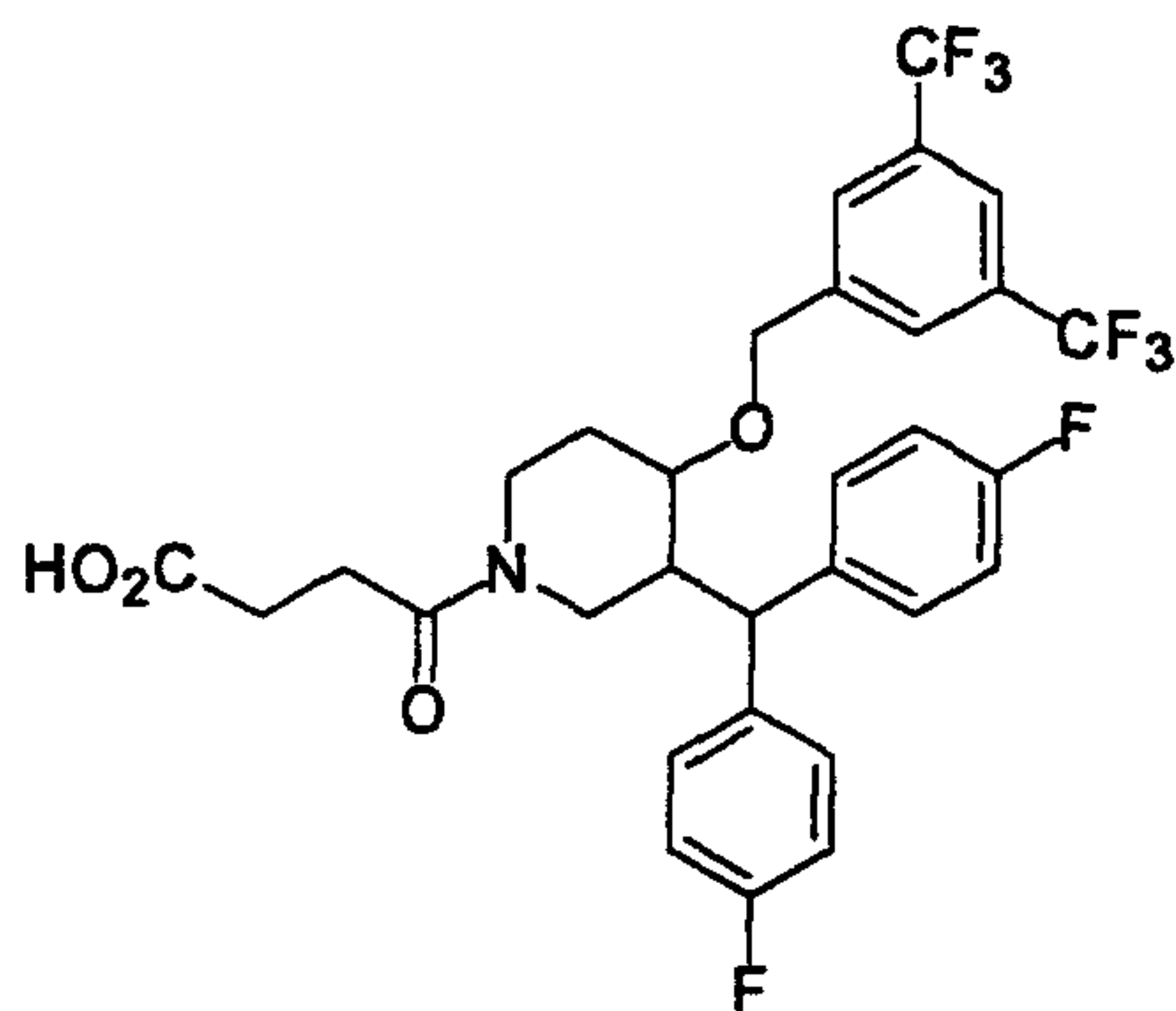
Yield: 19.6 mg

HPLC analysis (Condition B): Purity 93% (Retention time: 1.76 minutes)

MS (ESI+): 627 (M+H)

10 Example 216

4-[cis-3-[Bis(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-4-[[3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-1-piperidinyl]-4-oxobutanoic acid



15 The compound (38.6 mg) obtained in Example 164 was reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 151 to obtain the title compound.

Yield: 18.8 mg

HPLC analysis (Condition B): Purity 95% (Retention time: 2.27 minutes)

MS (ESI+): 630 (M+H)

Example 245

3-Benzhydryl-N-(2-methoxybenzyl)-4-piperidineamine

- 197 -

hydrochloride

(Process 1)

The compound obtained in Process 3 of Reference Example 3 was reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method
5 described in Process 2 of Reference Example 2 to obtain 4-amino-3-benzhydryl-1-piperidinecarboxylic acid tert-butyl ester.

(Process 2)

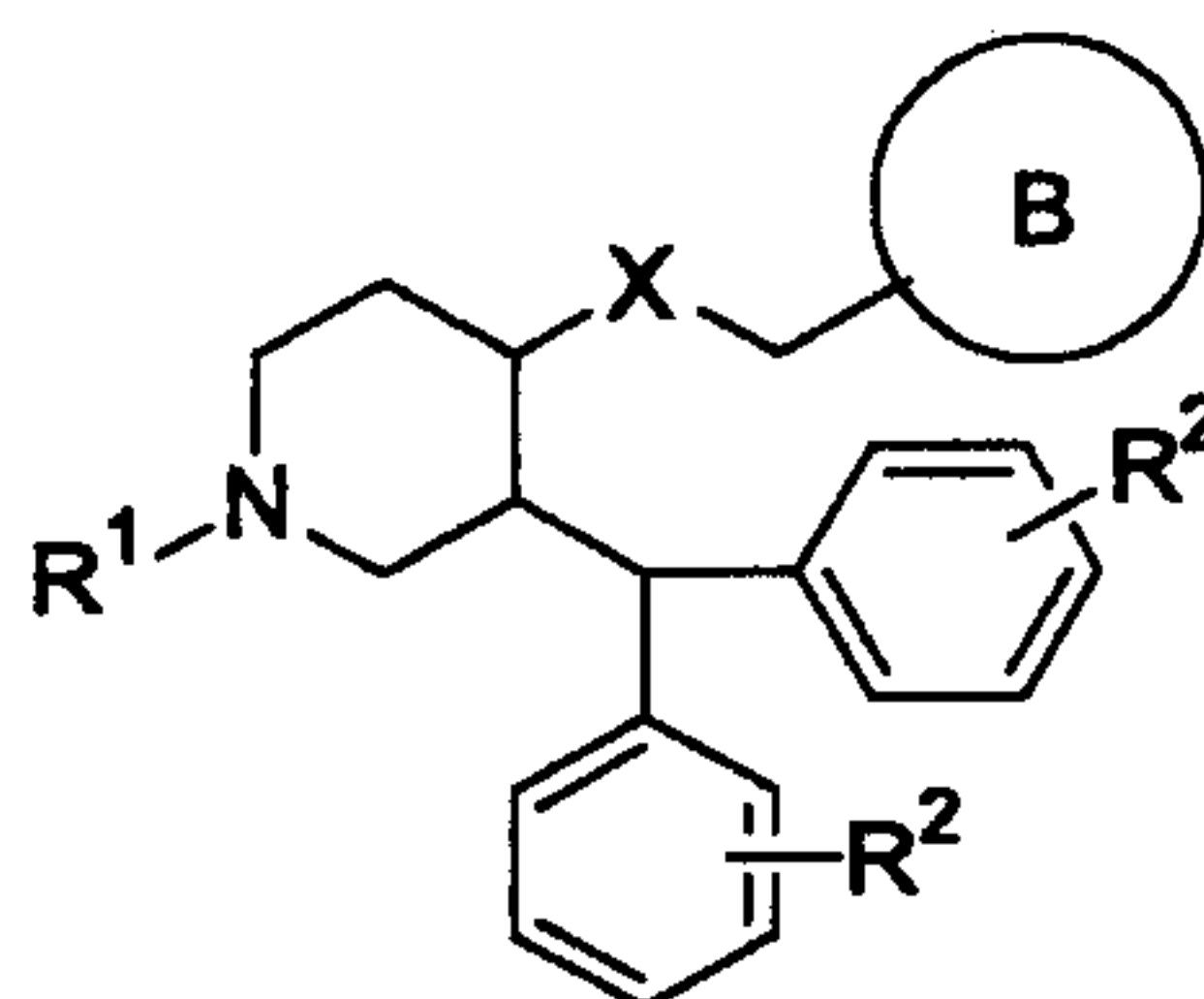
The compound obtained in Process 1 and 2-
10 methoxybenzaldehyde were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the methods described in Process 3 of Reference Example 2 and Example 1 to obtain the title compound.

MS (ESI+): 387 (M+H).

The compounds of the following Examples were
15 synthesized from the compound obtained in Process 3 of Reference Example 3 as a starting material by reacting and treating in the same manner as in the method described in Example 245 using the respective corresponding benzaldehyde derivatives.

20 [Table 15]

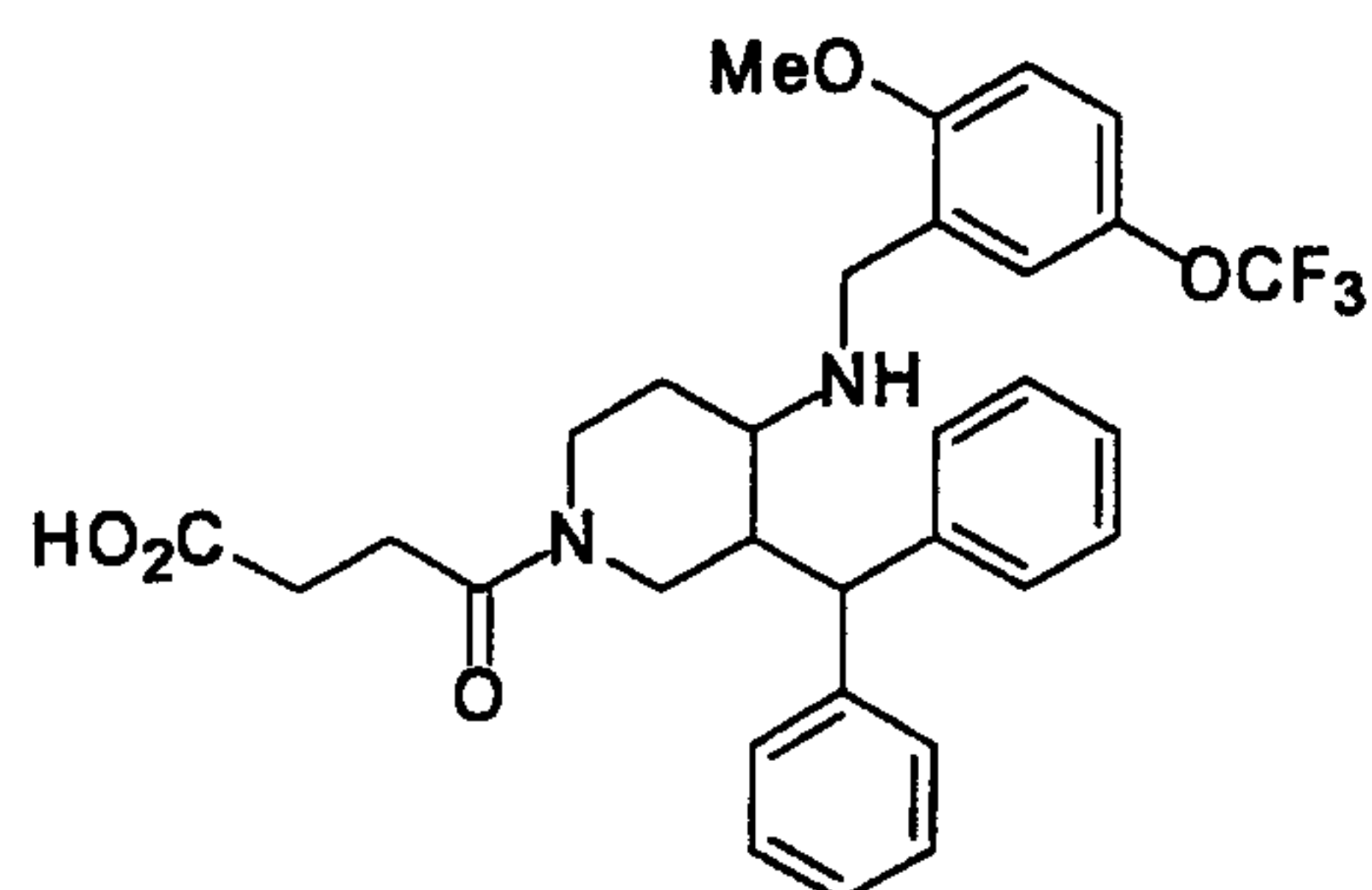
- 198 -



Ex. No.	Stereo-chemistry	R ¹	X	B	R ²	MS (ESI) (M+H) ⁺
245	(±)-cis	H	NH		H	387
271	(±)-cis	H	NH		H	493
295	(±)-cis	H	NH		H	471
320	(±)-cis	H	NH		H	465, 467

Example 319

4-[cis-3-Benzhydryl-4-[[2-methoxy-5-(trifluoromethoxy)benzyl]amino]-1-piperidinyl]-4-oxobutanoic
 5 acid trifluoroacetate



The compound (32.5 mg) obtained in Example 314 was reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 151 to obtain the title compound.

10 Yield: 20.7 mg

HPLC analysis (Condition B): Purity 97% (Retention time: 1.61 minutes)

MS (ESI+): 571 (M+H)

Example 343

15 cis-3-[Bis(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-4-[(3,5-

- 199 -

dimethylbenzyl)amino]-N-ethyl-1-piperidinecarboxamide
trifluoroacetate

(Process 1)

To a solution of 4-amino-3-[bis(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-
5 1-piperidinecarboxylic acid tert-butyl ester (9.92 g) in THF
(80 ml), 1-[[(benzyloxy)carbonyl]oxy]pyrrolidone-2,5-dione
(6.75 g) was added, and the reaction mixture was stirred at
room temperature for 14 hours. The reaction mixture was
concentrated under reduced pressure, and then the residue was
10 dissolved in ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed
with an aqueous 10% citric acid solution, an aqueous 5%
sodium hydrogen carbonate solution and saturated brine, dried,
and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure.
The obtained residue was isolated and purified by silica gel
15 column chromatography (hexane : ethyl acetate = 2 : 1) to
obtain cis-[[(benzyloxy)carbonyl]amino]-3-[bis(4-
fluorophenyl)methyl]-1-piperidinecarboxylic acid tert-butyl
ester as colorless amorphous (9.30 g).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃): δ 1.37 (9H, s), 1.68 (1H, br), 1.77 (1H,
20 br), 2.50 (1H, br), 2.96 (1H, br), 3.74 (4H, m), 4.85 (1H,
br), 4.95 (1H, d, J=11.4 Hz), 5.12 (1H, d, J=11.4 Hz), 6.87
(2H, t, J=8.6 Hz), 6.98 (2H, t, J=8.6 Hz), 7.09-7.39 (9H, m).

(Process 2)

To a solution of the compound (9.20 g) obtained in
25 Process 1 in THF (40 ml), 4 N hydrochloric acid/ethyl acetate
(15 ml) was added, and the reaction mixture was stirred at
room temperature for 3 hours. The reaction mixture was
concentrated under reduced pressure, and then the residue was
crystallized from diethyl ether to obtain benzyl-cis-3-
30 [bis(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-1-piperidinylcarbamate
hydrochloride as white powder (7.21 g).

MS (ESI⁺): 437 (M+H)

(Process 3)

To a solution of the compound (3.00 g) obtained in
35 Process 2 and diisopropylethylamine (1.1 ml) in THF (40 ml),

- 200 -

ethyl isocyanate (0.55 ml) was added, and the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 12 hours. The reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure, and then the residue was dissolved in ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with an aqueous 5% sodium hydrogen carbonate solution and saturated brine, dried, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The obtained residue was isolated and purified by amine-treated silica gel column chromatography (hexane : ethyl acetate = 2 : 3) to obtain benzyl-cis-3-[bis(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-1-[(ethylamino)carbonyl]piperidinylocarbamate as white powder (2.75 g).

MS (ESI+): 508 (M+H)

(Process 4)

To a solution of the compound (2.75 g) obtained in Process 3 in methanol (100 ml), 10% Pd-C (0.28 g) was added, and the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 12 hours under hydrogen atmosphere of 1 atm. The catalyst was removed by filtration, and then the reaction solution was concentrated under reduced pressure. To the obtained residue, 4 N hydrochloric acid/ethyl acetate (5 ml) was added, and the mixture was crystallized from diethyl ether to obtain cis-3-[bis(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-N-ethyl-1-piperidinecarboxamide hydrochloride as white powder (2.53 g).

MS (ESI+): 374 (M+H)

Melting point: 184 - 186°C.

(Process 5)

To a solution of the compound (24.5 mg) obtained in Process 4 and 3,5-dimethylbenzaldehyde (16.1 mg) in dichloromethane (2.0 ml), NaBH(OAc)₃ (20.0 mg) was added, and the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 12 hours. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and then the residue was poured into a mixed solution of ethyl acetate and water. The organic layer was washed with saturated brine, and dried, and the solvent was evaporated

- 201 -

under reduced pressure, and then the residue was purified by preparative HPLC to obtain the title compound.

Yield: 14.0 mg

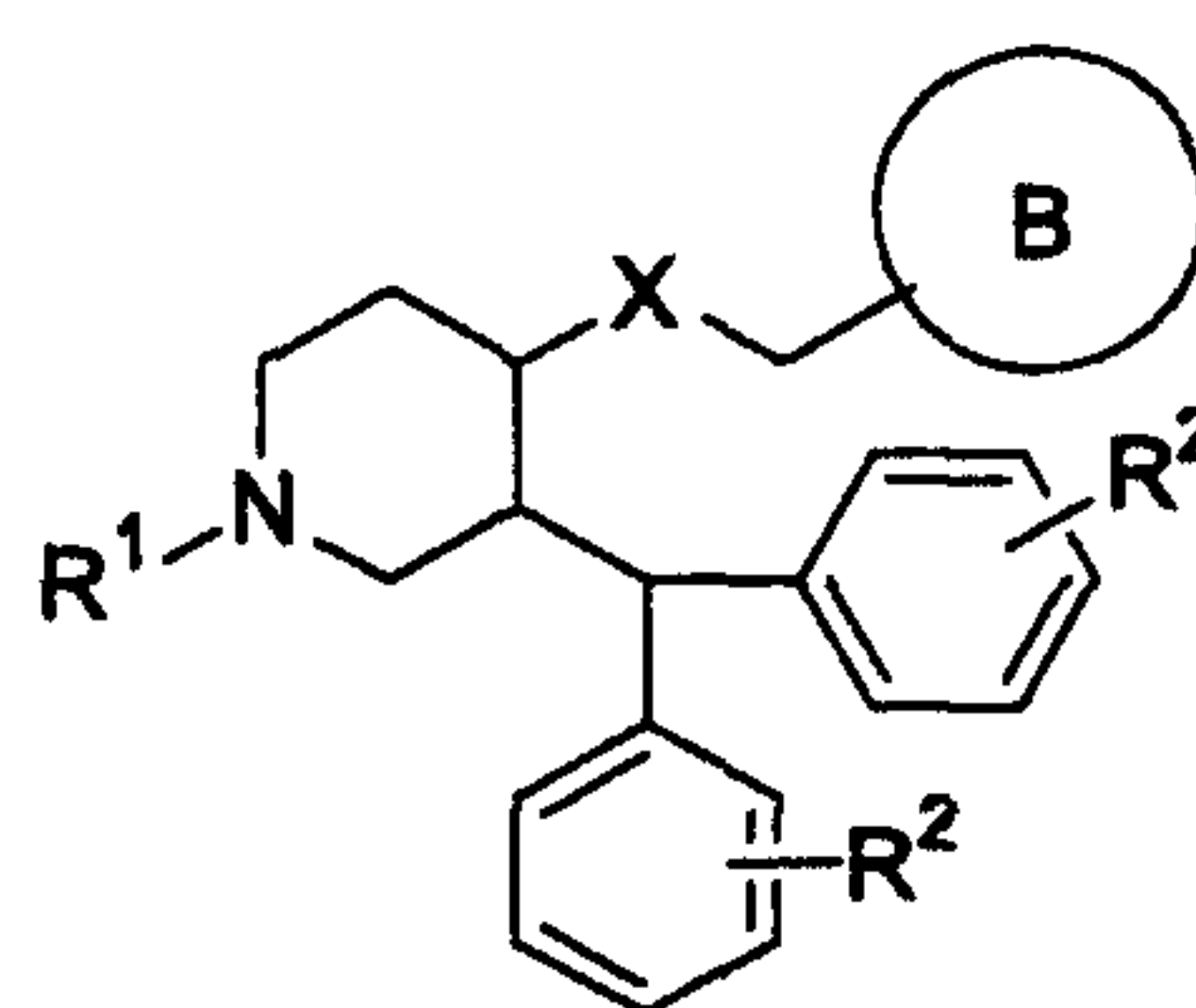
HPLC analysis (Condition B): Purity 100% (Retention
5 time: 1.84 minutes)

MS (ESI+): 492 (M+H)

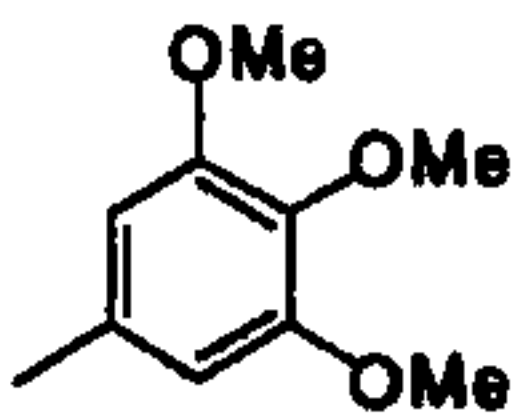
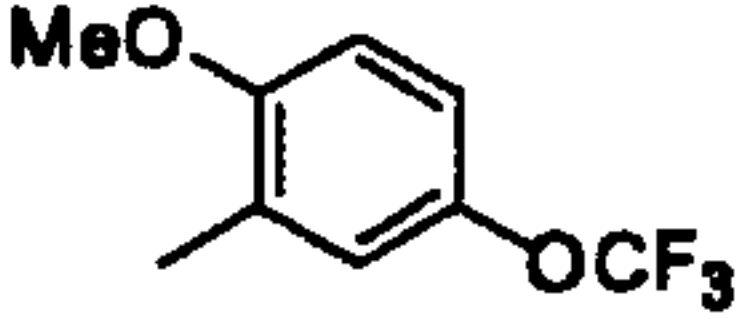
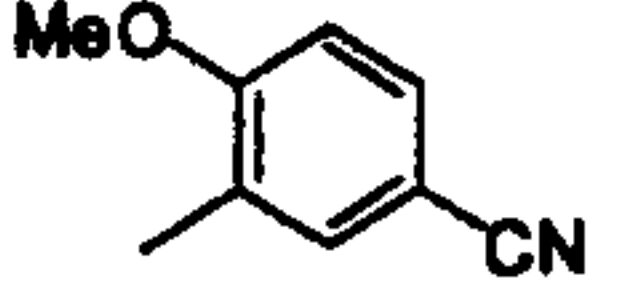
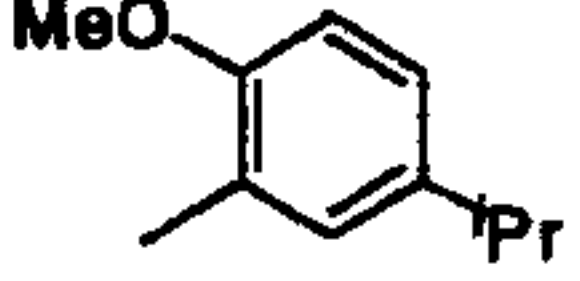
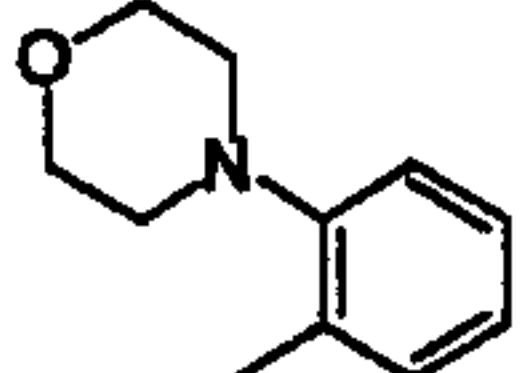
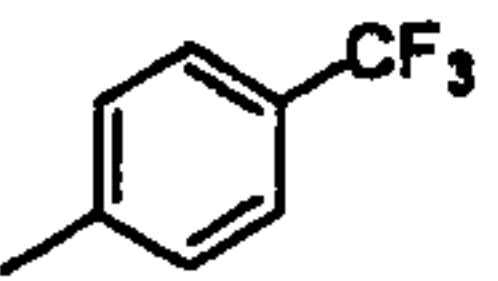
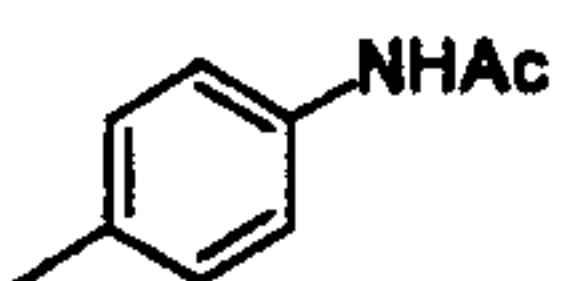
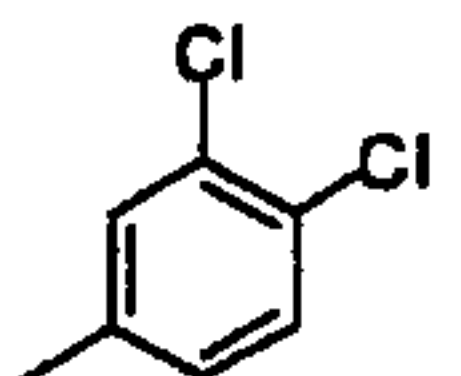
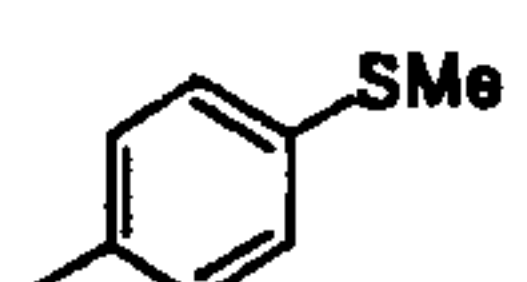
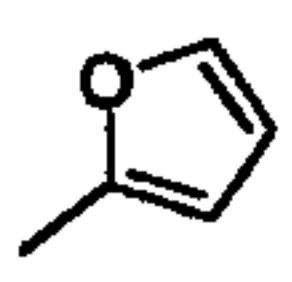
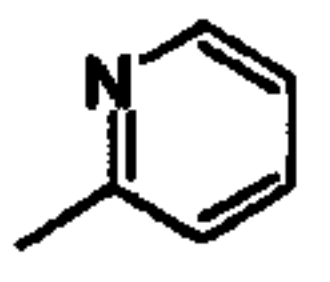
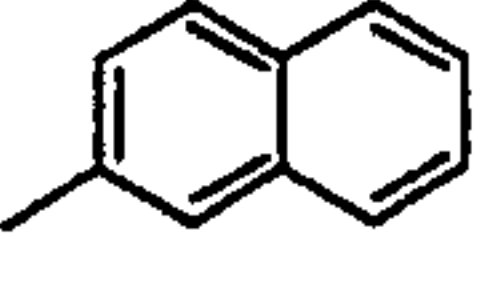
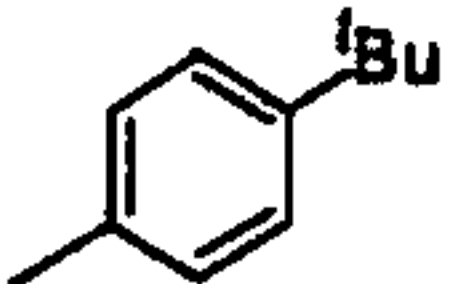
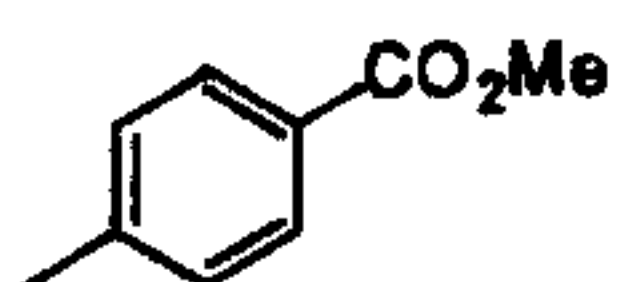
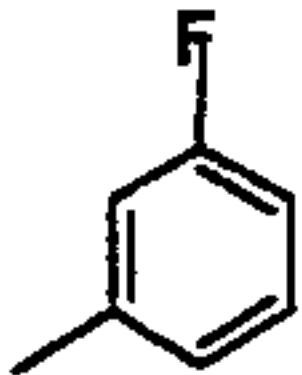
The compounds of the following Examples were synthesized from the compound obtained in Process 4 of Example 343 as a starting material by reacting and treating
10 in the same manner as in the method described in Process 5 of Example 343 using the respective corresponding aldehyde derivatives.

[Table 16]

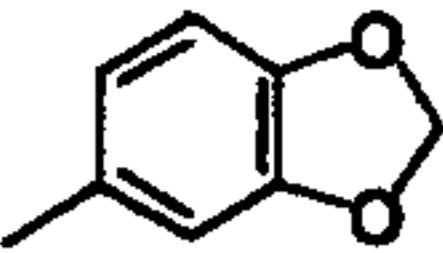
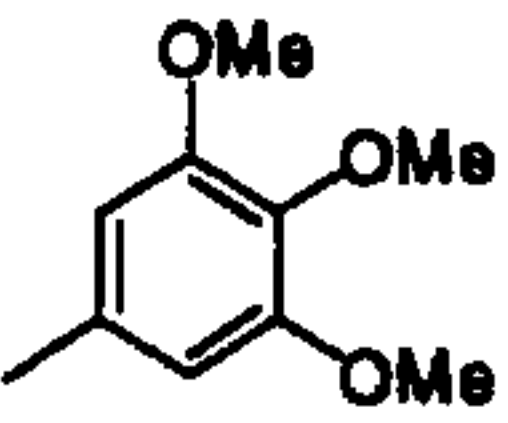
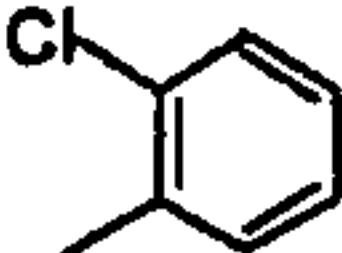
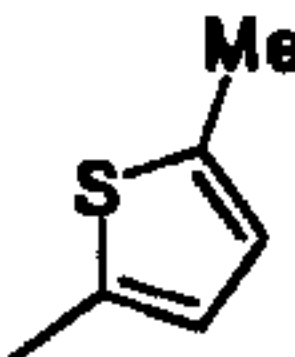
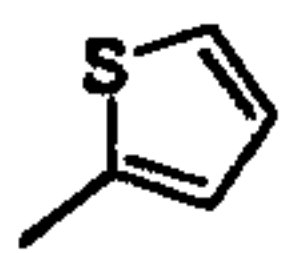
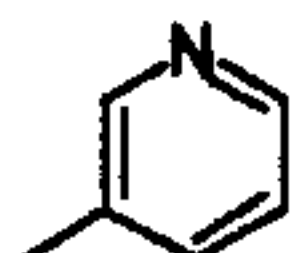
- 202 -



Ex. No.	Stereo-chemistry	R ¹	X	B	R ²	MS (ESI) (M+H) ⁺
343	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH		F	492
344	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH		F	494
345	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH		F	508
346	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH		F	532
347	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH		F	489
348	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH		F	548
349	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH		F	600
350	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH		F	492
351	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH		F	524
352	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH		F	524

353	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH		F	554
354	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH		F	578
355	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH		F	519
356	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH		F	536
357	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH		F	549
358	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH		F	532
359	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH		F	521
360	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH		F	532
361	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH		F	510
362	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH		F	454
363	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH		F	465
364	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH		F	514
365	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH		F	520
366	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH		F	522
367	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH		F	482

Example 374

368	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH		F	508
369	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH		F	554
370	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH		F	498
371	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH		F	484
372	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH		F	470
373	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH		F	465

cis-3-[Bis(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-1-[3-(diethylamino)propanoyl]-N-(3,5-dimethylbenzyl)-4-piperidineamine trifluoroacetate

5 (Process 1)

To a solution of the compound (3.00 g) obtained in Process 2 of Example 343, diisopropylethylamine (2.4 ml) and 3-diethylaminopropionic acid hydrochloride (1.38 g) in dichloromethane (40 ml), WSC·HCl (1.46 g) and HOBt·H₂O (1.03 g) were added, and the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 24 hours. The reaction mixture was poured into water, and then the product was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with an aqueous 5% sodium hydrogen carbonate solution and saturated brine, dried, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The obtained residue was isolated and purified by amine-treated silica gel column chromatography (hexane : ethyl acetate = 1 : 3) to obtain benzyl-*cis*-3-[bis(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-1-[3-(diethylamino)propanoyl]piperidinylcarbamate as colorless amorphous (2.75 g).

- 205 -

MS (ESI+): 564 (M+H)

(Process 2)

The compound (2.75 g) obtained in Process 1 was reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in
5 Process 4 of Example 343 to obtain cis-3-[bis(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-1-[3-(diethylamino)propanoyl]piperidineamine hydrochloride as white powder (2.53 g).

MS (ESI+): 430 (M+H)

10 Melting point: 183 - 185°C.

(Process 3)

The compound (28.0 mg) obtained in Process 2 and 3,5-dimethylbenzaldehyde (16.1 mg) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Process 5 of
15 Example 343 to obtain the title compound.

Yield: 24.3 mg

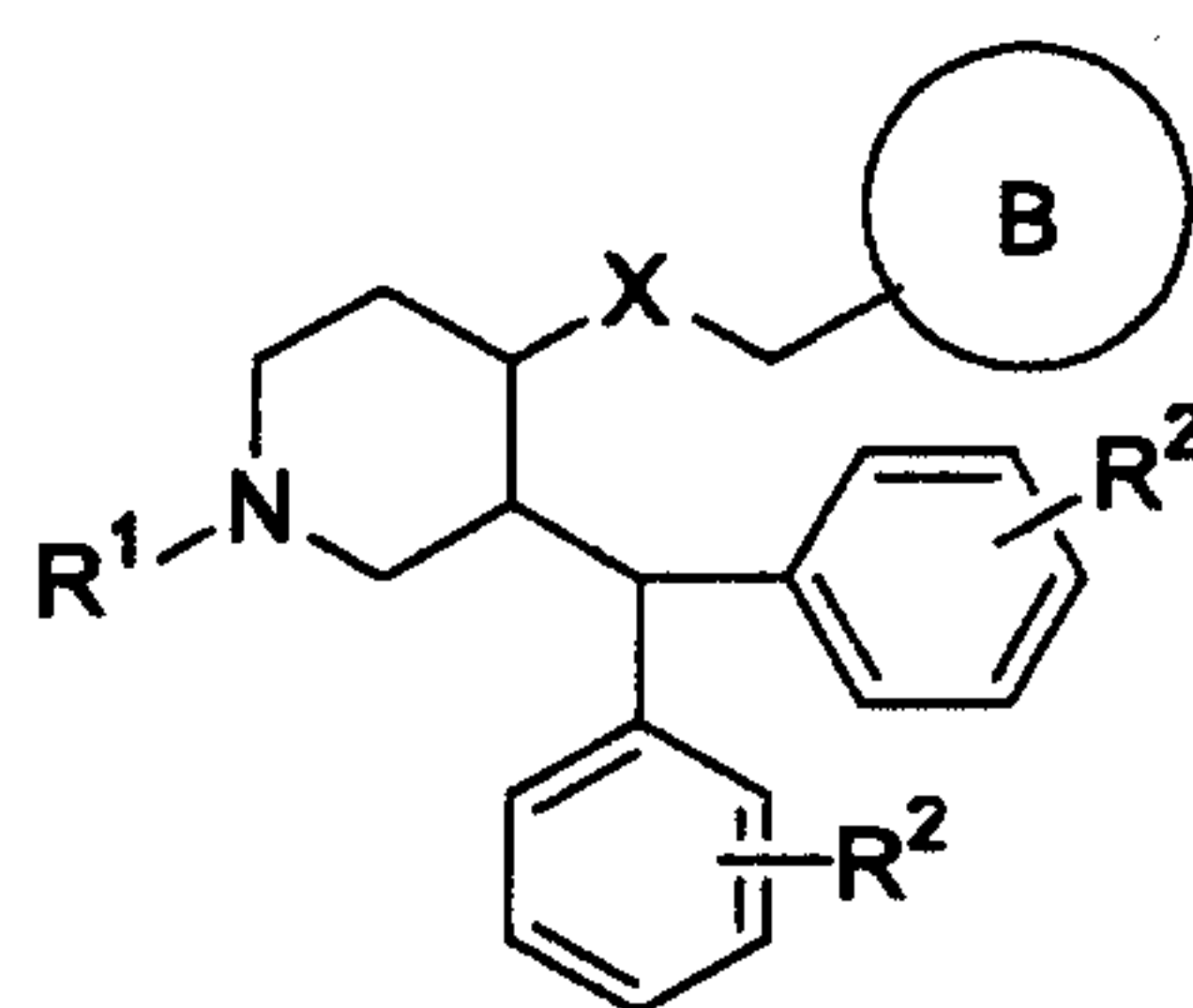
HPLC analysis (Condition B): Purity 99% (Retention time: 1.68 minutes)

MS (ESI+): 548 (M+H)

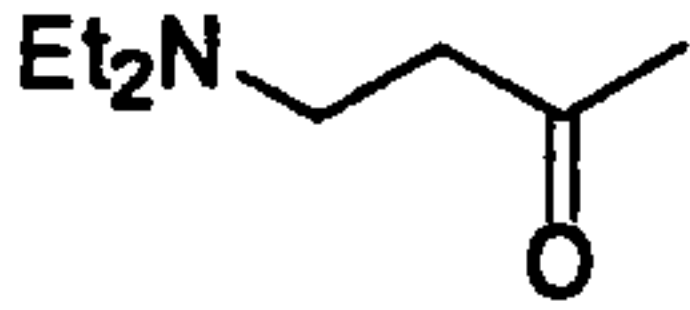
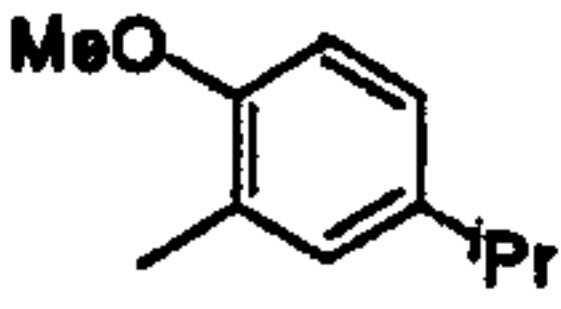
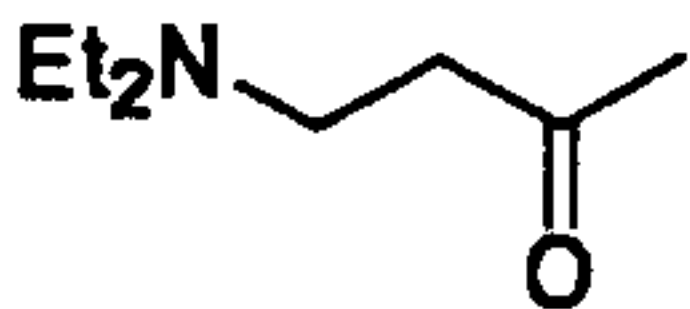
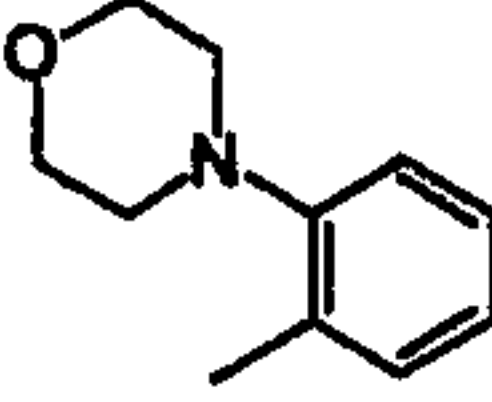
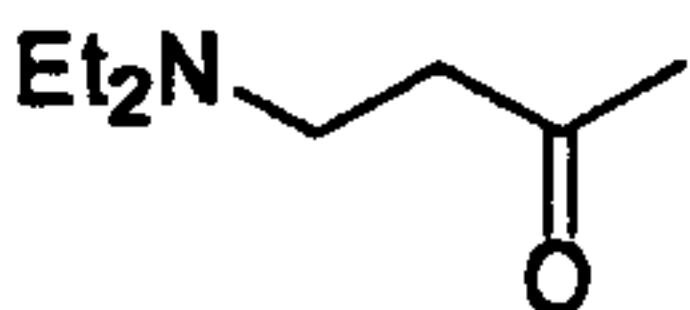
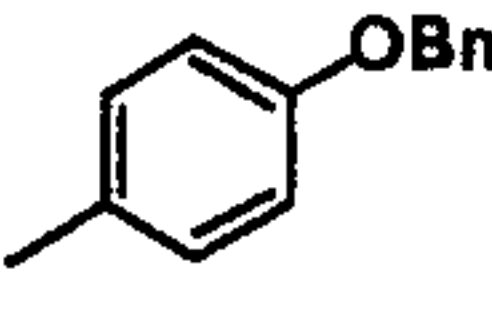
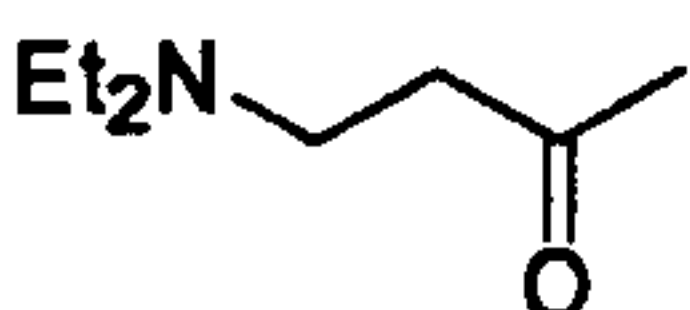
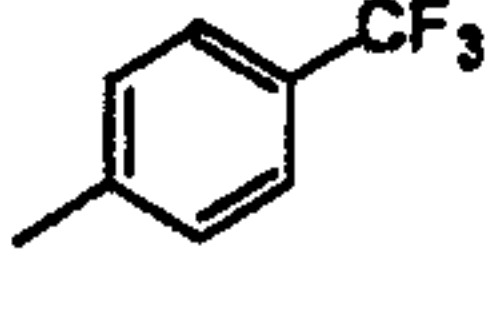
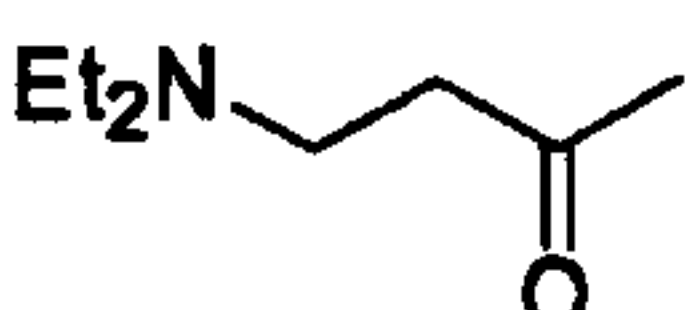
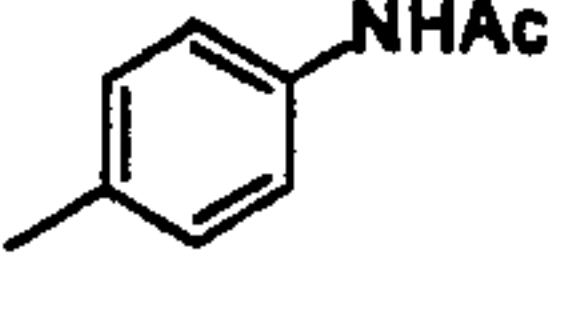
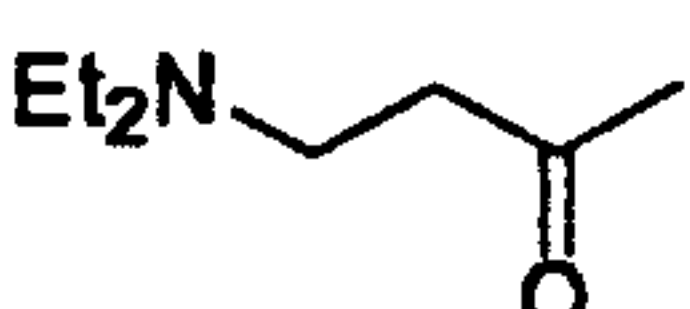
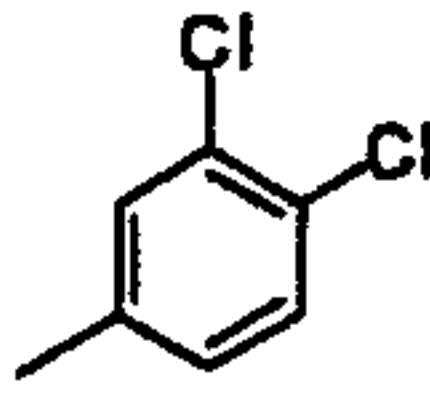
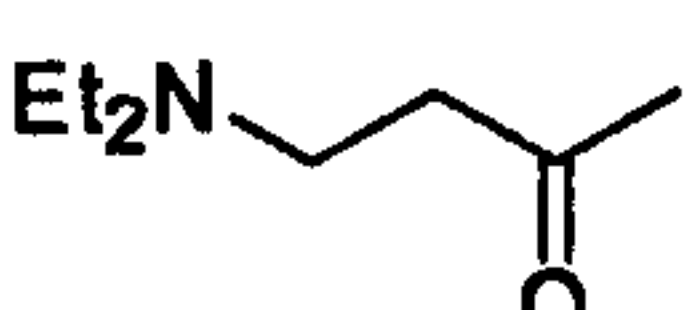
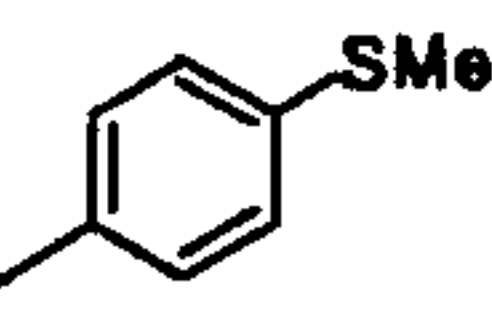
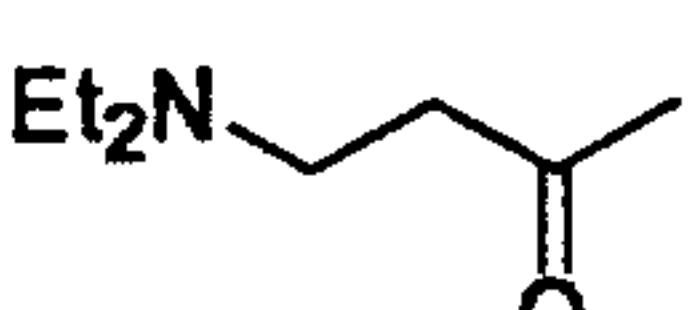
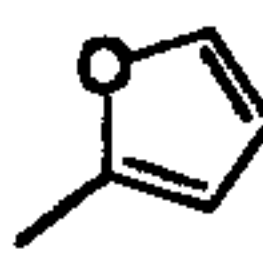
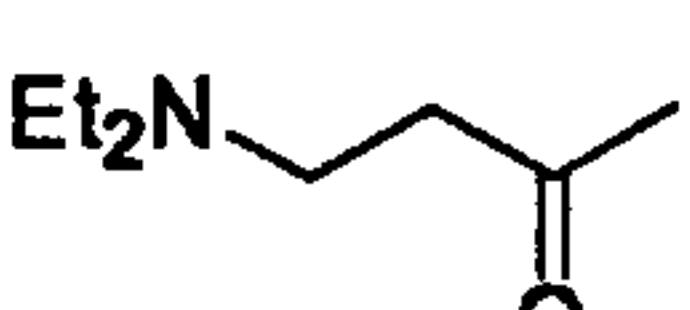
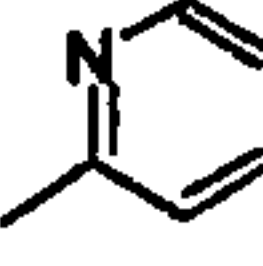
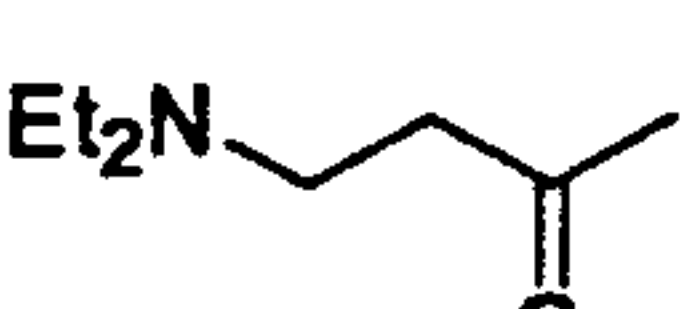
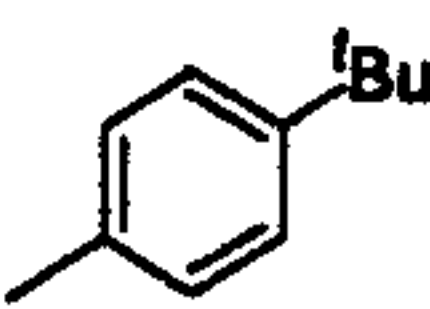
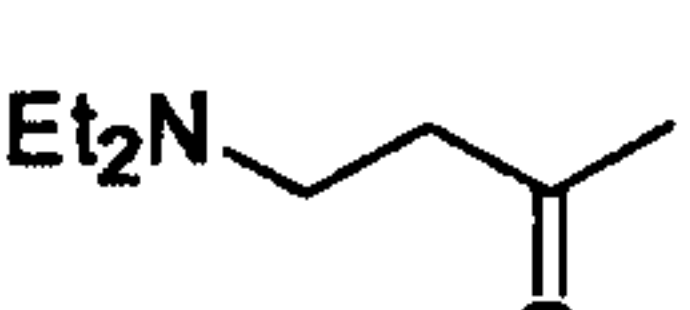
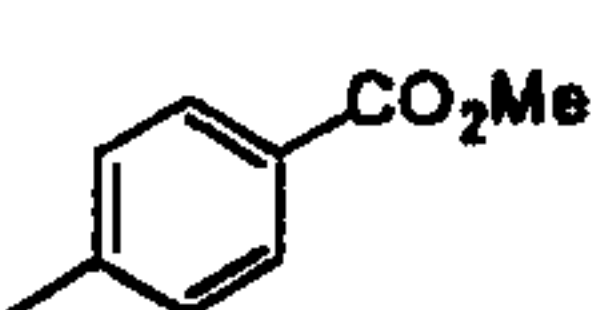
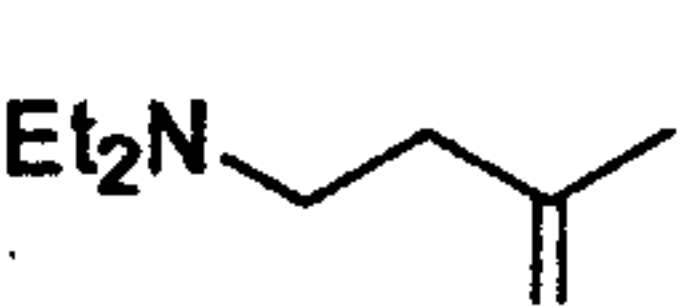
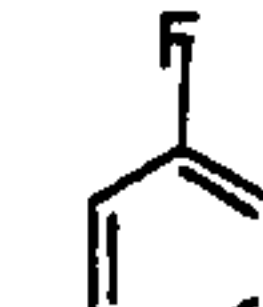
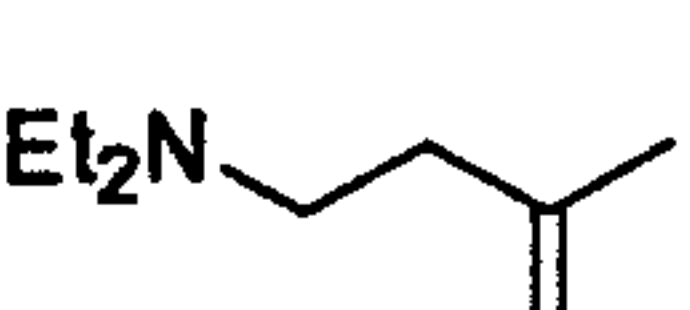
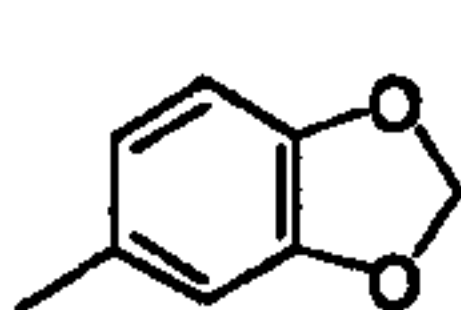
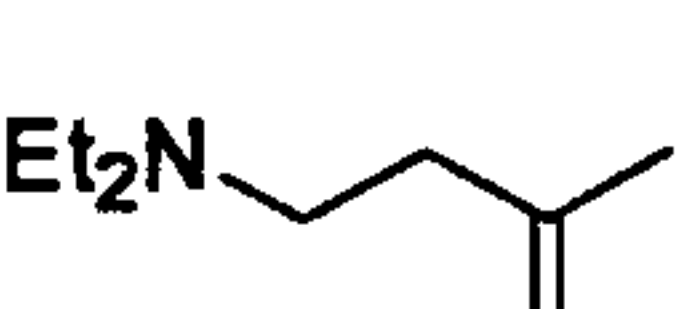
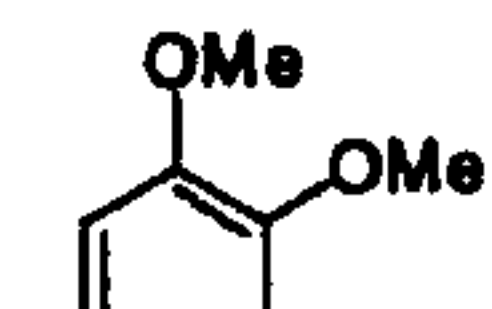
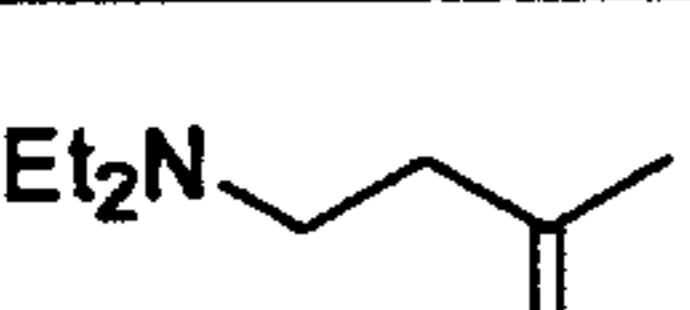
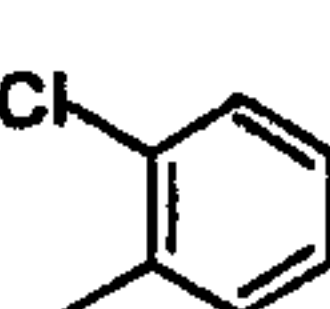
20 The compounds of the following Examples were synthesized from the compound obtained in Process 2 of Example 374 as a starting material by reacting and treating in the same manner as in the method described in Process 3 of Example 374 using the respective corresponding aldehyde
25 derivatives.

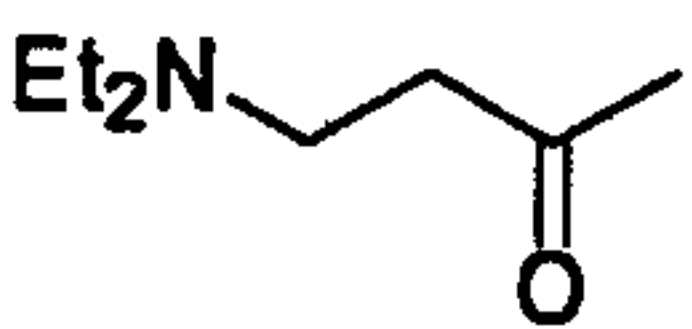
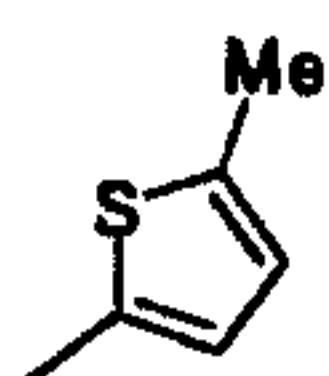
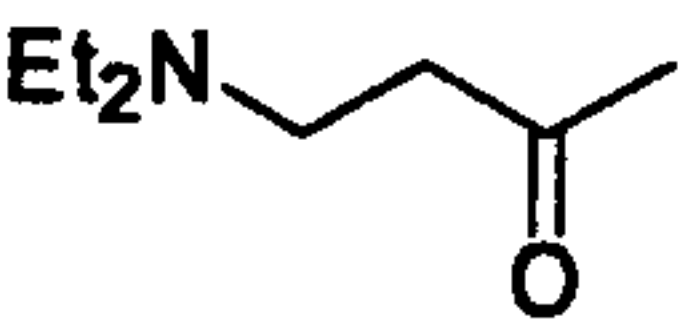
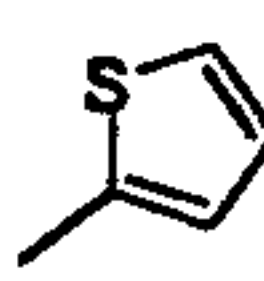
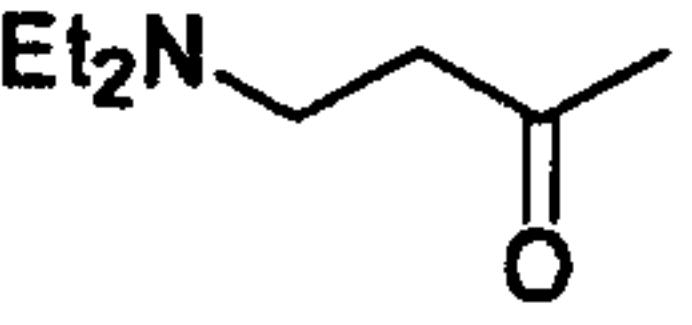
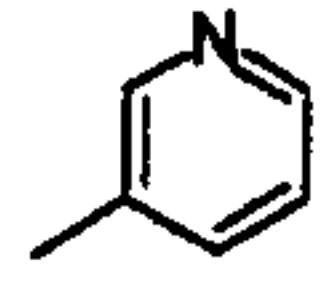
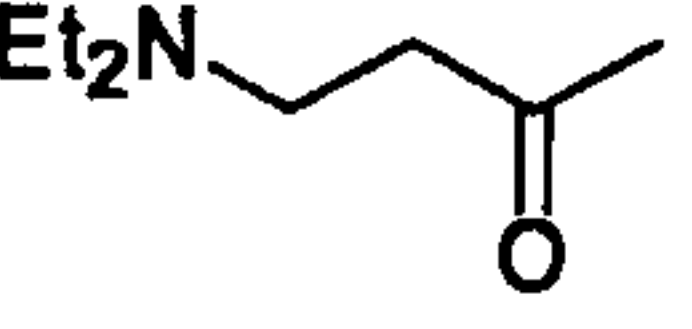
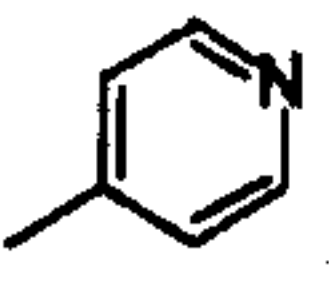
[Table 17]

- 206 -



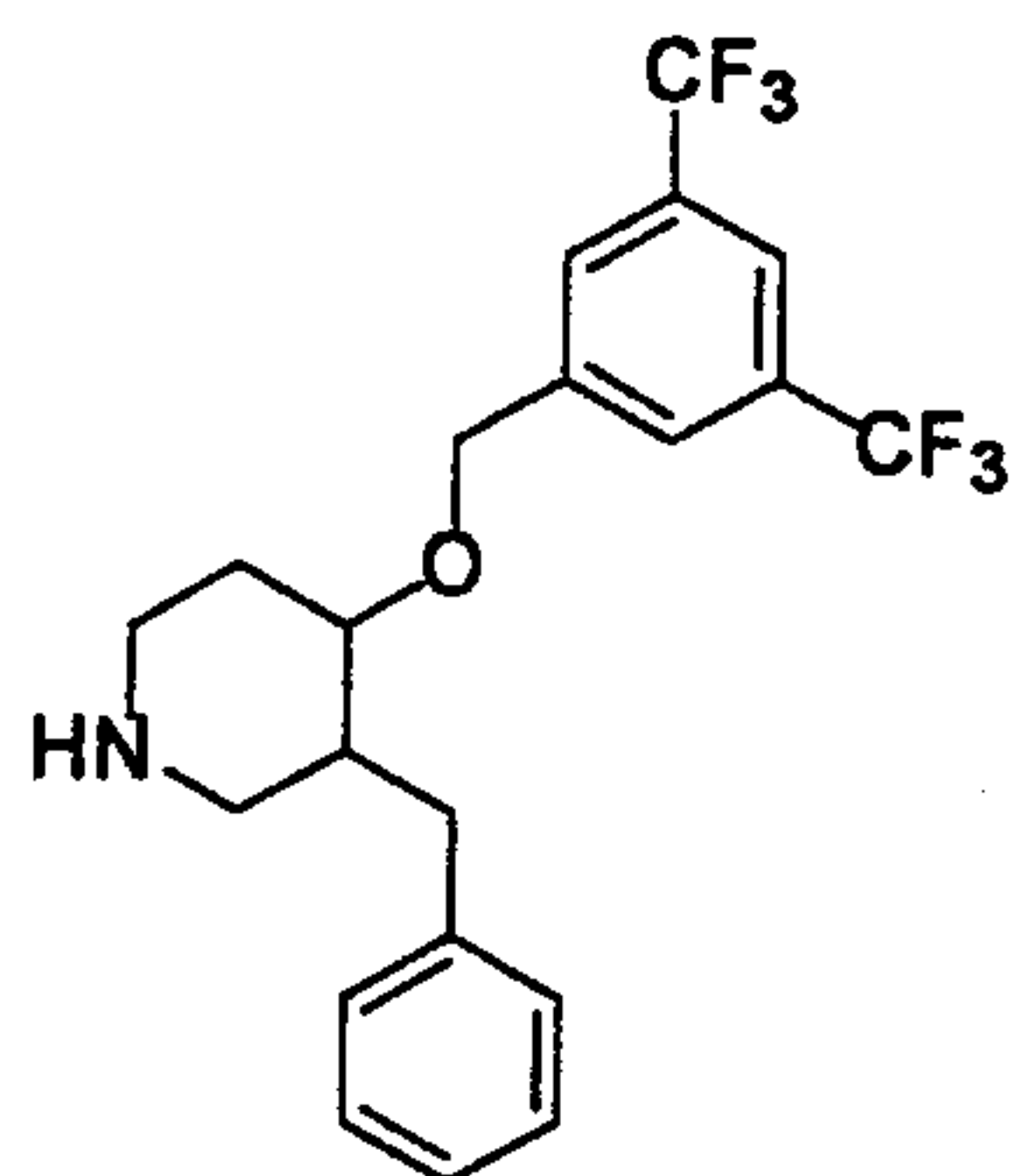
Ex. No.	Stereo-chemistry	R ¹	X	B	R ²	MS (ESI) (M+H) ⁺
374	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		F	548
375	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		F	550
376	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		F	564
377	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		F	588
378	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		F	656
379	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		F	548
380	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		F	580
381	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		F	580
382	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		F	610
383	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		F	634
384	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		F	575

385	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		F	592
386	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		F	605
387	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		F	626
388	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		F	588
389	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		F	577
390	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		F	588
391	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		F	566
392	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		F	510
393	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		F	521
394	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		F	576
395	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		F	578
396	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		F	538
397	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		F	564
398	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		F	610
399	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		F	554

400	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		F	540
401	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		F	526
402	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		F	521
403	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH		F	521

Example 404

cis-3-Benzyl-4-[[3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]piperidine



5 To a solution of the compound (4.15 g) obtained in Reference Example 55 in THF (10 ml), trifluoroacetic acid (25 ml) was added at 0°C, and the obtained mixture was stirred at room temperature for 2 hours. The reaction mixture was made basic with an aqueous 4 N sodium hydroxide solution, and then
 10 extracted with ethyl acetate. The extract was washed with an aqueous saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate solution and brine, dried, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure to obtain the title compound as pale yellow oil (3.73 g, quantitative).

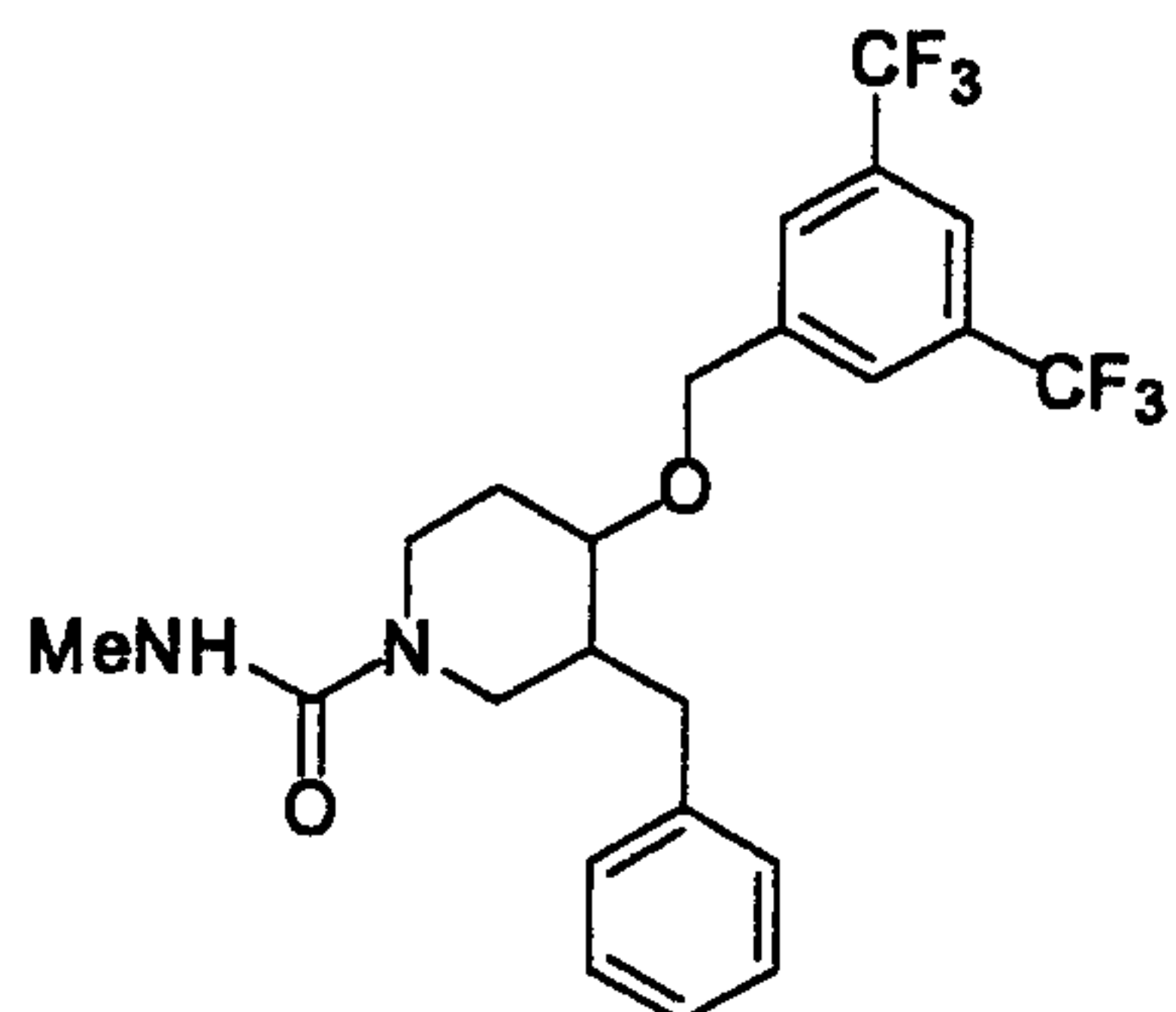
15 ¹H-NMR (CDCl₃): δ 1.65-1.90 (1H, m), 1.95-2.40 (2H, m), 2.55-2.80 (2H, m), 2.80-3.20 (4H, m), 3.60 (1H, brs), 4.42 (1H, d, J=12.6 Hz), 4.69 (1H, d, J=12.6 Hz), 5.26 (1H, brs), 7.05-7.35 (5H, m), 7.82 (2H, s), 7.85 (1H, s).

MS (ESI⁺): 418 (M+H).

- 209 -

Example 405

cis-3-Benzyl-4-[[3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-N-methyl-1-piperidinecarboxamide



5 To a solution of the compound (0.39 g) obtained in Example 404 in THF (10 ml), methyl isocyanate (0.12 ml) was added, and the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 17 hours. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and then the obtained residue was isolated
10 and purified by silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate) to obtain the title compound as colorless crystals (0.27 g, 61%).

Melting point: 160 - 161°C.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃): δ 1.5-1.7 (1H, m), 1.85-2.20 (2H, m),
15 2.57-2.82 (2H, m), 2.80 (3H, d, J=4.4 Hz), 3.14 (1H, dd, J=13.0, 9.8 Hz), 3.25-3.65 (4H, m), 4.33 (1H, q, J=4.4 Hz), 4.46 (1H, d, J=12.6 Hz), 4.70 (1H, d, J=12.6 Hz), 7.10-7.35 (5H, m), 7.83 (3H, s).

MS (ESI⁺): 475 (M+H)

20 Example 406

cis-1-Acetyl-3-benzyl-4-[[3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]piperidine

To a solution of the compound (0.40 g) obtained in Example 404 in THF (4 ml), acetyl chloride (0.075 ml) and
25 Et₃N (0.147 ml) were added at room temperature, and the reaction mixture was stirred at the same temperature for 1 hour. The reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure, and then the residue was dissolved in ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with 1 N hydrochloric acid and

- 210 -

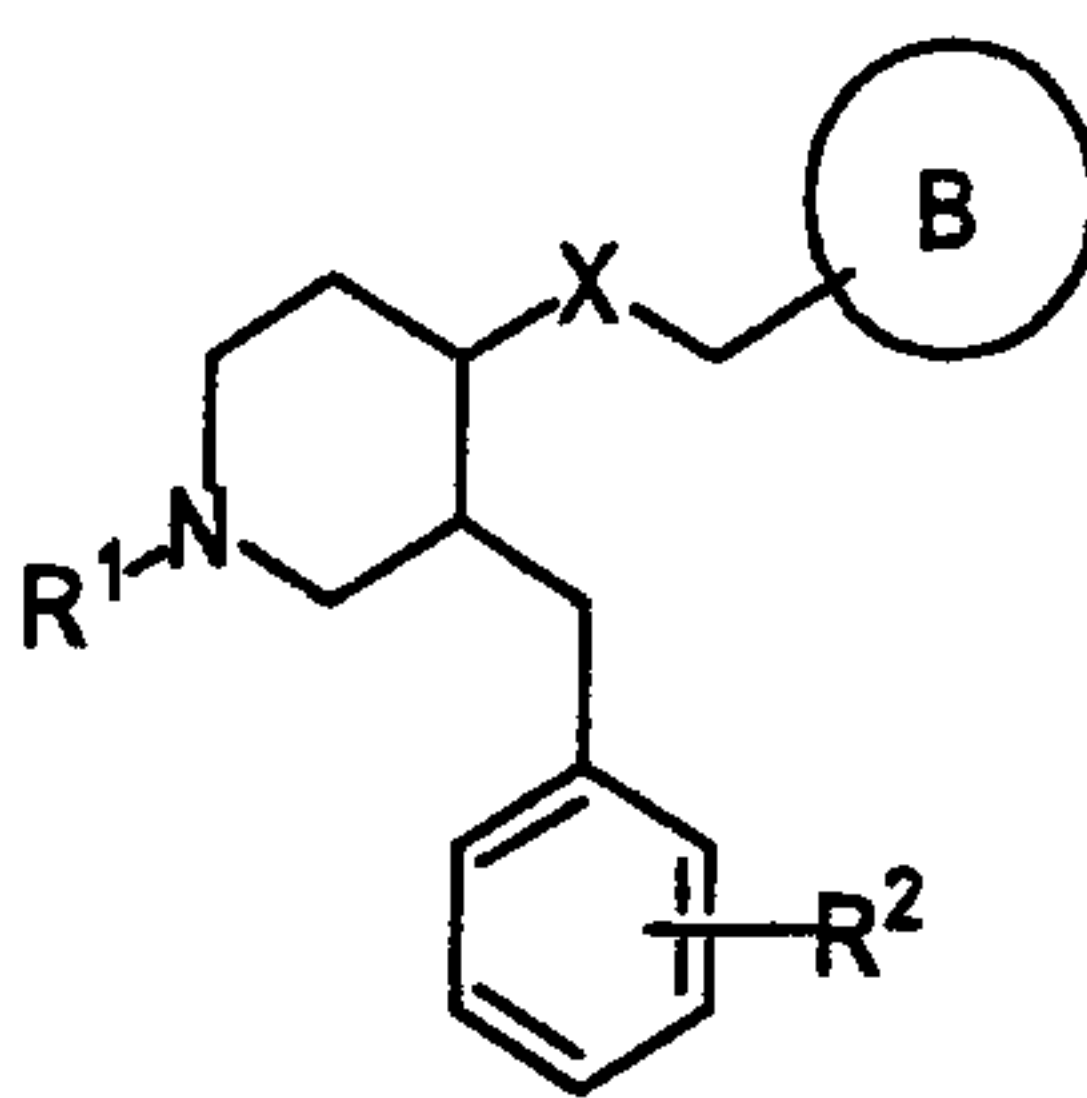
brine, dried, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The obtained residue was purified by preparative thin layer chromatography to obtain the title compound as pale yellow oil (0.275 g, 79%).

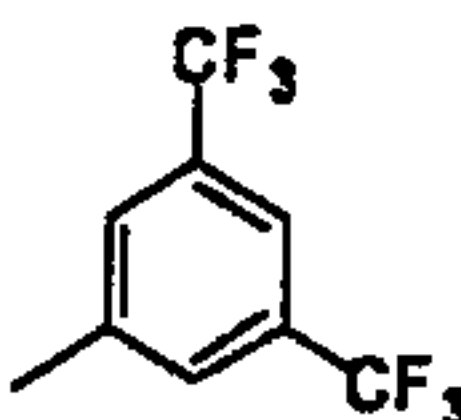
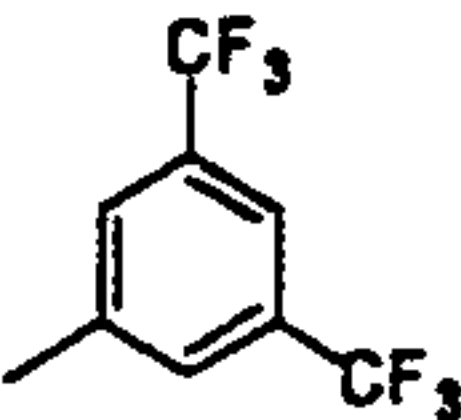
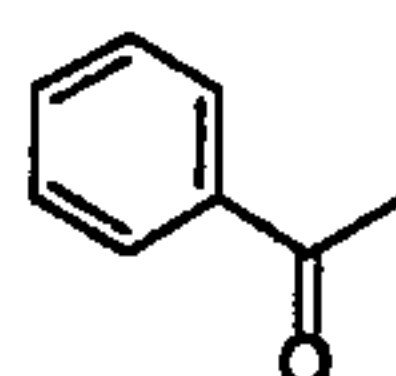
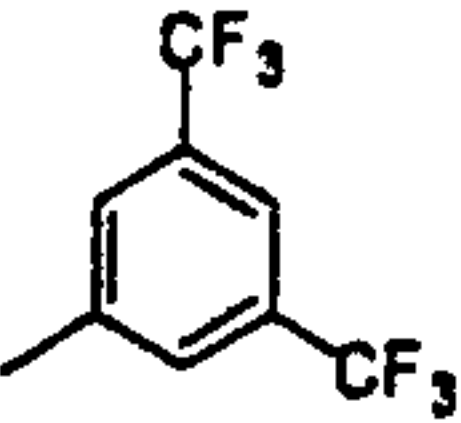
5 HPLC analysis (Condition B): Purity 96% (Retention time: 4.00 minutes)

MS (ESI+): 460 (M+H).

The compounds of the following Examples were synthesized from the compound obtained in Example 404 as a
10 starting material by reacting and treating in the same manner as in the method described in Example 406 using the respective corresponding acid chloride or sulfonyl chloride derivatives.

[Table 18]



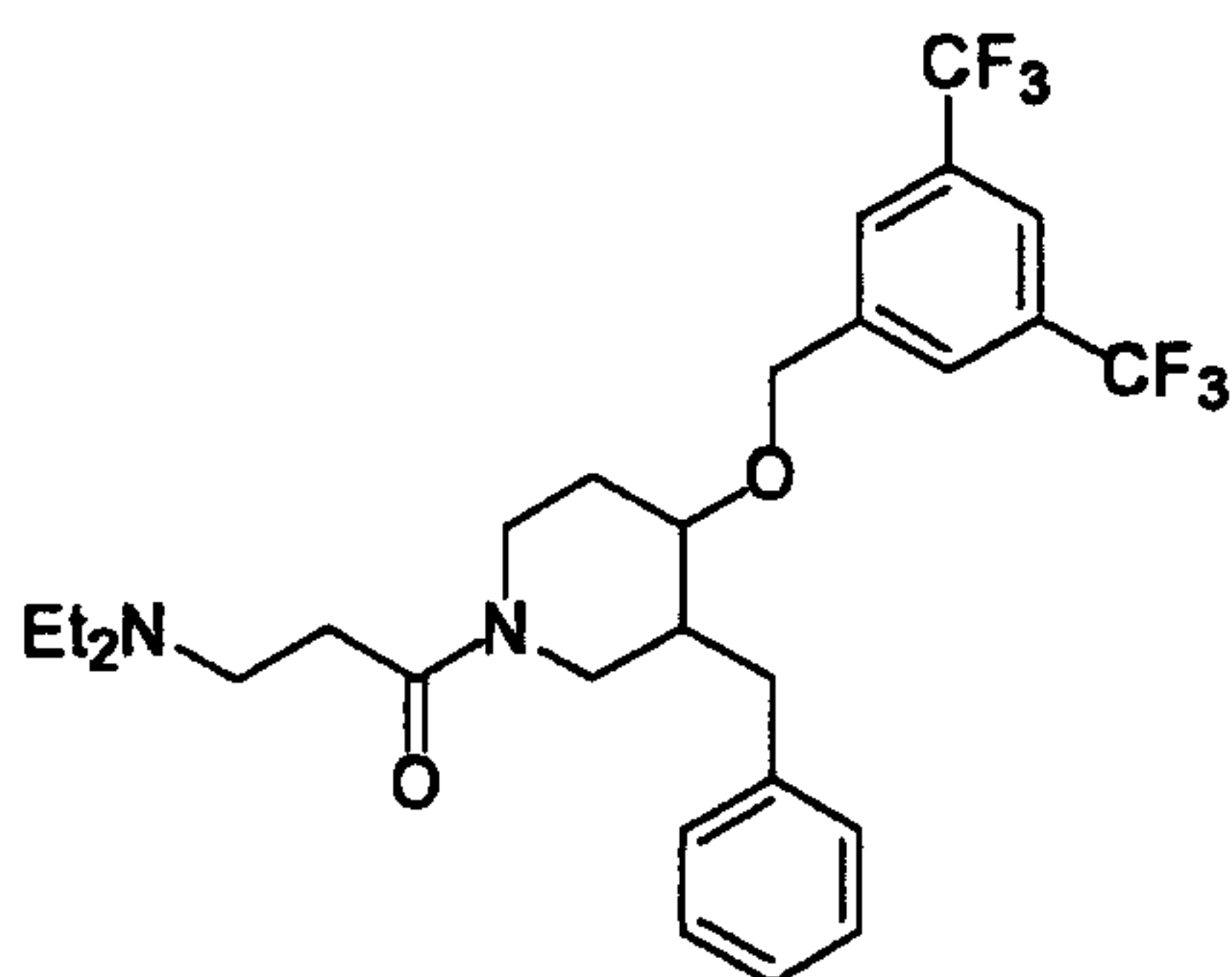
Ex. No.	Stereo-chemistry	R ¹	X	B	R ²	MS (ESI) (M+H) ⁺
406	(±)-cis	Ac	O		H	460
407	(±)-cis	MeSO ₂	O		H	496
408	(±)-cis		O		H	522

15

Example 409

cis-N-[3-[3-Benzyl-4-[[3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-1-piperidinyl]-3-oxopropyl]-N,N-diethylamine

- 211 -



To a solution of the compound (0.15 g) obtained in Example 404, 3-diethylaminopropionic acid hydrochloride (0.078 mg), Et₃N (0.150 ml) and HOBt·H₂O (0.083 mg) in DMF (2
5 ml), WSC·HCl (0.138 mg) was added, and the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 12 hours. The reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure, and then the residue was dissolved in ethyl acetate. The organic layer
10 solution and brine, dried, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The obtained residue was purified by preparative thin layer chromatography to obtain the title compound as pale yellow oil (0.100 g, 51%).

HPLC analysis (Condition B): Purity 97% (Retention
15 time: 3.31 minutes)

MS (ESI+): 545 (M+H).

Example 410

Ethyl 2-[[[3-benzyl-4-[[3,5-
bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-1-
20 piperidinyl]carbonyl]amino]benzoate

The compound (0.15 g) obtained in Example 404 and ethyl 2-isocyanatobenzoate (0.076 mg) were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 6 excluding Et₃N to obtain the title compound as pale yellow
25 oil (0.139 g, 64%).

HPLC analysis (Condition B): Purity 97% (Retention time: 4.74 minutes)

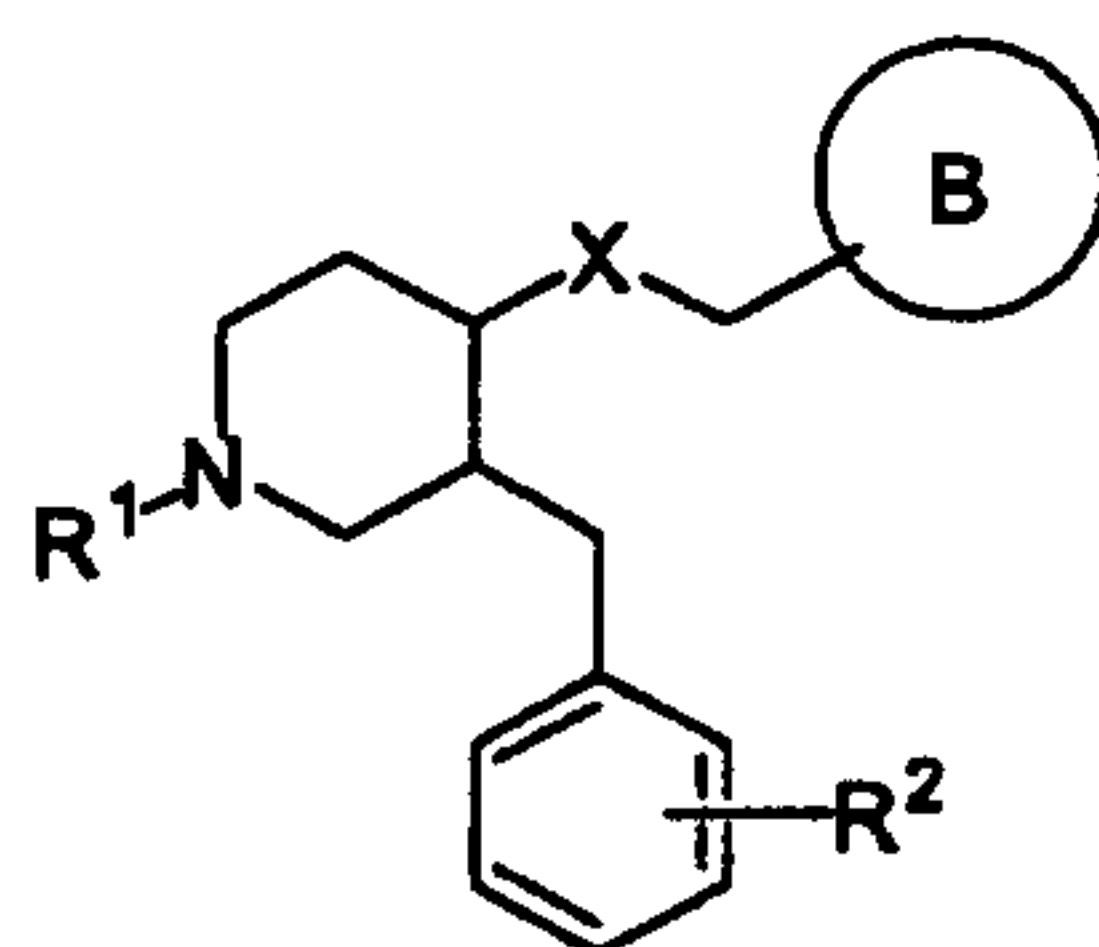
MS (ESI+): 609 (M+H)

The compounds of the following Examples were

- 212 -

synthesized by reacting and treating in the same manner as in the method described in Example 410 using the respective corresponding isocyanate derivatives.

[Table 19]

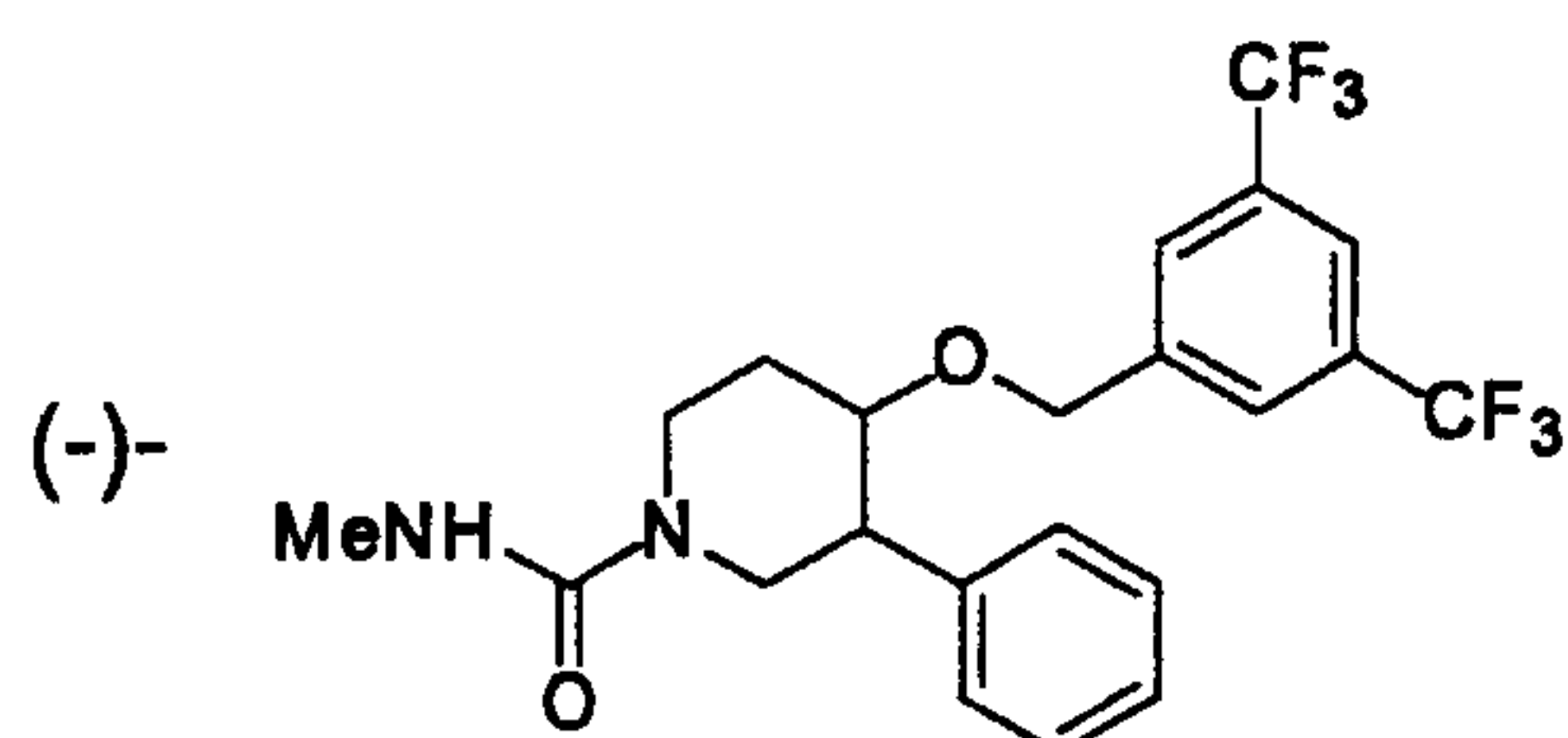


Ex. No.	Stereo-chemistry	R ¹	X	B	R ²	MS (ESI) (M+H) ⁺
410	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		H	609
411	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O		H	547

5

Example 412

(-)-*cis*-4-[[3,5-Bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-N-methyl-3-phenyl-1-piperidinecarboxamide



10

The compound (4.22 g) obtained in Example 6 was optically resolved with chiral HPLC, and the fractions were concentrated under reduced pressure to obtain the title compound (1.34 g) as white powder.

Chiral HPLC condition

15

Column: CHIRALCEL OJ 50 mm ID × 500 mm L

Solvent: hexane/ethanol = 97/3

Flow rate: 70 ml/min

Temperature: 30°C

Detection method: UV 220 nm

20

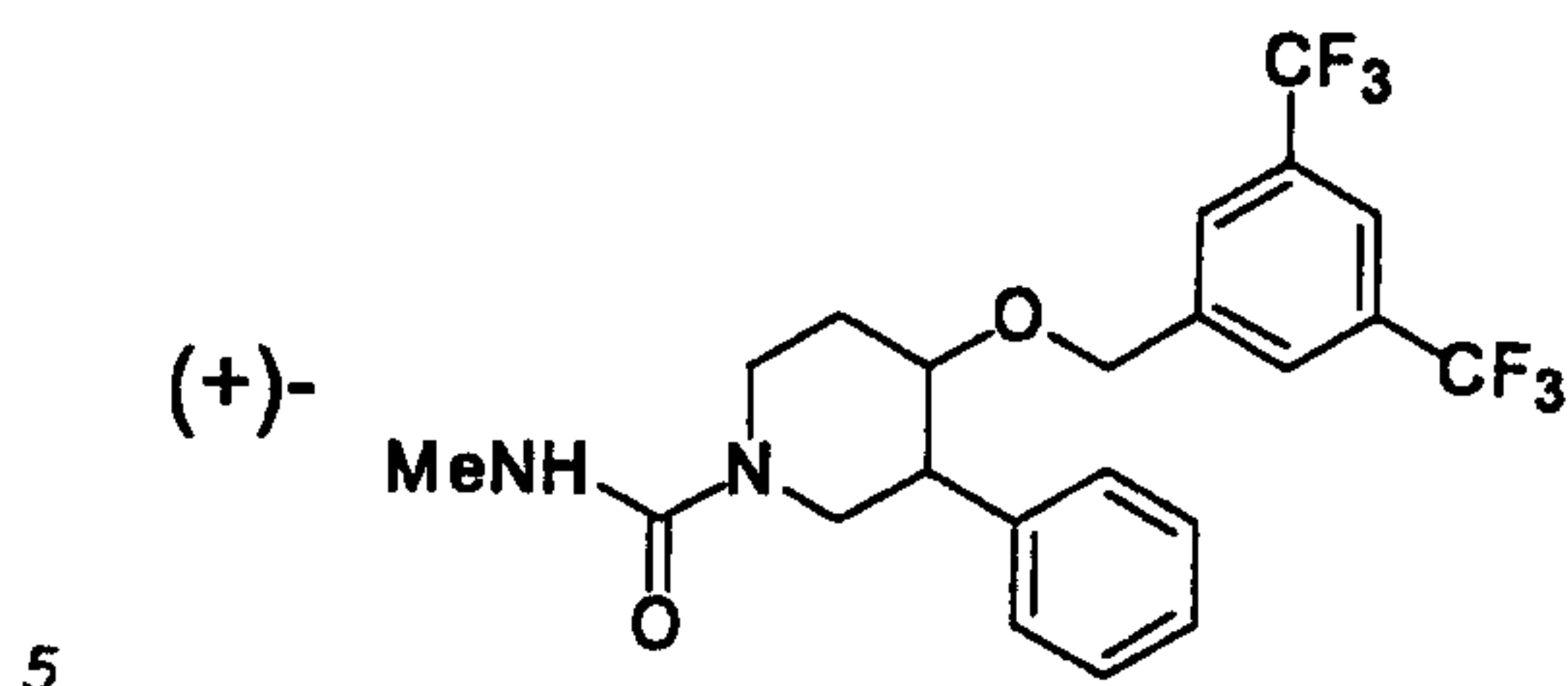
$[\alpha]_D^{25} -121.4^\circ$ (c 1.0, MeOH)

- 213 -

MS (ESI+): 461 (M+H)

Example 413

(+)-cis-4-[[3,5-Bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-N-methyl-3-phenyl-1-piperidinecarboxamide



The compound (4.22 g) obtained in Example 6 was optically resolved with chiral HPLC, and the fractions were concentrated under reduced pressure to obtain the title compound (1.34 g) as white powder.

10 Chiral HPLC condition

Column: CHIRALCEL OD 50 mm ID × 500 mm L

Solvent: hexane/2-propanol = 8/2

Flow rate: 70 ml/min

Temperature: 30°C

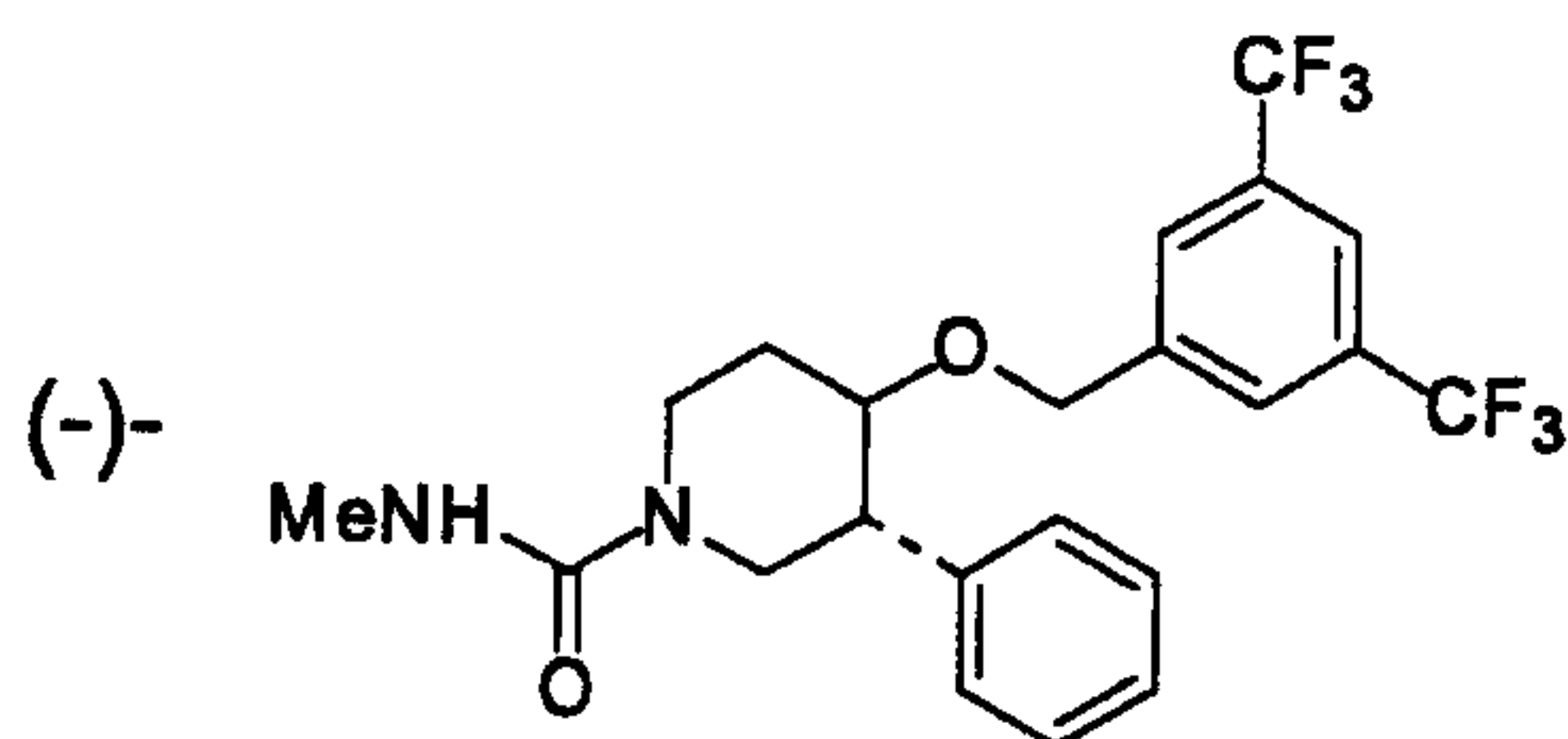
15 Detection method: UV 220 nm

$[\alpha]_D^{25} +120.7^\circ$ (c 1.0, MeOH)

MS (ESI+): 461 (M+H)

Example 414

20 (-)-trans-4-[[3,5-Bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-N-methyl-3-phenyl-1-piperidinecarboxamide



(Process 1)

A crude product (7.7 g, (±)-trans-form : (±)-cis-form = 1 : 10) obtained in Process 3 of Reference Example 1 was
 25 reacted and treated in the same manner as in the methods described in Example 1 and Example 6 to obtain 4-[[3,5-

- 214 -

bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-N-methyl-3-phenyl-1-piperidinecarboxamide in a mixture (4.2 g) of (±)-trans-form : (±)-cis-form = 1 : 10.

(Process 2)

5 The compound (4.22 g) obtained in Process 1 was optically resolved with chiral HPLC, and the fractions were concentrated under reduced pressure to obtain the title compound (0.18 g) as white powder.

Chiral HPLC condition

10 Column: CHIRALCEL OD 50 mm ID × 500 mm L

Solvent: hexane/2-propanol = 9/1

Flow rate: 70 ml/min

Temperature: 30°C

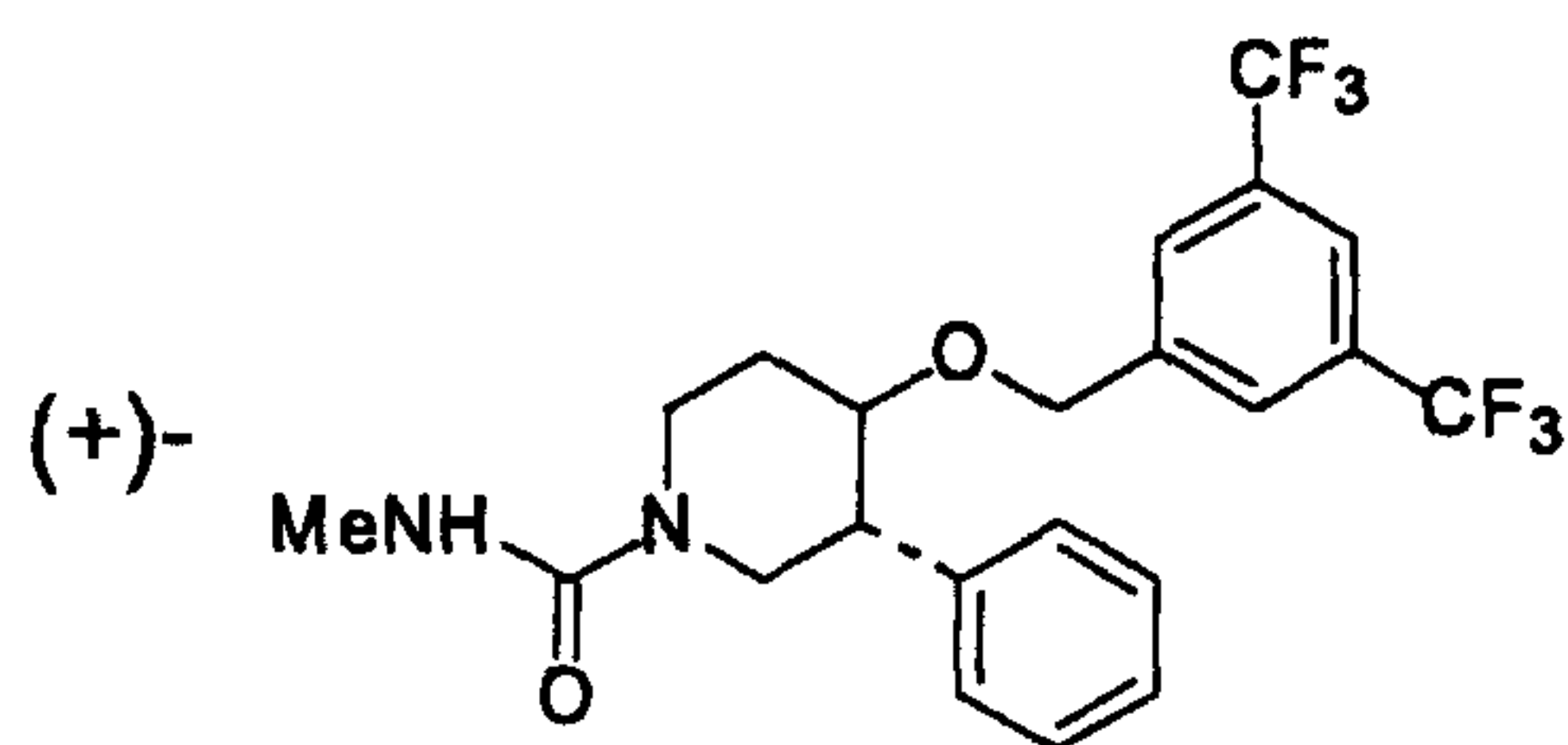
Detection method: UV 220 nm

15 $[\alpha]_D^{25} -34.3^\circ$ (c 1.0, MeOH)

MS (ESI+): 461 (M+H)

Example 415

(+)-trans-4-[[3,5-Bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-N-methyl-3-phenyl-1-piperidinecarboxamide



The compound (4.22 g) obtained in Process 1 of Example 414 was optically resolved with chiral HPLC, and the fractions were concentrated under reduced pressure to obtain the title compound (0.19 g) as white powder.

25 Chiral HPLC condition

Column: CHIRALPAK AD 50 mm ID × 500 mm L

Solvent: hexane/2-propanol = 92/8

Flow rate: 70 ml/min

Temperature: 30°C

30 Detection method: UV 220 nm

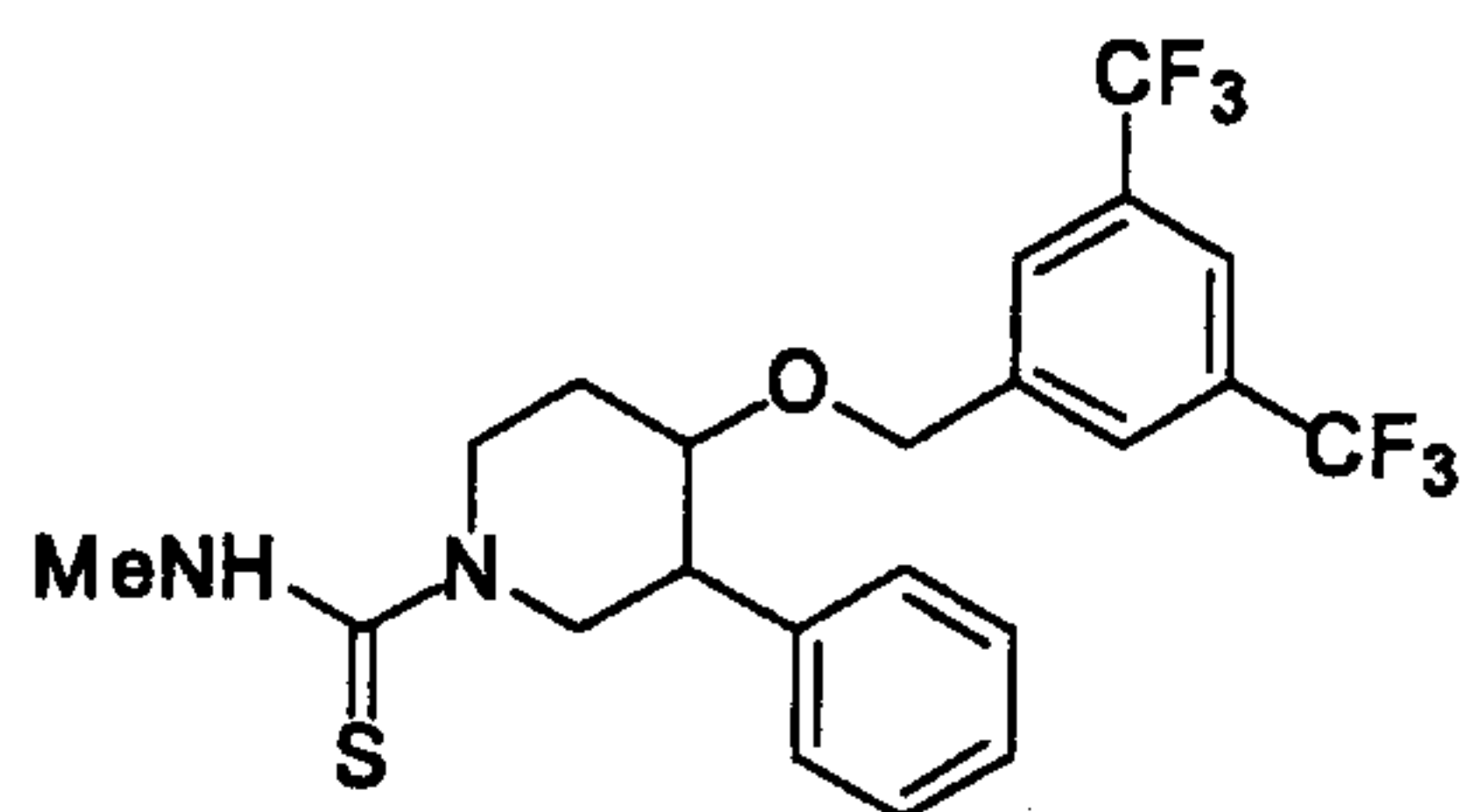
- 215 -

$[\alpha]_D^{25} +33.0^\circ$ (c 1.0, MeOH)

MS (ESI+): 461 (M+H)

Example 416

cis-4-[[3,5-Bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-N-methyl-3-phenyl-1-piperidinecarbothioamide



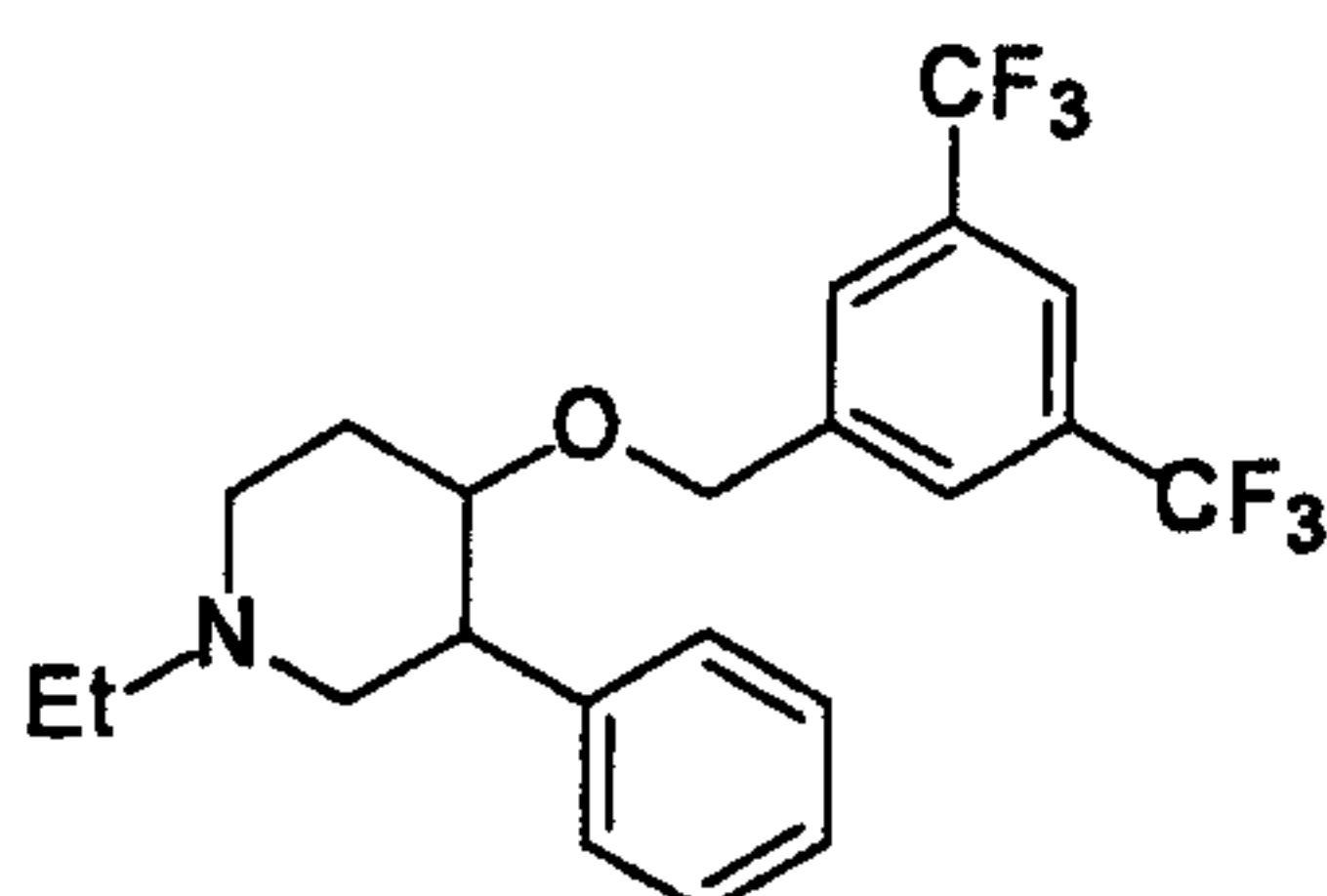
To a solution of the compound (0.20 g) obtained in Example 1 and Et₃N (0.16 ml) in acetonitrile (10 ml), methyl isothiocyanate (0.083 g) was added, and the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 14 hours. The reaction mixture was poured into water, and then the product was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with an aqueous 10% citric acid solution and saturated brine, dried, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The obtained residue was isolated and purified by silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate : hexane = 1 : 1) to obtain the title compound as colorless oil (0.22 g, 99%).

HPLC analysis (Condition B): Purity 99% (Retention time: 3.92 minutes)

MS (ESI+): 477 (M+H)

Example 417

cis-4-[[3,5-Bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-1-ethyl-3-phenylpiperidine oxalate



25

To a solution of the compound (0.88 g) obtained in

- 216 -

Example 2 in THF (10 ml), 1 M borane and THF complex (10 ml) was added at 0°C, and the reaction mixture was stirred at 80°C for 2 hours. The reaction mixture was cooled, and then methanol (2 ml) was added thereto, and concentrated under
5 reduced pressure. To the obtained residue, 6 N hydrochloric acid (6 ml) and methanol (6 ml) were added, and the reaction mixture was stirred at 100°C for 2 hours. The reaction mixture was cooled, and then made basic with an aqueous 12 N sodium hydroxide solution. The mixture was concentrated
10 under reduced pressure, and then the product was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with saturated brine, dried, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The obtained residue was isolated and purified by silica gel column chromatography (acetone:
15 methanol = 20 : 1), and treated with 1 equivalent of oxalic acid to obtain the title compound as colorless crystals (0.52 g, 61%).

HPLC analysis (Condition B): Purity 99% (Retention time: 2.91 minutes)

20 MS (ESI+): 432 (M+H)

Example 418

cis-4-[[3,5-Bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-3-phenyl-1-propionylpiperidine

To a solution of the compound (132 mg) obtained in
25 Example 1, propionic acid (32 mg) and Et₃N (0.083 ml) in DMF (5 ml), WSC·HCl (0.15 g) and HOBt·H₂O (0.092 g) were added, and the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 24 hours. The reaction mixture was poured into water, and then the product was extracted with ethyl acetate. The
30 organic layer was washed with an aqueous saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate solution and saturated brine, dried, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The obtained residue was purified by preparative HPLC to obtain the title compound as colorless amorphous.

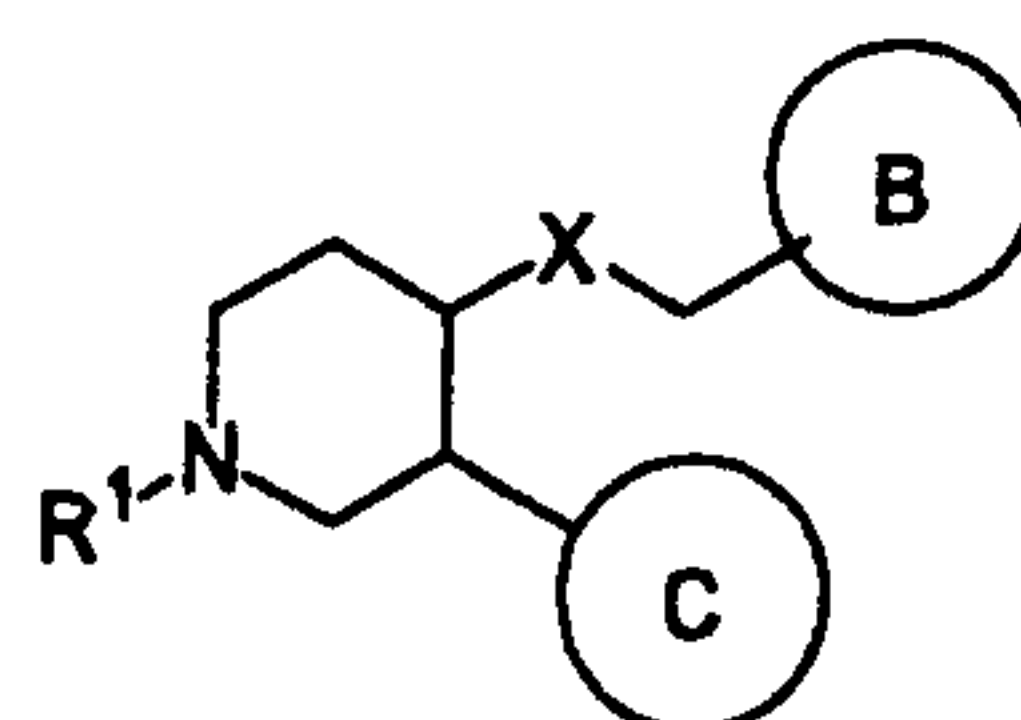
35 Yield: 75 mg

- 217 -

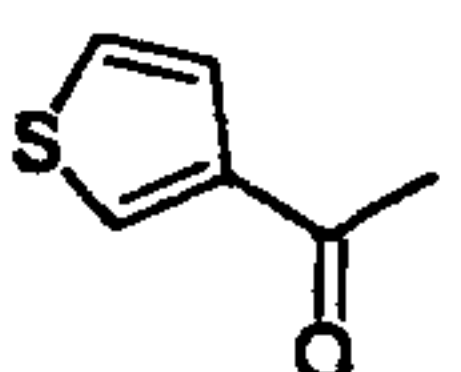
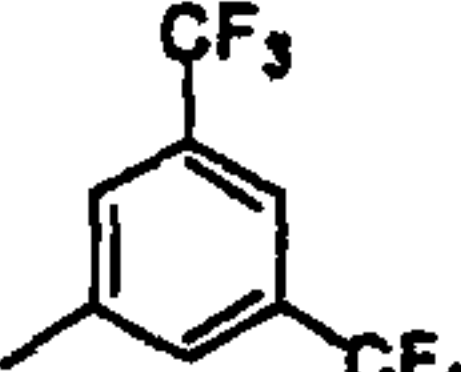
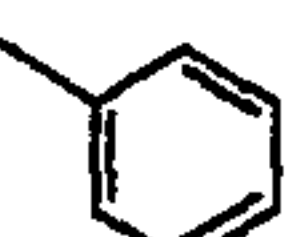
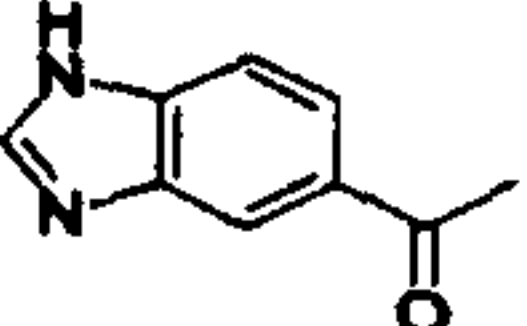
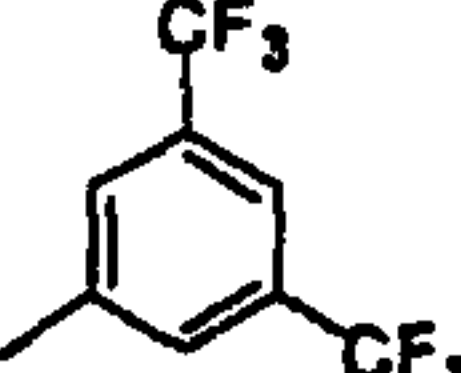
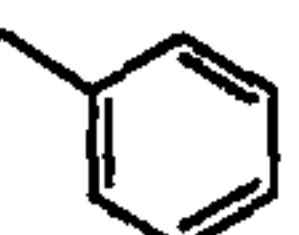
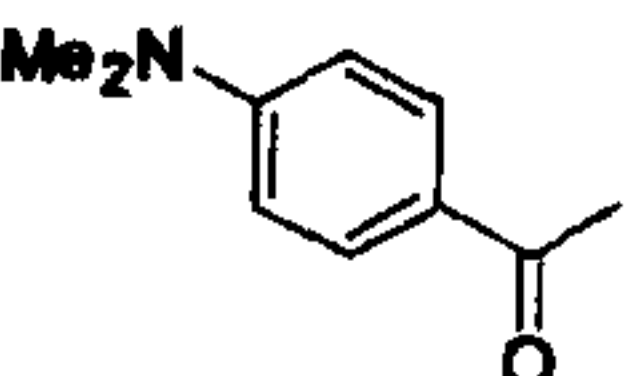
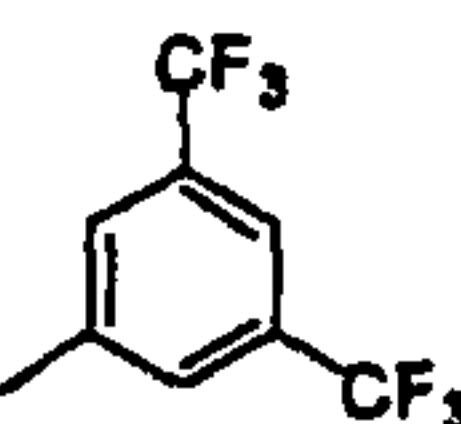
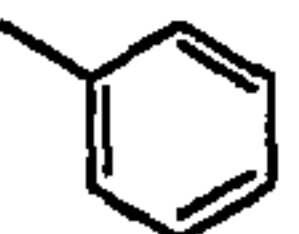
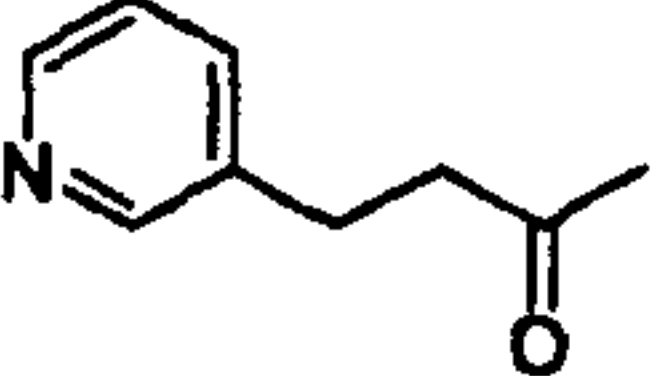
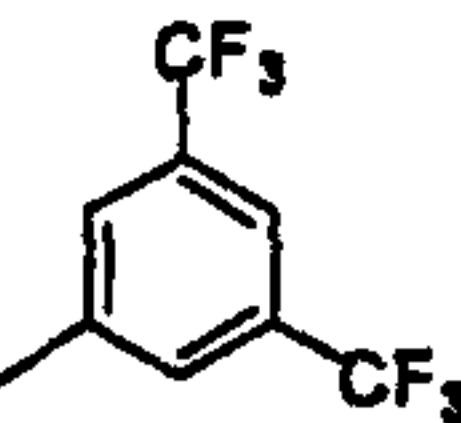
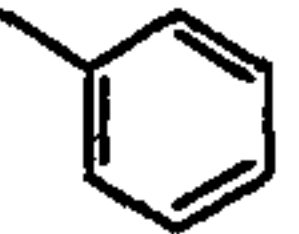
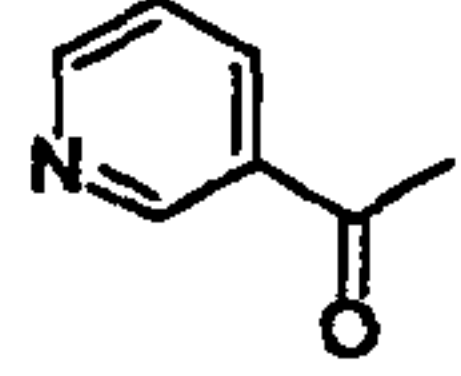
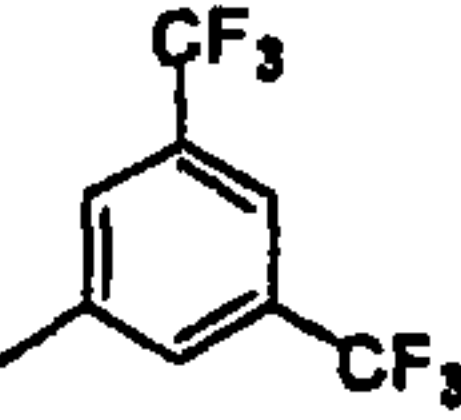
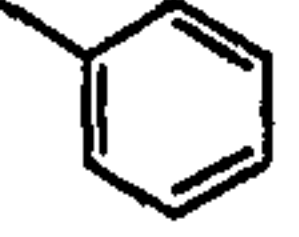
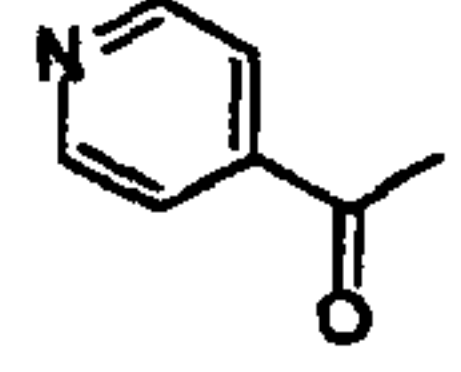
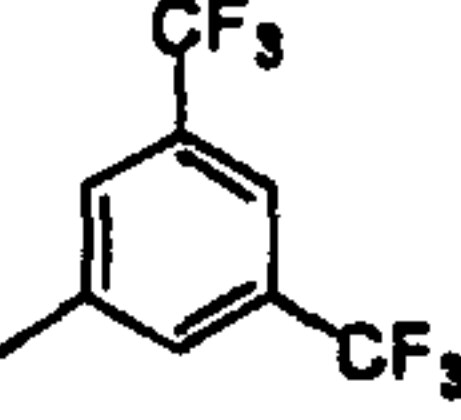
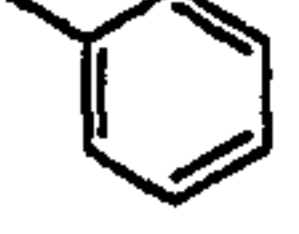
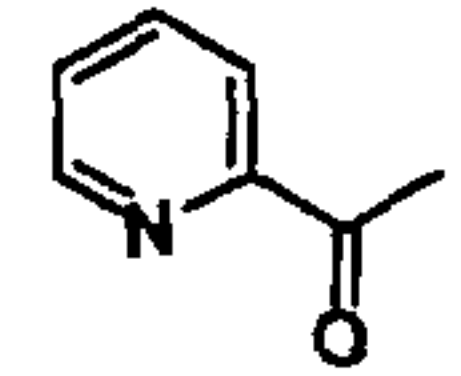
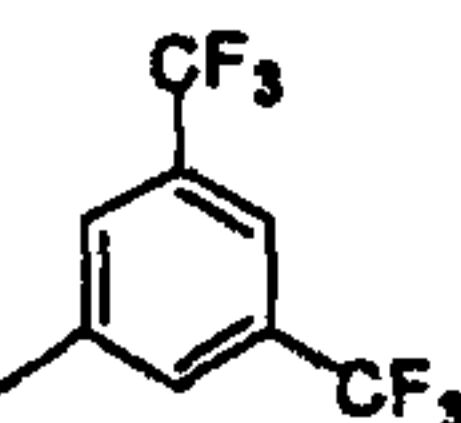
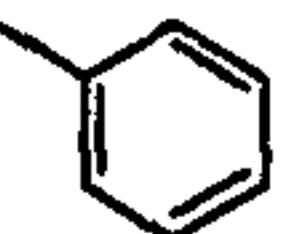
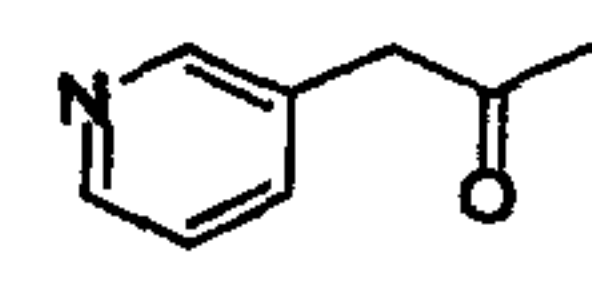
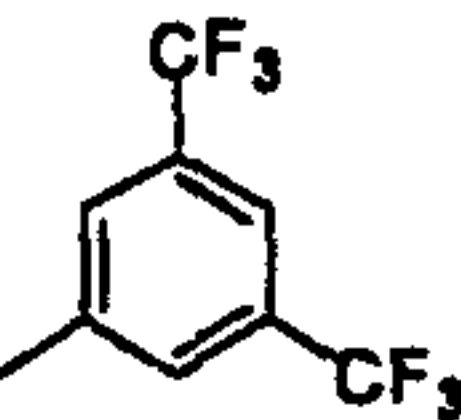
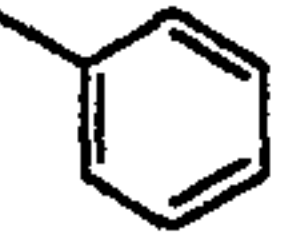
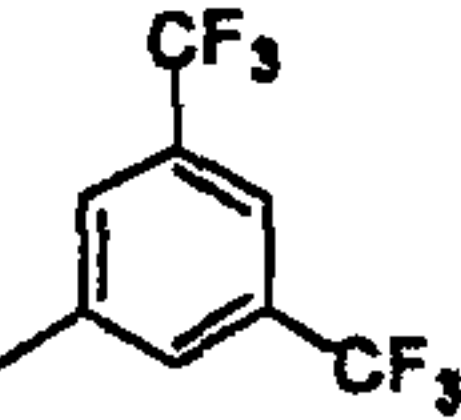
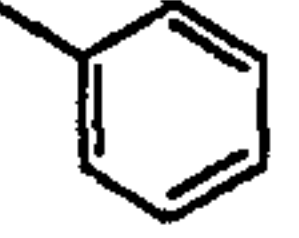
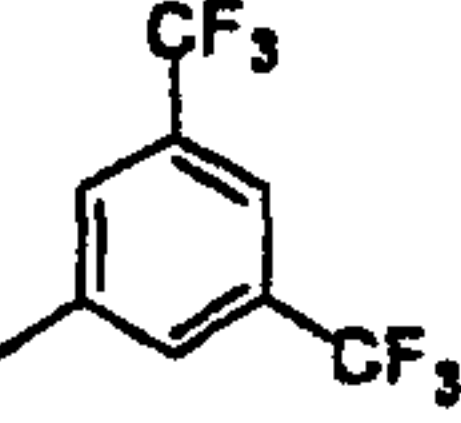
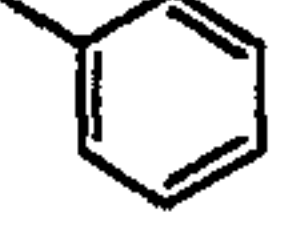
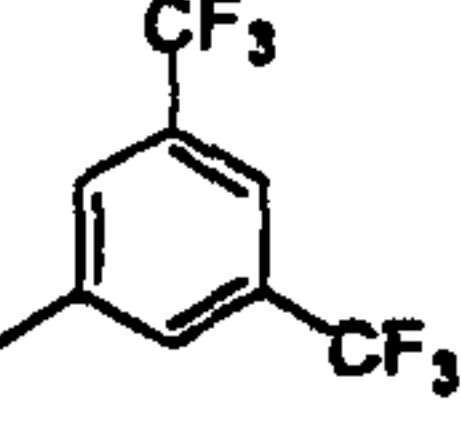
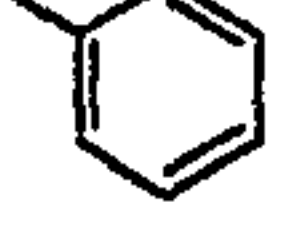
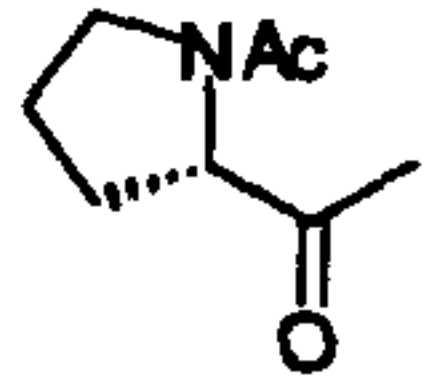
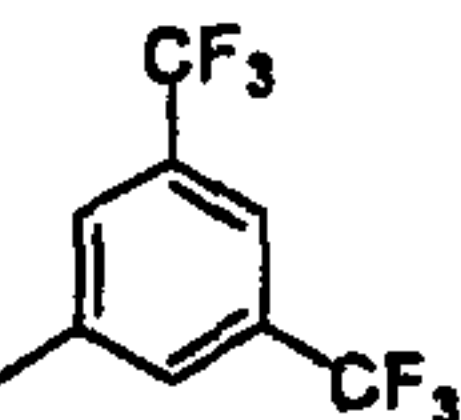
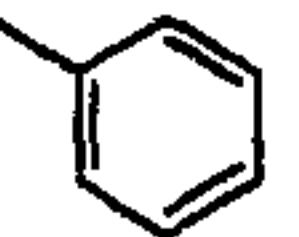
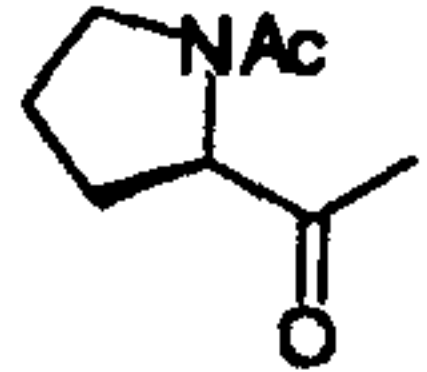
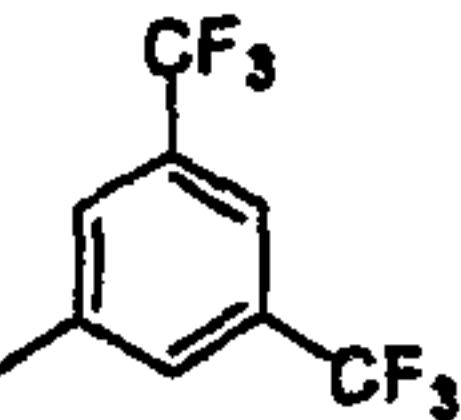
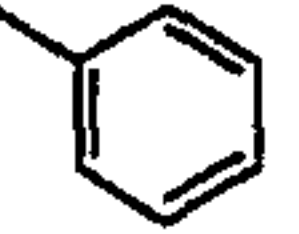
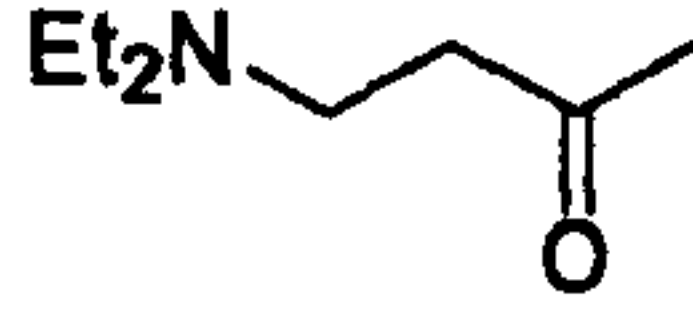
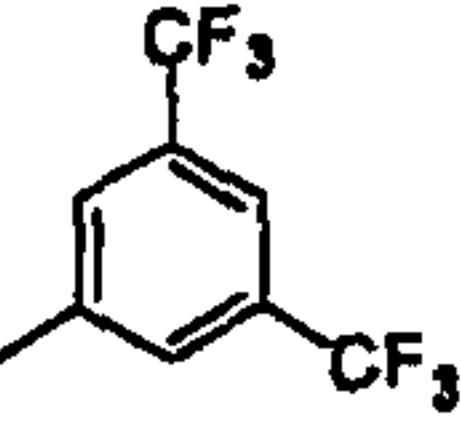
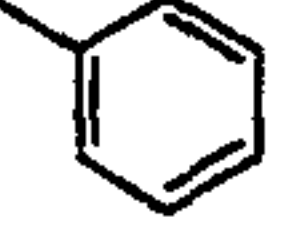
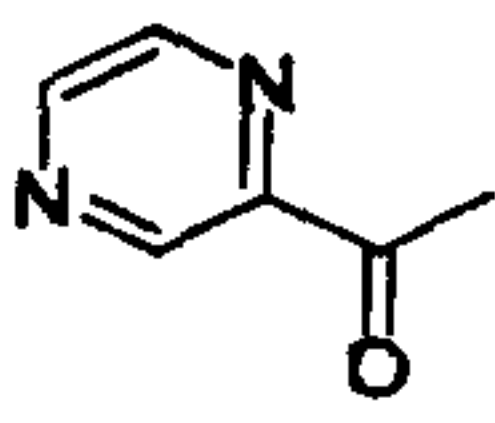
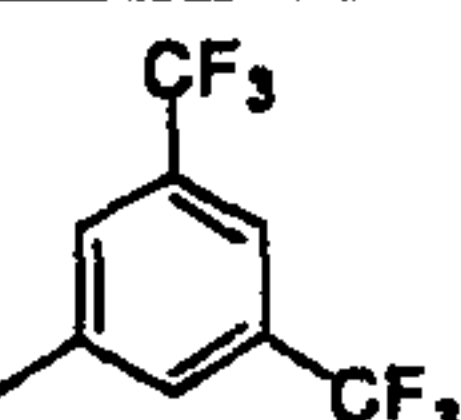
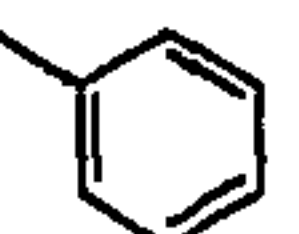
MS (ESI+): 460 (M+H)

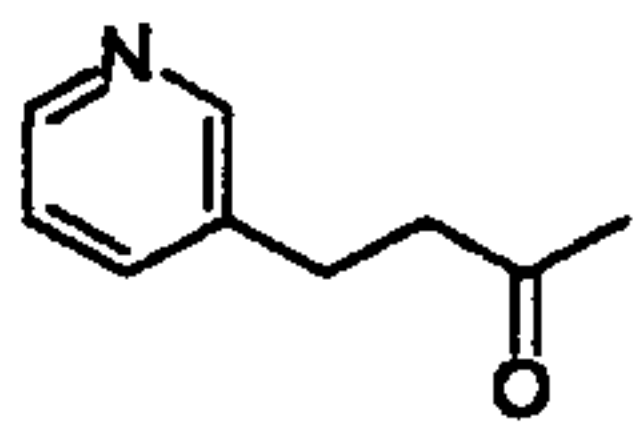
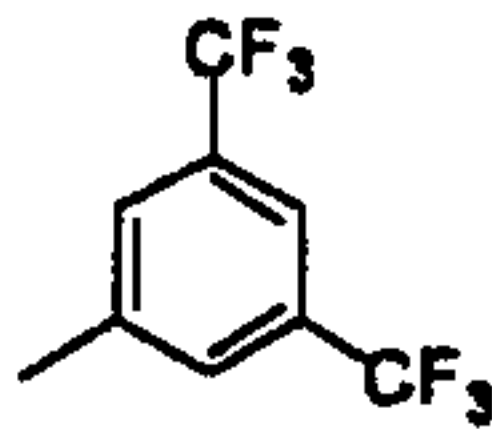
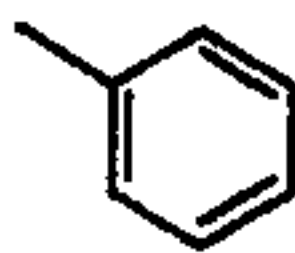
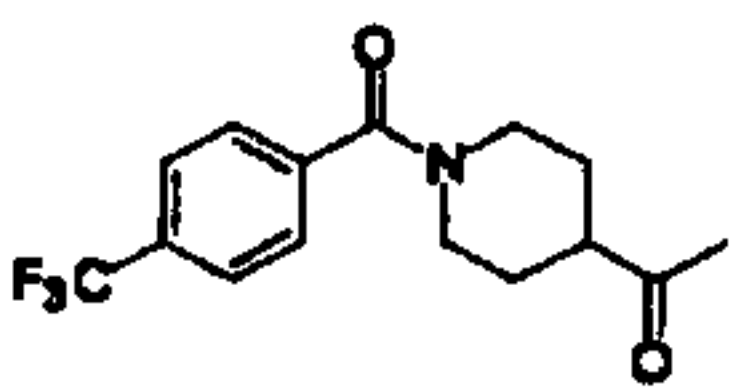
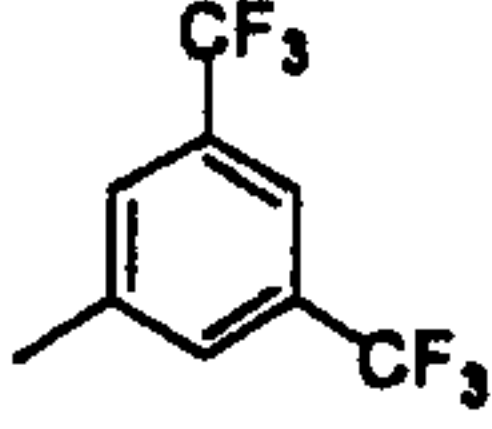
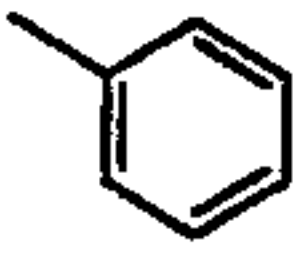
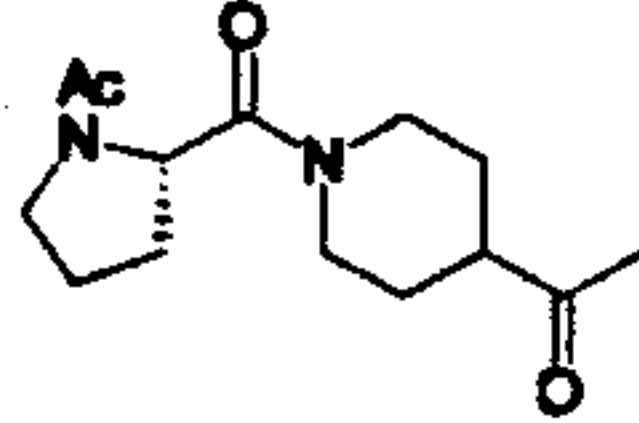
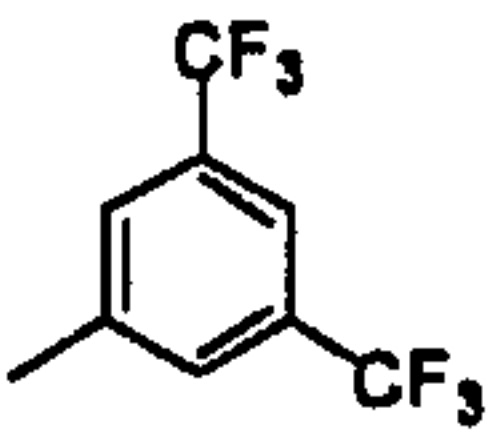
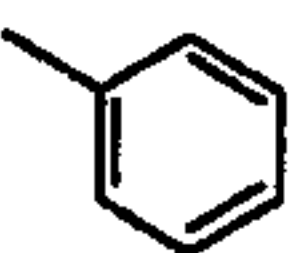
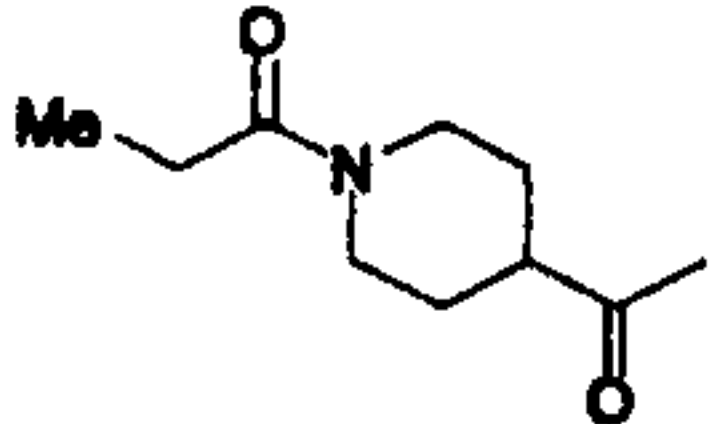
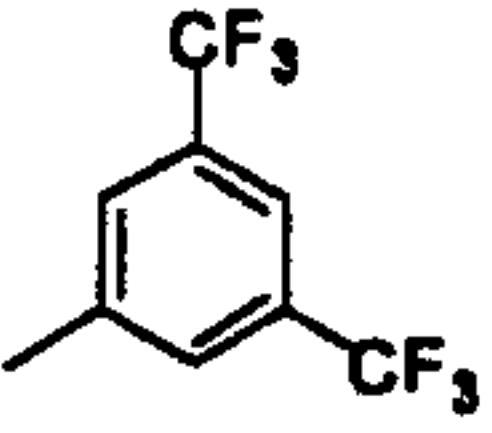
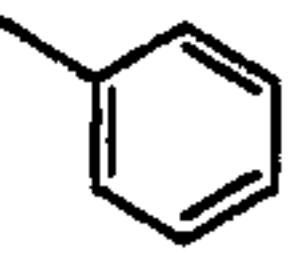
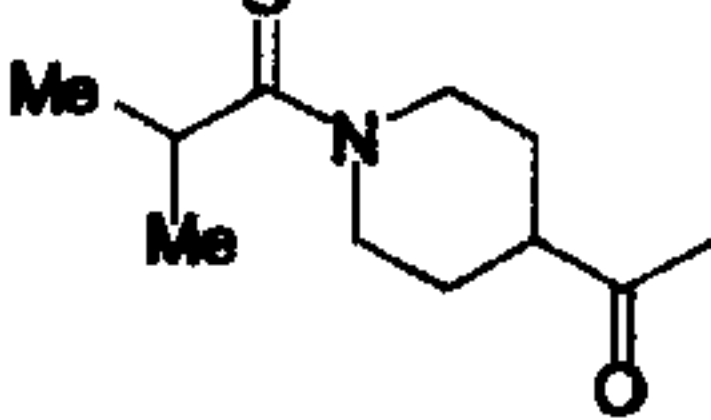
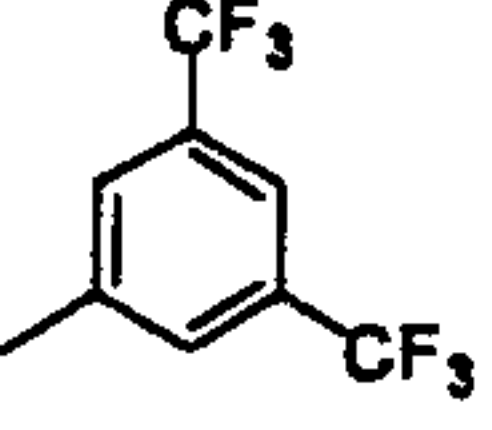
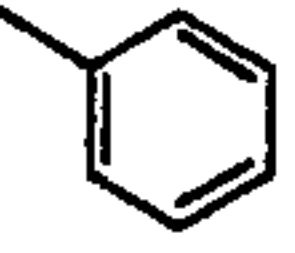
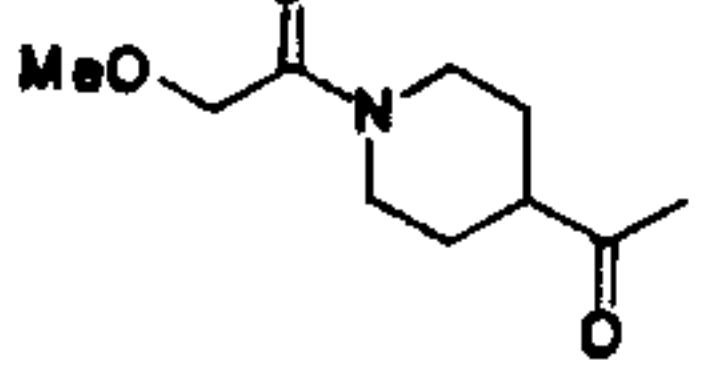
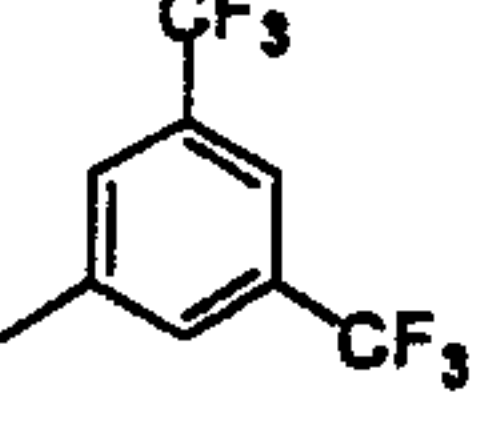
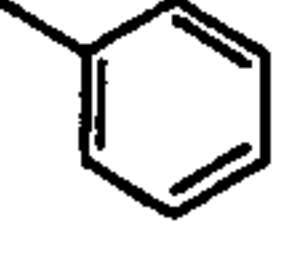
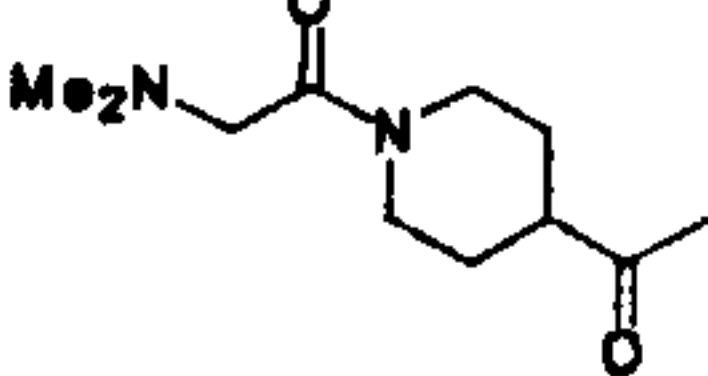
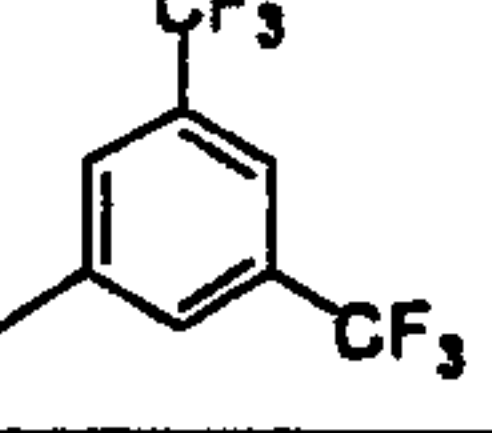
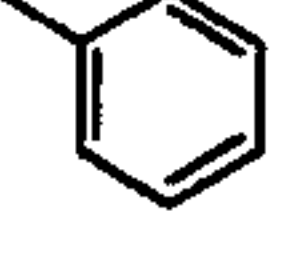
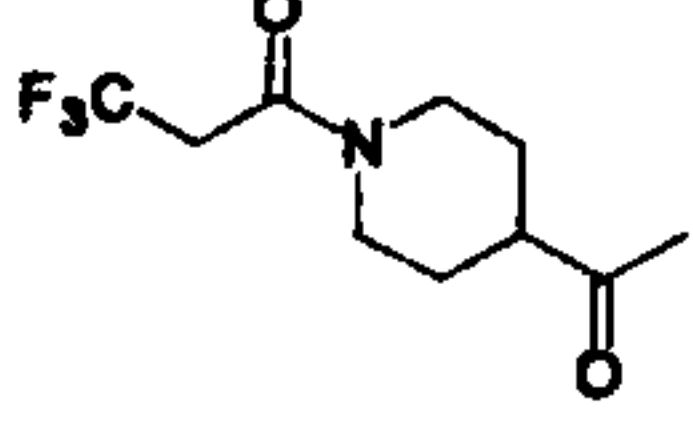
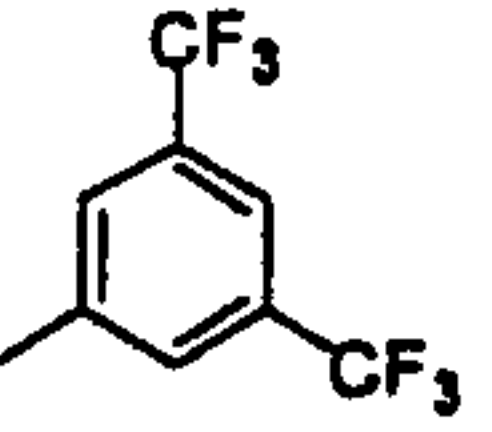
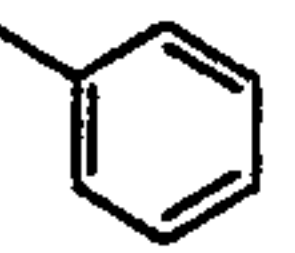
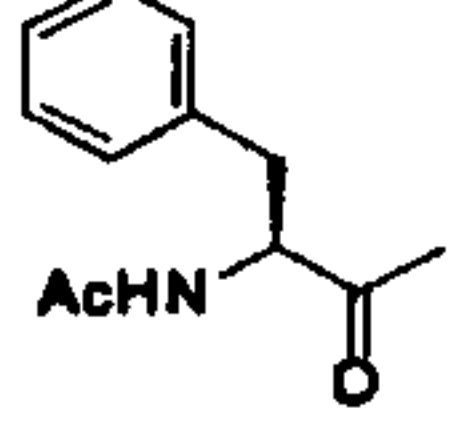
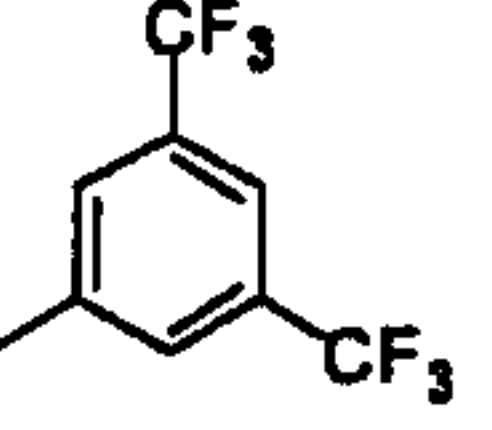
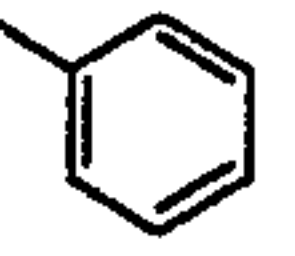
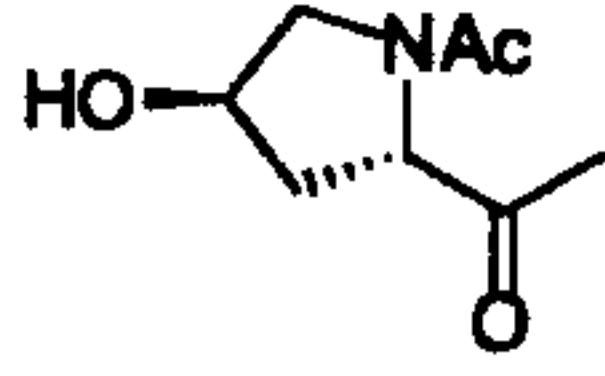
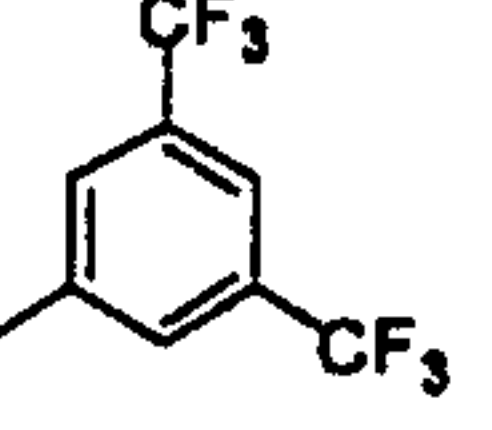
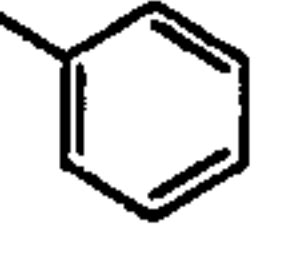
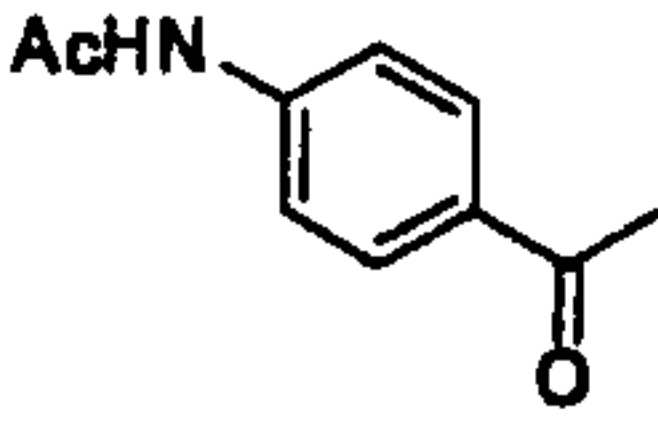
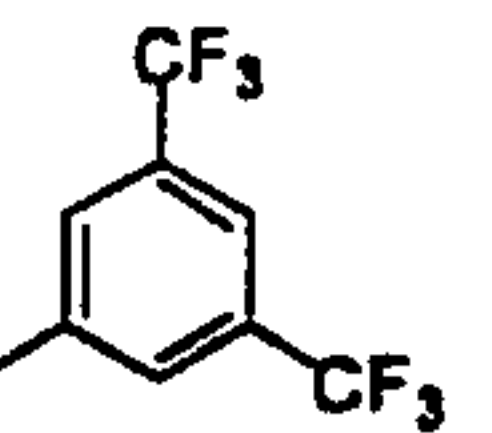
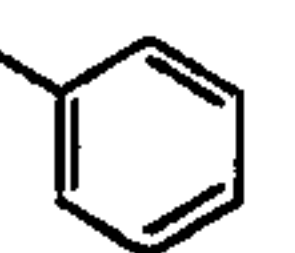
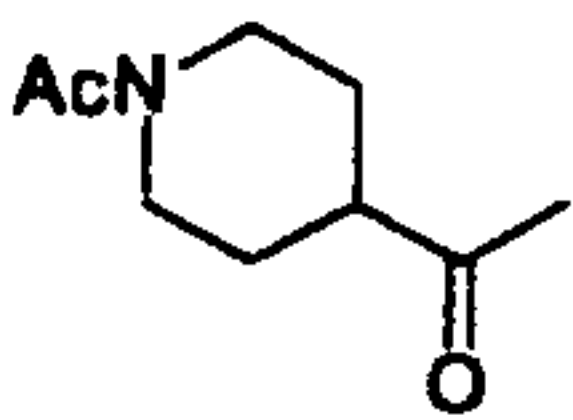
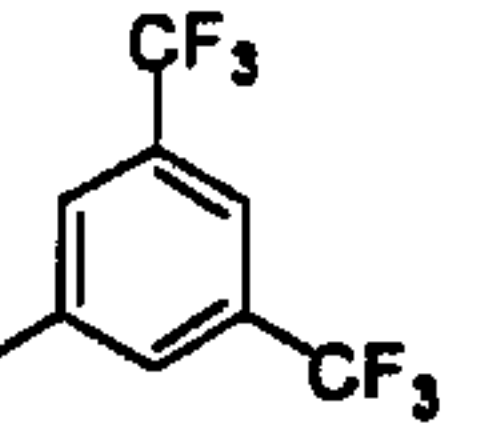
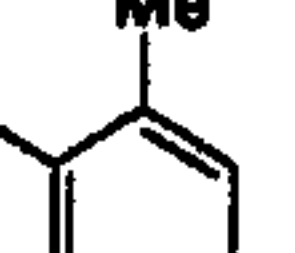
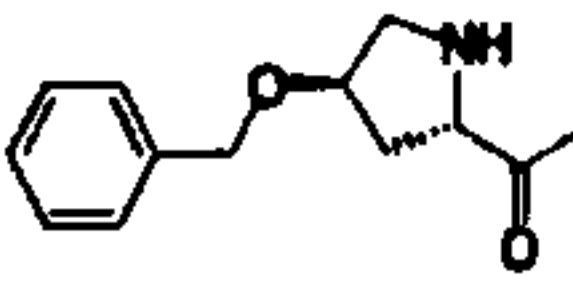
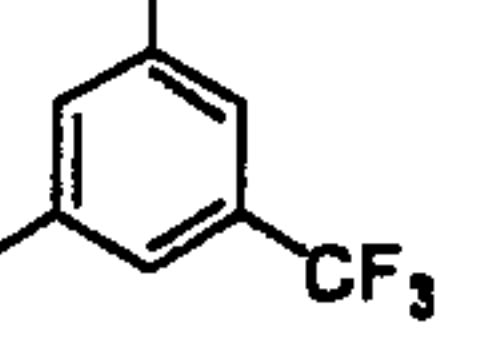
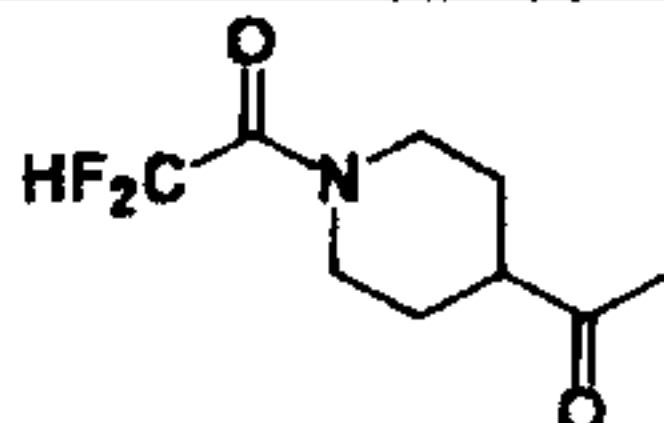
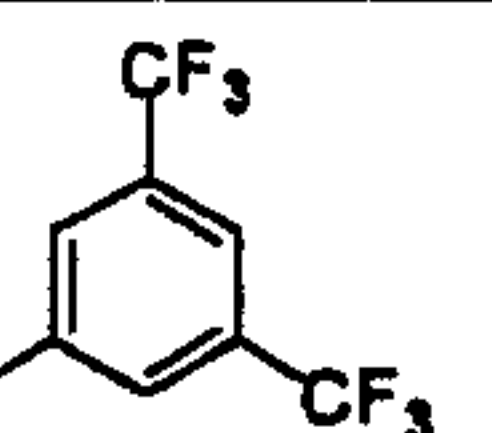
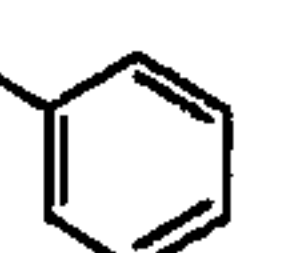
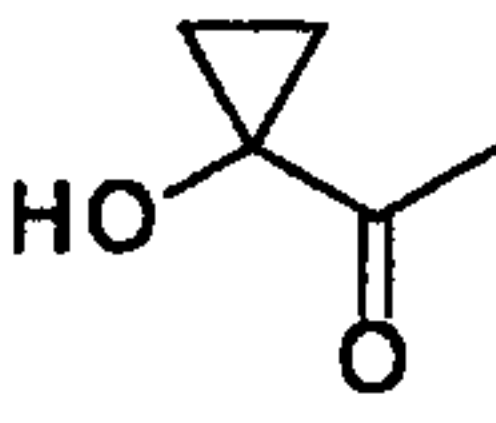
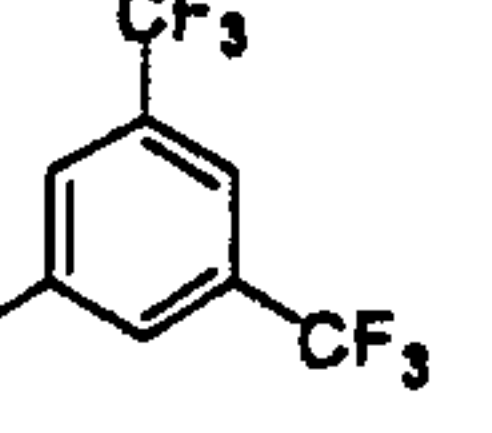
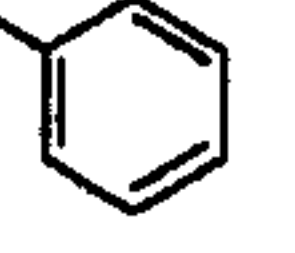
The compounds of the following Examples were synthesized from the compound obtained in Examples 1, 23, 487, 509, 515, 519, 521, 524, 527, 534, 537, 539, 541, 543, 545, 5 547, 549, 553, 566, 609, 663, 691, 696, 701, 703, 708, 711, 714, 720, 732, 733, 734, 744, 794, 795 or 796 as a starting material by reacting and treating in the same manner as in the method described in Example 418 using the respective corresponding carboxylic acid derivatives.

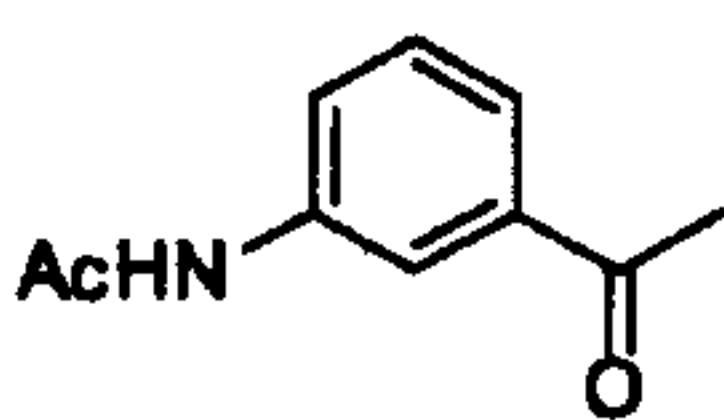
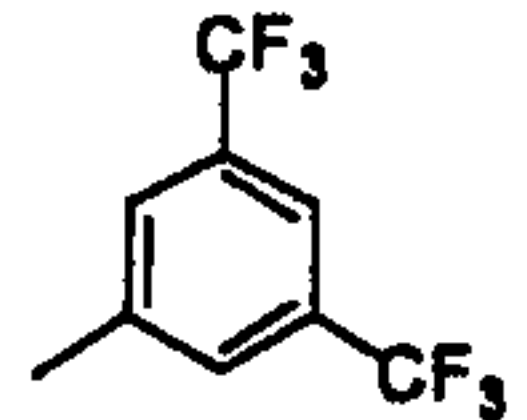
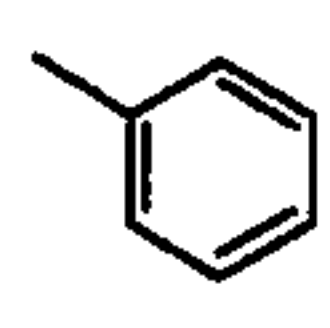
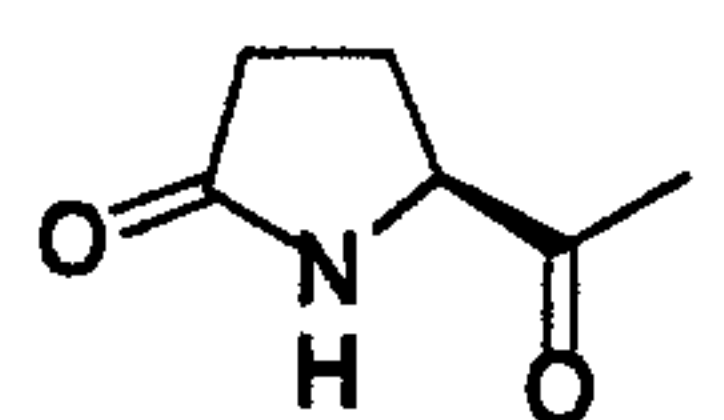
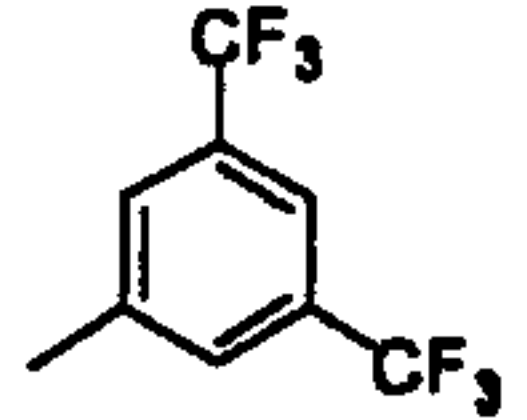
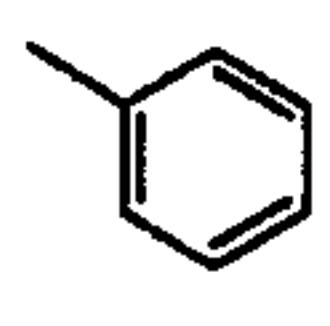
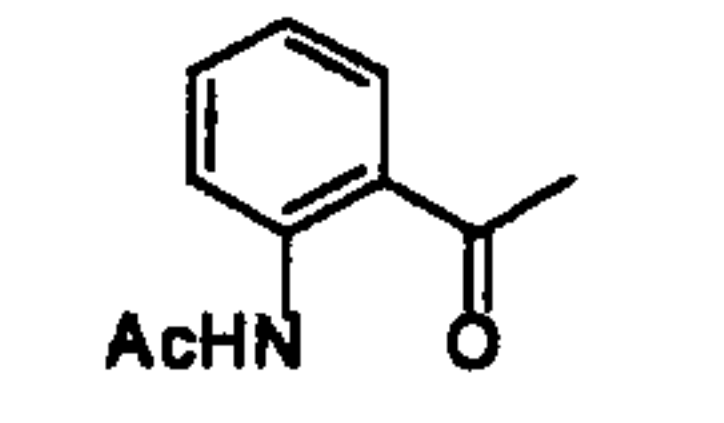
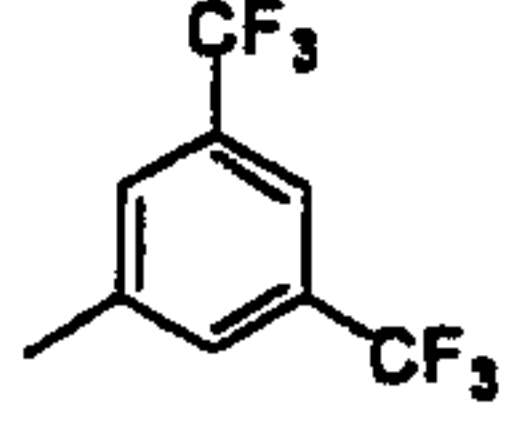
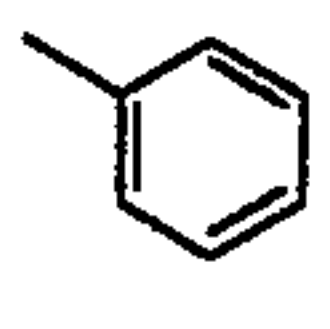
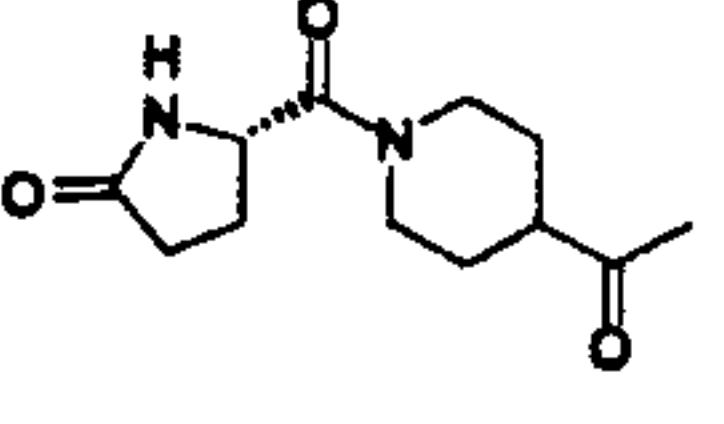
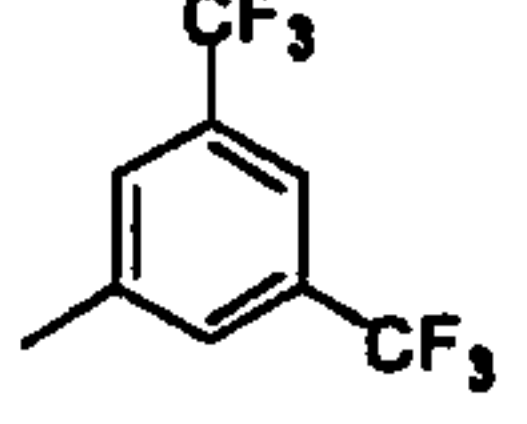
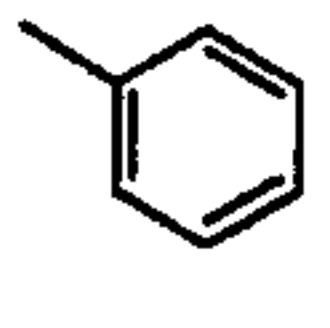
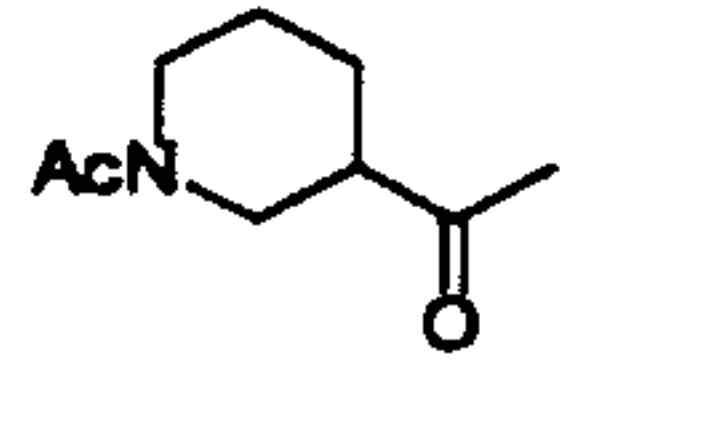
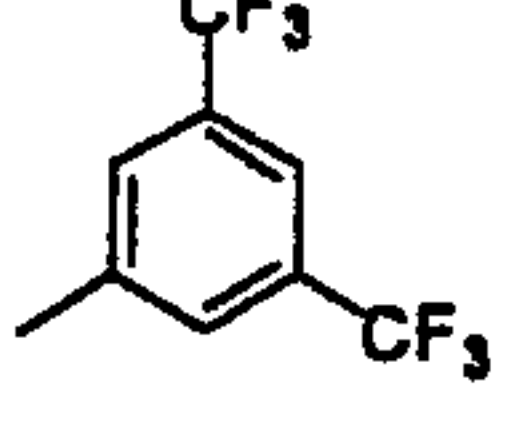
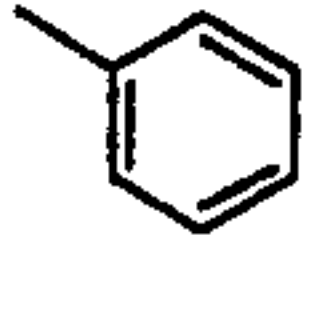
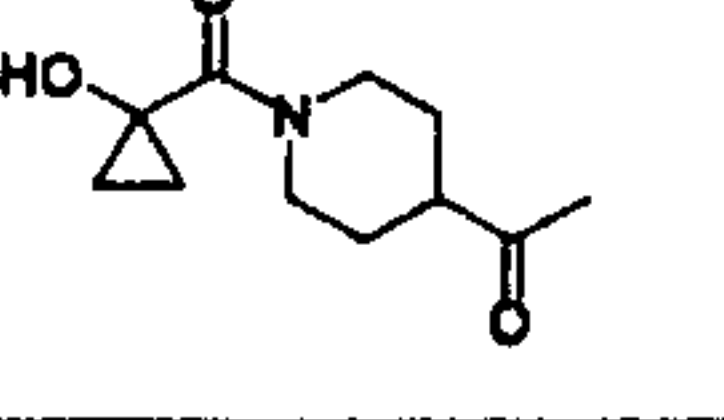
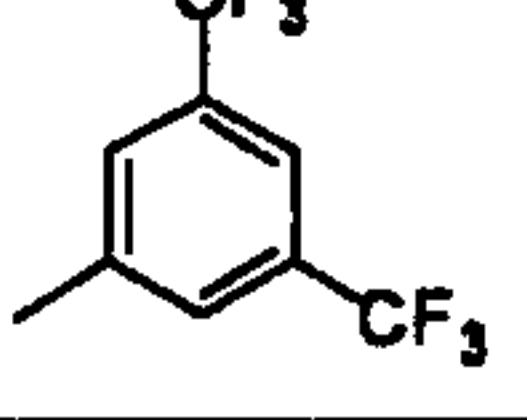
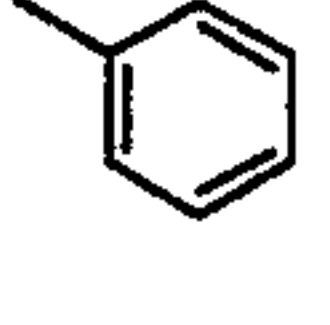
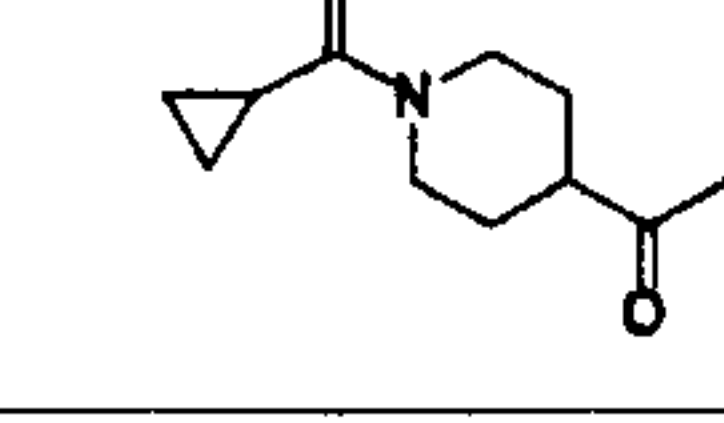
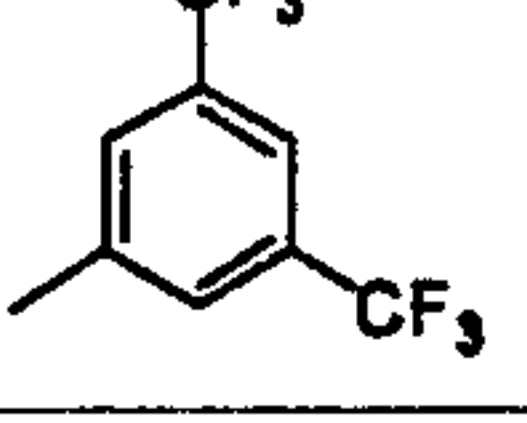
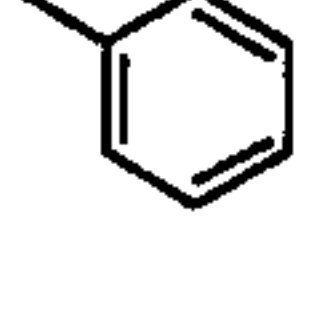
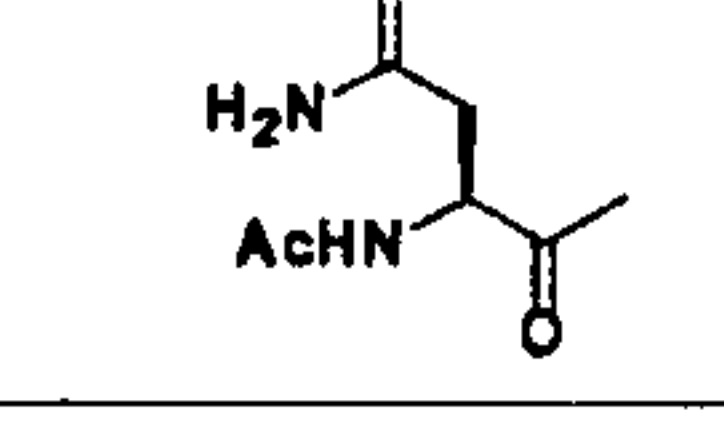
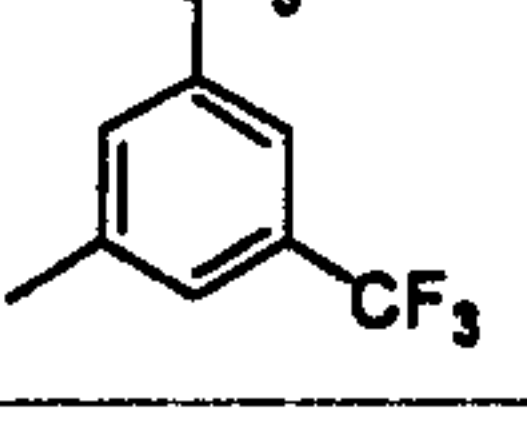
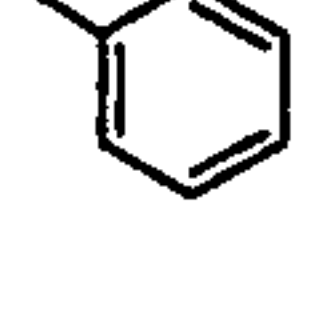
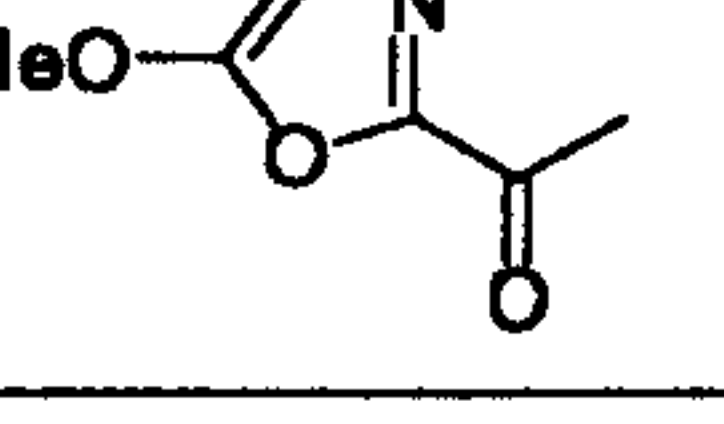
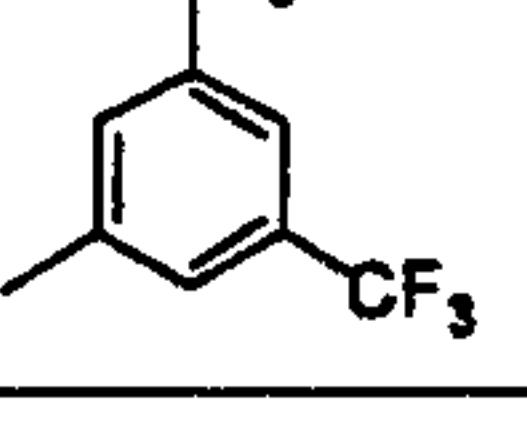
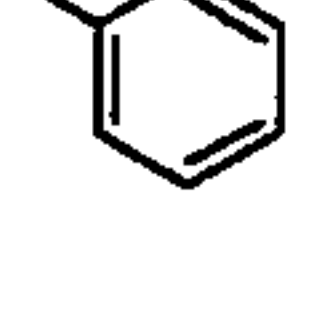
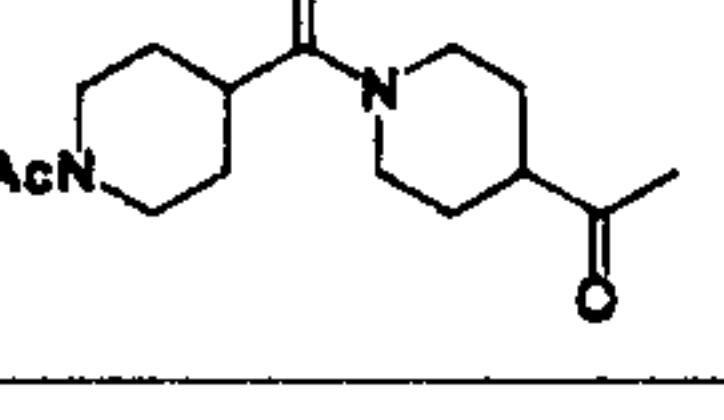
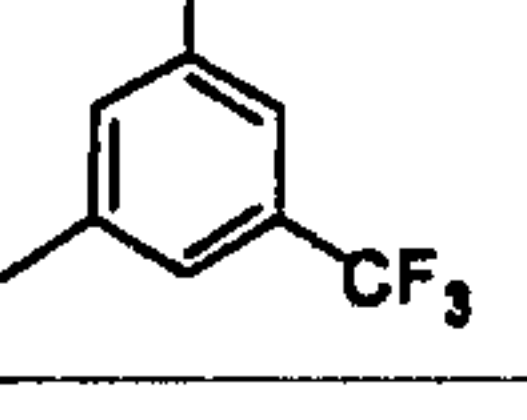
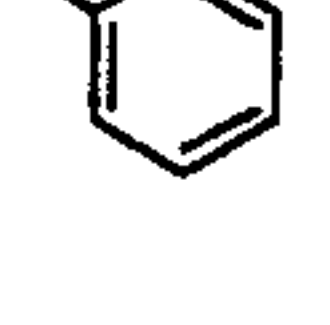
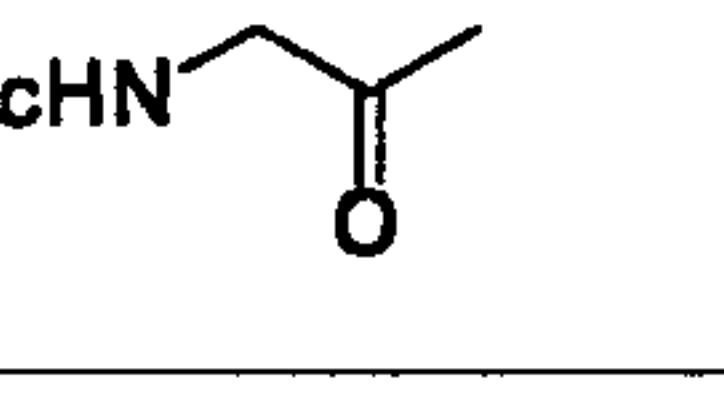
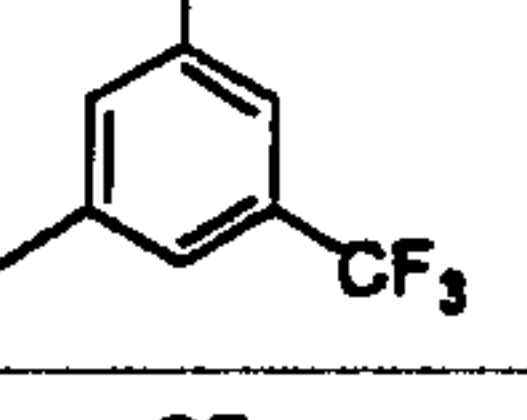
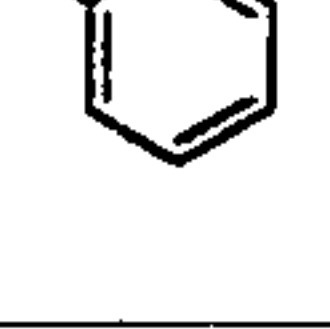
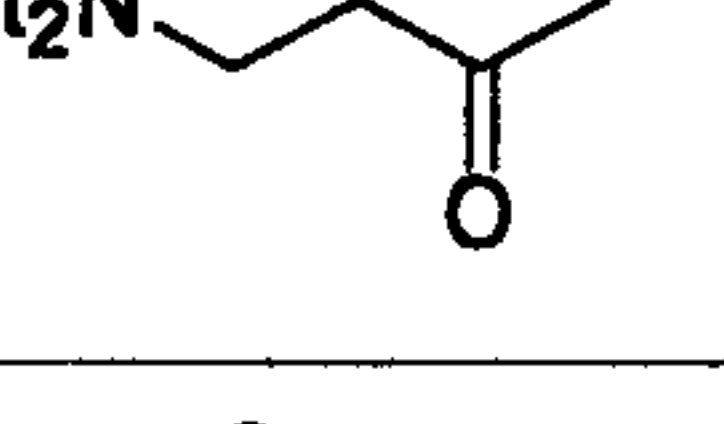
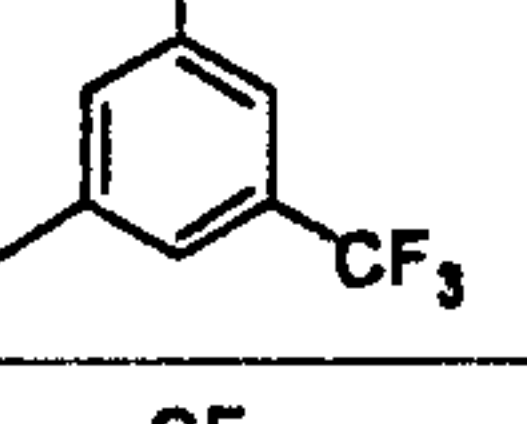
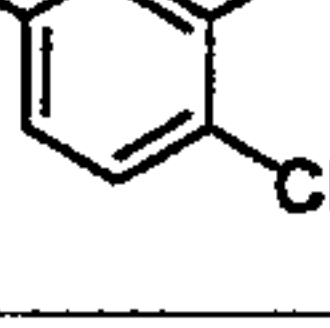
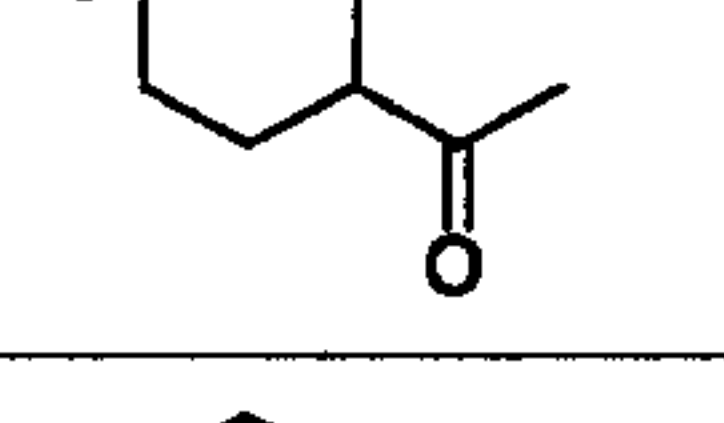
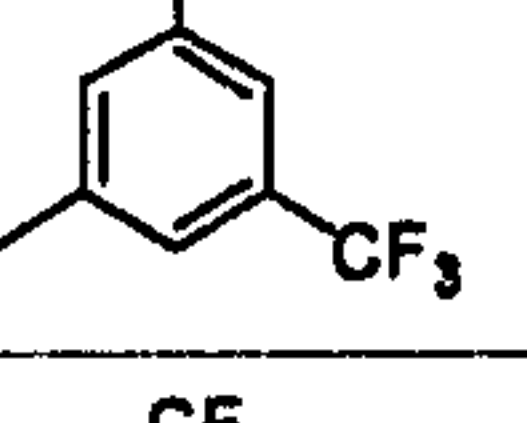
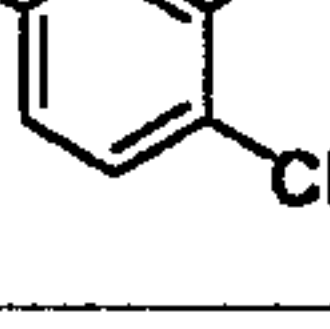
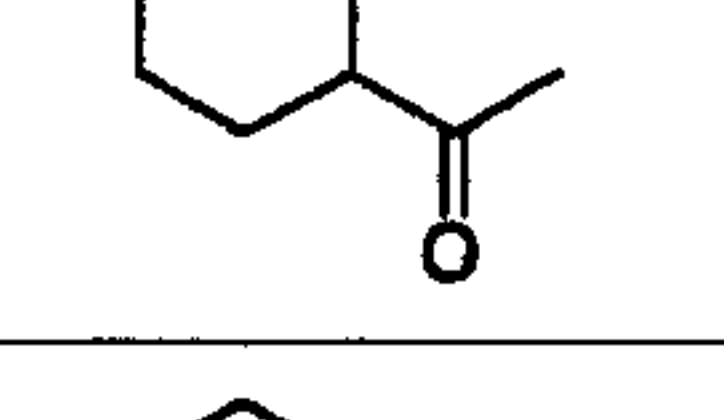
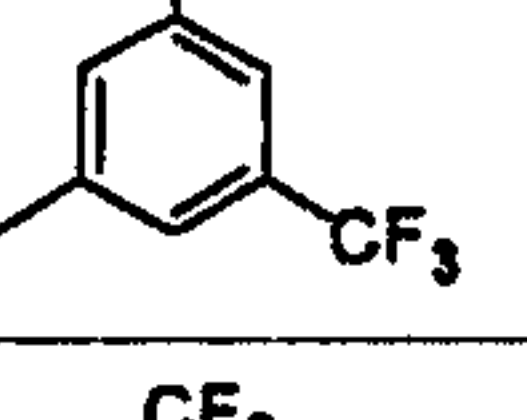
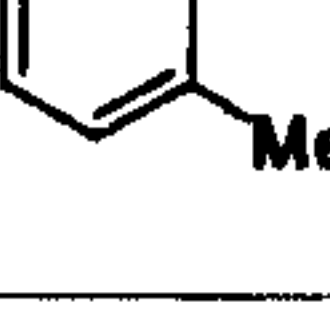
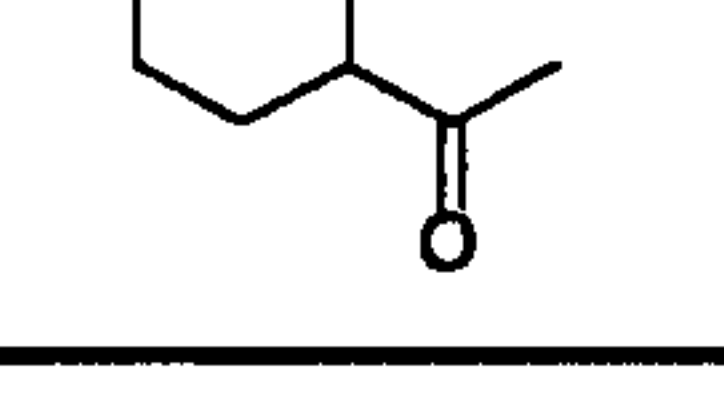
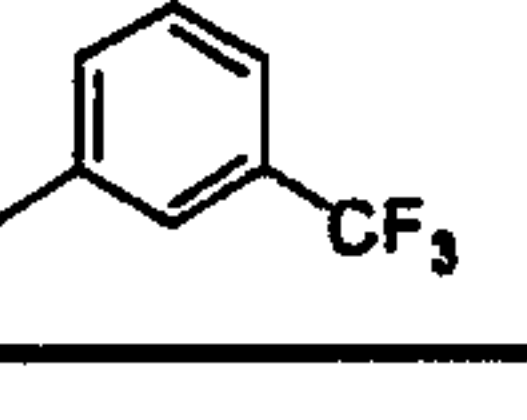
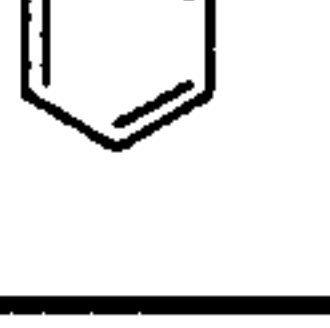
10 [Table 20]

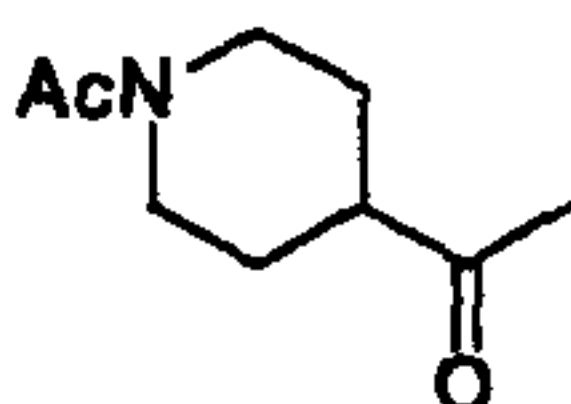
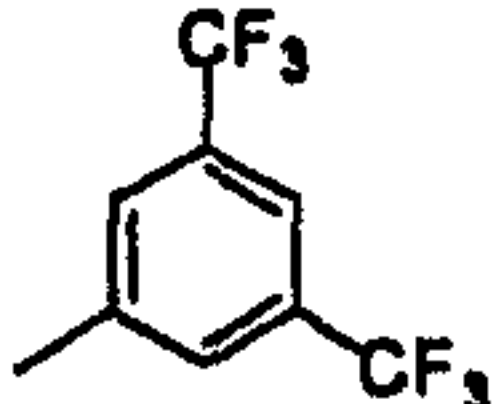
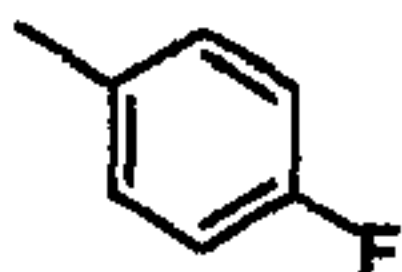
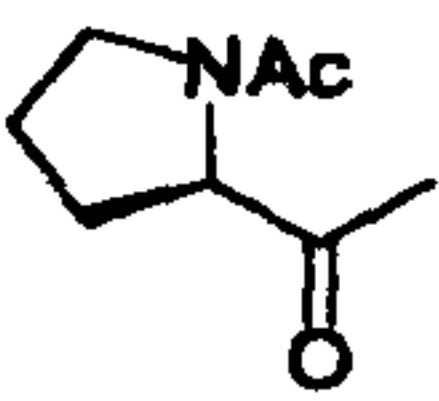
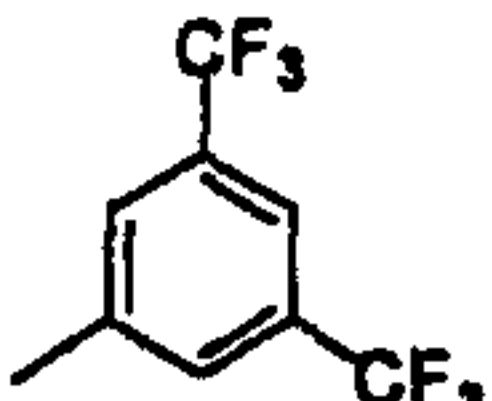
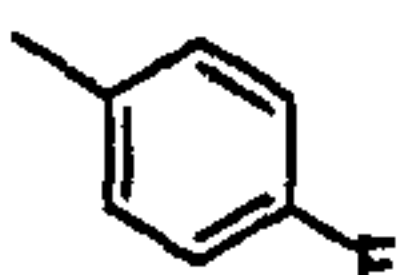
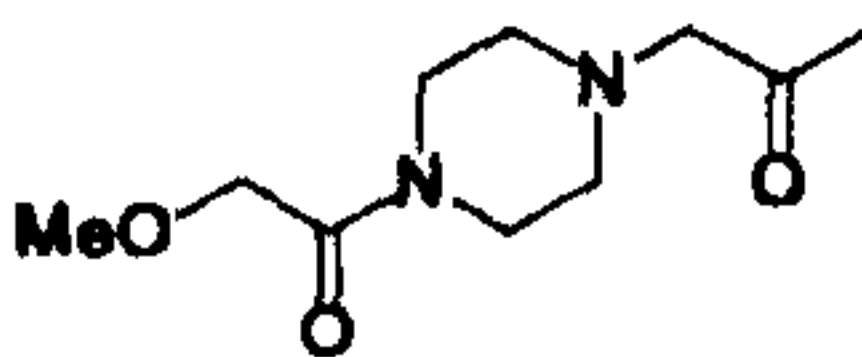
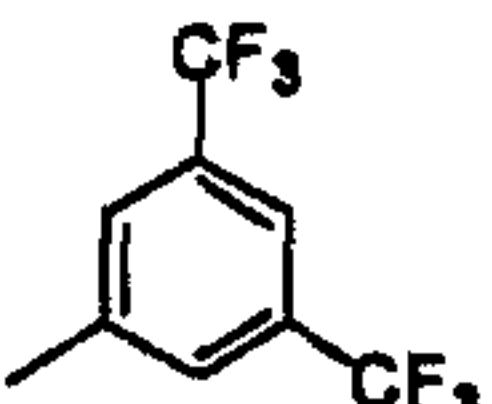
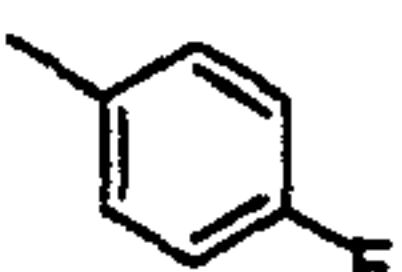
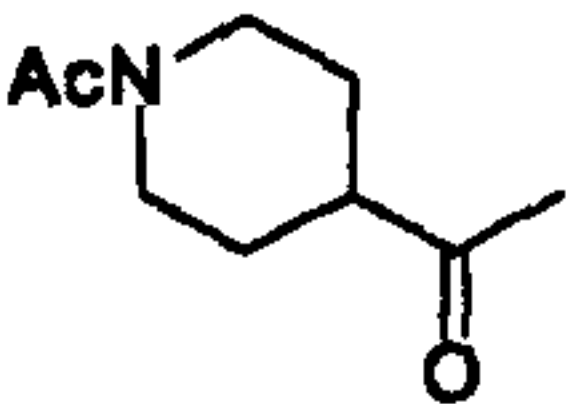
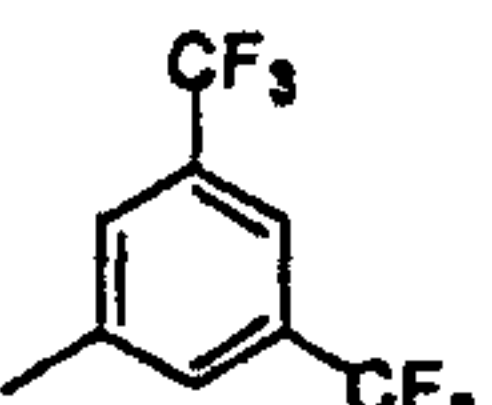
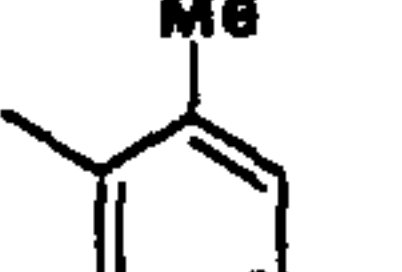
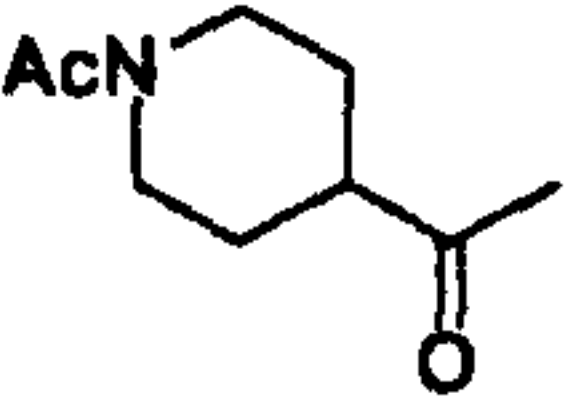
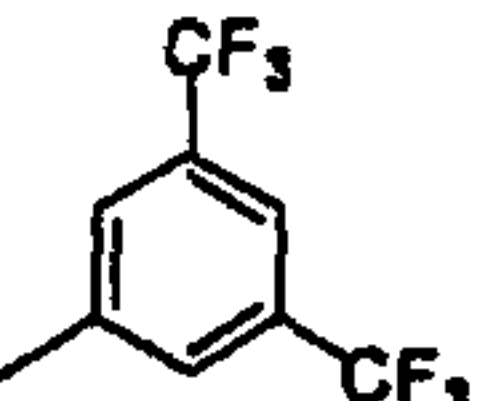
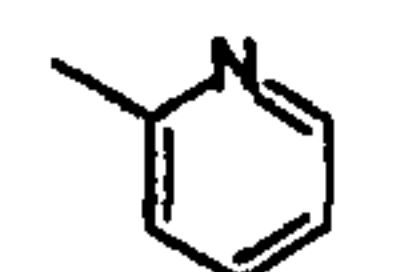
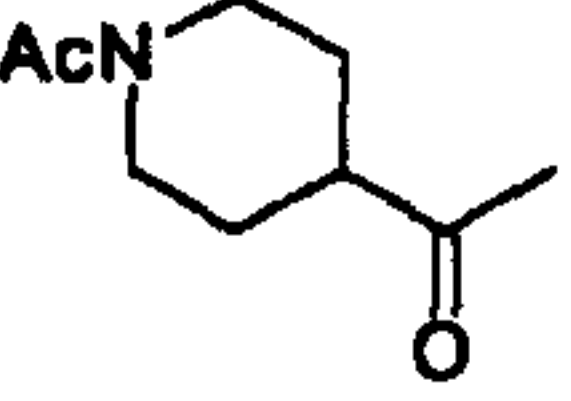
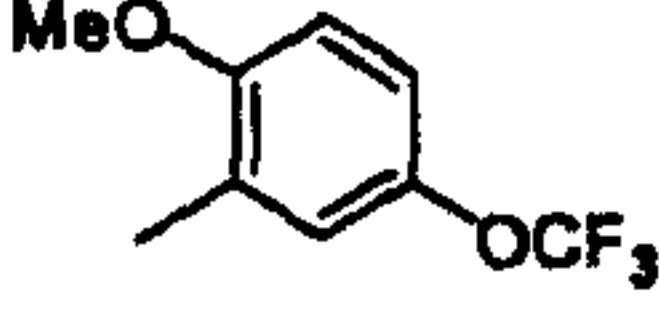
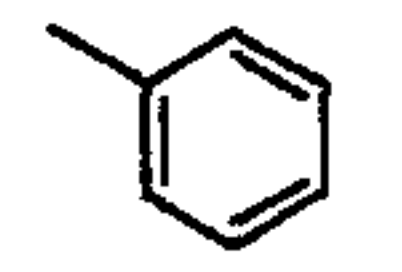
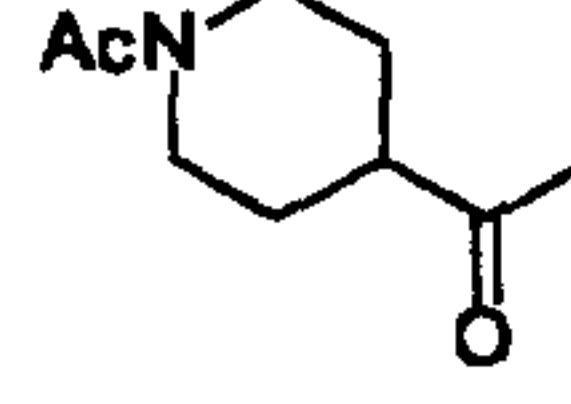
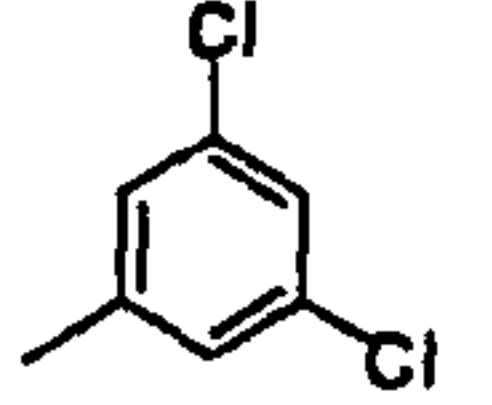
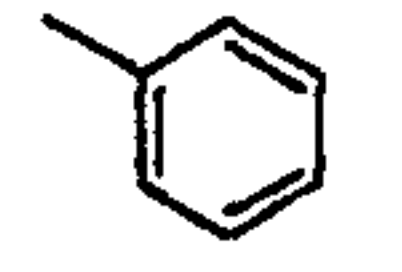
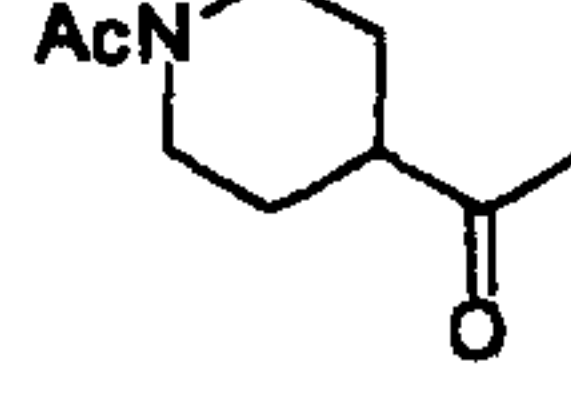
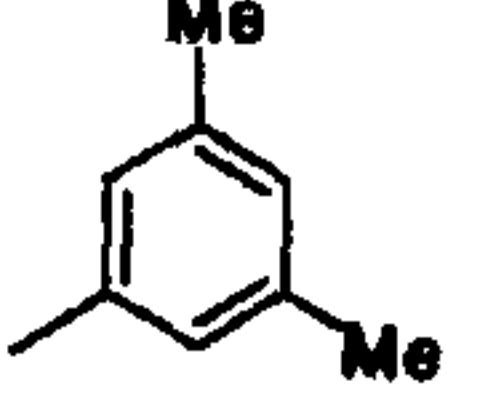
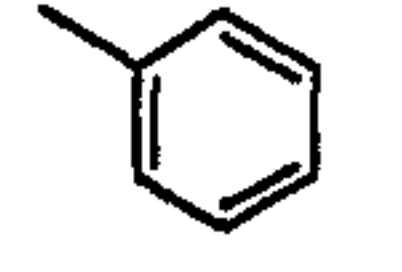
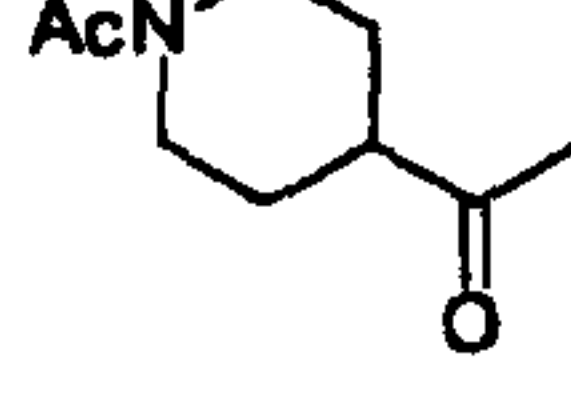
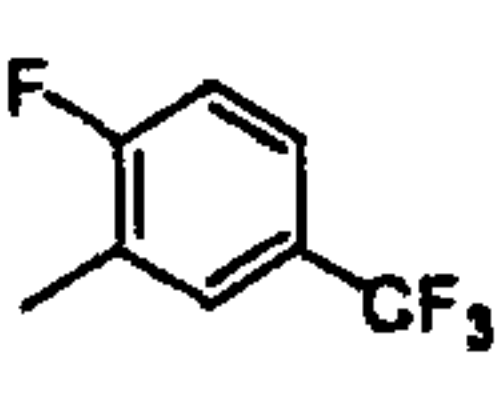
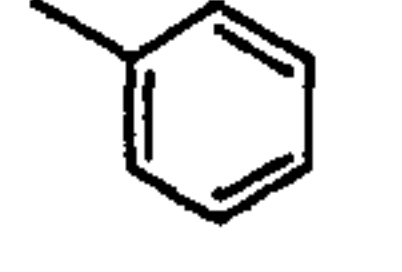
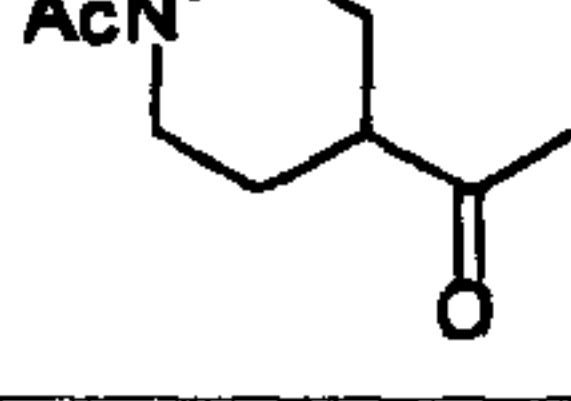
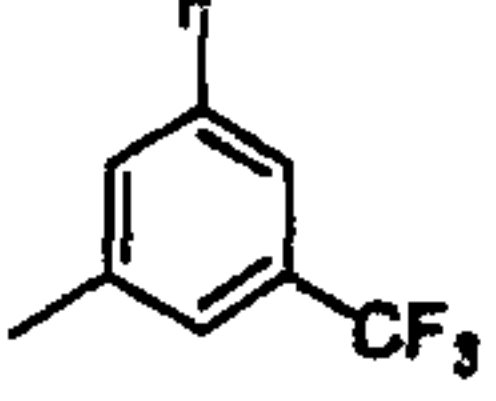
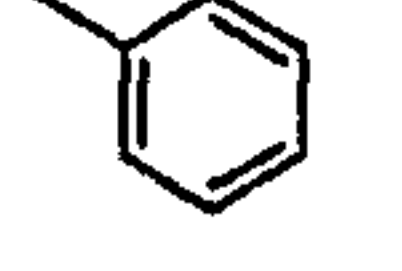
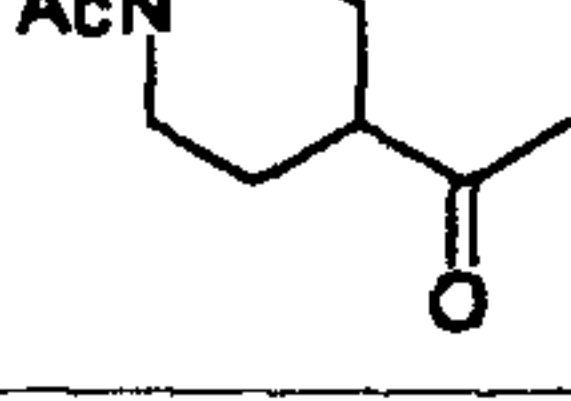
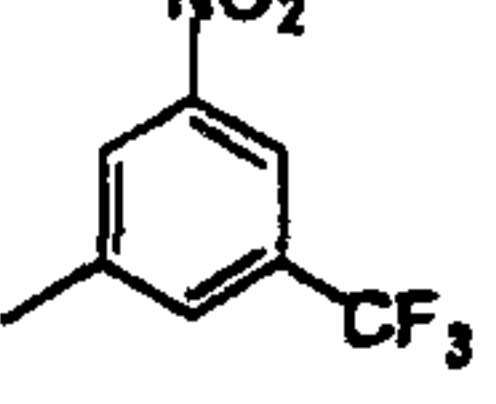
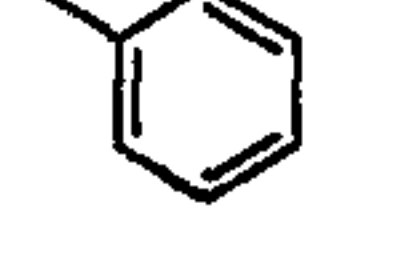
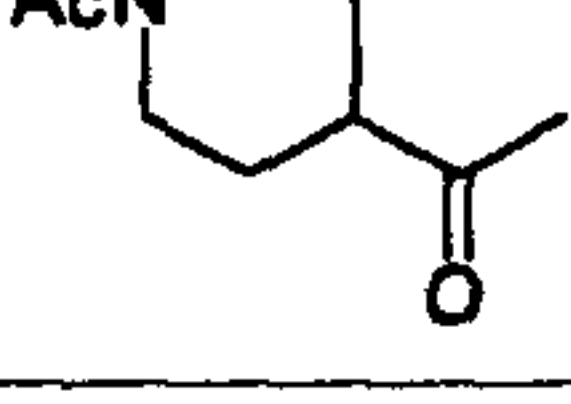
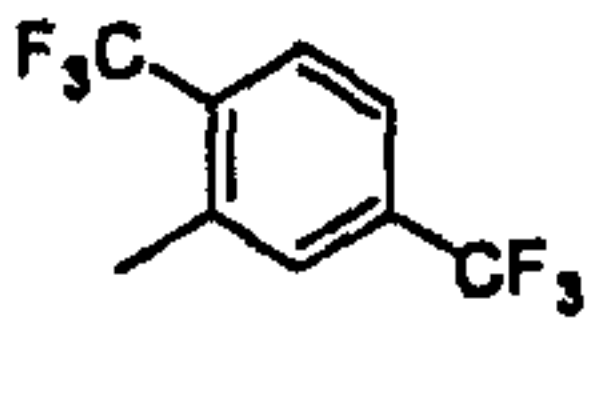
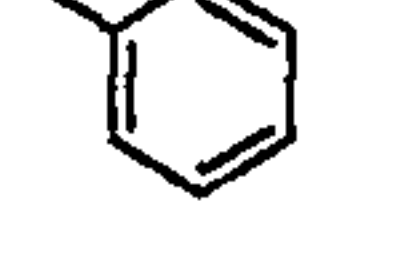
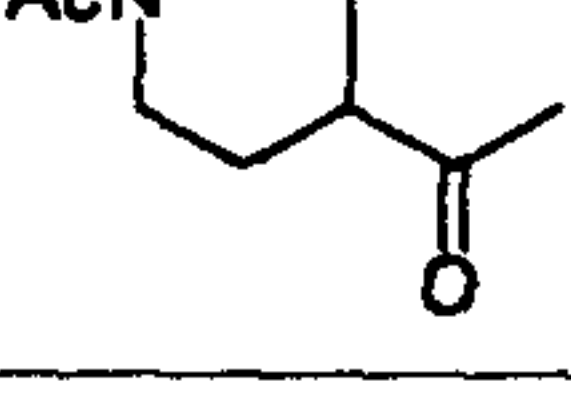
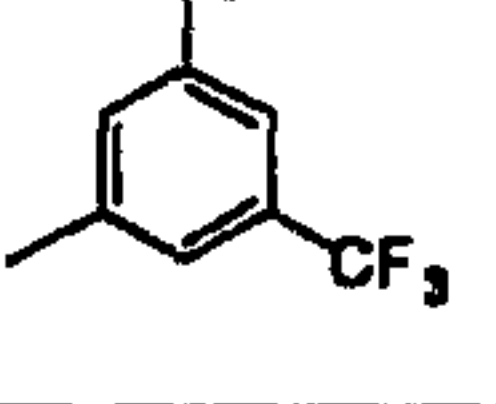
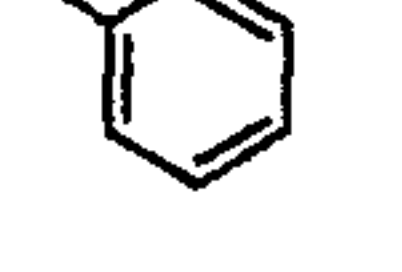
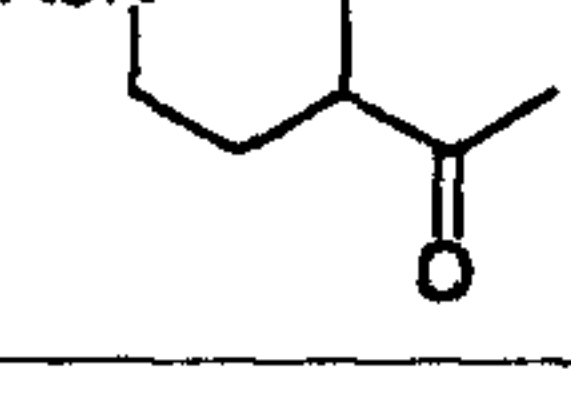
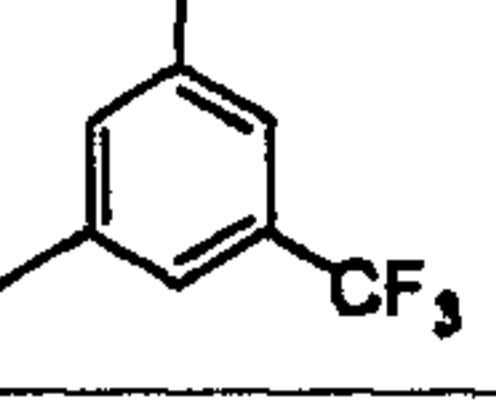
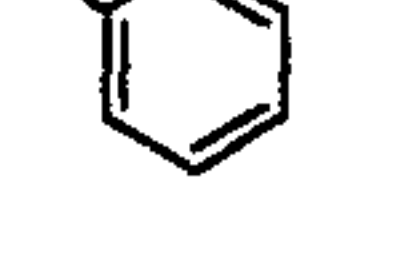
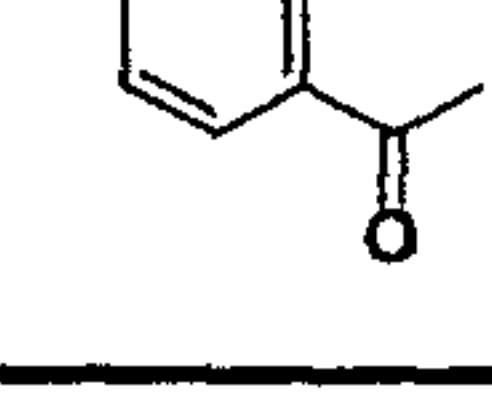
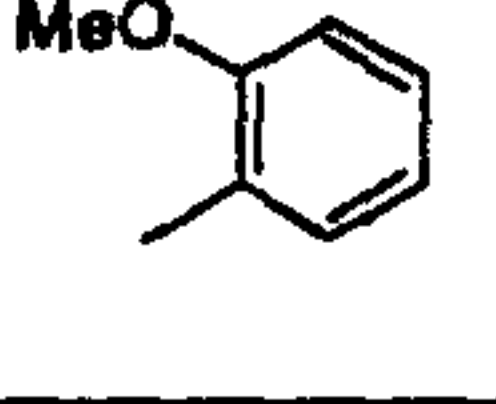


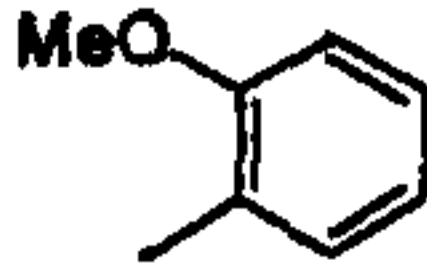
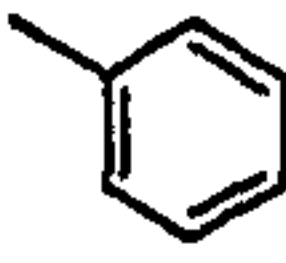
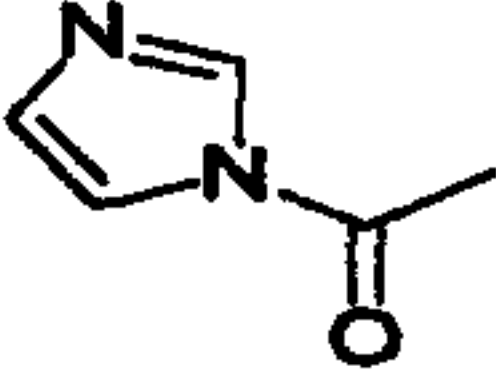
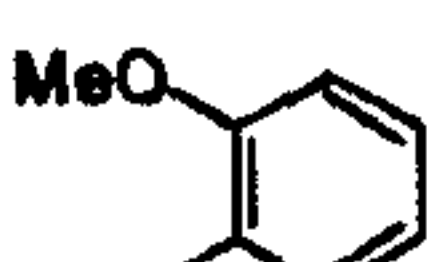
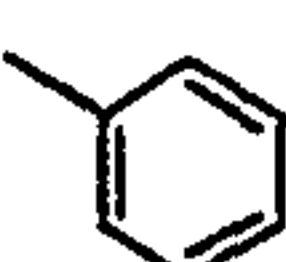
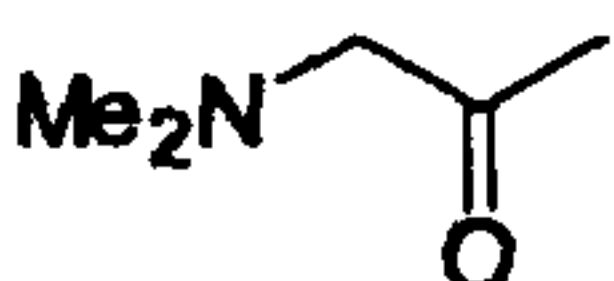
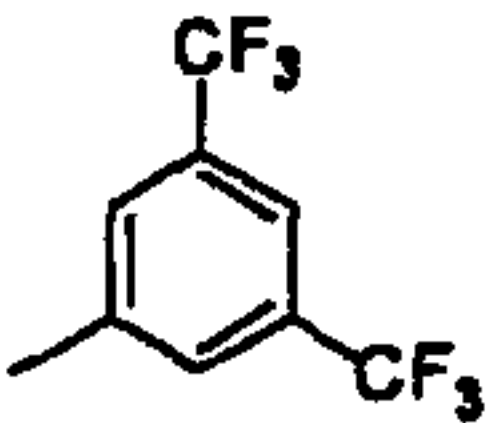
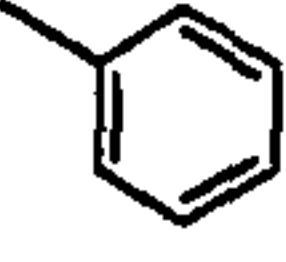
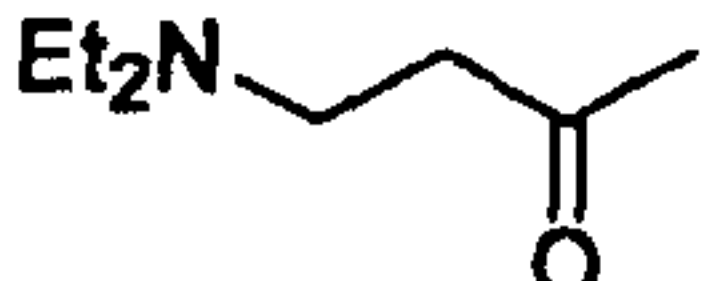
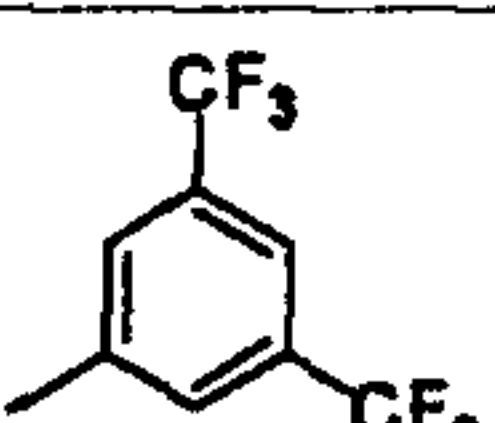
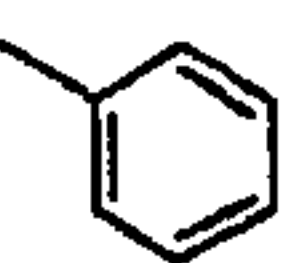
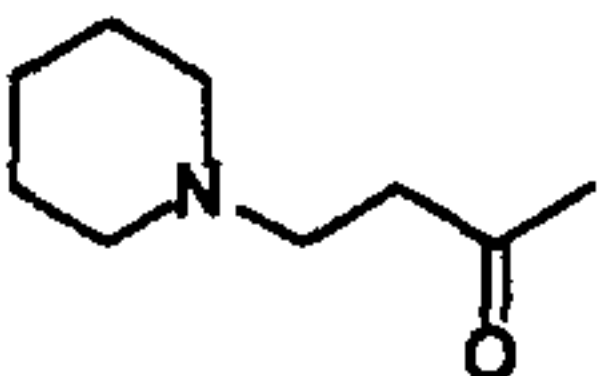
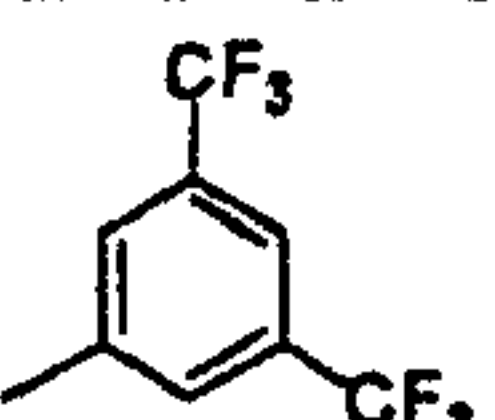
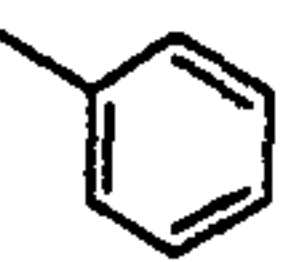
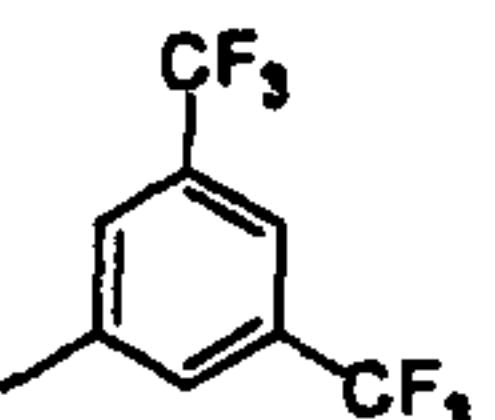
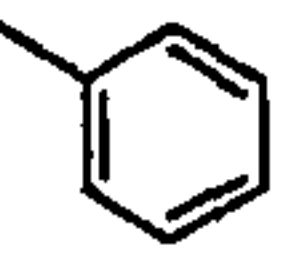
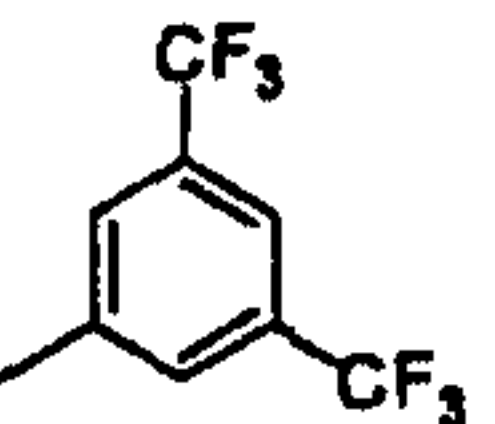
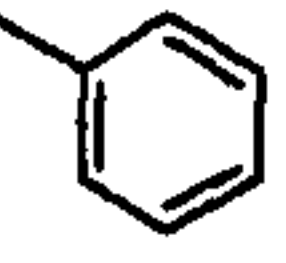
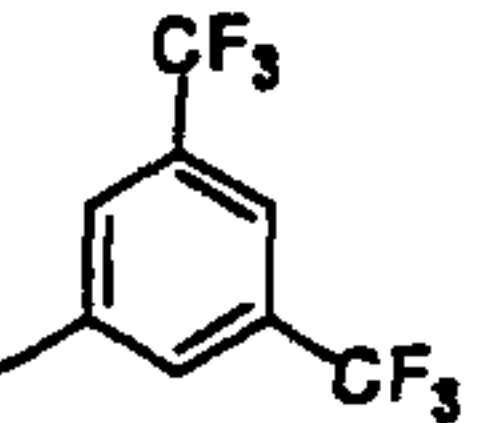
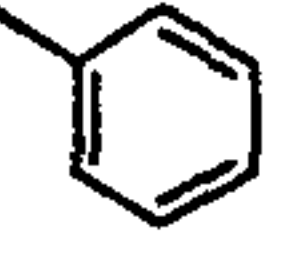
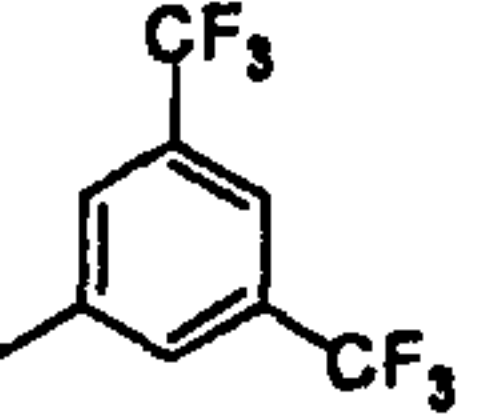
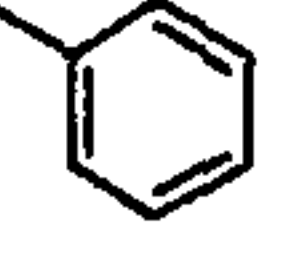
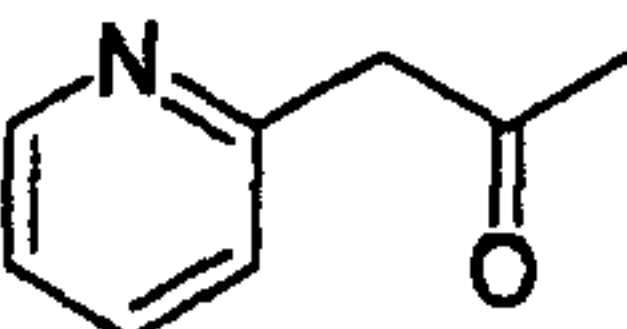
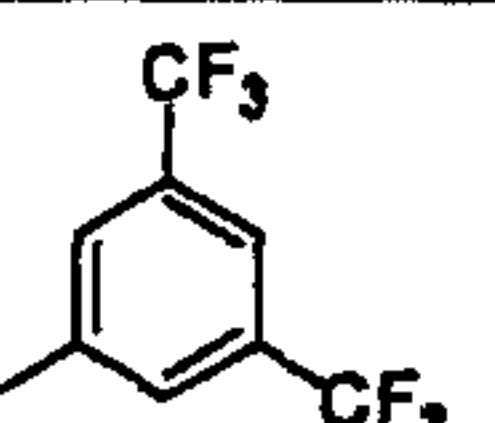
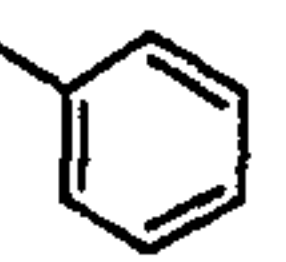
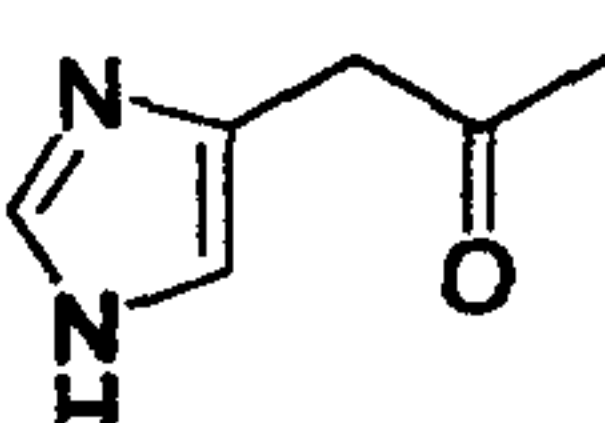
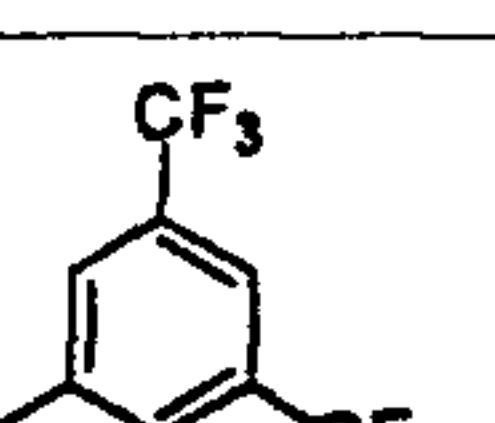
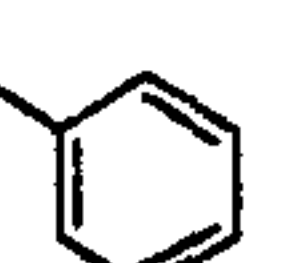
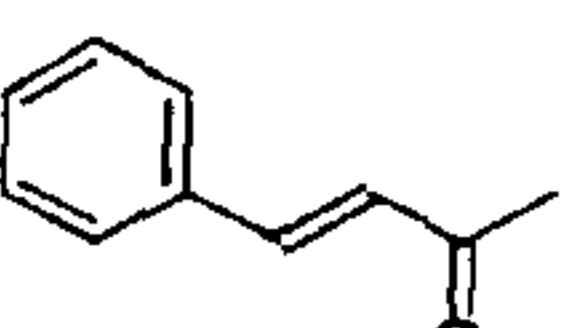
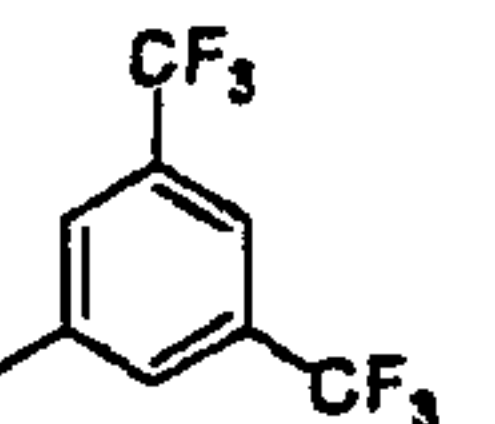
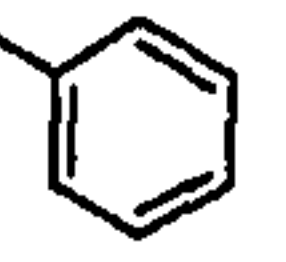
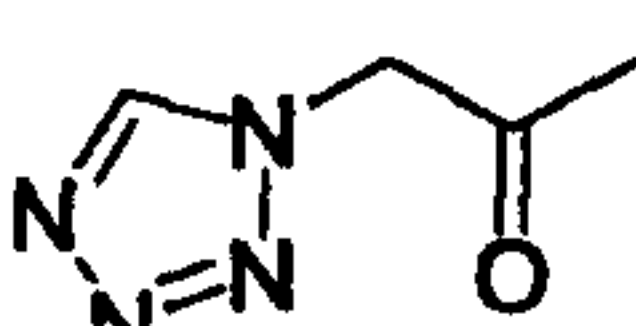
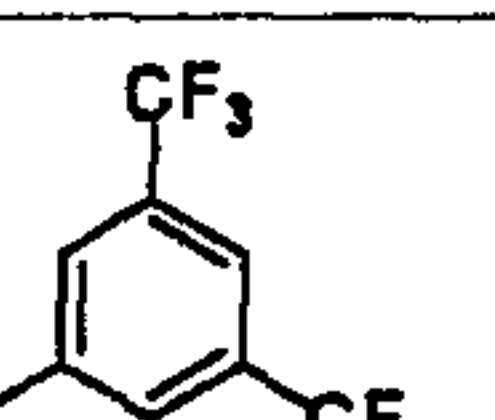
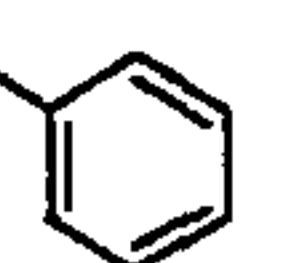
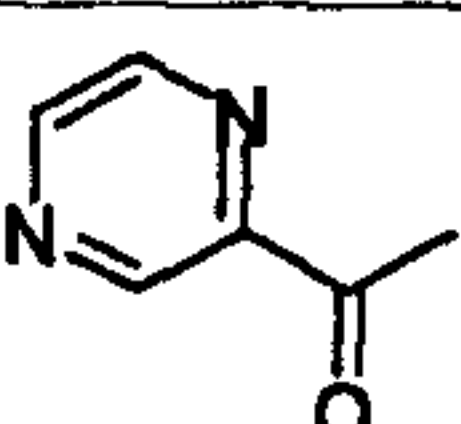
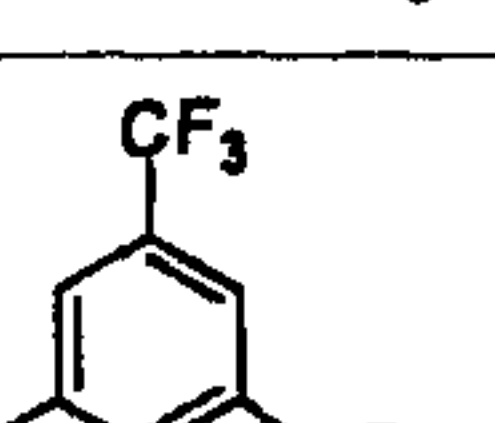
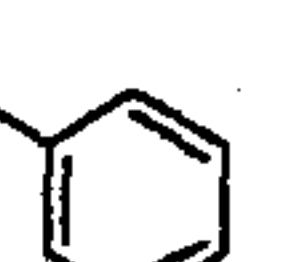
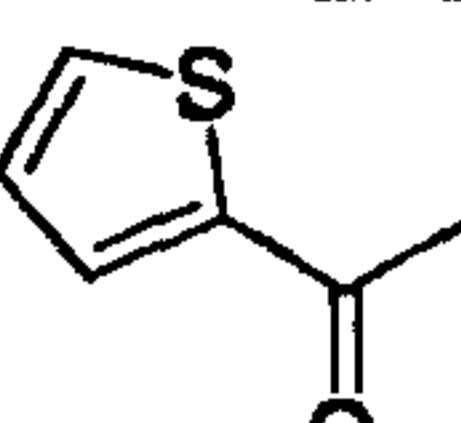
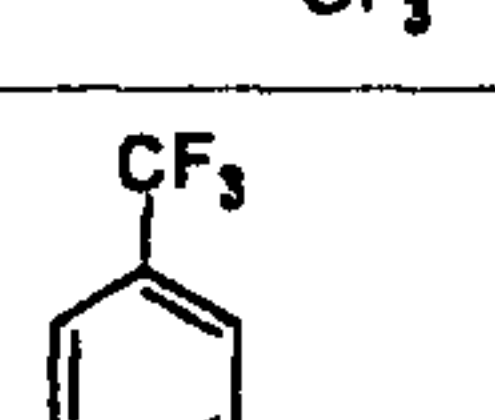
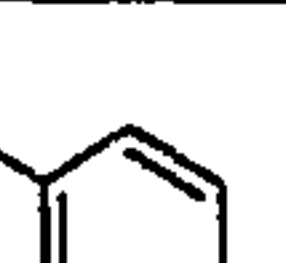
Ex. No.	Stereo-chemistry	R ¹	X	B	C	MS (ESI) (M+H) ⁺
418	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtCO	O			460
419	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			509
420	(±)- <i>cis</i>	MeOCH ₂ CO	O			476
422	(±)- <i>cis</i>	^t BuCO	O			489
423	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			523
424	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			512
425	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			534
426	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			514
428	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			510
429	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			514
430	(±)- <i>cis</i>	Et ₂ NCH ₂ CH ₂ CO	O			531
431	(±)- <i>cis</i>	MeO ₂ CCH ₂ CH ₂ CO	O			518

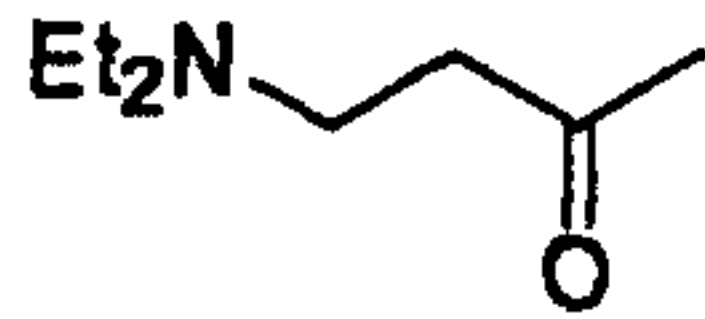
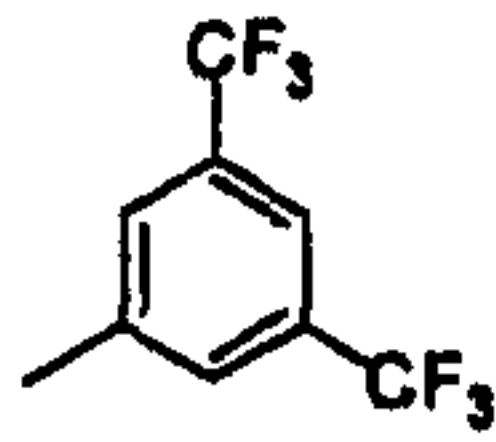
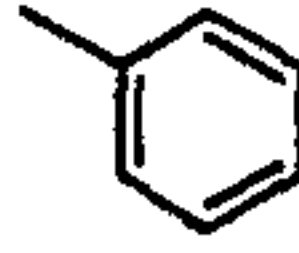
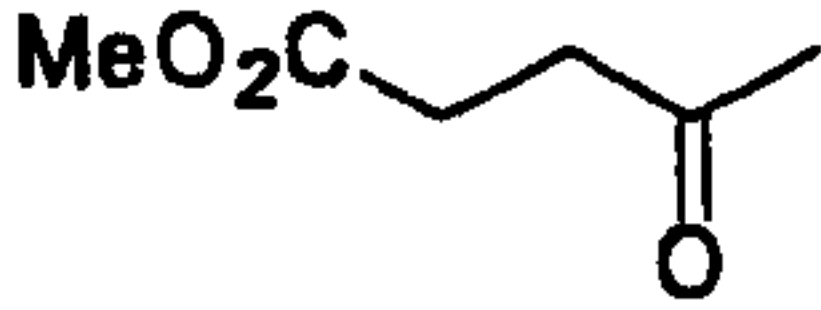
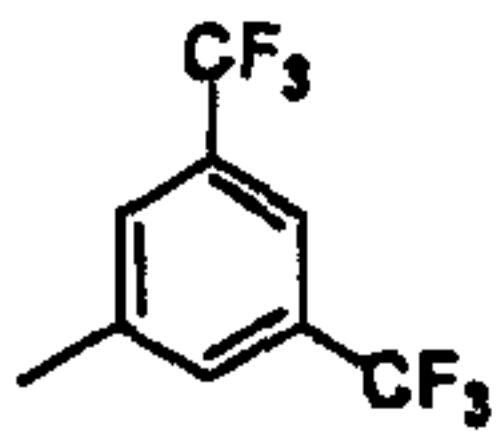
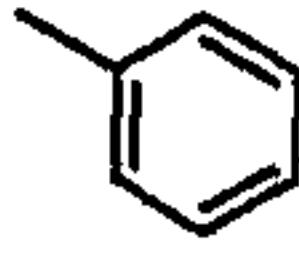
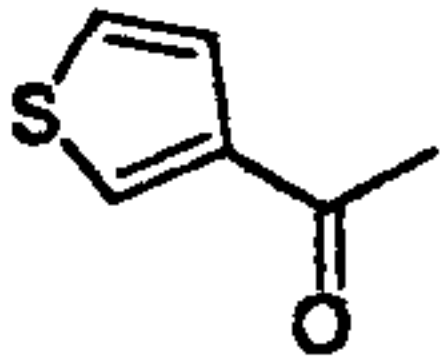
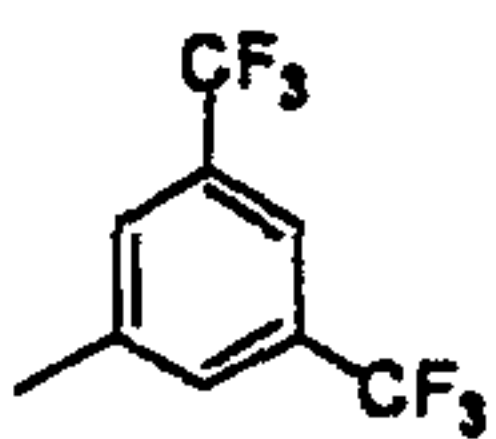
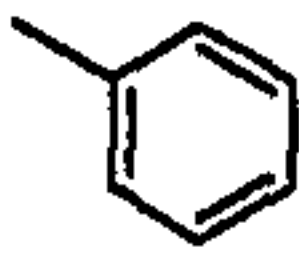
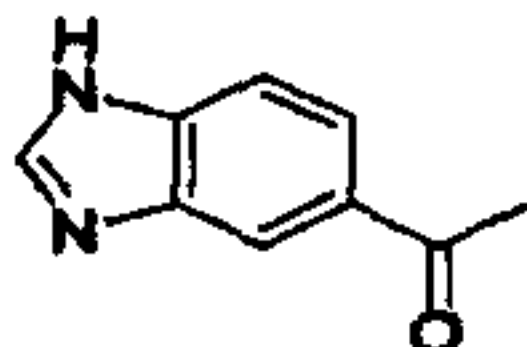
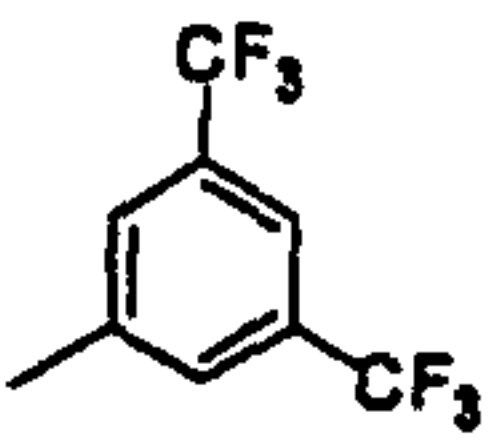
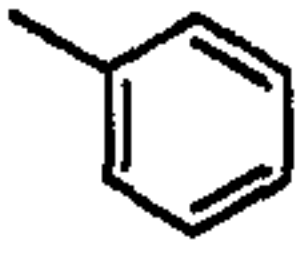
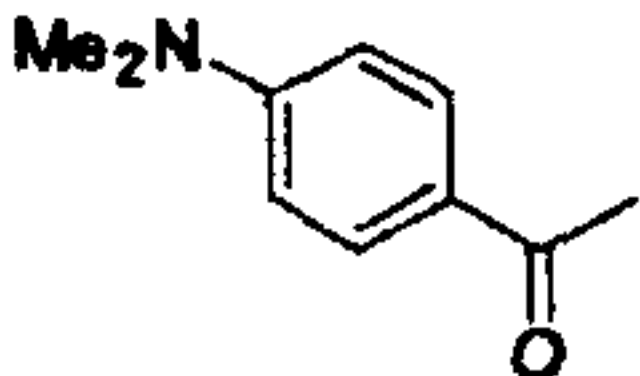
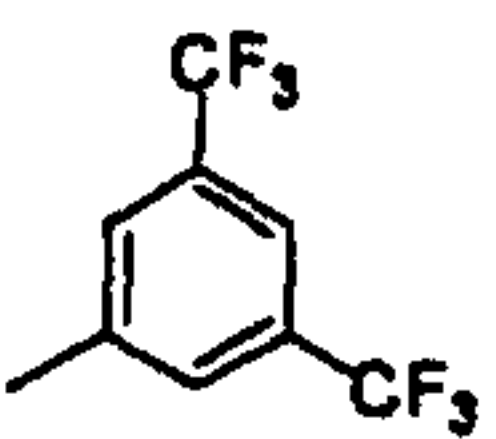
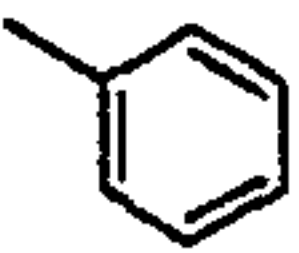
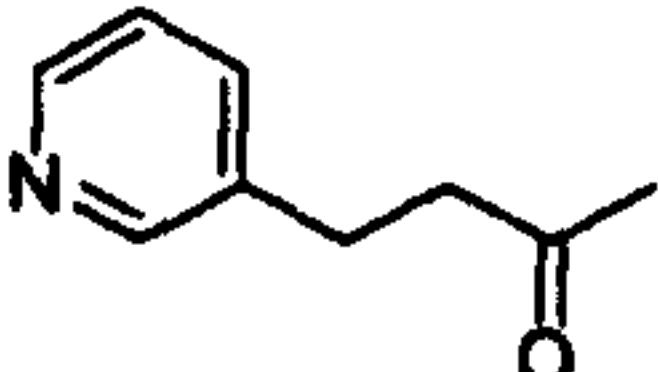
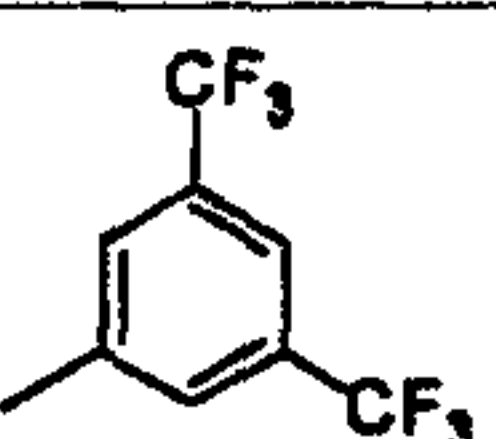
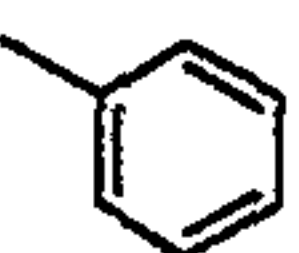
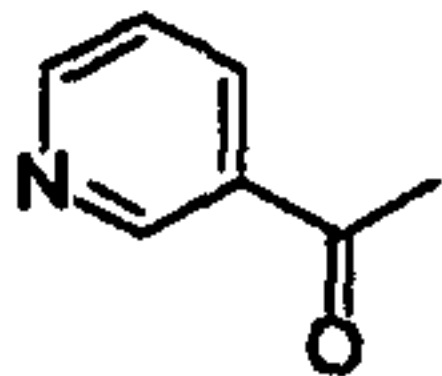
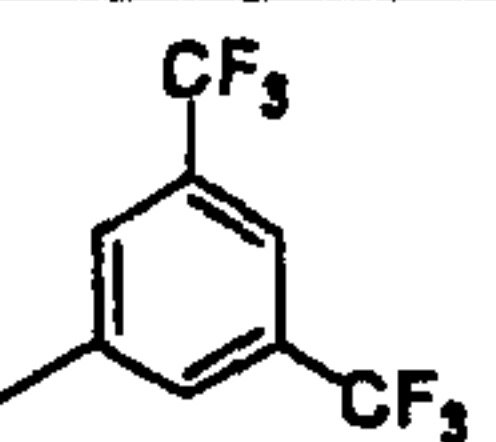
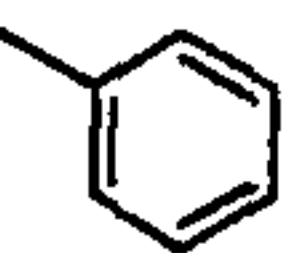
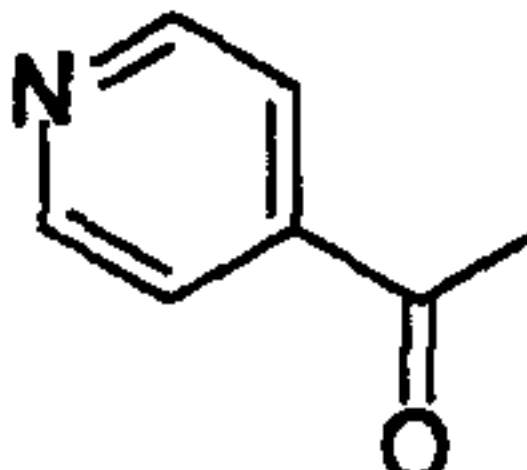
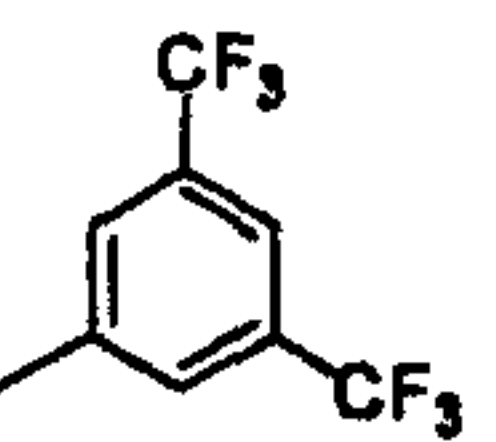
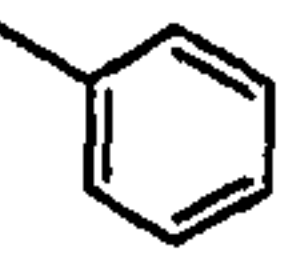
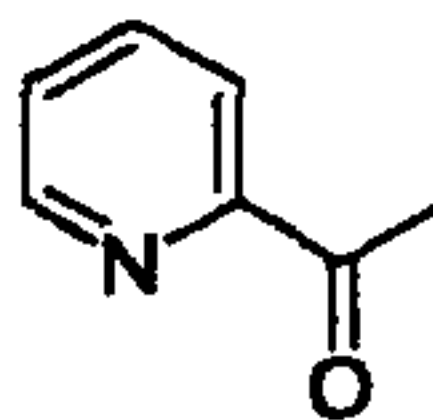
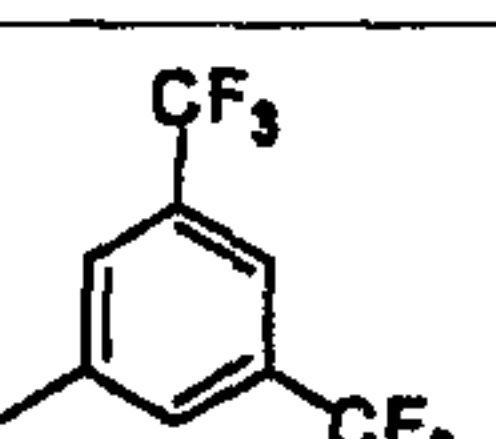
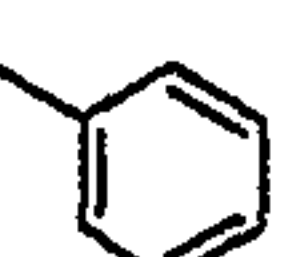
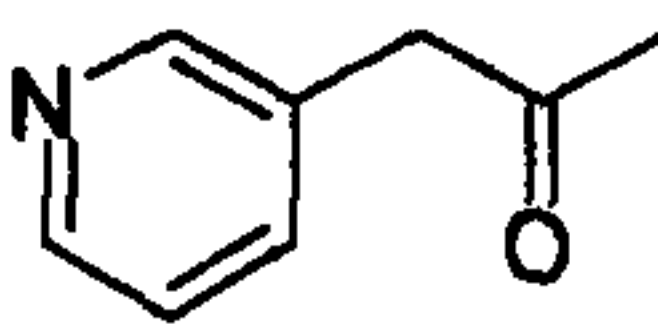
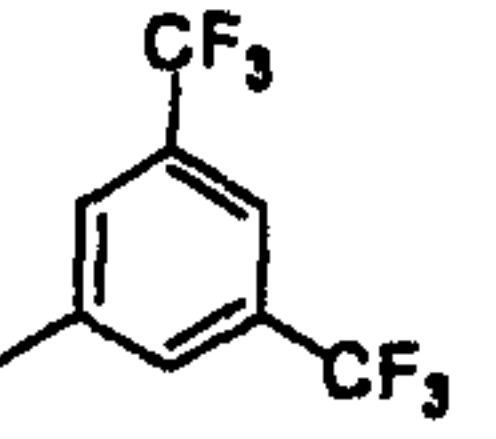
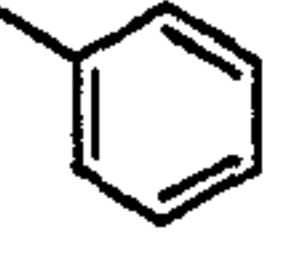
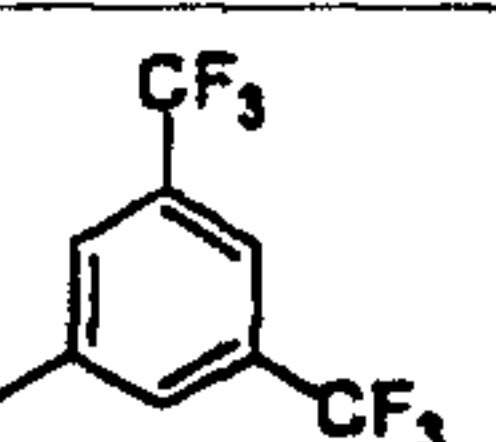
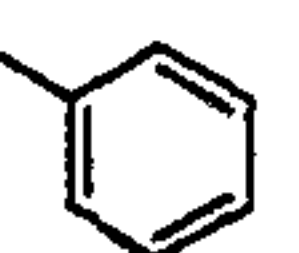
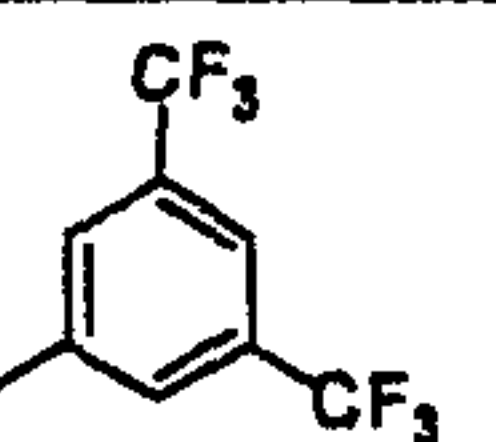
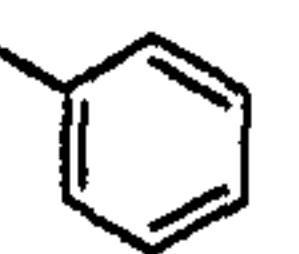
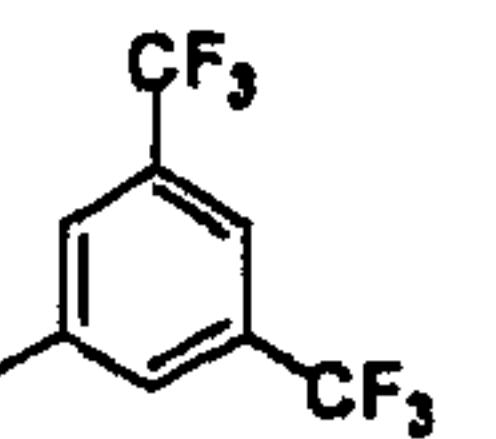
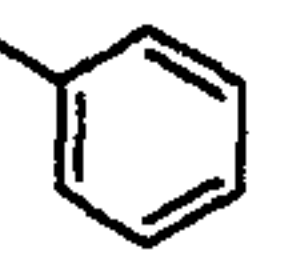
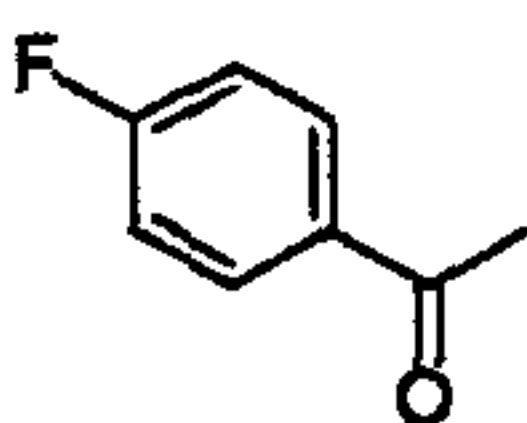
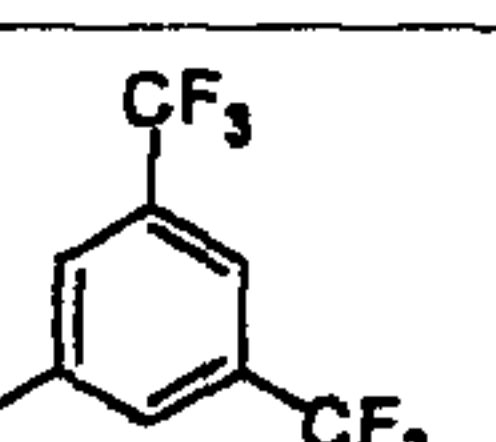
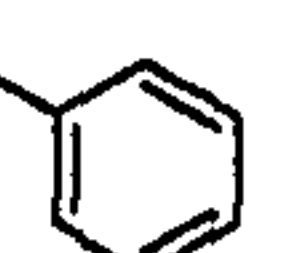
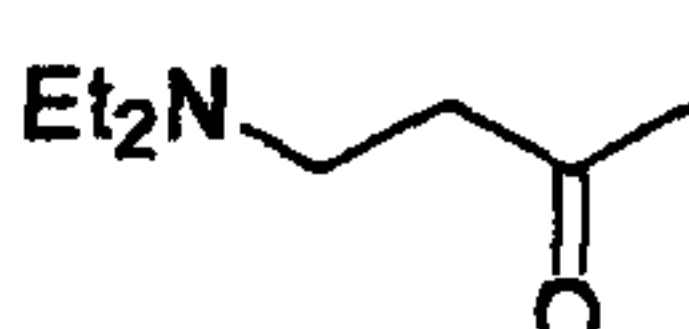
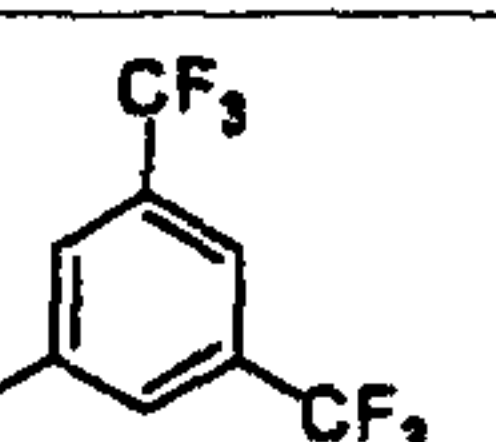
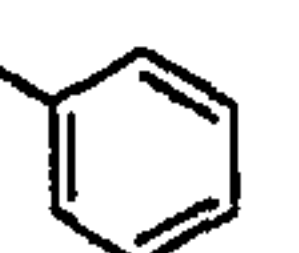
432	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			514
433	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			548
434	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			551
435	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			537
436	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			509
437	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			509
438	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			509
439	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			523
442	(±)- <i>cis</i>	<i>n</i> PrCO	O			474
443	(±)- <i>cis</i>	<i>i</i> PrCO	O			474
444	(±)- <i>cis</i>	<i>t</i> BuCO	O			488
453	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			543
454	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			543
456	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			531
457	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			510

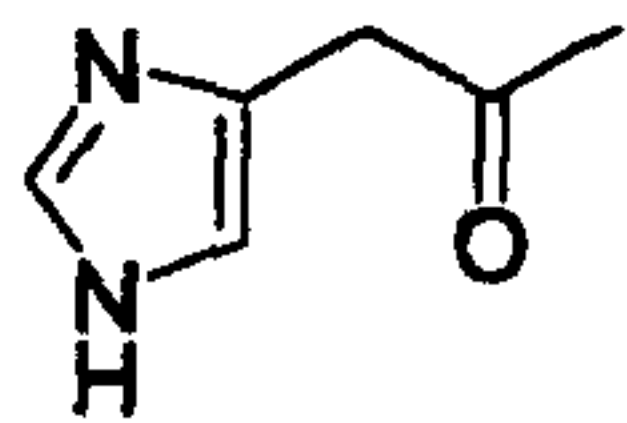
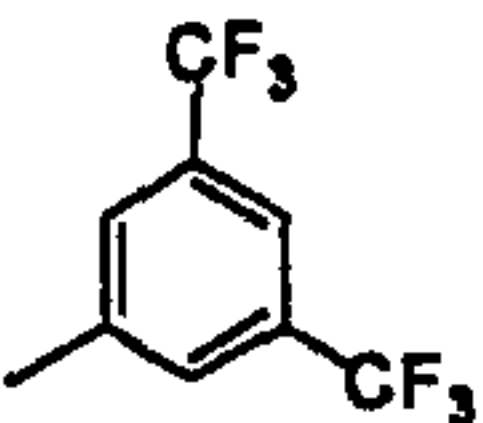
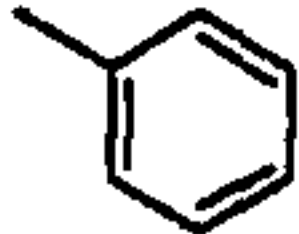
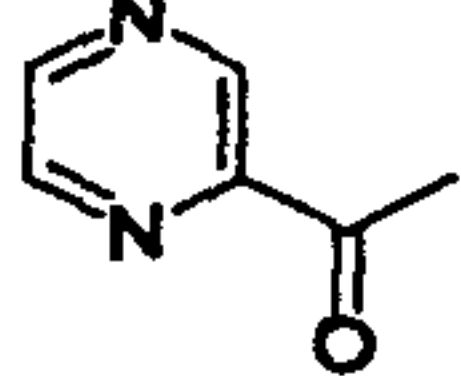
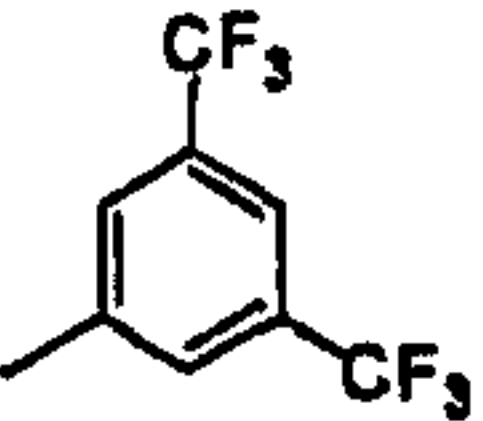
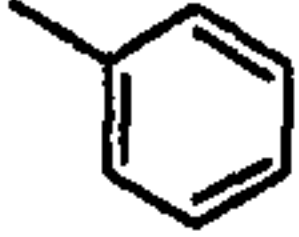
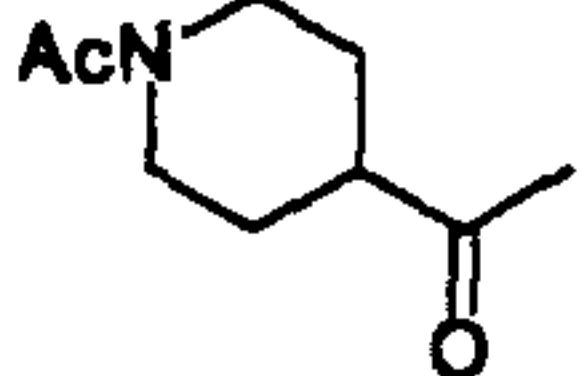
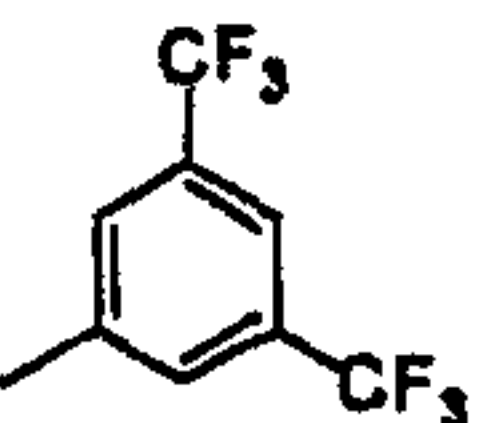
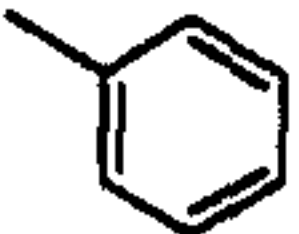
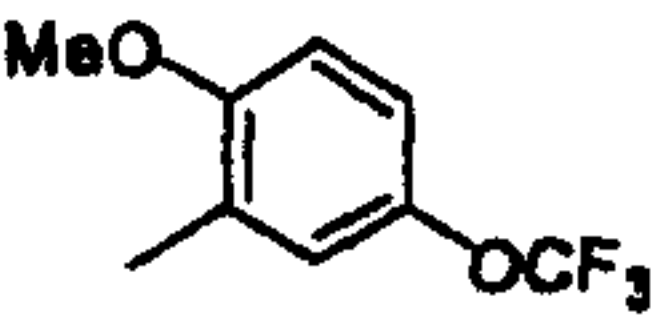
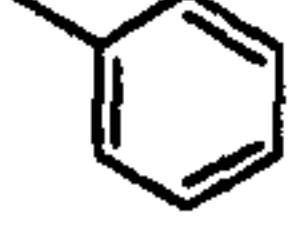
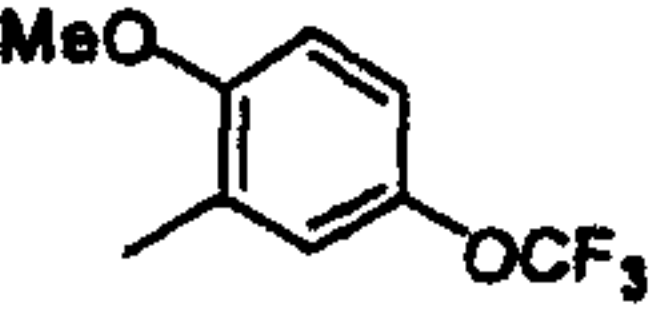
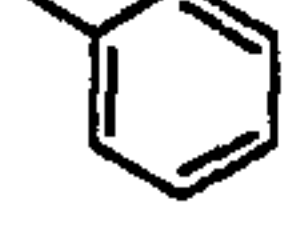
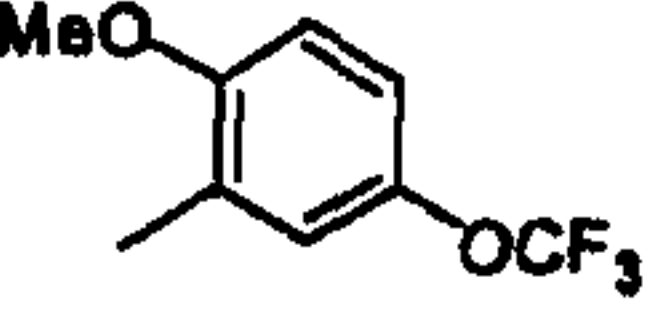
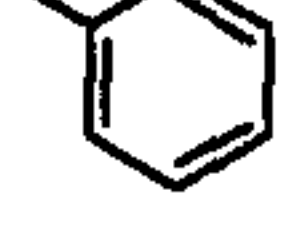
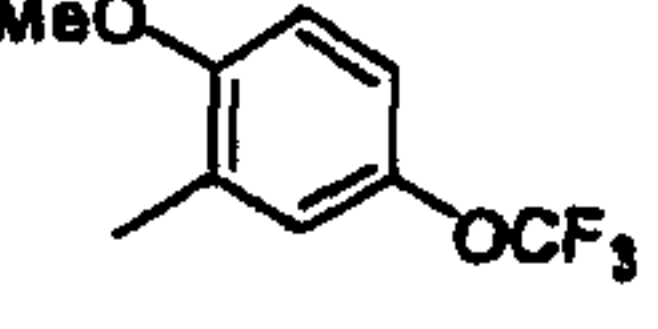
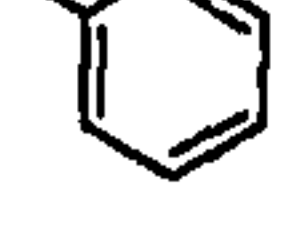
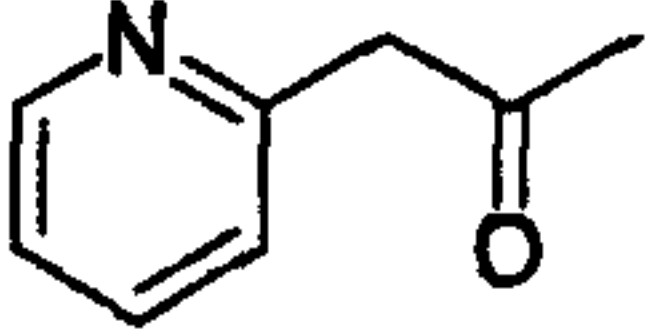
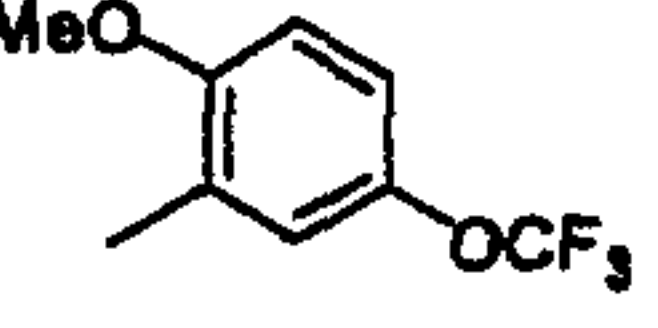
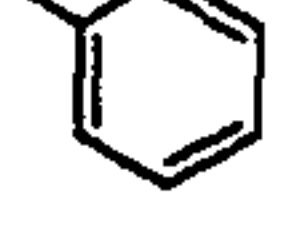
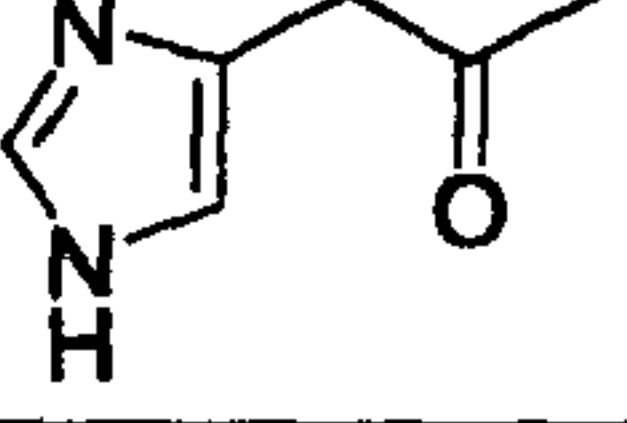
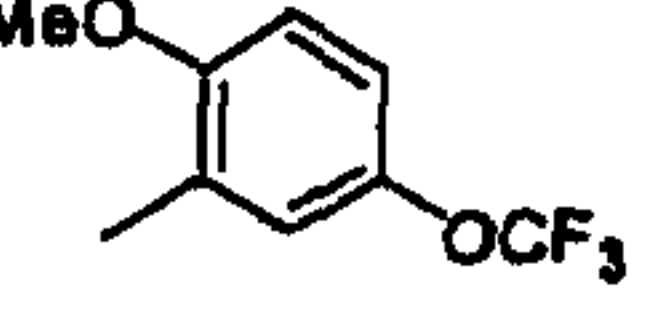
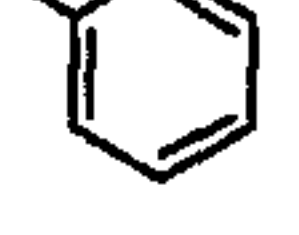
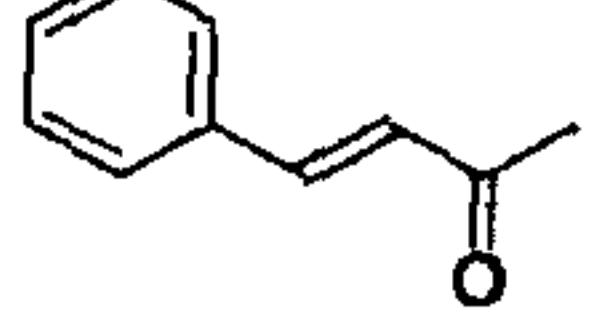
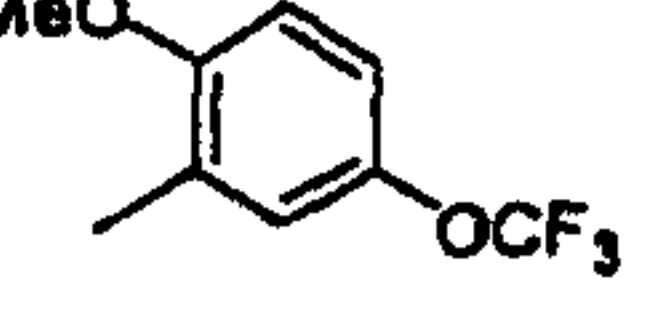
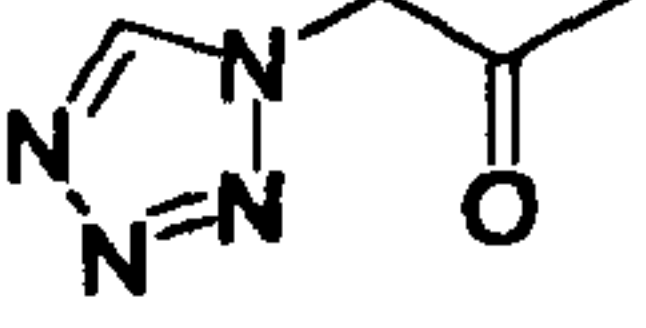
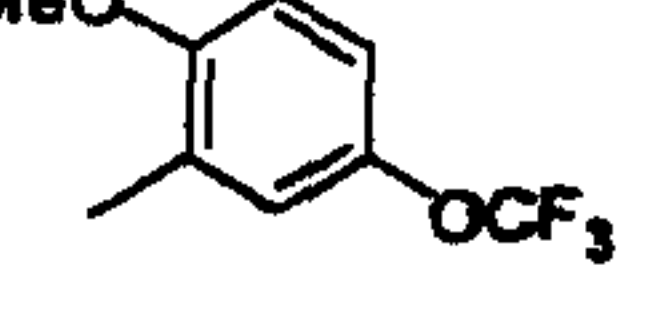
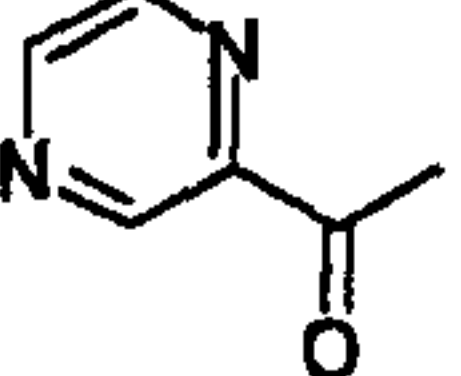
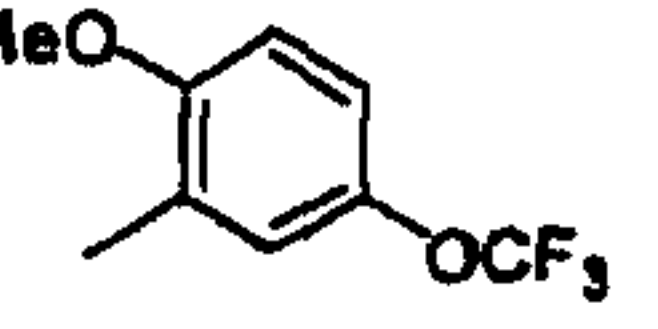
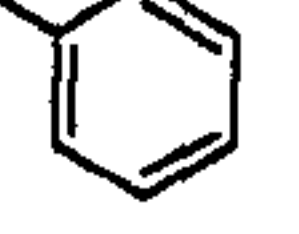
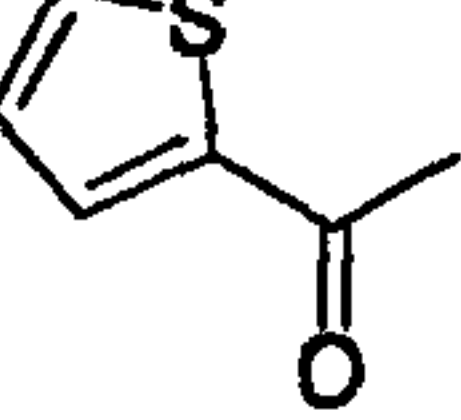
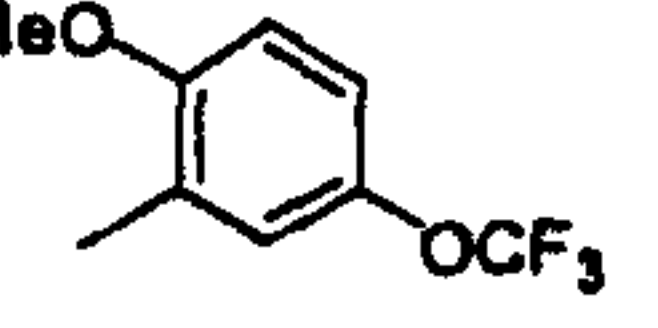
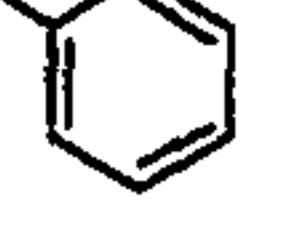
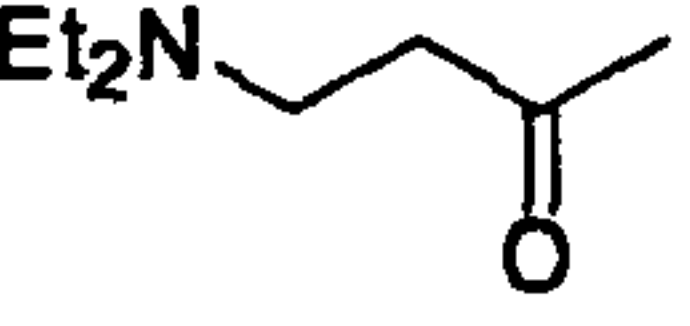
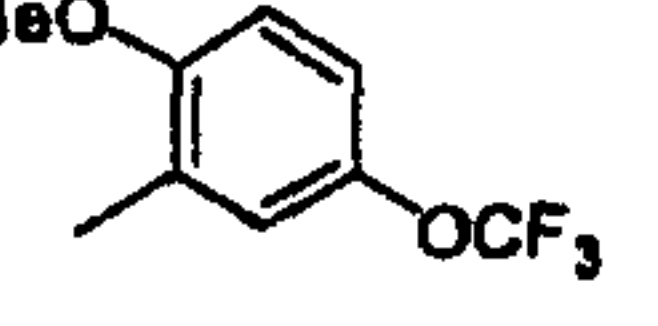
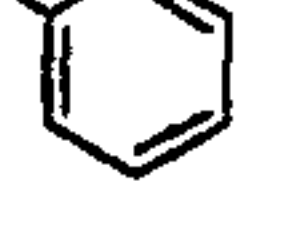
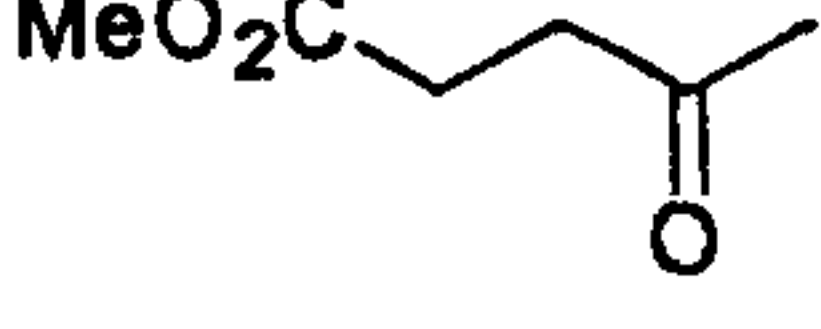
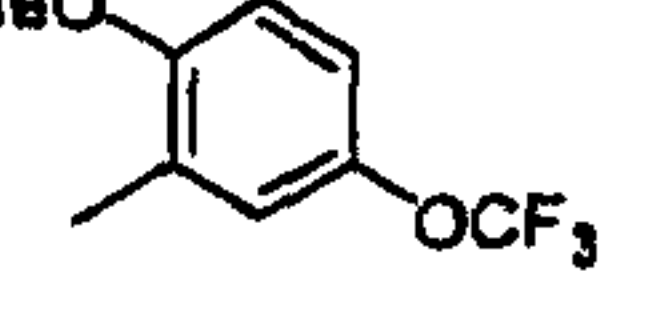
458	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			537
460	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			687
465	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			654
467	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			571
468	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			585
470	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			587
471	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			600
472	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			625
473	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			593
474	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			559
475	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			565
476	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			571
477	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			607
479	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			593
481	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			488

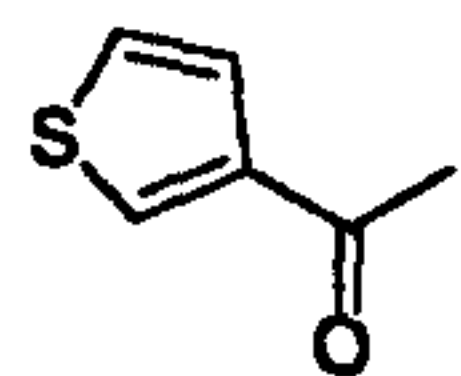
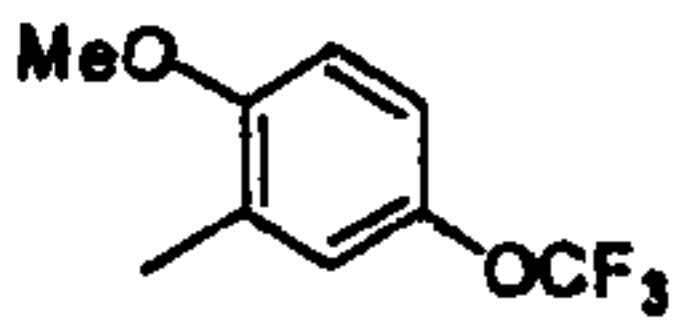
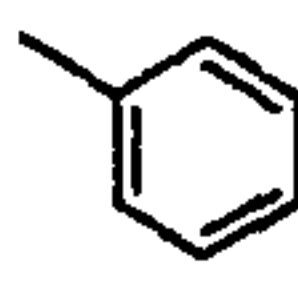
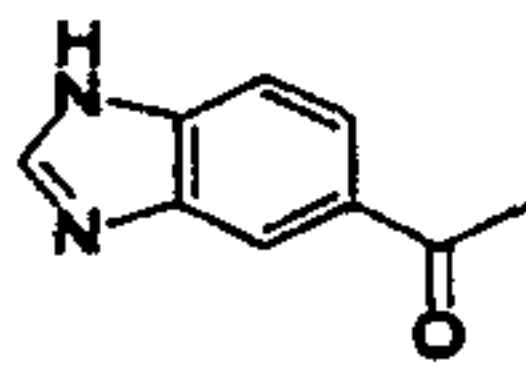
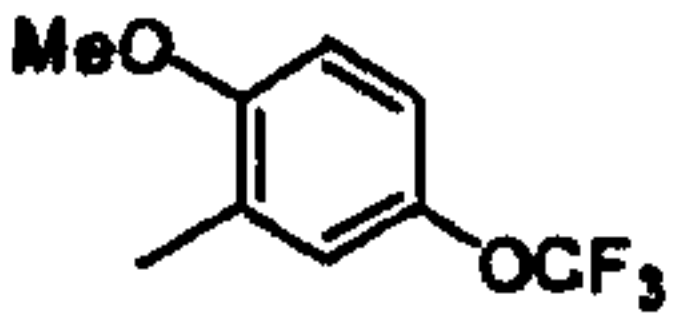
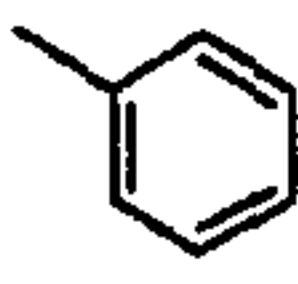
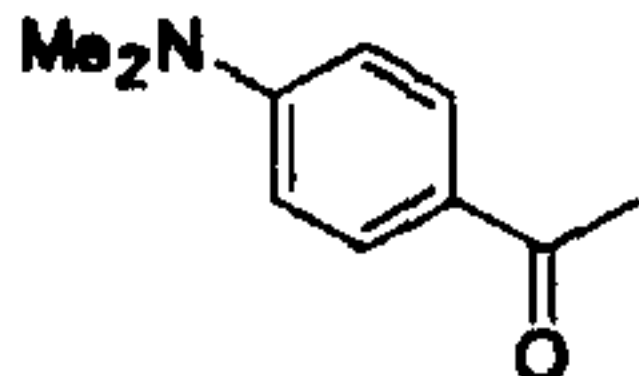
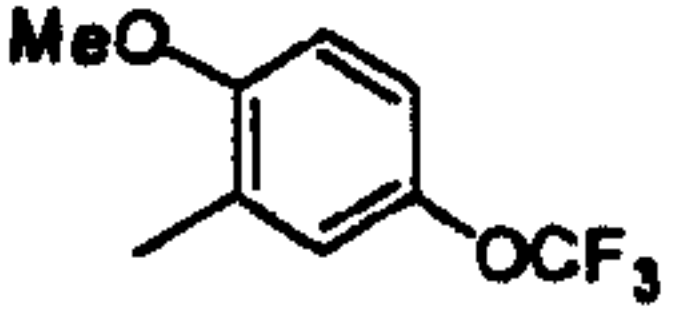
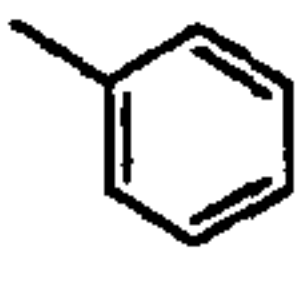
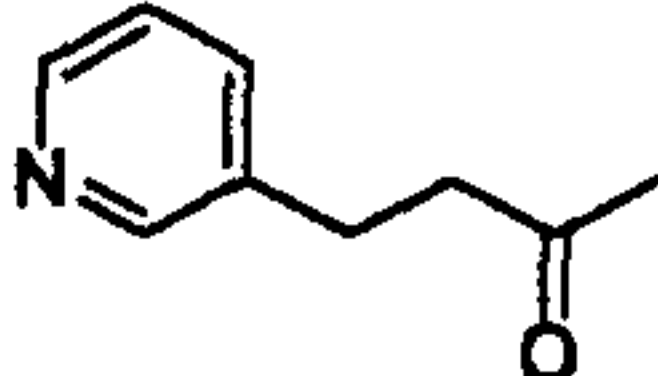
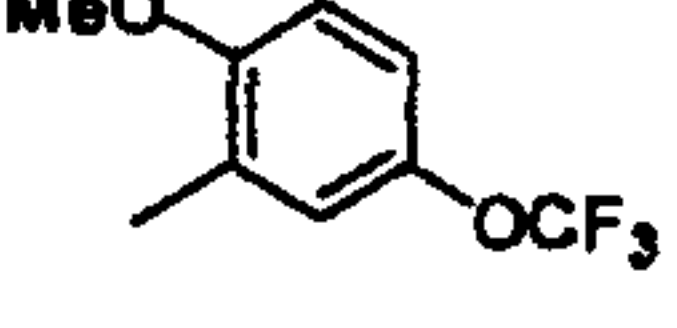
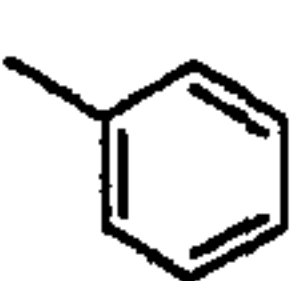
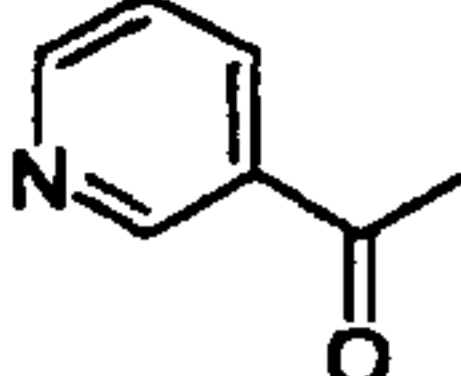
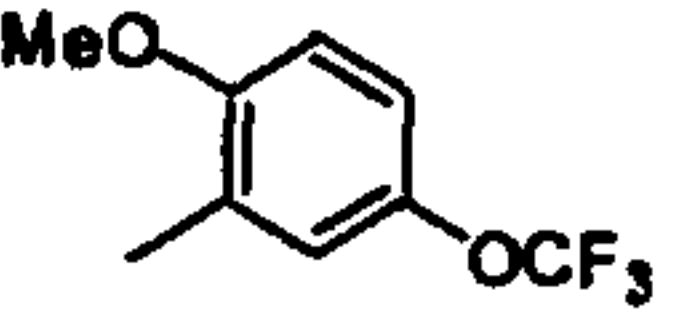
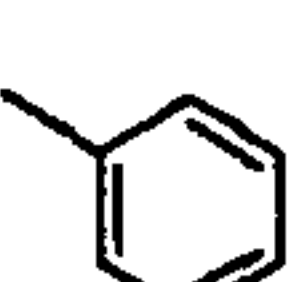
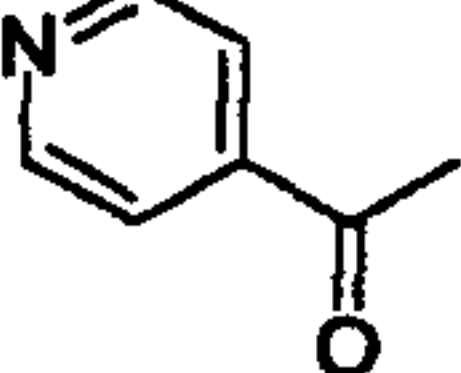
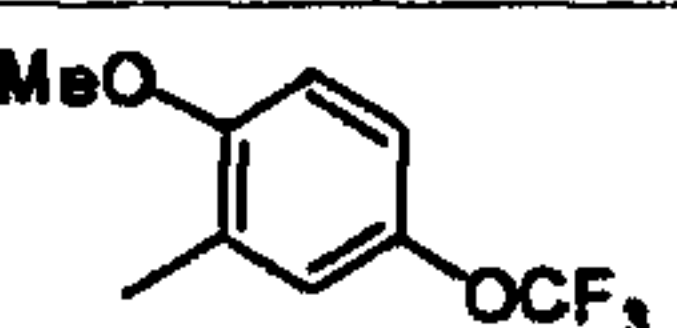
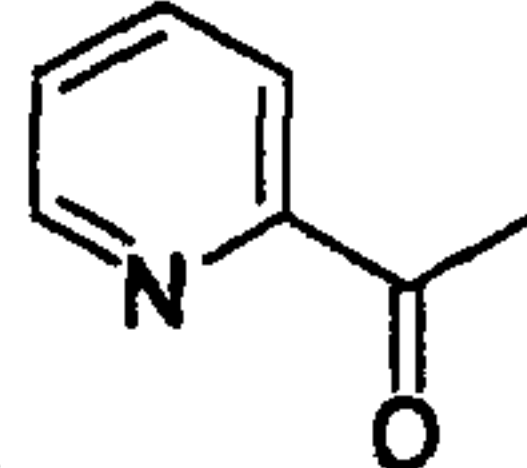
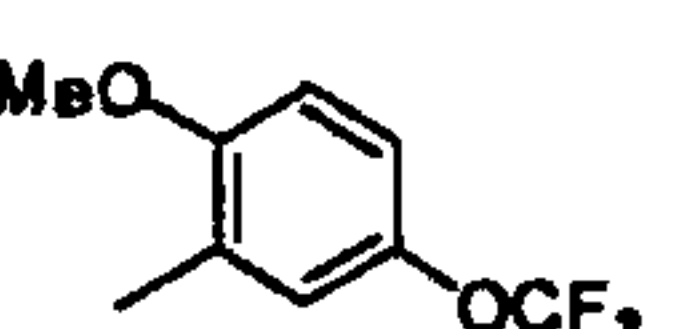
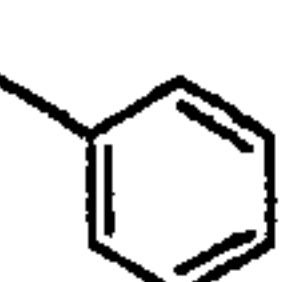
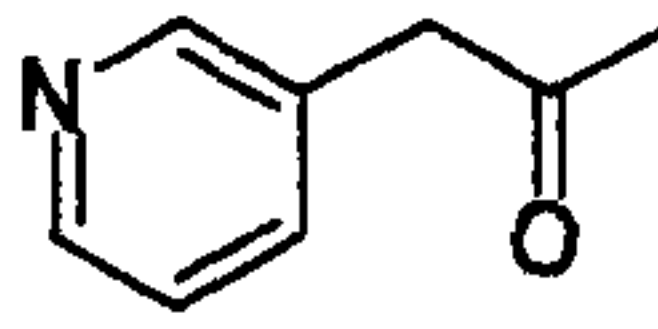
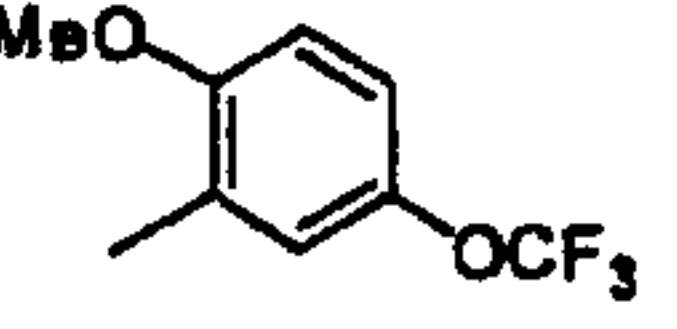
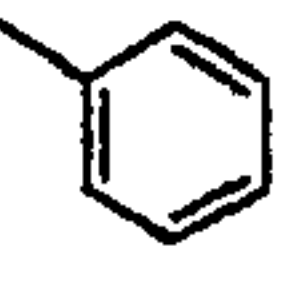
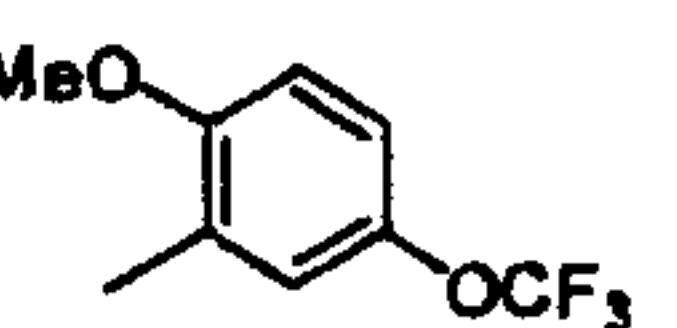
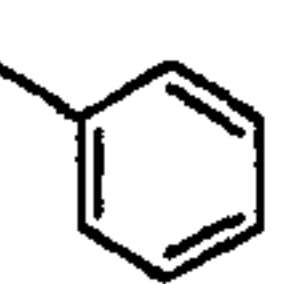
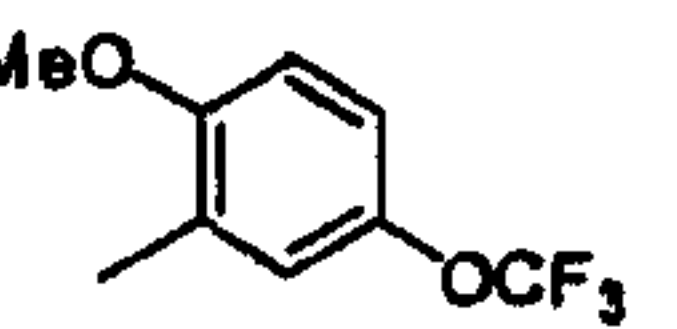
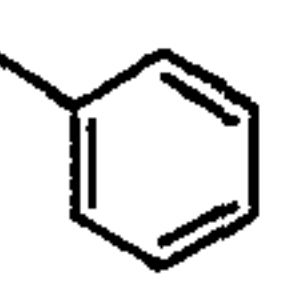
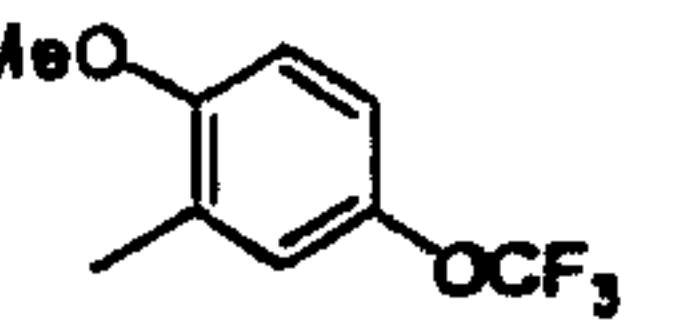
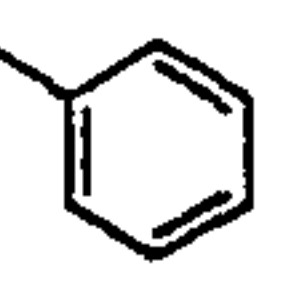
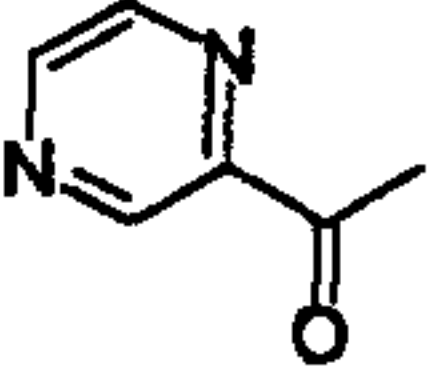
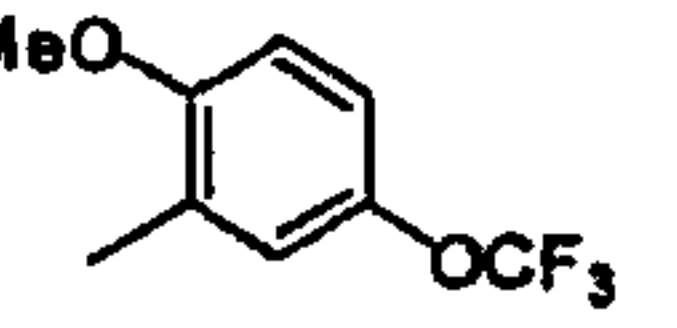
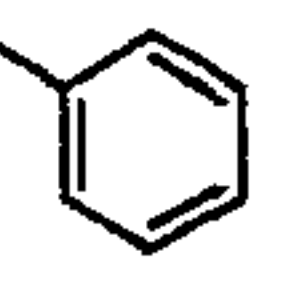
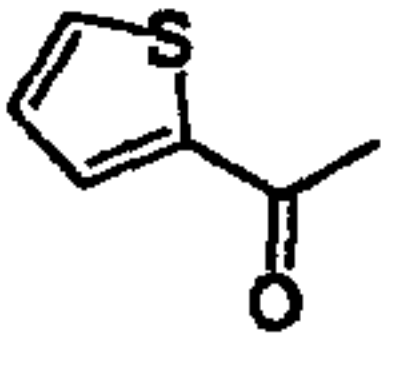
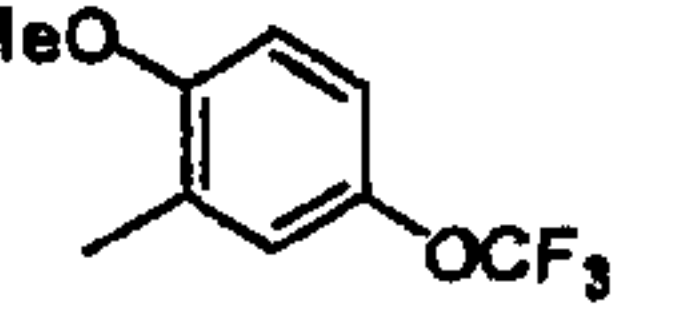
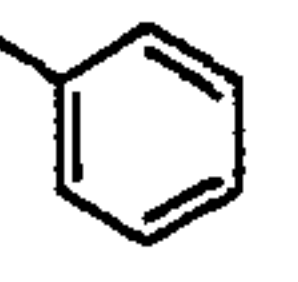
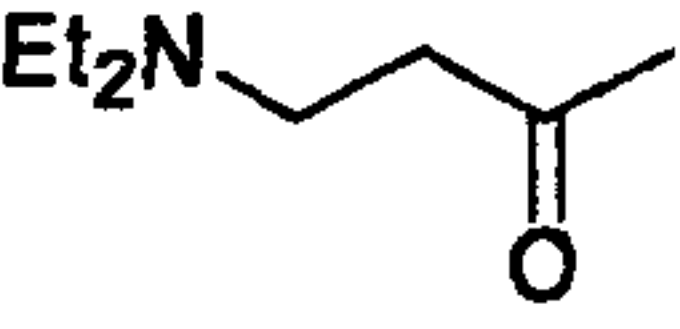
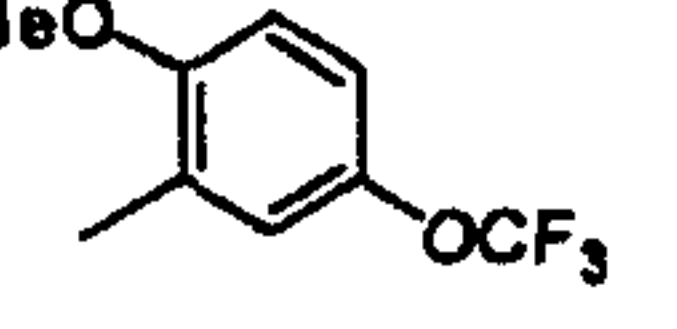
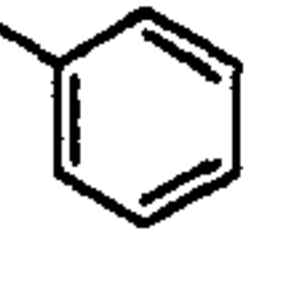
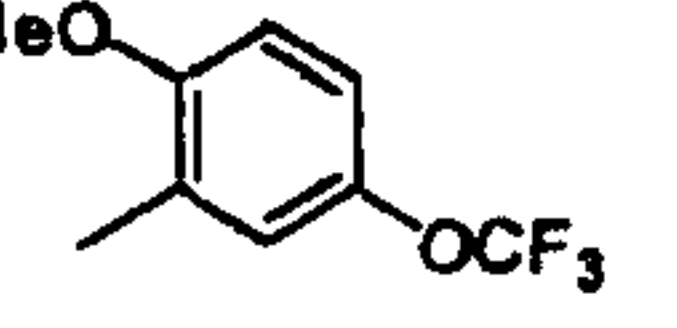
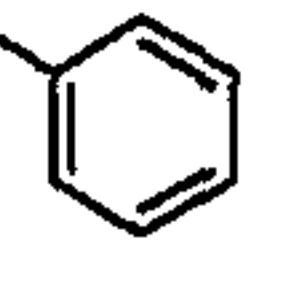
483	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			565
484	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			515
485	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			565
488	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			626
489	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			557
490	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			599
496	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			583
497	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			560
499	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			529
502	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			668
507	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			503
514	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			599
517	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			625
522	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			571
525	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			575

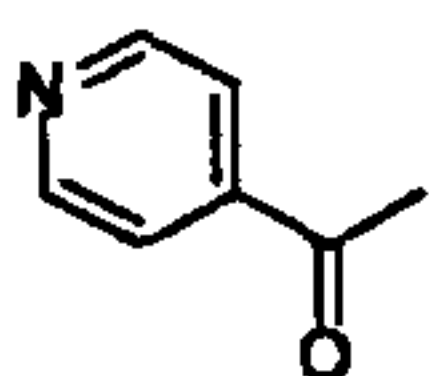
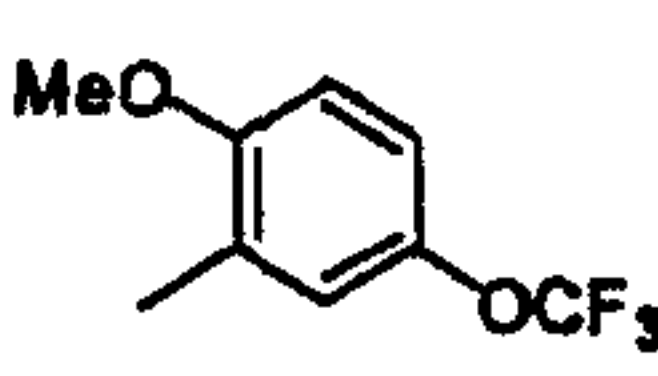
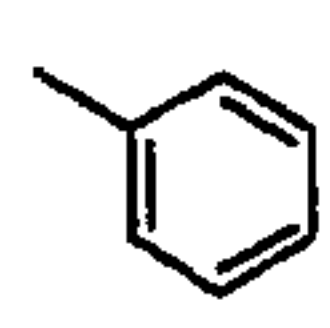
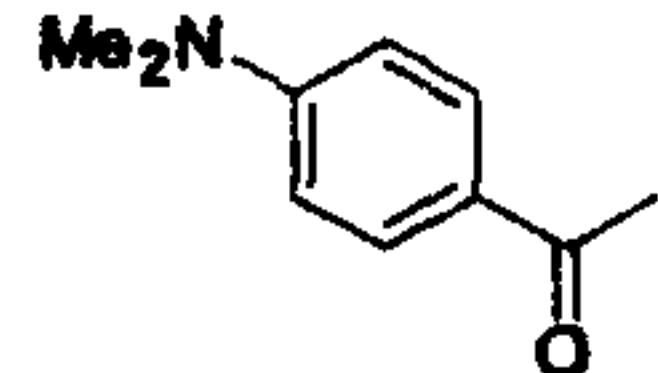
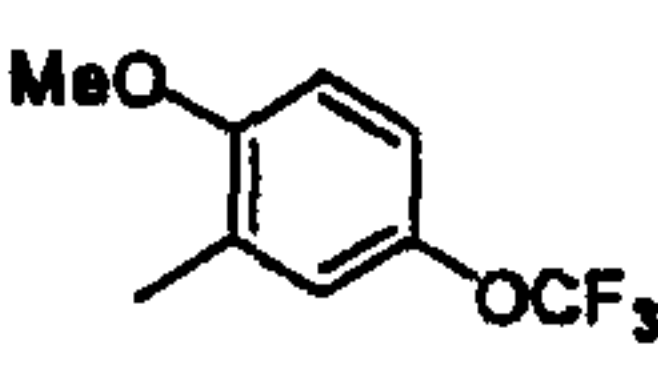
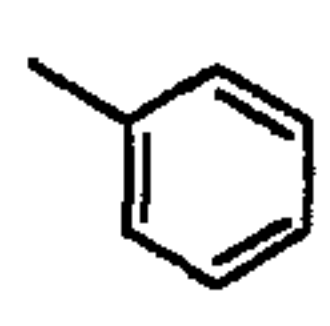
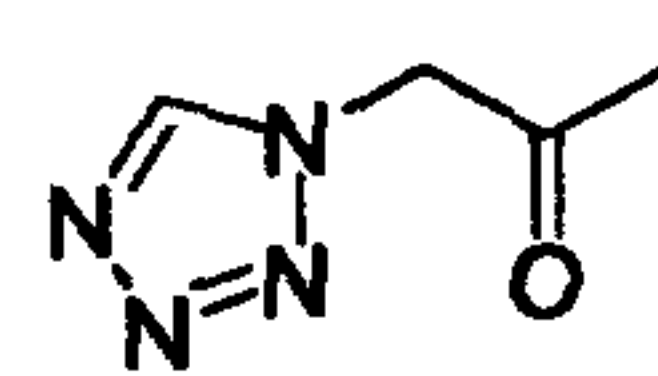
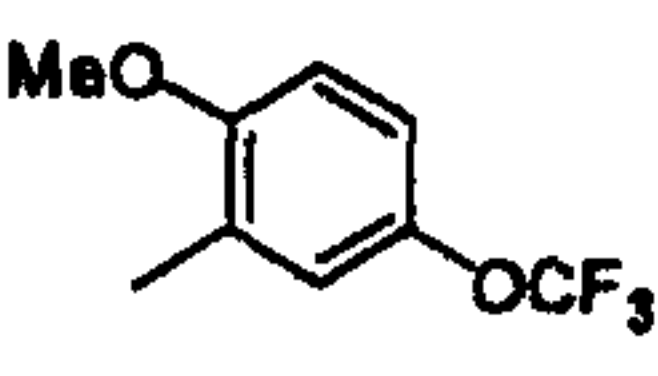
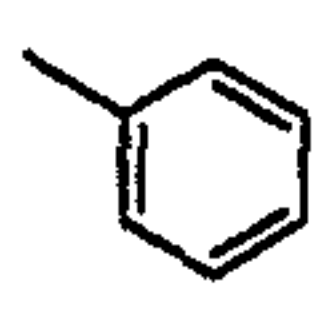
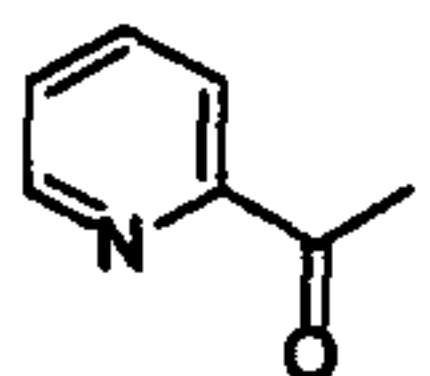
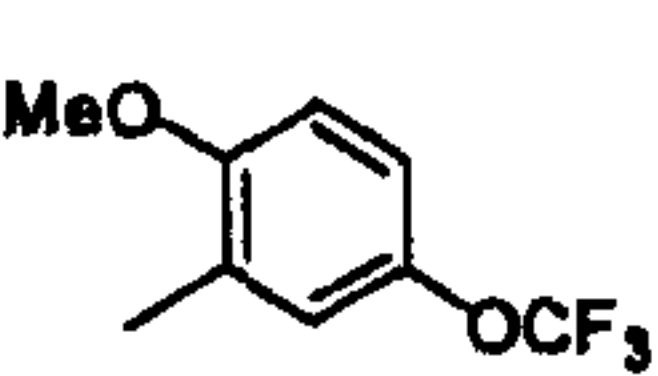
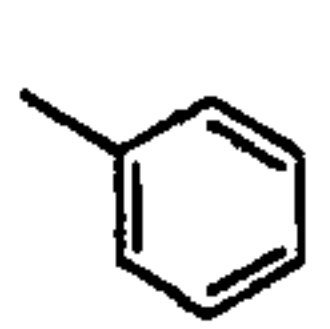
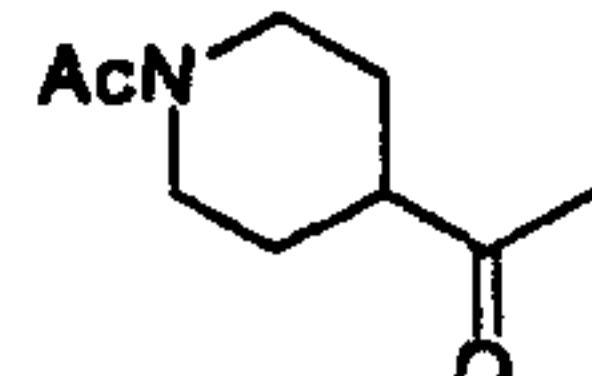
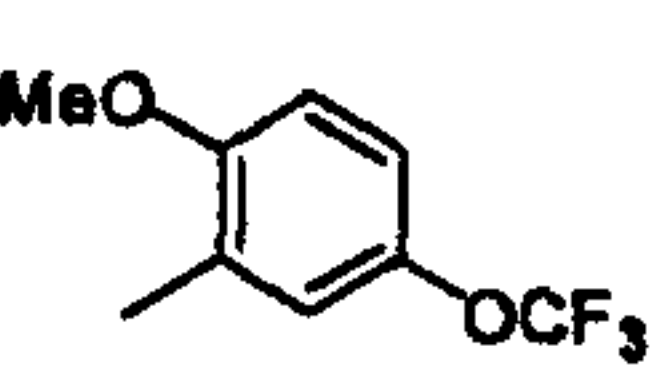
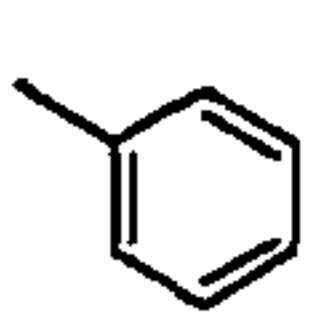
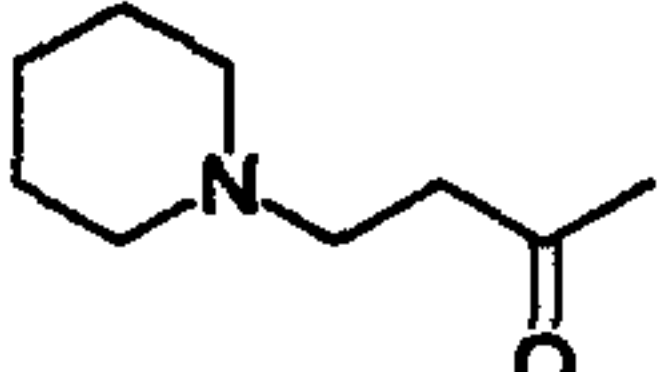
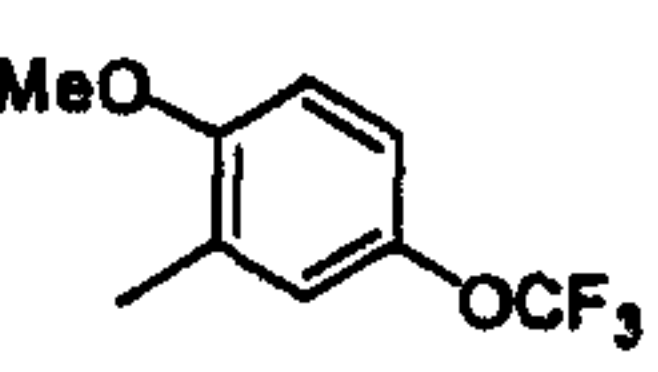
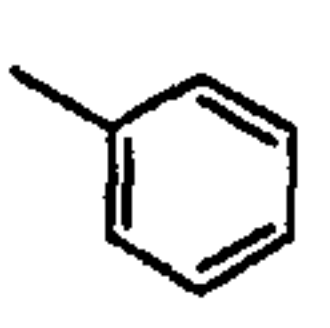
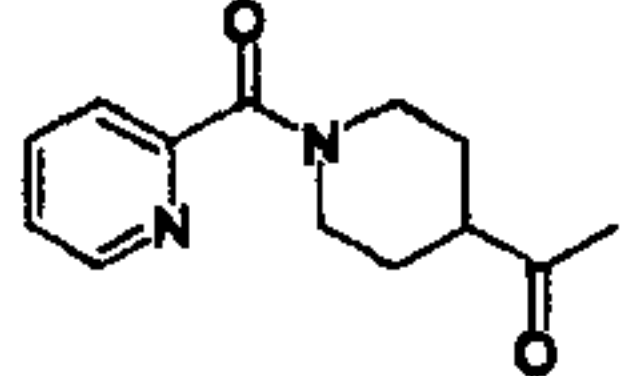
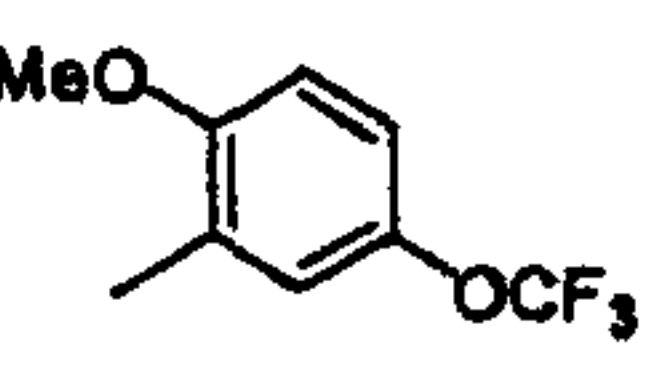
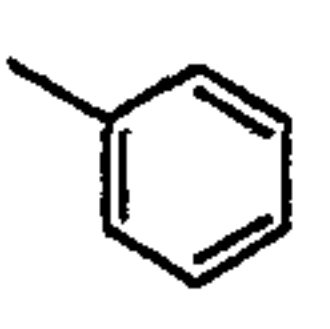
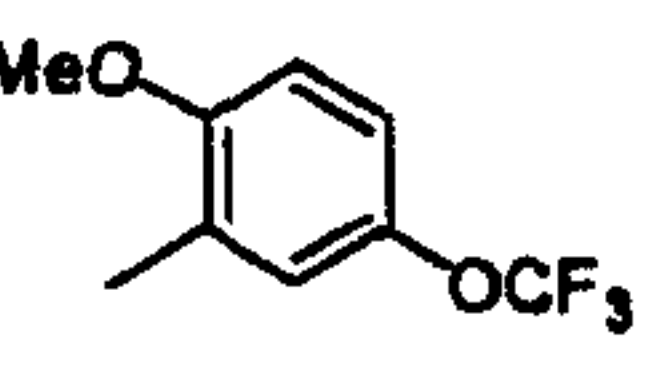
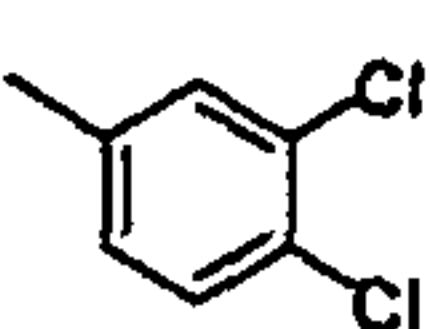
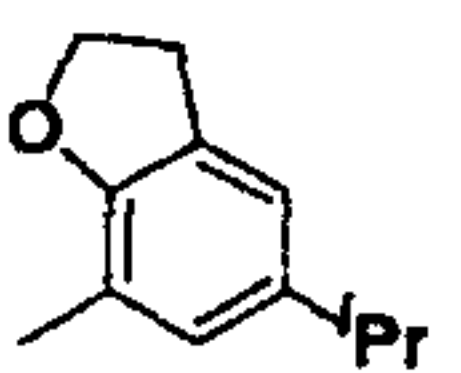
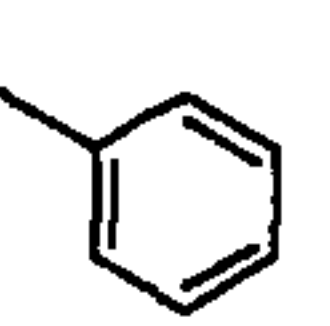
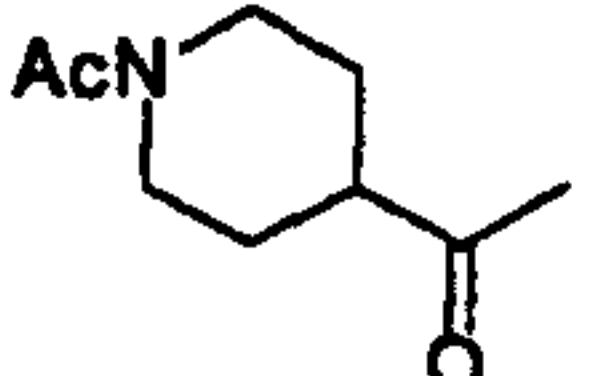
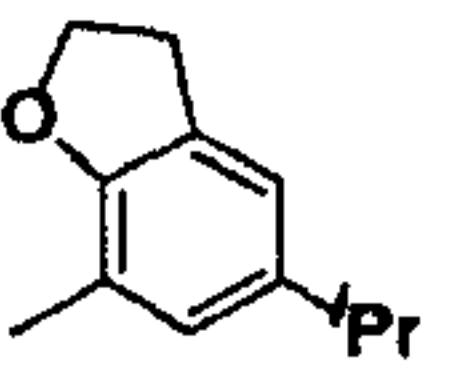
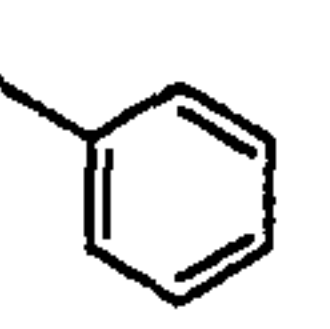
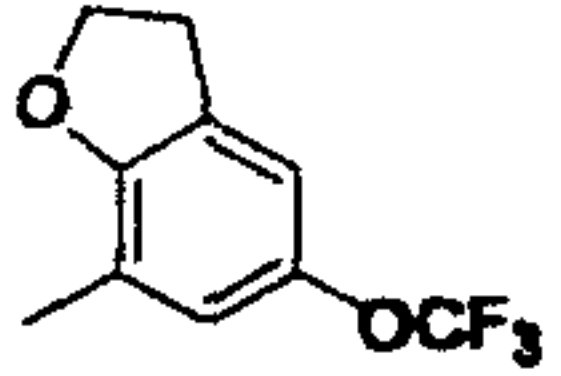
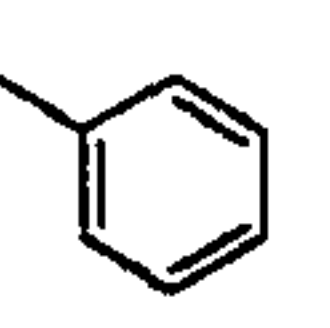
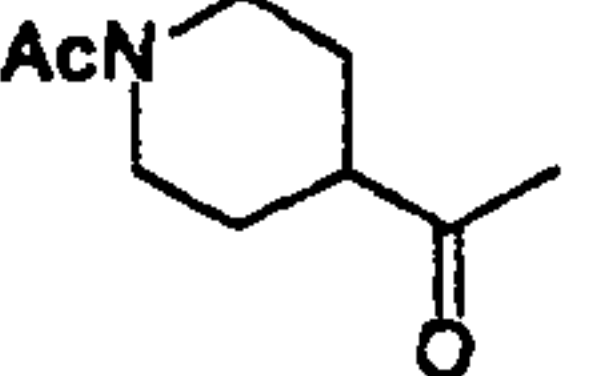
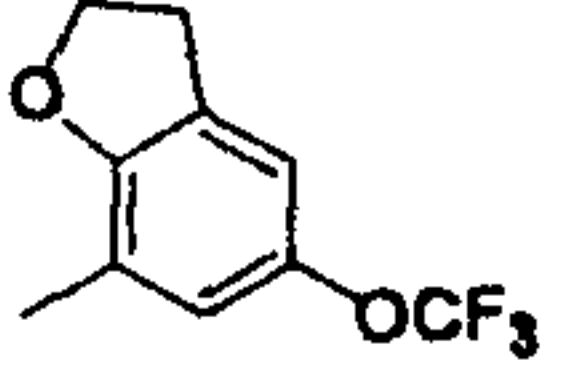
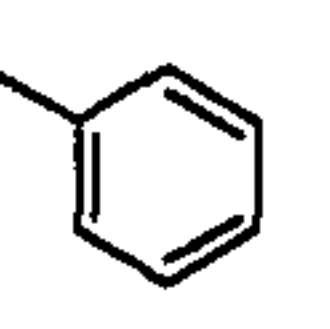
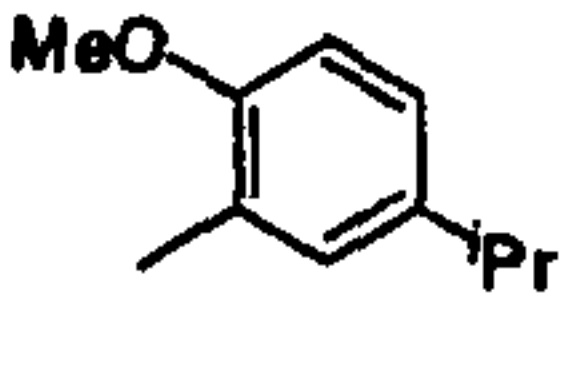
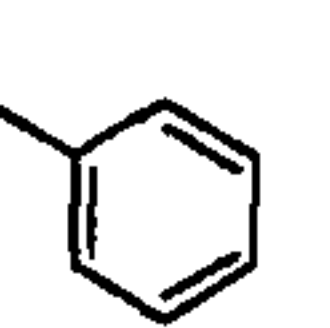
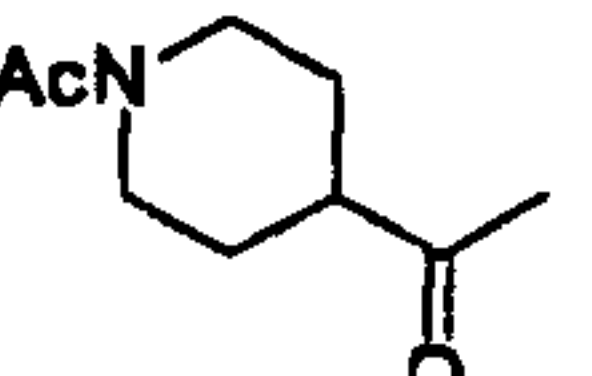
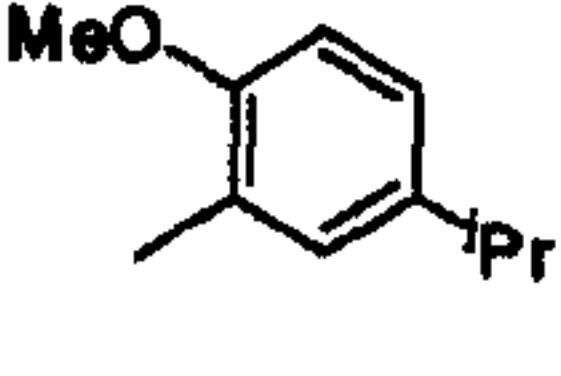
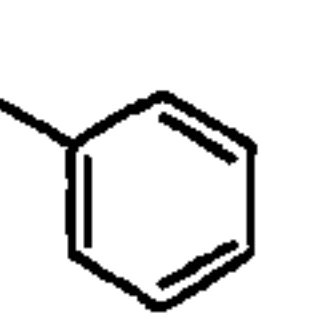
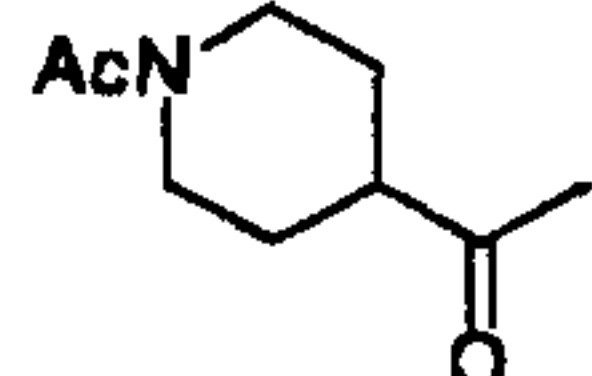
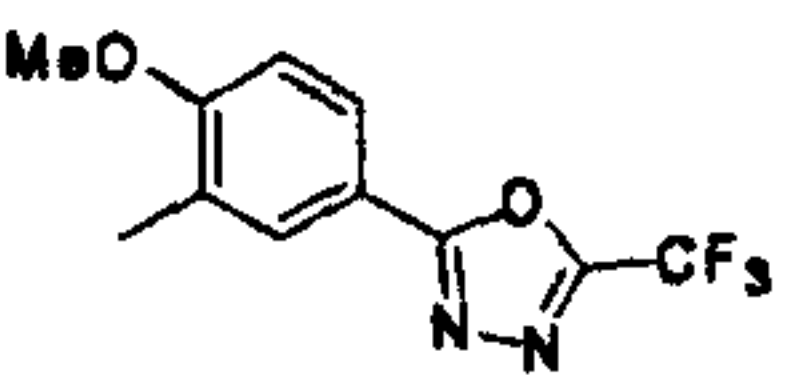
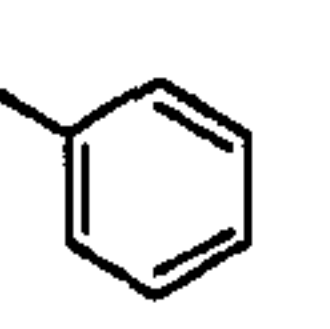
528	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			575
529	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			561
533	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			620
535	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			589
538	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			558
540	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			535
542	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			489
544	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			449
546	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			507
548	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			507
550	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			534
551	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			557
552	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			503
554	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			567, 569
558	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			419

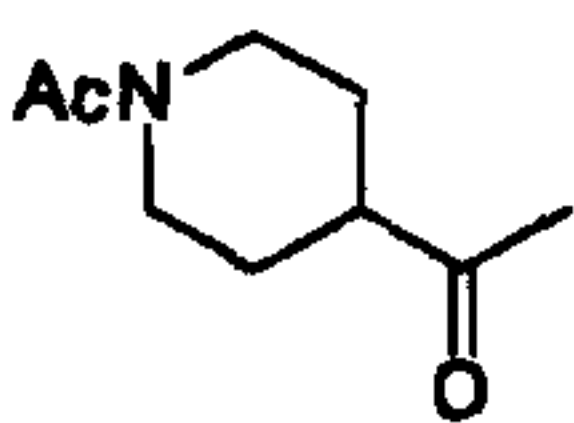
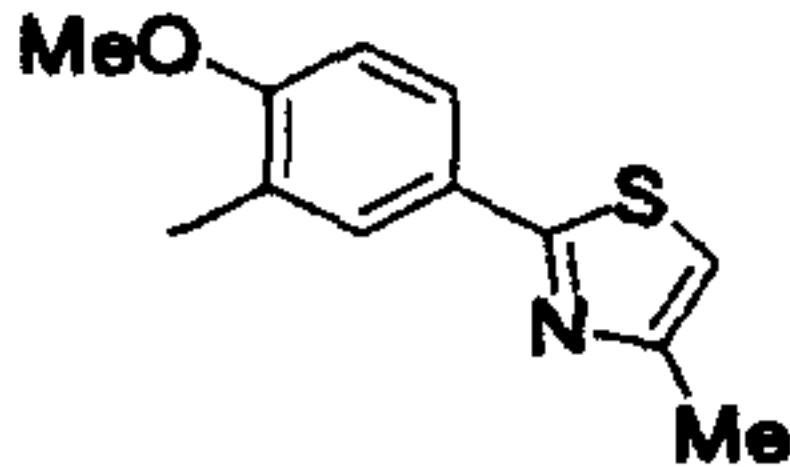
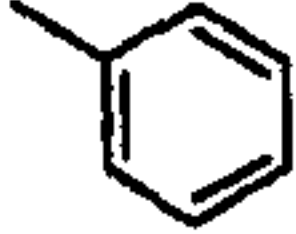
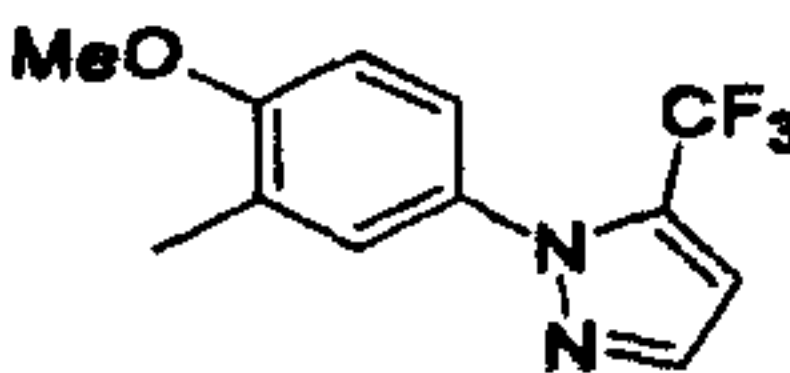
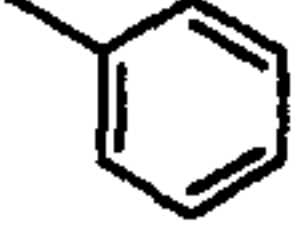
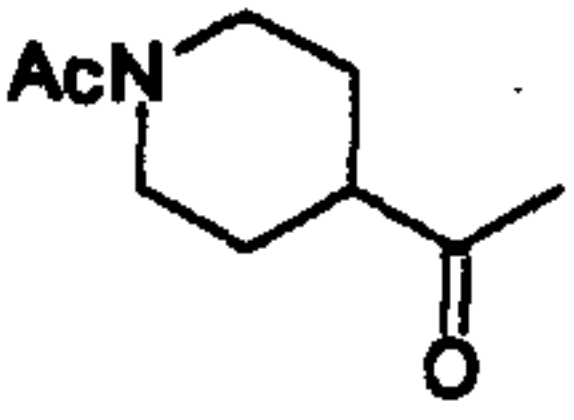
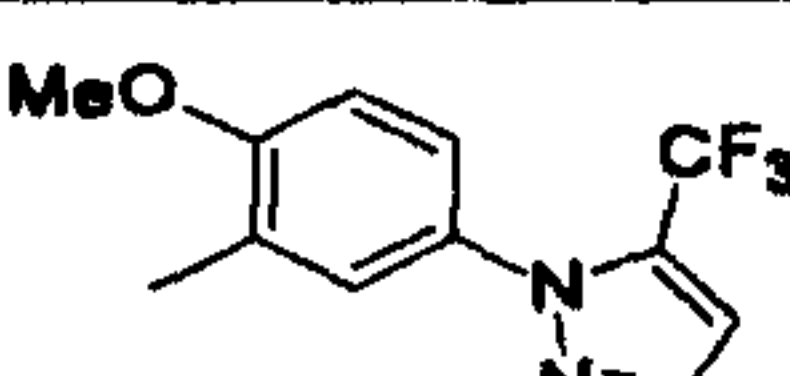
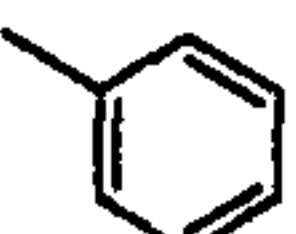
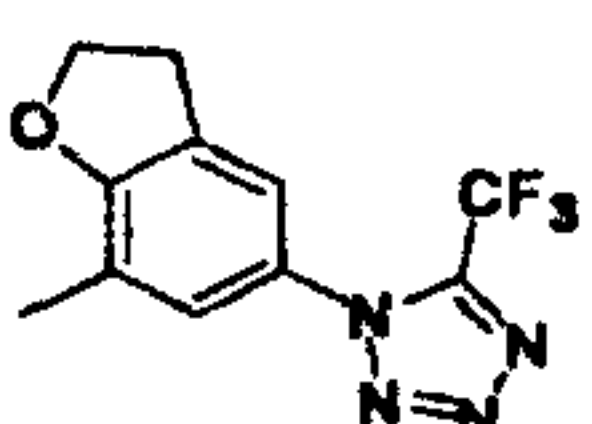
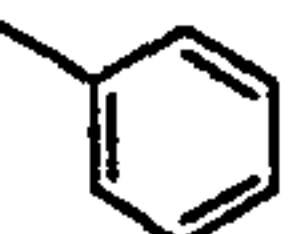
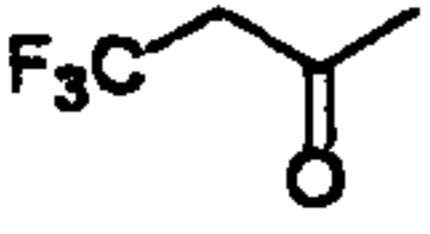
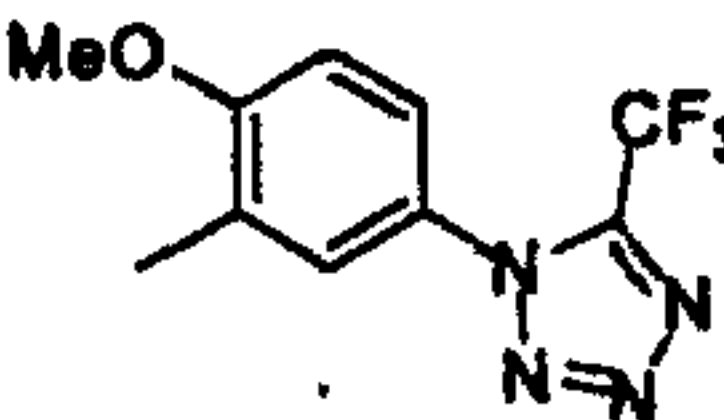
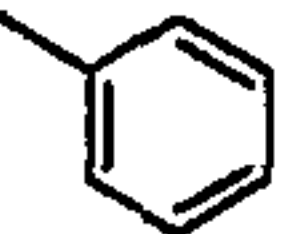
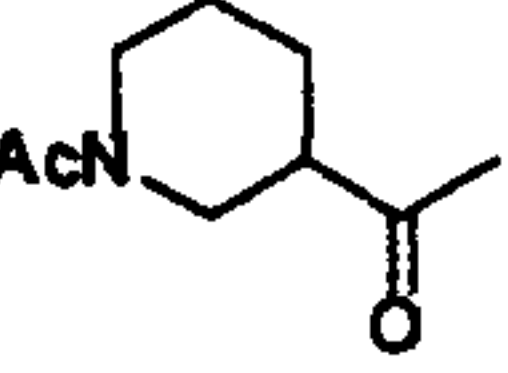
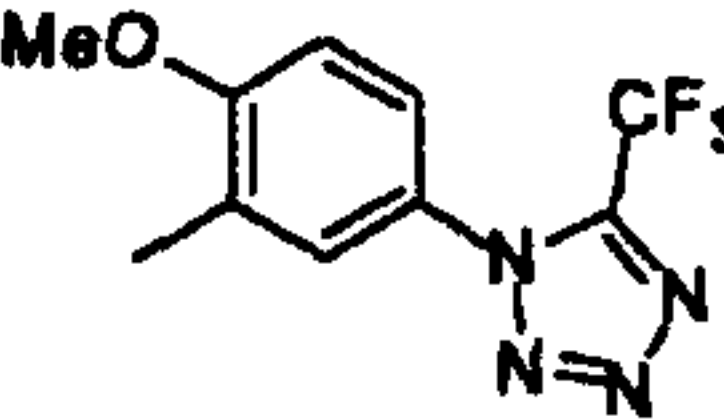
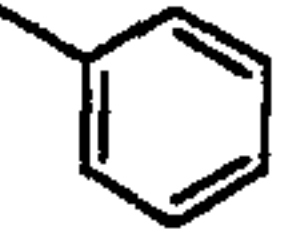
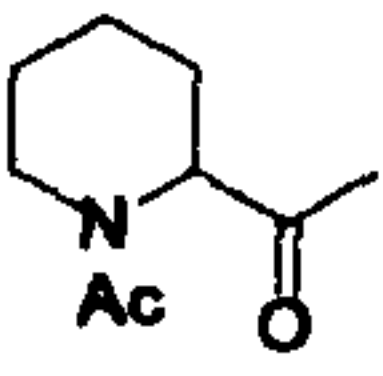
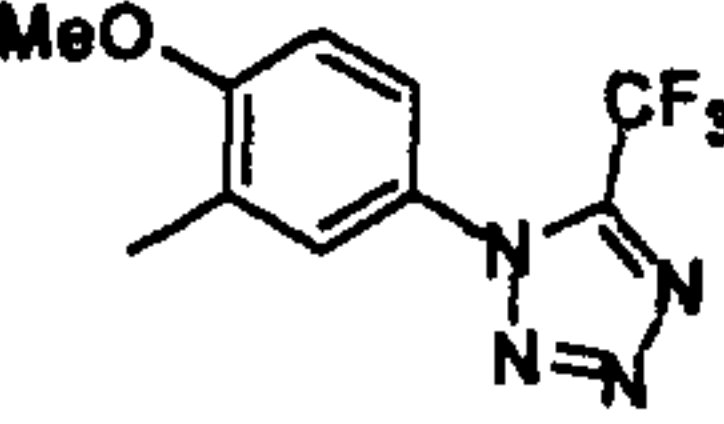
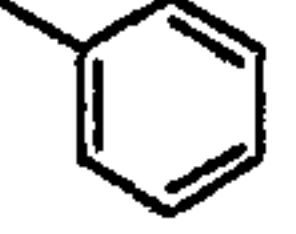
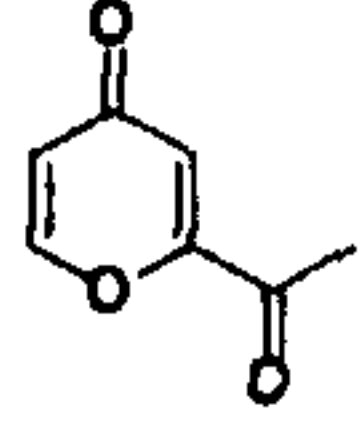
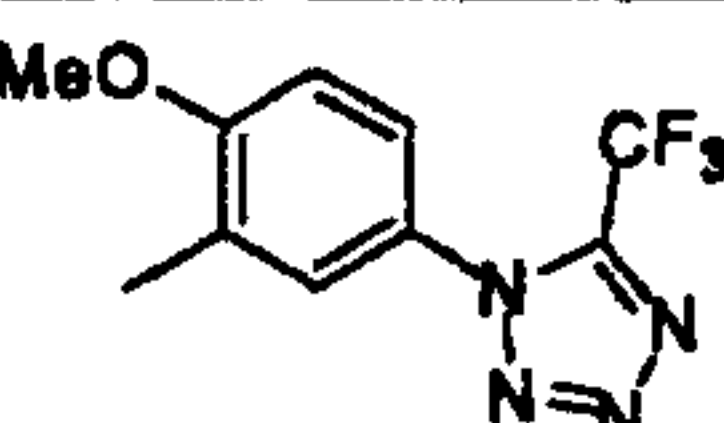
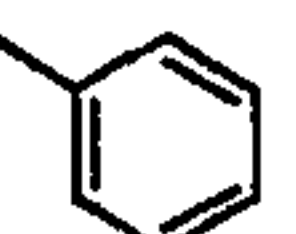
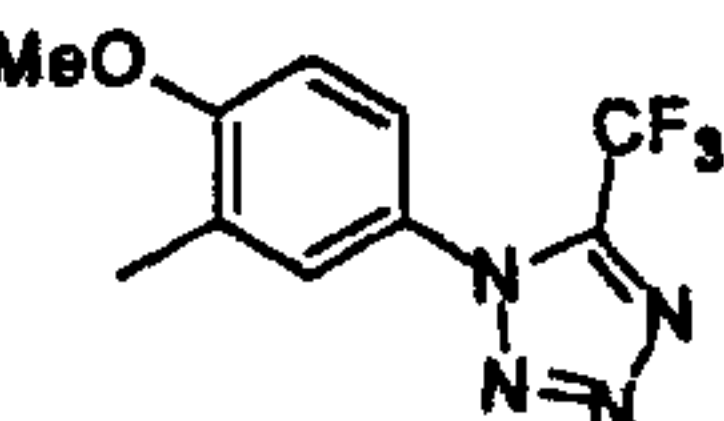
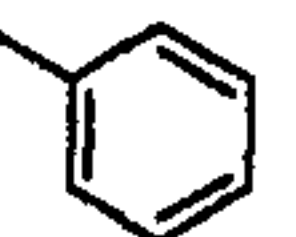
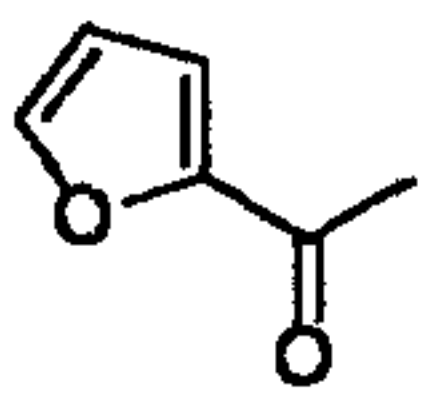
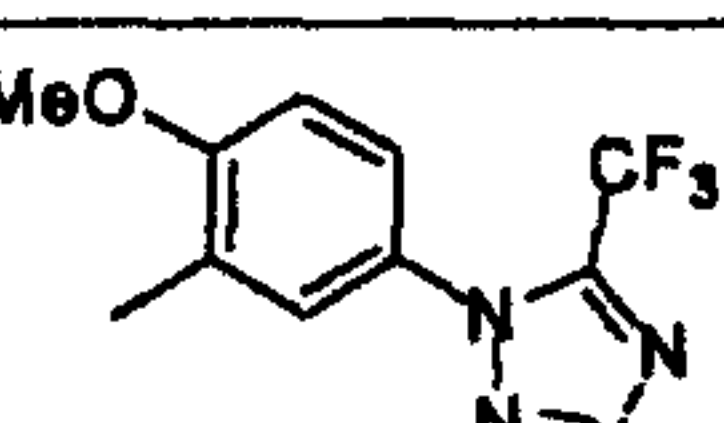
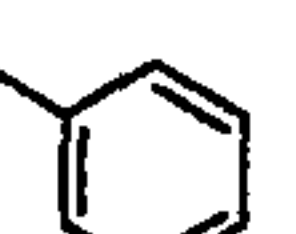
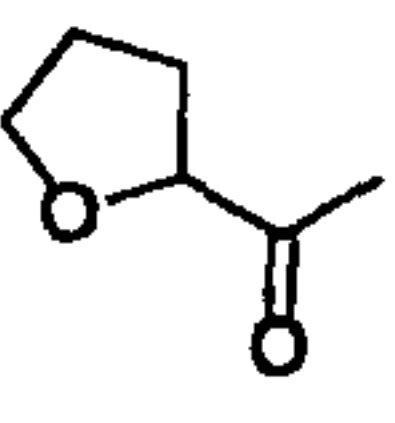
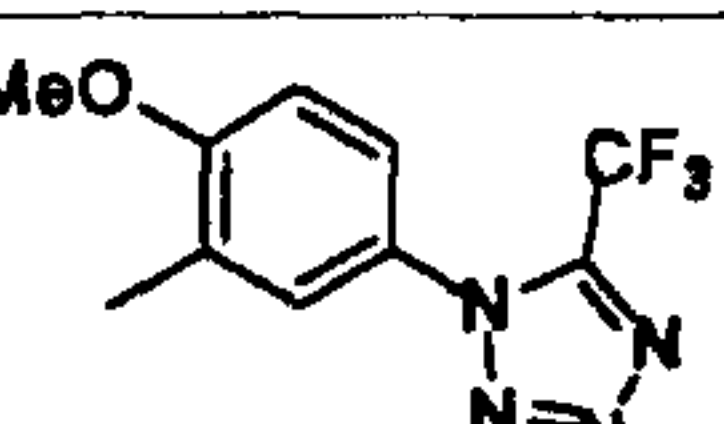
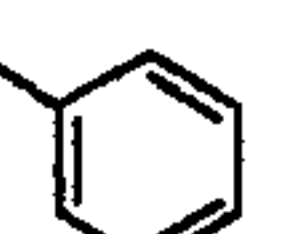
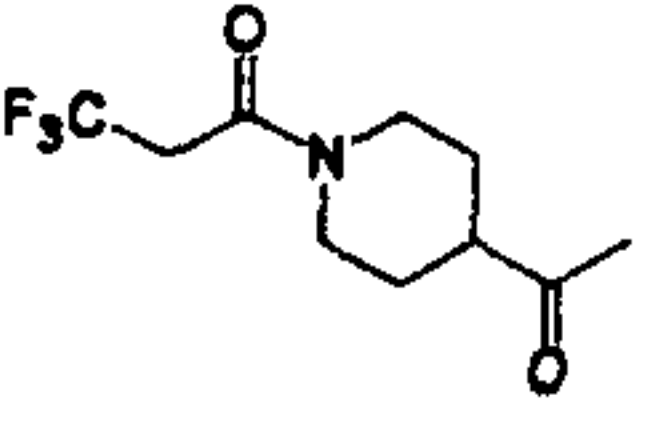
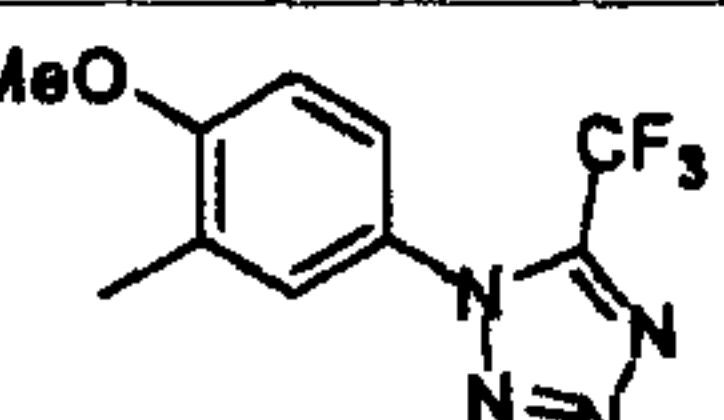
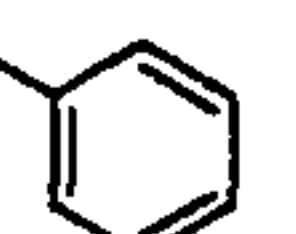
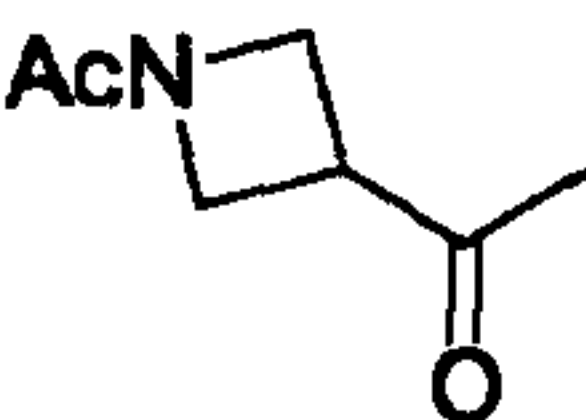
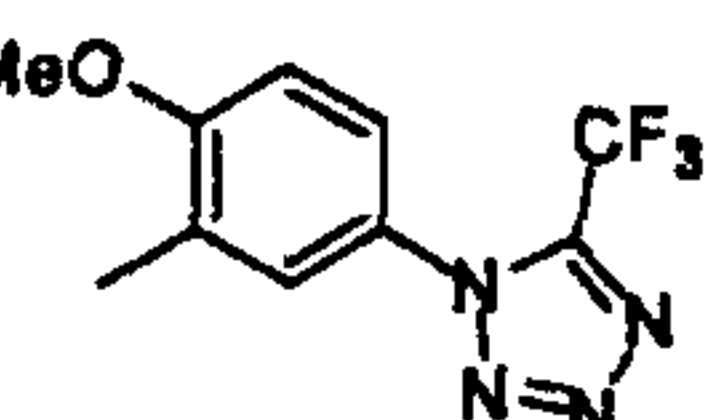
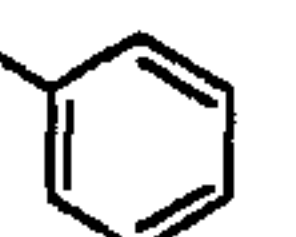
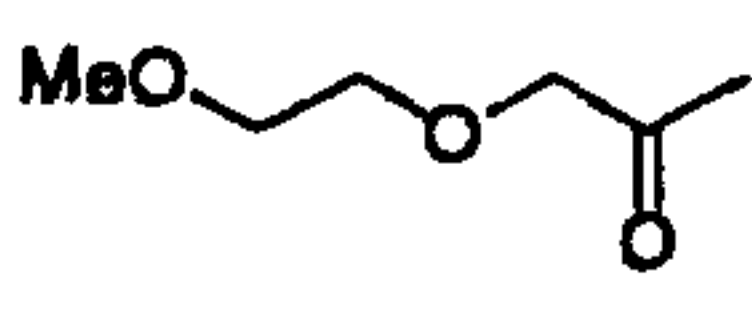
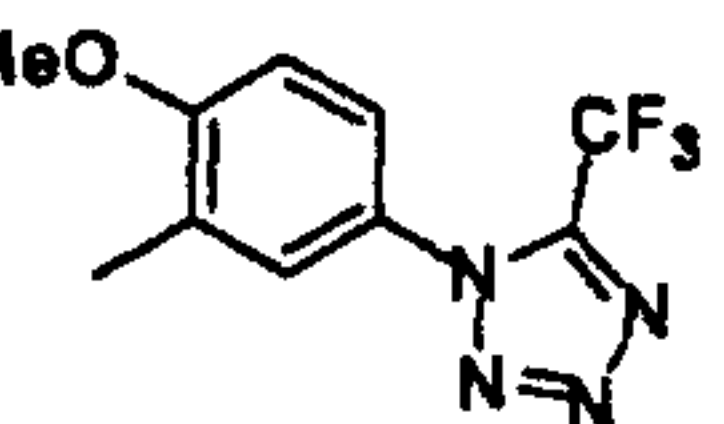
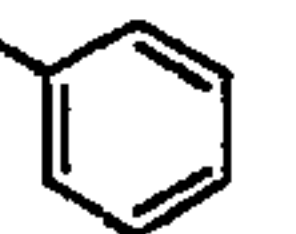
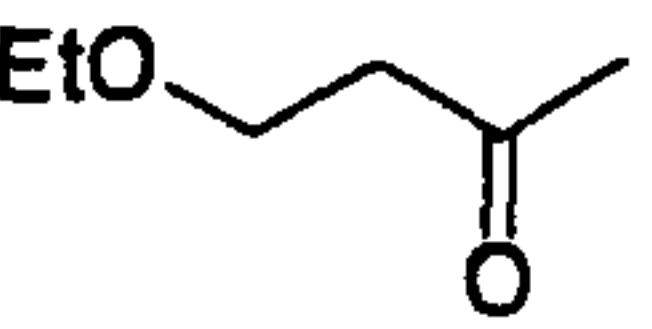
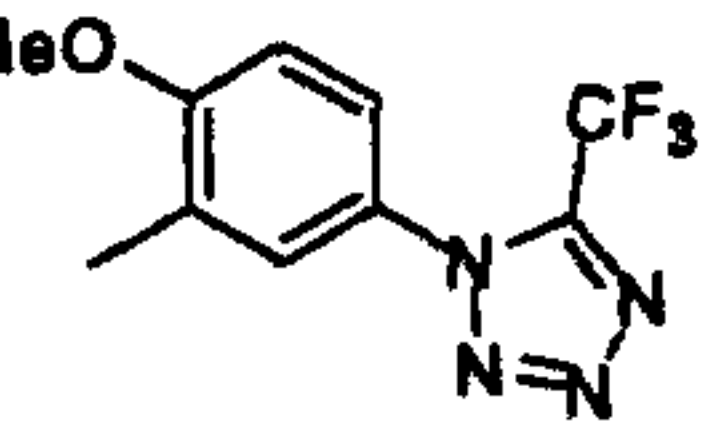
559	(±)- <i>cis</i>	Ac	NH			339
563	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			391
571	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			488
572	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			530
573	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			542
574	(±)- <i>cis</i>	Ac	NH			445
575	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtCO	NH			459
576	(±)- <i>cis</i>	MeOCH ₂ CO	NH			475
578	(±)- <i>cis</i>	^t BuCO	NH			488
579	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			522
580	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			511
581	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			533
582	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			513
584	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			509
585	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			513

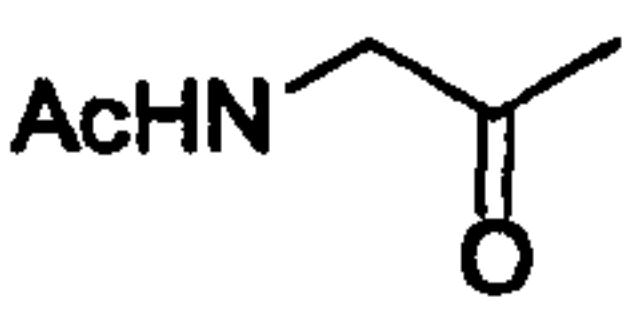
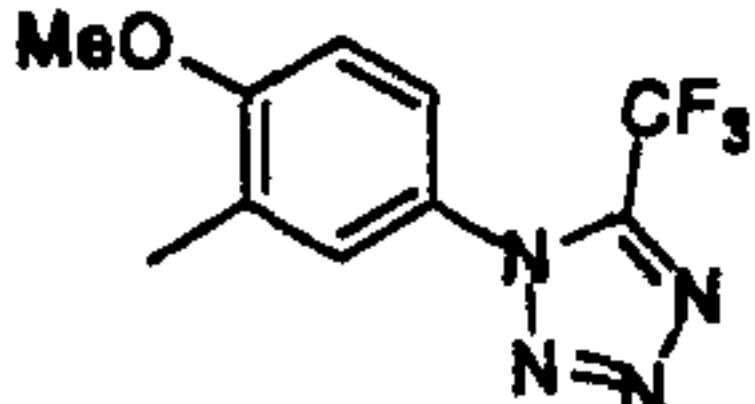
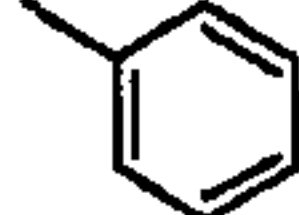
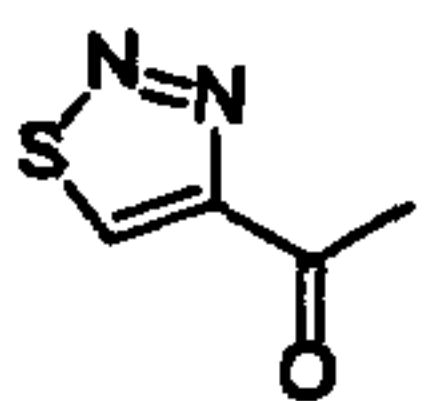
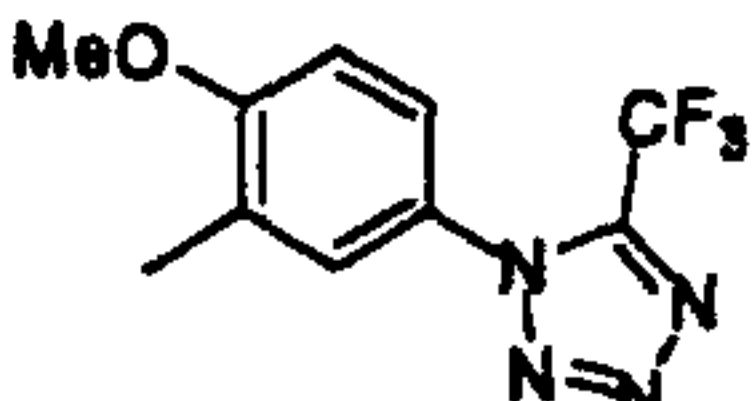
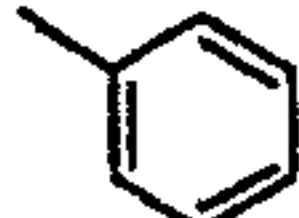
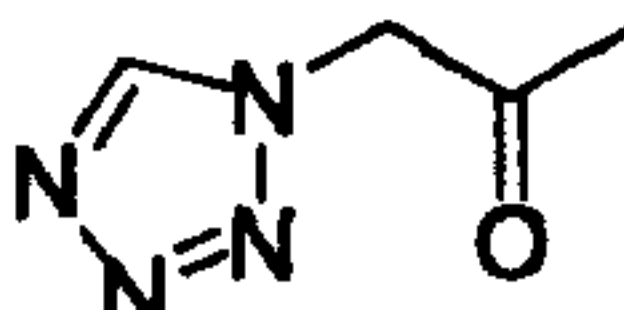
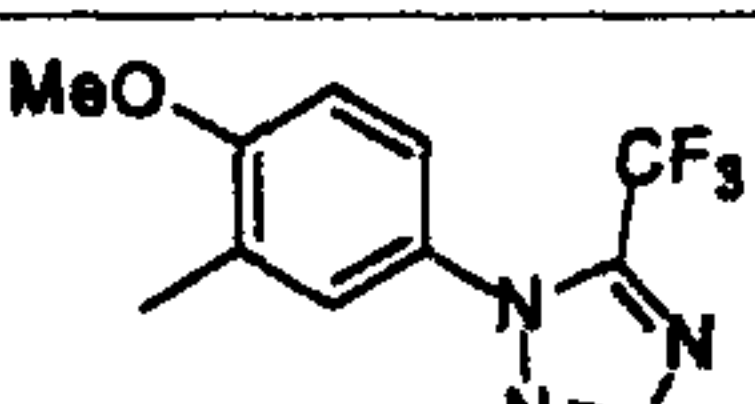
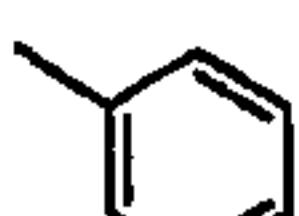
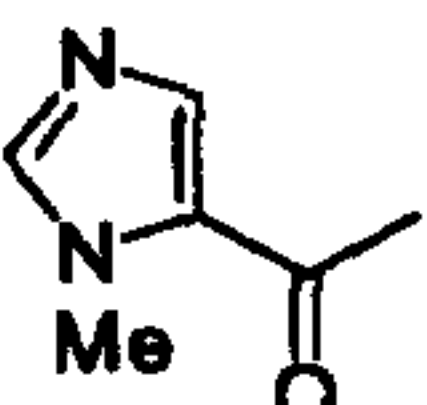
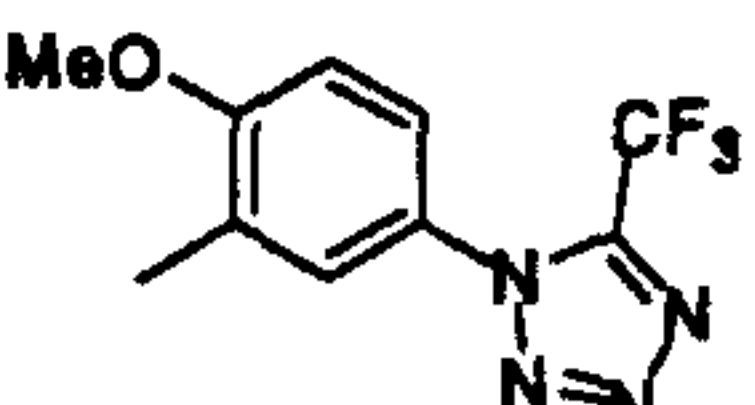
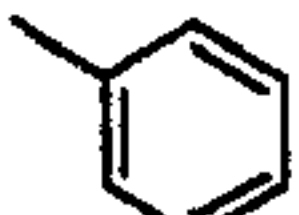
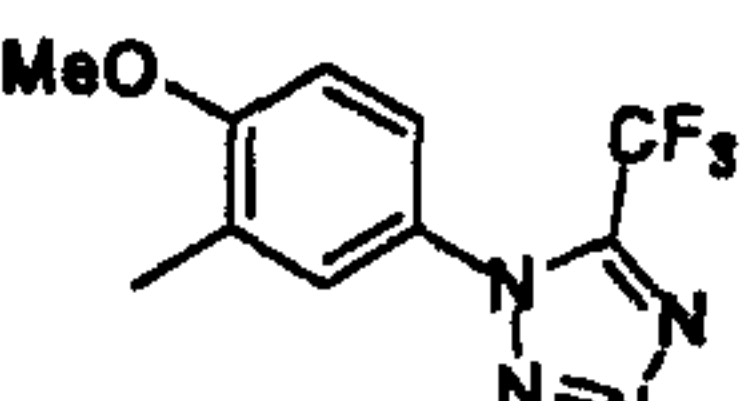
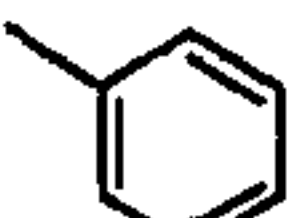
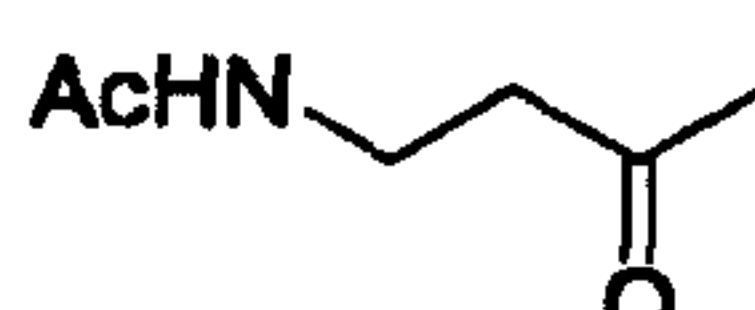
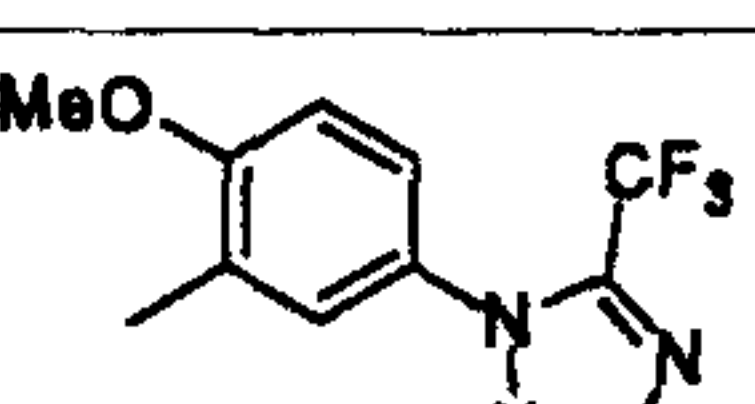
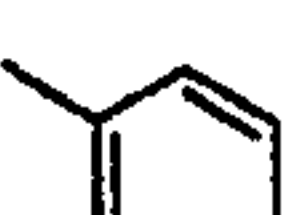
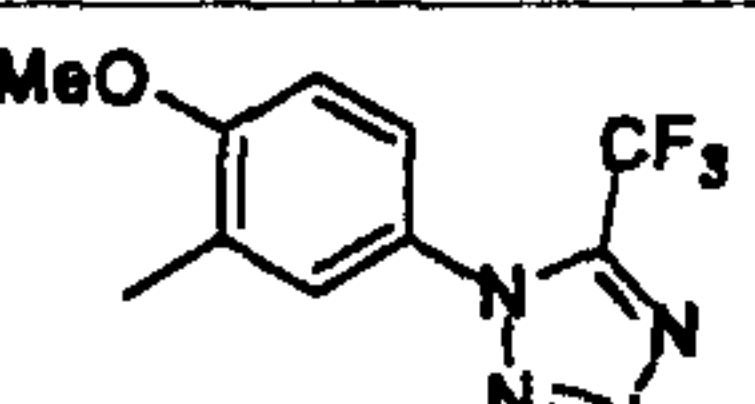
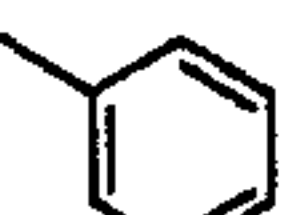
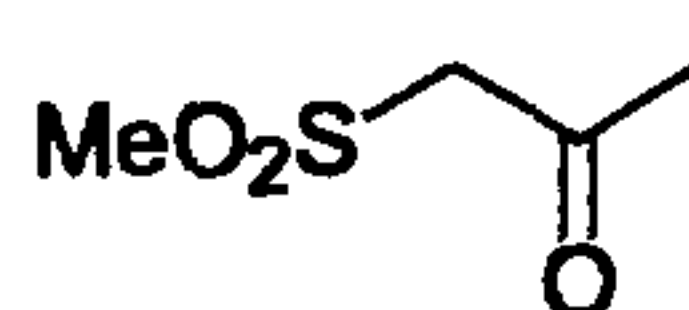
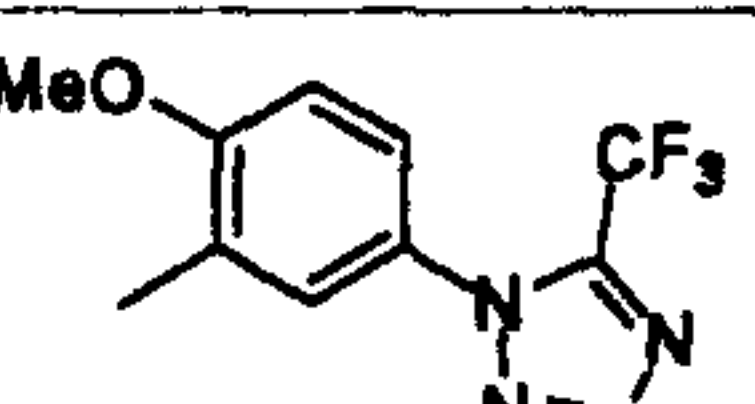
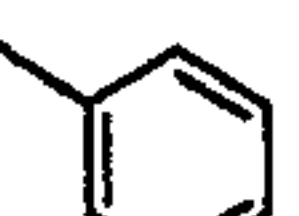
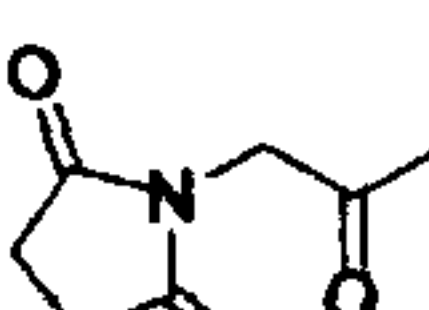
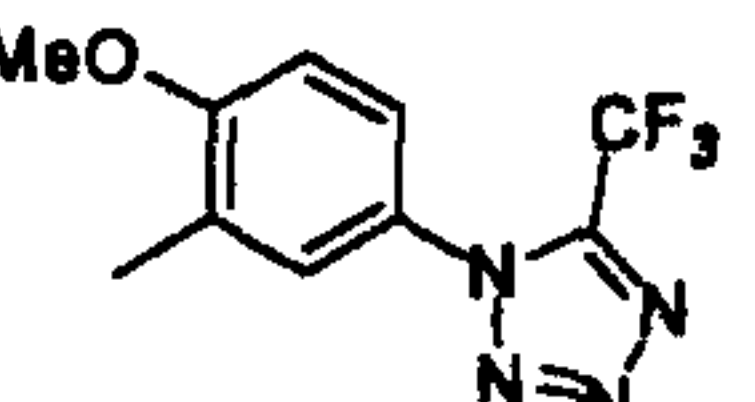
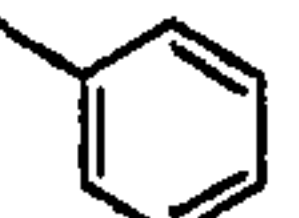
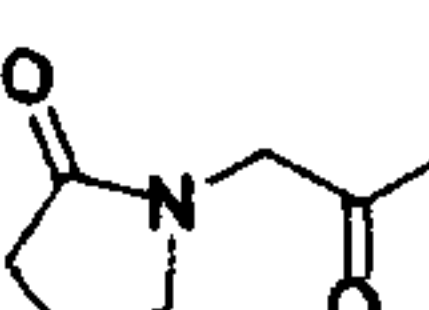
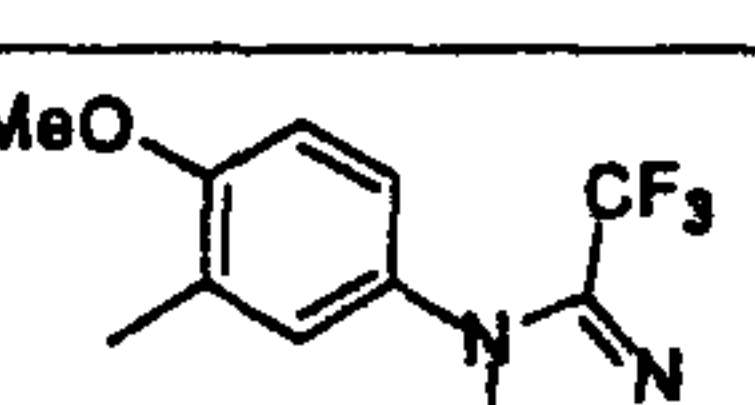
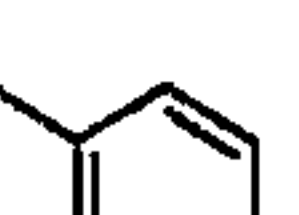
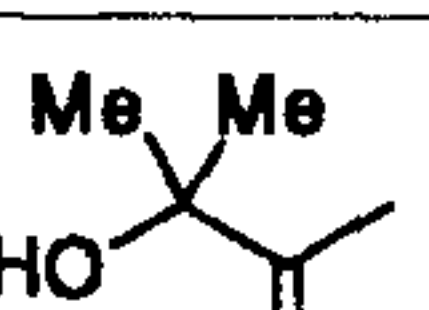
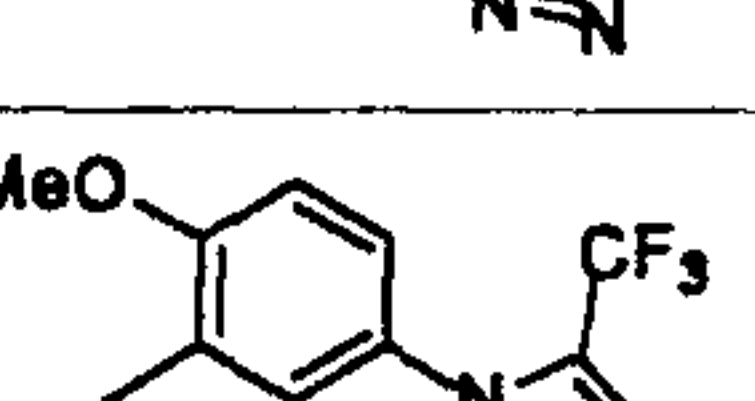
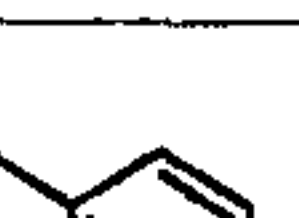
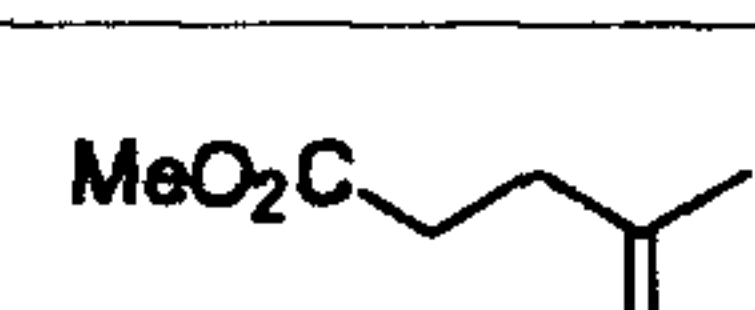
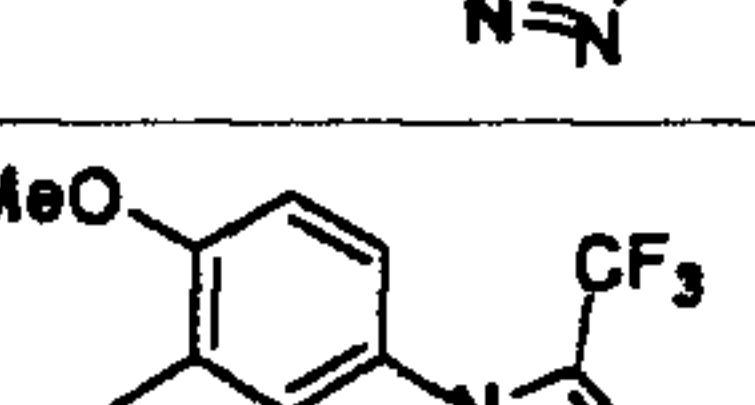
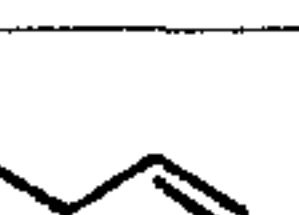
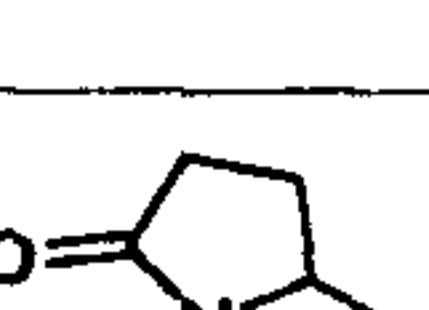
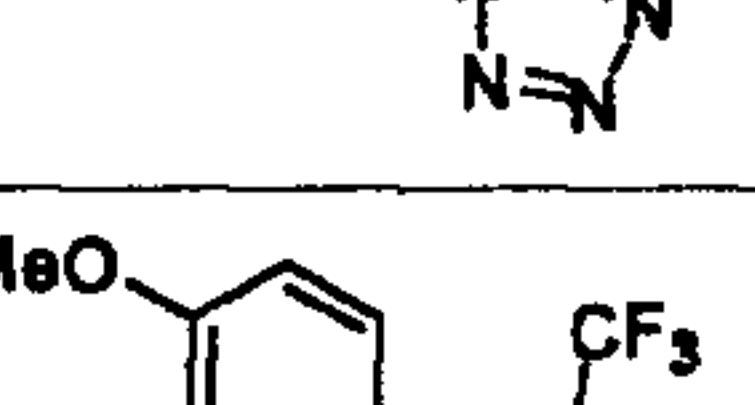
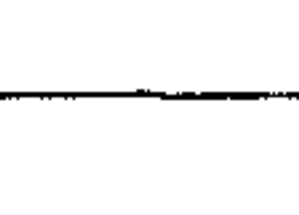
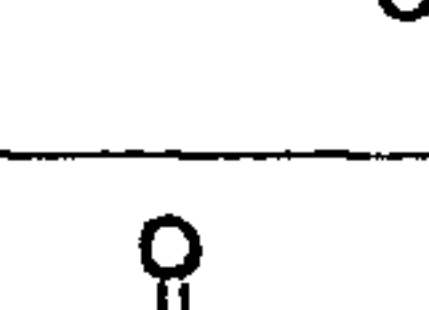
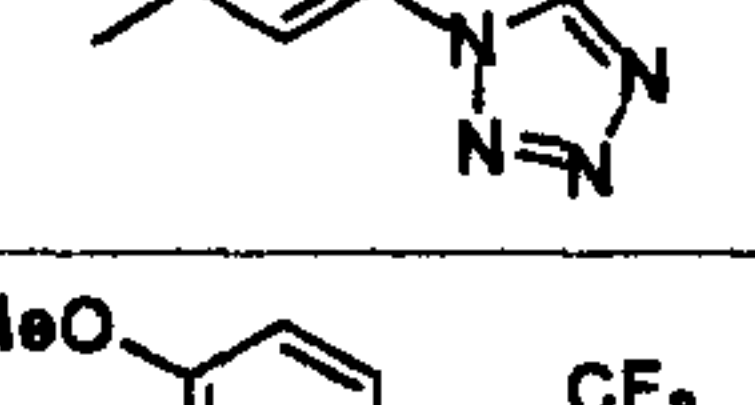
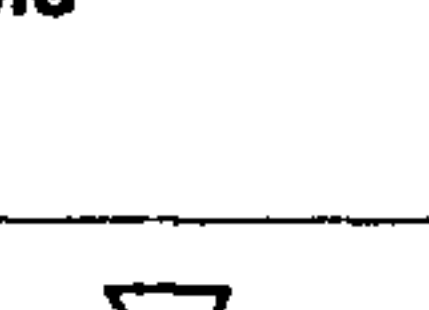
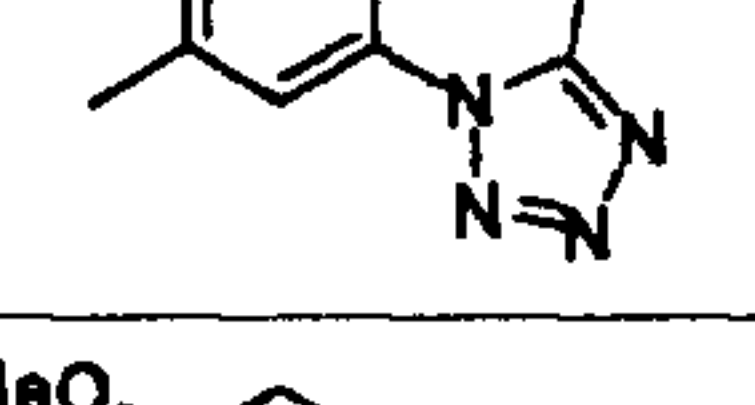
586	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			530
587	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			517
588	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			513
589	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			547
590	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			550
591	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			536
592	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			508
593	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			508
594	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			508
595	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			522
598	(±)- <i>cis</i>	ⁿ PrCO	NH			473
599	(±)- <i>cis</i>	ⁱ PrCO	NH			473
600	(±)- <i>cis</i>	^t BuCO	NH			487
601	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			525
602	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			530

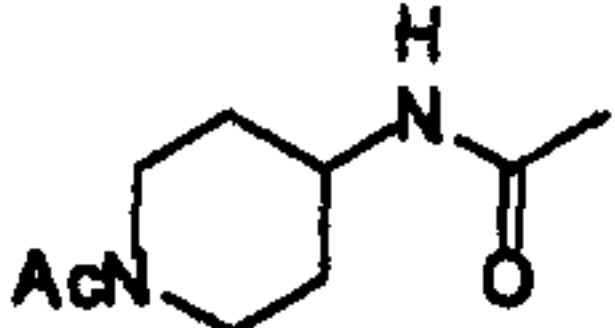
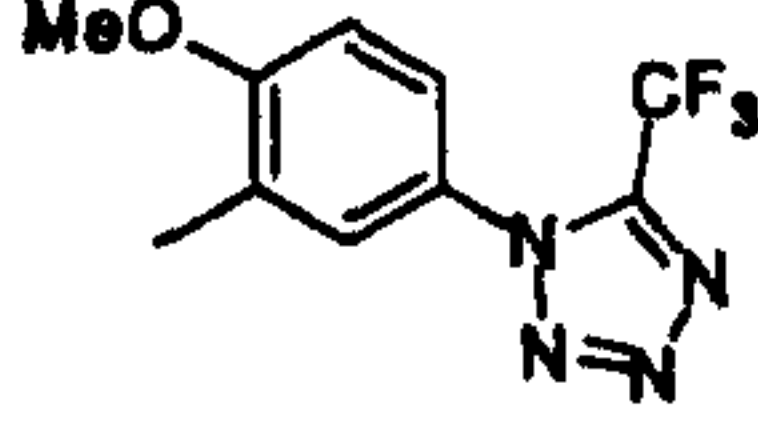
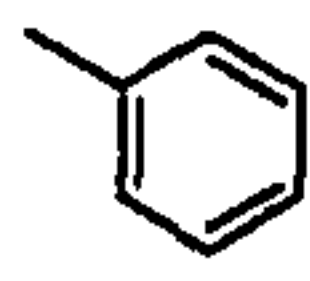
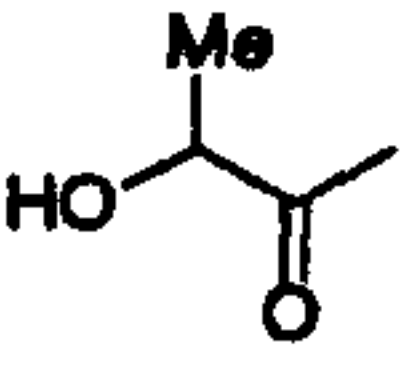
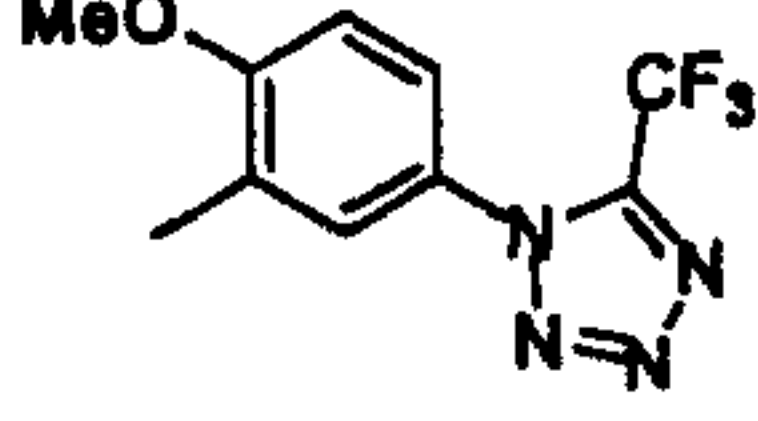
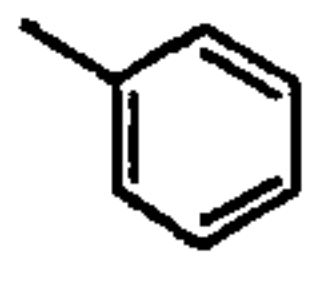
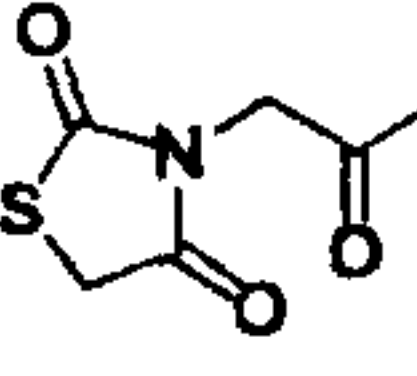
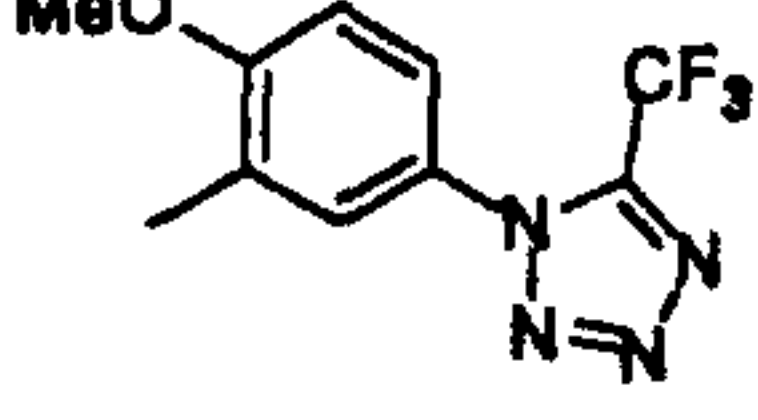
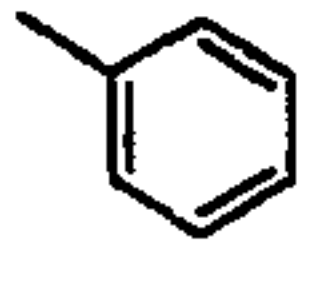
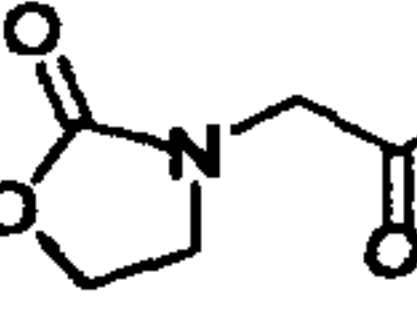
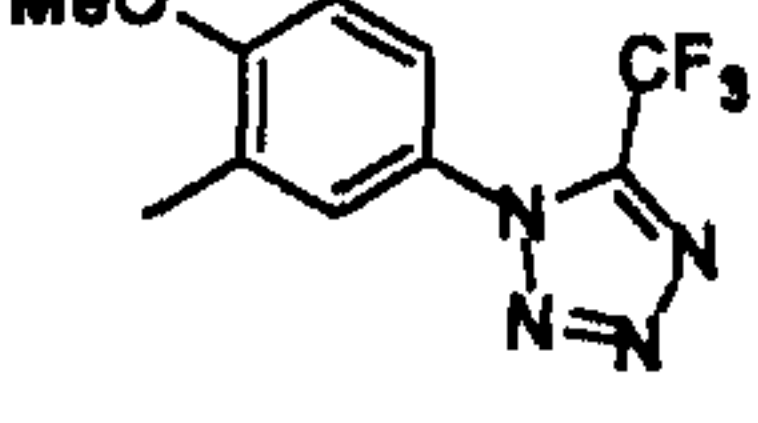
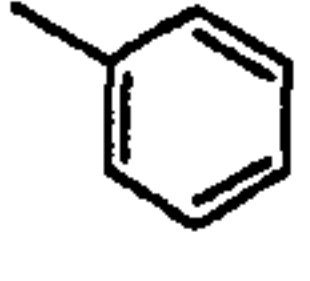
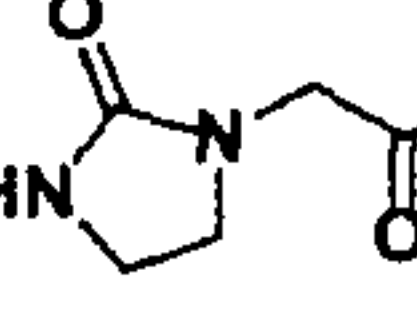
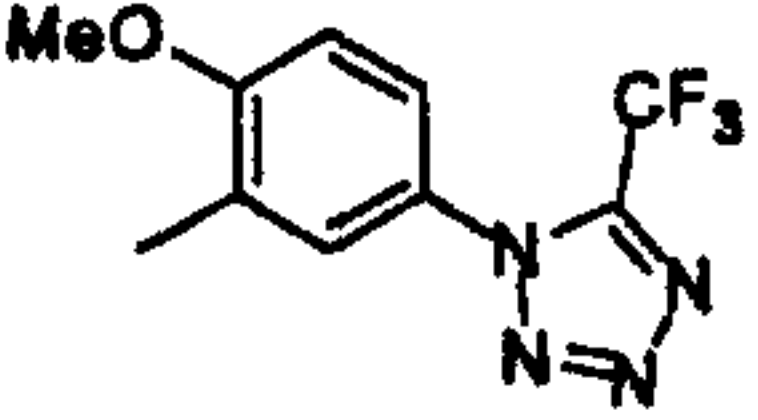
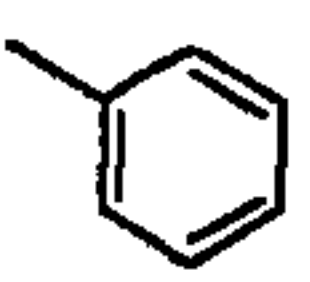
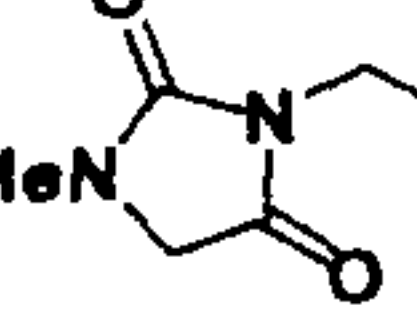
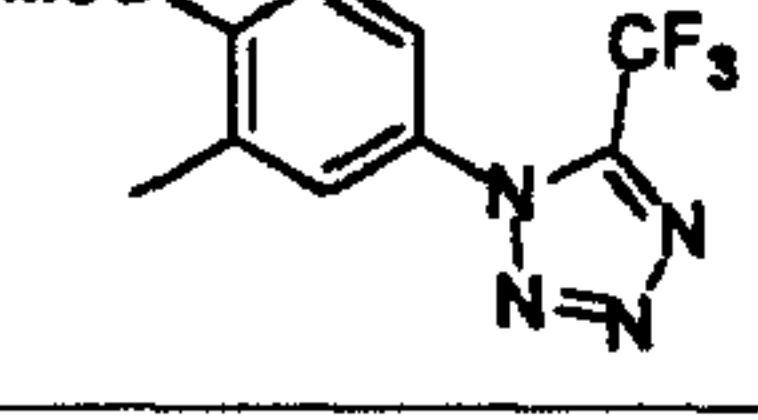
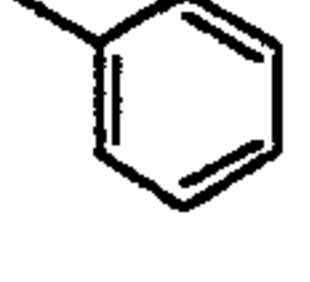
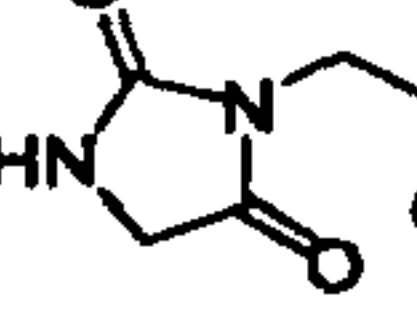
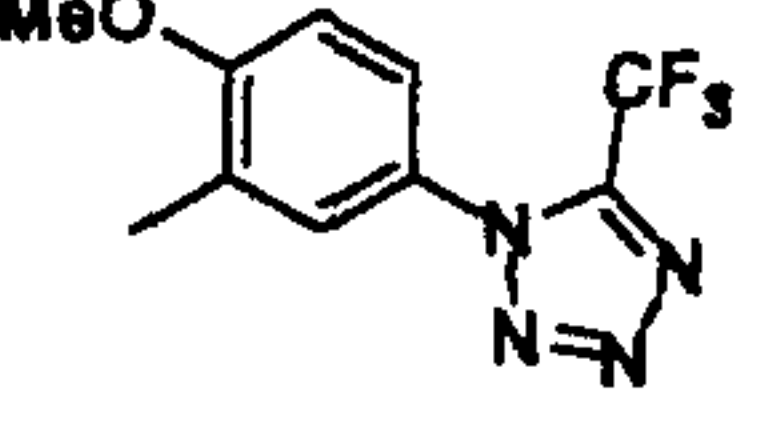
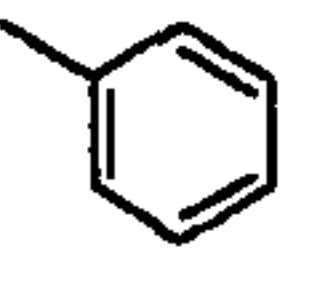
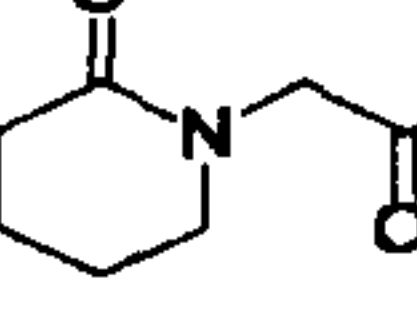
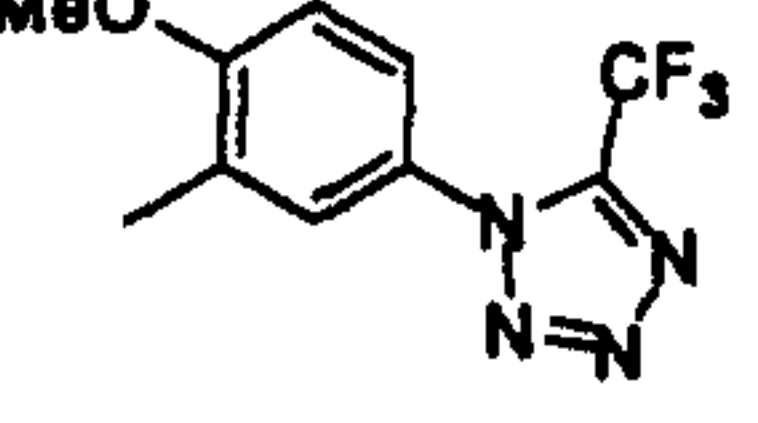
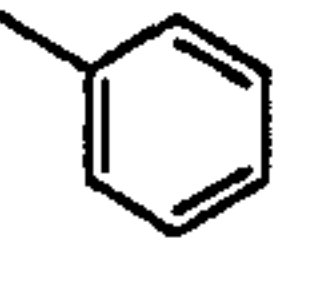
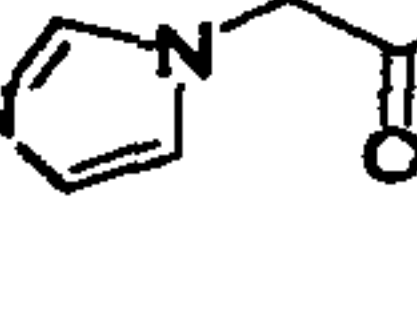
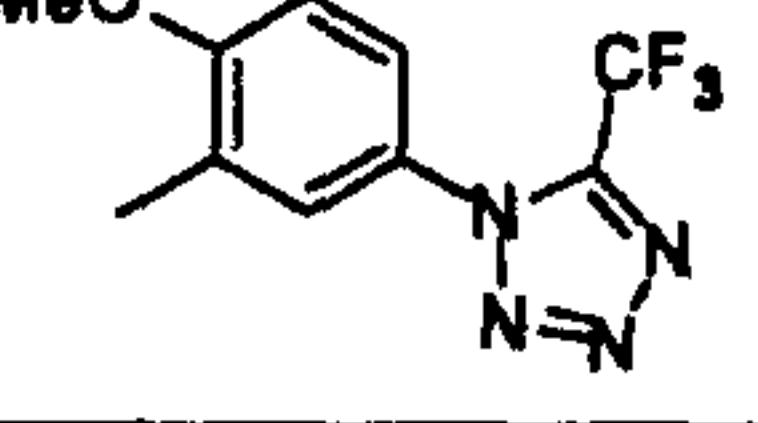
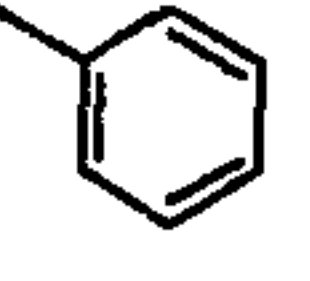
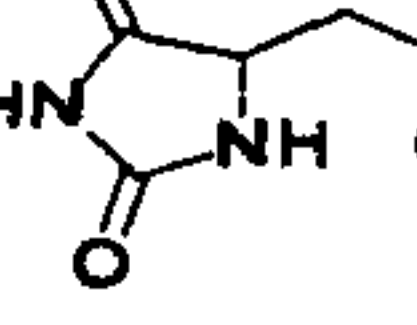
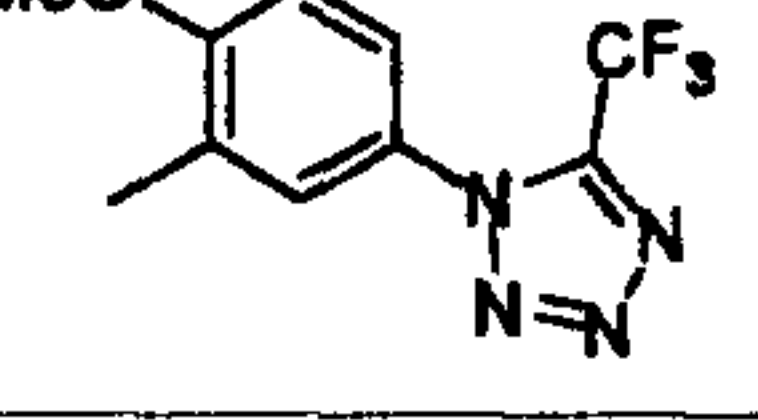
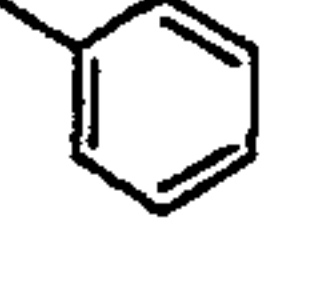
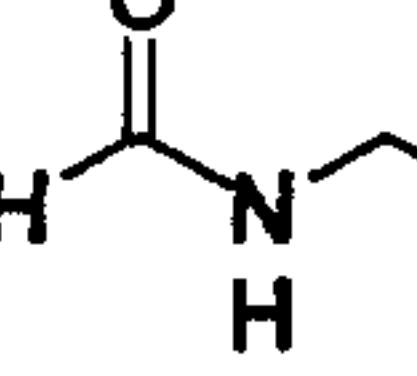
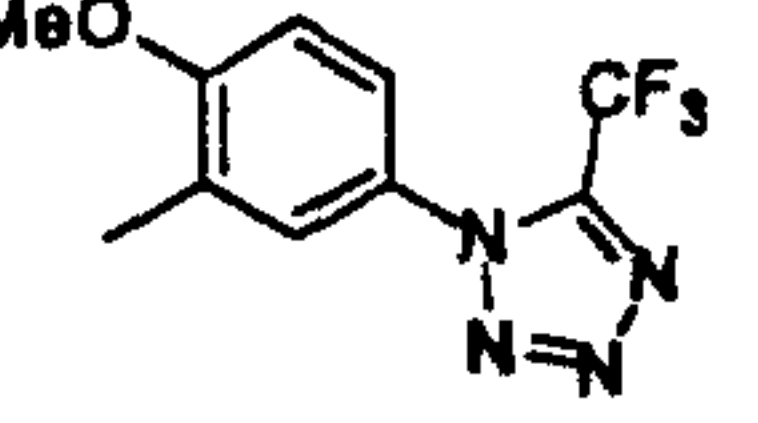
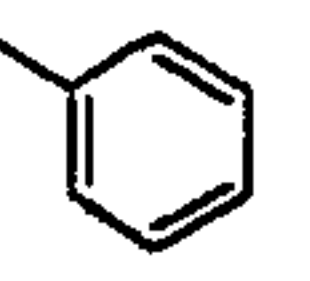
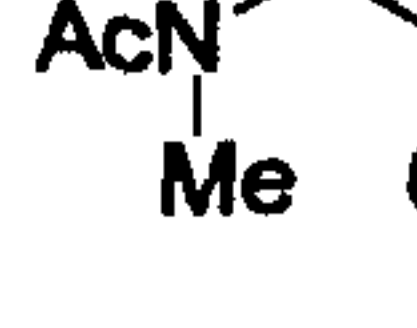
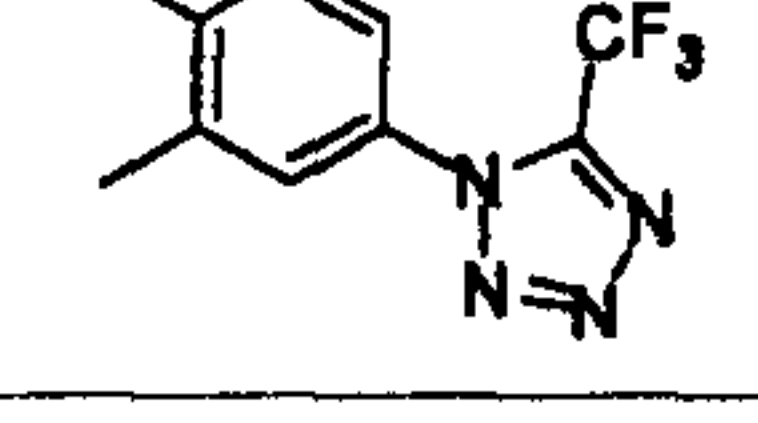
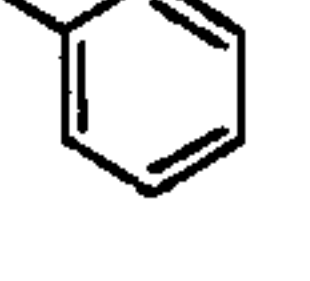
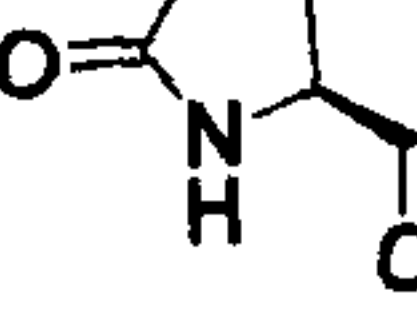
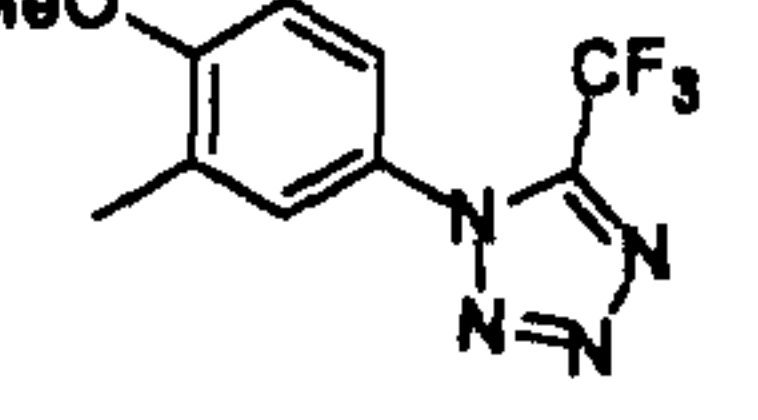
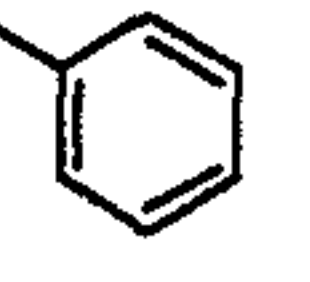
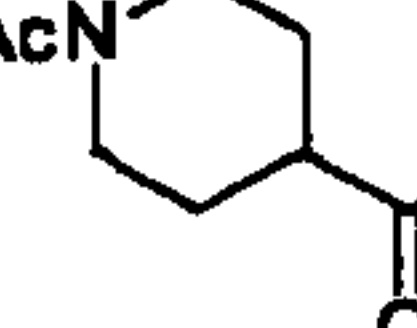
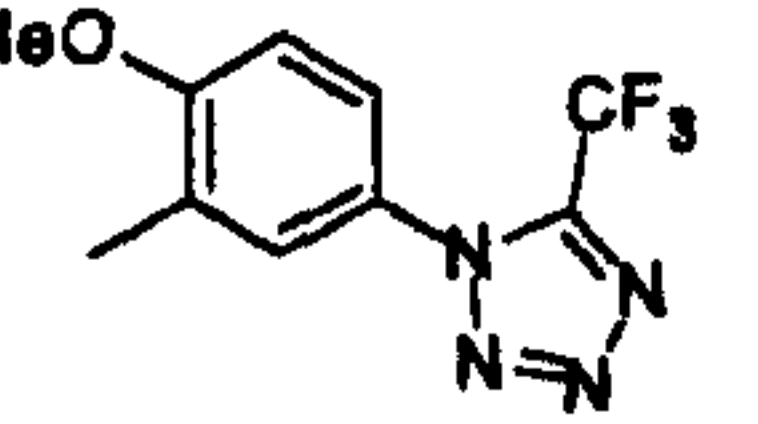
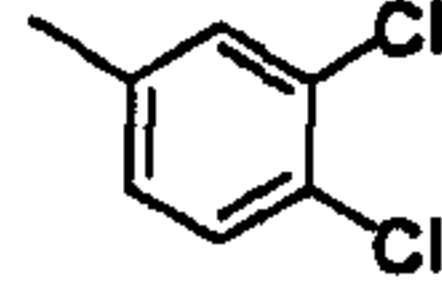
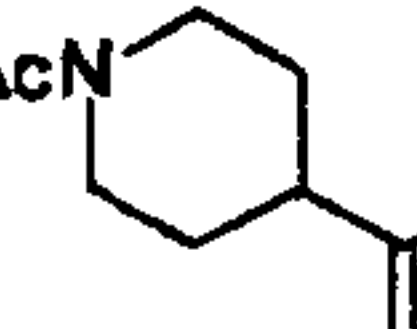
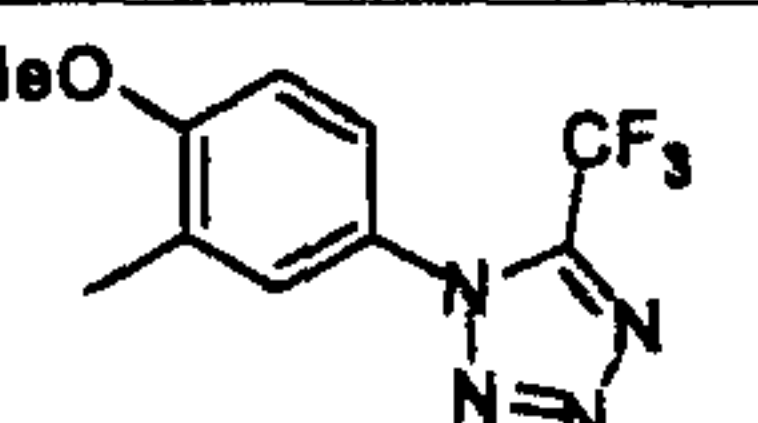
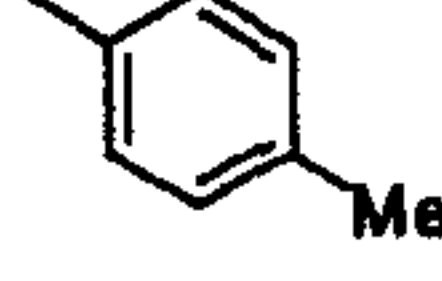
603	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			511
604	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			509
605	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			556
614	(±)- <i>cis</i>	Ac	NH			423
615	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtCO	NH			437
616	(±)- <i>cis</i>	MeOCH ₂ CO	NH			453
618	(±)- <i>cis</i>	^t BuCO	NH			466
619	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			500
620	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			489
621	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			511
622	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			491
624	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			487
625	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			491
626	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			508
627	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			495

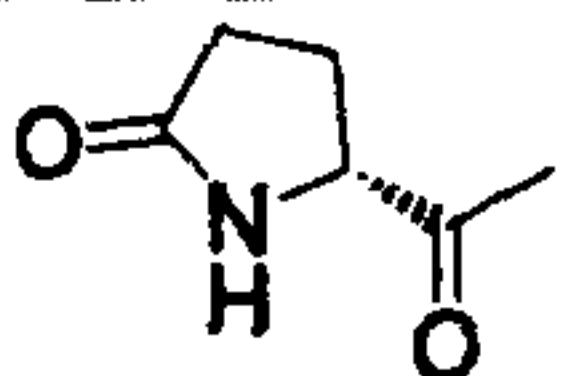
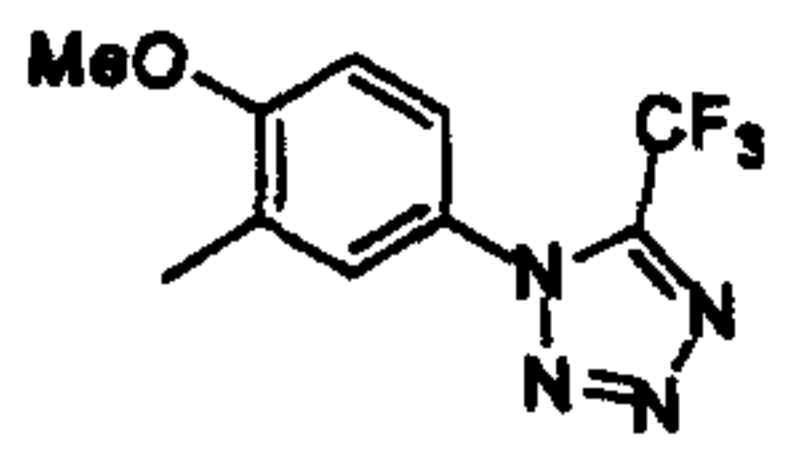
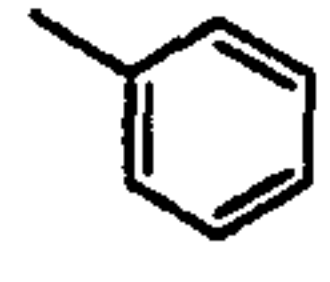
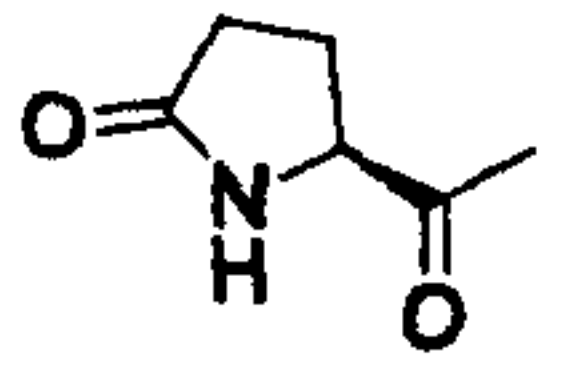
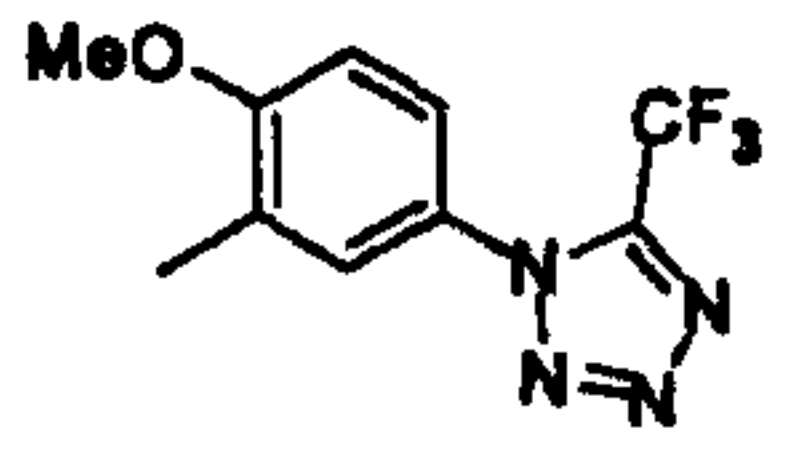
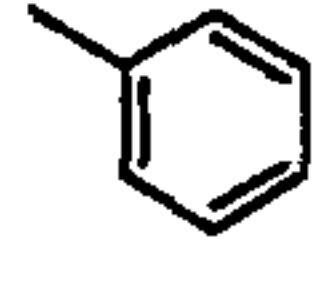
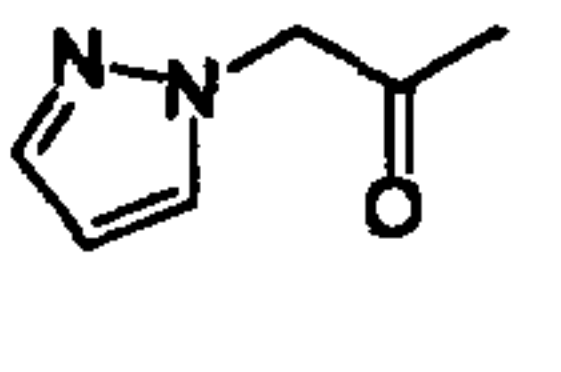
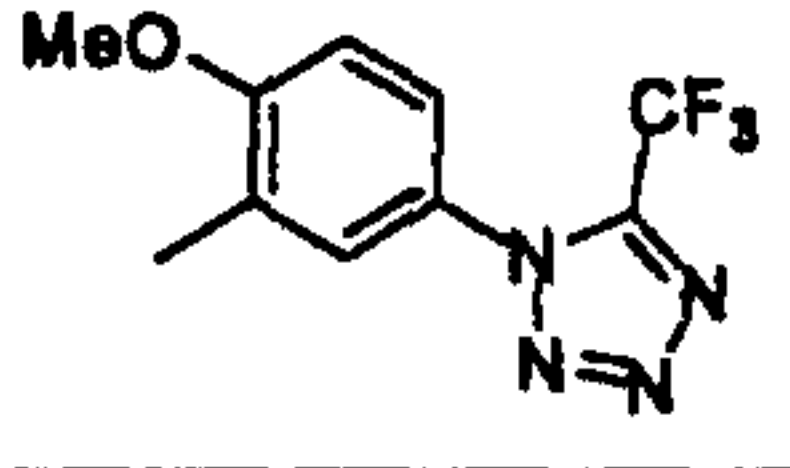
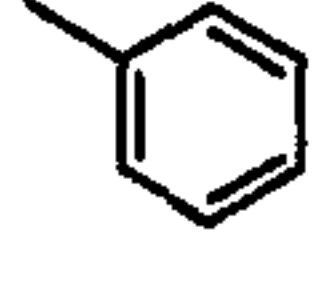
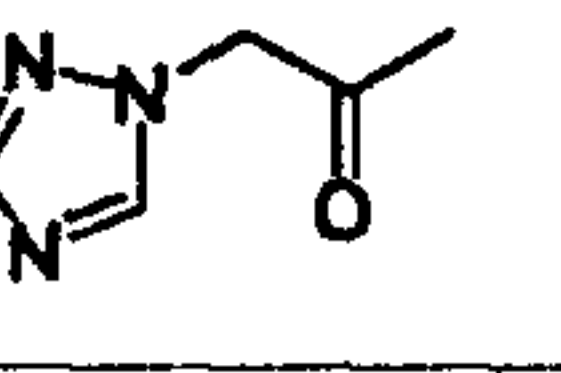
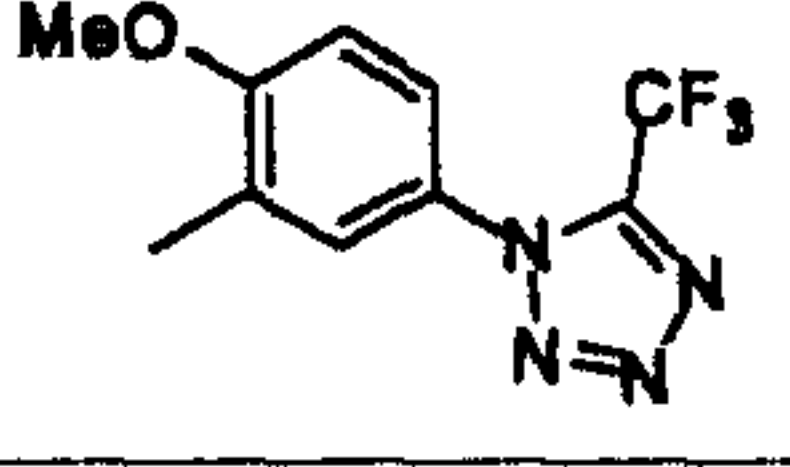
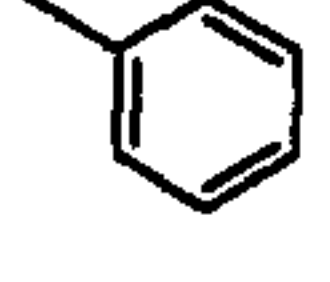
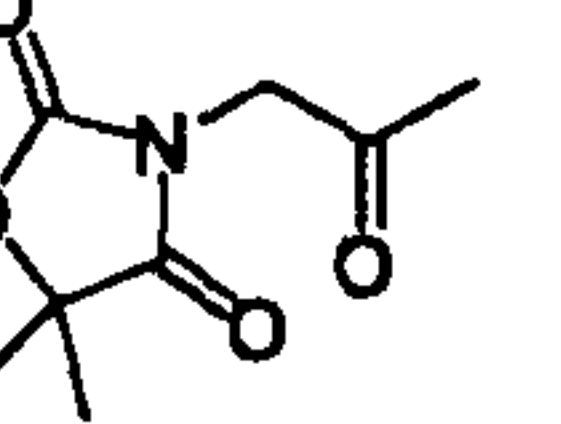
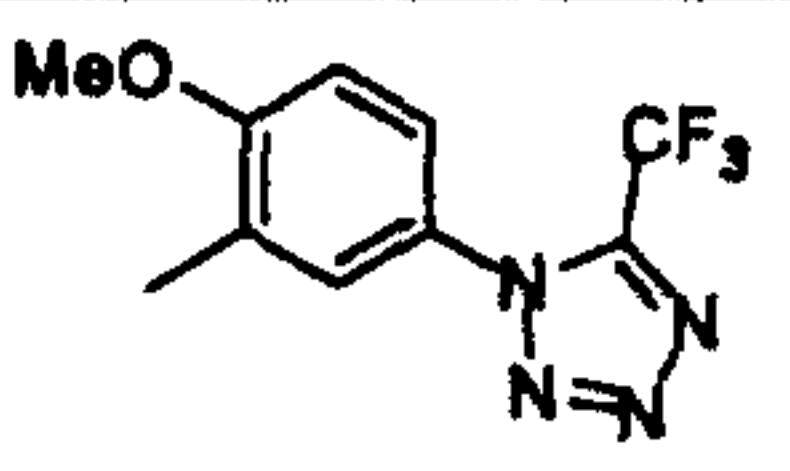
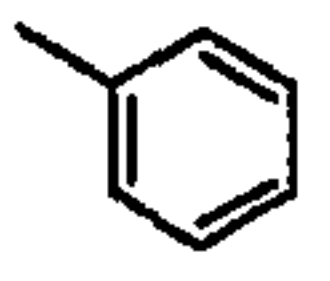
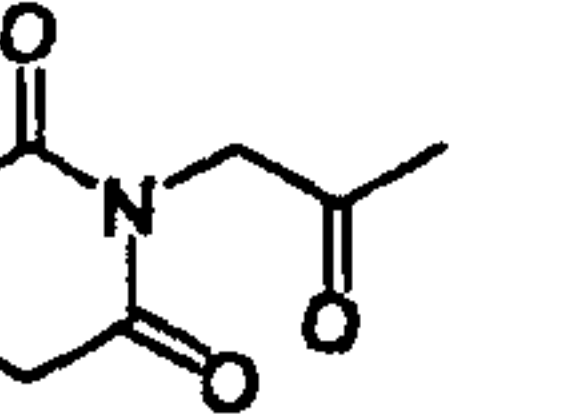
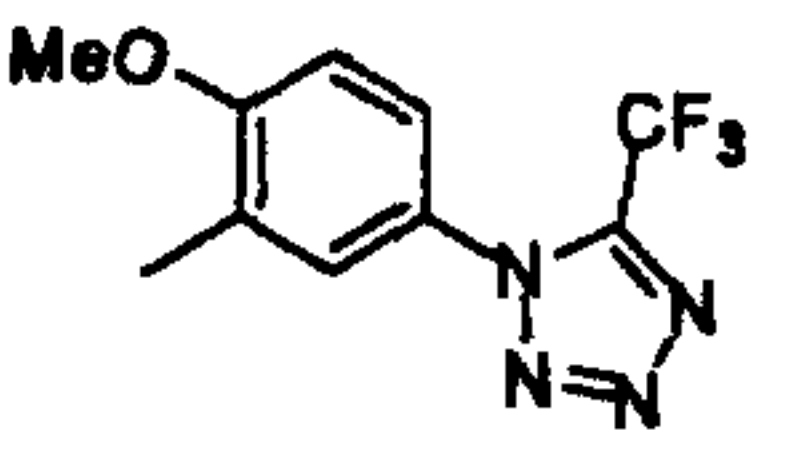
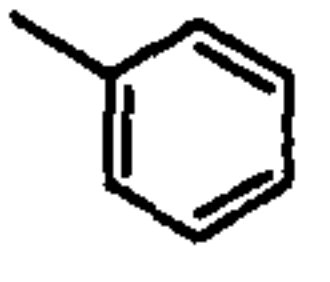
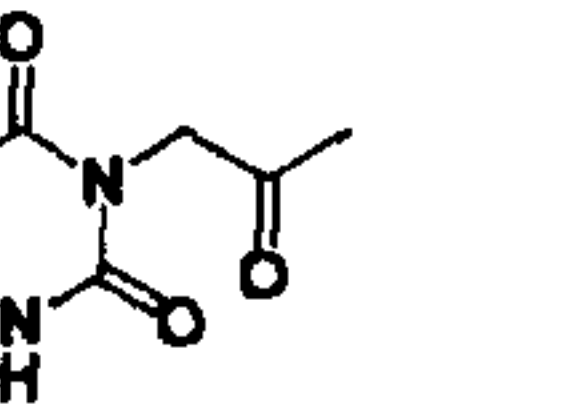
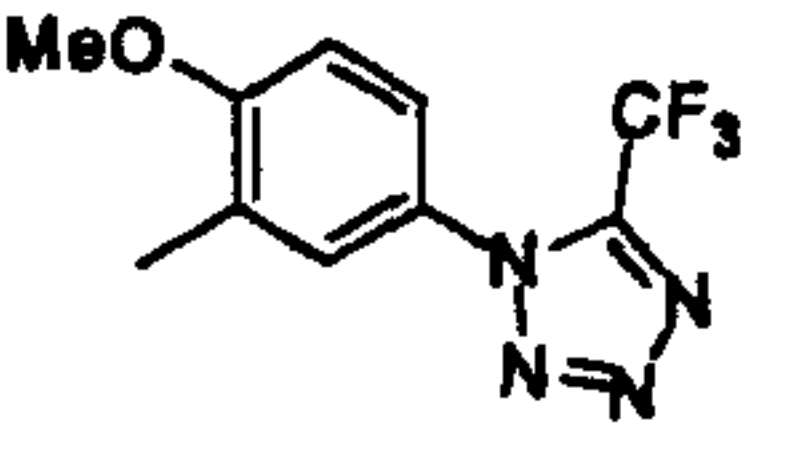
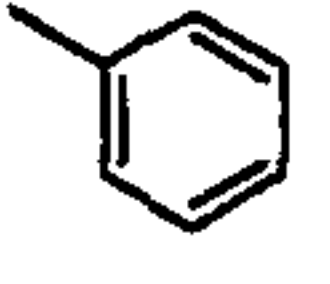
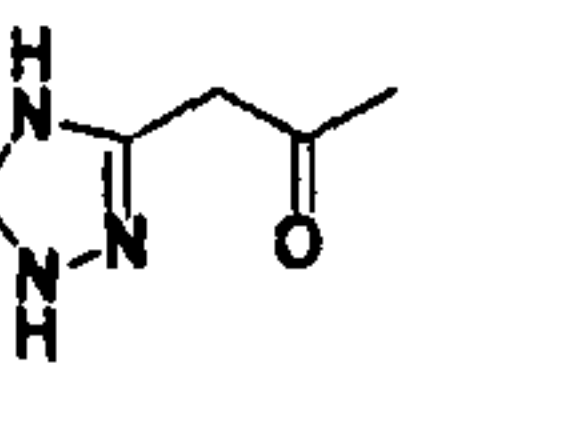
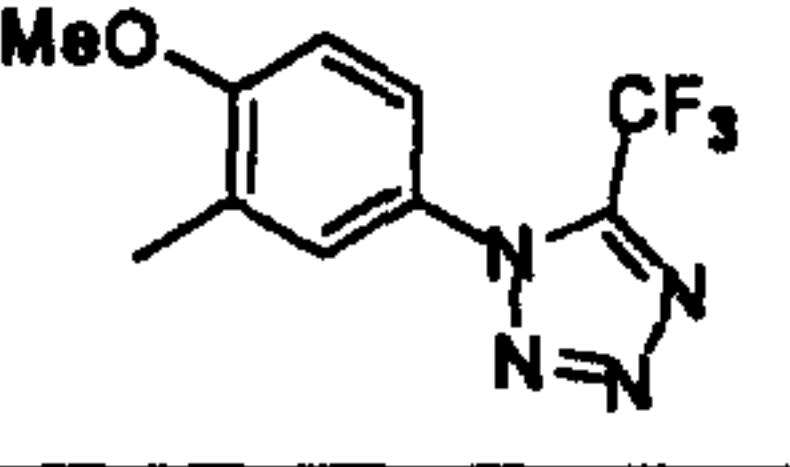
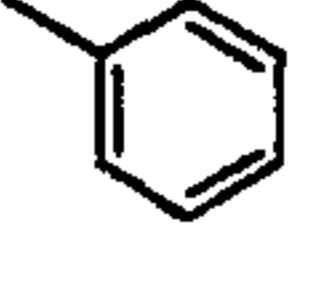
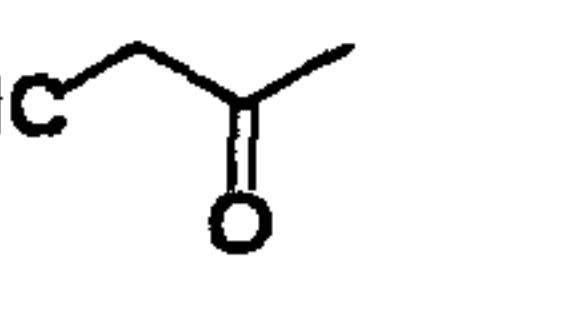
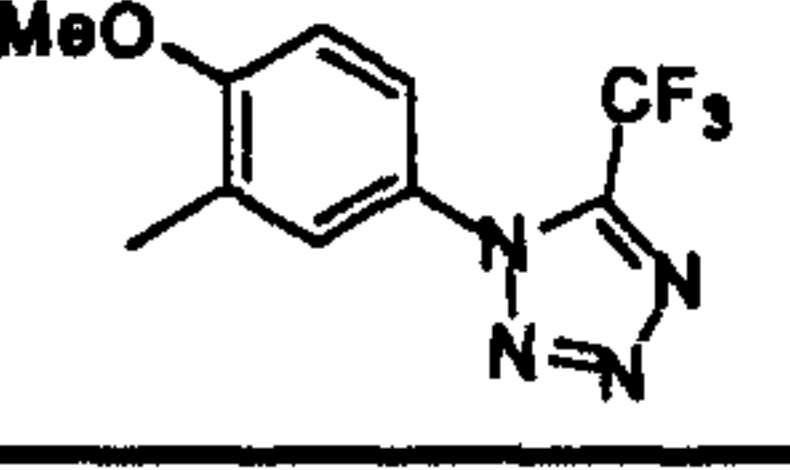
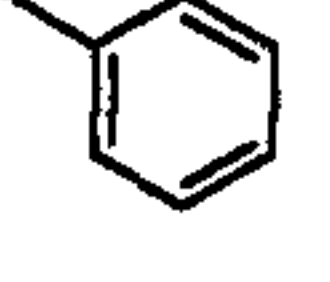
628	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			491
629	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			525
630	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			528
631	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			514
632	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			486
633	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			486
634	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			486
635	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			500
638	(±)- <i>cis</i>	$n\text{PrCO}$	NH			451
639	(±)- <i>cis</i>	$i\text{PrCO}$	NH			451
640	(±)- <i>cis</i>	$t\text{BuCO}$	NH			465
641	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			487
642	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			491
643	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			508
644	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtCO	NH			437

646	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			486
647	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			528
648	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			491
649	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			486
651	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			534
653	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			520
658	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			597
666	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtCO	NH			505
694	(±)- <i>cis</i>	MeOCH ₂ CO	NH			423
695	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			504
699	(±)- <i>cis</i>	MeOCH ₂ CO	NH			465
700	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			546
705	(±)- <i>cis</i>	MeOCH ₂ CO	NH			411
706	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			492
710	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			586

713	(±)-cis		NH			547
716	(±)-cis	MeOCH ₂ CO	NH			503
717	(±)-cis		NH			584
723	(±)-cis	MeOCH ₂ CO	NH			517
736	(±)-cis		NH			543
737	(±)-cis		NH			586
738	(±)-cis		NH			586
739	(±)-cis		NH			555
740	(±)-cis	EtOCH ₂ CO	NH			519
741	(±)-cis		NH			527
742	(±)-cis		NH			531
743	(±)-cis		NH			654
745	(±)-cis		NH			558
751	(±)-cis		NH			549
752	(±)-cis		NH			533

753	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			532
756	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			545
757	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			543
758	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			541
760	(±)- <i>cis</i>	HOCH ₂ CO	NH			491
761	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			546
762	(±)- <i>cis</i>	Ac	NH			475
763	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			553
764	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			572
765	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			558
767	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			519
768	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			547
769	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			544
770	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			531
771	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			517

773	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			601
774	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			505
775	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			590
776	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			560
777	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			559
778	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			587
779	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			573
780	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			572
781	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			541
782	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			573
783	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			518
784	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			546
788	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			562
790	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			654
792	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			600

797	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			544
798	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			544
802	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			541
803	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			542
804	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			602
805	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			586
806	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			585
807	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			558
808	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			500

Example 421

cis-2-[4-[[3,5-Bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-3-phenyl-1-
5 piperidinyl]-2-oxoethylamine trifluoroacetate

To a solution of the compound (35 mg) obtained in
Example 1, Boc-glycine (15 mg) and Et₃N (22 μl) in DMF (2.0
ml), WSC·HCl (17 mg) and HOBt·H₂O (13 mg) were added, and the
reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 24 hours.
10 The reaction mixture was poured into water, and then the
product was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer
was washed with an aqueous saturated sodium hydrogen
carbonate solution and saturated brine, and dried, and the
solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and then the

- 232 -

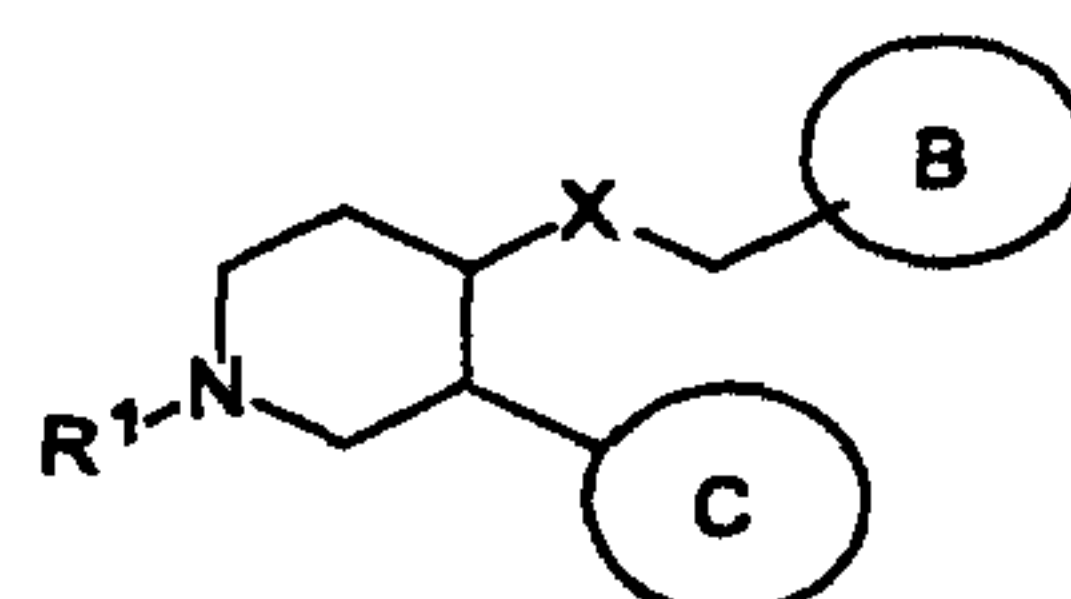
residue was purified by preparative HPLC. To the obtained product, trifluoroacetic acid (1 ml) was added and the reaction mixture was stirred for 1 hour, and then the solvent was evaporated to obtain the title compound.

5 Yield: 19 mg

MS (ESI+): 461 (M+H)

The compounds of the following Examples were synthesized by reacting and treating in the same manner as in the method described in Example 421 from the compounds
10 obtained in Examples 1, 509, 527, 566, 609 or 701 as a starting material, using respective corresponding amino acid derivatives protected with Boc group.

[Table 21]



Ex. No.	Stereo-chemistry	R ¹	X	B	C	MS (ESI) (M+H) ⁺
421	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			461
427	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			489
441	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			515
455	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			489
486	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			526
487	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			515
493	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			487
494	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			529
515	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			583
531	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			548
577	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			460
583	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			488

617	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			438
623	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			466
645	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			466
732	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			544
733	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			544
734	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			544
744	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			516

Example 440

Ethyl [[[cis-4-[[3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-3-phenyl-1-piperidinyloxy]carbonyl]amino]acetate

To a solution of the compound (35 mg) obtained in
 5 Example 1 and Et₃N (22 μl) in THF (2.0 ml), ethyl
 isocyanatoacetate (11 mg) was added at 0°C, and the reaction
 mixture was stirred at room temperature for 3 hours. To the
 reaction mixture, an aqueous saturated sodium hydrogen
 carbonate solution was added, and then the product was
 10 extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed
 with saturated brine, dried, and then the solvent was
 evaporated under reduced pressure, and the residue was
 purified by preparative HPLC to obtain the title compound.

Yield: 17 mg

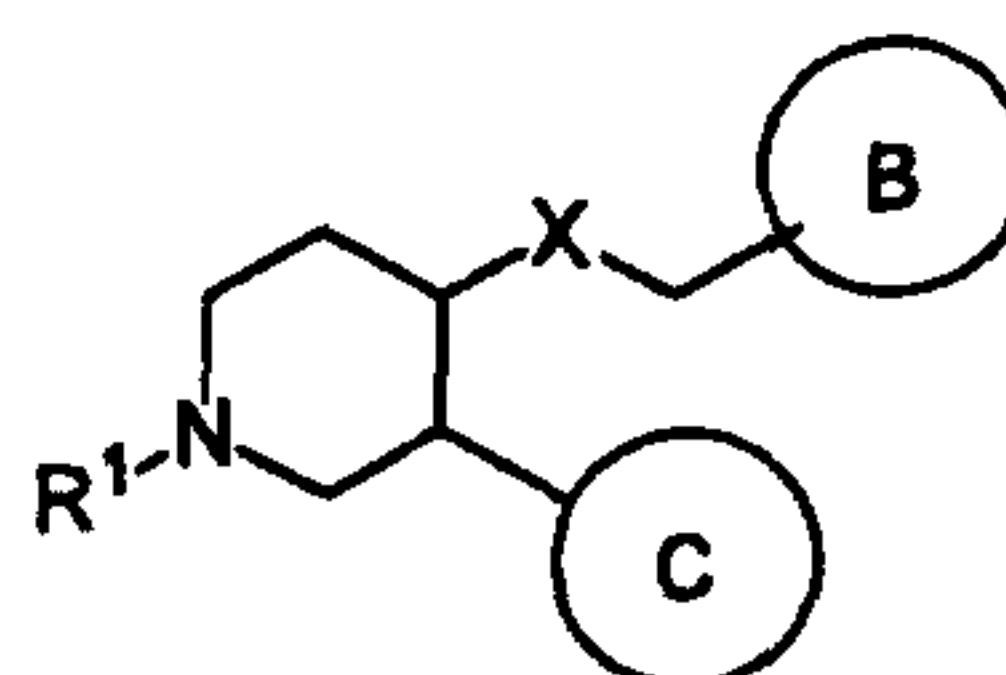
15 MS (ESI⁺): 533 (M+H)

The compounds of the following Examples were
 synthesized from the compound obtained in Examples 1, 23, 24,
 509, 519, 521, 524, 527, 534, 566, 609, 663, 701, 708, 711,

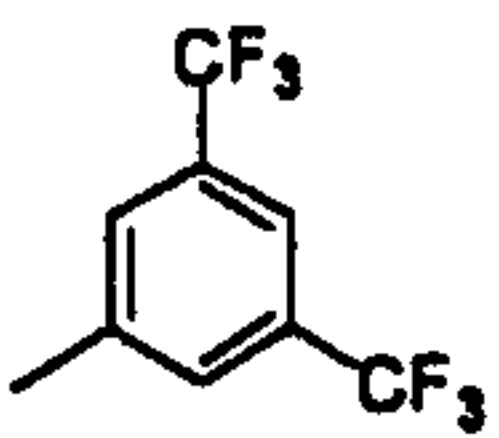
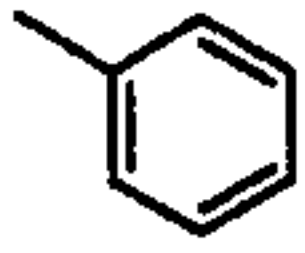
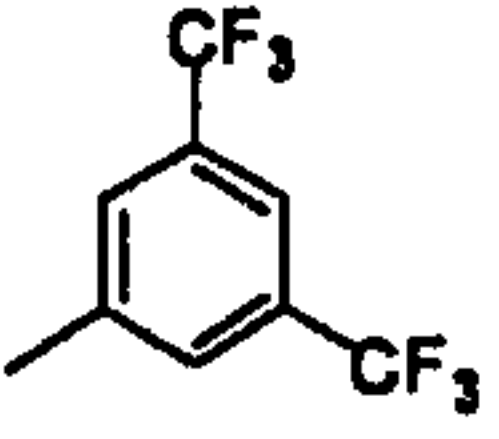
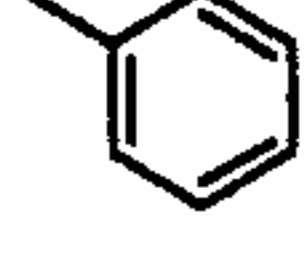
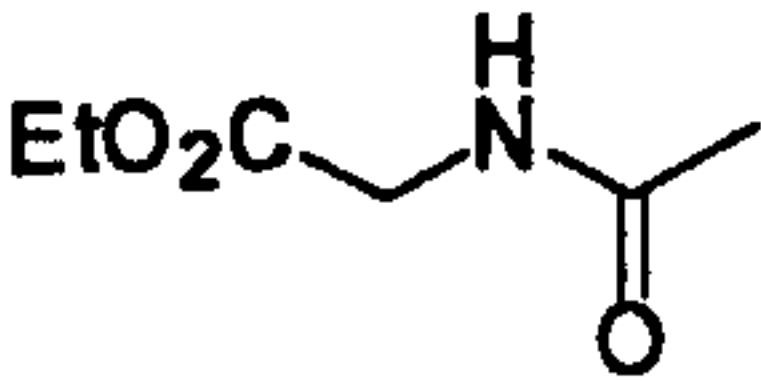
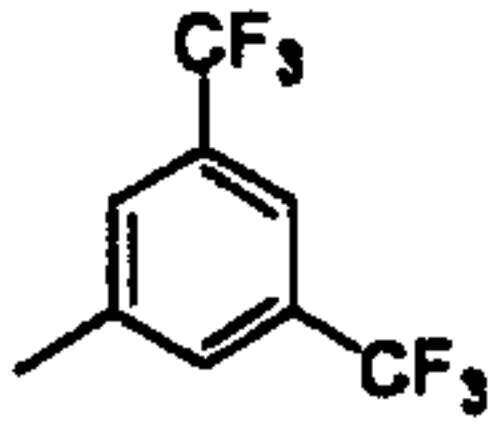
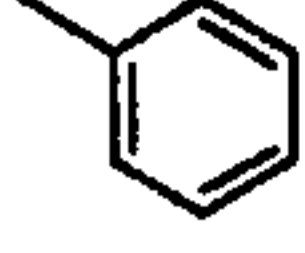
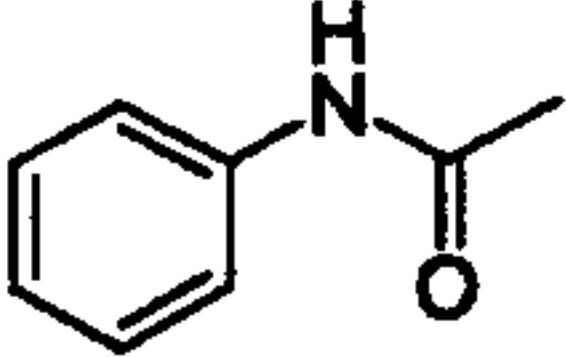
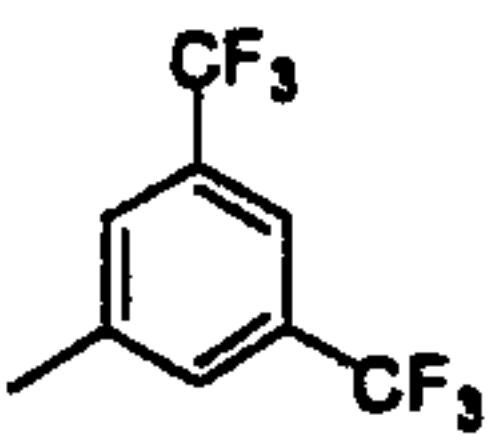
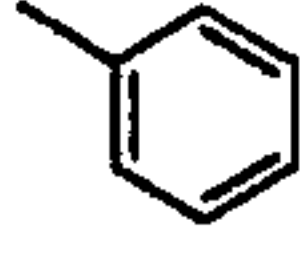
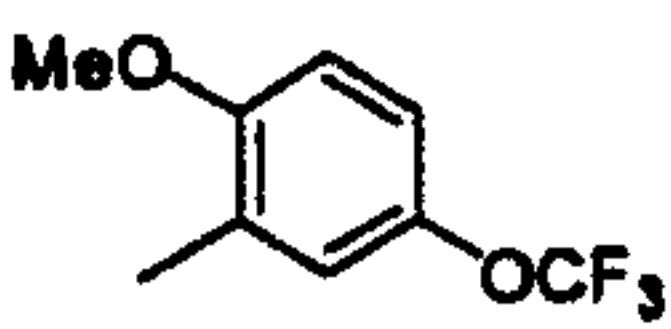
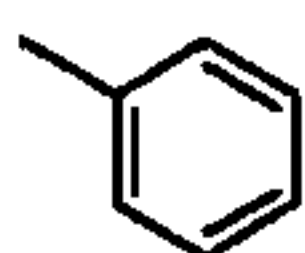
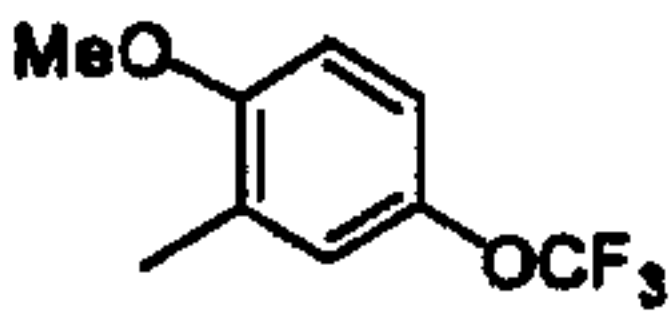
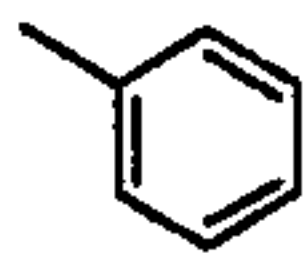
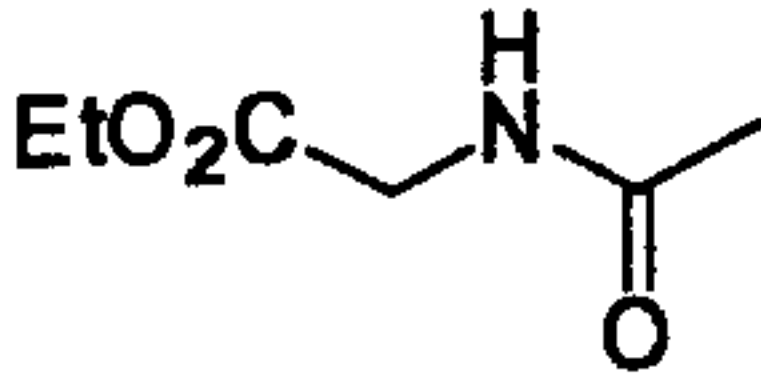
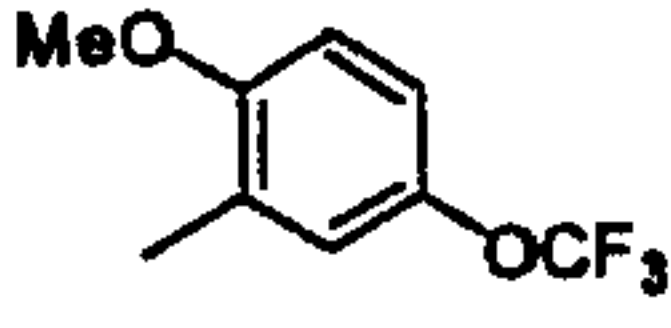
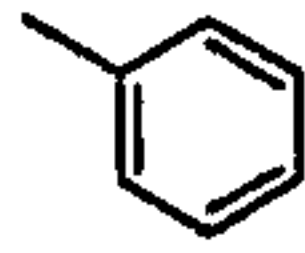
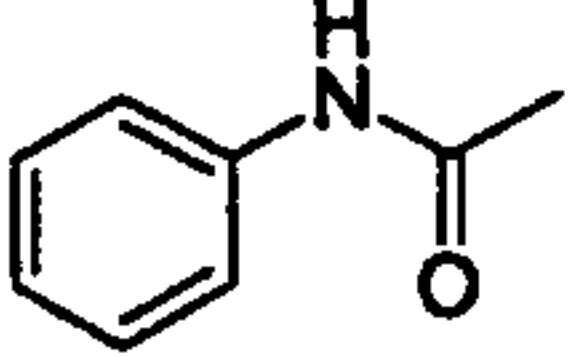
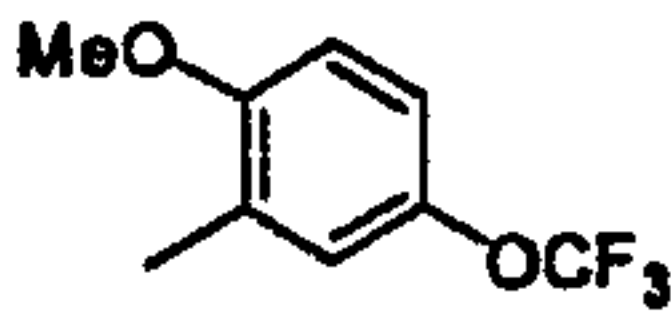
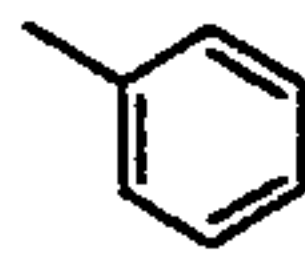
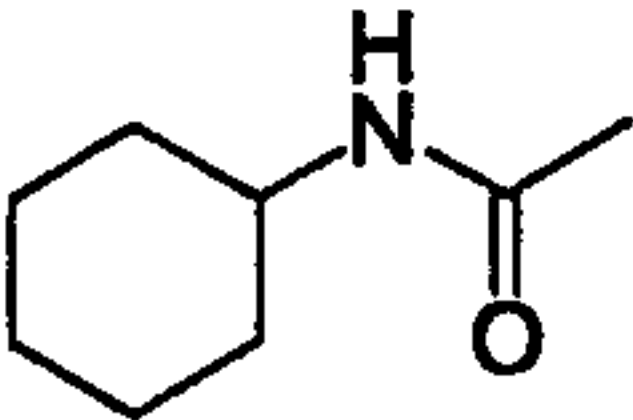
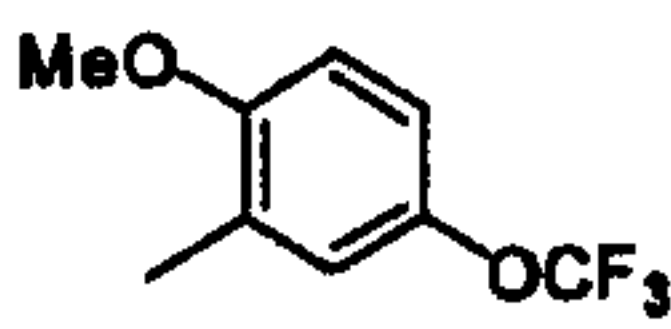
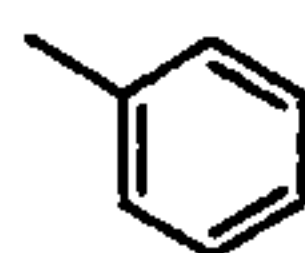
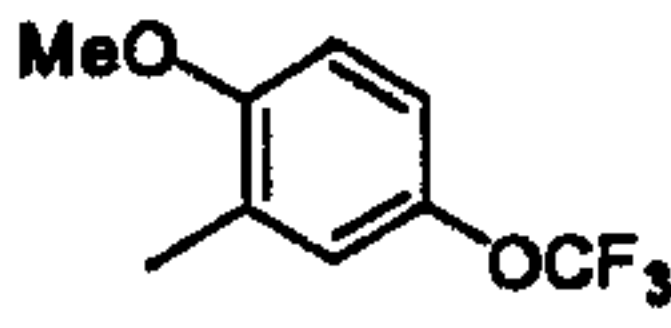
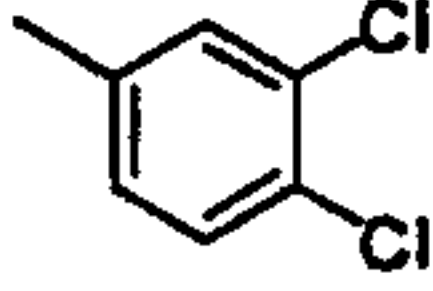
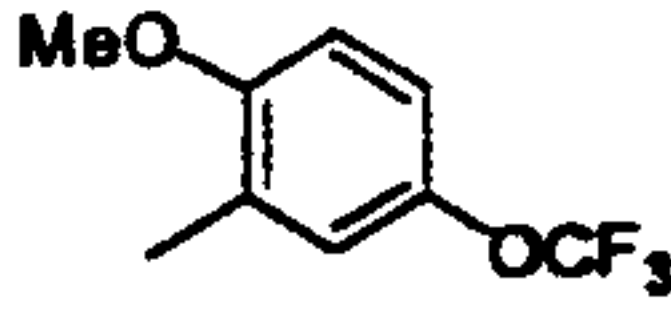
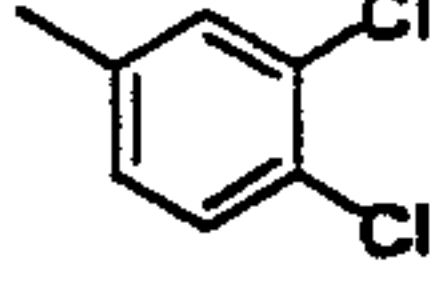
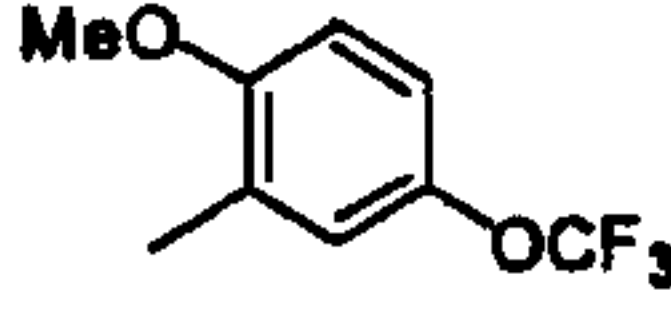
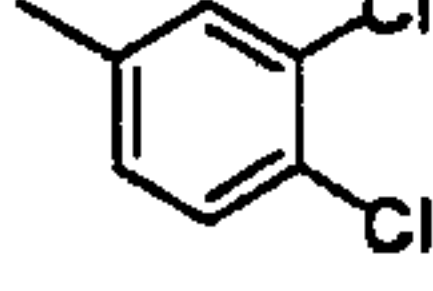
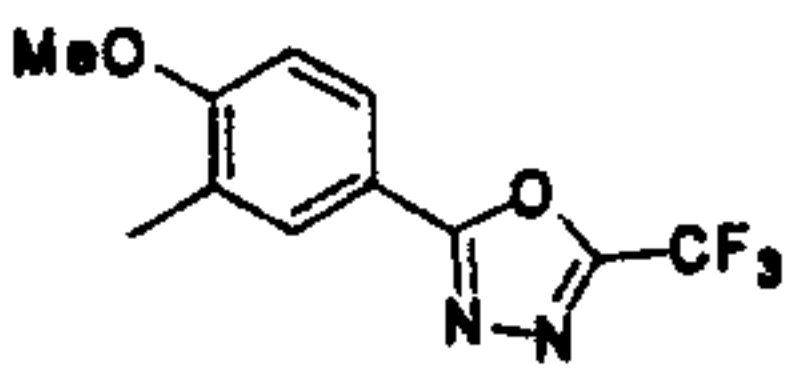
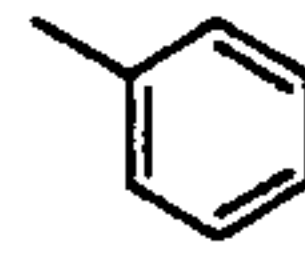
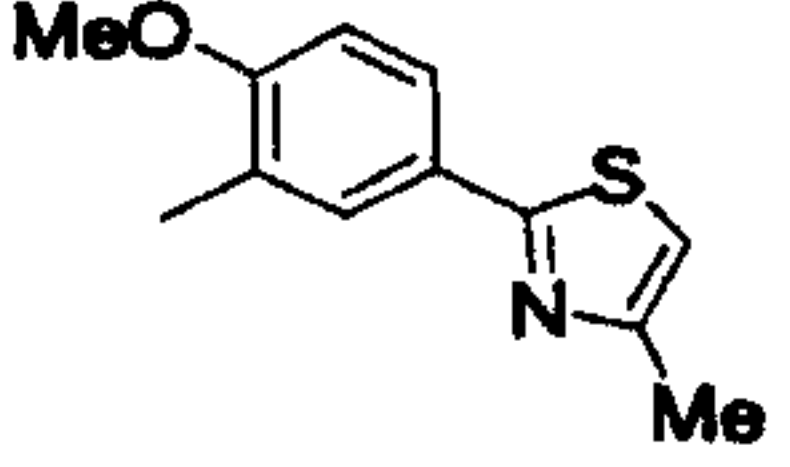
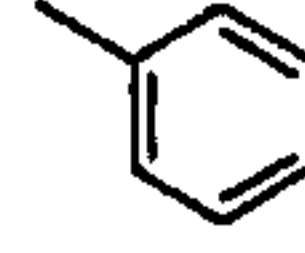
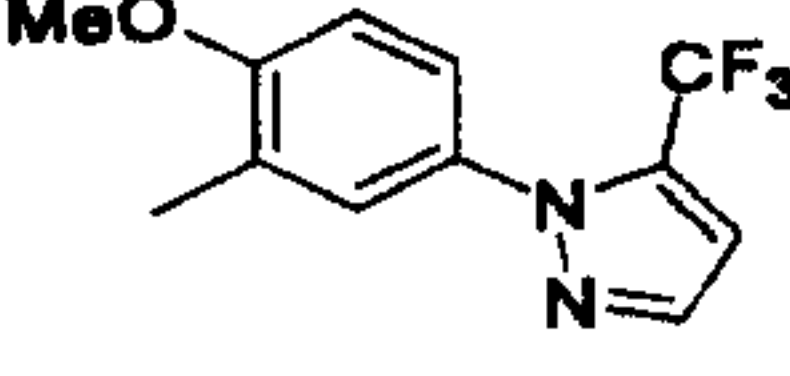
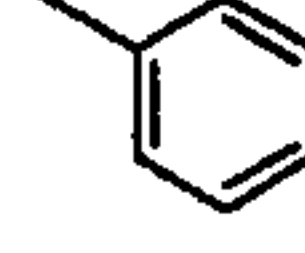
- 235 -

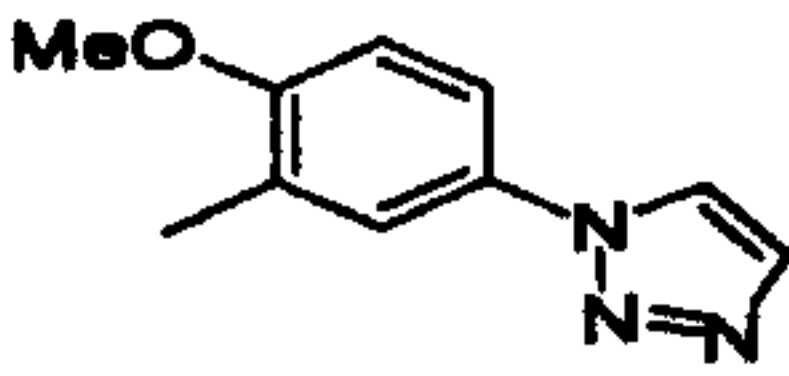
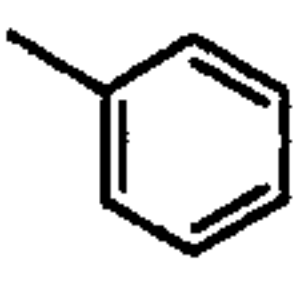
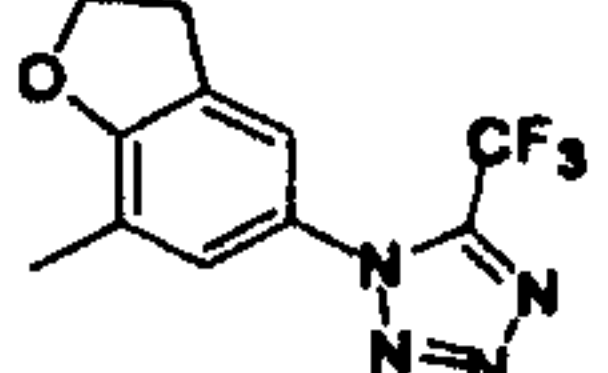
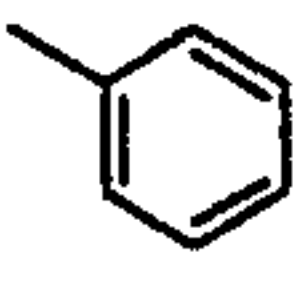
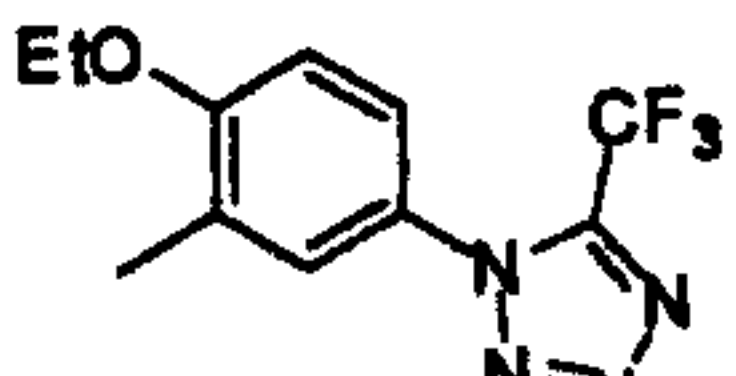
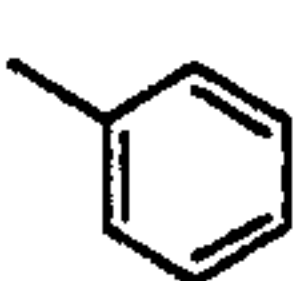
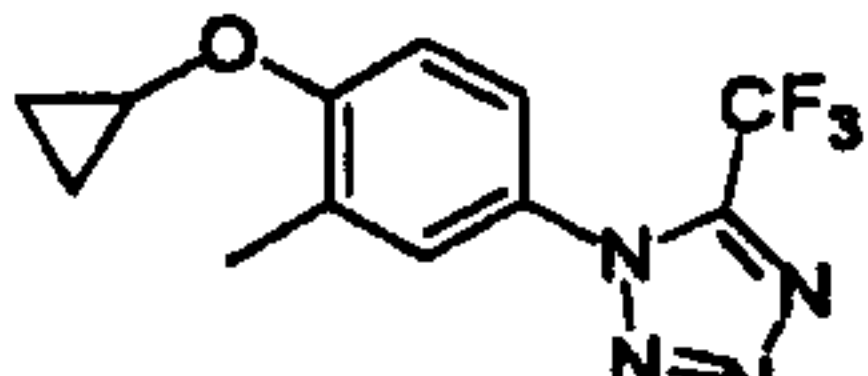
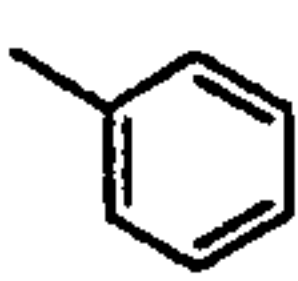
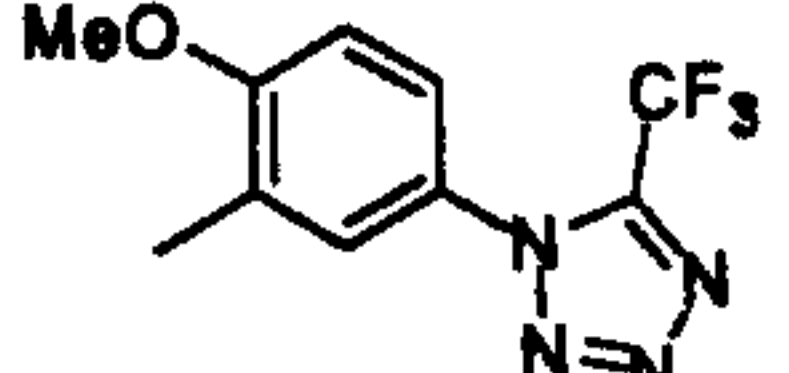
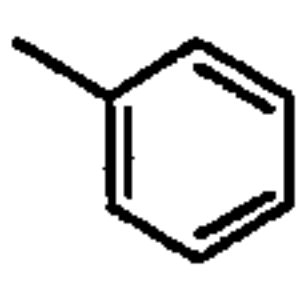
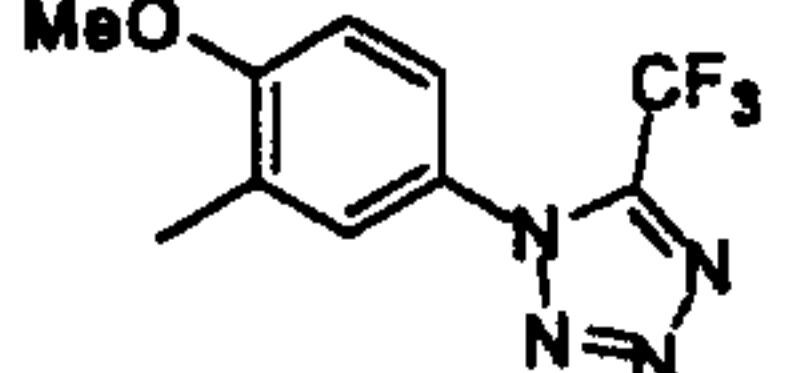
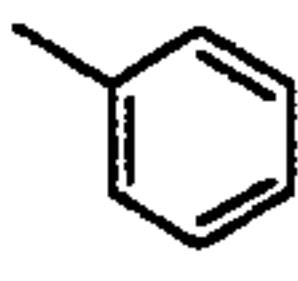
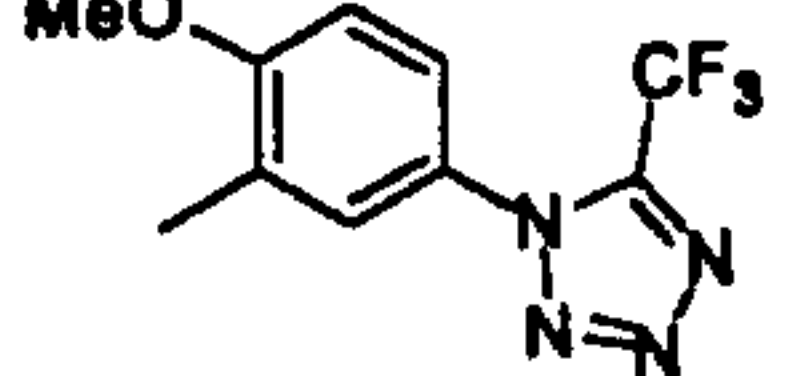
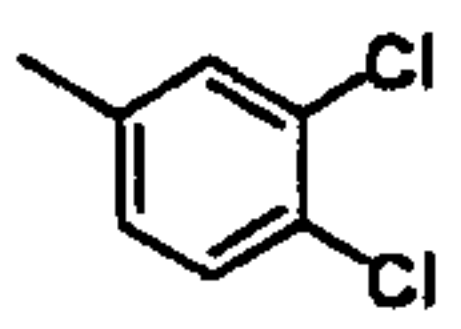
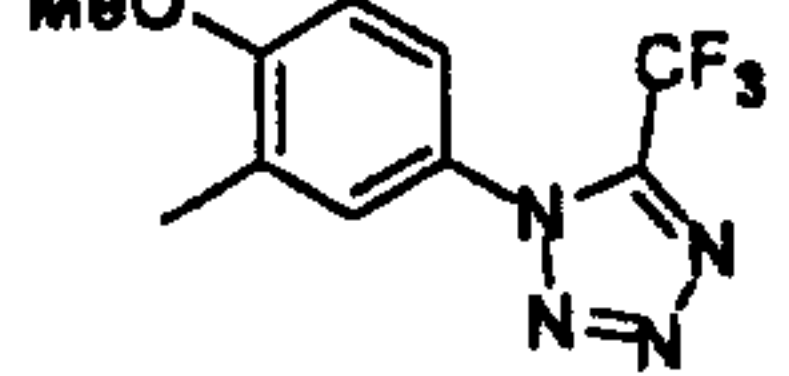
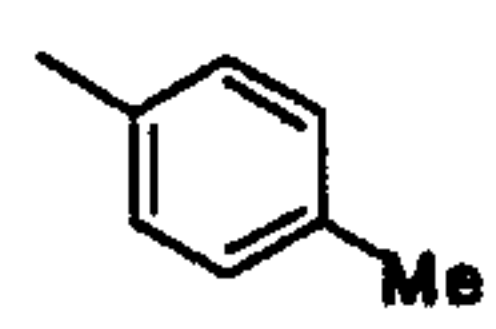
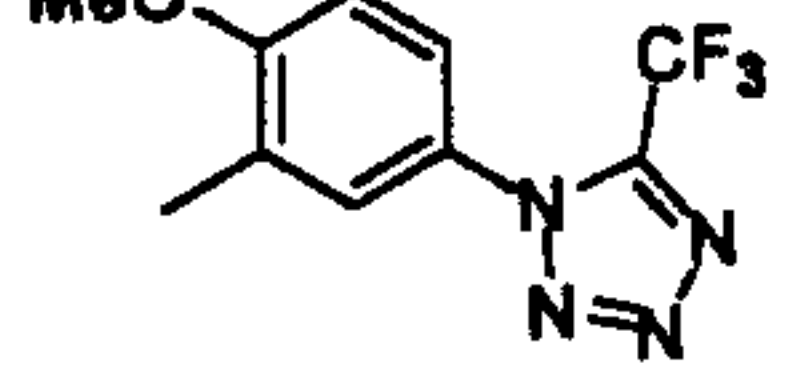
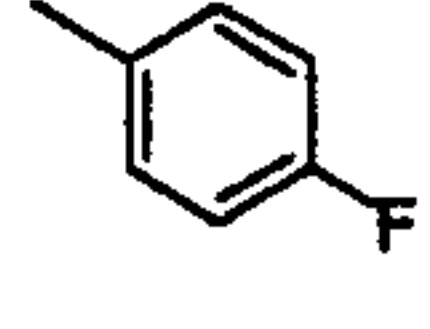
714, 718, 720, 724, 726, 794, 795 or 796 as a starting material by reacting and treating in the same manner as in the method described in Example 440 using the respective corresponding isocyanate derivatives.

5 [Table 22]



Ex. No.	Stereochemistry	R^1	X	B	C	MS (ESI) $(M+H)^+$
440	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			533
469	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			572
513	(±)- <i>cis</i>	MeNHCO	O			529
520	(±)- <i>cis</i>	MeNHCO	O			475
523	(±)- <i>cis</i>	MeNHCO	O			475
526	(±)- <i>cis</i>	MeNHCO	O			479
530	(±)- <i>cis</i>	MeNHCO	O			479
536	(±)- <i>cis</i>	MeNHCO	O			493
560	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH			368
561	(±)- <i>cis</i>	MeNHCO	NH			354
562	(±)- <i>trans</i>	MeNHCO	NH			354
568	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH			474

569	(±)- <i>cis</i>	MeNHCO	NH			460
570	(±)- <i>trans</i>	MeNHCO	NH			460
596	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			532
597	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			522
610	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH			452
611	(±)- <i>cis</i>	MeNHCO	NH			438
636	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			510
637	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			500
650	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			506
664	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH			520
665	(±)- <i>cis</i>	<i>i</i> PrNHCO	NH			534
667	(±)- <i>cis</i>	MeNHCO	NH			506
709	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH			504
712	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH			465
715	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH			502

719	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH			435
722	(±)- <i>cis</i>	MeNHCO	NH			502
725	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH			518
727	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH			530
729	(±)- <i>cis</i>	ⁱ PrNHCO	NH			518
730	(±)- <i>cis</i>	^t BuNHCO	NH			532
789	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH			572
791	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH			518
793	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH			522

Example 445

cis-4-[[3,5-Bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-3-phenyl-1-[(1-methyl-4-piperidinyl)carbonyl]piperidine

To an aqueous solution of the compound (210 mg)
 5 obtained in Example 441 and Et₃N (38 mg) in 35% formalin (1.2 ml), formic acid (1.2 ml) was added, and the reaction mixture was stirred at 80°C for 1 hour. The reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure, and then to the residue, ethyl acetate was added. The reaction mixture was made basic
 10 with an aqueous sodium hydroxide solution, and then the organic layer was washed with saturated brine, dried, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The obtained residue was purified by preparative HPLC to obtain the title compound.

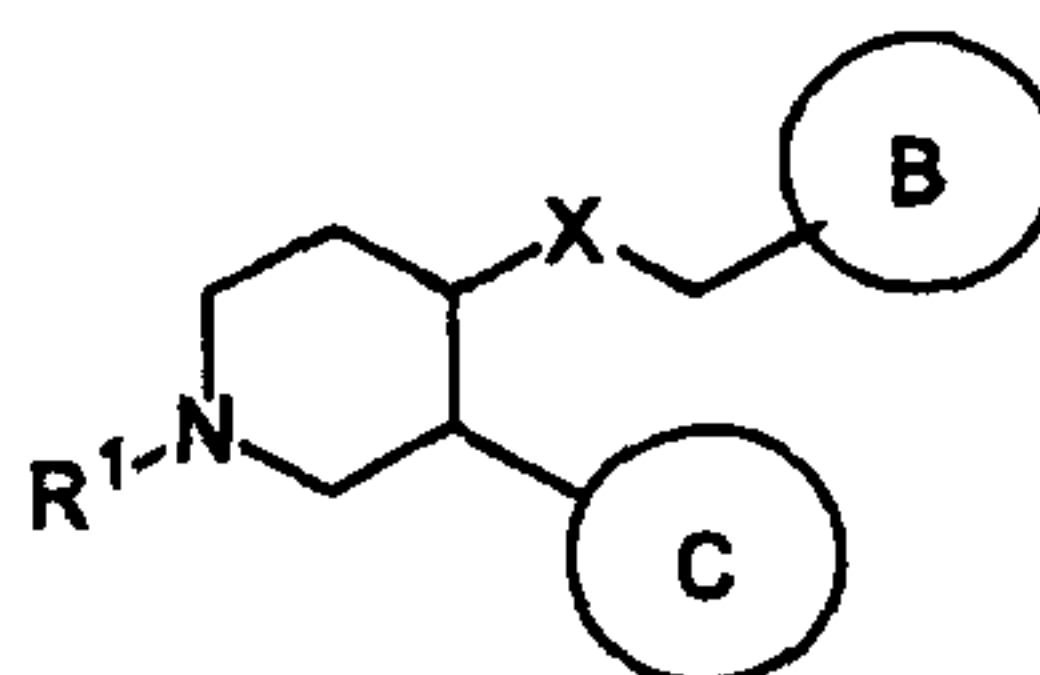
- 239 -

Yield: 173 mg

MS (ESI+): 529 (M+H)

The compounds of the following Examples were synthesized from the compound obtained in Example 515 as a starting material by reacting and treating in the same manner as in the method described in Example 445.

[Table 23]



Ex. No.	Stereo-chemistry	R ¹	X	B	C	MS (ESI) (M+H) ⁺
445	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			529
516	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			597

Example 446

10 *cis*-4-[[3,5-Bis[(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-3-phenyl-1-(1-piperidinylcarbonyl)piperidine

To a solution of the compound (100 mg) obtained in Example 1 and Et₃N (70 mg) in DMF (5.0 ml), piperidine-1-carbonyl chloride (44 mg) was added, and the reaction mixture
 15 was stirred at room temperature for 2 hours. The reaction mixture was poured into water, and then the product was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with an aqueous 3% potassium hydrogensulfate solution and saturated brine, dried, and then the solvent was evaporated
 20 under reduced pressure. The obtained residue was isolated and purified by silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate) to obtain the title compound as pale yellow oil (0.11 g).

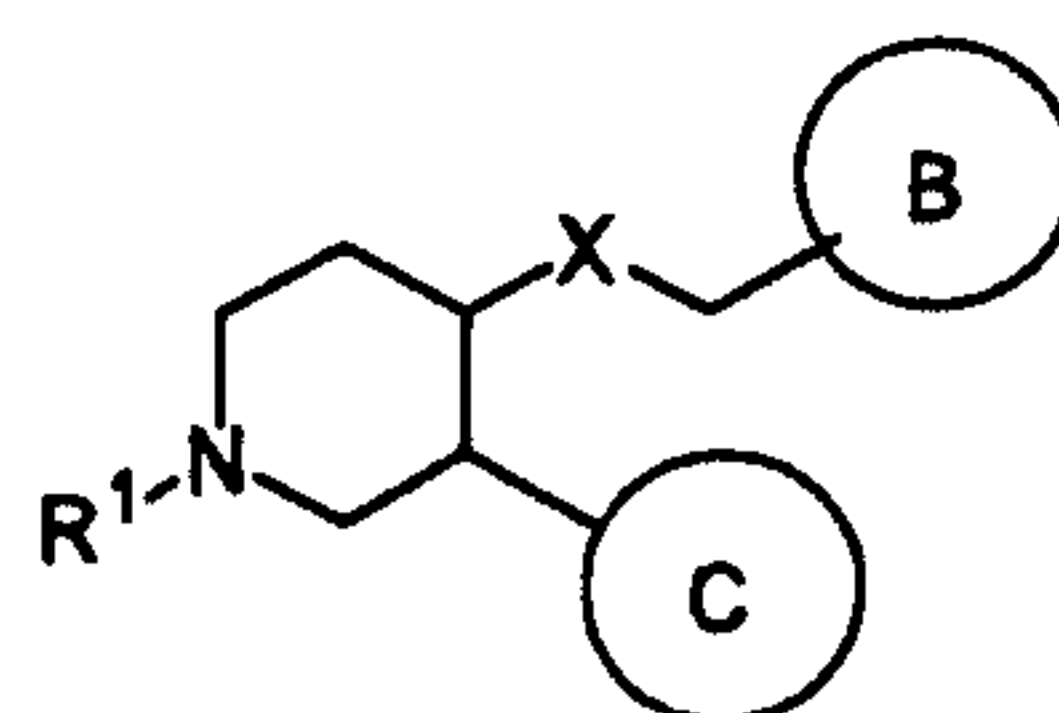
MS (ESI+): 515 (M+H)

25 The compounds of the following Examples were

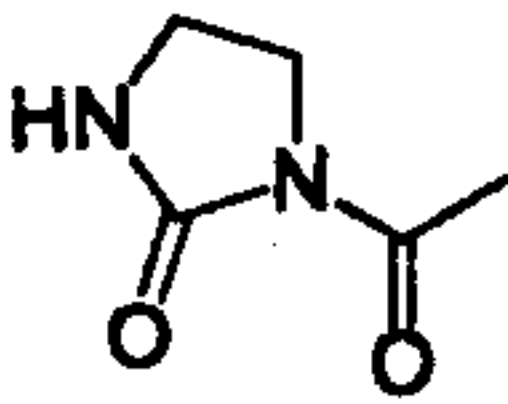
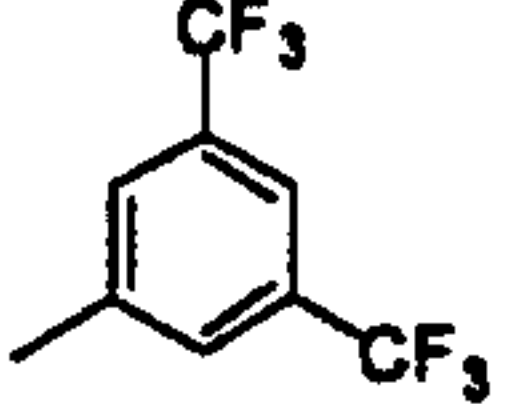
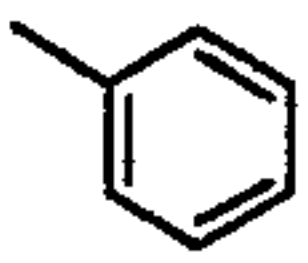
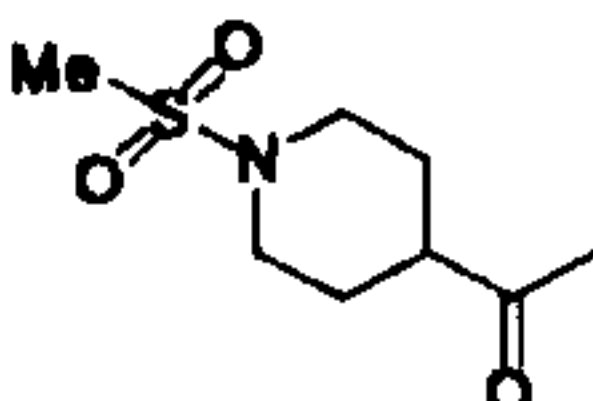
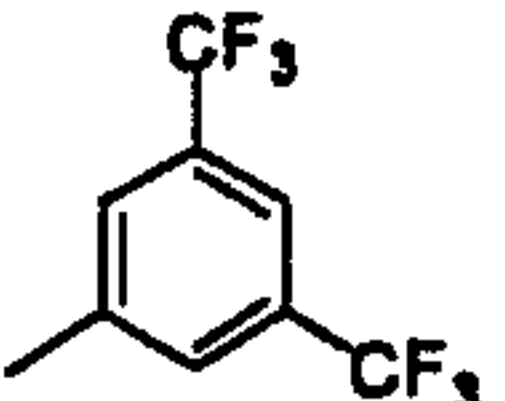
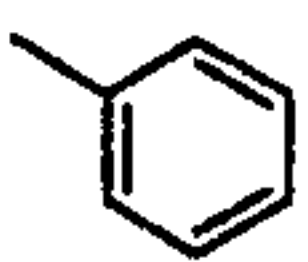
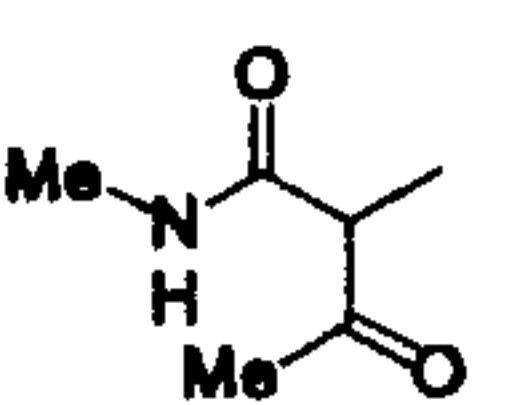
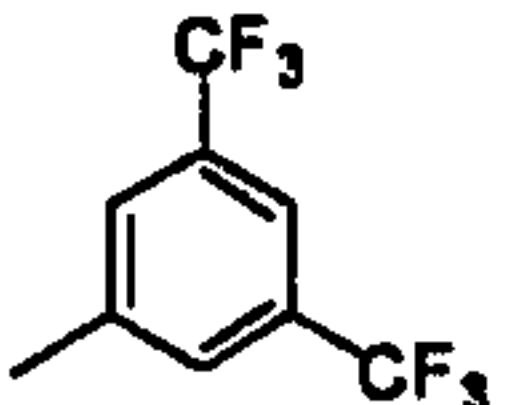
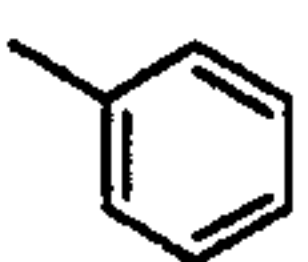
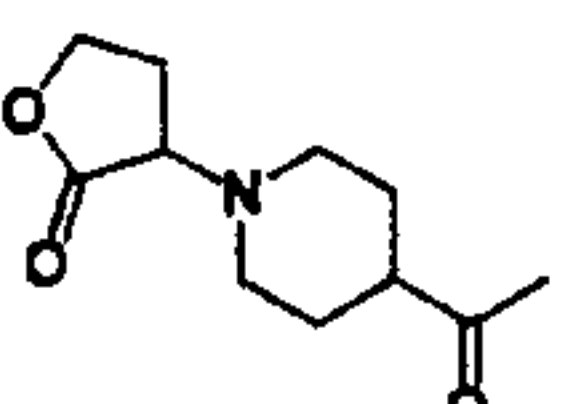
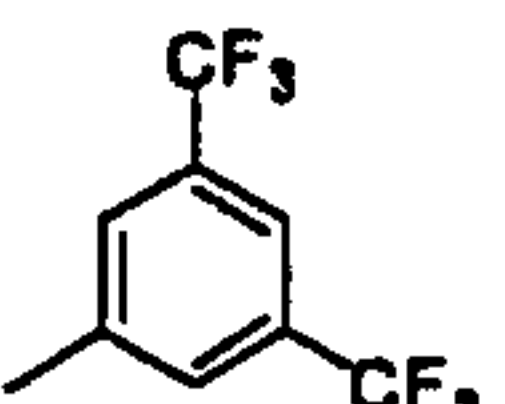
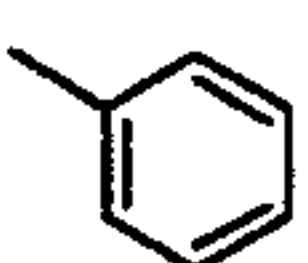
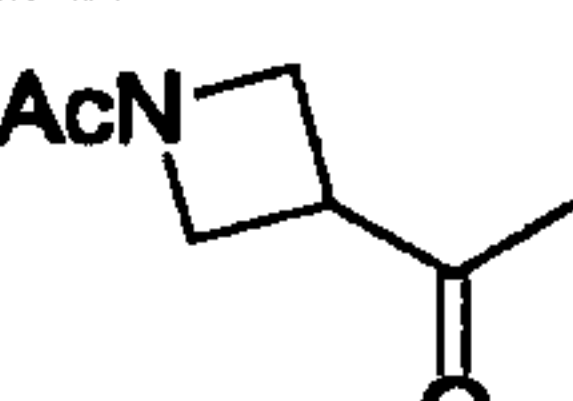
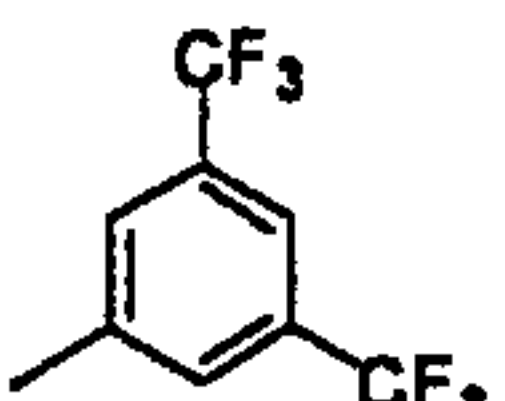
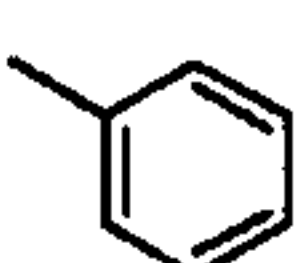
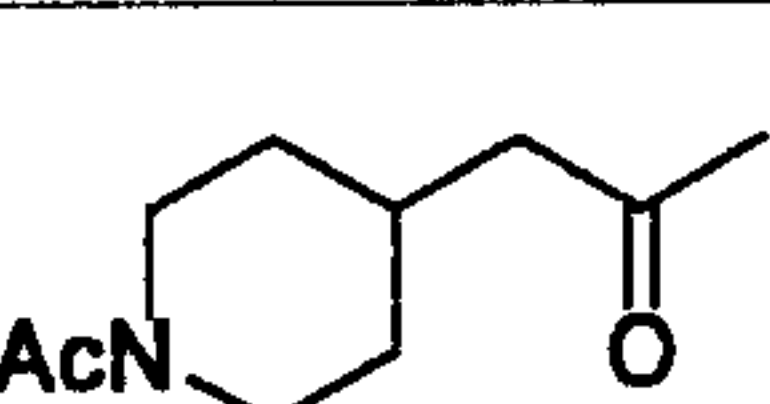
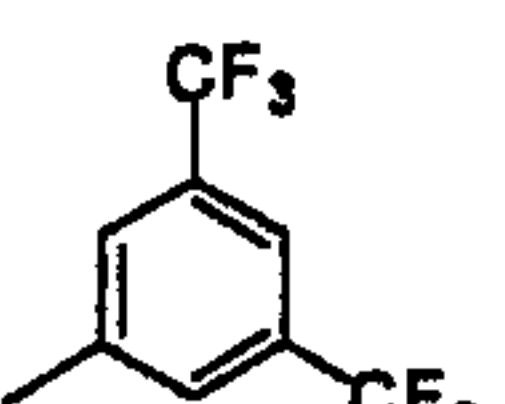
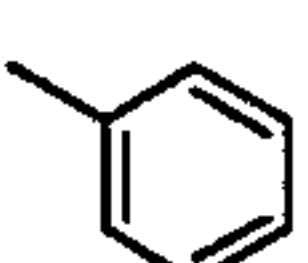
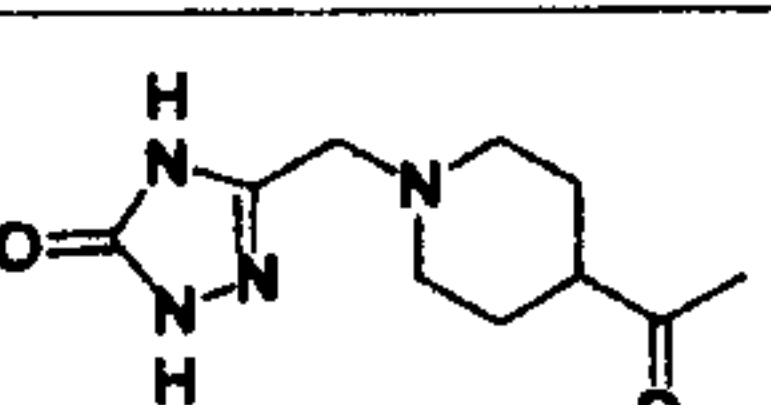
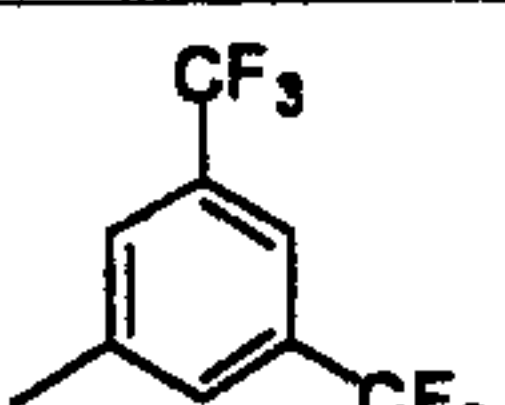
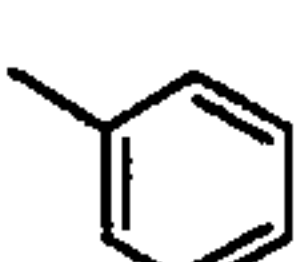
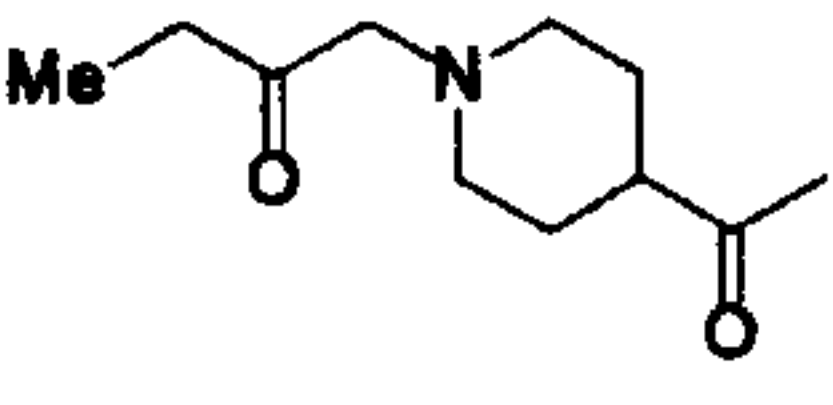
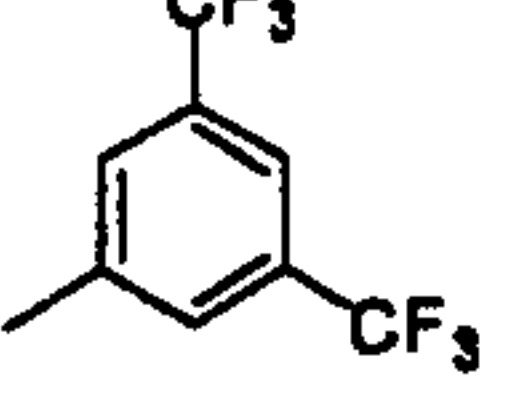
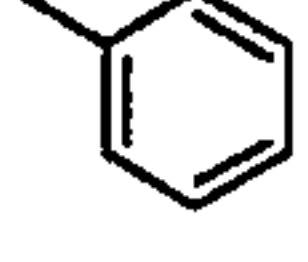
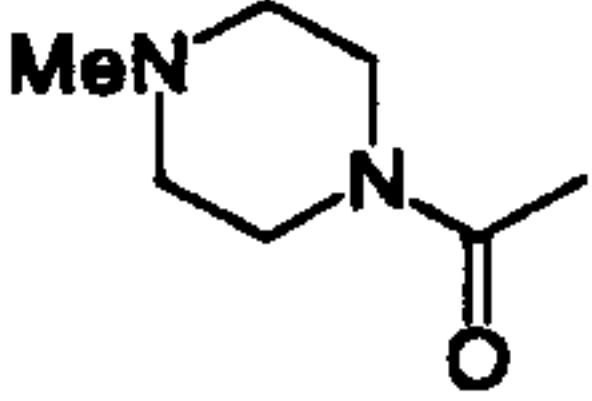
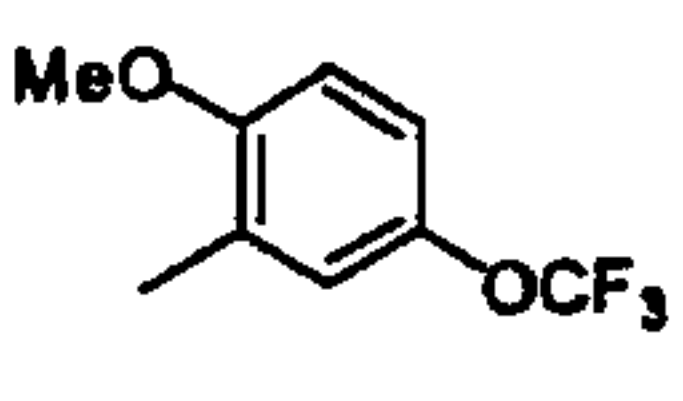
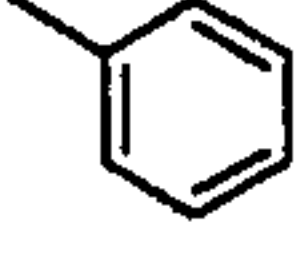
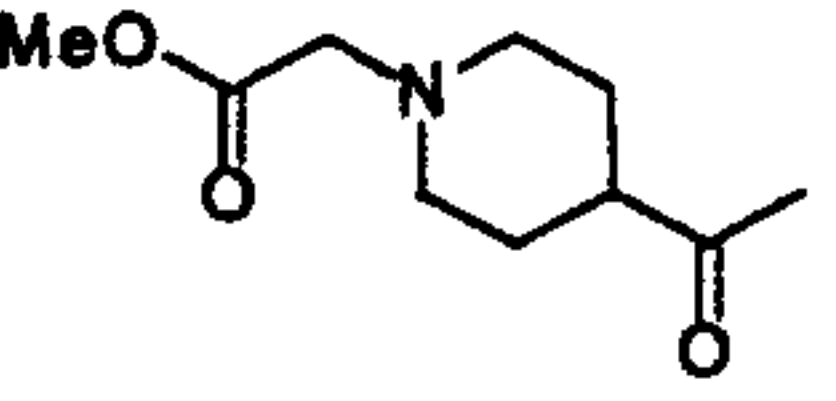
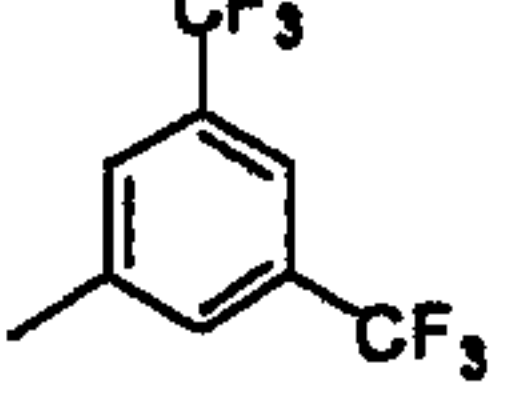
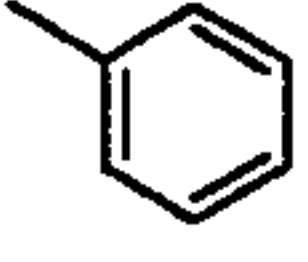
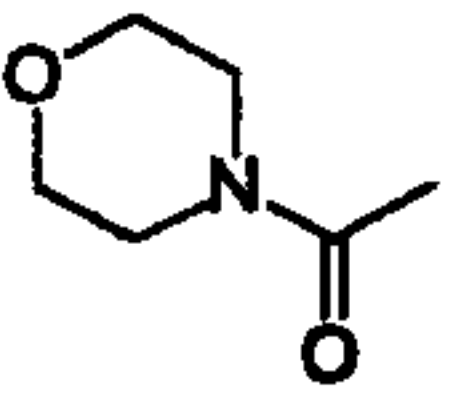
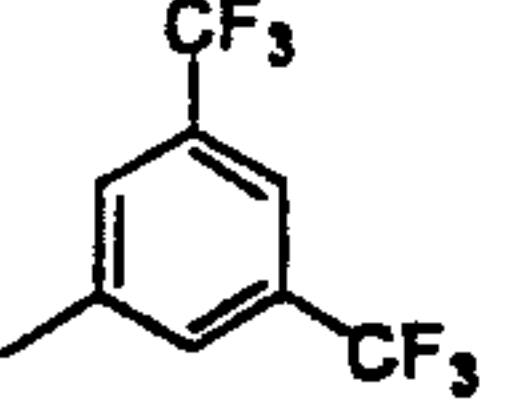
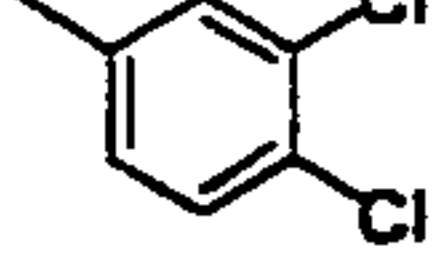
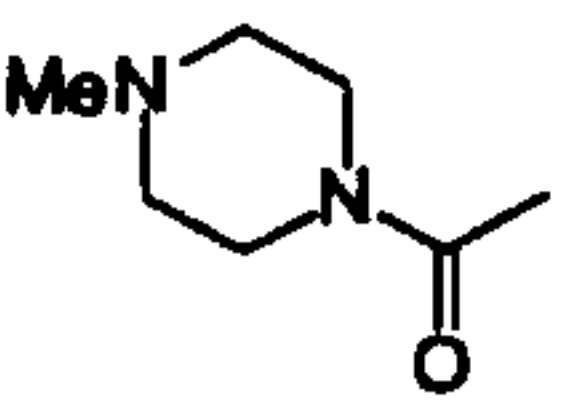
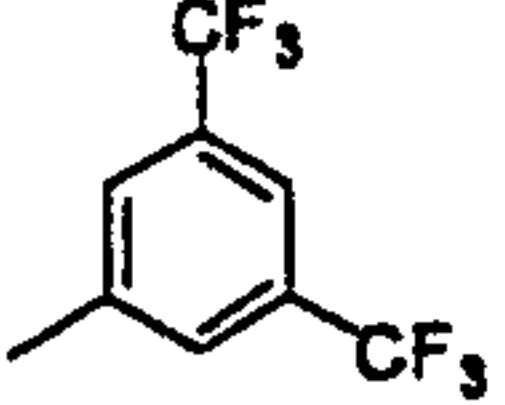
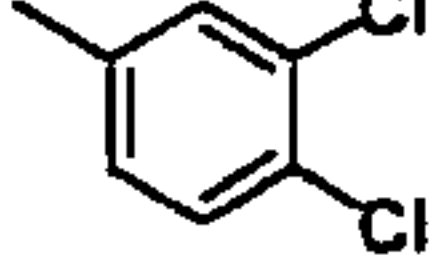
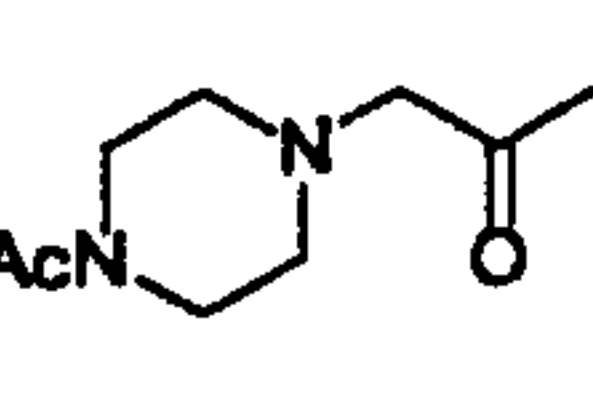
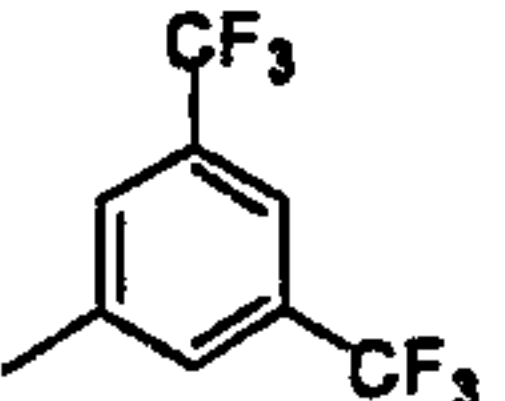
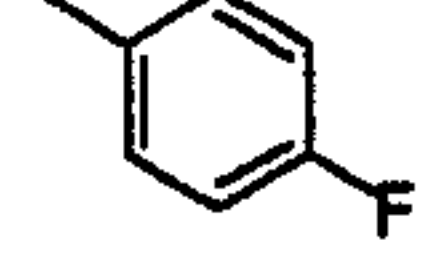
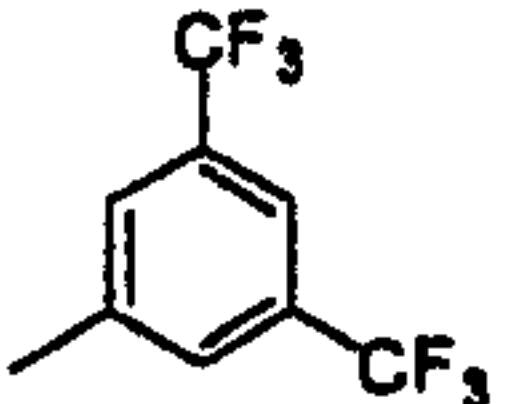
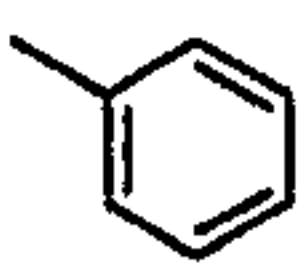
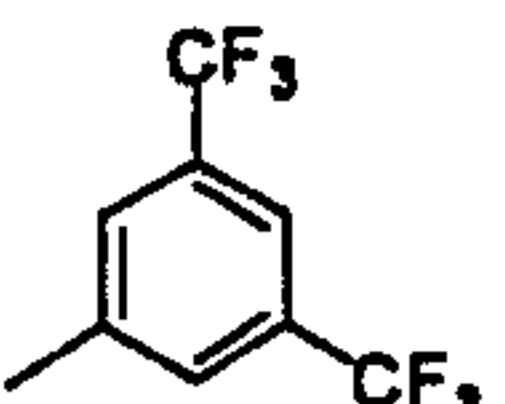
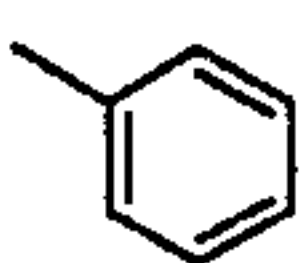
- 240 -

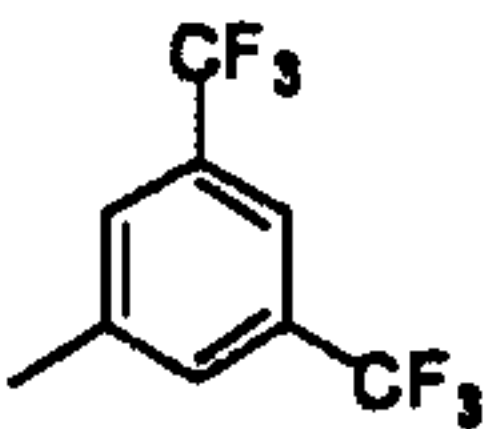
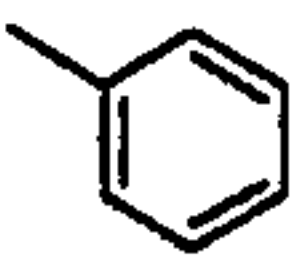
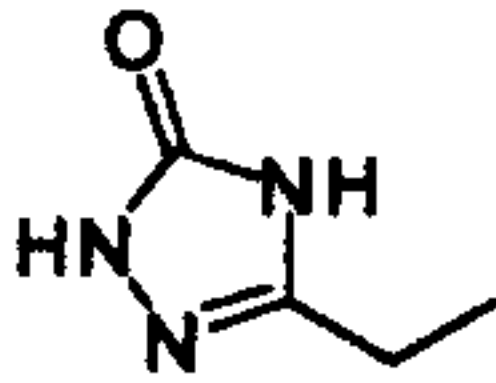
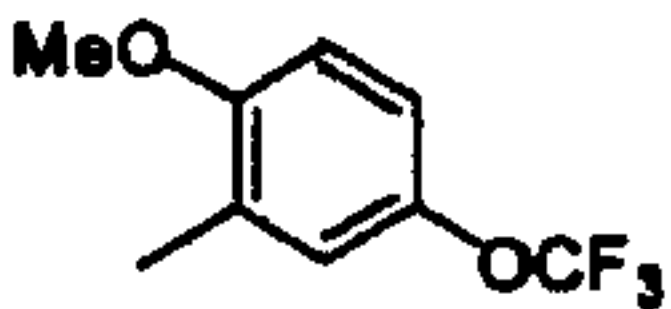
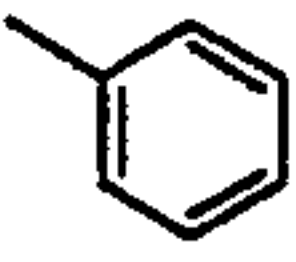
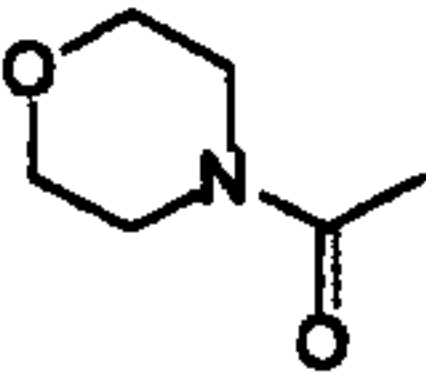
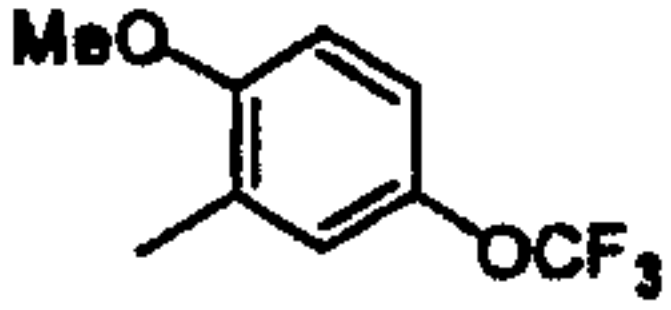
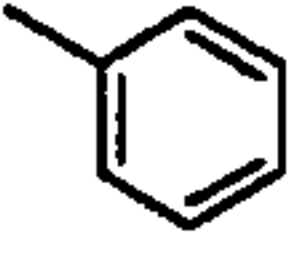
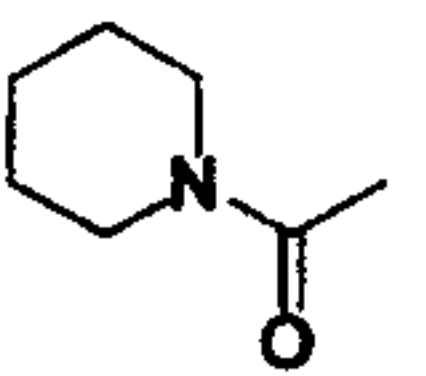
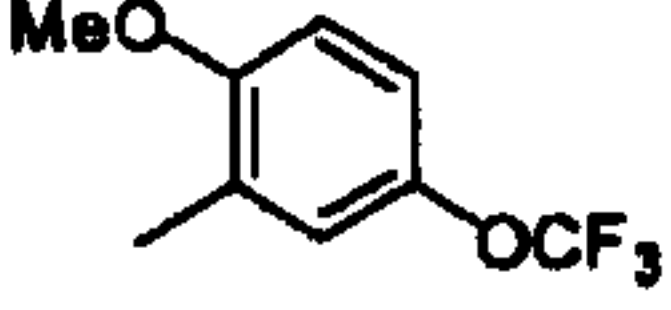
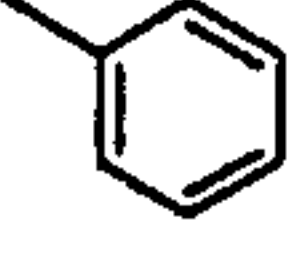
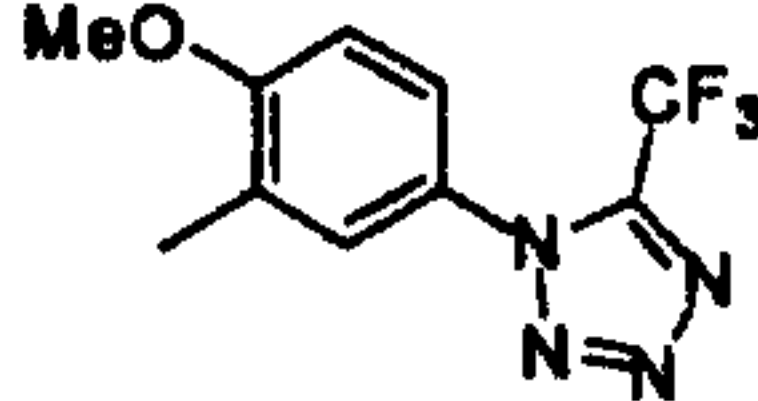
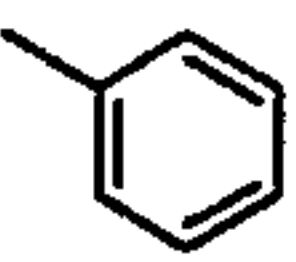
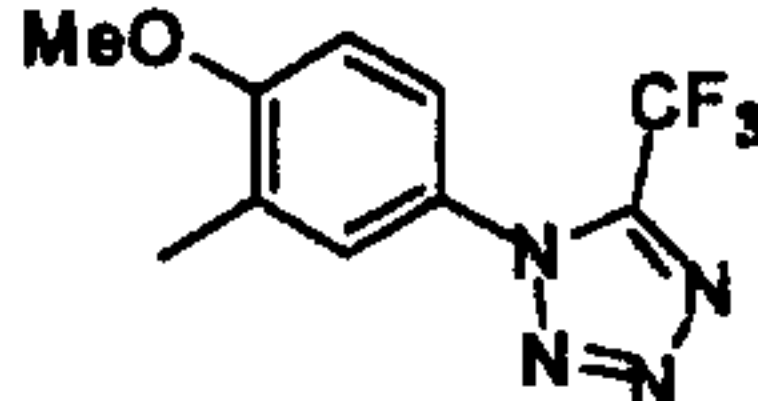
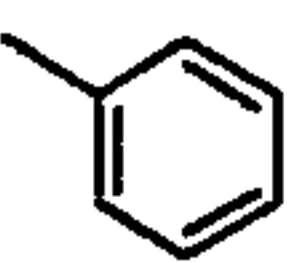
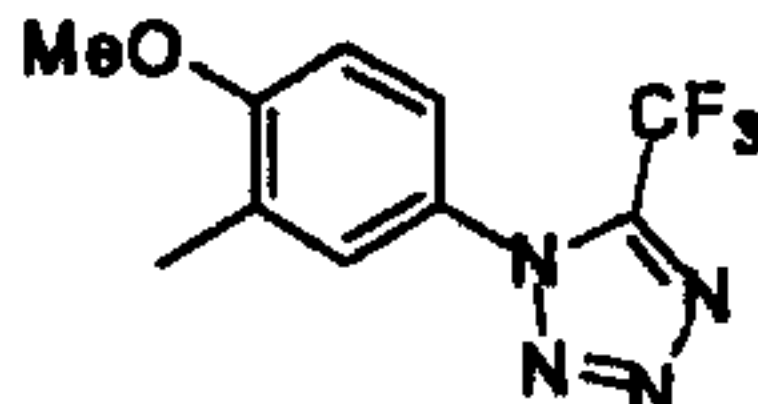
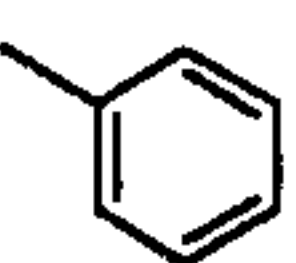
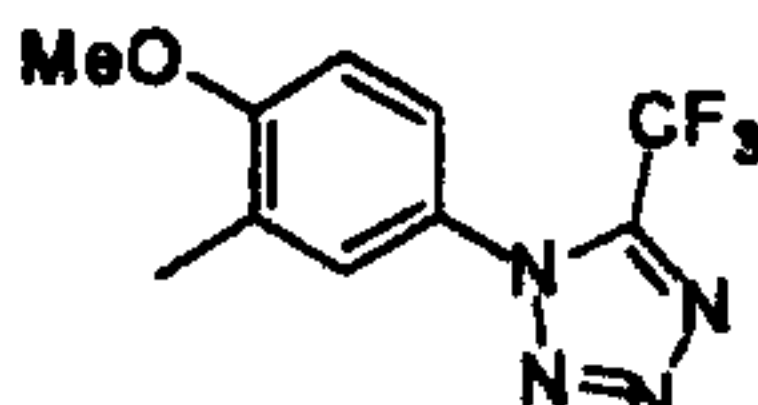
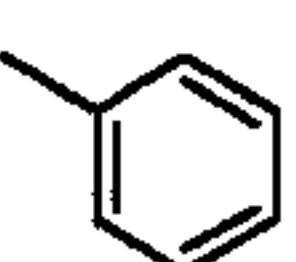
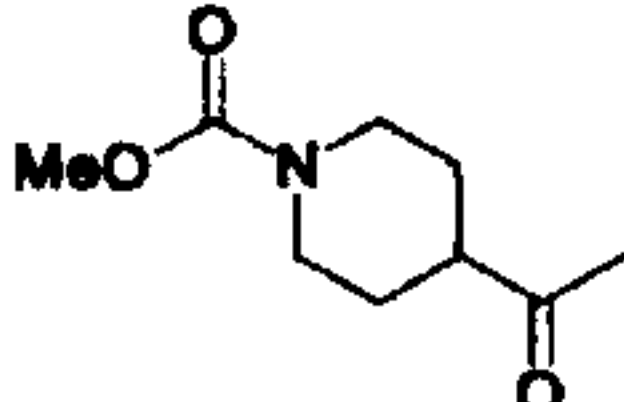
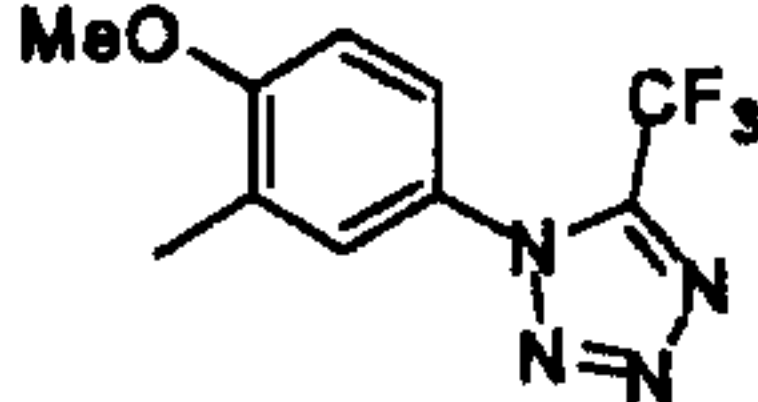
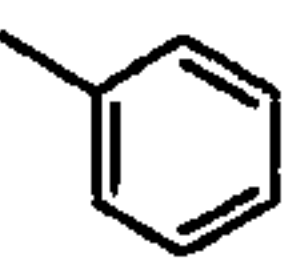
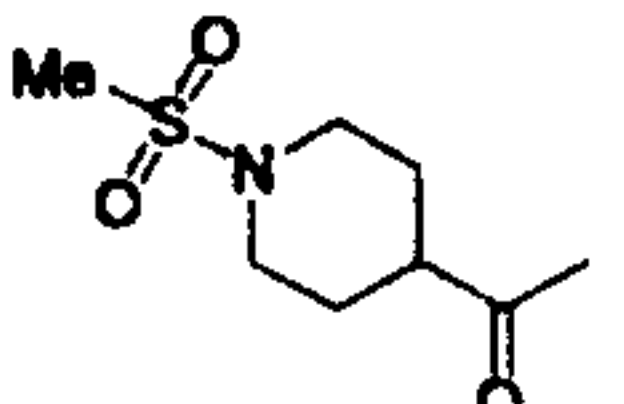
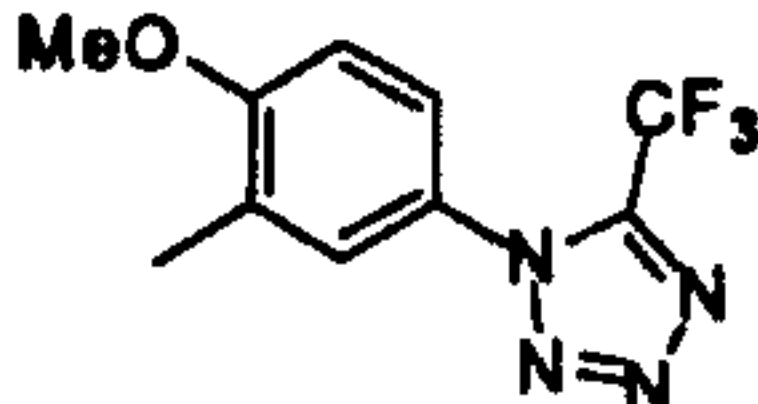
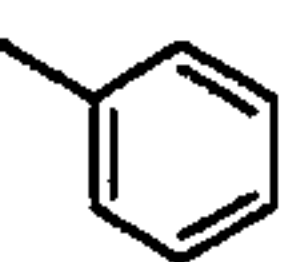
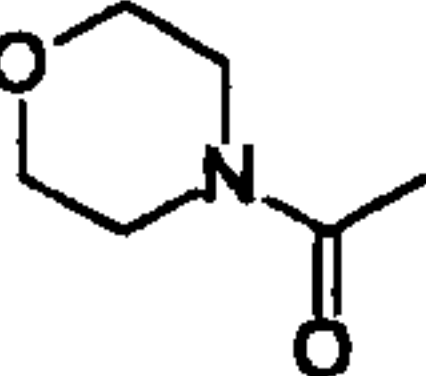
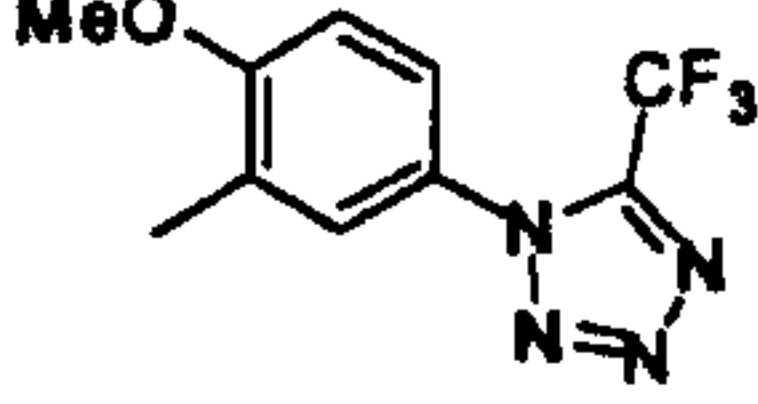
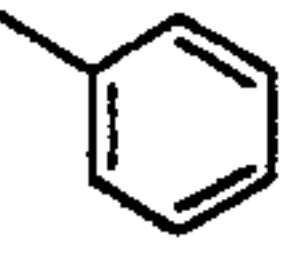
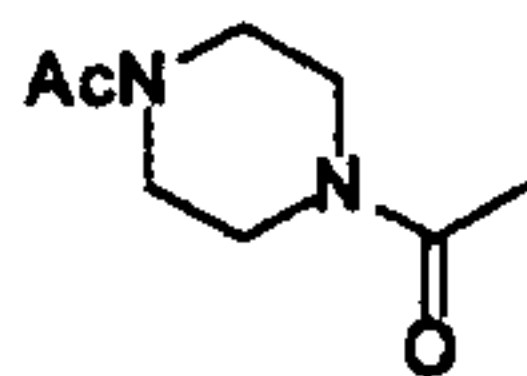
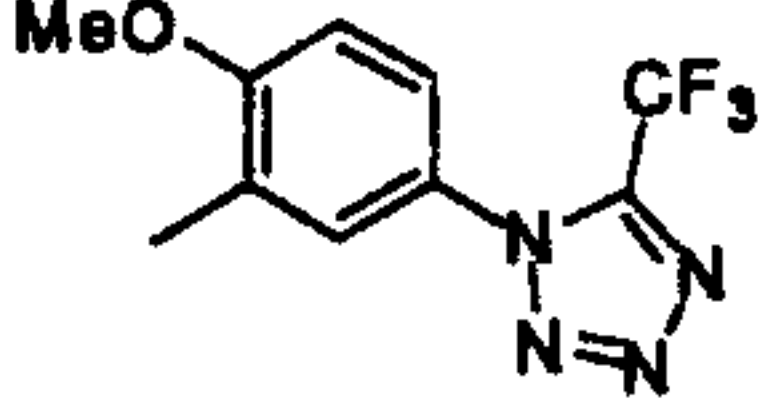
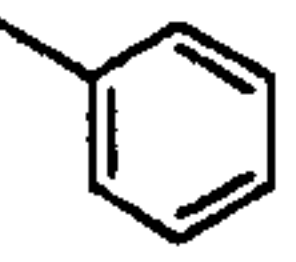
synthesized from the compounds obtained in Examples 1, 441, 493, 509, 527, 566, 609, 701 and 732 as starting materials by reacting and treating in the same manner as in the method described in Example 446 using the respective corresponding
5 halides (carbamoyl chloride, sulfonyl chloride, acid chloride, alkyl halide, aryl halide, acid anhydride derivatives, etc).

[Table 24]



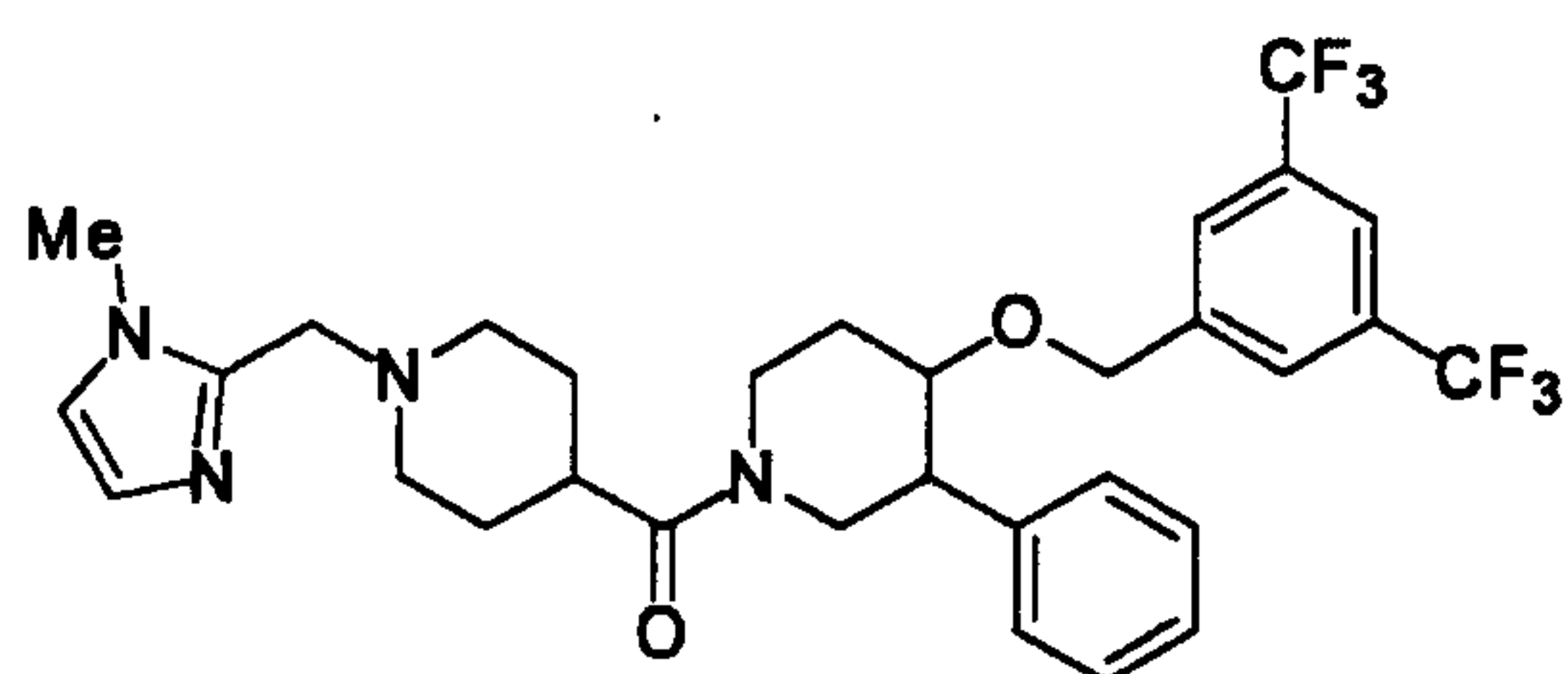
Ex. No.	Stereo-chemistry	R ¹	X	B	C	MS (ESI) (M+H) ⁺
446	(±)-cis		O			515
447	(±)-cis		O			517
448	(±)-cis		O			530
449	(±)-cis		O			511
450	(±)-cis		O			622
452	(±)-cis		O			571
459	(±)-cis		O			633
461	(±)-cis		O			619
462	(±)-cis		O			633
464	(±)-cis		O			605
466	(±)-cis		O			557
478	(±)-cis		O			611

480	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			516
482	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			593
491	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			517
492	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			599
495	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			529
498	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			571
500	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			612
501	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			585
654	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			507
508	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			624
510	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			585
511	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			598
532	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			590
606	(±)- <i>cis</i>	Et	NH			409
607	(±)- <i>cis</i>	MeSO ₂	NH			459

608	(±)- <i>cis</i>	MeOCO	NH			439
652	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			478
655	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			494
656	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			492
731	(±)- <i>cis</i>	Me ₂ NCO	NH			504
748	(±)- <i>cis</i>	Et	NH			461
749	(±)- <i>cis</i>	MeSO ₂	NH			511
750	(±)- <i>cis</i>	MeOCO	NH			491
754	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			602
755	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			622
759	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			546
766	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			587

Example 451

cis-4-[[3,5-Bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-1-[[1-[(1-methyl-1H-imidazol-2-yl)methyl]-4-piperidinyl]carbonyl]-3-phenylpiperidine hydrochloride



To a solution of the compound (100 mg) obtained in Process 2 of Example 69 and 1-methyl-1H-imidazole-2-carbaldehyde (80 mg) in DMF (1 ml)/THF (5 ml), acetic acid
 5 (110 mg) and NaBH(OAc)₃ (154 mg) were added, and the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 13 hours. To the reaction solution, an aqueous saturated sodium bicarbonate solution was added, and the product was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with saturated brine,
 10 dried, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The obtained residue was isolated and purified by silica gel column chromatography (chloroform : methanol = 20 : 1), and treated with 4 N hydrochloric acid/ethyl acetate to obtain the title compound (80 mg) as colorless powder.

15 MS (ESI⁺): 609 (M+H)

Example 463

1-Acetyl-4-[[cis-4-[[3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-3-phenyl-1-piperidinyl]carbonyl]piperazine

20 To a solution of the compound (100 mg) obtained in Example 1 in DMF (5 ml), the compound (70 mg) obtained in Reference Example 24 and potassium carbonate (94 mg) were added, and the reaction mixture was stirred at 120°C for 3 hours. To the reaction solution, water was added, and the
 25 product was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with an aqueous 3% potassium hydrogensulfate solution, an aqueous saturated sodium bicarbonate solution and saturated brine, dried, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The obtained residue was
 30 isolated and purified by silica gel column chromatography (chloroform : methanol = 100 : 1) to obtain the title

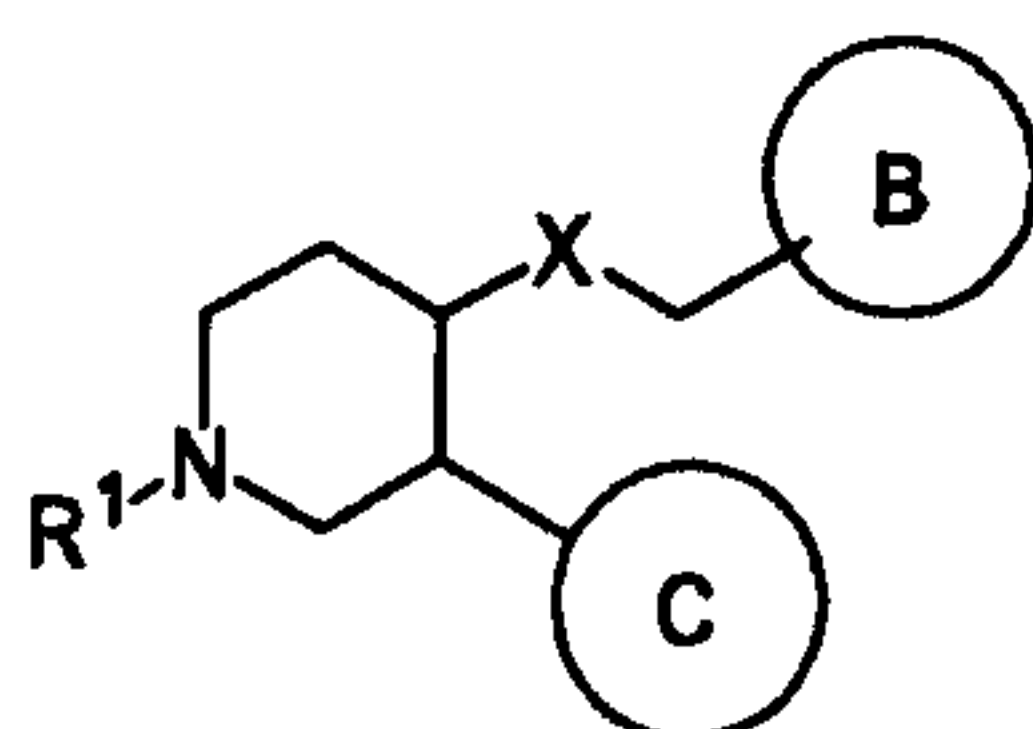
- 245 -

compound (70 mg) as pale yellow oil.

MS (ESI⁺): 558 (M+H)

The compounds of the following Examples were synthesized from the compounds obtained in Examples 1, 609 or 701 as starting materials by reacting and treating in the same manner as in the method described in Example 463 using the compounds obtained in Reference Examples 25 to 27 (the obtained product was treated with hydrochloric acid in Example 772).

10 [Table 25]



Ex. No.	Stereo-chemistry	R ¹	X	B	C	MS (ESI) (M+H) ⁺
463	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			558
654	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			507
659	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			506
735	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			558
746	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			516
772	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			559

Example 509

cis-4-[[3,5-Bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-3-(3,4-dichlorophenyl)piperidine hydrochloride

15 To a solution of the compound (1.70 g) obtained in

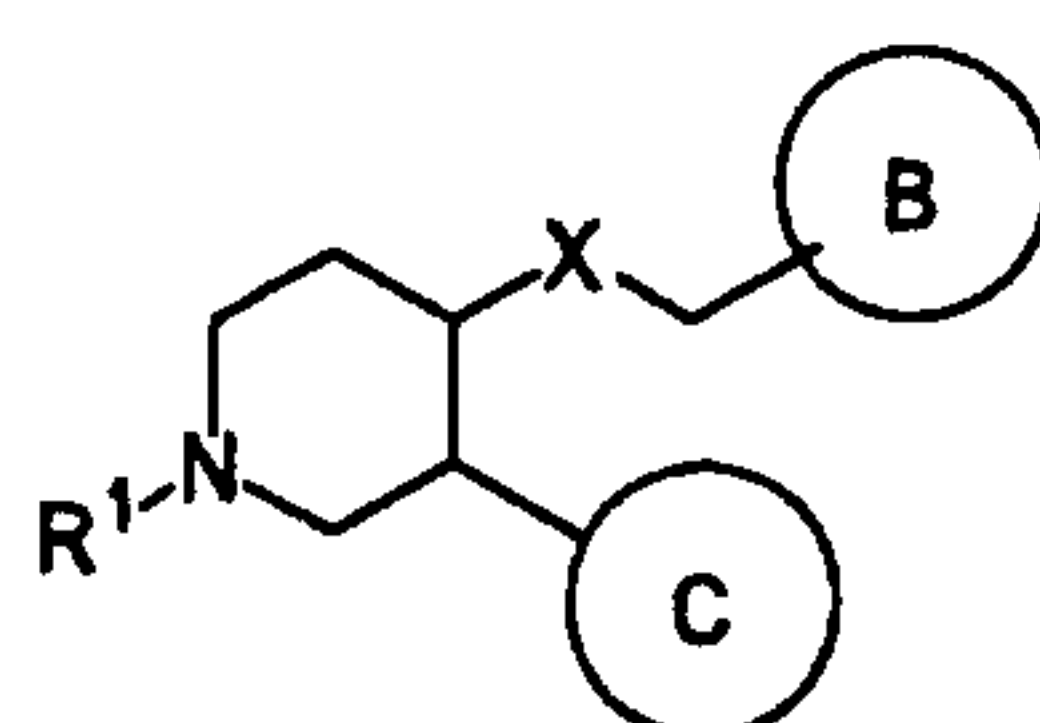
- 246 -

Reference Example 8 in THF (5 ml), trifluoroacetic acid (7 ml) was added at 0°C, and the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 30 minutes. The reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure, and then the residue was
5 dissolved in ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with an aqueous saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate solution and brine, dried, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The obtained residue was treated with a 4 N hydrochloric acid/ethyl acetate solution (0.8 ml) to obtain
10 the title compound as colorless crystals (1.20 g).

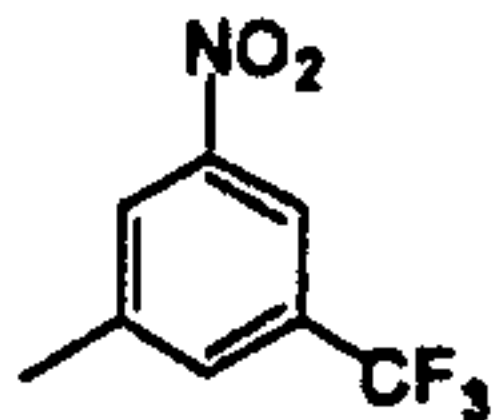
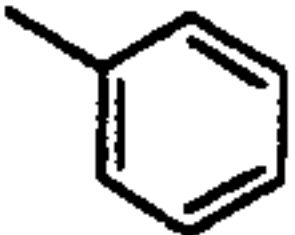
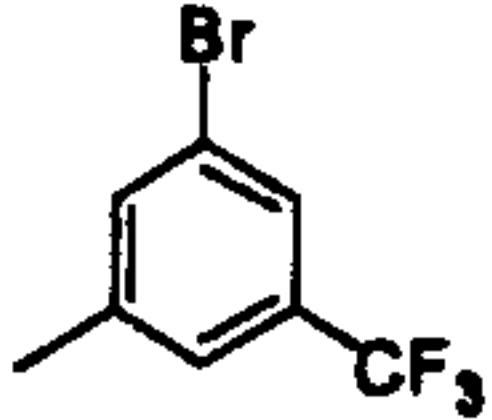
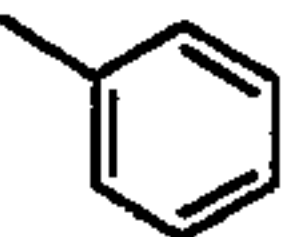
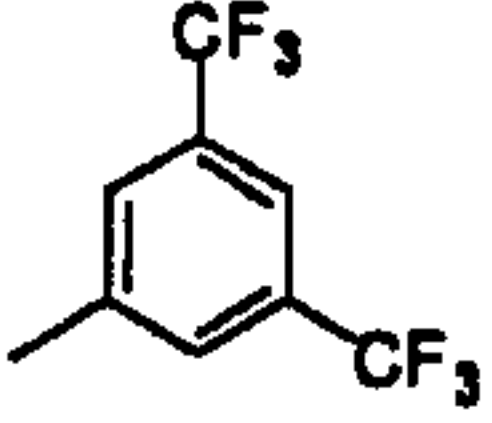
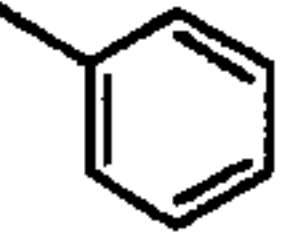
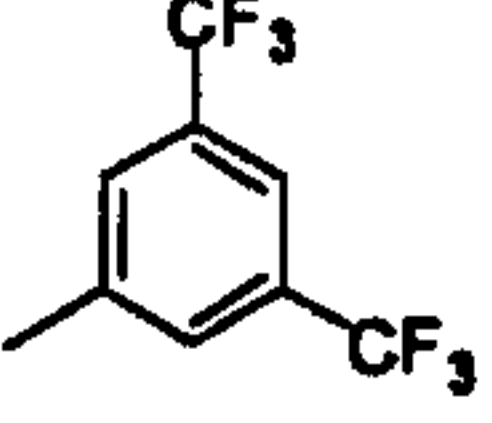
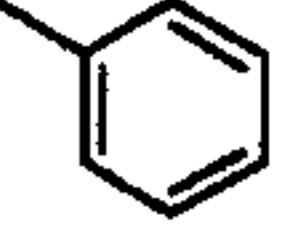
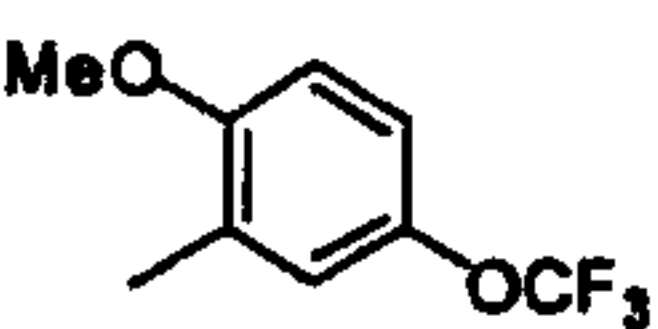
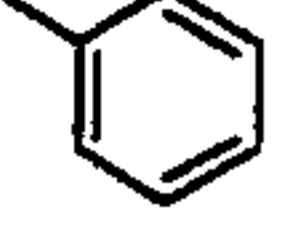
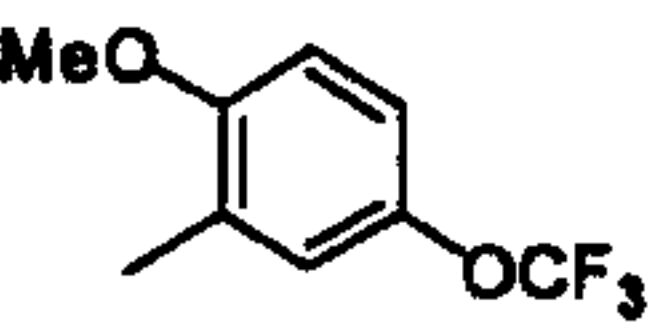
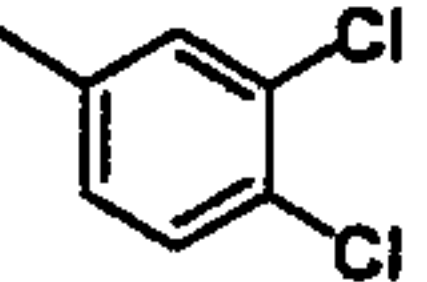
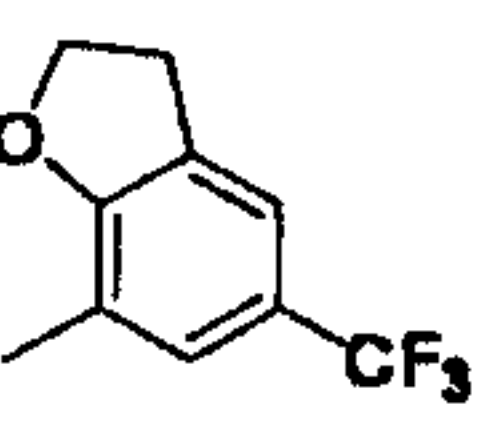
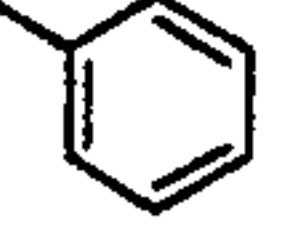
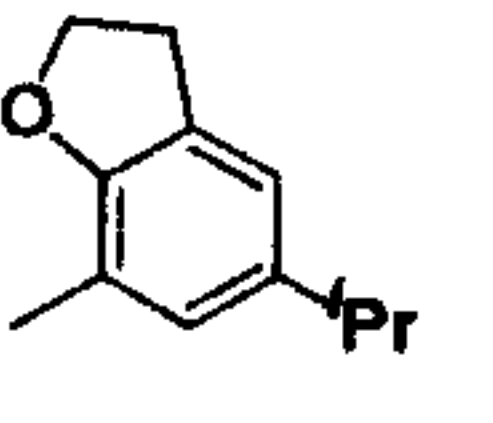
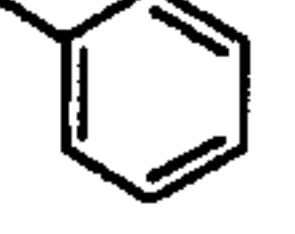
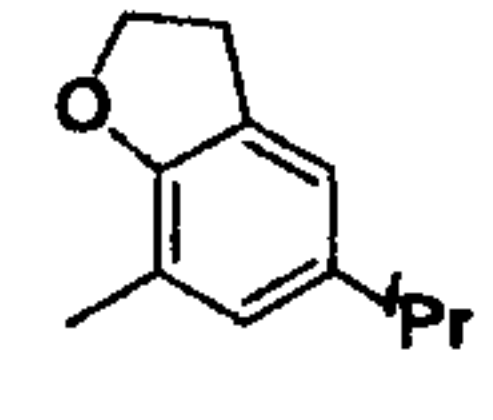
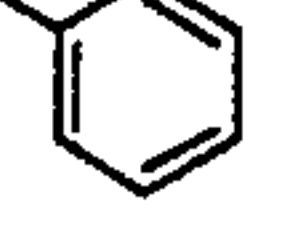
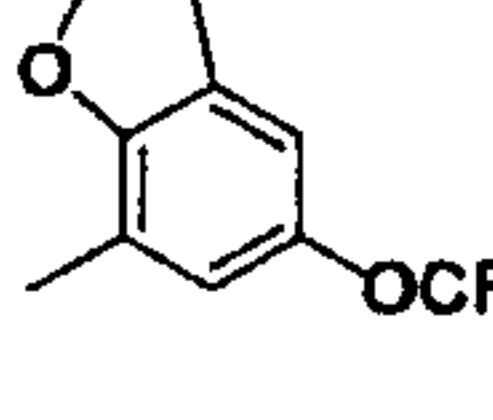
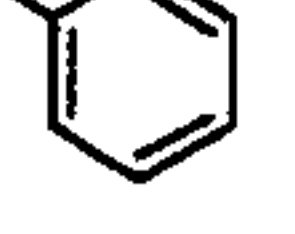
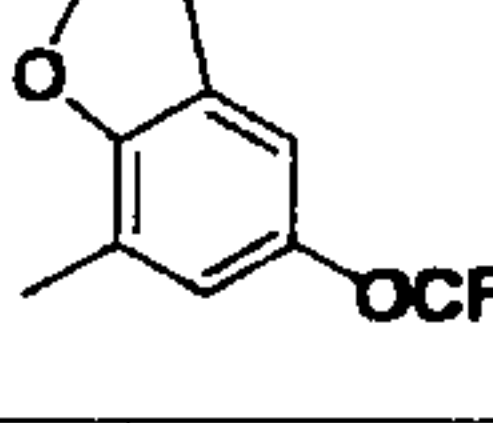
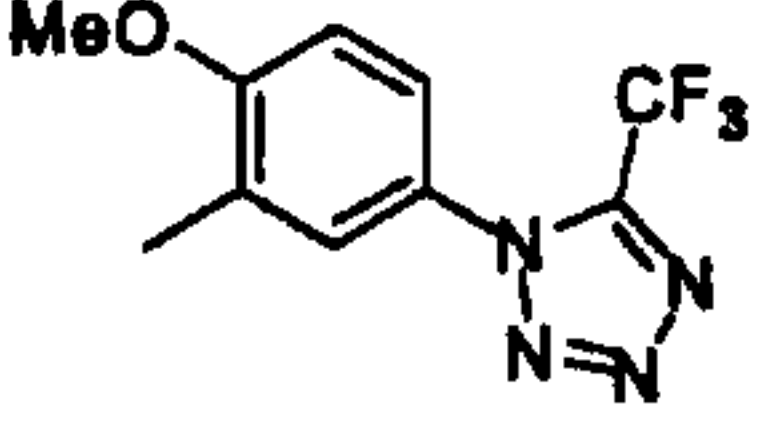
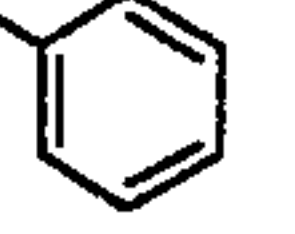
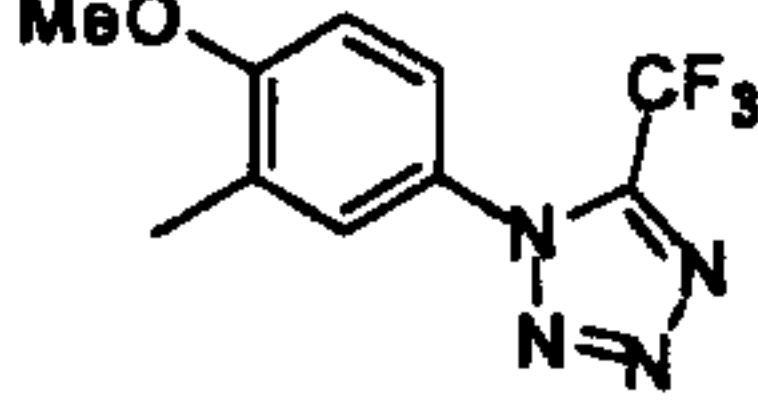
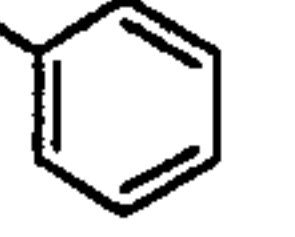
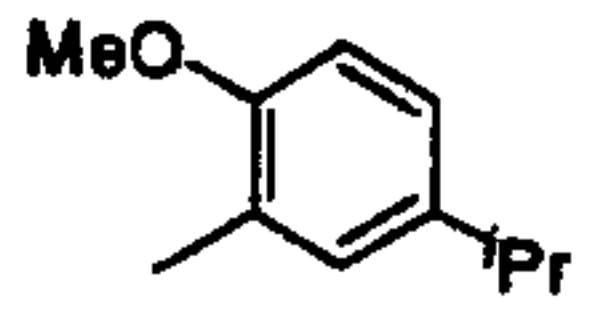
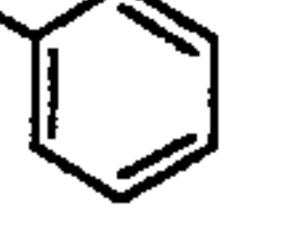
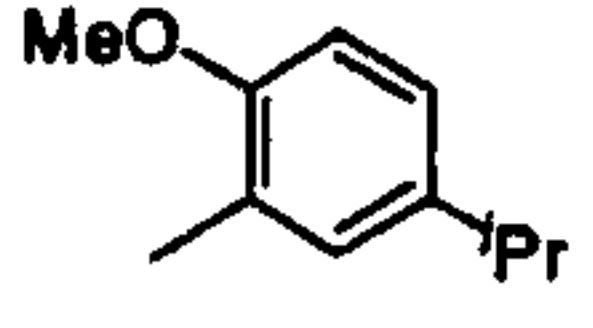
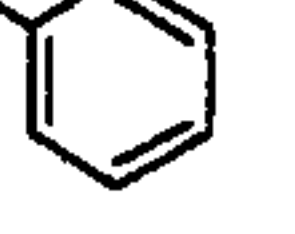
MS (ESI+): 472 (M+H)

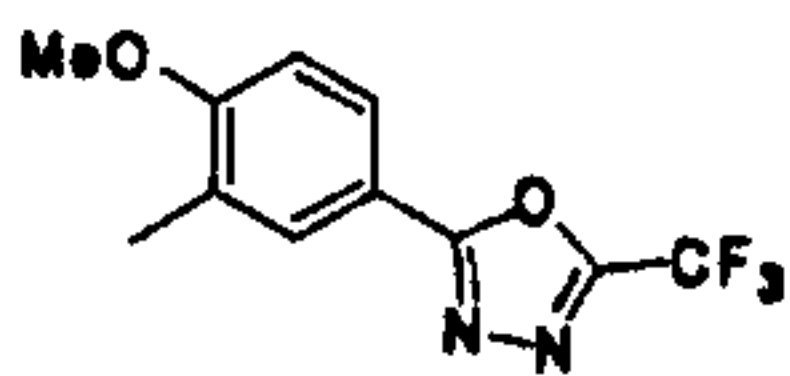
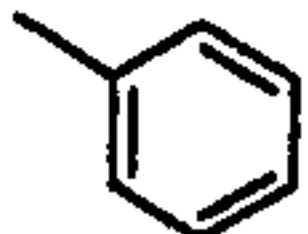
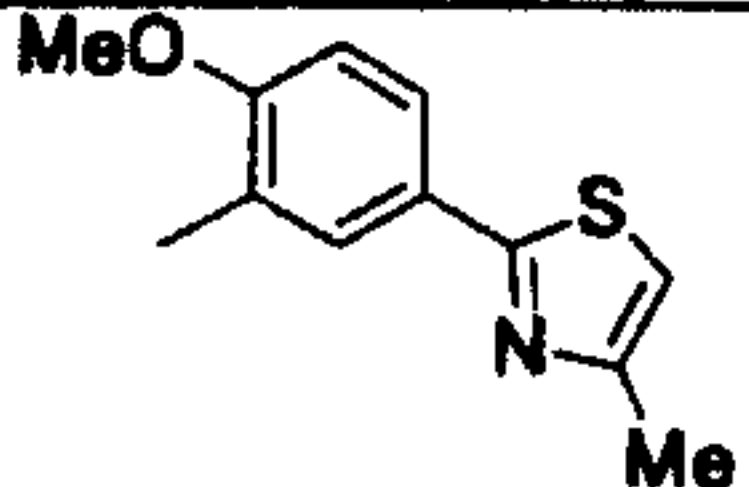
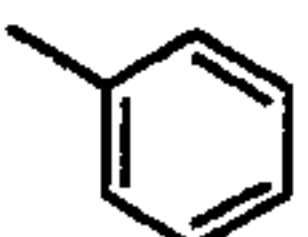
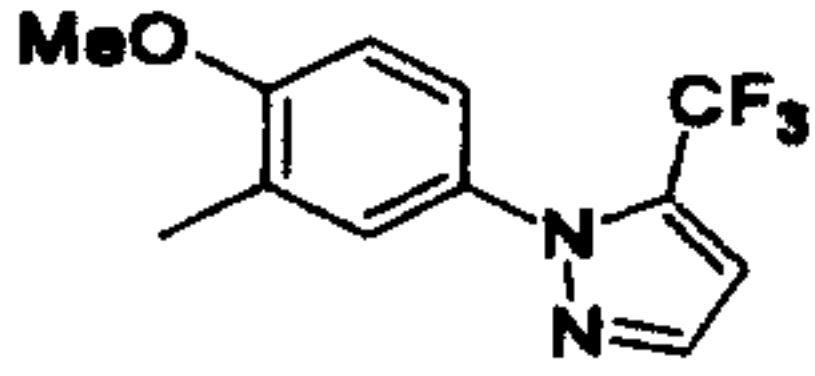
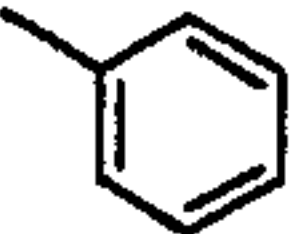
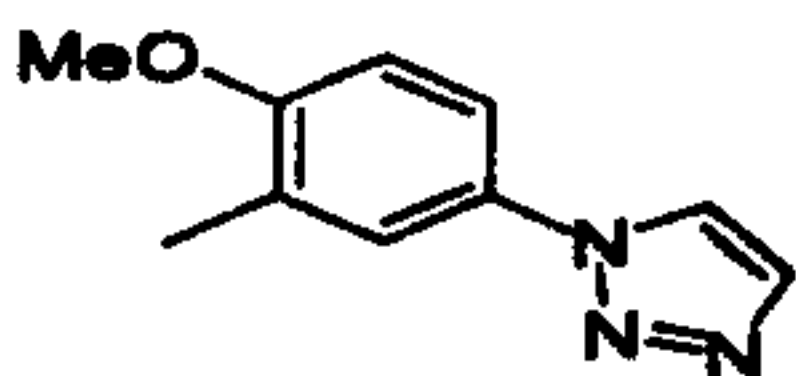
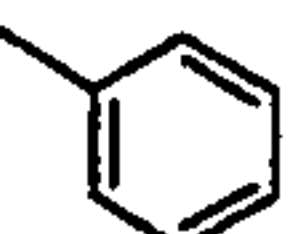
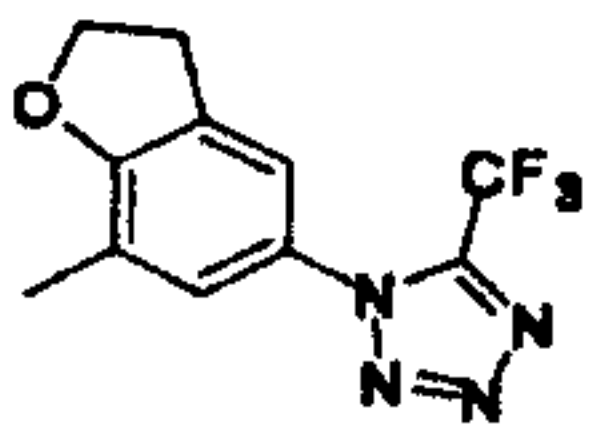
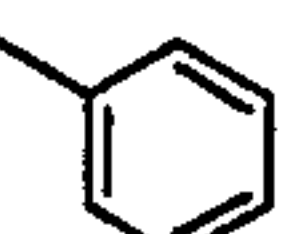
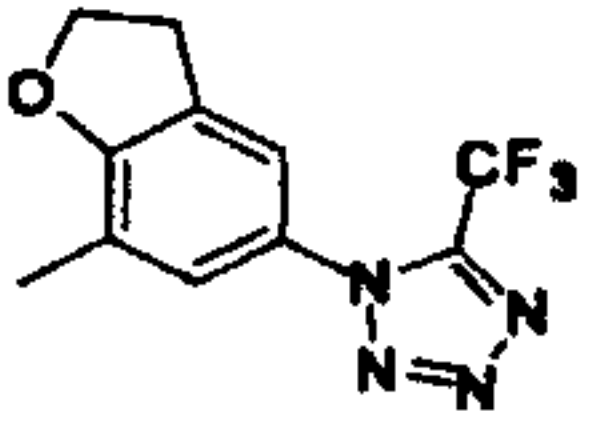
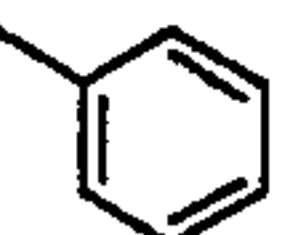
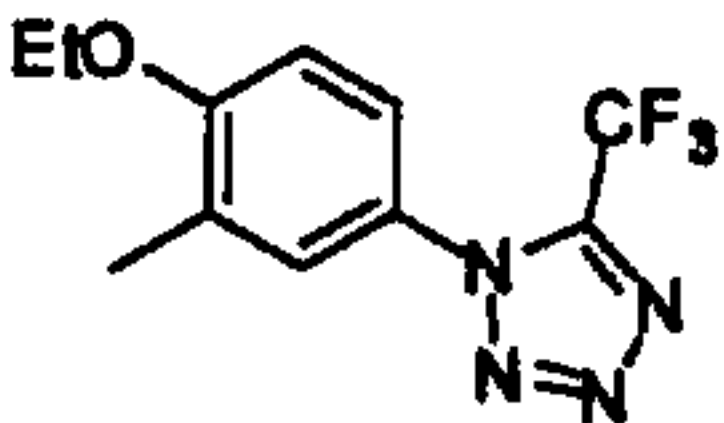
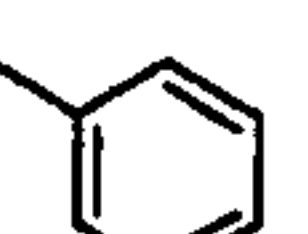
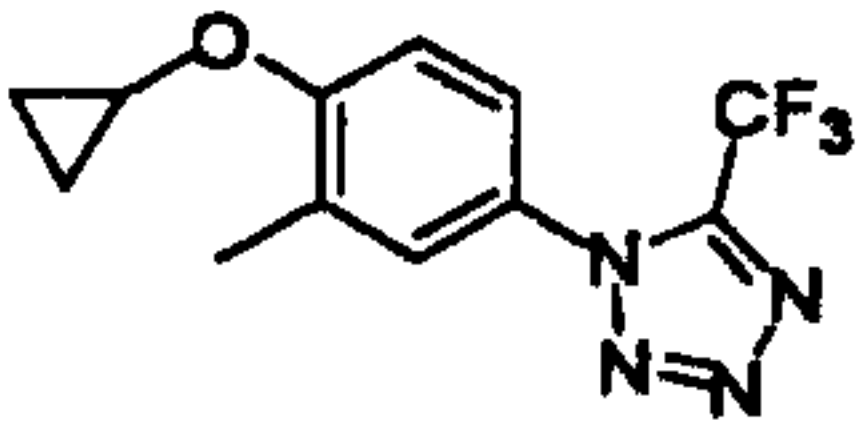
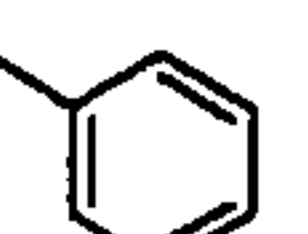
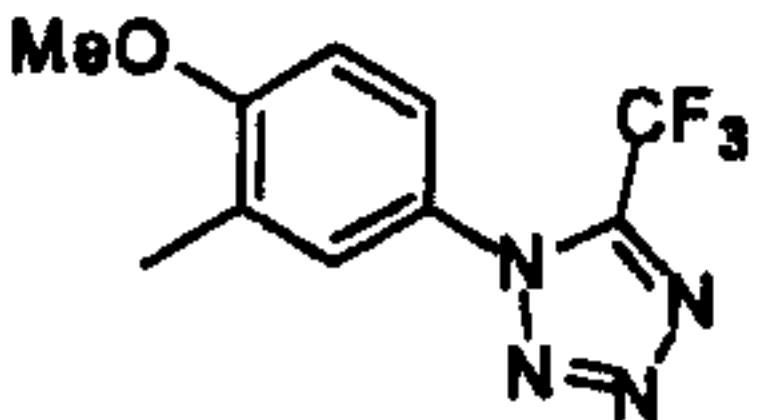
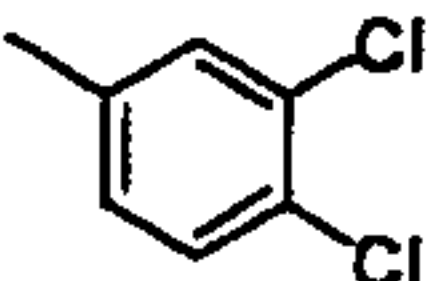
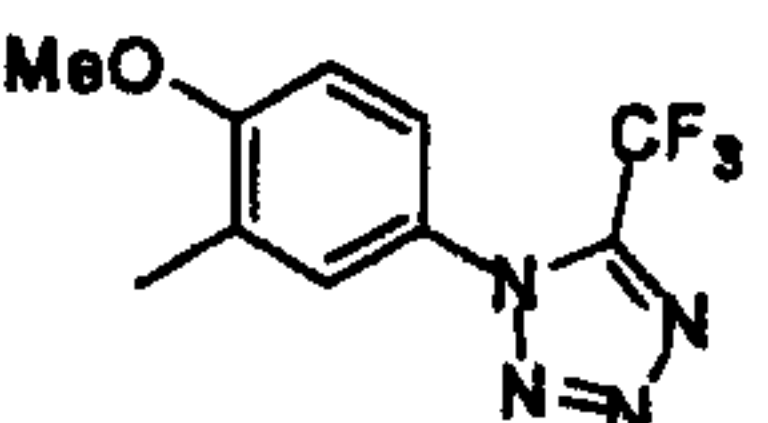
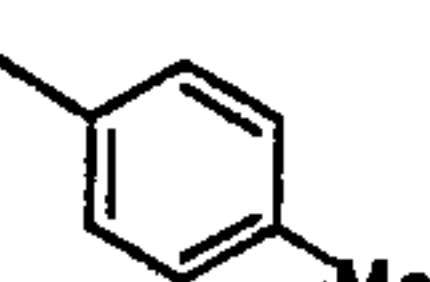
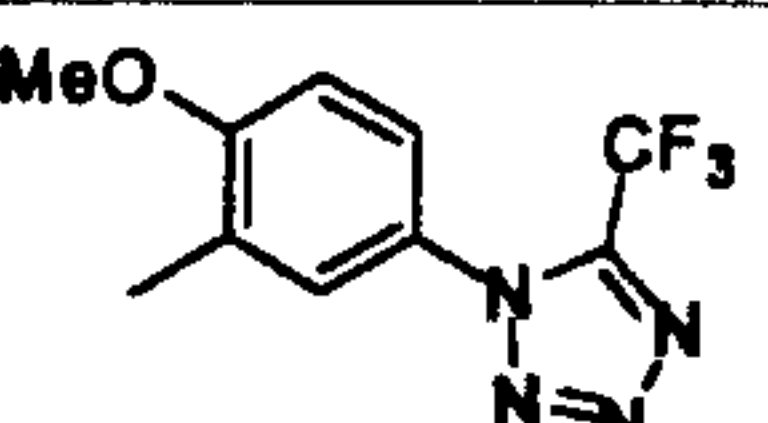
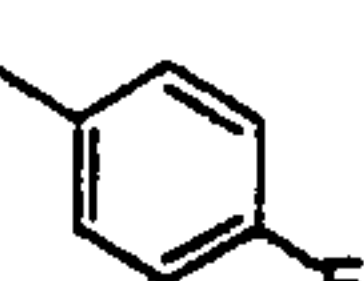
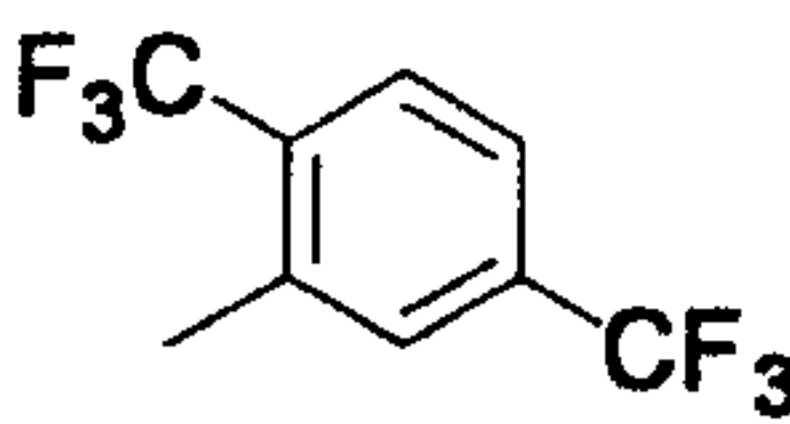
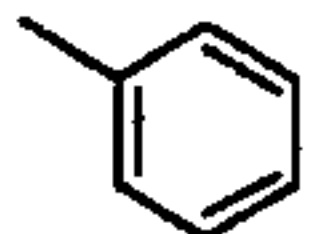
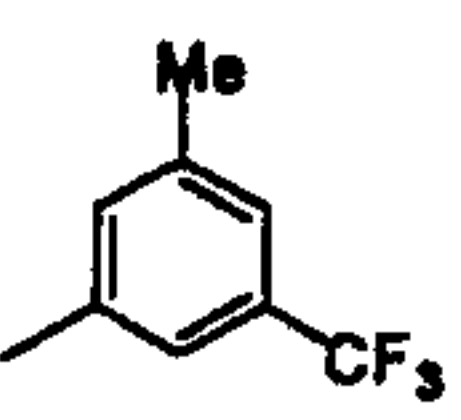
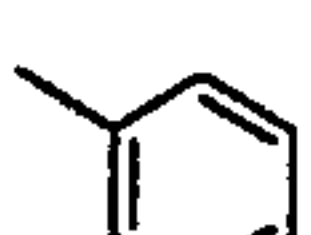
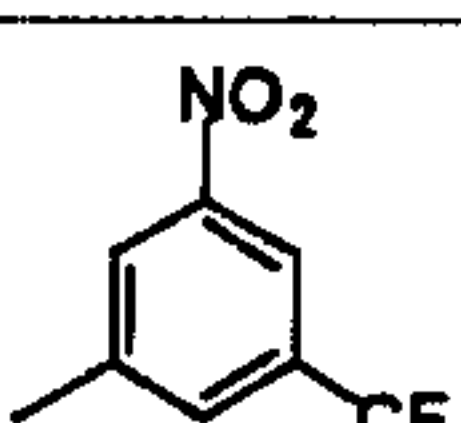
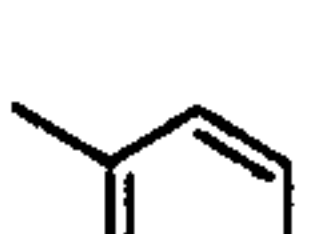
The compounds of the following Examples were synthesized by reacting and treating in the same manner as in the method described in Example 509 using the compounds
15 obtained in Reference Examples 9 to 23 and 35 to 54.

[Table 26]



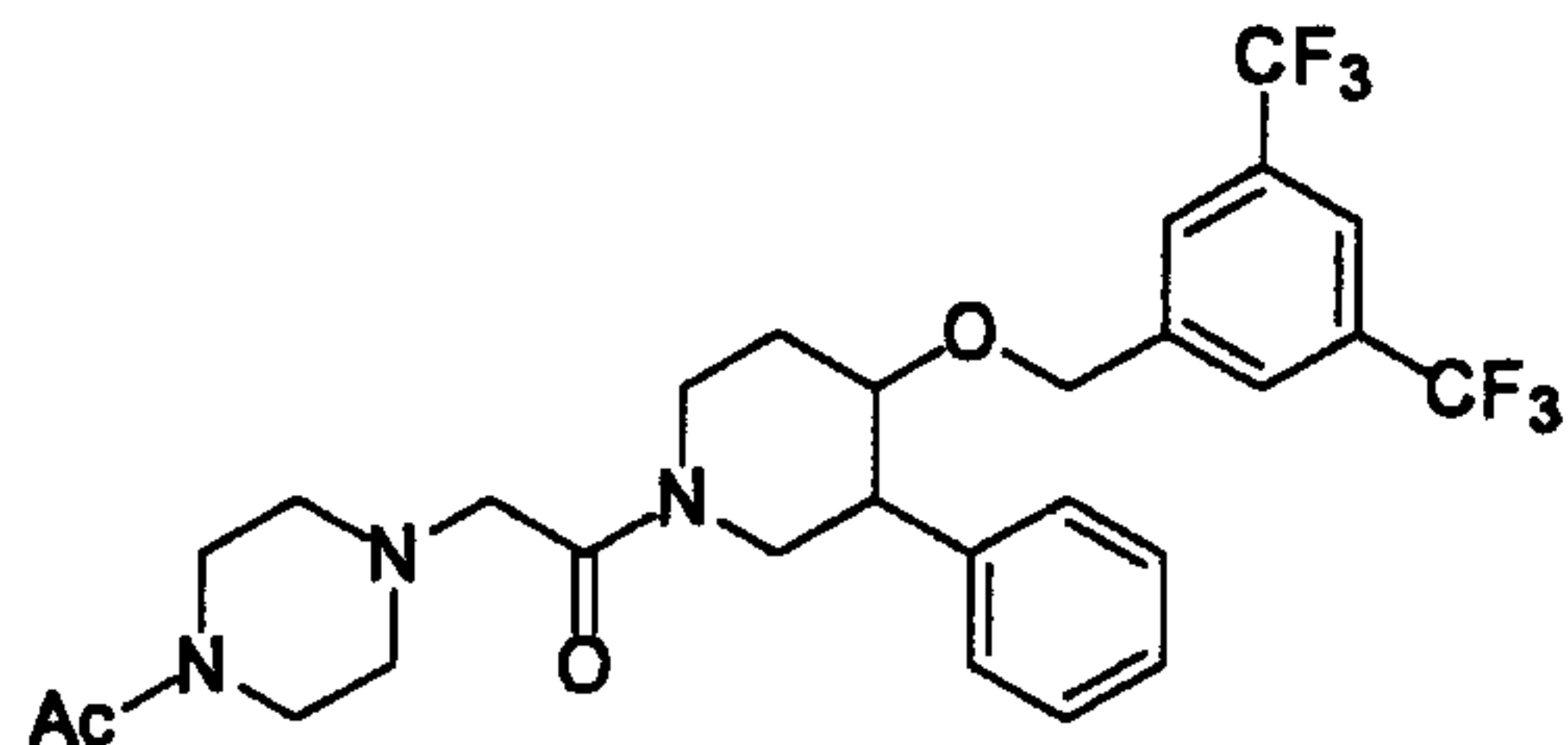
Ex. No.	Stereo-chemistry	R ¹	X	B	C	MS (ESI) (M+H) ⁺
509	(±)- <i>cis</i>	H	O			472
519	(±)- <i>cis</i>	H	O			418
521	(±)- <i>cis</i>	H	O			418
524	(±)- <i>cis</i>	H	O			422
527	(±)- <i>cis</i>	H	O			422
534	(±)- <i>cis</i>	H	O			436
537	(±)- <i>cis</i>	H	O			405
539	(±)- <i>cis</i>	H	O			382
541	(±)- <i>cis</i>	H	O			336
543	(±)- <i>cis</i>	H	O			296
545	(±)- <i>cis</i>	H	O			354
547	(±)- <i>cis</i>	H	O			354

549	(±)- <i>cis</i>	H	O			381
553	(±)- <i>cis</i>	H	O			414, 416
566	(±)- <i>cis</i>	H	NH			403
567	(±)- <i>trans</i>	H	NH			403
609	(±)- <i>cis</i>	H	NH			381
663	(±)- <i>cis</i>	H	NH			449
690	(±)- <i>cis</i>	H	NH			377
691	(±)- <i>cis</i>	H	NH			351
692	(±)- <i>trans</i>	H	NH			351
696	(±)- <i>cis</i>	H	NH			393
697	(±)- <i>trans</i>	H	NH			393
701	(±)- <i>cis</i>	H	NH			433
702	(±)- <i>trans</i>	H	NH			433
703	(±)- <i>cis</i>	H	NH			339
704	(±)- <i>trans</i>	H	NH			339

708	(±)- <i>cis</i>	H	NH			433
711	(±)- <i>cis</i>	H	NH			394
714	(±)- <i>cis</i>	H	NH			431
718	(±)- <i>cis</i>	H	NH			364
720	(±)- <i>cis</i>	H	NH			445
721	(±)- <i>trans</i>	H	NH			445
724	(±)- <i>cis</i>	H	NH			447
726	(±)- <i>cis</i>	H	NH			459
794	(±)- <i>cis</i>	H	NH			575
795	(±)- <i>cis</i>	H	NH			447
796	(±)- <i>cis</i>	H	NH			451
799	(±)- <i>cis</i>	H	O			404
800	(±)- <i>cis</i>	H	O			350
801	(±)- <i>cis</i>	H	O			381

- 250 -

1-Acetyl-4-(2-(cis-4-((3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl)oxy)-3-phenyl-1-piperidinyl)-2-oxoethyl)piperazine hydrochloride

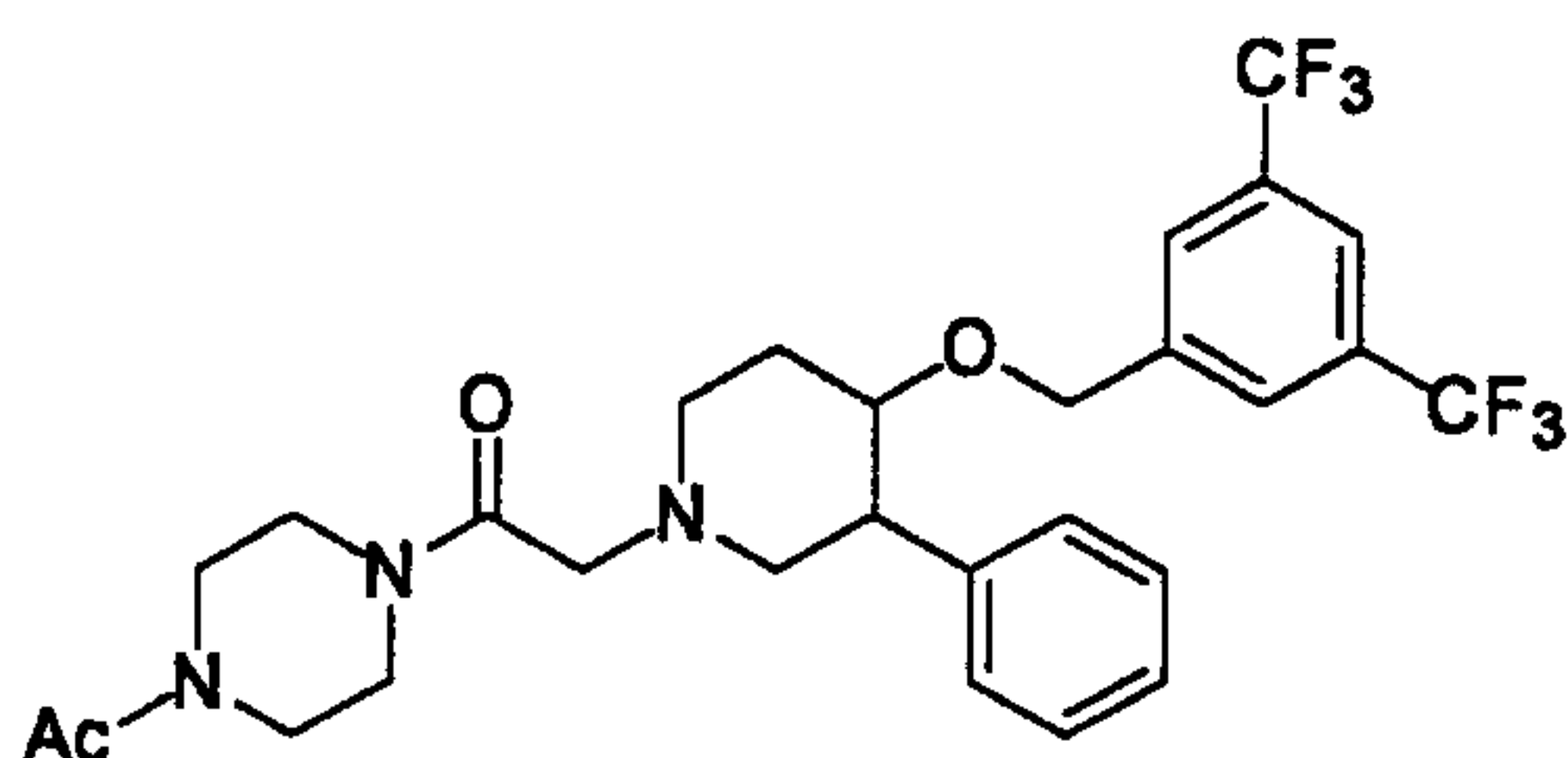


To a solution of the compound (175 mg) obtained in Example 1 and diisopropylethylamine (113 mg) in DMF (5 ml), chloroacetyl chloride (50 mg) was added at room temperature, and the reaction mixture was stirred for 1 hour. To the reaction solution, N-ethyldiisopropylamine (113 mg), sodium iodide (180 mg) and 1-acetylpiperazine (102 mg) were added and the reaction mixture was further stirred for 5 hours. To the reaction solution, water was added, and the product was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine, dried, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The obtained residue was treated with 4 N hydrochloric acid/ethyl acetate to obtain the title compound (150 mg) as colorless powder.

MS (ESI+): 572 (M+H).

Example 504

1-Acetyl-4-((cis-4-((3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl)oxy)-3-phenyl-1-piperidinyl)acetyl)piperazine hydrochloride



To a solution of 1-acetylpiperazine (38 mg) and diisopropylethylamine (45 mg) in DMF (5 ml), chloroacetyl chloride (34 mg) was added at room temperature, and the reaction mixture was stirred for 30 minutes. To the reaction

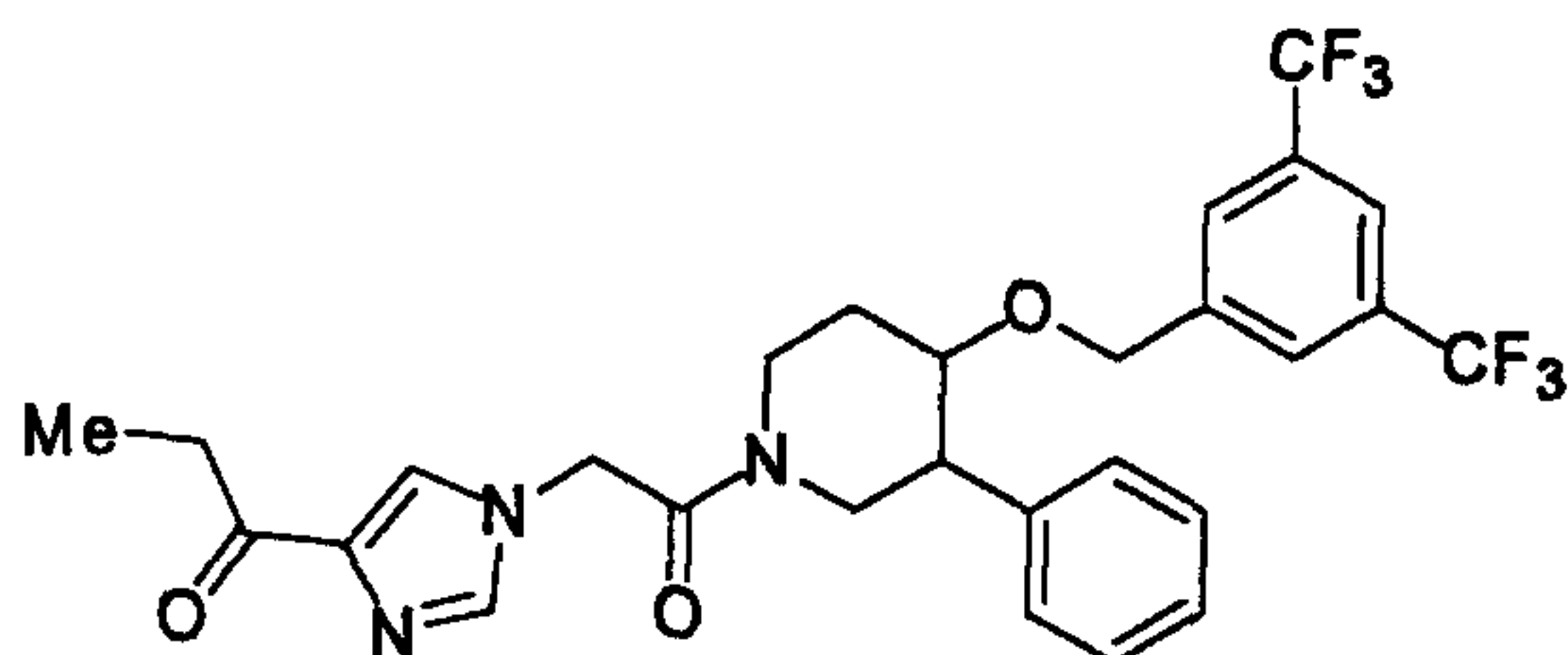
- 251 -

solution, N-ethyldiisopropylamine (90 mg), sodium iodide (103 mg) and the compound (100 mg) obtained in Example 1 were added and the reaction mixture was further stirred for 4 hours. To the reaction solution, water was added, and the product was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine, dried, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The obtained residue was treated with 4 N hydrochloric acid/ethyl acetate to obtain the title compound (96 mg) as pale brown powder.

MS (ESI+): 572 (M+H).

Example 505

1-[1-[2-[cis-4-[[3,5-Bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-3-phenyl-1-piperidinyl]-2-oxoethyl]-1H-imidazol-4-yl]-1-propanone

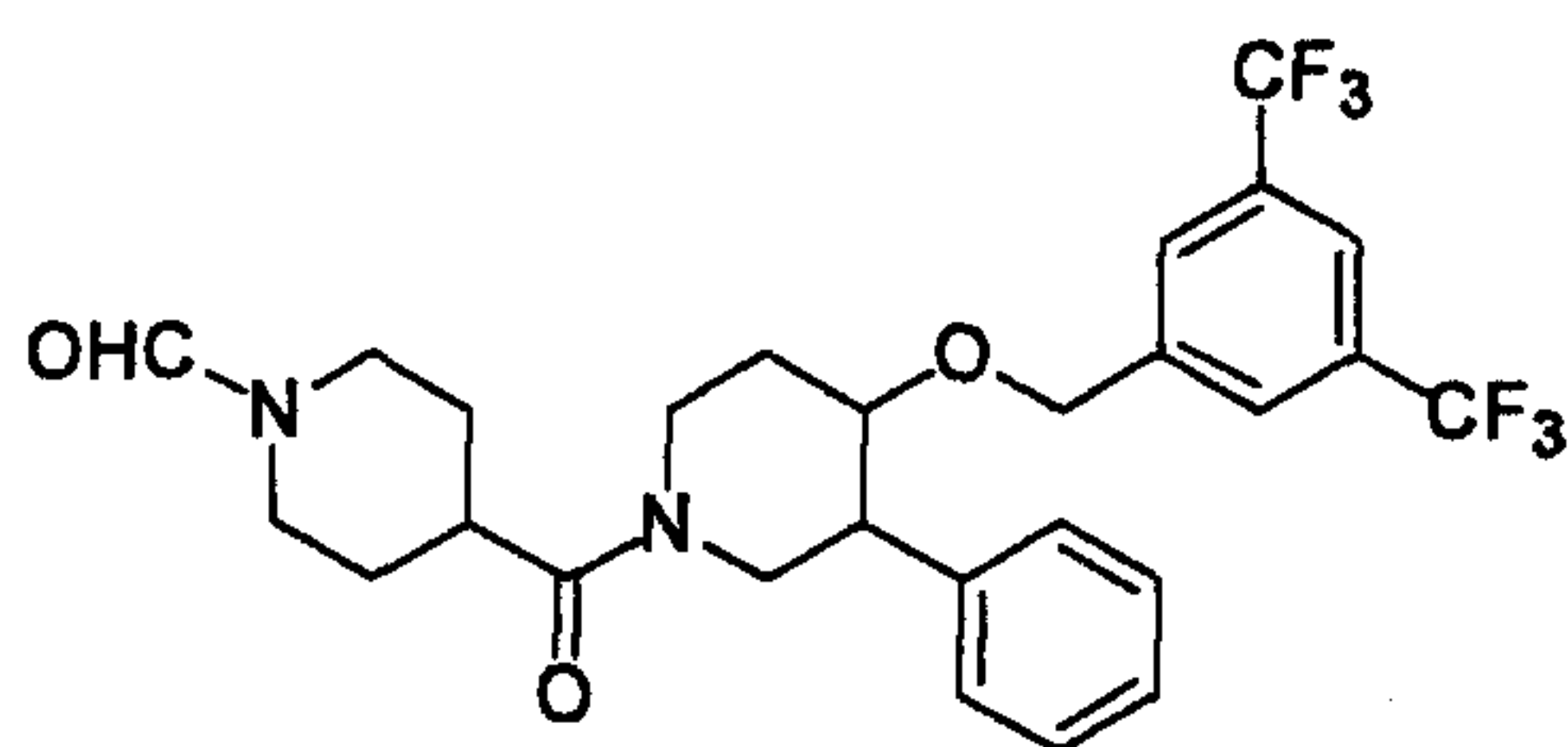


The compound obtained in Example 1 and (1H-imidazol-4-yl)-1-propanone were reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 503 to obtain the title compound.

MS (ESI+): 568 (M+H).

Example 506

4-((cis-4-((3,5-Bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl)oxy)-3-phenyl-1-piperidinyl)carbonyl)-1-piperidine carbaldehyde



To a solution of the compound (102 mg) obtained in Process 2 of Example 69 in acetonitrile (8 ml), ammonium

- 252 -

formate (876 mg) was added, and the reaction mixture was stirred for 60 hours under boiling reflux conditions. To the reaction solution, saturated brine was added, and the product was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was
5 dried, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The obtained residue was isolated and purified by silica gel column chromatography (chloroform : methanol = 10 : 1) to obtain the title compound (44 mg) as colorless amorphous.

10 MS (ESI+): 543 (M+H).

Example 512

cis-4-[[3,5-Bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]oxy]-3-(3,4-dichlorophenyl)-1-phenylpiperidine

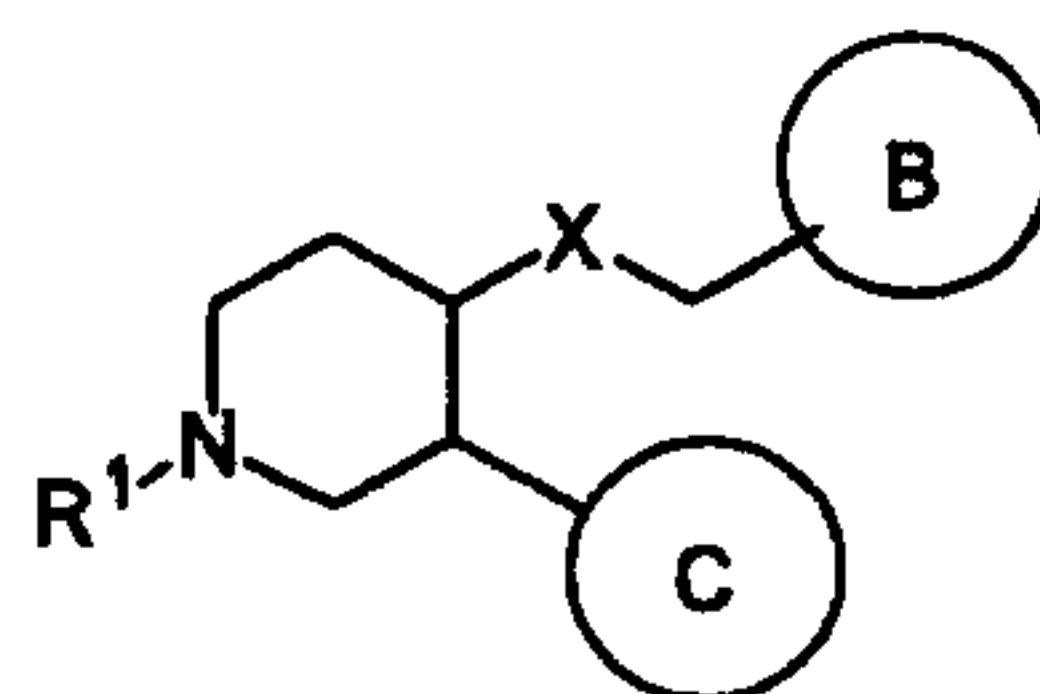
To a solution of the compound (200 mg) obtained in
15 Example 1, bromobenzene (0.054 ml),
tris(dibenzylideneacetone)dipalladium(0) (11 mg) and sodium tert-butoxide (94 mg) in toluene (5.0 ml), ($\pm$)-2,2'-bis(diphenylphosphino)-1,1'-binaphthyl(($\pm$)-BINAP) (7.3 mg) was added, and the reaction mixture was stirred at 85°C for
20 17 hours under argon atmosphere. The reaction mixture was poured into water, and then the product was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with saturated brine, dried, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The obtained residue was isolated and
25 purified by silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate : hexane = 1 : 10 $\rightarrow$ 1 : 4) to obtain the title compound as colorless oil (120 mg, 55%).

MS (ESI+): 548 (M+H)

The compounds of the following Examples were
30 synthesized from Examples 515 or 609 as a starting material by reacting and treating in the same manner as in the method described in Example 512 using the respective corresponding halides.

[Table 27]

- 253 -



Ex. No.	Stereo-chemistry	R ¹	X	B	C	MS (ESI) (M+H) ⁺
512	(±)-cis	Ph	O			548
518	(±)-cis		O			661
662	(±)-cis	Ph	NH			457

Example 555

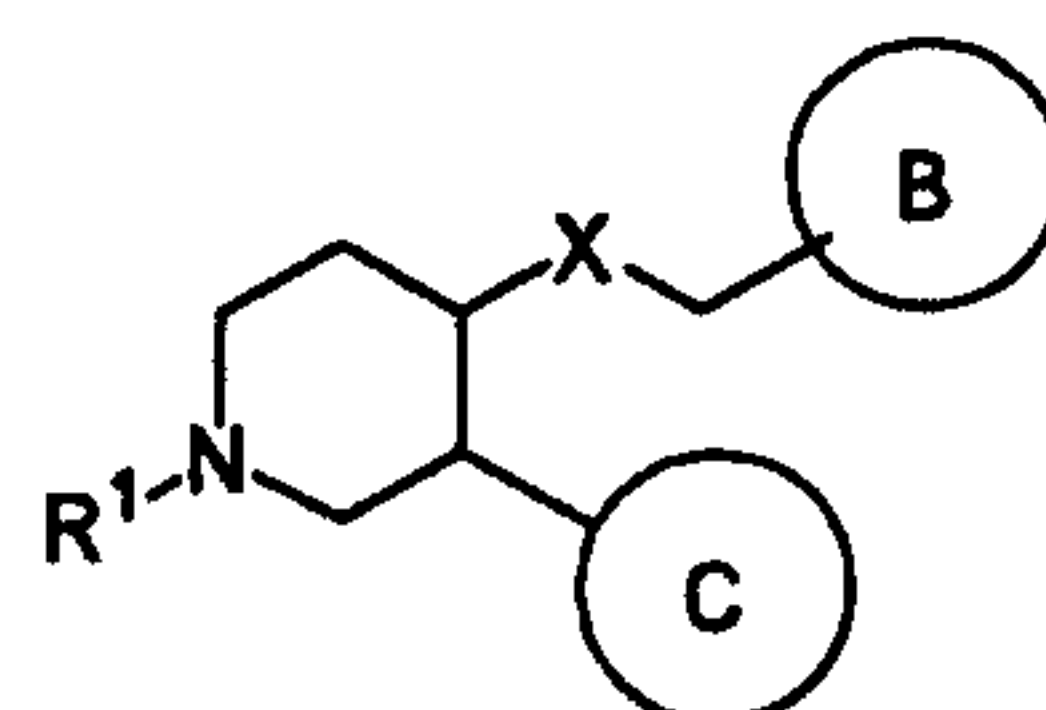
cis-1-[(1-Acetyl-4-piperidinyl)carbonyl]-3-phenyl-4-
 5 [[5-(trifluoromethyl)-1,1'-biphenyl-3-yl]methoxy]piperidine

To a solution of the compound (250 mg) obtained in Example 554 in toluene (4 ml)/ethanol (2 ml), dihydroxyphenylborane (107 mg), tetrakis(triphenylphosphine) palladium(0) (25 mg), sodium carbonate (186 mg) and water (2
 10 ml) were added, and the reaction mixture was stirred at 100°C for 4 hours. To the reaction solution, water was added, and the product was extracted with dichloromethane. The organic layer was dried, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The obtained residue was isolated and
 15 purified by silica gel column chromatography (chloroform : methanol = 10 : 1) to obtain the title compound (111 mg) as colorless amorphous.

MS (ESI+): 565 (M+H).

The compounds of the following Examples were
 20 synthesized from the compound of Examples 554 or 564 as a starting material by reacting and treating in the same manner as in the method described in Example 555 using the respective corresponding boronic acid derivatives.

[Table 28]

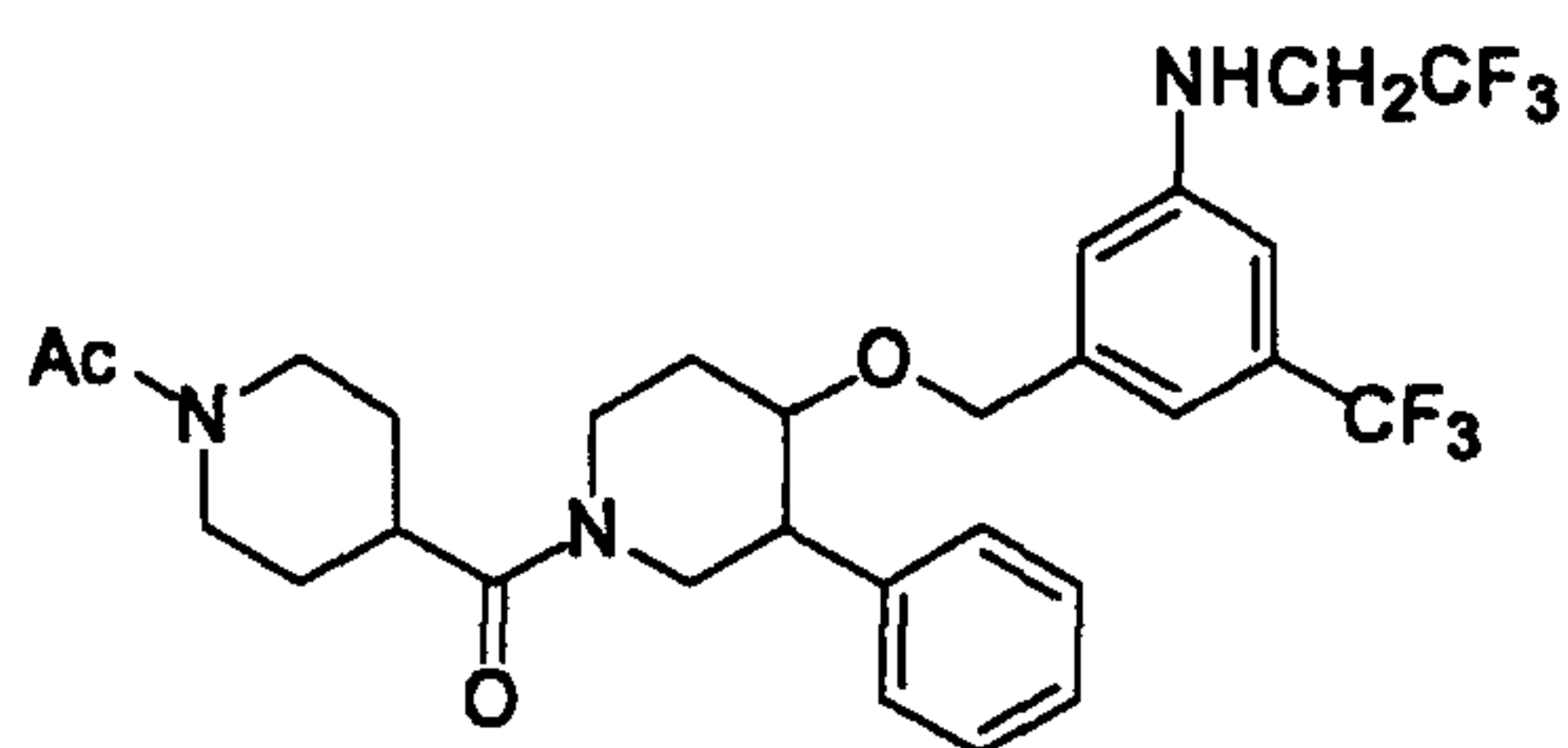


Ex. No.	Stereo-chemistry	R ¹	X	B	C	MS (ESI) (M+H) ⁺
555	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			565
556	(±)- <i>cis</i>		O			633
669	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH			434
671	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH			444
672	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH			450
676	(±)- <i>cis</i>	MeNHCO	NH			430
683	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH			456
686	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH			445
687	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH			445

Example 557

5 N-[3-[[[*cis*-1-[(1-Acetyl-4-piperidinyl) carbonyl]-3-phenyl-4-piperidinyl]oxy]methyl]-5-(trifluoromethyl)phenyl]-N-(2,2,2-trifluoroethyl)amine

- 255 -



The compound (150 mg) obtained in Example 554, (±)-BINAP (12 mg), sodium tert-butoxide (39 mg), tris(dibenzylideneacetone)dipalladium(0) (8 mg), 2,2,2-trifluoroethylamine (40 mg) and toluene (15 ml) were mixed under argon atmosphere, and stirred at 100°C for 2 hours (under argon atmosphere). To the reaction solution, water was added, and the product was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with saturated brine, dried, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The obtained residue was isolated and purified by preparative HPLC to obtain the title compound (22 mg) as colorless amorphous.

MS (ESI+): 586 (M+H).

Example 564

cis-4-[(5-Bromo-2-methoxybenzyl)amino]-N-ethyl-3-phenyl-1-piperidinecarboxamide

(Process 1)

To a solution of the compound (5.0 g) obtained in Process 4 of Reference Example 1 and Et₃N (4.8 g) in acetonitrile (100 ml), ethyl isocyanate (5.3 g) was added, and the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 6 hours. The reaction mixture was poured into water, and then the product was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with an aqueous 10% citric acid solution and saturated brine, dried, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The obtained residue was isolated and purified by silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate : hexane : methanol = 40 : 10 : 1) to obtain N-ethyl-4-oxo-3-phenylpiperidine-1-carboxamide as colorless oil (6.2 g).

- 256 -

(Process 2)

The compound (6.5 g) obtained in Process 1 was reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Process 1 and Process 2 of Reference Example 2 to obtain 4-
5 amino-N-ethyl-3-phenylpiperidine-1-carboxamide as pale yellow powder (3.3 g).

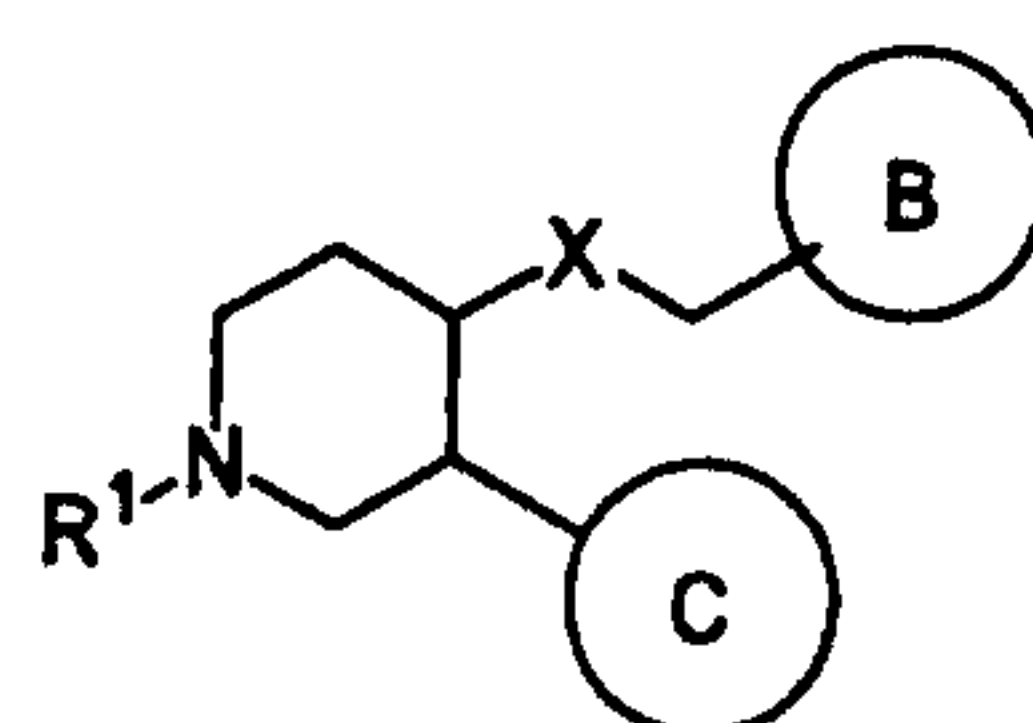
(Process 3)

The compound (0.31 g) obtained in Process 2 and 5-bromo-2-methoxybenzaldehyde (0.27 g) were reacted and treated
10 in the same manner as in the method described in Process 3 of Reference Example 2 to obtain the title compound as colorless crystals (0.18 g).

MS (ESI+): 446, 448 (M+H).

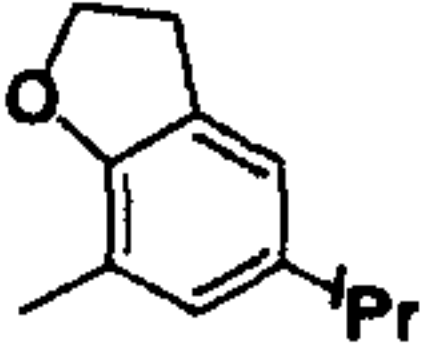
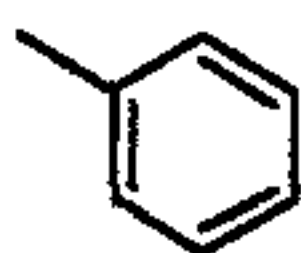
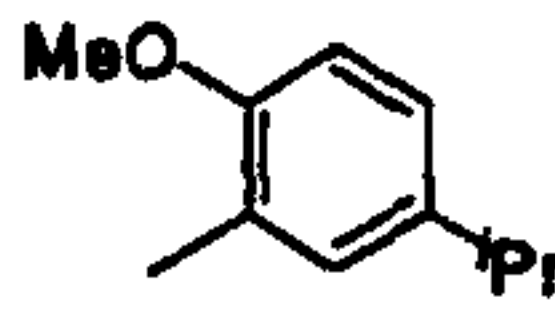
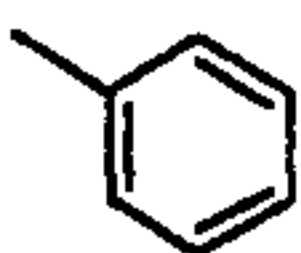
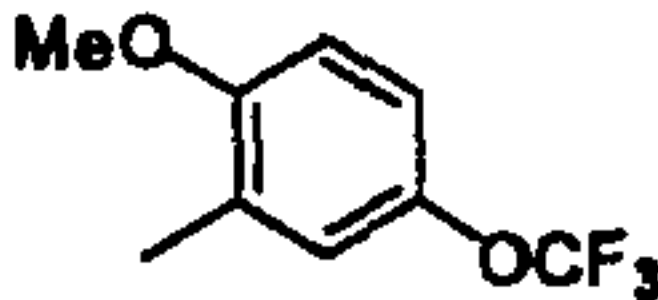
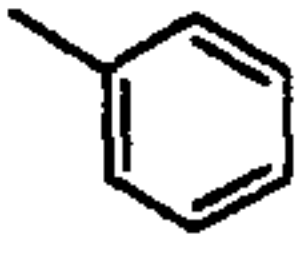
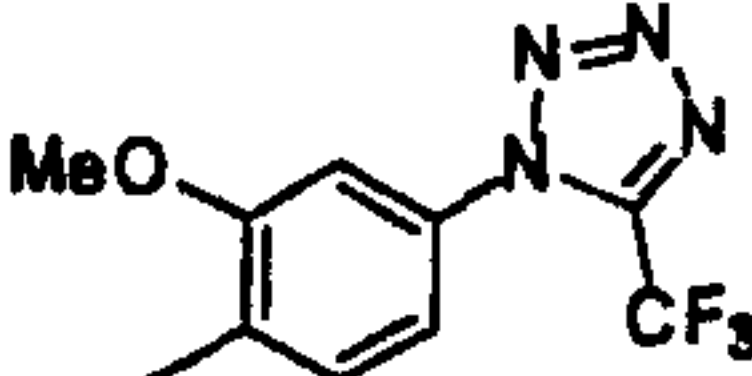
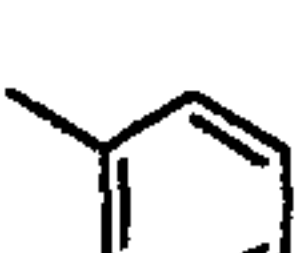
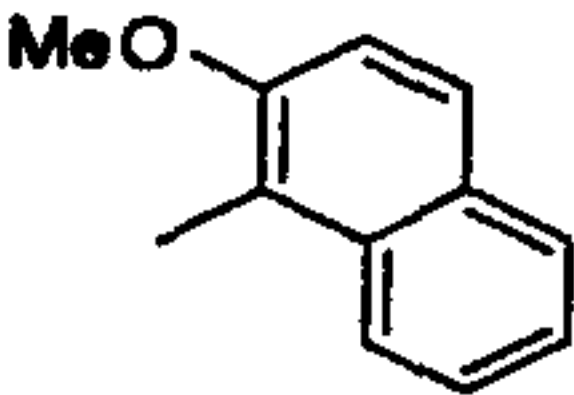
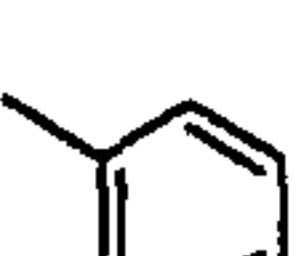
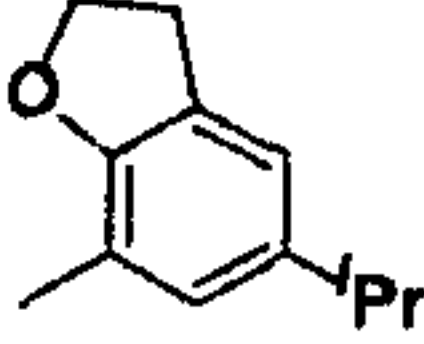
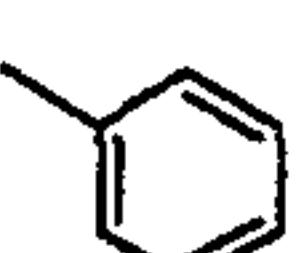
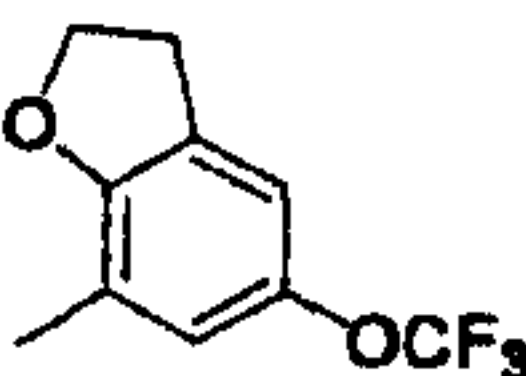
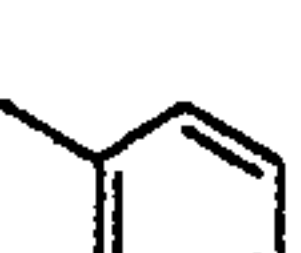
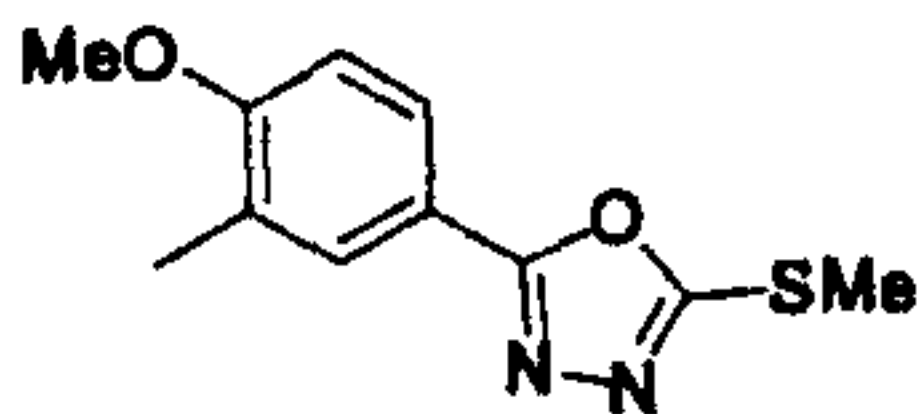
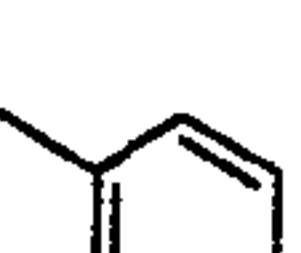
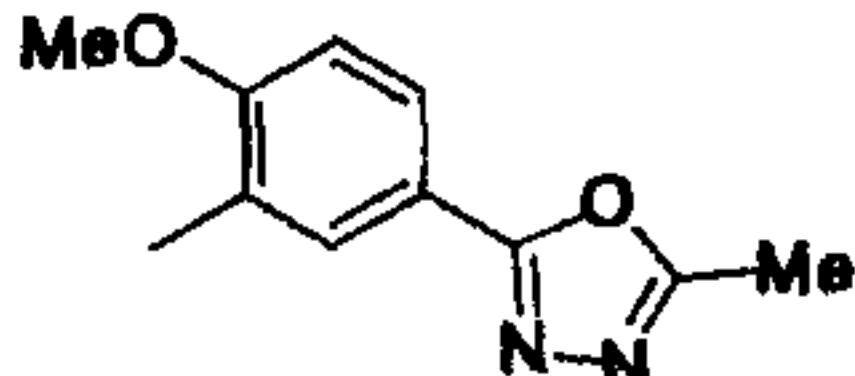
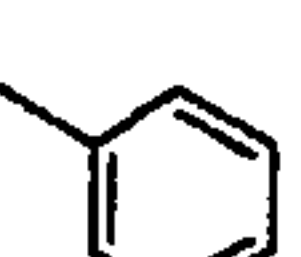
The compounds of the following Examples were
15 synthesized from the compound obtained in Process 4 of Reference Example 1 as a starting material by reacting and treating in the same manner as in the method described in Example 564 using methyl isocyanate or ethyl isocyanate and the respective corresponding benzaldehyde derivatives.

20 [Table 29]



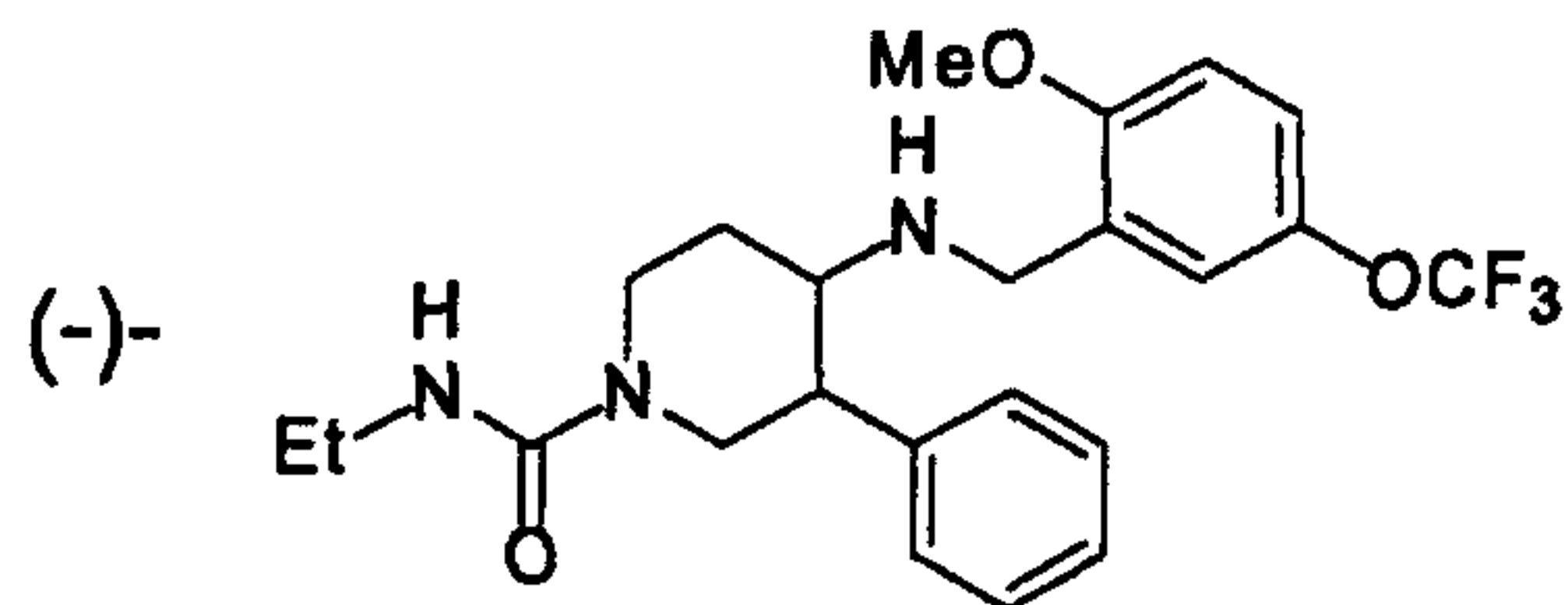
Ex. No.	Stereo-chemistry	R¹	X	B	C	MS (ESI) (M+H)⁺
564	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH			446, 448
565	(±)- <i>cis</i>	MeNHCO	NH			432, 434
668	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH			398
670	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH			339
673	(±)- <i>cis</i>	MeNHCO	NH			379
674	(±)- <i>cis</i>	MeNHCO	NH			422
675	(±)- <i>cis</i>	MeNHCO	NH			396
677	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH			459
678	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH			464
679	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH			448
680	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH			394
681	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH			424

- 258 -

682	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH			422
684	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH			410
685	(±)- <i>trans</i>	EtNHCO	NH			452
688	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH			504
689	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH			418
693	(±)- <i>cis</i>	MeNHCO	NH			408
698	(±)- <i>cis</i>	MeNHCO	NH			450
707	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH			482
728	(±)- <i>cis</i>	EtNHCO	NH			450

Example 612

(-)-*cis*-N-Ethyl-4-[[2-methoxy-5-(trifluoromethoxy)benzyl]amino]-3-phenyl-1-piperidinecarboxamide



5

The compound (1.70 g) obtained in Example 610 was optically resolved with chiral HPLC, and the fractions were concentrated under reduced pressure to obtain the title compound (0.68 g) as white powder.

10

Chiral HPLC condition

- 259 -

Column: CHIRALPAK AS 50 mm ID × 500 mm L

Solvent: hexane/2-propanol = 9/1

Flow rate: 70 ml/min → 80 ml/min

Temperature: 25°C

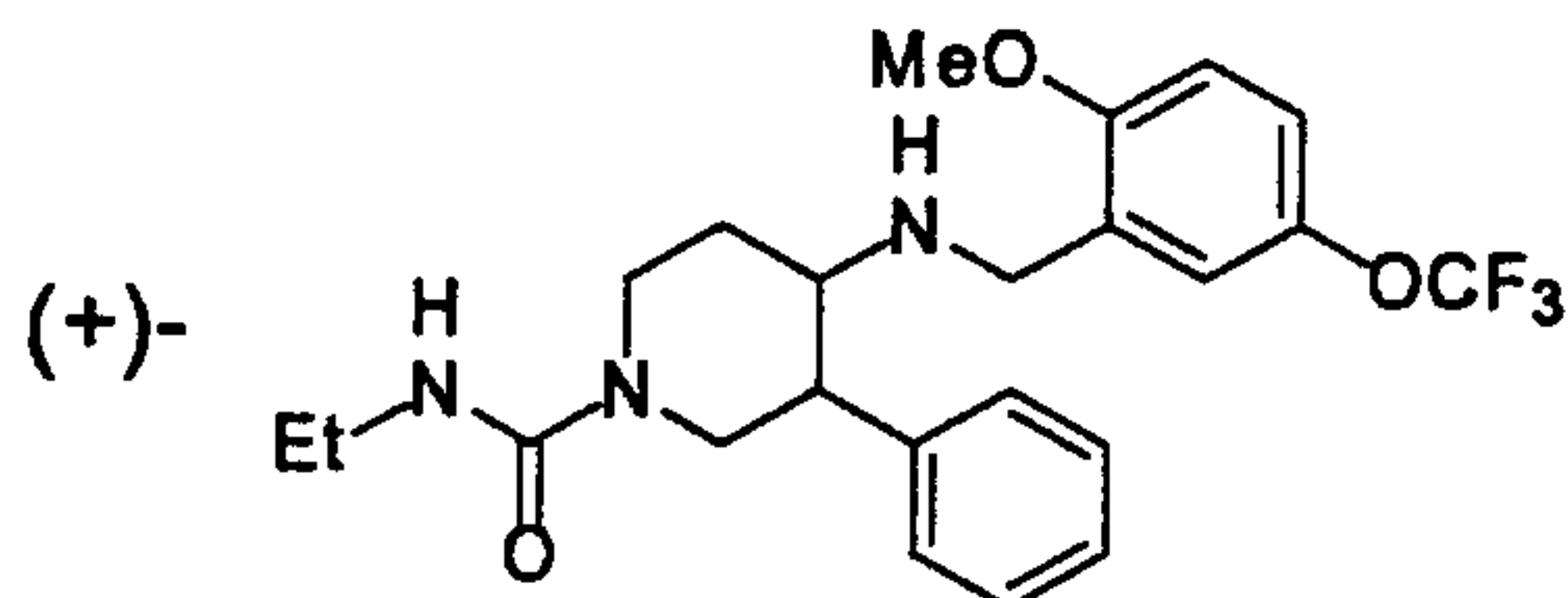
5 Detection method: UV 220 nm

 $[\alpha]_D^{25} -96.1^\circ$ (c 1.0, MeOH).

MS (ESI+): 452 (M+H).

Example 613

(+)-cis-N-Ethyl-4-[[2-methoxy-5-
 10 (trifluoromethoxy)benzyl]amino]-3-phenyl-1-
 piperidinecarboxamide



The compound (1.70 g) obtained in Example 610 was
 optically resolved with chiral HPLC, and the fractions were
 15 concentrated under reduced pressure to obtain the title
 compound (0.64 g) as white powder.

Chiral HPLC condition

Column: CHIRALPAK AS 50 mm ID × 500 mm L

Solvent: hexane/2-propanol = 9/1

20 Flow rate: 70 ml/min → 80 ml/min

Temperature: 25°C

Detection method: UV 220 nm

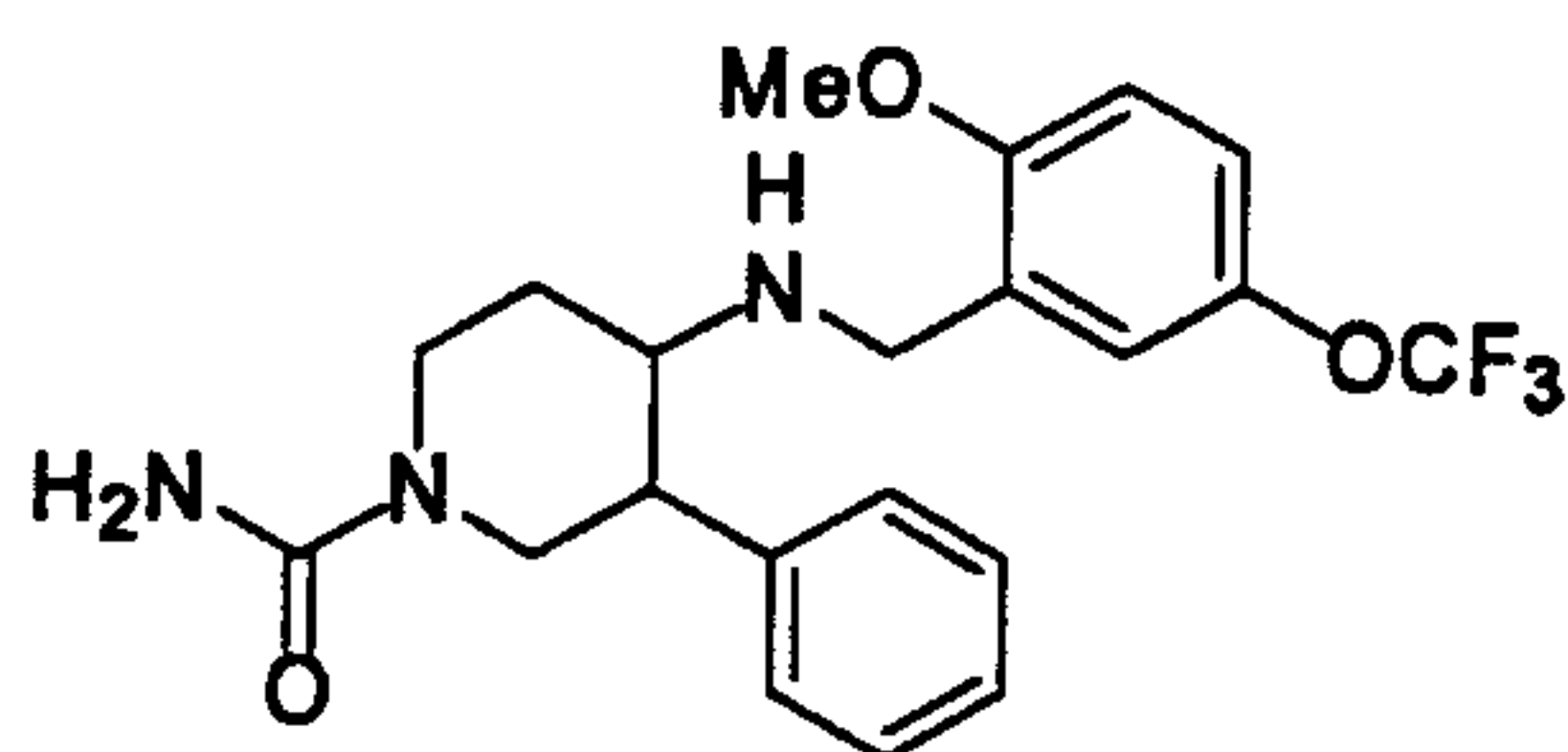
 $[\alpha]_D^{25} +97.0^\circ$ (c 1.0, MeOH).

MS (ESI+): 452 (M+H).

25 Example 657

cis-4-[[2-Methoxy-5-(trifluoromethoxy)benzyl]amino]-3-
 phenyl-1-piperidinecarboxamide hydrochloride

- 260 -



To a solution of the compound (0.23 g) obtained in Example 609, 4-dimethylaminopyridine (0.010 g) and Et₃N (0.10 g) in THF (3 ml), triphosgene (0.15 g) was added at 0°C, and the reaction mixture was stirred at 0°C for 30 minutes. To the reaction mixture, 28% ammonia water (5 ml) was added, and the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 4 hours. The reaction mixture was poured into water, and then the product was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with an aqueous 10% citric acid solution and saturated brine, dried, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The obtained residue was isolated and purified by preparative HPLC, and the product was treated with 4 N hydrochloric acid/ethyl acetate to obtain the title compound (0.049 mg) as colorless amorphous.

MS (ESI⁺): 424 (M+H).

Example 660

cis-N-[2-Methoxy-5-[(trifluoromethoxy)benzyl]-1-[3-methyl-1,2,4-thiazol-5-yl]-3-phenyl-4-piperidineamine

To a solution of the compound (0.45 g) obtained in Example 609 in THF (6 ml), Et₃N (0.20 g) was added, and the resulting precipitates was removed by filtration, and the filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure. The obtained residue was dissolved in ethanol (6 ml), 5-chloro-3-methyl-1,2,4-thiazole (0.27 g) was added thereto, and the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 14 hours. The reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure, and then the obtained residue was isolated and purified by preparative HPLC to obtain the title compound (87 mg) as colorless amorphous.

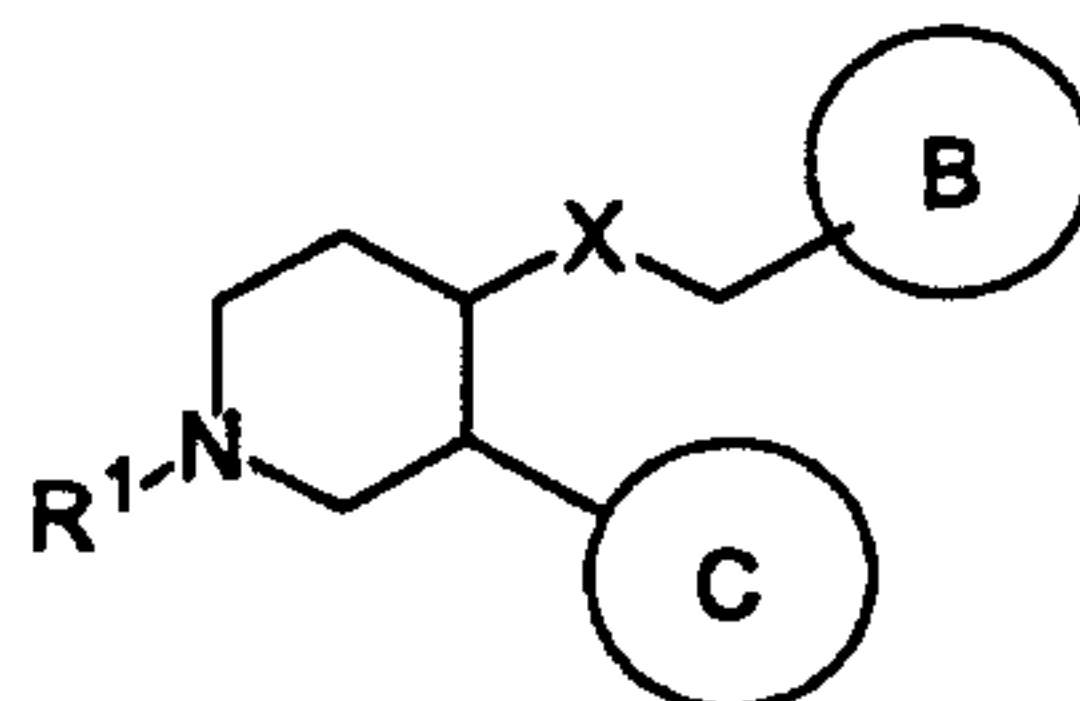
MS (ESI⁺): 479 (M+H).

The compounds of the following Examples were

- 261 -

synthesized from Examples 609 or 701 as a starting material by reacting and treating in the same manner as in the method described in Example 660 using the respective corresponding halides.

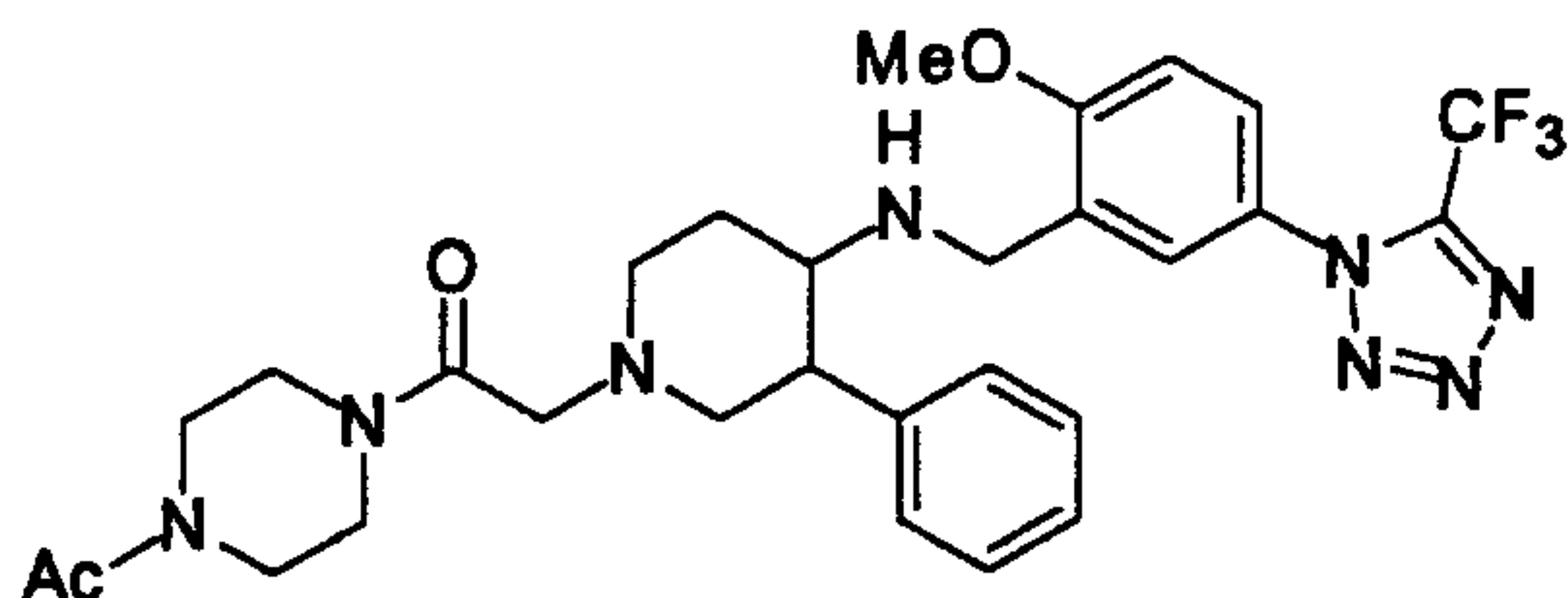
5 [Table 30]



Ex. No.	Stereo-chemistry	R ¹	X	B	C	MS (ESI) (M+H) ⁺
660	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			479
661	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			464
747	(±)- <i>cis</i>		NH			531

Example 785

cis-1-[2-(4-Acetyl-1-piperazinyl)-2-oxoethyl]-N-[2-methoxy-5-[5-(trifluoromethyl)-1H-tetrazol-1-yl]benzyl]-3-phenyl-4-piperidineamine



The compound (200 mg) obtained in Example 701 was reacted and treated in the same manner as in the method described in Example 503 to obtain the title compound (96 mg) as colorless amorphous.

MS (ESI⁺): 601 (M+H).

Example 786

cis-1-Acetyl-N-[2-methoxy-5-[5-(trifluoromethyl)-1H-tetrazol-1-yl]benzyl]-3-phenyl-4-piperidineamine

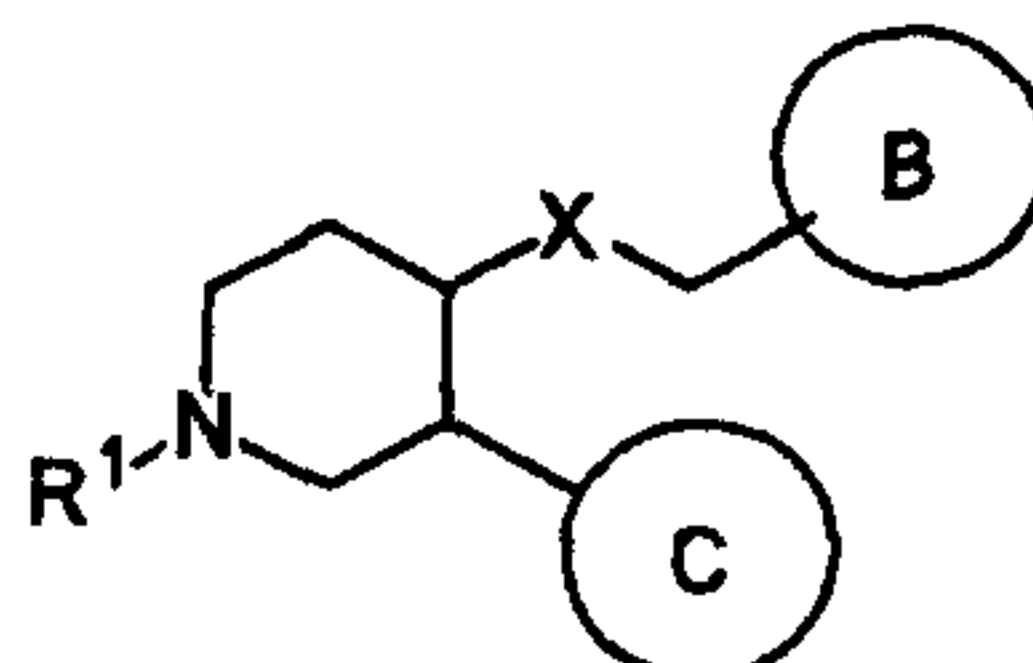
- 262 -

To a solution of the compound (0.20 g) obtained in Example 701 in DMF (5 ml), trimethylsilyl chloride (0.13 g) and imidazole (0.082 g) were added, and the reaction mixture was stirred at 110°C for 1 hour. The reaction mixture was poured into an aqueous saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate solution, and then the product was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with saturated brine, dried, and then the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The obtained residue was isolated and purified by silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate : hexane = 2 : 1) to obtain the title compound as pale yellow amorphous (0.090 g).

MS (ESI⁺): 479 (M+H).

The compounds of the following Examples were synthesized from Example 732 as a starting material by reacting and treating in the same manner as in the method described in Example 786.

[Table 31]



Ex. No.	Stereo-chemistry	R ¹	X	B	C	MS (ESI) (M+H) ⁺
786	(±)-cis	HCO	NH			461
787	(±)-cis		NH			572

20

Preparative Example 1

25

(1) Compound of Example 1	10 mg
(2) Lactose	60 mg
(3) Corn starch	35 mg
(4) Hydroxypropylmethylcellulose	3 mg
(5) Magnesium stearate	2 mg

- 263 -

A mixture of 10 mg of the compound obtained in Example 1, 60 mg of lactose and 35 mg of corn starch was granulated using 0.03 ml of an aqueous solution of 10 wt% hydroxypropylmethylcellulose (3 mg as
5 hydroxypropylmethylcellulose), and then dried at 40°C and sieved. The obtained granules were mixed with 2 mg of magnesium stearate and compressed. The obtained uncoated tablets were sugar-coated with an aqueous suspension of sucrose, titanium dioxide, talc and gum Arabic. The thus-
10 coated tablets were glazed with bees wax to obtain finally-coated tablets.

Preparative Example 2

	(1) Compound of Example 1	10 mg
	(2) Lactose	70 mg
15	(3) Corn starch	50 mg
	(4) Soluble starch	7 mg
	(5) Magnesium stearate	3 mg

10 mg of the compound obtained in Example 1 and 3 mg of magnesium stearate were granulated with 0.07 ml (7 mg as
20 soluble starch) of an aqueous soluble starch solution, dried, and mixed with 70 mg of lactose and 50 mg of corn starch. The mixture was compressed to obtain tablets.

Reference Preparative Example 1

	(1) Rofecoxib	5.0 mg
25	(2) Table salt	20.0 mg
	(3) Distilled water	to 2 ml of total volume

5.0 mg of rofecoxib and 20.0 mg of table salt were dissolved in distilled water, and water was added to make 2.0 ml of total volume. The solution was filtered, and filled
30 into 2 ml of ampoule under sterile condition. The ampoule was sterilized, and then sealed to obtain a solution for injection.

Reference Preparative Example 2

	(1) Rofecoxib	50 mg
35	(2) Lactose	34 mg

- 264 -

(3) Corn starch	10.6 mg
(4) Corn starch (paste)	5 mg
(5) Magnesium stearate	0.4 mg
(6) Calcium carboxymethylcellulose	20 mg

5 total 120 mg

The above-mentioned (1) to (6) were mixed according to a conventional method and were tableted by a tablet machine to obtain tablets.

Preparative Example 3

10 The formulation prepared in Preparative Example 1 or 2, and the formulation prepared in Reference Preparative Example 1 or 2 were combined.

Experimental Example 1

Radioligand receptor binding inhibitory activity
15 (Binding inhibitory activity using receptor from human lymphoblast cells (IM-9))

The method of M. A. Cascieri et al., "Molecular Pharmacology 42, p.458 (1992)" was modified and used. The receptor was prepared from human lymphoblast cells (IM-9).
20 IM-9 cells (2×10^5 cells/ml) were inoculated and incubated for 3 days (one liter), which was then subjected to centrifuge for 5 minutes at $500 \times G$ to obtain cell pellets. The obtained pellets were washed once with phosphate buffer (Flow Laboratories, CAT. No. 28-103-05), which were then
25 crushed using Polytron homogenizer ("Kinematika", Germany) in 30 ml of 50 mM Tris-HCl buffer (pH 7.4) containing 120 mM sodium chloride, 5 mM potassium chloride, 2 μ g/ml chymostatin, 40 μ g/ml bacitracin, 5 μ g/ml phosphoramidon, 0.5 mM phenylmethylsulfonyl fluoride, 1 mM ethylenediamine tetra-
30 acetic acid, which was subjected to centrifuge at $40,000 \times G$ for 20 minutes. The residue was twice washed with 30 ml of the above-mentioned buffer, which was then preserved frozen (-80°C) as a specimen of the receptor.

The specimen was suspended in a reaction buffer (50 mM
35 Tris-HCl buffer (pH 7.4), 0.02% bovine serum albumin, 1 mM

- 265 -

phenylmethanesulfonyl fluoride, 2 µg/ml chymostatin, 40 µg/ml bacitracin and 3 mM manganese chloride) to have protein in the concentration of 0.5 mg/ml of protein and 100 µl portion of the suspension was used in the reaction. After addition
 5 of the sample and ^{125}I -BHSP (0.46 KBq), the reaction was allowed to proceed in 0.2 ml of reaction buffer at 25°C for 30 minutes. The amount of nonspecific binding was determined by adding substance P at a final concentration of 2×10^{-6} M.

After the reaction, using a cell harvester (290 PHD,
 10 Cambridge Technology, Inc, U.S.A.), rapid filtration was carried out through a glass filter (GF/B, Whatman, U.S.A.) to stop the reaction. After washing three times with 250 µl of 50 mM Tris-HCl buffer (pH 7.4) containing 0.02% bovine serum albumin, the radioactivity remaining on the filter was
 15 determined with a gamma counter. Before use, the filter was immersed in 0.1% polyethyleneimine for 24 hours and air-dried.

The antagonistic activity of each compound obtained in Examples was determined in terms of the concentration necessary to cause 50% inhibition (IC_{50} value) under the
 20 above-described conditions, and the results were shown in Table 32.

[Table 32]

	<u>Example No.</u>	<u>IC_{50} Value (nM)</u>
	70	0.150
25	72	0.032
	75	0.025
	78	0.060
	81	0.058
	84	0.051
30	88	0.060
	413	0.230
	613	0.070
	722	0.110
	753	0.073
35	755	0.096

- 266 -

	757	0.067
	760	0.085
	761	0.054
	762	0.049
5	763	0.080
	764	0.042

Radioligand means substance P labeled with [^{125}I].

From Table 32, it is understood that the compounds of the present invention have an excellent substance P receptor
10 antagonistic effect.

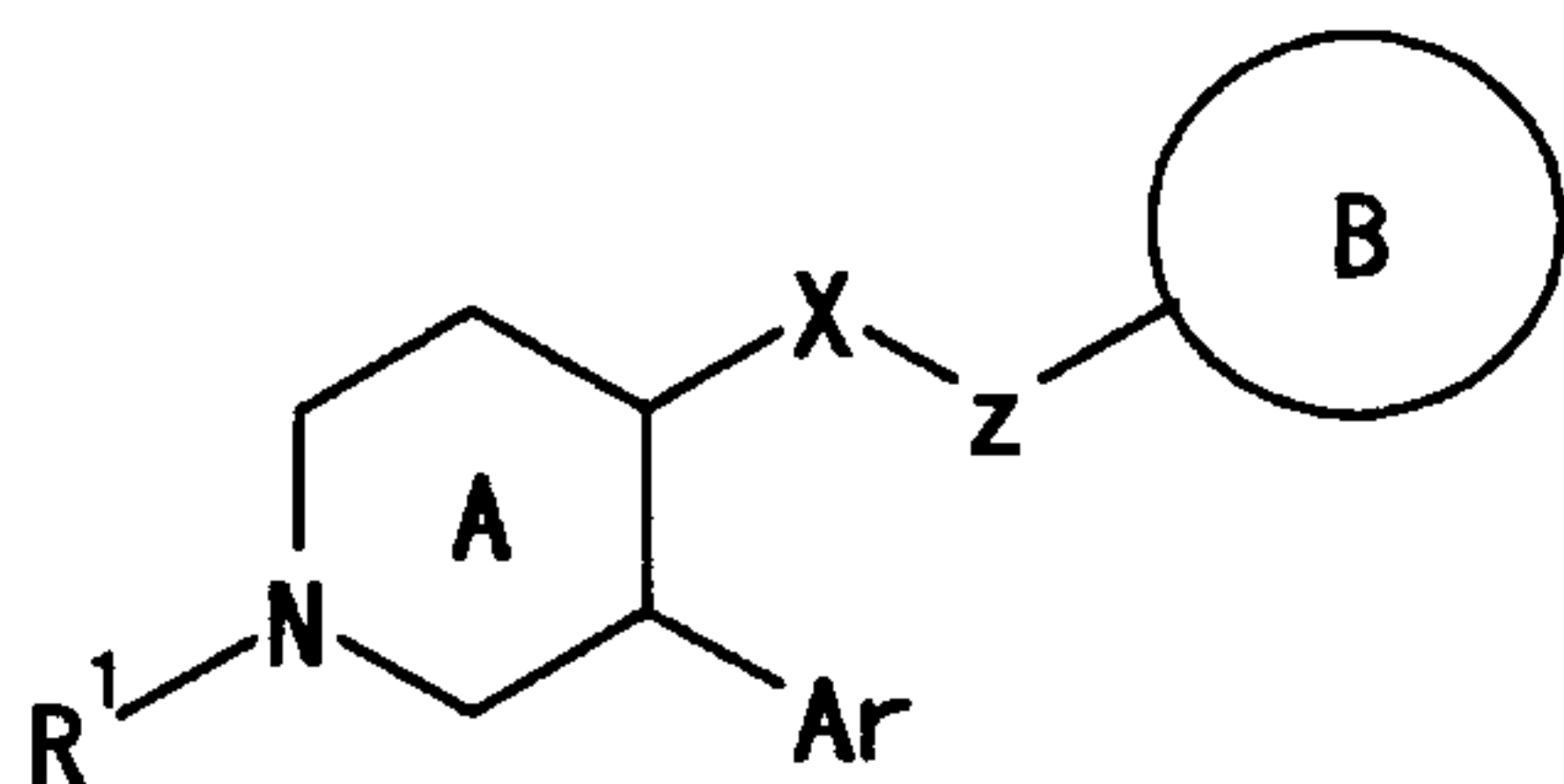
INDUSTRIAL APPLICABILITY

Compound (I), a salt thereof or a prodrug of the present invention has high antagonistic action for a
15 tachykinin receptor, particularly antagonistic action for Substance P receptor, and has low toxicity, thus being safe as a medicament. Therefore, Compound (I), a salt thereof or a prodrug of the present invention is useful as a medicament, for example, a tachykinin receptor antagonist, an agent for
20 ameliorating abnormal micturition, etc.

- 267 -

CLAIMS

1. A compound represented by the formula:



(I)

wherein Ar is an aryl group, an aralkyl group or an aromatic heterocyclic group, each of which may be substituted, R¹ is a hydrogen atom, an optionally substituted hydrocarbon group, an acyl group or an optionally substituted heterocyclic group, X is an oxygen atom or an optionally substituted imino group, Z is an optionally substituted methylene group, Ring A is an optionally further substituted piperidine ring, and Ring B is an optionally substituted aromatic ring, provided that when Z is a methylene group substituted with an oxo group, R¹ is not a methyl group, and when Z is a methylene group substituted with a methyl group, Ring B is a substituted aromatic ring, or a salt thereof.

2. The compound according to claim 1, wherein Ar is a phenyl group or a benzhydryl group, each of which may be substituted.

3. The compound according to claim 1, wherein R¹ is a hydrogen atom or an acyl group.

4. The compound according to claim 1, wherein Z is a methylene group optionally substituted with either (i) an optionally substituted lower alkyl group or (ii) an oxo group, and Ring B is an optionally substituted benzene ring.

5. The compound according to claim 1, wherein Ar is a phenyl group, a benzhydryl group or a benzyl group, each of which may be substituted with 1 to 4 substituents selected from (A) a halogen atom, (B) a C₁₋₆ alkyl group, and (C) a heterocyclic group,

R¹ is (1) a hydrogen atom,

(2) a hydrocarbon group optionally having 1 to 3 substituents selected from (i) a C₁₋₆ alkoxy group, (ii) a C₁₋₆ alkoxy-carbonyl group, (iii) a carbamoyl group, (iv) a cyano group, (v) a C₁₋₆ alkylthio group, or (vi) a heterocyclic group optionally substituted with 1 or 2 oxo groups and optionally fused with a benzene ring,

(3) an acyl group represented by the formula: $-(C=O)-Ra$, $-(C=S)-Ra$, $-SO_2-Ra$, $-SO_2-NRaRa'$, $-(C=O)NRaRa'$ or $-(C=O)O-Ra$ wherein Ra is (A) a hydrogen atom or

10 (B) (a) a hydrocarbon group or (b) a heterocyclic group, each of which may be substituted with 1 to 2 substituents selected from (i) a halogen atom,

(ii) a C₁₋₆ alkyl group optionally substituted with a heterocyclic group, C₁₋₆ alkanoyl or C₆₋₁₄ aryl-carbonyl,

15 (iii) a C₁₋₆ alkoxy group,

(iv) an amino group,

(v) a mono- or di-C₁₋₆ alkylamino group,

(vi) a C₁₋₆ alkanoylamino group,

(vii) a N-C₁₋₆ alkyl-N'-C₁₋₆ alkanoylamino group,

20 (viii) a C₁₋₆ alkoxy-carbonyl group,

(ix) a C₁₋₆ alkanoyl group optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkoxy, mono- or di-C₁₋₆ alkylamino, halogeno C₁₋₆ alkyl or a halogen atom,

(x) a C₆₋₁₄ aryl-carbonyl group,

25 (xi) a C₇₋₁₉ aralkyl-carbonyl group,

(xii) a C₃₋₆ cycloalkyl-carbonyl group,

(xiii) a heterocyclic-carbonyl group,

(xiv) a hydroxy group,

(xv) a C₇₋₁₉ aralkyloxy group,

30 (xvi) a C₃₋₆ cycloalkyloxy group,

(xvii) a C₁₋₆ alkoxy-C₁₋₆ alkoxy group,

(xviii) a carbamoyl group,

(xix) a mono- or di-C₁₋₆ alkylcarbamoyl group,

(xx) a C₁₋₆ alkylsulfonyl group,

35 (xxi) a mono- or di-C₁₋₆ alkylaminosulfonyl group,

- 269 -

(xxii) a formyl group,

(xxiii) a formylamino group,

(xxiv) an oxo group, and

(xxv) a heterocyclic group optionally having 1 or 2
5 substituents selected from C₁₋₆ alkanoyl and C₁₋₆ alkoxy-C₁₋₆
alkanoyl, and

Ra' is a hydrogen atom or a C₁₋₆ alkyl group, or

(4) a heterocyclic group optionally having 1 or 2
substituents selected from a C₁₋₆ alkyl group and an oxo group,

10 X is O or NH,

Z is a methylene group, and

Ring B is a benzene ring optionally having 1 or 2
substituents selected from (i) a heterocyclic group
optionally substituted with an optionally halogenated C₁₋₆
15 alkyl group or a C₁₋₆ alkylthio group, (ii) an optionally
halogenated C₁₋₆ alkyl group, (iii) an optionally halogenated
C₁₋₆ alkoxy group, (iv) a halogen atom, (v) nitro, (vi) a C₆₋₁₄
aryl group optionally substituted with optionally halogenated
C₁₋₆ alkyl, (vii) an optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkylamino
20 group, (viii) a cyano group, and (ix) a C₃₋₆ cycloalkyloxy,
and optionally fused with a non-aromatic heterocyclic ring or
a benzene ring.

6. The compound according to claim 1, wherein Ar is a
phenyl group,

25 R¹ is -(C=O)-Rb or -(C=O)NRbRb' (Rb is (1) a
hydrocarbon group or (2) a heterocyclic group, each of which
optionally has a substituent selected from (i) hydroxy, (ii)
C₁₋₆ alkoxy, (iii) C₁₋₆ alkanoyl, (iv) C₁₋₆ alkylsulfonyl, (v)
amino, (vi) mono- or di-C₁₋₆ alkylamino, (vii) C₁₋₆
30 alkanoylamino or (viii) a heterocyclic group optionally
substituted with 1 or 2 oxo groups, and Rb' is a hydrogen
atom or a C₁₋₆ alkyl group.),

X is O or NH,

Z is a methylene group,

35 Ring B is a benzene ring optionally having 1 or 2

- 270 -

substituents selected from (i) a heterocyclic group optionally substituted with an optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkyl group, (ii) an optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkyl group and (iii) an optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkoxy group, and
 5 optionally fused with a non-aromatic heterocyclic ring.

7. cis-4-((3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl)oxy)-N-methyl-3-phenyl-1-piperidinecarboxamide,

cis-1-((1-acetyl-4-piperidinyl)carbonyl)-4-((3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl)oxy)-3-phenylpiperidine,

10 cis-N-ethyl-4-((2-methoxy-5-(trifluoromethoxy)benzyl)amino)-3-phenyl-1-piperidinecarboxamide,

cis-N-methyl-3-phenyl-4-(((5-(5-(trifluoromethyl)-1H-tetrazol-1-yl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzofuran-7-yl)methyl)amino)-1-
 15 piperidinecarboxamide,

cis-N-ethyl-3-phenyl-4-(((5-(5-(trifluoromethyl)-1H-tetrazol-1-yl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzofuran-7-yl)methyl)amino)-1-piperidinecarboxamide,

cis-1-((1-acetyl-4-piperidinyl)carbonyl)-3-phenyl-N-
 20 ((5-(5-(trifluoromethyl)-1H-tetrazol-1-yl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzofuran-7-yl)methyl)-4-piperidineamine,

cis-4-((2-methoxy-5-(5-(trifluoromethyl)-1H-tetrazol-1-yl)benzyl)amino)-N-methyl-3-phenyl-1-piperidinecarboxamide,

cis-N-ethyl-4-((2-methoxy-5-(5-(trifluoromethyl)-1H-tetrazol-1-yl)benzyl)amino)-3-phenyl-1-piperidinecarboxamide,
 25

cis-1-(methoxyacetyl)-N-(2-methoxy-5-(5-(trifluoromethyl)-1H-tetrazol-1-yl)benzyl)-3-phenyl-4-piperidineamine,

cis-1-((1-acetyl-4-piperidinyl)carbonyl)-N-(2-methoxy-
 30 5-(5-(trifluoromethyl)-1H-tetrazol-1-yl)benzyl)-3-phenyl-4-piperidineamine,

cis-N-(2-((-4-((2-methoxy-5-(5-(trifluoromethyl)-1H-tetrazol-1-yl)benzyl)amino)-3-phenyl-1-piperidinyl)-2-oxoethyl)acetamide,

35 cis-N-(2-methoxy-5-(5-(trifluoromethyl)-1H-tetrazol-1-

- 271 -

yl)benzyl)-1-((1-(methylsulfonyl)-4-piperidinyl)carbonyl)-3-phenyl-4-piperidineamine,

cis-N-(2-methoxy-5-(5-(trifluoromethyl)-1H-tetrazol-1-yl)benzyl)-3-phenyl-1-(1H-tetrazol-1-ylacetyl)-4-

5 piperidineamine,

cis-2-(4-((2-methoxy-5-(5-(trifluoromethyl)-1H-tetrazol-1-yl)benzyl)amino)-3-phenyl-1-piperidinyl)-2-oxoethanol,

cis-N-(3-(4-((2-methoxy-5-(5-(trifluoromethyl)-1H-tetrazol-1-yl)benzyl)amino)-3-phenyl-1-piperidinyl)-3-oxopropyl)acetamide,

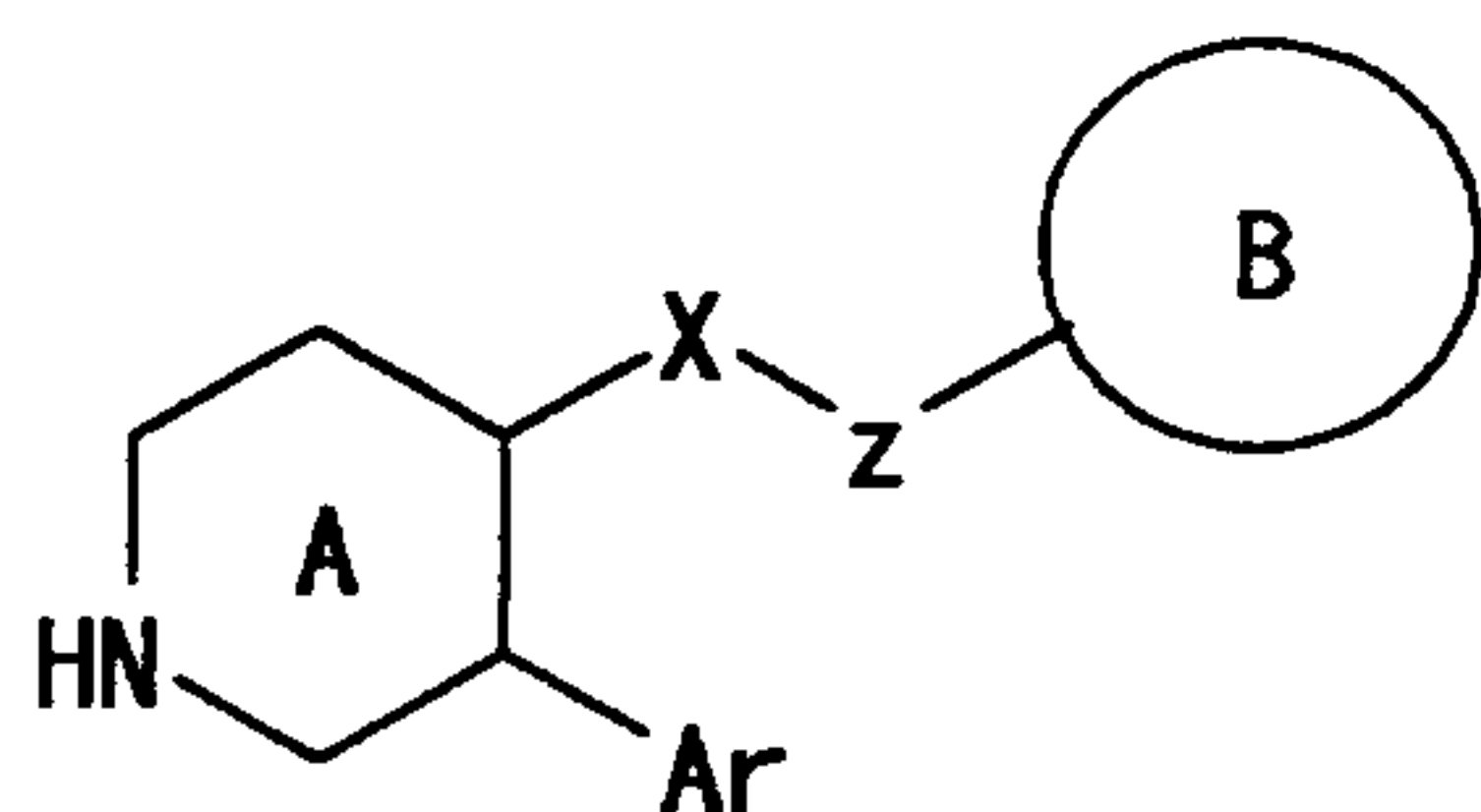
cis-1-acetyl-N-(2-methoxy-5-(5-(trifluoromethyl)-1H-tetrazol-1-yl)benzyl)-3-phenyl-4-piperidineamine,

cis-N-(2-methoxy-5-(5-(trifluoromethyl)-1H-tetrazol-1-yl)benzyl)-1-((methylsulfonyl)acetyl)-3-phenyl-4-piperidineamine, or

cis-1-(2-(4-((2-methoxy-5-(5-(trifluoromethyl)-1H-tetrazol-1-yl)benzyl)amino)-3-phenyl-1-piperidinyl)-2-oxoethyl)-2,5-pyrrolidinedione, or a salt thereof.

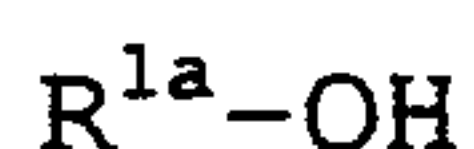
20 8. A prodrug of the compound according to claim 1.

9. A method of preparing the compound according to claim 1, which comprises subjecting a compound represented by the formula:



(Ia)

25 wherein each symbol has the same meanings as defined in claim 1, or a salt thereof to a reaction with a compound represented by the formula:



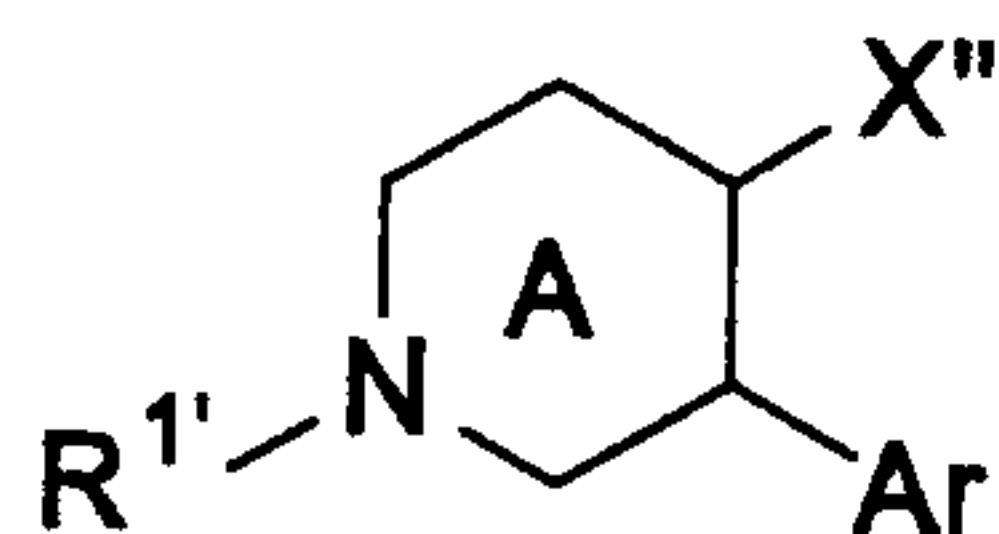
wherein R^{1a} is an optionally substituted hydrocarbon group, an acyl group or an optionally substituted

30

- 272 -

heterocyclic group, a salt thereof or a reactive derivative thereof, and if desired, to deacylation or dealkylation.

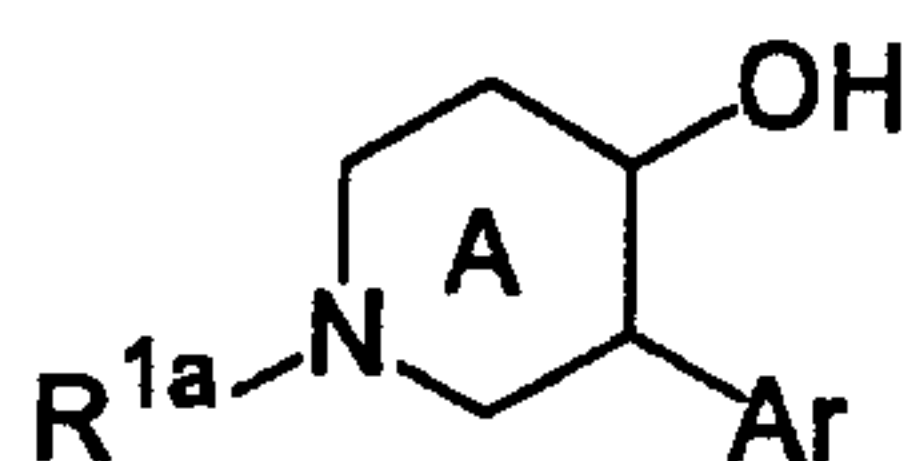
10. A compound represented by the formula:



(II)

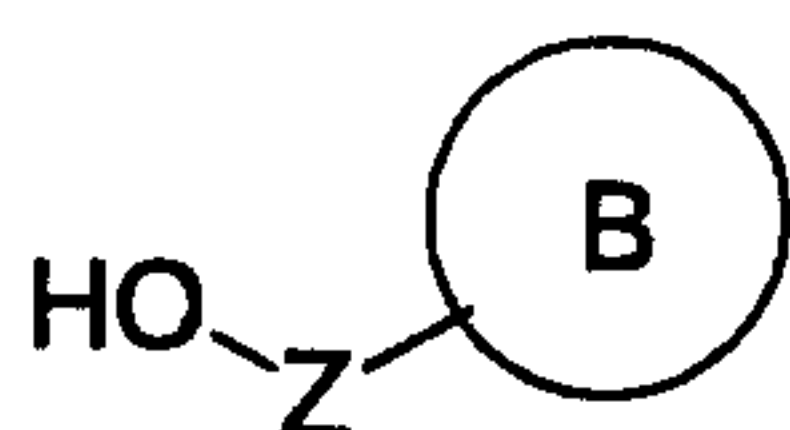
5 wherein R¹' is an acyl group or an optionally substituted heterocyclic group, X'' is a hydroxy group or an amino group, and other symbols have the same meanings as defined in claim 1, provided that when X'' is a hydroxy group, R¹' is neither an ethoxycarbonyl group nor a
10 cyclopropylcarbonyl group, or a salt thereof.

11. A method of preparing the compound according to claim 1, which comprises subjecting a compound represented by the formula:



(IIa)

15 wherein R¹ᵃ has the same meanings as defined in claim 9, and other symbols have the same meanings as defined in claim 1, or a salt thereof to a reaction with a compound represented by the formula:

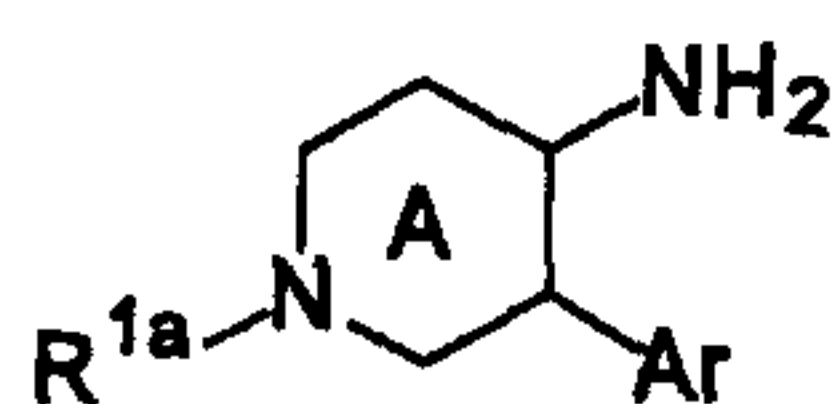


(III)

20 wherein each symbol has the same meanings as defined in claim 1, a salt thereof or a reactive derivative thereof, and if desired, to deacylation or dealkylation.

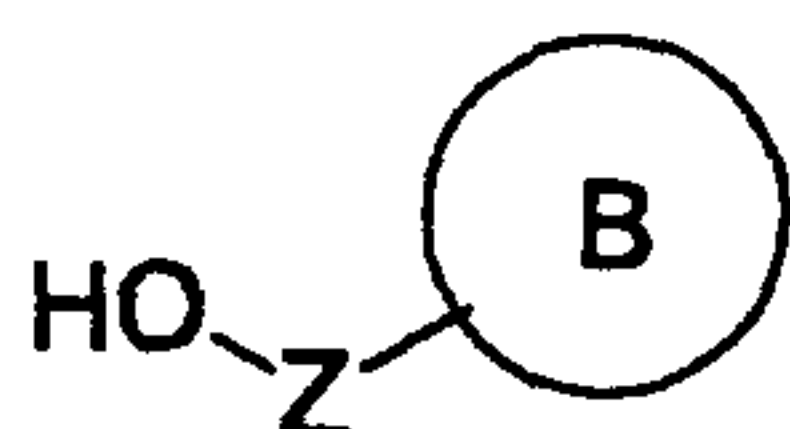
12. A method of preparing the compound according to claim 1, which comprises subjecting a compound represented by
25 the formula:

- 273 -



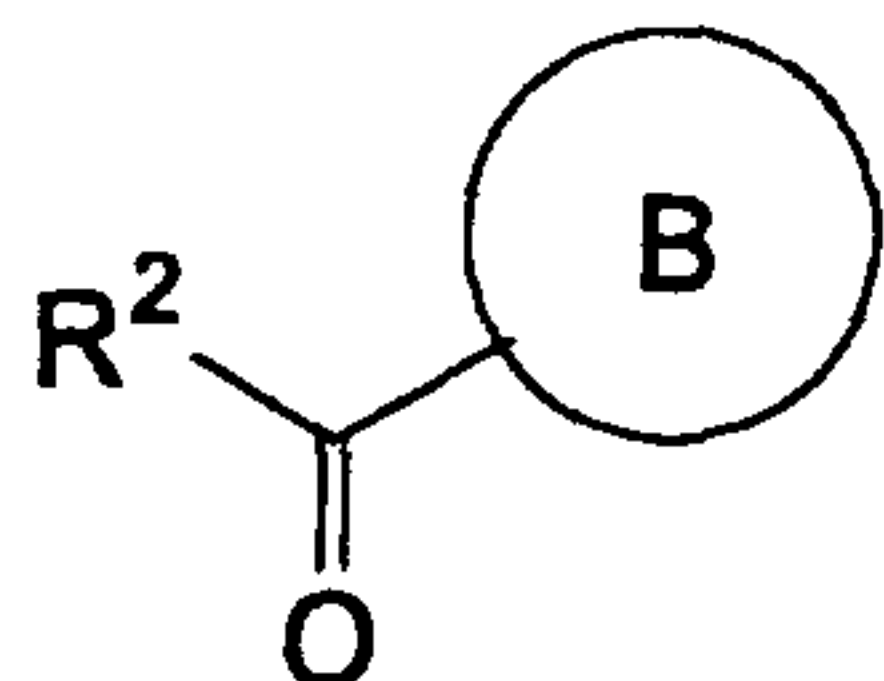
(IIb)

wherein R^{1a} has the same meanings as defined in claim 9, and other symbols have the same meanings as defined in claim 1, or a salt thereof to a reaction with a compound
 5 represented by the formula:



(III)

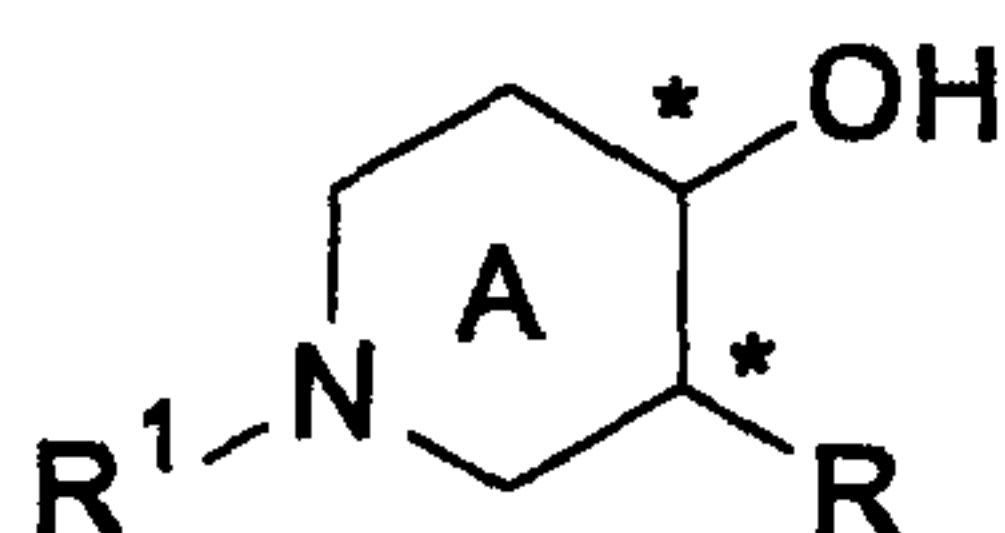
wherein each symbol has the same meanings as defined in claim 1, a salt thereof or a reactive derivative thereof, or subjecting Compound (IIb) to a reaction with a compound
 10 represented by the formula:



(IV)

wherein R^2 is a hydrogen atom or an optionally substituted hydrocarbon group, and Ring B has the same meaning as defined in claim 1, in the presence of a reducing
 15 agent, and if desired, to deacylation or dealkylation.

13. A method of preparing optically active alcohol represented by the formula:

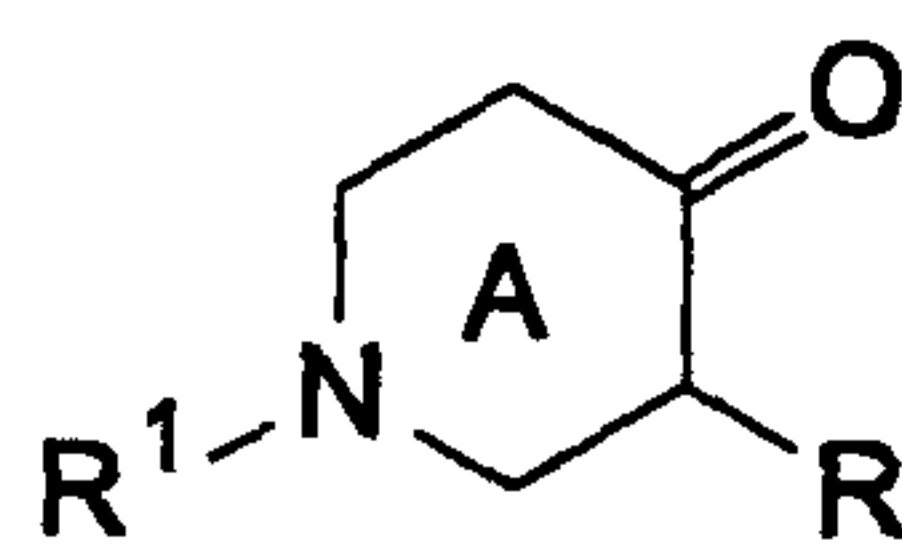


(IIc)

wherein R is an optionally substituted hydrocarbon
 20 group or an optionally substituted heterocyclic group, * is a chiral center, and other symbols have the same meanings as defined in claim 1, and OH and R have a cis configuration

- 274 -

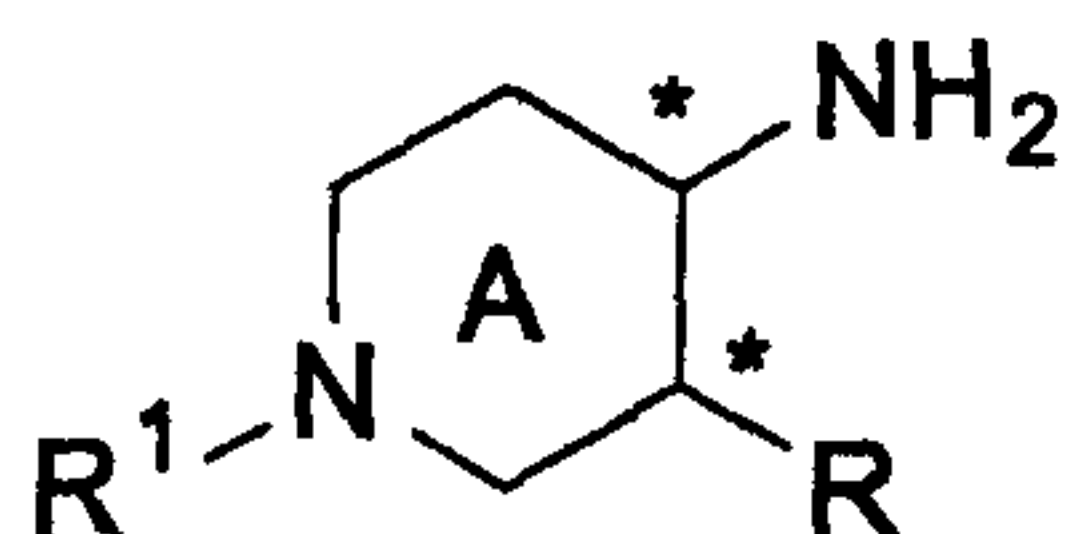
relationship, or a salt thereof, which comprises subjecting a compound represented by the formula



(V)

wherein each symbol has the same meanings as defined
 5 above, or a salt thereof, to hydrogenation in the presence of
 an optically active ruthenium-phosphine-amine complex and a
 base.

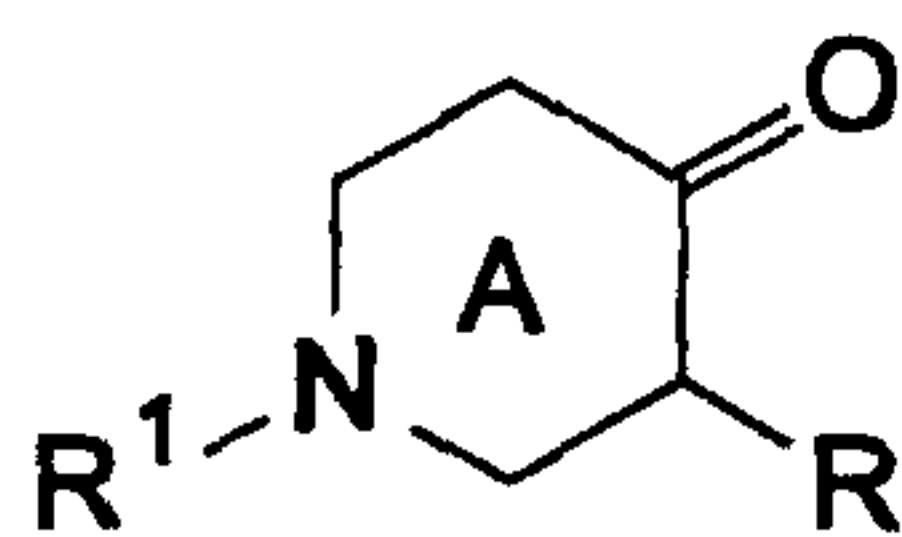
14. A method of preparing optically active amine
 represented by the formula:



(IId)

10

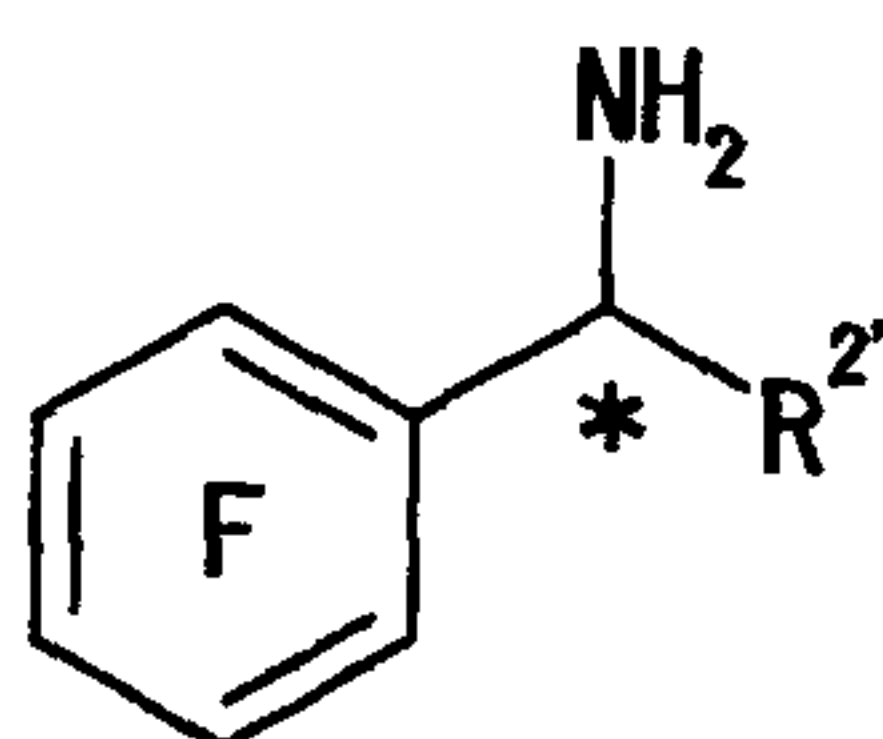
wherein R has the same meaning as defined in claim 13,
 * is a chiral center, and other symbols have the same
 meanings as defined in claim 1, NH₂ and R have a cis
 configuration relationship, or a salt thereof, which
 15 comprises subjecting a compound represented by the formula:



(V)

wherein each symbol has the same meanings as defined
 above, or a salt thereof, to condensation with an optically
 active compound represented by the formula:

- 275 -



(VI)

wherein Ring F is an optionally substituted, optionally fused benzene ring, $R^{2'}$ is an optionally substituted hydrocarbon group, and other symbols have the same meanings
 5 as defined above, or a salt thereof, followed by hydrogenation and further hydrogenolysis.

15. A medicament comprising the compound according to claim 1 or a prodrug thereof.

16. The medicament according to claim 15, which is a
 10 tachykinin receptor antagonist.

17. The medicament according to claim 15, which is an agent for preventing and/or treating abnormality of lower urinary tract functions, digestive organ diseases, inflammatory or allergic diseases, arthropathy and/or
 15 osteopathy, respiratory diseases, infection, cancer, central nerve diseases, circulatory diseases, pain, autoimmune diseases, hepatic diseases, pancreatic diseases, renal diseases, metabolic diseases, endocrine diseases, graft rejection, abnormality in characteristic of blood and/or
 20 blood components, gynecologic diseases, dermatic diseases, ophthalmic diseases, otolaryngological diseases, diseases due to environmental and/or occupational factors, ataxia or chronic fatigue syndrome.

18. The medicament according to claim 15, which is an
 25 agent for preventing and/or treating urinary frequency and/or urinary incontinence.

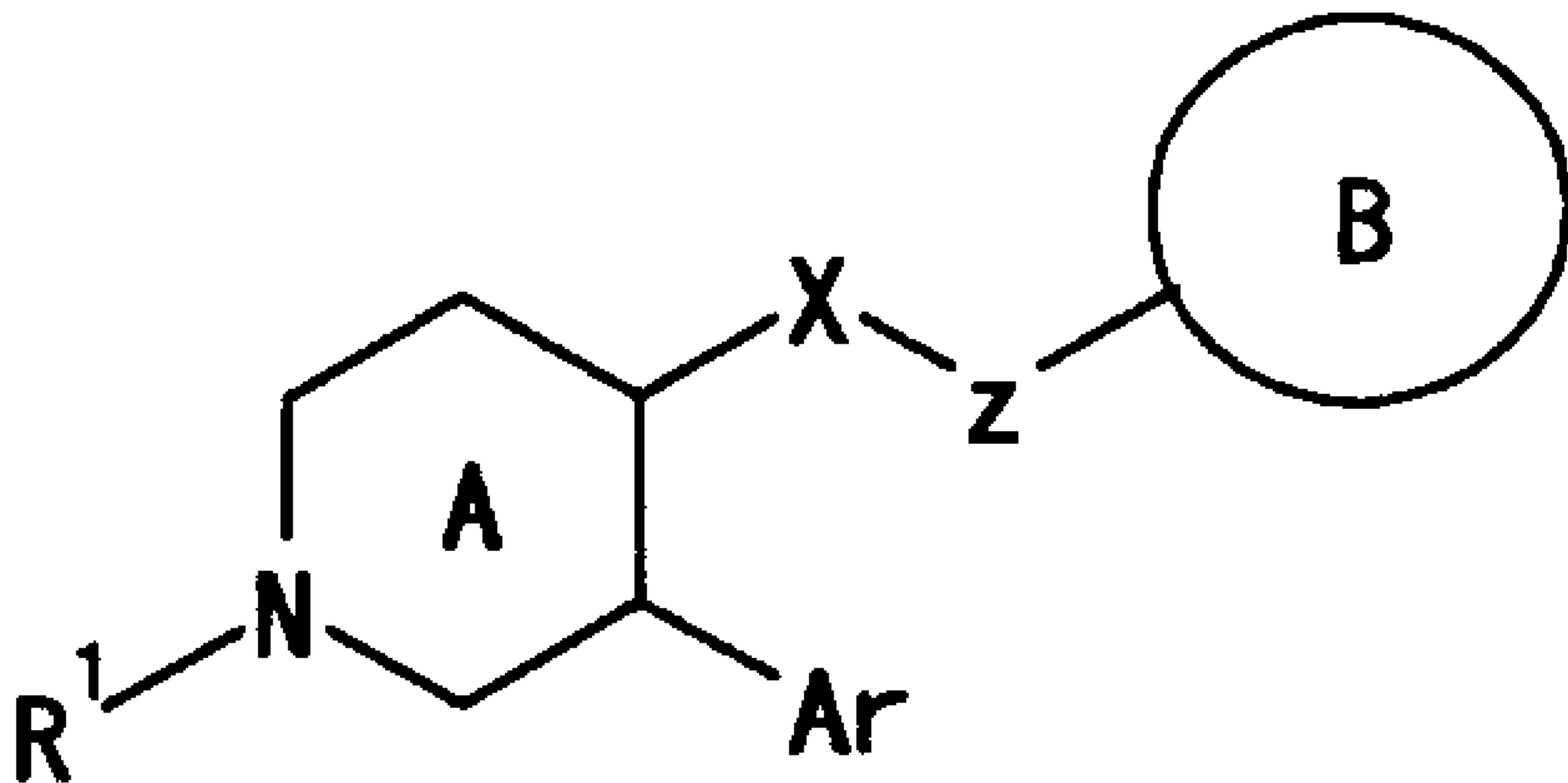
19. A method of preventing and/or treating abnormality of lower urinary tract functions, digestive organ diseases, inflammatory or allergic diseases, arthropathy and/or
 30 osteopathy, respiratory diseases, infection, cancer, central nerve diseases, circulatory diseases, pain, autoimmune

- 276 -

diseases, hepatic diseases, pancreatic diseases, renal diseases, metabolic diseases, endocrine diseases, graft rejection, abnormality in characteristic of blood and/or blood components, gynecologic diseases, dermatic diseases, 5 ophthalmic diseases, otolaryngological diseases, diseases due to environmental and/or occupational factors, ataxia or chronic fatigue syndrome, which comprises administering an effective amount of the compound according to claim 1 or a prodrug thereof to a mammal.

10 20. Use of the compound according to claim 1 or a prodrug thereof for manufacturing an agent for preventing and/or treating abnormality of lower urinary tract functions, digestive organ diseases, inflammatory or allergic diseases, arthropathy and/or osteopathy, respiratory diseases, 15 infection, cancer, central nerve diseases, circulatory diseases, pain, autoimmune diseases, hepatic diseases, pancreatic diseases, renal diseases, metabolic diseases, endocrine diseases, graft rejection, abnormality in characteristic of blood and/or blood components, gynecologic 20 diseases, dermatic diseases, ophthalmic diseases, otolaryngological diseases, diseases due to environmental and/or occupational factors, ataxia or chronic fatigue syndrome.

Fetherstonhaugh
Ottawa, Canada
Patent Agents



(I)